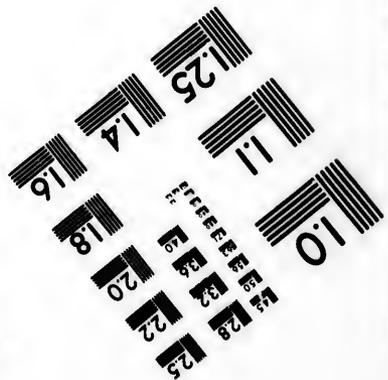
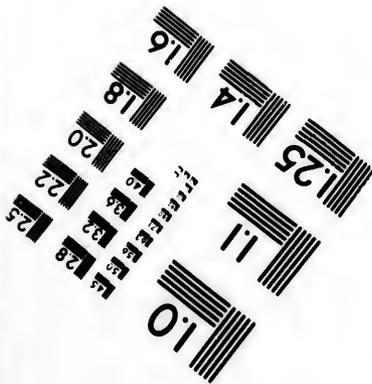
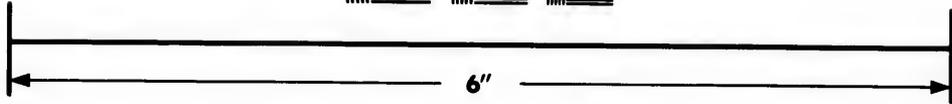
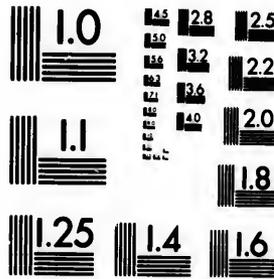


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

20 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1983

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

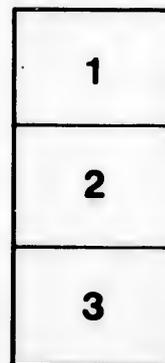
Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

ails
du
odifier
une
page

rrata
o

elure,
n à

Cook's Voyages



Printed by M. B. ...

N

WH

CAP
O

A Na

Intro

With an

PRINTE

CAPTAIN COOK'S
VOYAGES
ROUND THE WORLD.

The First performed in the Years 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771;

The Second in 1772, 1773, 1774, 1775;

The Third and Last in 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780;

FOR MAKING DISCOVERIES IN THE
Northern and Southern Hemispheres,

BY ORDER OF HIS PRESENT MAJESTY.

CONTAINING

A Relation of all the Interesting Transactions
WHICH OCCURRED IN THE COURSE OF THE VOYAGES.

INCLUDING

CAPTAIN FURNEAUX'S JOURNAL
Of his Proceedings during the Separation of the Ships.

WITH

A Narrative of Commodore Phipps's Voyage to the North Pole.

AND

AN ABRIDGEMENT OF FOSTER'S
Introduction to his History of Northern Discoveries
ON THE PROGRESS OF NAVIGATION.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

Governor Phillip's Voyage to Botany-Bay;

With an Account of the Establishment of the Colonies of Port Jackson and
Norfolk Island, &c. &c.

V O L. I.

N E W C A S T L E :

PRINTED BY M. BROWN, AT THE BIBLE, IN THE FLESH-MARKET.

M.DCC.XC.

NW
970P
C771
1st-2d
Newcastle
1790
v.1

NW
970P
C771
1st-2d

A
ious
we li
have
the S
had b
been
Princ
of ne
conqu
uncer
homer
act fr
brave
has, r
of do
and d
glecte
been
colle&
To
ascrib
afterw
succes
recess
their
geogr
The
ding r
fough
quene
practic
But
late na
geogra
Ocean
habita
the an
rately
accoun

INTRODUCTION.

AFTER the great improvements that have been made in Navigation since the discovery of America, it may well be thought strange that a very considerable part of the globe on which we live should still have remained unknown; that it should still have been the subject of speculation, whether a great portion of the Southern Hemisphere is land or water; and, even where land had been discovered, that neither its extent nor figure should have been ascertained. But the cause has probably been, that sovereign Princes have seldom any other motive for attempting the discovery of new countries than to conquer them, that the advantages of conquering countries which must first be discovered are remote and uncertain, and that ambition has always found objects nearer home.—It is the distinguishing characteristic of his Majesty to act from more liberal motives; and having the best fleet, and the bravest as well as most able navigators in Europe, his Majesty has, not with a view to the acquisition of treasure, or the extent of dominion, but the improvement of commerce and the increase and diffusion of knowledge, undertaken what has so long been neglected; and under his auspices, in a few years, discoveries have been made far greater than those of all the navigators in the world collectively, from the expedition of Columbus to the present time.

To do justice, however, to the beginnings of discovery, we must ascribe to the Dutch the merit of being our harbingers; though we afterwards went beyond them, even in their own track. And how successfully his Majesty's ships have penetrated into the obscurest recesses of the South Pacific Ocean, will appear from a recital of their various and extensive operations, which have adjusted the geography of so considerable a part of the globe.

The several lands, mentioned to have been discovered by preceding navigators, whether Spanish or Dutch, have been diligently sought after; and most of those which appeared to be of any consequence, found out and visited; when every method was put in practice to correct former mistakes, and supply former deficiencies.

But, besides perfecting the discoveries of their predecessors, our late navigators have added a long catalogue of their own, to enrich geographical knowledge. By repeatedly traversing the Pacific Ocean, within the south tropic, a seeming endless profusion of habitable spots of land was found. Islands interspersed through the amazing space of fourscore degrees of longitude, either separately scattered, or grouped in numerous clusters; and such ample accounts have we received, both of them and their inhabitants,

that, to make use of Captain Cook's own words, we *Have left little more to be done in those parts.*

Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, all contributed towards increasing our knowledge of the isles in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the Southern tropic; but how far that ocean extended to the west, by what lands it was bounded on that side, and the connections of those lands with former discoveries, remained unknown, till Captain Cook, after his first voyage, brought back a satisfactory decision of this important question. With wonderful skill and perseverance, amidst perplexities, difficulties, and dangers, he traced this coast almost two thousand miles, from the 38° of south latitude, cross the tropic, to its northern extremity, within 30° and a half of the equinoctial, where it joined the land already explored by the Dutch, which they have denominated New Holland.

When the recesses of the globe are investigated, in order to promote general knowledge, and not with a prospect of enlarging private dominion; when we traverse the globe to visit new tribes of our fellow-creatures, as friends, wishing to learn their existence, for the express purpose of bringing them within the pale of the offices of humanity, and to relieve their wants, by communicating to them our superior attainments; the voyages projected by his gracious Majesty George III. and carried into execution by Captain Cook, have not, it is presumed, been entirely useless. Some rays of light must have been darted on the Friendly, Society, and Sandwich Islands, by our repeated intercourse with them. Their stock of ideas must naturally be enlarged, and new materials must have been furnished them for the exercise of their reason, by the uncommon objects we exhibited to them.

Convinced, by comparing themselves to their English visitors, of their extreme inferiority, they will probably endeavour to emerge from it, and to rise nearer to a level with those who left behind them so many proofs of their generosity and humanity. The useful animals and vegetables introduced amongst them, will certainly contribute to the comforts and enjoyments of life.

When Great-Britain was first visited by the Phœnicians, the inhabitants were painted savages, much less civilized than those of Tongataboo, or Otaheite; and it is not impossible, but that our late voyages may, in process of time, spread the blessings of civilization amongst the numerous islanders of the South Pacific Ocean, and be the means of abolishing their abominable repasts, and almost equally abominable sacrifices,

THE
L I F E
AND
PUBLIC SERVICES
OF
Captain James Cook.

WRITTEN BY CAPTAIN KING.

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK was born in the year 1727, near Whitby, in Yorkshire; and, at an early age, commenced an apprenticeship to a shop-keeper in a neighbouring village. This not being suitable to his natural propensity, he soon quitted the counter, and contracted, for nine years, with the master of a vessel in the coal trade. In 1755, at the commencement of the war, he entered into the king's service on board the *Eagle*, then commanded by Captain Hamer, and afterwards by Sir Hugh Palliser, who perceiving his merit, advancing him to the quarter deck.

In 1758, we find him master of the Northumberland, Lord Colville's flag ship, who then commanded the squadron stationed on the coast of America. Here, as he has frequently declared, he first read Euclid, and closely applied himself to the study of the mathematics, with the assistance of only a few books, and his own industry. While he thus found means to cultivate his understanding, and supply, in some degree, the deficiencies of an early education, he was engaged in most of the active scenes of war in America. At the siege of Quebec, he was intrusted by Sir Charles Saunders with the execution of important services, in the naval department. He was the pilot who conducted the boats to the attack of Montmorency; managed the embarkation to the heights of Abraham; and pointed out, by buoys, how the large ships might proceed with security in the river. The manner in which he acquitted himself in these important services, procured him the esteem and friendship of Sir Charles Saunders and Lord Colville, who continued his zealous patrons during the remainder of their lives. At the conclusion of the war, he was appointed, through the interest of Lord Colville and Sir Hugh Palliser, to make a survey of the Gulf of St Lawrence, and the coasts of Newfoundland. He was thus employed till the year 1767, when Sir Edward Hawke appointed him to the command of an expedition to the South Seas; in order to make an observation on the transit of *Venus*, and to prosecute discoveries in that part of the globe.

His

His services, since this period, are too generally known to require enumeration. His reputation has proportionably advanced beyond the effect of panegyric. He seems, indeed, to have been peculiarly qualified for this species of enterprize. His natural inclination, the nature of his services, and indefatigable application, all conspired to compleat him for it; so that he acquired such a degree of professional knowledge, as can fall to the lot of very few.

His frame and constitution were robust, and such as enabled him to undergo the severest hardships. When necessity required it, he could feed, with satisfaction, upon the coarsest and most ungrateful food; and he submitted to every kind of self-denial with the greatest composure and indifference. Nor were the qualities of his mind less vigorous than those of his body. His understanding was strong and perspicacious; his judgment, especially in those matters in which he was more particularly engaged, quick and sure. His designs and operations, were the natural result of great original genius. His valour was cool, deliberate, and determined; accompanied with a most astonishing presence of mind on the approach of danger. His manners were plain, easy, and unaffected. His temper, it must be admitted, was too much subject to hastiness and passion; but this should be forgotten, when it is considered, that his disposition was the most benevolent and humane.

His

These are a few traits or outlines of the character of
Captain

Captain Cook ; but its distinguishing feature was, the most unremitting perseverance to accomplish his design, in opposition to dangers, difficulties, and hardships. During all his long and tedious voyages, his eagerness and activity were never in the least abated. No alluring incitement could detain him for a moment ; even those intervals of recreation, which unavoidably occurred in the course of our services, and were joyfully embraced by many of his officers, were submitted to by him with impatience, if they could not be made subservient to the more effectual prosecution of his designs.

It would be unnecessary to recapitulate the instances in which these qualities were displayed. The result of his services, however, we shall just touch upon, under two principal heads, viz. geography and navigation, placing each in a separate and distinct point of view.

No science, it is presumed, has ever received greater additions from the labours of one man, than geography has done from those of Captain Cook. In his first voyage, he discovered the Society Islands ; ascertained the insularity of New Zealand ; and discovered the straits which separate the two islands, and are called after his name. He explored the eastern coast of New Holland, till then unknown ; an extent of twenty-seven degrees of latitude, and upwards of two thousand miles.

He gave, in his second expedition, a resolution to the great problem of a southern continent ; having so completely

plete
sibili
to be
the
Zeal
of G
name
tropi
made

HI
above
cover
the S
the Sa
ation
of mo
South
unkno
of thr
proxim
failed
coasts
practic
Atlant
ern co
graphy
nese A
imperf

Vol. I.—

pletely traversed that hemisphere, as not to leave a possibility of its existence, unless it is so near the pole, as to be beyond the reach of navigation. New Caledonia, the largest island in the Southern Pacific, except New Zealand, was discovered in this voyage. Also the island of Georgia; and an unknown coast, which the Captain named Sandwich land; and having twice visited the tropical seas, he settled the situations of the old, and made several new discoveries.

His third and last voyage, however, is distinguished above the rest, by the extent and importance of its discoveries. Not to mention the several smaller islands in the Southern Pacific, he discovered the group, called the Sandwich Islands, which, on account of their situation and productions, may perhaps become an object of more consequence, than any other discovery in the South Sea. He explored what had before remained unknown of the western coast of America, an extent of three thousand seven hundred miles; ascertained the proximity of the two continents of Asia and America; sailed through the straits between them, and surveyed the coasts on each side, so far as to be satisfied of the impracticability of a passage in that hemisphere, from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, by an eastern or a western course. He has, in short, completed the hydrography of the habitable globe, if we except the Japanese Archipelago, and the sea of Amur, which are still imperfectly known by Europeans.

His services, as a navigator, are not less important and meritorious. The method which he invented, and so successfully put in practice, of preserving the health (and consequently the lives) of seamen, will transmit his name to future ages, as a friend and benefactor of mankind.

It is well known among those who are conversant in naval history, that the advantages which have been sought, through the medium of long sea-voyages, have always been purchased at a dear rate. That dreadful disorder which is peculiar to this service, must, without exercising an unwarrantable degree of tyranny over our seamen, have been an insuperable obstacle to our enterprizes. It was reserved for Captain Cook to convince the world, that voyages might be protracted to three or even four years, in unknown regions, and under every change of climate, without affecting the health in the smallest degree, and even without diminishing the probability of life. His method has been fully explained, in a paper which was read before the Royal Society, in 1776*.

Respecting his professional abilities, they must be submitted to the judgment of those who are acquainted with the services in which he was engaged. They cannot but acknowledge, that to have conducted three such dangerous and difficult expeditions, of so unusual a length,

* Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal was awarded him, on that occasion.

length
quire
most

Ha
count
and a
must
poster

To pe
a I
Ro

O N
OCEAN
nder t
oc. Lon
gure c
rm res
projecte
ve of
enius.
TEN
ure o

length, with invariable success, must not only have required an accurate knowledge of his business, but also a most powerful and comprehensive genius.

Having thus given a faithful, though a concise account of the life of our much lamented Commander, and also of his character and services, his memory must now be left to the gratitude and admiration of posterity.

*To perpetuate the MEMORY of CAPTAIN COOK,
a MEDAL was executed by Mr PINGO, for the
ROYAL SOCIETY.*

ON one side of this medal is given a bold relief of Captain Cook, with this inscription, JAC. COOK, OCEANI INVESTIGATOR ACERRIMUS: immediately under the head is expressed in smaller characters, *Reg. Soc. Lond. Socio suo.* On the reverse appears an erect figure of BRITANNIA standing upon a plain: the left arm rests upon an hieroglyphic pillar: her right arm is projected over a globe, and contains a symbol, expressive of the celebrated circumnavigator's enterprising genius. The inscription round the reverse is, NIL IN TENTATUM NOSTRI LIQUERE; and under the figure of *Britannia, Auspiciis Georgii III.*

A few of these Medals were struck off in gold, which are said to be disposed of as follows :

One to his Britannic Majesty, under whose auspices Captain Cook proceeded on his discoveries.

One to the king of France, for his great courtesy in giving a specific charge to his naval officers to forbear an hostile conduct to either of the ships under Captain Cook's command, and to afford every assistance in their power in case they fell in with them,

One to the Empress of Russia, for her great hospitality to Captain Cook, when he touched at *Kamtschatka*,

One to Mrs Cook, the Captain's relief.

One to be deposited in the British Museum, and one to remain in the college of the Royal Society.

There were several silver ones distributed amongst the LORDS of the ADMIRALTY, and other distinguished personages.

INSCRIPTION

TO THE MEMORY OF

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK,

THE ABLEST AND MOST RENOWNED NAVIGATOR THIS OR
ANY COUNTRY HATH PRODUCED.

HE raised himself solely by his merit, from a very obscure birth, to the rank of Post Captain in the royal navy, and was, unfortunately, killed by the Savages of the island of Owhyhee, on the 14th of February, 1779; which island he had not long before discovered, when prosecuting his third voyage round the globe.

He possessed, in an eminent degree, all the qualifications requisite for his profession and great undertakings; together with the amiable and worthy qualities of the best men.

Cool and deliberate in judging: sagacious in determining: active in executing: steady and persevering in enterprising, from vigilance and unremitting caution;

tion: unshaken by labour, difficulties, and disappointments: fertile in expedients: never wanting presence of mind: always possessing himself, and the full use of a sound understanding.

Mild, just, but exact in discipline: he was a father to his people, who were attached to him from affection, and obedient from confidence.

His knowledge, his experience, his sagacity, rendered him so entirely master of his subject, that the greatest obstacles were surmounted, and the most dangerous navigations became easy, and almost safe, under his direction.

He explored the Southern hemisphere to a much higher latitude than had ever been reached, and with fewer accidents than frequently befall those who navigate the coasts of this island.

By his benevolent and unabating attention to the welfare of his ship's company, he discovered and introduced a system for the preservation of the health of seamen in long voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious: for in his second voyage round the world, which continued upwards of three years, he lost only one man by distemper of one hundred and eighteen, of which his company consisted.

The death of this eminent and valuable man was a loss to mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored

plored by every nation that respects useful accomplishments, that honours science, and loves the benevolent and amiable affections of the heart. It is still more to be deplored by this country, which may justly boast of having produced a man hitherto unequalled for nautical talents; and that sorrow is farther aggravated by the reflection that his country was deprived of this ornament by the enmity of a people, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded, but from whom it was not deserved; for, actuated always by the most attentive care and tender compassion for the savages in general, this excellent man was ever assiduously endeavouring, by kind treatment, to dissipate their fears, and court their friendship; overlooking their thefts and treacheries, and frequently interposing, at the hazard of his life to protect them from the sudden resentment of his own injured people.

The object of his last mission was to discover and ascertain the boundaries of Asia and America, and to penetrate into the Northern Ocean by the North East Cape of Asia.

Traveller! contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate this great master in his profession; whose skill and labours have enlarged natural philosophy; have extended nautical science; and have disclosed the long concealed and admirable arrangements of the Almighty in the formation of this globe, and at the same time the arrogance of mortals, in presuming to account, by their speculations, for the laws by which he was pleased to create

create it. It is now discovered, beyond all doubt, that the same Great Being who created the universe by his *fiat*, by the same ordained our earth to keep a just poise, without a corresponding Southern continent—and it does so! “He stretcheth out the north over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing.”*

If the arduous, but exact researches, of this extraordinary man have not discovered a new world, they have discovered seas unnavigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with islands, people, and productions, of which we had no conception: and if he has not been so fortunate as Americus to give his name to a continent, his pretensions to such a distinction remain unrivalled; and he will be revered, while there remains a page of his own modest account of his voyages, and as long as mariners and geographers shall be instructed by his new map of the Southern hemisphere, to trace the various courses and discoveries he has made.

If public services merit public acknowledgments, if the man who adorned and raised the fame of his country is deserving of honours, then Captain COOK deserves to have a monument raised to his memory by a generous and grateful nation.

Virtutis uberrimum alimentum est honos.

VAL. MAXIMUS, Lib. ii. Cap. 6.

* Job xxvi. 7.

AN

A N
E X P L A N A T I O N
O F T H E
N A U T I C A L T E R M S,

Not generally understood, which occur in this Work,

A

A*BACK*, the situation of the sails when their surfaces are flat-
ted against the masts by the force of the wind. The sails are
said to be *taken aback*, when they are brought into this situation,
either by a sudden change of the wind, or by an alteration in the
ship's course. They are *laid aback*, to effect an immediate retreat,
without turning to the right or left, in order to avoid some
danger.

Abast, the hinder part of a ship.

Aft, behind, or near the stern of the ship.

Anchor, the principal are the sheet anchor, the best bower and
the small bower, so called from their situation in the ship's bows.
The smaller anchors, are the stream anchor, the kedg anchor, and
the grappling.

Awning, a canopy of canvass extending over the decks of a ship
in hot weather.

Azimuth-Compass, an instrument employed to discover the mag-
netical azimuth or amplitude of any heavenly object. This oper-
ation is performed at sea, to find the exact variation of the mag-
netical needle.

B

To Balance, to contract a sail into a narrower compass, in a
form, by retrenching or folding up a part of it at one corner.

Beams, strong thick pieces of timber, stretching across the ship
from side to side, to support the decks, and retain the sides at their

Vol. 1.—N^o 1.

C

pro-

AN

proper distance. On the *weather beam*, is on the weather side of the ship.

To Belay, to fasten a rope by winding it several times round a cleat, belaying-pin, or kevel.

Bending a Sail, fastening it to its yard or stay.

Bight, the double part of a rope when it is folded, in contradistinction to the end.

Bight, is also a small bay between two points of land.

Bulge, or *Bilge*, that part of the floor of a ship, on either side of the keel, which approaches nearer to an horizontal than to a perpendicular direction, and on which the ship would rest if laid on the ground: or more particularly, those parts of the bottom which are opposite to the heads of the floor-timbers amidships on each side of the keel. Hence, when a ship receives a fracture in this place, she is said to be bilged.

Birth, the station in which a ship rides at anchor.

Birth, also signifies the room or apartment where any particular number of the officers or ship's company usually mess and reside.

Board, the line over which the ship runs between tack and tack, when she is turning to windward, or sailing against the direction of the wind.

Bow, the rounding part of a ship's side forward, beginning at the place where the planks arch inwards, and terminating where they close at a stem or prow.

Breakers, billows that break violently over rocks lying under the surface of the sea.

To bring-to, to check the course of a ship when she is advancing, by arranging the sails in such a manner as that they shall counteract each other, and prevent her either from retreating or moving forward. In this situation the ship is said to lie-by, or lie-to.

Bulk-heads, certain partitions, or walls, built up in several places of a ship, between two decks, either length-ways or across, to form and separate the various apartments.

Buoy, a sort of close cask, or block of wood, fastened by a rope to the anchor, to determine the place where the anchor is situated.

C

Cable's-length, a hundred and twenty fathom.

Cap, a strong, thick block of wood, used to confine two masts together, when the one is erected at the head of the other, in order to lengthen it. It is for this purpose furnished with two holes perpendicular to its length and breadth, and parallel to its thickness; one of these is square, and the other round; the former being solidly fixed upon the upper-end of the lower mast, whilst the latter receives the mast employed to lengthen it, and secures it in this position.

Cap-

Capstern, or Capstan, a strong, massy column of timber, formed like a truncated cone, and having its upper extremity pierced with a number of holes to receive the bars or levers. It is let down perpendicularly through the decks of a ship, and is fixed in such manner, that the men, by turning it horizontally with their bars, may perform any work which requires an extraordinary effort.

Casting, the motion of falling off, so as to bring the direction of the wind on either side of the ship after it had blown for some time right a-head.

Chains, strong links or plates of iron, the lower ends of which are bolted through the ship's side to the timbers. They are placed at short distances from each other on the ship's outside, as being used to contain the blocks called *dead-eyes*, by which the *sbrouds* of the masts are extended.

Checks of the mast, the faces or projecting parts on each side of the masts, used to sustain the frame of the top, together with the top-mast, which rests immediately upon them.

Clawing, or Clawing-off, the act of *beating* or turning to windward from a lee-shore, so as to acquire a sufficient distance from it, to escape the dangers of shipwreck.

Cleats, pieces of wood of different shapes, used occasionally to fasten ropes upon in a ship.

Clench, or Clinch, that part of a cable, or other rope, which is fastened to the ring of the anchor.

Close upon a wind, or Close-hauled, the general arrangement or trim of a ship's sails, when she endeavours to make a progress in the nearest direction possible towards that point of the compass from which the wind blows.

To Clew, or Clew-up, to truss the sails up to the yards by tackles fastened to their lower corners, called their clews.

Cockswain, or Coxen, the officer who manages and steers a boat, and has the command of the boat's crew.

Companion, a sort of wooden porch placed over the entrance or stair-case of a master's cabin in a merchant-ship.

Courses, a name by which the principal sails of a ship are usually distinguished, viz. the main-sail, fore-sail, and mizen.

Crank, the quality of a ship which for want of a sufficient quantity of *ballast* or cargo, is rendered incapable of carrying sail without being exposed to the danger of overturning.

D

Half-Deck, a space under the quarter-deck of a ship of war, contained between the foremast bulkhead of the *steerage* and the fore-part of the quarter-deck.

Driving, the state of being carried at random along the surface

of the water, by a storm or current : it is generally expressed of a ship when broken loose from her anchors or moorings.

E

To Edge away, to decline gradually from the shore, or from the line of the course which the ship formerly steered.

F

Fall, the loose end of a tackle ; or that part upon which the people pull, or hoist, to produce the required effect.

To Fill, to brace the sails in such a manner, as that the wind, entering their cavities from behind, dilates them so as to advance the ship in her course.

Fish, is a long piece of oak, convex on one side, and concave on the other. It is used to fasten upon the outside of the lower masts, as an additional security, to strengthen them when it becomes necessary to carry an extraordinary pressure of sail. The fishes are also employed for the same purpose on any yard, which happens to be sprung or fractured.

Flaw, a sudden breeze, or gust of wind.

Floor, the bottom of a ship.

Foot of a sail, lower edge or bottom.

Foot-rope, the rope to which the foot of a sail is sewed.

Fore, all that part of a ship's frame and machinery which lies near the head.

G

Gaff, a sort of boom or pole, used to extend the upper edge of the mizen. The foremast, or inner extremity of it, is furnished with two cheeks forming a semicircle, which inclose the after-part of the mast so as to confine the gaff close to its respective mast whilst the sail is hoisting or lowering.

Gangway, a narrow platform, or range of planks, laid horizontally along the upper part of a ship's side, from the quarter-deck to the fore-castle, for the convenience of walking more expeditiously fore and aft, than by descending into the waist.

Gangway, is also that part of a ship's side, both within and without, by which the passengers enter and depart. It is for this purpose provided with a sufficient number of steps, or cleats, nailed upon the ship's side, nearly as low as the surface of the water ; and sometimes furnished with a railed accommodation-ladder, whose lower end projects from the ship's side, being secured in this position by iron braces, so as to render the ascent and descent convenient.

Grappling, a small anchor, fitted with four or five flukes or claws, commonly used to ride a boat or other small vessel.

Gunnel, or *Gunwale*, the upper edge of a ship's side.

Handing

H
whic
H
T
singl
pow
Ta
point
H
the c
H
by m
will l
situat
He
rope
To
Hu

Je
Jib
sprit,
the jil

Ked
rides i
Fal
eel to
Kne
nd ge
r timb

Lag
Larb
irecte
Lash
ple bo
Et of f
r this
Log,
her v
reel an
adran

H

Handing the sails, rolling them up close to the yard or mast to which they belong.

Hammocoes, the same with hammoc.

To Haul, an expression peculiar to seamen, implying to pull a single rope, without the assistance of blocks, or other mechanical powers.

To Haul the wind, to direct the ship's course nearer to that point of the compass from which the wind arises.

Hawser, a large rope which holds the middle degree between the cable and tow-line.

Heaving-short, is the drawing so much of the cable into the ship, by means of the capstern or windlass, as that by advancing, she will be almost perpendicularly above the anchor, and in a proper situation to set sail.

Heaving-taught, the act of heaving about the capstern, till the rope applied thereto becomes straight and ready for action.

To Heel, to stoop or incline to either side.

Hummock, a little hill.

J

Jerked, cured with salt.

Jib, or *Jib-boom*, a boom run out from the extremity of the bowsprit, parallel, to its length, and serving to extend the bottom of the jib, and the stay of the fore-top-gallant-mast.

K

Kedge, a small anchor, used to keep a ship steady whilst she rides in a harbour or river.

Falſe Keel, a strong, thick piece of timber, bolted to the main keel to preserve its lower side.

Knee, a crooked piece of timber, having two branches or arms, and generally used to connect the beams of a ship with her side timbers.

L

Lagoon, a lake.

Larboard, the left side of a ship when the eye of a spectator is directed forward.

Lashing, a piece of rope employed to fasten or secure any movable body in a ship, or about her masts, sails, and rigging; also the act of fastening or securing any thing by means of the rope used for this purpose.

Log, a machine used to measure the ship's head-way, or the rate of her velocity as she advances through the sea. It is composed of a reel and line, to which is fixed a small piece of wood, forming the quadrant of a circle. The term *log* however is more particularly applied

Handing

applied to the latter. The log, is generally about a quarter of an inch thick, and five or six inches from the angular point to the circumference. It is balanced by a thin plate of lead, nailed upon the arch, so as to swim perpendicularly in the water, with about two-thirds impressed under the surface. The line is fastened to the log by means of two legs, one of which passes through a hole at the corner, and is knotted on the opposite side; whilst the other leg is attached to the arch by a pin fixed in another hole, so as to draw out occasionally. By these legs the log is hung in equilibrio, and the line which is united to it, is divided into certain spaces, which are in proportion to an equal number of geographical miles, as a half minute or quarter minute is to an hour of time.

Lug-sail, a square sail, hoisted occasionally on the mast of a boat, or small vessel, upon a yard which hangs nearly at right angles with the mast.

M

To Make the land, is to discover it from a distant situation, in consequence of approaching it after a sea-voyage.

Mizen, the aftermost or hindmost of the fixed sails of a ship.

Mooring, the act of confining and securing a ship in a particular station, by chains or cables, which are either fastened to the adjacent shore, or to anchors in the bottom.

N

Neaped, the situation of a ship which is left aground on the height of a spring-tide, so that she cannot be floated off till the return of the next spring.

O

Offing, implies out at sea; or at a competent distance from the shore, and generally out of anchor-ground.

Open, is expressed of any distant object, to which the sight or passage is not intercepted by something lying, or coming between. Thus, to be open with any place, is be opposite to it; as the entry of a port, road, or haven.

Over-hauling, the act of opening and extending the several parts of a tackle, or other assemblage of ropes, communicating with blocks, or dead-eyes. It is used to remove those blocks to a sufficient distance from each other, that they may be again placed in a state of action, so as to produce the effect required.

P

Painter, a rope employed to fasten a boat either alongside of the ship to which she belongs, or to some wharf or key.

Palm of the anchor, the same with fluke, the broad barbed ends of the two arms at the bottom of the shank.

Paralel

Parceling, certain long narrow slips of canvas, daubed with tar, and frequently bound about a rope, in the same manner as bandages are applied to a broken limb in surgery.

To Pay, to daub or anoint the surface of any body, in order to preserve it from the injuries of the water and weather, &c.

Ports, the embrasures or openings in the side of a ship of war, wherein the artillery is ranged in battery upon the decks above and below.

Half-ports, are what stops that part of the port which when the gun is pushed out is left open.

Purchase, any mechanical power employed in raising or removing heavy bodies, or in fixing or extending the ship's rigging.

Q
Quarter, that part of a ship's side which lies towards the stern.

Quarter-cloths, long pieces of painted canvas, extended on the outside of the quarter-netting from the upper-part of the gallery to the gangway.

R

Range, a sufficient length of the cable, drawn up on the deck, before the anchor is cast loose from the bow, to let it sink to the bottom, without being interrupted, that the flukes may be forced the deeper into the ground, by the additional weight which the anchor acquires in sinking.

Reef, a certain portion of a sail, comprehended between the top or bottom, and a row of eyelet-holes parallel thereto.

To Reef, is to reduce the surface of the sail in proportion to the increase of the wind.

Reef also implies a chain of rocks, lying near the surface of the water.

Rigging, a general name given to all the ropes employed to support the masts; and to extend or reduce the sails, or arrange them to the disposition of the wind.

Righting, the act of restoring a ship to her upright position, after she has laid on a *careen*. A ship is also said to right at sea when she rises, with her masts erected, after having been prest down on one side by the effort of her sails, or a heavy squall of wind.

S

Scarfing, when two pieces of timber are to be joined together by the ends, if the ends are cut square, another piece is laid upon, and fastened to both, and this is called scarfing.

Seting, the act of observing the situation of any distant object by the compass, in order to discover the angle which it makes with the nearest meridian.

Sheet, a rope fastened to one or both the lower corners of a sail to extend and retain it in a particular station.

Shrouds, a range of large ropes extended from the mast-heads to the right and left side of the ship, to support the masts, and enable them to carry sail.

Skids, or *Skeeds*, are long compassing pieces of timber, formed so as to answer the vertical curve of a ship's side. They are notched below so as to fit closely upon the wales; and as they are intended to preserve the planks of the side, when any weighty body is hoisted or lowered, they extend from the main wale to the top of the side; and they are retained in this position by bolts or spike-nails.

Spring, a crack or breach running transversely or obliquely through any part of a mast or yard, so as to render it unsafe to carry the usual quantity of sail thereon.

Spring is also a rope passed out of one extremity of a ship and attached to a cable proceeding from the other, when she lies at anchor. It is usually done to bring the ship's broad-side, or battery of cannon, to bear upon some distant object.

Sprit-sail, a sail attached to a yard which hangs under the bowsprit.

Squall, a sudden and violent blast of wind, usually occasioned by the interruption and reverberation of the wind from high mountains.

Stanchion, a sort of small pillar of wood or iron used for various purposes in a ship; as to support the decks, the quarter-rails, the netings, and awnings.

Standing, the movement by which a ship advances towards a certain object, or departs from it.

Starboard, the right side of a ship when the eye of the spectator is directed forward.

To Stay, the same as to tack; the contrary to wear, which see; hence the phrase *to miss stays* when she fails in the operation.

Stiff, the quality by which a ship is enabled to carry a sufficient quantity of sail, without hazard of oversetting.

Streaks, or *Strakes*, the uniform ranges of planks on the bottom and sides of a ship.

To Strike, to run ashore, or to beat upon the ground in passing over a bank or shallow.

Studding-sails, certain light sails extended, in moderate and steady breezes, beyond the skirts of the principal sails, where they appear as wings upon the yard arms.

Surf, the swell of the sea which breaks upon the shore, or any rock lying near the surface of the water.

Sweeping, the act of dragging the bight, or loose part of a small rope,

rope, along the surface of the ground, in a harbour or road, in order to hook and recover some anchor, wreck, or other material, sunk at the bottom. It is performed by fastening the two ends of this rope to the sides of two boats which are abreast of each other, at some distance. To the middle of the rope are suspended two cannon shot, or something which weighs heavy, in order to sink it to the ground: so that, as the boats advance by rowing ahead, the rope drags along the bottom, to hook any thing for which they are searching.

Sweeps, are long oars sometimes used on board a ship to pull her round.

T

Tack, a rope used to confine the foremost lowest-corners of the *courses* and *stay-sails* in a fixed position, when the wind crosses the ship's course obliquely.

Tack-chain plates, strong links or plates of iron, the lower ends of which are bolted through the ship's side to the timbers, for the purpose of holding the rope called a tack.

Main-Tack, the tack of the main-sail.

Taffarel, the upper part of a ship's stern, being a curved piece of wood, usually ornamented with sculpture.

Taught, the state of being extended or stretched out. It is usually applied to a rope or sail, in opposition to slack.

Tending, the movement by which a ship turns or swings round her anchor in a tide-way, at the beginning of the flood or ebb.

Thwart, the seat or bench of a boat whereon the rowers sit to manage the oars.

Tiler, the bar or lever employed to turn the rudder in steering.

Timbers, the ribs of a ship.

Transoms, certain beams or timbers extended across the *stern-post* of a ship to fortify her after-part, and give it the figure most suitable to the service for which she is calculated.

Trussel, or *Trestle-trees*, two strong bars of timber fixed horizontally on the opposite sides of the lower mast-head, to support the frame of the top, and the weight of the top-mast.

Trim, the state or disposition by which a ship is best calculated for the several purposes of navigation.

To Tend, to run off in a certain direction.

Triping, the movement by which an anchor is loosened from the bottom by its cable or buoy-ropes.

V

Veering, the same as wearing, which see.

To Veer away the cable, is to slacken it, that it may run out of the ship.

Vol. I.—N^o I.

D

Wake,

W

Wake, the print or track impressed by the course of a ship on the surface of the water.

Wales, an assemblage of strong planks extending along a ship's side, throughout her whole length, at different heights, and serving to reinforce the decks, and form the curves by which the vessel appears light and graceful on the water.

Warp, a small rope employed occasionally to remove a ship from one place to another, in a port, road, or river. And hence,

To warp, is to change the situation of a ship, by pulling her from one part of a harbour, &c. to some other, by means of warps.

Wash-board, a broad thin plank fixed occasionally on the top of a boat's side, so as to raise it, and be removed at pleasure. It is used to prevent the sea from breaking into the vessel, particularly when the surface is rough.

To Weather, is to sail to windward of some ship, bank, or head-land.

To Wear, the same as to veer, to perform the operation by which a ship, in changing her course from one board to the other, turns her stern to windward; it is the opposite to tacking, in which the head is turned to the windward, and the stern to the leeward.

Windlass, a machine used in merchant-ships to heave up the anchors. It is a large cylindrical piece of timber, supported at the two ends by two frames of wood, placed on the opposite sides of the deck near the fore-mast, and is turned about as upon an axis, by levers called handspikes which are for this purpose thrust into holes bored through the body of the machine.

Wooding, the act of winding a piece of rope about a mast or yard, to support it in a place where it may have been *fished* or *scarfed*; or when it is composed of several pieces united into one solid.

Y

Yard, a long piece of timber suspended upon the masts of a ship, to extend the sails to the wind.

Yaw, the movement by which a ship deviates from the line of her course towards the right or left in steering.

e of a ship on

along a ship's
ats, and serving
which the vessel

remove a ship
And hence,
y pulling her
eans of warps.
on the top of
leasure. It is
l, particularly

bank, or head-

ation by which
e other, turns
in which the
leeward.

heave up the
upported at the
ite sides of the
on an axis, by
rust into holes

out a mast or
been *fished* or
hited into one

the masts of a

m the line of

RES. with

194



195

CAPTAIN



CAPTAIN COOK'S

1760
FIRST

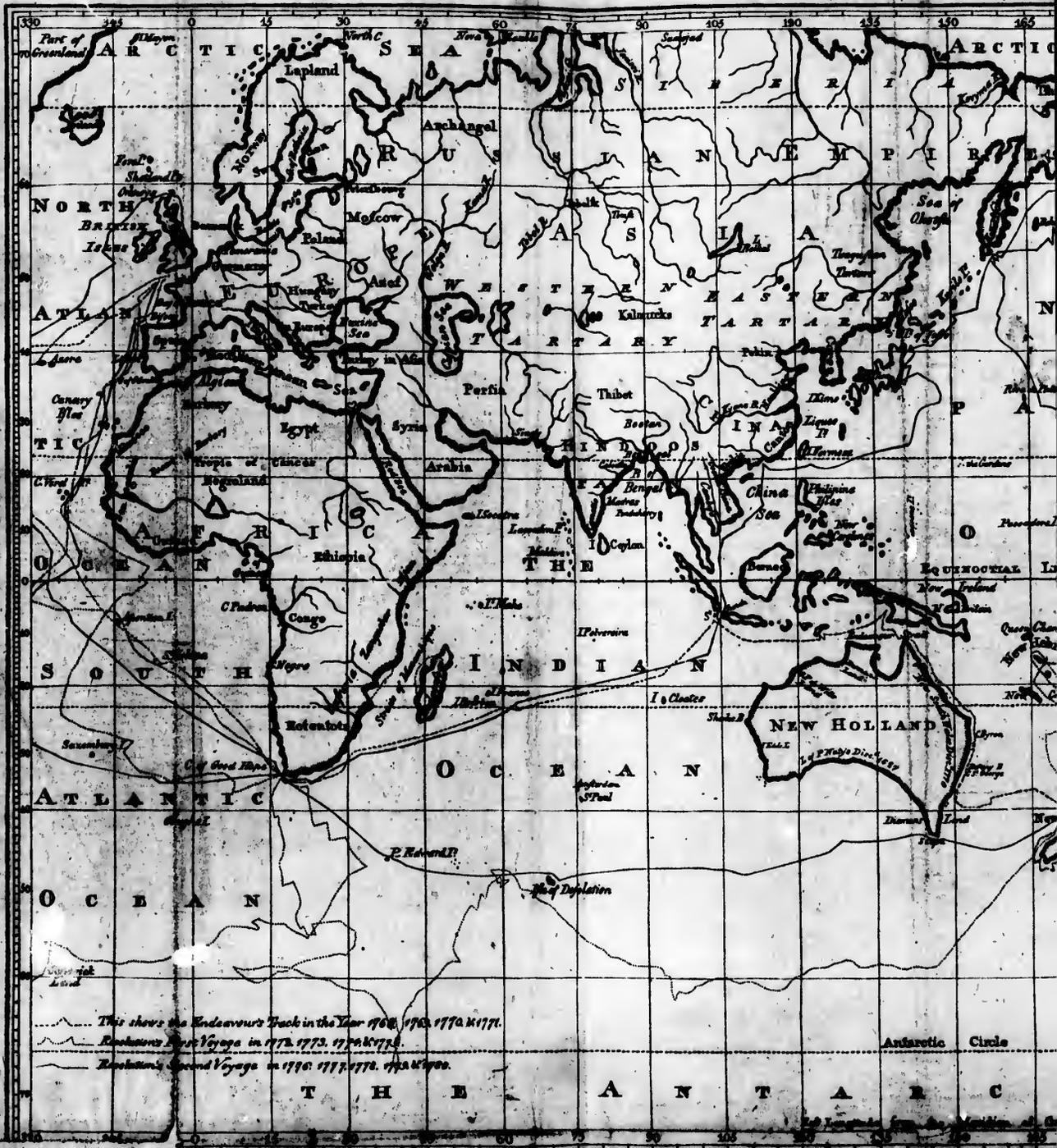
VOYAGE,

Commenced in 1768, and finished in 1771.

HIS Majesty, a few years after his accession to the throne, turned his thoughts to voyages of discovery, particularly in the Southern Hemisphere: Three were made by Captain Byron, Captain Wallis, and Captain Carteret; at different periods. In consequence of their success, other voyages were projected, upon a more enlarged scale, and carried into execution by Captain COOK, who made three also: unhappily, the last was one too many, as it was at the expence of his life.

Captain Cook received his commission, dated the 25th of May, 1768; and on the 27th went on board the ENDEAVOUR, a bark of 320 tons, which had been originally built for the coal-trade, and had on board ten carriage and twelve swivel guns; he hoisted the pennant, and took charge of the ship, which then lay in the basin in Deptford Yard; she was fitted for sea with all expedition; and stores and provisions being taken on board, sailed down the river on the 30th of July, and on the 13th of August anchored in Plymouth Sound.

Exhibiting the DISCOVERIES made by Captⁿ JAMES COOK in the Last and Two prece



On board this vessel embarked Joseph Banks, Esq; a gentleman possessed of considerable landed property in Lincolnshire. He received the education of a scholar rather to qualify him for the enjoyments than the labours of life; yet an ardent desire to know more of Nature than could be learnt from books, determined him, at a very early age, to forego what are generally thought to be the principal advantages of a liberal fortune, and to apply his revenue not in procuring the pleasures of leisure and ease, but in the pursuit of his favourite study, through a series of fatigue and danger, which, in such circumstances, have very seldom been voluntarily incurred, except to gratify the restless and insatiable desires of avarice or ambition.

Upon his leaving the university of Oxford, in the year 1763, he crossed the Atlantic, and visited the coasts of Newfoundland and Labradore. The danger, difficulty, and inconvenience that attend long voyages are very different in idea and experience; Mr Banks however returned, undiscouraged, from his first expedition; and when he found that the Endeavour was equipping for a voyage to the South Seas, in order to observe the Transit of Venus, and afterwards attempt farther discoveries, he determined to embark in the expedition, that he might enrich his native country with a tribute of knowledge from those which have been hitherto unknown, and not without hope of leaving among the rude and uncultivated nations that he might discover, something that would render life of more value, and enrich them perhaps in a certain degree with the knowledge, or at least with the productions, of Europe.

As he was determined to spare no expence in the execution of his plan, he engaged Dr Solander to accompany him in the voyage. This gentleman, by birth a Swede, was educated under the celebrated Linnæus, from whom he brought letters of recommendation into England, and his merit being soon known, he obtained an appointment in the British Museum, a public

lic institution which was then just established; such a companion Mr Banks considered as an acquisition of no small importance, and to his great satisfaction the event abundantly proved that he was not mistaken. He also took with him two draughtsmen, one to delineate views and figures, the other to paint such subjects of natural history as might offer; together with a secretary and four servants, two of whom were negroes.

While the Endeavour lay in Plymouth Sound waiting for a wind, the articles of war, and the act of parliament were read to the ship's company, who were paid two months wages in advance, and told that they were to expect no additional pay for the performance of the voyage.

On Friday the 26th of August, the wind becoming fair, they got under sail, and put to sea. On the 31st they saw several of the birds which the sailors call Mother Cary's Chickens, and which they suppose to be the forerunners of a storm; and on the next day they had a very hard gale, which brought them under their courses, washed overboard a small boat belonging to the boatswain, and drowned three or four dozen of their poultry, which they regretted still more.

On Friday the 2d of September they saw land, between Cape Finister and Cape Ortegal, on the coast of Galicia, in Spain. During this course, Mr Banks and Dr Solander had an opportunity of observing some marine animals, hitherto unnoticed. They were angular in figure, one inch thick, and three in length, with a natural hole or hollow quite through the centre of the body, and a brown spot near one of the extremities; they shone very brilliant in the water, and displayed variety of colours. Mr Banks and Dr Solander gave the name of *Dagysa* to these animals, from the likeness of one species of them to a gem. It was thought extraordinary that no naturalist had hitherto taken notice of the *Dagysa*, as the sea abounds with them not twenty leagues from the coast of Spain; but unfortunately for the cause of science, there are but very few of those

those who traverse the sea, that are either disposed or qualified to remark the curiosities of which Nature has made it the repository.

On the 12th they discovered the islands of Porto Santo and Madeira, and on the next day anchored in Funchiale road, and moored with the stream-anchor: but, in the night, the bend of the hawser of the stream-anchor slipped, owing to the negligence of the person who had been employed to make it fast. In the morning the anchor was heaved up into the boat, and carried out to the southward; but in heaving it again, Mr Weir, the master's mate, was carried overboard by the buoy-rope, and went to the bottom with the anchor: the people in the ship saw the accident, and got the anchor up with all possible expedition; it was however too late, the body came up intangled in the buoy-rope, but it was dead.

When the island of Madeira is first approached from the sea, it has a very beautiful appearance; the sides of the hills being entirely covered with vines almost as high as the eye can distinguish, and the vines are green when every kind of herbage, except where they shade the ground, and here and there by the sides of a rill, is entirely burnt up, which was the case at this time.

On the 13th, about eleven o'clock in the forenoon, a boat, which the sailors called the product boat, came on board from the officers of health, without whose permission no person is suffered to land from on board a ship. As soon as this permission was obtained, they went on shore at Funchiale, the capital of the island, and proceeded directly to the house of Mr Cheap, who is the English consul there, and one of the most considerable merchants of the place. This gentleman received them with the kindness of a brother, and the liberality of a prince; he insisted upon their taking possession of his house, in which he furnished them with every possible accommodation during their stay upon the island: he procured leave for Mr Banks and Dr Solander to search the island for such natural curiosities as they should think

think worth their notice ; employed persons to take fish and gather shells, which time would not have permitted them to collect for themselves ; and he provided horses and guides to take them to any part of the country which they should chuse to visit. With all these advantages, however, their excursions were seldom pushed farther than three miles from the town, as they were only five days on shore ; one of which they spent at home, in receiving the honour of a visit from the governor. The season was the worst in the year for their purpose, as it was neither that of plants nor insects ; a few of the plants, however, were procured in flower, by the kind attention of Dr Heberden, the chief physician of the island, and brother to Dr Heberden of London, who also gave them such specimens as he had in his possession, and a copy of his Botanical Observations ; containing, among other things, a particular description of the trees of the island. Mr Banks enquired after the wood which has been imported into England for cabinet work, and is here called Madeira mahogany : he learnt that no wood was exported from the island under that name, but he found a tree called by the natives Vigniatico, the *Laurus indicus* of Linnæus, the wood of which cannot easily be distinguished from mahogany. Dr Heberden had a book-case in which the vigniatico and mahogany are mixed, and they are no otherwise to be known from each other than by the colour, which, upon a nice examination, appears to be somewhat less brown in the vigniatico than the mahogany ; it is therefore in the highest degree probable, that the wood known in England by the name of Madeira mahogany, is the vigniatico.

There is great reason to suppose that this whole island was, at some remote period, thrown up by the explosion of subterraneous fire, as every stone, whether whole or in fragments, that they saw upon it appeared to have been burnt, and even the sand itself to be nothing more than ashes : they did not, indeed, see much

of

of the country, but the people informed them that what they did see was a very exact specimen of the rest.

The only article of trade in this island is wine, and the manner in which it is made is so simple, that it might have been used by Noah, who is said to have planted the first vineyard after the flood: the grapes are put into a square wooden vessel, the dimensions of which are proportioned to the size of the vineyard to which it belongs; the servants then, having taken off their stockings and jackets, get into it, and with their feet and elbows, press out as much of the juice as they can: the stalks are afterwards collected, and being tied together with a rope, are put under a square piece of wood, which is pressed down upon them by a lever with a stone tied to the end of it. The inhabitants have made so little improvement in knowledge or art, that they have but very lately brought all the fruit of a vineyard to be of one sort, by engraffing their vines: there seems to be in mind as there is in matter, a kind of *vis inertiae*, which resists the first impulse to change. He who proposes to assist the artificer or the husbandman by a new application of the principles of philosophy, or the powers of mechanism, will find, that his having hitherto done without them, will be a stronger motive for continuing to do without them still, than any advantage, however manifest and considerable, for adopting the improvement. Wherever there is ignorance there is prejudice; and the common people of all nations are, with respect to improvements, like the parish poor of England with respect to a maintenance, for whom the law must not only make a provision, but compel them to accept it, or else they will be still found begging in the streets. It was therefore with great difficulty that the people of Madeira were persuaded to ingraft their vines, and some of them still obstinately refuse to adopt the practice, though a whole vintage is very often spoiled by the number of bad grapes which are mixed in the vat, and which they will not throw out, because they increase the quantity of the wine: an instance

instance of the force of habit, which is the more extraordinary, as they have adopted the practice of engrafting with respect to their chestnut-trees, an object of much less importance, which, however, are thus brought to bear sooner than they would otherwise have done.

They saw no wheel-carriages of any sort in the place, which perhaps is not more owing to the want of ingenuity to invent them, than to the want of industry to mend the roads, which, at present, it is impossible that any wheel-carriage should pass: the inhabitants have horses and mules indeed, excellently adapted to such ways; but their wine is, notwithstanding, brought to town from the vineyards where it is made, in vessels of goats skins, which are carried by men upon their heads. The only imitation of a carriage among these people is a board, made somewhat hollow in the middle, to one end of which a pole is tied, by a strap of white leather: this wretched sledge approaches about as near to an English cart, as an Indian canoe to a ship's long-boat; and even this would probably never have been thought of, if the English had not introduced wine vessels which are too big to be carried by hand, and which, therefore, are dragged about the town upon these machines.

One reason, perhaps, why art and industry have done so little for Madeira is, Nature's having done so much. The soil is very rich, and there is such a difference of climate between the plains and the hills, that there is scarcely a single object of luxury that grows either in Europe or the Indies, that might not be produced here. When they went to visit Dr Heberden, who lives upon a considerable ascent, about two miles from town, they set the thermometer at 74, and when they arrived at his house, they found it at 66. The hills produce, almost spontaneously, walnuts, chestnuts, and apples in great abundance; and in the town there are many plants which are the natives both of the East and West Indies, particularly the banana, the guava, the pine-apple or
 E anana,

anana, and the mango, which flourish almost without culture. The corn of this country is of a most excellent quality, large grained and very fine, and the island would produce it in great plenty; yet most of what is consumed by the inhabitants is imported. The mutton, pork, and beef, are also very good; the beef in particular, which they took on board here, was universally allowed to be scarcely inferior to our own; the lean part was very like it, both in colour and grain, though the beasts are much smaller, but the fat is as white as the fat of mutton.

The town of Funchiale derives its name from *Funcho*, the Portuguese name for fennel, which grows in great plenty upon the neighbouring rocks, and, by the observation of Dr Heberden, lies in the lat. of 32 d. 33 m. 33 f. N. and long. 16 d. 49. m. W. It is situated in the bottom of a bay, and though larger than the extent of the island seems to deserve, is very ill built; the houses of the principal inhabitants are large, those of the common people are small, the streets are narrow, and worse paved than any they ever saw. The churches are loaded with ornaments, among which are many pictures, and images of favourite saints, but the pictures are in general wretchedly painted, and the saints are dressed in laced cloaths. Some of the convents are in a better taste, especially that of the Franciscans, which is plain, simple, and neat in the highest degree. The infirmary in particular drew their attention as a model which might be adopted in other countries with great advantage. It consists of a long room, on one side of which are the windows, and an altar for the convenience of administering the sacrament to the sick: the other side is divided into wards, each of which is just big enough to contain a bed, and neatly lined with gally-tiles; behind these wards, and parallel to the room in which they stand, there runs a long gallery, with which each ward communicates by a door, so that the sick may be separately supplied with whatever they want without disturbing their neighbours. In this convent there is also

a singular curiosity of another kind; a small chapel, the whole lining of which, both sides and ceiling, is composed of human skulls and thigh bones; the thigh bones are laid across each other, and a skull is placed in each of the four angles. Among the skulls one is very remarkable; the upper and the lower jaw, on one side, perfectly and firmly cohere; how the ossification which unites them was formed, it is not perhaps very easy to conceive, but it is certain that the patient must have lived some time without opening his mouth: what nourishment he received was conveyed through a hole which they discovered to have been made on the other side, by forcing out some of the teeth, in doing which the jaw also seems to have been injured.

They visited the good Fathers of this convent on a Thursday evening, just before supper-time, and they received them with great politeness: "We will not ask you, said they, to sup with us, because we are not prepared, but if you will come to-morrow, though it is fast with us, we will have a turkey roasted for you." This invitation, which shewed a liberality of sentiment not to have been expected in a convent of Portuguese Friars at this place, gratified them much, though it was not in their power to accept it.

They visited also a convent of nuns, dedicated to *Santa Clara*, and the Ladies did them the honour to express a particular pleasure in seeing them there: they had heard that there were great philosophers among the English, and not at all knowing what were the objects of philosophical knowledge, they asked them several questions that were absurd and extravagant in the highest degree; one was, when it would thunder; and another, whether a spring of fresh water was to be found any where within the walls of their convent, of which it seems they were in great want. It will naturally be supposed that their answers to such questions were neither satisfactory to the Ladies, nor, in their estimation, honourable to them; yet their disappointment did not in the least lessen their civility, and they talked, without

ceasing, during the whole of the visit, which lasted about half an hour.

The hills of this country are very high; the highest, Pico Ruivo, rises 5,068 feet, near an English mile, perpendicularly from its base, which is much higher than any land that has been measured in Great Britain. The sides of these hills are covered with vines to a certain height, above which there are woods of chestnut and pine of immense extent, and above them forests of wild timber of various kinds not known in Europe; particularly two, called by the Portuguese, *Mirnalano* and *Paobranco*, the leaves of both which, particularly the *Paobranco*, are so beautiful, that these trees would be a great ornament to the gardens of Europe.

The number of inhabitants in this island is supposed to be about 80,000, and the custom-house duties produce a revenue to the king of Portugal of 20,000 pounds a-year, clear of all expences, which might easily be doubled by the product of the island, exclusive of the vines, if advantage was taken of the excellence of the climate, and the amazing fertility of the soil; but this object is utterly neglected by the Portuguese. In the trade of the inhabitants of Madeira with Lisbon the balance is against them, so that all the Portuguese money naturally going thither, the currency of the island is Spanish; there are indeed a few Portuguese pieces of copper, but they are so scarce that they did not see one of them: the Spanish coin is of three denominations; Pistereens, worth about a shilling; Bitts, worth about six-pence; and Half-bitts, three-pence.

The tides at this place flow at the full and change of the moon, north and south; the spring tides rise seven feet perpendicular, and the neap tides four. The refreshments to be had here, are water, wine, fruit of several sorts, onions in plenty, and some sweetmeats; fresh meat and poultry are not to be had without leave from the governor, and the payment of a very high price.

They took in 270 lb. of fresh beef, and a live bullock,
charged

charged at 613 lb. 3,032 gallons of water, and ten tuns of wine: and in the night, between Sunday the 18th and Monday the 19th of September, they set sail in prosecution of their voyage.

On the 21st of September they saw the islands called the Salvages, to the north of the Canaries; on Friday the 23d saw the Peak of Teneriffe. The height of this mountain, from which Captain Cook took a new departure, has been determined by Dr Heberden, who has been upon it, to be 15,396 feet, which is but 148 yards less than three miles, reckoning the mile at 1760 yards. Its appearance at sunset was very striking; when the sun was below the horizon, and the rest of the island appeared of a deep black, the mountain still reflected its rays, and glowed with a warmth of colour which no painting can express. There is no eruption of visible fire from it, but a heat issues from the chinks near the top, too strong to be borne by the hand when it is held near them. They had received from Dr Heberden, among other favours, some salt which he collected on the top of the mountain, where it is found in large quantities, and which he supposes to be the true *natrum* or *nitrum* of the ancients: he gave them also some native sulphur exceedingly pure, which he had likewise found upon the surface in great plenty.

On the next day, Saturday the 24th, they came into the north-east trade wind, and on Friday the 30th saw Bona Vista, one of the Cape de Verd Islands; they ranged the east side of it, at the distance of three or four miles from the shore, till they were obliged to haul off to avoid a ledge of rocks which stretch out S. W. by W. from the body, or S. E. point of the island, to the extent of a league and a half.

During their course from Teneriffe to Bona Vista they saw great numbers of flying fish, which from the cabin windows appear beautiful beyond imagination, their sides having the colour and brightness of burnished silver; when they are seen from the deck they do not appear to so much advantage, because their backs are

are of a dark colour. They also took a shark, which proved to be the *Squalus Charcharias* of Linnæus. On the seventh, Mr Banks went out in the boat and took what the seamen call a Portuguese man of war; it is the *Holothuria Physalis* of Linnæus, and a species of the *Mollusca*. They also took several of the shell-fishes, or testaceous animals, which are always found floating upon the water, particularly the *Helix Jantbina* and *Violacea*.

On the tenth, Mr Banks shot the black-toed gull, not yet described according to Linnæus's system; he gave it the name of *Larus crepidatus*. On the 25th, they crossed the line with the usual ceremonies.

In the evening of the 29th, they observed that luminous appearance of the sea which has been so often mentioned by navigators, and of which such various causes have been assigned; some supposing it to be occasioned by fish, which agitated the water by darting at their prey, some by the putrefaction of fish and other marine animals, some by electricity, and others referring it into a great variety of different causes. It appeared to emit flashes of light exactly resembling those of lightning, only not so considerable, but they were so frequent that sometimes eight or ten were visible almost at the same moment. They were of opinion that they proceeded from some luminous animal, and upon throwing out a casting net their opinion was confirmed: it brought up a species of the *Medusa*, which when it came on board had the appearance of metal violently heated, and emitted a white light: with these animals were taken some very small crabs, of three different species, each of which gave as much light as a glow-worm, though the creature was not so large by nine-tenths: upon examination of these animals, Mr Banks had the satisfaction to find that they were all entirely new.

As several articles of the stock and provisions now began to fall short, Captain Cook determined to put into Rio de Janeiro, rather than at any port in Brazil or Falk-

Falkland's Islands, knowing that it could better supply them with what was wanted, and making no doubt but that they should be well received.

On the 8th of November, at day-break, they saw the coast of Brazil, and about ten o'clock they brought to, and spoke with a fishing-boat; the people on board said that the land which they saw, lay to the southward of *Sancto Espirito*, but belonged to the captainship of that place. Mr Banks and Dr Solander went on board this vessel, in which they found eleven men, nine of whom were Blacks; they all fished with lines, and their fresh cargo, the chief part of which Mr Banks bought, consisted of dolphins, large pelagic scombers of two kinds, sea bream, and some of the fish which in the West Indies are called Welshmen. Mr Banks had taken Spanish silver with him, which he imagined to be the currency of the continent, but to his great surprize the people asked him for English shillings; he gave them two which he happened to have about him, and it was not without some dispute that they took the rest of the money in pistereens. Their business seemed to be to catch large fish at a good distance from the shore, which they salted in bulk, in a place made for that purpose in the middle of their boat: of this merchandize they had about two quintals on board, which they offered for about sixteen shillings, and would probably have sold for half the money. The fresh fish, which was bought for about nineteen shillings and sixpence, served the whole ship's company; the salt was not wanted.

The sea provision of these fishermen consisted of nothing more than a cask of water, and a bag of Cassada flour, which they called *Farinha de Pao*, or wooden flour, which indeed is a name which very well suits its taste and appearance. Their water cask was large, as wide as their boat, and exactly fitted a place that was made for it in the ballast; it was impossible therefore to draw out any of its contents by a tap, the sides being, from the bottom to the top, wholly inaccessible; neither could any be taken out by dipping a vessel in at the head,

head, for an open sufficiently wide for that purpose would have endangered the loss of great part of it by the rolling of the vessel: their expedient to get at their water, so situated, was curious; when one of them wanted to drink, he applied to his neighbour, who accompanied him to the water cask with a hollow cane about three feet long, which was open at both ends; this he thrust into the cask through a small hole in the top, and then, stopping the upper end with the palm of his hand, drew it out; the pressure of the air against the other end keeping in the water which it contained; to this end the person who wanted to drink applied his mouth, and the assistant then taking his hand from the other, and admitting the air above, the cane immediately parted with its contents, which the drinker drew off till he was satisfied.

They stood off and on along the shore till the 12th, and successively saw a remarkable hill near Santo Espirito, then Cape St Thomas, and then an island just without Cape Frio, which in some maps is called the island of Trio, and which being high, with a hollow in the middle, has the appearance of two islands when seen at a distance. On this day they stood along the shore for Rio de Janeiro, and at nine the next morning made sail for the harbour. Captain Cook then sent Mr Hicks, his first Lieutenant; before in the pinnace, up to the city, to acquaint the Governor, that they put in there to procure water and refreshments; and to desire the assistance of a pilot to bring them into proper anchoring ground. Captain Cook continued to stand up the river, trusting to Mr Bellisle's draught, published in the *Petit Atlas maritime*, Vol. II. N^o 54, which they found very good, till five o'clock in the evening, expecting the return of his Lieutenant; and just as the Captain was about to anchor, above the island of Cobras, which lies before the city, the pinnace came back without him, having on board a Portuguese officer, but no pilot. The people in the boat told Captain Cook that his Lieutenant was detained by the Viceroy till he

he came on shore. Soon after a ten-oared boat filled with soldiers came up, and rowed round the ship, without any conversation taking place. A second boat came up, with several of the Viceroy's officers; they enquired whence the Endeavour came; what she had on board; her number of men, guns, and destination. These and many other questions were answered without equivocation; when they apologized for detaining the Lieutenant, and other steps they had taken, pleading custom.

Captain Cook went on shore on the 14th, and obtained leave to purchase what he wanted, on condition of employing an inhabitant as a factor. To this he objected, but in vain, as well as to sending the soldier in the boat back and forward to the ship. They also refused to permit Mr Banks and Dr Solander to go up the country to examine the plants, or indeed to leave the ship. Captain Cook judging the Viceroy imagined they were come to trade, he endeavoured to convince him of his mistake, by acquainting him, that they were bound to the southward, to observe the transit of Venus; a very interesting object to the advancement of navigation, of which phenomenon he appeared to be totally ignorant.

The Viceroy having ordered, that only the Captain, and such sailors as were necessary to be upon duty, should be suffered to land; they, notwithstanding, attempted to come on shore, but were prevented by the guard-boat; though several of the crew, unknown to the sentinel, stole out of the cabin window at midnight, letting themselves down by a rope into the boat, and driving away by the tide till they were out of hearing; then rowed to some unfrequented part of the shore, and made excursions up the country, though not so far as they wished. When the Captain complained of these restrictions, the only answer he obtained was, that he acted in consequence of his Master's orders. It was now agreed to present two memorials to the Viceroy: one was written by the Captain, the other by Mr Banks: their

their answers were no way satisfactory. The Captain judging it necessary, in vindication of his compliance, to urge the Viceroy to an act of force in the execution of his orders, sent Lieutenant Hicks with a packet, with directions not to allow a guard in his boat. The officer of the guard-boat did not oppose him by force, but accompanying the Lieutenant on shore, went to the Viceroy, and acquainted him with what had passed, which induced his Excellency to refuse opening the packet, commanding the Lieutenant to return. He found a soldier as a guard had been put on board the boat in his absence, and insisted upon the soldier's quitting it. The officer now seized the boat's crew, and conducted them to prison, under a guard; and the Lieutenant was sent back to the ship guarded likewise. When Mr Hicks had acquainted the Captain with these transactions on shore, the latter wrote to the Viceroy, demanding his boat and men, and inclosed that very memorial, which he refused to receive from the Lieutenant.

This express was sent by a petty officer, and the Viceroy promised to return an answer. In the interim, in a sudden gust of wind, the long-boat, with four pipes of rum (by the rope breaking that was thrown her from the ship) went adrift to windward of her, with a small skiff of Mr Banks's that was fastened to her. The misfortune was still greater, as the pinnace was on shore. The yawl was manned immediately, but did not return till next morning, when she brought all the people on board. From them Captain Cook learnt that the long-boat having filled with water, they had brought her to a grappling, and quitted her; and falling in with a reef of rocks on their return, they were compelled to cut adrift the little boat belonging to Mr Banks. In this situation the Captain dispatched another letter to the Viceroy, acquainting him with the accident, at the same time desiring he would assist them with a boat to recover their own: this was accompanied with a fresh demand of the pinnace and her crew. His Excellency at length complied

plied with both the request and demand ; and the same day they fortunately recovered the long-boat and skiff.

A friar in the town having requested the assistance of their surgeon, Dr Solander easily got admittance in that character on the 25th, and received many marks of civility from the people. On the 26th, before day-break, Mr Banks also found means to elude the vigilance of the people in the guard-boat, and got on shore ; he did not however go into the town, for the principal objects of his curiosity were to be found in the fields : to him also the people behaved with great civility, many of them invited him to their houses, and he bought a porker and some other things of them for the ship's company ; the porker, which was by no means lean, cost him eleven shillings, and he paid something less than two for a Muscovy duck.

On 1st of December, having got their water and other necessaries on board, Captain Cook sent to the Viceroy for a pilot to carry them to sea, who came off to them ; but the wind preventing them from getting out, they took on board a plentiful supply of fresh beef, yams, and greens, for the ship's company. On the 2d, a Spanish packet arrived, with letters from Buenos Ayres for Spain, commanded by Don Antonio de Monte Negro y Velasco, who with great politeness offered to take their letters to Europe : Captain Cook accepted the favour, and gave him a packet for the Secretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had passed between him and the Viceroy ; leaving also duplicates with the Viceroy, to be by him forwarded to Lisbon.

They did not get under sail till the 7th ; and, when they had passed the fort, the pilot desired to be discharged. As soon as he was dismissed, they were left by their guard-boat, which had hovered about them from the first hour of their being in this place to the last ; and Mr Banks, having been prevented from going ashore at Rio de Janeiro, availed himself of her departure to examine the neighbouring islands, where, parti-

cularly on one in the mouth of the harbour called Ra-za, he gathered many species of plants, and caught a variety of insects.

It is remarkable, that, during the last three or four days of their staying in this harbour, the air was loaded with butterflies: they were chiefly of one sort, but in such numbers that thousands were in view in every direction, and the greatest part of them above the mast-head.

They lay here from the 14th of November to the 7th of December, something more than three weeks, during which time Mr Monkhouse, the Surgeon, was on shore every day to buy provisions; Dr Solander was on shore once; Captain Cook was several times on shore himself, and Mr Banks also found means to get into the country, notwithstanding the watch that was set over them.

Rio de Janeiro, or the river of Januarius, was probably so called from its having been discovered on the feast-day of that saint; and the town, which is the capital of the Portuguese dominions in America, derives its name from the river, which indeed is rather an arm of the sea, for it did not appear to receive any considerable stream of fresh water: it stands on a plain, close to the shore, on the west side of the bay, at the foot of several high mountains which rise behind it. It is neither ill designed nor ill built; the houses, in general, are of stone, and two stories high; every house having, after the manner of the Portuguese, a little balcony before its windows, and a lattice of wood before the balcony. Its circuit is computed to be about three miles; for it appears to be equal in size to the largest country towns in England, Bristol and Liverpool not accepted; the streets are straight, and of a convenient breadth, intersecting each other at right angles; the greater part, however, lie in a line with the citadel, called St Sebastian, which stands on the top of a hill that commands the town.

It is supplied with water from the neighbouring hills,
by

by an aqueduct, which is raised upon two stories of arches, and is said in some places to be at a great height from the ground, from which the water is conveyed by pipes into a fountain in the great square that exactly fronts the Viceroy's palace. At this fountain great numbers of people are continually waiting for their turn to draw water; and the soldiers, who are posted at the Governor's door, find it very difficult to maintain any regularity among them. The water at this fountain however is so bad, that they, who had been two months at sea, confined to that in their casks, which was almost always foul, could not drink it with pleasure. Water of a better quality is laid into some other part of the town, but they could not learn by what means.

The churches are very fine, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the Popish countries in Europe: there is a procession of some parish every day, with various insignia, all splendid and costly in the highest degree: they beg money, and say prayers in great form, at the corner of every street.

While they lay here, one of the churches was rebuilding; and to defray the expence, the parish to which it belonged had leave to beg in procession through the whole city once a week, by which very considerable sums were collected. At this ceremony, which was performed by night, all the boys of a certain age were obliged to assist, the sons of gentlemen not being excused. Each of these boys was dressed in a black cassock, with a short red cloak, hanging about as low as the waist, and carried in his hand a pole about six or seven feet long, at the end of which was tied a lantern: the number of lanterns was generally above two hundred, and the light they gave was so great, that the people who saw it from the cabin windows thought the town had been on fire.

The inhabitants, however, may pay their devotions at the shrine of any saint in the calendar, without waiting till there is a procession; for before almost every house there is a little cupboard, furnished with a glass window, in which one of these tutelary powers is waiting to be
gracious;

gracious ; and to prevent his being out of mind, by being out of sight, a lamp is kept constantly burning before the window of his tabernacle in the night. The people indeed are by no means remiss in their devotions, for before these saints they pray and sing hymns with such vehemence, that in the night they were very distinctly heard on board the ship, though she lay at the distance of at least half a mile from the town.

The government here, as to its form, is mixed ; it is notwithstanding very despotic in fact. It consists of the Viceroy, the Governor of the town, and a council, the number of which Captain Cook could not learn : without the consent of this council, in which the Viceroy has a casting vote, no judicial act should be performed ; yet both the Viceroy and Governor frequently commit persons to prison at their own pleasure, and sometimes send them to Lisbon, without acquainting their friends or family with what is laid to their charge, or where they may be found.

To restrain the people from travelling into the country, and getting into any district where gold or diamonds may be found, of both which there is more than the government can otherwise secure, certain bounds are prescribed them, at the discretion of the Viceroy, sometimes at a few, and sometimes at many miles distance from the city. On the verge of these limits a guard constantly patrols, and whoever is found beyond it, is immediately seized and thrown into prison : and if a man is, upon any pretence, taken up by the guard without the limits, he will be sent to prison, though it should appear that he did not know their extent.

The inhabitants, which are very numerous, consist of Portuguese, Negroes, and Indians, the original natives of the country. The township of Rio, which is but a small part of the Capitanea, or province, is said to contain 37,000 White persons, and 629,000 Blacks, many of whom are free ; making together 666,000, in the proportion of seventeen to one. The Indians, who

are

are employed to do the King's work in this neighbourhood, can scarcely be considered as inhabitants; their residence is at a distance, from whence they come by turns to their task, which they are obliged to perform for a small pay. The guard-boat was constantly rowed by these people, who are of a light copper colour, and have long black hair.

The military establishment here consists of twelve regiments of regular troops, six of which are Portuguese and six Creoles; and twelve other regiments of provincial militia. To the regulars the inhabitants behave with the utmost humility and submission; and Captain Cook was told, that if any of them should neglect to take off his hat upon meeting an officer, he would immediately be knocked down. These haughty severities render the people extremely civil to any stranger who has the appearance of a gentleman. But the subordination of the officers themselves to the Viceroy is enforced with circumstances equally mortifying, for they are obliged to attend in his hall three times every day to ask his commands: the answer constantly is, "There is nothing new." The Captain was told, that this servile attendance is exacted to prevent their going into the country; and if so, it effectually answers the purpose.

It is universally allowed, that the women, both of the Spanish and Portuguese settlements in South America, make less difficulty of granting personal favours, than those of any other civilized country in the world. Of the Ladies of this town some have formed so unfavourable an opinion as to declare, that they did not believe there was a modest one among them. This censure is certainly too general; but what Dr Solander saw of them when he was on shore, gave him no very exalted idea of their chastity: he told Captain Cook, that as soon as it was dark, one or more of them appeared in every window, and distinguished those whom they liked, among the gentlemen that walked past them, by giving them nosegays: that he, and two gentlemen who were with

with him, received so many of these favours, that, at the end of their walk, which was not a long one, they threw whole handfuls of them away. Great allowance must certainly be made for local customs; that which in one country would be an indecent familiarity, is a mere act of general courtesy in another.

The climate of Rio de Janeiro is both agreeable and healthy, being free from many inconveniences that are incident to other tropical countries. The air is but seldom immoderately hot, as the sea breeze constantly begins to blow about ten o'clock in the morning, and continues until night, when it is generally succeeded by a land wind. The soil produces all the tropical fruits, such as oranges, lemons, limes, melons, mangoes, coconuts, &c. in great abundance.

The mines are rich, and lie a considerable way up the country; they are kept so private, that any person (except those who work them) found upon the road which leads to them, is hung upon the next tree, unless he can give a satisfactory account of the cause of his being in that situation. Near forty thousand negroes are annually imported to dig in the mines; these works are so pernicious to the human frame, and occasion so great a mortality amongst the poor wretches employed in them, that in the year 1766 twenty thousand more were drafted from the town of Rio, to supply the deficiency of the former number.

There are several courts of justice in the town, at all of which the Viceroy presides; in criminal causes the sentence is regulated by a majority of voices in the supreme court. The current coin is Portuguese, which is struck here; the silver pieces are called Petacks, of different value; and the copper are five and ten ree pieces.

The harbour of Rio de Janeiro is situated W. by N. 18 leagues from Cape Trio, and may be known by a remarkable hill, in the form of a sugar-loaf, at the west point of the bay. The river, and indeed the whole coast, abounds with a greater variety of fish than they had ever seen; a day seldom passed in which one or more

of a new species were not brought to Mr Banks: the bay also is as well adapted for catching these fish as can be conceived; for it is full of small islands, between which there is shallow water, and proper beaches for drawing the seine. The sea, without the bay, abounds with dolphins, and large mackarel of different kinds, which readily bite at a hook, and the inhabitants always tow one after their boats for that purpose.

Ships water here at the fountain in the great square, though, the water is not good; they land their casks upon a smooth sandy beach, which is not more than a hundred yards distant from the fountain, and upon application to the Viceroy, a centinel will be appointed to look after them, and clear the way to the fountain where they are to be filled.

Upon the whole, Rio de Janeiro is a very good place for ships to put in at that want refreshment: the harbour is safe and commodious; and provisions, except wheaten bread and flour, may be easily procured: as a succedaneum for bread, there are yams and cassada in plenty; beef, both fresh and jerked, may be bought at about two-pence farthing a pound; though, it is very lean. The people here jerk their beef by taking out the bones, cutting it into large but thin slices, then curing it with salt, and drying it in the shade: it eats very well, and, if kept dry, will remain good a long time at sea. Mutton is scarcely to be procured, and hogs and poultry are dear; of garden-stuff and fruit there is abundance, of which, however, none can be preserved at sea but the pumpkin; rum, sugar, and molasses, all excellent in their kind, may be had at a reasonable price; tobacco also is cheap, but it is not good. Here is a yard for building shipping, and a small hulk to heave down by; for, as the tide never rises above six or seven feet, there is no other way of coming at a ship's bottom.

When the boat which had been sent on shore returned, they hoisted her on board, and stood out to sea.

On the 9th of December, they observed the sea to be

covered with broad streaks of a yellowish colour, several of them a mile long, and three or four hundred yards wide: some of the water thus coloured was taken up, and found to be full of innumerable atoms pointed at the end, of a yellowish colour, and none more than a quarter of a line, or the fortieth part of an inch long: in the microscope they appeared to be *Fasciculi* of small fibres interwoven with each other, not unlike the nidus of some of the *Phyganeas*, called Caddices; but whether they were animal or vegetable substances, whence they came, or for what they were designed, neither Mr Banks nor Dr Solander could guess.

On the 11th they hooked a shark, and while they were playing it under the cabin window, it threw out, and drew in again several times what appeared to be its stomach: it proved to be a female, and upon being opened six young ones were taken out of it; five of them were alive and swam briskly in a tub of water, but the sixth appeared to have been dead some time.

Nothing remarkable happened till the 30th, except that they prepared for the bad weather, which they were shortly to expect, by bending a new suit of sails; but on this day they ran a course of one hundred and sixty miles by the log, through innumerable land insects of various kinds, some upon the wing, and more upon the water, many of which were alive; they appeared to be exactly the same with the *Carabi*, the *Grylli*, the *Phalana*, *Aranea*, and other flies that are seen in England, though at this time they could not be less than thirty leagues from land; and some of these insects, particularly the *Grylli* and *Aranea*, never voluntarily leave it at a greater distance than twenty yards.

On the third of January, 1769, being in latitude 47 d. 17 m. S. and longitude 61 d. 29 m. 45 f. W. they were all looking out for Pepys' island, and for some time an appearance was seen in the east which so much resembled land, that they bore away for it; and it was more than two hours and a half before they were convinced that it was nothing but what sailors call a Fog-bank.

bank.—The people now beginning to complain of cold, each of them received what is called a Magellanic jacket, and a pair of trowsers. The jacket is made of a thick woollen-stuff, called *Fearnought*, which is provided by the government. They saw, from time to time, a great number of penguins, albatrosses, and sheer waters, seals, whales, and porpoises: and on the 11th, having passed Falkland's islands, they discovered the coast of Terra del Fuego, at the distance of about four leagues, extending from the W. to S. E. by S. They had here five and thirty fathom, the ground soft, small slate stones. As they ranged the shore to the S. E. at the distance of two or three leagues, they perceived smoke in several places, which was made by the natives, probably as a signal, for they did not continue it after they had passed by.

Having continued to range the coast, on the 14th they entered the Strait of Le Maire; but the tide turning against them, drove them out with great violence, and raised such a sea off Cape St Diego, that the waves had exactly the same appearance as they would have had if they had broke over a ledge of rocks; and when the ship was in this torrent, she frequently pitched, so that the bowsprit was under water. About noon, they got under the land between Cape St Diego and Cape St Vincent, where Captain Cook intended to have anchored; but finding the ground every where hard and rocky, and shallowing from thirty to twelve fathoms, he sent the master to examine a little cove which lay at a small distance to the eastward of Cape St Vincent. When he returned, he reported, that there was anchorage in four fathom, and a good bottom, close to the eastward of the first bluff point, on the east of Cape St Vincent, at the very entrance of the cove, to which Capt. Cook gave the name of VINCENT'S Bay: before this anchoring ground, however, lay several rocky ledges, that were covered with sea-weed; but the Captain was told that there was not less than eight and nine fathom over all of them. It will probably be thought strange, that

that where weeds, which grow at the bottom, appear above the surface there should be this depth of water; but the weeds which grow upon rocky ground in these countries, and which always distinguish it from sand and ooze, are of an enormous size. The leaves are four feet long, and some of the stalks, though not thicker than a man's thumb, above one hundred and twenty: Mr Banks and Dr Solander examined some of them, over which they sounded and had fourteen fathom, which is eighty-four feet; and, as they made a very acute angle with the bottom, they were thought to be at least one half longer: the foot stalks were swelled into an air vessel, and Mr Banks and Dr Solander called this plant *Fucus giganteus*. Upon the report of the Master, Captain Cook stood in with the ship; but not trusting implicitly to his intelligence, he continued to sound, and found but four fathom upon the first ledge that they went over; concluding, therefore, that they could not anchor here without risk, the Captain determined to seek some port in the Straight, where he might get on board such wood and water as they wanted.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander, however, being very desirous to go on shore, Captain Cook sent a boat with them and their people, while he kept plying as near as possible with the ship. Having been on shore four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with above an hundred different plants and flowers, all of them wholly unknown to the botanists of Europe. They found the country about the bay to be in general flat, the bottom of it in particular was a plain, covered with grass, which might easily have been made into a large quantity of hay; they found also abundance of good wood and water, and fowl in great plenty. The persons who landed saw none of the inhabitants, but fell in with two of their deserted huts, one in a thick wood, and the other close by the beach.

Having taken the boat on board, they made sail into the Straight, and at three in the morning of the 15th, anchored in twelve fathom and a half, upon coral rocks, before

before a small cove, which they took for Port Maurice, at the distance of about half a mile from the shore. Two of the natives came down to the beach, expecting them to land; but this spot afforded so little shelter, that Captain Cook at length determined not to examine it: he therefore got under sail again about ten o'clock, and the savages retired into the woods.

At two o'clock, they anchored in the bay of Good Success; and after dinner Captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, to look for a watering-place, and speak to the Indians, several of whom had come in sight. They landed on the star-board side of the bay near some rocks, which made smooth water and good landing; thirty or forty of the Indians soon made their appearance at the end of a sandy beach on the other side of the bay, but seeing their number, which was ten or twelve, they retreated. Mr Banks and Dr Solander then advanced about one hundred yards before them, upon which two of the Indians returned, and, having advanced some paces towards them, sat down; as soon as they came up, the Indians rose, and each of them having a small stick in his hand, threw it away, in a direction both from themselves and the strangers, which was considered as the renunciation of weapons in token of peace: they then walked briskly towards their companions, who had halted at about fifty yards behind them, and beckoned the gentlemen to follow, which they did. They were received with many uncouth signs of friendship; and, in return, they distributed among them some beads and ribbons, which had been brought on shore for that purpose, and with which they were greatly delighted. A mutual confidence and good-will being thus produced, the parties joined; the conversation, such as it was, became general; and three of them accompanied them back to the ship. When they came on board, one of them, whom they took to be a priest, performed much the same ceremonies which M. Bougainville describes, and supposes to be an exorcism. When he was introduced into a new part

part of the ship, or when any thing that he had not seen before caught his attention, he shouted with all his force for some minutes, without directing his voice either to them or his companions.

They eat some bread and some beef, but not apparently with much pleasure, though such part of what was given them as they did not eat they took away with them; but they would not swallow a drop either of wine or spirits: they put the glass to their lips, but, having tasted the liquor, they returned it, with strong expressions of disgust. Curiosity seems to be one of the few passions which distinguish men from brutes; and of this their guests appeared to have very little. They went from one part of the ship to another, and looked at the vast variety of new objects that every moment presented themselves, without any expression either of wonder or pleasure, for the vociferation of the exorcist seemed to be neither.

After having been on board about two hours, they expressed a desire to go ashore. A boat was immediately ordered, and Mr Banks thought fit to accompany them: he landed them in safety, and conducted them to their companions, among whom he remarked the same vacant indifference, as in those who had been on board; for as on one side there appeared no eagerness to relate, so on the other there seemed to be no curiosity to hear how they had been received, or what they had seen. In about half an hour, Mr Banks returned to the ship, and the Indians retired from the shore.

On the 16th, early in the morning, Mr Banks and Dr Solander, with their attendants and servants, and two seamen to assist in carrying the baggage, accompanied by Mr Monkhouse the Surgeon, and Mr Green the Astronomer, set out from the ship, with a view to penetrate as far as they could into the country, and return at night. The hills, when viewed at a distance, seemed to be partly wood, partly a plain, and above them a bare rock. Mr Banks hoped to get through the wood, and made no doubt, but that, beyond it, he should, in a country

country which no botanist had ever yet visited, find alpine plants which would abundantly compensate his labour. They entered the wood at a small sandy beach, a little to the westward of the watering-place, and continued to ascend the hill, through the pathless wilderness, till three o'clock, before they got a near view of the places which they intended to visit. Soon after they reached what they had taken for a plain; but, to their great disappointment, found it a swamp, covered with low bushes of birch, about three feet high, interwoven with each other, and so stubborn that they could not be bent out of the way; it was therefore necessary to lift the leg over them, which at every step was buried, ankle deep, in the soil. To aggravate the pain and difficulty of such travelling, the weather, which hitherto had been very fine, much like one of our bright days in May, became gloomy and cold; with sudden blasts of a most piercing wind, accompanied with snow. They pushed forward, however, in good spirits, notwithstanding their fatigue, hoping the worst of the way was past, and that the bare rock which they had seen from the tops of the lower hills was not more than a mile before them; but when they had got about two thirds over this woody swamp, Mr Buchan, one of Mr Banks's draughtmen, was unhappily seized with a fit. This made it necessary for the whole company to halt, and as it was impossible that he should go any farther, a fire was kindled, and those who were most fatigued were left behind to take care of him. Mr Banks, Dr Solander, Mr Green, and Mr Monkhouse went on, and in a short time reached the summit. As botanists, their expectations were here abundantly gratified; for they found a great variety of plants, which, with respect to the alpine plants in Europe, are exactly what those plants are with respect to such as grow in the plain.

The cold was now become more severe, and the snow-blasts more frequent; the day also was so far spent, that it was found impossible to get back to the ship before the next morning: to pass the night upon such a mountain,

mountain, in such a climate, was not only comfortless, but dreadful; it was impossible however to be avoided, and they were to provide for it as well as they could.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander, while they were improving an opportunity which they had, with so much danger and difficulty, procured, by gathering the plants which they found upon the mountain, sent Mr Green and Mr Monkhouse back to Mr Buchan and the people that were with him, with directions to bring them to a hill, which they thought lay in a better rout for returning to the wood, and which was therefore appointed as a general rendezvous. It was proposed, that from this hill they should push through the swamp, which seemed by the new rout not to be more than half a mile over, into the shelter of the wood, and there build their wigwam, and make a fire: this, as their way was all down hill, it seemed easy to accomplish. Their whole company assembled at the rendezvous, and, though pinched with the cold, were in health and spirits, Mr Buchan himself having recovered his strength in a much greater degree than could have been expected. It was now near eight o'clock in the evening, but still good day-light, and they set forward for the nearest valley, Mr Banks himself undertaking to bring up the rear, and see that no straggler was left behind: this may perhaps be thought a superfluous caution, but it will soon appear to be otherwise. Dr Solander, who had more than once crossed the mountains which divide Sweden from Norway, well knew that extreme cold, especially when joined with fatigue, produces a torpor and sleepiness that are almost irresistible: he therefore conjured the company to keep moving, whatever pain it might cost them, and whatever relief they might be promised by an inclination to rest: "Whoever sits down," says he, "will sleep; and whoever sleeps, will wake no more." Thus, at once admonished and alarmed, they set forward; but while they were still upon the naked rock, and before they had got among the bushes, the cold became suddenly so intense, as to produce the effects

fects that had been most dreaded. Dr Solander himself was the first who found the inclination, against which he had warned others, irresistible; and insisted upon being suffered to lie down. Mr Banks intreated and remonstrated in vain, down he lay upon the ground, though it was covered with snow; and it was with great difficulty that his friend kept him from sleeping. Richmond also, one of the black servants, began to linger, having suffered from the cold in the same manner as the Doctor. Mr Banks, therefore, sent five of the company, among whom was Mr Buchan, forward to get a fire ready at the first convenient place they could find; and himself, with four others, remained with the Doctor and Richmond, whom partly by persuasion and entreaty, and partly by force, they brought on; but when they had got through the greatest part of the birch and swamp, they both declared they could go no farther. Mr Banks had recourse again to entreaty and expostulation, but they produced no effect: when Richmond was told, that if he did not go on he would in a short time be frozen to death; he answered, That he desired nothing but to lie down and die: the Doctor did not so explicitly renounce his life; he said he was willing to go on, but that he must first take some sleep, though he had before told the company that to sleep was to perish. Mr Banks and the rest found it impossible to carry them, and there being no remedy they were both suffered to sit down, being partly supported by the bushes, and in a few minutes they fell into a profound sleep: soon after, some of the people who had been sent forward returned, with the welcome news that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr Banks then endeavoured to wake Dr Solander, and happily succeeded: but, though he had not slept five minutes, he had almost lost the use of his limbs, and the muscles were so shrunk that his shoes fell from his feet; he consented to go forward with such assistance as could be given him, but no attempts to relieve poor Richmond were successful. It

H

being

being found impossible to make him stir, after some time had been lost in the attempt, Mr Banks left his other black servant and a seaman, who seemed to have suffered least by the cold, to look after him; promising, that as soon as two others should be sufficiently warmed, they should be relieved. Mr Banks, with much difficulty, at length got the Doctor to the fire; and soon after sent two of the people who had been refreshed, in hopes that, with the assistance of those who had been left behind, they would be able to bring Richmond, even though it should still be found impossible to wake him. In about half an hour, however, they had the mortification to see these two men return alone; they said, that they had been all round the place to which they had been directed, but could neither find Richmond nor those who had been left with him; and that though they had shouted many times, no voice had replied. This was matter of equal surprize and concern, particularly to Mr Banks, who, while he was wondering how it could happen, missed a bottle of rum, the company's whole stock, which they now concluded to be in the knapsack of one of the absentees. It was conjectured, that with this Richmond had been roused by the two persons who had been left with him, and that, having perhaps drank too freely of it themselves, they had all rambled from the place where they had been left, in search of the fire, instead of waiting for those who should have been their assistants and guides. Another fall of snow now came on, and continued incessantly for two hours, so that all hopes of seeing them again, at least alive, were given up; but about twelve o'clock, to the great joy of those at the fire, a shouting was heard at some distance. Mr Banks, with four more, immediately went out, and found the seaman with just strength enough left to stagger along, and call out for assistance: Mr Banks sent him immediately to the fire, and, by his direction, proceeded in search of the other two, whom he soon after found. Richmond was upon his legs, but not able to put one before the other; his

com-

companion was lying upon the ground, as insensible as a stone. All hands were now called from the fire, and an attempt was made to carry them to it; but this, notwithstanding the united efforts of the whole company, was found to be impossible. The night was extremely dark, the snow was now very deep, and, under these additional disadvantages, they found it very difficult to make way through the bushes and the bog for themselves, all of them getting many falls in the attempt. The only alternative was to make a fire upon the spot; but the snow which had fallen, and was still falling, besides what was every moment shaken in flakes from the trees, rendered it equally impracticable, to kindle one there, and to bring any part of that which had been kindled in the wood thither: they were, therefore, reduced to the sad necessity of leaving the unhappy wretches to their fate; having first made them a bed of boughs from the trees, and spread a covering of the same kind over them to a considerable height.

Having now been exposed to the cold and the snow near an hour and an half, some of the rest began to lose their sensibility; and one Briscoe, another of Mr Banks's servants, was so ill, that it was thought he must die before he could be got to the fire.

At the fire, however, at length they arrived; and passed the night in a situation, which, however dreadful in itself, was rendered more afflicting by the remembrance of what was past, and the uncertainty of what was to come. Of twelve, the number that set out together in health and spirits, two were supposed to be already dead; a third was so ill, that it was very doubtful whether he would be able to go forward in the morning; a fourth, Mr Buchan, was in danger of a return of his fits, by fresh fatigue after so uncomfortable a night: they were distant from the ship a long day's journey, through pathless woods, in which it was too probable they might be bewildered till they were overtaken by the next night; and, not having prepared for a journey of more than eight or ten hours, they were wholly destitute of

provisions, except a vulture, which they happened to shoot while they were out, and which, if equally divided, would not afford each of them half a meal; and they knew not how much more they might suffer from the cold, as the snow still continued to fall. A dreadful testimony of the severity of the climate, as it was now the midst of summer in this part of the world, the 21st of December being here the longest day; and every thing might justly be dreaded from a phenomenon which, in the corresponding season, is unknown even in Norway and Lapland.

When the morning dawned, they saw nothing round them, as far as the eye could reach, but snow, which seemed to lie as thick upon the trees as upon the ground; and the blasts returned so frequently, and with such violence, that they found it impossible for them to set out: how long this might last they knew not, and they had but too much reason to apprehend that it would confine them in that desolate forest till they perished with hunger and cold.

After having suffered the misery and terror of this situation till six o'clock in the morning, they conceived some hope of deliverance by discovering the place of the sun through the clouds, which were become thinner, and began to break away. Their first care was to see whether the poor wretches whom they had been obliged to leave among the bushes were yet alive; three of the company were dispatched for that purpose, and very soon afterwards returned with the melancholy news, that they were dead.

Notwithstanding the flattering appearance of the sky, the snow still continued to fall so thick that they could not venture out upon their journey to the ship; but about 8 o'clock a small regular breeze sprung up, which, with the prevailing influence of the sun, at length cleared the air; and they soon after, with great joy, saw the snow fall in large flakes from the trees, a certain sign of an approaching thaw: they now examined more critically the state of their invalids; Briscoe was still very

ill,

ill; but said, that he thought himself able to walk; and Mr Buchar was much better than either he or his friends had any reason to expect. They were now, however, pressed by the calls of hunger, to which, after long fasting, every consideration of future good or evil immediately gives way. Before they set forward, therefore, it was unanimously agreed, that they should eat their vulture; the bird was accordingly skinned, and, it being thought best to divide it before it was fit to be eaten, it was cut into ten portions, and every man cooked his own as he thought fit. After this repast, which furnished each of them with about three mouthfuls, they prepared to set out; but it was ten o'clock before the snow was sufficiently gone off to render a march practicable. After a walk of about three hours, they were very agreeably surpris'd to find themselves upon the beach, and much nearer to the ship than they had any reason to expect. Upon reviewing their tract from the vessel, they perceived, that, instead of ascending the hill in a line, so as to penetrate into the country, they had made almost a circle round it. When they came on board, they congratulated each other upon their safety, with a joy that no man can feel who has not been exposed to equal danger; and as Captain Cook had suffered great anxiety at their not returning in the evening of the day on which they set out, he was not wholly without his share.

On the 18th and 19th, they were delayed in getting on board their wood and water by a swell: but on the 20th, the weather being more moderate, they again sent the boat on shore, and Mr Banks and Dr Solander went in it. They landed in the bottom of the bay, and while the people in the ship were employed in cutting brooms, they pursued their great object, the improvement of natural knowledge, with success, collecting many shells and plants which hitherto have been altogether unknown: they came on board to dinner, and afterwards went again on shore to visit an Indian town, which some of the people had reported to lie about two miles

miles up the country. They found the distance not more than by the account, and they approached it by what appeared to be the common road, yet they were above an hour in getting thither, for they were frequently up to the knees in mud; when they got within a small distance, two of the people came out to meet them, with such state as they could assume; when they joined them, they began to hollow as they had done on board the ship, without addressing themselves either to the strangers or their companions: and having continued this strange vociferation some time, they conducted them to the town. It was situated on a dry knoll, or small hill, covered with wood, none of which seemed to have been cleared away, and consisted of about twelve or fourteen hovels, of the most rude and inartificial structure that can be imagined. They were nothing more than a few poles set up so as to incline towards each other, and meet at the top, forming a kind of a cone, like some of our bee-hives: on the weather side they were covered with a few boughs, and a little grass; and on the lee side about one eighth of the circle was left open, both for a door and a fire place; and of this kind were the huts that had been seen in St. Vincent's bay, in one of which the embers of a fire were still remaining. Furniture they had none; a little grass, which lay round the inside of the-hovel, served both for chairs and beds; and of all the utensils which necessity and ingenuity have concurred to produce among other savage nations, they saw only a basket to carry in the hand, a satchel to hang at the back, and the bladder of some beast to hold water, which the natives drink through a hole that is made near the top for that purpose.

The inhabitants of this town were a small tribe, not more than fifty in number, of both sexes and of every age. Their colour resembles that of the rust of iron mixed with oil, and they have long black hair: the men are large, but clumsily built; their stature is from
five

five feet eight to five feet ten; the women are much less, few of them being more than five feet high. Their whole apparel consists of the skin of a guanicoe, or seal, which is thrown over their shoulders, exactly in the state in which it came from the animal's back; a piece of the same skin, which is drawn over their feet, and gathered about the ancles like a purse, and a small flap, which is worn by the women as a succedaneum for a fig-leaf. The men wear their cloak open, the women tie it about their waist with a thong. But although they are content to be naked, they are very ambitious to be fine. Their faces were painted in various forms: the region of the eye was in general white, and the rest of the face adorned with horizontal streaks of red and black; yet scarcely any two were exactly alike. This decoration seems to be more profuse and elaborate upon particular occasions, for the two gentlemen who introduced Mr Banks and the Doctor into the town, were almost covered with streaks of black in all directions, so as to make a very striking appearance. Both men and women wore bracelets of such beads as they could make themselves of small shells or bones; the women both upon their wrists and ancles, the men upon their wrists only; but to compensate for the want of bracelets on their legs, they wore a kind of fillet of brown worsted round their heads. They seemed to set a particular value upon any thing that was red, and preferred beads even to a knife or a hatchet.

Their language in general is guttural, and they express some of their words by a sound exactly like that which we make to clear the throat when any thing happens to obstruct it; yet they have words which would be deemed soft in the better languages of Europe. Mr Banks learnt what he supposes to be their name for beads and water. When they wanted beads, instead of ribbons or other trifles, they said *hallega*; and when they were taken on shore from the ship, and by signs asked where water might be found, they made the sign

of

GE.
 instance not
 reached it by
 they were
 were fre-
 y got with-
 out to meet
 when they
 had done on
 ves either to
 ng continu-
 y conducted
 y knoll, of
 which seemed
 about twelve
 l inartificial
 ere nothing
 ine towards
 a kind of a
 weather side
 a little grass;
 e circle was
 and of this
 St. Vincent's
 were still re-
 grass, which
 th for chairs
 ecessity and
 ng other fa-
 carry in the
 e bladder of
 atives drink
 or that pur-
 ll tribe, not
 nd of every
 rust of iron
 k hair: the
 ure is from
 five

of drinking, and pointing as well to the casks as the watering-place, cried *Ooda*.

They saw no appearance of their having any food but shell-fish; for though seals were frequently seen near the shore, they seemed to have no implements for taking them. The shell-fish is collected by the women, whose business it seems to be to attend at low water, with a basket in one hand, a stick, pointed and barbed, in the other, and a satchel at their backs: they loosen the limpets, and other fish that adhere to the rocks, with the stick, and put them into the basket; which, when full, they empty into the satchel.

The only things that they found among them in which there was the least appearance of neatness or ingenuity, were their weapons, which consisted of a bow and arrows. The bow was not inelegantly made, and the arrows were the neatest that they had ever seen: they were of wood, polished to the highest degree; and the point, which was of glass or flint, and barbed, was formed and fitted with wonderful dexterity. They saw also some pieces of glass and flint among them unwrought, besides rings, buttons, cloth, and canvass, with other European commodities; they must therefore sometimes travel to the northward, for it is many years since any ship had been so far south as this part of Terra del Fuego. They observed also, that they shewed no surprise at the fire-arms, with the use of which they appeared to be well acquainted; for they made signs to Mr Banks to shoot a seal which followed the boat as they were going on shore from the ship.

M. de Bougainville, who, in January 1768, just one year before Captain Cook had been on shore upon this coast in latitude 53 d. 40 m. 41 s. had, among other things, given glass to the people whom he found here; for he says, that a boy about twelve years old took it into his head to eat some of it: by this unhappy accident he died in great misery; but the endeavours of the good father, the French *Aumonier*, were more successful than those of the Surgeon; for though the Surgeon could
not

not save his life, the charitable Priest found means to steal a christian baptism upon him so secretly, that none of his Pagan relations knew any thing of the matter. These people might probably have some of the very glass which Bougainville left behind him, either from other natives, or perhaps from himself; for they appeared rather to be a travelling hord, than to have any fixed habitation. Their houses are built to stand but for a short time; they have no utensil or furniture but the basket and satchel, which have been mentioned before, and which have handles adapted to the carrying them about, in the hand and upon the back; the only clothing they had here was scarcely sufficient to prevent their perishing with cold in the summer of this country, much less in the extreme severity of winter; the shell-fish, which seems to be their only food, must soon be exhausted at any one place; and they had seen houses upon what appeared to be a deserted station in St Vincent's bay.

It is also probable that the place where they found them was only a temporary residence, from their having here nothing like a boat or canoe, of which it can scarcely be supposed that they were wholly destitute, especially as they were not sea-sick, or particularly affected, either in the boat or on board the ship. They conjectured that there might be a straight or inlet, running from the sea through great part of this island, from the Strait of Magellan, whence these people might come, leaving their canoes where such inlet terminated.

They did not appear to have among them any government or subordination: none was more respected than another; yet they seemed to live together in the utmost harmony and good fellowship. Neither did they discover any appearance of religion among them, except the noises which have been mentioned, and which they supposed to be a superstitious ceremony, merely because they could refer them to nothing else: they were used only by one of those who came on board the ship, and the two who conducted Mr Banks and Dr

Solander to the town, whom they therefore conjectured to be priests. Upon the whole, these people appeared to be the most destitute and forlorn, as well as the most stupid of all human beings; the outcasts of Nature, who spent their lives in wandering about the dreary wastes, where two of Captain Cook's people perished with cold in the midst of summer; with no dwelling but a wretched hovel of sticks and grass, which would not only admit the wind, but the snow and the rain; almost naked; and destitute of every convenience that is furnished by the rudest art, having no implement even to dress their food: yet they were content. They seemed to have no wish for any thing more than they possessed, nor did any thing that they offered them appear acceptable but beads, as an ornamental superfluity of life. What bodily pain they might suffer from the severities of their winter they could not know; but it is certain, that they suffered nothing from the want of the innumerable articles which are considered, not as the luxuries and conveniencies only, but the necessaries of life: as their desires are few, they probably enjoy them all; and how much they may be gainers by an exemption from the care, labour, and sollicitude, which arise from a perpetual and unsuccessful effort to gratify that infinite variety of desires which the refinements of artificial life have produced among us, is not very easy to determine: possibly this may counterbalance all the real disadvantages of their situation in comparison with ours, and make the scales by which good and evil are distributed to man, hang even between us.

In this place they saw no quadruped except seals, sea-lions, and dogs; of the dogs it is remarkable that they bark, which those that are originally bred in America do not. And this is a further proof, that the people they saw here had, either immediately or remotely, communicated with the inhabitants of Europe. There are, however, other quadrupeds in this part of the country; for when Mr Banks was at the top of the highest hill that he ascended in his expedition through the

woods,

woods, he saw the footsteps of a large beast imprinted upon the surface of a bog, though he could not with any probability guess of what kind it might be.

Of land-birds there are but few; Mr Banks saw none larger than an English blackbird, except some hawks and a vulture; but of water-fowl there is great plenty, particularly ducks. Of fish they saw scarce any; and with their hooks could catch none that was fit to eat; but shell-fish, limpets, clams, and muscles were to be found in abundance.

Among the insects, which were not numerous, there was neither gnat nor musquito, nor any other species that was either hurtful or troublesome, which perhaps is more than can be said of any other uncleared country. During the snow-blasts, which happened every day while they were here, they hide themselves; and the moment it is fair they appear again, as nimble and vigorous as the warmest weather could make them.

Of plants, Mr Banks and Dr Solander found a vast variety; the far greater part wholly different from any that have been hitherto described. Besides the birch, and winter's bark, which have been mentioned already, there is the beach, *Fagus antarcticus*, which, as well as the birch, may be used for timber. The plants cannot be enumerated here; but as the scurvy-grass, *Cardamine antiscorbutica* and the wild celery, *Apium antarcticum*, probably contain antiscorbutic qualities, which may be of great benefit to the crews of such ships as shall hereafter touch at this place, the following short description is inserted:

The scurvy-grass will be found in plenty in damp places, near springs of water, and in general in all places that lie near the beach, especially at the watering-place in the Bay of Good Success: when it is young, the state of its greatest perfection, it lies flat upon the ground, having many leaves of a bright green, standing in pairs opposite to each other, with a single one at the end, which generally makes the fifth upon a foot stalk; the plant, passing from this state, shoots up in

stalks that are sometimes two feet high, at the top of which are small white blossoms, and these are succeeded by long pods: the whole plant greatly resembles that which in England is called Lady's smock, or Cuckow-flower. The wild celery is very like the celery in our gardens, the flowers are white, and stand in the same manner, in small tufts at the top of the branches, but the leaves are of a deeper green. It grows in great abundance near the beach, and generally upon the soil that lies next above the spring tides. It may indeed easily be known by the taste, which is between that of celery and parsley. Captain Cook's people used the celery in large quantities, particularly in their soup, which, thus medicated, produced the same good effects which seamen generally derive from a vegetable diet, after having been long confined to salt provisions.

On Sunday, the 22d of January, about two o'clock in the morning, having got their wood and water on board, they sailed out of the Bay, and continued their course through the Straight.

Between Straight Le Maire and Cape Horn, they found a current setting, generally very strong, to the N. E. when they were in with the shore; but lost it when they were at the distance of fifteen or twenty leagues.

On the 26th of January, they took their departure from Cape Horn. As the weather was frequently calm, Mr Banks went out in a small boat to shoot birds, among which were some albatrosses and sheerwaters. The albatrosses were observed to be larger than those which had been taken northward of the Straight; one of them measured ten feet two inches from the tip of one wing to that of the other, when they were extended: the sheerwater, on the contrary, is less, and darker coloured on the back. The albatrosses they skinned, and having soaked them in salt water till the morning, they par-boiled them, then throwing away the liquor, stewed them in a very little fresh water till they were tender, and had them served up with savoury sauce; thus dressed,

fed, the dish was universally commended, and they eat of it very heartily even when there was fresh pork upon the table.

From a variety of observations which were made with great care, it appeared probable in the highest degree, that, from the time of their leaving the land to the 13th of February, when they were in lat. 49 d. 32. m. and lon. 90 d. 37 m. they had no current to the west.

At this time they had advanced about 12 d. to the westward, and 3 and a half to the northward of the Strait of Magellan: having been just three and thirty days in coming round the land of Terra del Fuego, or Cape Horn, from the east entrance of the Strait to this situation. They now began to have strong gales and heavy seas, with irregular intervals of calm and fine weather.

On the 1st of March, they were in latitude 38 d. 44 m. S. and longitude 110 d. 33 m. W, both by observation and by the log. This agreement, after a run of 660 leagues, was thought to be very extraordinary; and is a demonstration, that after they left the land of Cape Horn they had no current that affected the ship. It renders it also highly probable, that they had been near no land of any considerable extent; for currents are always found when land is not remote, and sometimes, particularly on the east side of the continent in the North Sea, when land has been distant 100 leagues.

Many birds, as usual, were constantly about the ship, so that Mr Banks killed no less than 62 in one day; and what is more remarkable, he caught two forest flies, both of them of the same species, but different from any that have hitherto been described; these probably belonged to the birds, and came with them from the land, which they judged to be at a great distance. Mr Banks also, about this time, found a large cuttle-fish, which had been just killed by the birds, floating in a mangled condition upon the water; it was very different from the cuttle-fishes that are found in the European seas; for its arms, instead of suckers, were furnished with a double row of very sharp talons, which resembled

bled those of a cat, and, like them, were retractable into a sheath of skin, from which they might be thrust at pleasure. Of this cuttle-fish they made one of the best soups they had ever tasted.

The albatrosses now began to leave them, and after the 8th there was not one to be seen. They continued their course without any memorable event till the 24th, when some of the people who were upon the watch in the night, reported that they saw a log of wood pass by the ship; and that the sea, which was rather rough, became suddenly as smooth as a mill-pond. It was a general opinion, that there was land to windward; but Captain Cook did not think himself at liberty to search for what he was not sure to find; though he judged they were not far from the islands that were discovered by Quiros in 1606.

On the 25th, about noon, one of the marines, a young fellow about twenty, was placed as centry at the cabin door; while he was upon this duty, one of Captain Cook's servants was at the same place preparing to cut a piece of seal-skin into tobacco-pouches: he had promised one to several of the men, but had refused one to this young fellow, though he had asked him several times; upon which he jocularly threatened to steal one, if it should be in his power. It happened that the servant being called hastily away, gave the skin in charge to the centinel, without regarding what had passed between them. The centinel immediately secured a piece of the skin, which the other missing at his return, grew angry; but after some altercation, contented himself with taking it away, declaring, that, for so trifling an affair, he would not complain of him to the officers. But it happened that one of his fellow soldiers, over-hearing the dispute, came to the knowledge of what had happened, and told it to the rest; who, taking it into their heads, to stand up for the honour of their corps, reproached the offender with great bitterness, and reviled him in the most opprobrious terms; they exaggerated his offence into a crime of the deepest dye; they said it was a theft

theft by a centry when he was upon duty, and of a thing that had been committed to his trust; they declared it a disgrace to associate with him; and the Serjeant, in particular, said that, if the person from whom the skin had been stolen would not complain, he would complain himself; for that his honour would suffer if the offender was not punished. From the scoffs and reproaches of these men of honour, the poor young fellow retired to his hammock in an agony of confusion and shame. The Serjeant soon after went to him, and ordered him to follow him to the deck: he obeyed without reply; but it being in the dusk of the evening, he slipped from the Serjeant and went forward: he was seen by some of the people, who thought he was gone to the head; but a search being made for him afterwards, it was found that he had thrown himself overboard; and Captain Cook was then first made acquainted with the theft and its circumstances.

The loss of this man was the more regretted, as he was remarkably quiet and industrious, and as the very action that put an end to his life was a proof of an ingenious mind; for to such only disgrace is insupportable.

On Tuesday the 4th of April, about ten o'clock in the morning, Mr Banks's servant, Peter Briscoe, discovered land, bearing south, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Captain Cook immediately hauled up for it, and found it to be an island of an oval form, with a lagoon in the middle, which occupied much the larger part of it; the border of land which circumscribes the lagoon is in many places very low and narrow, particularly on the south side, where it consists principally of a beach or reef of rocks: it has the same appearance also in three places on the north side; so that, the firm land being disjointed, the whole looks like many islands covered with wood. On the west end of the island is a large tree, or clump of trees, that in appearance resembles a tower; and about the middle are two cocoa-nut trees, which rise above all the rest, and, as they came near to the island, appeared like a flag. They approach-
ed

ed it on the north side, and though they came within a mile, they found no bottom with 130 fathom of line, nor did there appear to be any anchorage about it. The whole is covered with trees of different verdure, but they could distinguish none, even with their glasses, except cocoa-nuts and palm-nuts. They saw several of the natives upon the shore, and counted four and twenty. They appeared to be tall, and to have heads remarkable large; perhaps they had something wound round them which they could not distinguish; they were of a copper colour, and had long black hair. Eleven of them walked along the beach abreast of the ship, with poles or pikes in their hands, which reached twice as high as themselves: while they walked on the beach they seemed to be naked; but soon after they retired, which they did as soon as the ship had passed the island, they covered themselves with something that made them appear of a light colour. Their habitations were under some clumps of palm-nut trees, which at a distance appeared like high ground; and to them, who for a long time had seen nothing but water and sky, except the dreary hills of Terra del Fuego, these groves seemed a terrestrial paradise. To this spot, which lies in latitude 18 d. 47 m. S. and longitude 139 d. 28 m. W. they gave the name of LAGOON ISLAND.

About one o'clock they made sail to the westward, and about half an hour after three they saw land again to the N. W. They got up with it at sunset, and it proved to be a low woody island, of a circular form, and not much above a mile in compass. They discovered no inhabitants, nor could they distinguish any cocoa-nut trees, though they were within half a mile of the shore. The land, however, was covered with verdure of many hues. It lies in latitude 18 d. 35 m. S. and longitude 139 d. 48 m. W. and is distant from Lagoon Island, in the direction of N. 62 W. about seven leagues. They called it THRUMB-CAP.

They went on with a fine trade-wind and pleasant weather.

weather, and on the 5th, about three in the afternoon, they discovered land to the westward. It proved to be a low island, of much greater extent than either of those that they had seen before, being about ten or twelve leagues in compass. Several of the ship's company remained at the mast-head the whole evening, admiring its extraordinary figure: it was shaped exactly like a bow, the arch and cord of which were land, and the space between them water; the cord was a flat beach, without any signs of vegetation, having nothing upon it but heaps of sea weed, which lay in different ridges, as higher or lower tides had left them. It appeared to be about three or four leagues long, and not more than two hundred yards wide; but as a horizontal plain is always seen in perspective, and greatly fore-shortened, it is certainly much wider than it appeared: the horns, or extremities of the bow, were two large tufts of cocoa-nut trees; and much the greater part of the arch was covered with trees of different height, figure, and hue; in some parts, however, it was naked and low like the cord: some of them thought they discovered openings through the cord, into the pool, or lake, that was included between that and the bow; but whether there were or were not such openings is uncertain. They sailed abreast of the low beach, or bow-string, within less than a league of the shore, till sunset, and they then judged themselves to be about half way between the two horns: here they brought to, and sounded, but found no bottom with one hundred and thirty fathom; and, as it is dark almost instantly after sunset in these latitudes, they suddenly lost sight of the land, and making sail again, before the line was well hauled in, they steered by the sound of the breakers, which were distinctly heard till they got clear of the coast.

They knew this island to be inhabited, by smoke which they saw in different parts of it, and they gave it the name of BOW ISLAND. Mr Gore, the Second Lieutenant, said, after they had sailed by the island, that he had seen several of the natives, under the first clump

of trees, from the deck; that he had distinguished their houses, and seen several canoes hauled up under the shade; but in this he was more fortunate than any other person on board.

On the next day, Thursday the 6th, about noon, they saw land again to the westward, and came up with it about three. It appeared to be two islands, or rather groups of islands, extending from N. W. by N. to S. E. by S. about nine leagues. Of these, the two largest were separated from each other by a channel of about half a mile broad, and were severally surrounded by smaller islands, to which they were joined by reefs that lay under water. These islands were long narrow stripes of land, ranging in all directions, some of them ten miles or upwards in length, but none more than a quarter of a mile broad, and upon all of them there were trees of various kinds, particularly the cocoa-nut. The south-eastermost of them lies in the latitude of 18 d. 12 m. S. and longitude 142 d. 42 m. W. and at the distance of twenty-five leagues, in the direction of W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. from the west end of Bow Island. They ranged along the S. W. side of this island, and hauled into a bay which lies to the N. W. of the southermost point of the Group, where there was a smooth sea, and the appearance of anchorage, without much surf on the shore. They founded, but found no bottom with one hundred fathom, at the distance of no more than three quarters of a mile from the beach, and Captain Cook did not think it prudent to go nearer.

While this was doing, several of the inhabitants assembled upon the shore, and some came out in their canoes as far as the reefs, but would not pass them: when they saw this, they ranged, with an easy sail, along the shore; but just as they were passing the end of the island, six men, who had for some time kept abreast of the ship, suddenly launched two canoes with great quickness and dexterity, and three of them getting into each, they put off, as was imagined, with a design to come on board; the ship was therefore brought to, but they,

they, like their fellows, stopped at the reef; they did not however immediately make sail, as they observed two messengers dispatched to them from the other canoes, which were of a much larger size: they perceived that these messengers made great expedition, wading and swimming along the reef; at length they met, and the men on board the canoes making no dispositions to pass the reef, after having received the message, they judged that they had resolved to come no farther: after waiting, therefore, some little time longer, they stood off; but when they were got about two or three miles from the shore, they perceived some of the natives following them in a canoe with a sail; they did not, however think it worth while to wait for her, and though she had passed the reef, she soon after gave over the chase.

According to the best judgment that they could form of the people when they were nearest the shore, they were about our size, and well-made. They were of a brown complexion, and appeared to be naked; their hair, which was black, was confined by a fillet that went round the head, and stuck out behind like a bush. The greatest part of them carried in their hands two weapons; one of them was a slender pole, from ten to fourteen feet long, on one end of which was a small knob, not unlike the point of a spear; the other was about four feet long, and shaped like a paddle, and possibly might be so, for some of their canoes were very small: those which they saw them launch seemed not intended to carry more than the three men that got into them: they saw others that had on board six or seven men, and one of them hoisted a sail which did not seem to reach more than six feet above the gunwale of the boat, and which, upon the falling of a slight shower, was taken down and converted into an awning or tilt. The canoe which followed them to sea hoisted a sail not unlike an English lug-sail, and almost as lofty as an English boat of the same size would have carried.

The people, who kept abreast of the ship on the beach,

beach, made many signals; but whether they were intended to frighten them away, or invite them on shore, it is not easy to determine: they returned them by waving their hats and shouting; and they replied by shouting again. They did not put their disposition to the test, by attempting to land; because, as the island was inconsiderable, and as they wanted nothing that it could afford, they thought it imprudent as well as cruel to risk a contest, in which the natives must have suffered by their superiority, merely to gratify an idle curiosity; especially as they expected soon to fall in with the island where they had been directed to make their astronomical observation, the inhabitants of which would probably admit them without opposition, as they were already acquainted with their strength, and might also procure them a ready and peaceable reception among the neighbouring people, if they should desire it. To these islands they gave the name of **THE GROUPS**.

On the 7th, about half an hour after six in the morning, being just at day-break, they discovered another island to the northward, which they judged to be about four miles in circumference. The land lay very low, and there was a piece of water in the middle of it; there seemed to be some wood upon it, and it looked green and pleasant; but they saw neither cocoa trees nor inhabitants: it abounded however with birds, and they therefore gave it the name of **BIRD-ISLAND**.

On the 8th, about two o'clock in the afternoon, they saw land to the northward, and about sunset came abreast of it, at about the distance of two leagues. It appeared to be a double range of low woody islands joined together by reefs, so as to form one island, in the form of an ellipsis or oval, with a lake in the middle of it. The small islands and reefs that circumscribe the lake have the appearance of a chain, and they therefore gave it the name of **CHAIN-ISLAND**. Its length seemed to be about five leagues, in the direction of N. W. and S. E. and its breadth about five miles. The trees upon it appeared to be large, and they saw smoke rising in
dis

different parts of it from among them, a certain sign that it was inhabited.

On the 10th, having had a tempestuous night with thunder and rain, the weather was hazy till about nine o'clock in the morning, when it cleared up, and they saw the island to which Captain Wallis, who first discovered it, gave the name of Osnaburgh island, called by the natives *Maitea*, bearing N. W. by W. distant about five leagues. It is a high round island, not above a league in circuit; in some parts it is covered with trees, and in others a naked rock. In this direction it looked like a high crown'd hat; but when it bears North, the top of it has more the appearance of the roof of a house.

Arrival of the Endeavour at Otaheite, or King George the Third's Island, &c. &c.

[It is acknowledged on all hands, that a narrative written in the FIRST person, by bringing the *Adventurer* and the *Reader* nearer together, without the interruption of a stranger, more strongly excites an interest, and consequently affords more entertainment:—The occurrences in these voyages becoming highly interesting and curious, and as Captain Cook is engaged in many interviews and transactions with the Natives of the Islands he visited, it is therefore now judged proper to give the narrative in his person.]

ABOUT one o'clock, on Monday the 10th of April, some of the people who were looking out for the island to which we were bound, said they saw land ahead, in that part of the horizon where it was expected to appear; but it was so faint that, whether there was land in sight or not, remained a matter of dispute till

till sunset. The next morning, however, at six o'clock, we were convinced that those who said they had discovered land, were not mistaken; it appeared to be very high and mountainous, extending from W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. to W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and we knew it to be the same that Captain Wallis had called King George the III.'s Island. We were delayed in our approach to it by light airs and calms, so that in the morning of the 12th we were but little nearer than we had been the night before; but about seven a breeze sprung up, and before eleven several canoes were seen making towards the ship: there were but few of them, however, that would come near; and the people in those that did, could not be persuaded to come on board. In every canoe there were young plantains, and branches of a tree which the Indians call *E' Midbo*; these, as we afterwards learnt, were brought as tokens of peace and amity, and the people in one of the canoes handed them up the ship's side, making signals at the same time with great earnestness, which we did not immediately understand; at length we guessed that they wished these symbols should be placed in some conspicuous part of the ship; we, therefore, immediately stuck them among the rigging, at which they expressed the greatest satisfaction. We then purchased their cargoes, consisting of cocoa-nuts, and various kinds of fruit, which after our long voyage were very acceptable.

We stood on with an easy sail all night, with soundings from 22 fathom to 12, and about seven o'clock in the morning we came to an anchor in 13 fathom, in Port-royal bay, called by the natives *Matavai*. We were immediately surrounded by the natives in their canoes, who gave us cocoa-nuts, fruit resembling apples, bread-fruit, and some small fishes, in exchange for beads and other trifles. They had with them a pig, which they would not part with for any thing but a hatchet, and therefore we refused to purchase it; because, if we gave them a hatchet for a pig now, we knew they would never afterwards sell one for less, and we could not afford to buy

buy as many as it was probable we should want at that price.

The bread-fruit grows on a tree that is about the size of a middling oak: its leaves are frequently a foot and an half long, of an oblong shape, deeply sinuated like those of the fig-tree, which they resemble in consistence and colour, and in the exuding of a white milky juice upon being broken. The fruit is about the size and shape of a child's head, and the surface is reticulated not much unlike a truffle: it is covered with a thin skin, and has a core about as big as the handle of a small knife: the eatable part lies between the skin and the core; it is as white as snow, and somewhat of the consistence of new bread: it must be roasted before it is eaten, being first divided into three or four parts: its taste is insipid, with a slight sweetness somewhat resembling that of the crumb of wheaten bread mixed with a Jerusalem artichoke.

Among others who came off to the ship was an elderly man, whose name, as we learnt afterwards, was OWHAW, and who was immediately known to Mr Gore, and several others who had been here with Capt. Wallis; as I was informed that he had been very useful to them, I took him on board the ship with some others, and was particularly attentive to gratify him as I hoped he might also be useful to us.

As our stay here was not likely to be very short, and as it was necessary that the merchandise which we had brought for traffic with the natives should not diminish in its value, which it would certainly have done, if every person had been left at liberty to give what he pleased for such things as he should purchase; at the same time that confusion and quarrels must necessarily have arisen from there being no standard at market: I drew up the following rules, and ordered that they should be punctually observed.

Rules

Rules to be observed by every person in or belonging to his Majesty's bark the Endeavour, for the better establishing a regular and uniform trade for provision, &c. with the inhabitants of George's Island.*

I. To endeavour, by every fair means, to cultivate a friendship with the natives; and to treat them with all imaginable humanity.

II. A proper person, or persons, will be appointed to trade with the natives for all manner of provisions, fruit, and other productions of the earth; and no officer or seaman, or other person belonging to the ship, excepting such as are so appointed, shall trade or offer to trade for any sort of provision, fruit, or other productions of the earth, unless they have leave so to do.

III. Every person employed on shore, on any duty whatsoever, is strictly to attend to the same; and if by any neglect he loseth any of his arms, or working tools, or suffers them to be stolen, the full value thereof will be charged against his pay, according to the custom of the navy in such cases, and he shall receive such farther punishment as the nature of the offence may deserve.

IV. The same penalty will be inflicted on every person who is found to embezzle, trade, or offer to trade, with any part of the ship's stores of what nature soever.

V. No sort of iron, or any thing that is made of iron, or any sort of cloth, or other useful or necessary articles, are to be given in exchange for any thing but provision.

J. COOK.

* This vessel's complement of officers and men was, Captain Cook, the commander, with two lieutenants under him, a master and boatswain, with each two mates, a surgeon and carpenter, with each one mate, a gunner, a cook, a clerk and steward, two quartermasters, an armourer, a sail-maker, three midshipmen, forty-one able seamen, twelve marines, and nine servants, in all eighty-four persons, besides the commander.

As soon as the ship was properly secured, I went on shore with Mr Banks and Dr Solander, a party of men under arms, and our friend Owhaw. We were received from the boat by some hundreds of the inhabitants, whose looks at least gave us welcome, though they were struck with such awe, that the first who approached us crouched so low that he almost crept upon his hands and knees. It is remarkable that he, like the people in the canoes, presented to us the same symbol of peace that is known to have been in use among the ancient and mighty nations of the northern hemisphere, the green branch of a tree. We received it with looks and gestures of kindness and satisfaction; and observing that each of them held one in his hand, we immediately gathered every one a bough, and carried it in our hands in the same manner.

They marched with us about half a mile towards the place where the Dolphin had watered, conducted by Owhaw; they then made a full stop, and having laid the ground bare, by clearing away all the plants that grew upon it, the principal persons among them threw their green branches upon the naked spot, and made signs that we should do the same; we immediately showed our readiness to comply, and to give a greater solemnity to the rite, the marines were drawn up, and marching in order, each dropped his bow upon those of the Indians, and we followed their example. We then proceeded, and when we came to the watering-place it was intimated to us by signs, that we might occupy that ground, but it happened not to be fit for our purpose. During our walk they had shaken off their first timid sense of our superiority, and were become familiar: they went with us from the watering-place and took a circuit through the woods: as we went along, we distributed beads and other small presents among them, and had the satisfaction to see that they were much gratified. Our circuit was not less than four or five miles, through groves of trees, which were loaded with coconuts and bread-fruit, and afforded the most grateful

jeffy's bark
iform trade

friendship
ble huma-

trade with
er produc-
r person be-
shall trade
her produc-

whatsoever,
Et he loseth
be stolen, the
ording to the
such farther

person who is
y part of the

on, or any fort
e given in ex-

COOK.

captain Cook, the
boatswain, with
ate, a gunner, a
er, a sail-maker,
and nine servants,

As

shade. Under these trees were the habitations of the people, most of them being only a roof without walls, and the whole scene realized the poetical fables of Arcadia. We remarked, however, not without some regret, that in all our walk we had seen only two hogs, and not a single fowl. Those of our company who had been here with the Dolphin told us, that none of the people whom we had yet seen were of the first class; they suspected that the chiefs had removed, and upon carrying us to the place where what they called the Queen's palace had stood, we found that no traces of it were left. We determined therefore to return in the morning, and endeavour to find out the *Nobleſſe* in their retreats.

In the morning, however, before we could leave the ship, ſeveral canoes came about us, moſt of them from the weſtward, and two of them were filled with people, who by their dreſs and deportment appeared to be of a ſuperior rank: two of theſe came on board, and each ſingled out his friend; one of them, whoſe name we found to be MATAHAN, fixed upon Mr Banks, and the other upon me: this ceremony conſiſted in taking off great part of their clothes and putting them upon us. In return for this, we preſented each of them with a hatchet, and ſome beads. Soon after they made ſigns for us to go with them to the places where they lived, pointing to the S. W. and as I was deſirous of finding a more commodious harbour, and making farther trial of the diſpoſition of the people, I conſented.

I ordered out two boats, and with Mr Banks and Dr Solander, the other gentlemen, and our two Indian friends, we embarked for our expedition. After rowing about a league, they made ſigns that we ſhould go on ſhore, and gave us to underſtand that this was the place of their reſidence. We accordingly landed, among ſeveral hundreds of the natives, who conducted us into a houſe of much greater length than any we had ſeen. When we entered, we ſaw a middle-aged man

man whose name we afterwards discovered to be TOOTAHAH; mats were immediately spread, and we were desired to sit down over against him. Soon after we were seated, he ordered a cock and hen to be brought out, which he presented to Mr Banks and me; we accepted the present, and in a short time each of us received a piece of cloth, perfumed after their manner, by no means disagreeably, which they took great pains to make us remark. The piece presented to Mr Banks was eleven yards long and two wide; in return for which, he gave a laced silk neckcloth, which he happened to have on, and a linen pocket handkerchief: Tootahah immediately dressed himself in this new finery, with an air of perfect complacency and satisfaction. But it is now time that I should take some notice of the ladies.

Soon after the interchanging of our presents with Tootahah, they attended us to several large houses, in which we walked about with great freedom: they shewed us all the civility of which, in our situation, we could accept; and, on their part, seemed to have no scruple that would have prevented its being carried farther. The houses, which, as I have observed before, are all open, except a roof, afforded no place of retirement; but the ladies, by frequently pointing to the mats upon the ground, and sometimes seating themselves and drawing us down upon them, left us no room to doubt of their being much less jealous of observation than we were.

We now took leave of our friendly Chief, and directed our course along the shore; when we had walked about a mile, we met, at the head of a great number of people, another Chief, whose name was TUBOURAI TAMAIDE, with whom we were also to ratify a treaty of peace, with the ceremony of which we were now become better acquainted. Having received the branch which he presented to us, and given another in return, we laid our hands upon our left breasts, and pronounced the word *Taió*, which we supposed to signify

nify friend ; the Chief then gave us to understand, that if we chose to eat, he had victuals ready for us. We accepted his offer, and dined very heartily upon fish, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts and plantains, dressed after their manner ; they eat some of the fish raw, and raw fish was offered to us, but we declined that part of the entertainment.

During this visit a wife of our noble host, whose name was TOMIO, did Mr Banks the honour to place herself upon the same mat, close by him. Tomio was not in the first bloom of her youth, nor did she appear to have been ever remarkable for her beauty : he did not therefore, I believe, pay her the most flattering attention : it happened too, as a farther mortification to this lady, that seeing a very pretty girl among the crowd, he, not adverting to the dignity of his companion, beckoned her to come to him : the girl, after some entreaty, complied, and sat down on the other side of him ; he loaded her with beads, and every showy trifle that would please her : his Princess, though she was somewhat mortified at the preference that was given to her rival, did not discontinue her civilities, but still assiduously supplied him with the milk of the cocoa-nut, and such other dainties as were in her reach. This scene might possibly have become more curious and interesting, if it had not been suddenly interrupted by an interlude of a more serious kind. Just at this time, Dr Solander and Mr Monkhouse complained that their pockets had been picked. Dr Solander had lost an opera glass in a shagreen case, and Mr Monkhouse his snuff-box. This incident unfortunately put an end to the good-humour of the company. Complaint of the injury was made to the Chief ; and, to give it weight, Mr Banks started up, and hastily struck the but-end of his firelock upon the ground : this action, and the noise that accompanied it, struck the whole assembly with a panic, and every one of the natives ran out of the house with the utmost precipitation, except the Chief, three women,

women, and two or three others, who appeared by their dress to be of a superior rank.

The Chief, with a mixture of confusion and concern, took Mr Banks by the hand, and led him to a large quantity of cloth, which lay at the other end of the house: this he offered to him piece by piece, intimating by signs, that if that would atone for the wrong which had been done, he might take any part of it, or, if he pleased, the whole. Mr Banks put it by, and gave him to understand, that he wanted nothing but what had been dishonestly taken away. Tubourai Tamaide then went hastily out, leaving Mr Banks with his wife Tomio, who, during the whole scene of terror and confusion, had kept constantly at his side, and intimating his desire that he should wait there till his return. Mr Banks accordingly sat down, and conversed with her, as well as he could by signs, about half an hour. The Chief then came back with the snuff-box and the case of the opera glass in his hand, and, with a joy in his countenance that was painted with a strength of expression which distinguishes these people from all others, delivered them to the owners. The case of the opera glass, however, upon being opened, was found to be empty; upon this discovery, his countenance changed in a moment; and catching Mr Banks again by the hand, he rushed out of the house, without uttering any sound, and led him along the shore, walking with great rapidity: when they had got about a mile from the house, a woman met him and gave him a piece of cloth, which he hastily took from her, and continued to press forward with it in his hand. Dr Sowerby and Mr Monkhouse had followed them, and they came at length to a house where they were received by a woman, to whom he gave the cloth, and intimated to the gentlemen that they should give her some beads. They immediately complied; and the beads and the cloth being deposited upon the floor, the woman went out, and in about half an hour returned with the opera glass, expressing the same joy upon the occasion

occasion that had before been expressed by the Chief. The beads were now returned, with an inflexible resolution not to accept them; and the cloth was, with the same pertinacity, forced upon Dr Solander, as a recompence for the injury that had been done him. He could not avoid accepting the cloth, but insisted in his turn upon giving a new present of beads to the woman. It will not perhaps be easy to account for all the steps that were taken in the recovery of this glass and snuff-box; but this cannot be thought strange, considering that the scene of action was among a people whose language, policy, and connections, are even now but imperfectly known; upon the whole, however, they show an intelligence and influence which would do honour to any system of government, however regular and improved. In the evening, about six o'clock, we returned to the ship.

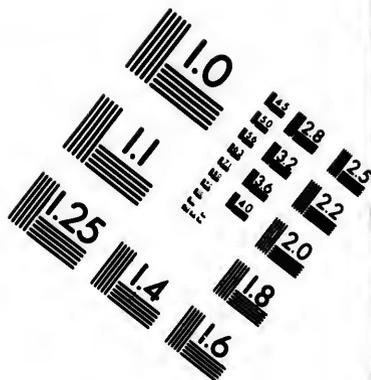
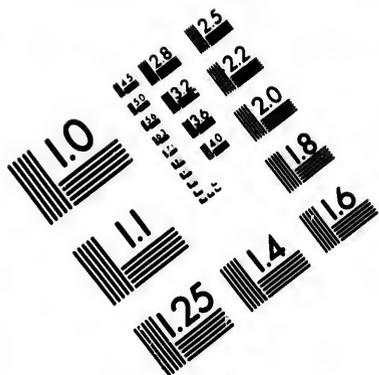
On the next morning, Saturday the 15th, several of the Chiefs whom we had seen the day before came on board, and brought with them, hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreshments, for which we gave them hatchets and linen, and such things as seemed to be most acceptable.

As in my excursion to the westward, I had not found any more convenient harbour than that in which we lay, I determined to go on shore and fix upon some spot, commanded by the ship's guns, where I might throw up a small fort for our defence, and prepare for making our astronomical observation.

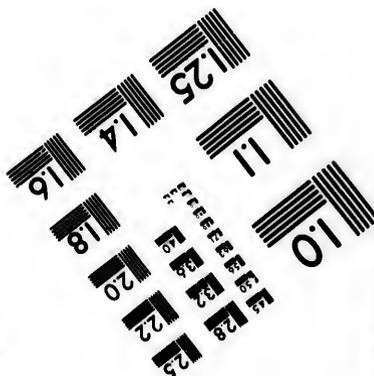
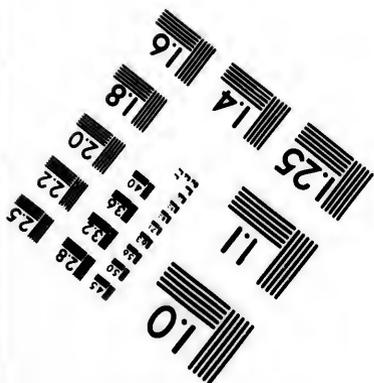
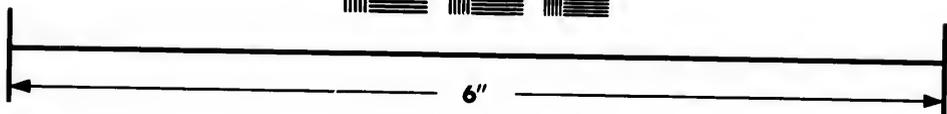
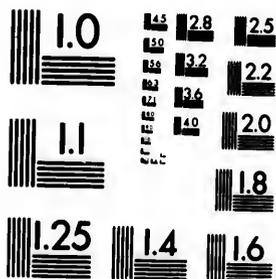
I therefore took a party of men, and landed without delay, accompanied by Mr Banks, Dr Solander, and the astronomer, Mr Green. We soon fixed upon a part of the sandy beach, on the N. E. point of the bay, which was in every respect convenient for our purpose, and not near any habitation of the natives. Having marked out the ground that we intended to occupy, a small tent belonging to Mr Banks was set up, which had been brought on shore for that purpose: by this time a great number of the people had gathered about us; but, as

it appeared, only to look on, there not being a single weapon of any kind among them. I intimated, however, that none of them were to come within the line I had drawn, except one who appeared to be a chief, and Owhaw. To these persons I addressed myself by signs, and endeavoured to make them understand, that we wanted the ground which we had marked out to sleep upon for a certain number of nights, and that then we should go away. Whether I was understood I cannot certainly determine; but the people behaved with a deference and respect that at once pleased and surprised us: they sat down peaceably without the circle, and looked on, without giving us any interruption, till we had done, which was upwards of two hours. As we had seen no poultry, and but two hogs, in our walk when we were last on shore at this place, we suspected that, upon our arrival, they had been driven farther up the country; and the rather, as Owhaw was very importunate with us, by signs, not to go into the woods, which, however, and partly for these reasons, we were determined to do. Having therefore appointed the thirteen marines and a petty officer to guard the tent, we set out, and a great number of the natives joined our party. As we were crossing a little river that lay in our way we saw some ducks, and Mr Banks, as soon as he had got over, fired at them, and happened to kill three at one shot: this struck them with the utmost terror, so that most of them fell suddenly to the ground, as if they also had been shot at the same discharge: it was not long, however, before they recovered from their fright, and we continued our rout; but we had not gone far before we were alarmed by the report of two pieces, which were fired by the guard at the tent. We had then straggled a little distance from each other, but Owhaw immediately called us together, and by waving his hand, sent away every Indian who followed us except three, each of whom, as a pledge of peace on their part, and an entreaty that there might be peace on ours, hastily broke a branch from the trees, and came to us with





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

25 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40
45

0.1

with it in their hands. As we had too much reason to fear that some mischief had happened, we hasted back to the tent, which was not distant above half a mile, and when we came up, we found it entirely deserted, except by our own people.

It appeared, that one of the Indians who remained about the tent after we left it, had watched his opportunity, and, taking the centry unawares, had snatched away his musquet. Upon this, the petty officer, a midshipman, who commanded the party, perhaps from a sudden fear of farther violence, perhaps from the natural petulance of power newly acquired, and perhaps from a brutality in his nature, ordered the marines to fire: the men, with as little consideration or humanity as the officer, immediately discharged their pieces among the thickest of the flying crowd, consisting of more than a hundred; and observing that the thief did not fall, pursued him, and shot him dead. We afterwards learnt, that none of the others were either killed or wounded.

Owhaw, who had never left us, observing that we were now totally deserted, got together a few of those who had fled, though not without some difficulty, and ranged them about us: we endeavoured to justify our people as well as we could, and to convince the Indians that if they did no wrong to us, we should do no wrong to them: they went away without any appearance of distrust or resentment; and having struck our tent, we returned to the ship, but by no means satisfied with the transactions of the day.

Upon questioning our people more particularly, whose conduct they soon perceived we could not approve, they alledged that the centinel whose musquet was taken away, was violently assaulted and thrown down, and that a push was afterwards made at him by the man who took the musquet, before any command was given to fire. It was also suggested, that Owhaw had suspicions, at least, if not certain knowledge, that something would be attempted against our people at the tent,

tent, which made him so very earnest in his endeavours to prevent our leaving it; others imputed his importunity to his desire that we should confine ourselves to the beach: and it was remarked that neither Owhaw, nor the chiefs who remained with us after he had sent the rest of the people away, would have inferred the breach of peace from the firing at the tent, if they had had no reason to suspect that some injury had been offered by their countrymen; especially as Mr Banks had just fired at the ducks: and yet that they did infer a breach of peace from that incident, as was manifest from their waving their hands for the people to disperse, and instantly pulling green branches from the trees. But what were the real circumstances of this unhappy affair, and whether either and which of these conjectures were true, can never certainly be known.

The next morning but few of the natives were seen upon the beach, and not one of them came off to the ship. This convinced us that our endeavours to quiet their apprehensions had not been effectual; and we remarked with particular regret, that we were deserted even by Owhaw, who had hitherto been so constant in his attachment, and so active in renewing the peace that had been broken.

Appearances being thus unfavourable, I warped the ship nearer to the shore, and moored her in such a manner as to command all the N. E. part of the bay, particularly the place which I had marked out for the building a fort. In the evening, however, I went on shore with only a boat's crew, and some of the gentlemen: the natives gathered about us, but not in the same number as before; there were, I believe, between thirty and forty, and they trafficked with us for cocoa-nuts and other fruit, to all appearance as friendly as ever.

On the 17th, early in the morning, we had the misfortune to lose Mr Fuchan, the person whom Mr Banks had brought out as a painter of landscapes and figures. He was a sober, diligent, and ingenious young man, and greatly regretted by Mr Banks; who hoped, by his

means, to have gratified his friends in England with representations of this country and its inhabitants, which no other person on board could delineate with the same accuracy and elegance. He had always been subject to epileptic fits, one of which seized him on the mountains of Terra del Fuego, and this disorder being aggravated by a bilious complaint which he contracted on board the ship, at length put an end to his life. It was at first proposed to bury him on shore, but Mr Banks thinking that it might perhaps give offence to the natives, with whose customs we were then wholly unacquainted, we committed his body to the sea, with as much decency and solemnity as our circumstances and situation would admit.

In the forenoon of this day we received a visit from Tubourai Tamaide and Tootahah, our Chief, from the West: they brought with them, as emblems of peace, not branches of plantain, but two young trees, and would not venture on board till these had been received, having probably been alarmed by the mischief which had been done at the tent. Each of them also brought, as propitiatory gifts, some bread-fruit, and a hog ready dressed: this was a most acceptable present, as we perceived that hogs were not always to be got; and in return we gave to each of our noble benefactors a hatchet and a nail. In the evening we went on shore and set up a tent, in which Mr Green and myself spent the night, in order to observe an eclipse of the first satellite of Jupiter; but the weather becoming cloudy, we were disappointed.

On the 18th, at day-break, I went on shore, with as many people as could possibly be spared from the ship, and began to erect our fort. While some were employed in throwing up intrenchments, others were busy in cutting pickets and fascines, which the natives, who soon gathered round us as they had been used to do, were so far from hindering, that many of them voluntarily assisted us, bringing the pickets and fascines from the wood where they had been cut, with great alacrity;

we had indeed been so scrupulous of invading their property, that we purchased every stake which was used upon this occasion, and cut down no tree till we had first obtained their consent. The soil where we constructed our fort was sandy, and this made it necessary to strengthen the intrenchments with wood; three sides were to be fortified in this manner; the fourth was bounded by a river, upon the banks of which I proposed to place a proper number of water-casks. This day we served pork to the ship's company for the first time, and the Indians brought down so much bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, that we found it necessary to send away part of them unbought, and to acquaint them, by signs, that we should want no more for two days to come. Every thing was purchased this day with beads: a single bead, as big as a pea, being the purchase of five or six cocoa-nuts, and as many of the bread-fruit. Mr Banks's tent was got up before night within the works, and he slept on shore for the first time. Proper centries were placed round it, but no Indian attempted to approach it the whole night.

The next morning, our friend Tubourai Tamaide made Mr Banks a visit at the tent, and brought with him not only his wife and family, but the roof of a house, and several materials for setting it up, with furniture and implements of various kinds, intending, as we understood him, to take up his residence in our neighbourhood: this instance of his confidence and good-will gave us great pleasure, and we determined to strengthen his attachment to us by every means in our power. Soon after his arrival, he took Mr Banks by the hand, and leading him out of the line, signified that he should accompany him into the woods. Mr Banks readily consented, and having walked with him about a quarter of a mile, they arrived at a kind of awning which he had already set up, and which seemed to be his occasional habitation. Here he unfolded a bundle of his country cloth, and taking out two garments; one of red cloth, and the other of very neat matting, he clothed Mr

Banks in them, and without any other ceremony, immediately conducted him back to the tent. His attendants soon after brought him some pork and bread-fruit, which he eat, dipping his meat into salt water instead of sauce: after his meal he retired to Mr Banks's bed and slept about an hour. In the afternoon, his wife Tomio brought to the tent a young man about two and twenty years of age, of a very comely appearance, whom they both seemed to acknowledge as their son, though we afterwards discovered that he was not so. In the evening, this young man and another Chief, who had also paid us a visit, went away to the westward, but Tubourai Tamaide and his wife returned to the awning in the skirts of the wood.

Our Surgeon, Mr Monkhouse, having walked out this evening, reported that he had seen the body of the man who had been shot at the tents, which he said was wrapped in cloth, and placed on a kind of bier, supported by stakes, under a roof that seemed to have been set up for the purpose: that near it were deposited some instruments of war, and other things, which he would particularly have examined but for the stench of the body, which was intolerable. He said, that he saw also two more sheds of the same kind, in one of which were the bones of a human body that had lain till they were quite dry. We discovered afterwards, that this was the way in which they usually disposed of their dead.

A kind of market now began to be kept just without the lines, and was plentifully supplied with every thing but pork. Tubourai Tamaide was our constant guest, imitating our manners, even to the using of a knife and fork, which he did very handily.

As my curiosity was excited by Mr Monkhouse's account of the situation of the man who had been shot, I took an opportunity to go with some others to see it. I found the shed under which his body lay, close by the house in which he resided when he was alive, some others being not more than ten yards distant; it was
about

emony, im-

His atten-
and bread-
salt water in-
Mr Banks's
oon, his wife
out two and
rance, whom
son, though
t so. In the
ief, who had
estward, but
to the awn-

g walked out
e body of the
h he said was
of bier, sup-
t to have been
eposited some
nich he would
stench of the
that he saw
one of which
d lain till they
ards, that this
posed of their

at just without
th every thing
constant guest,
of a knife and

onkhouse's ac-
d been shot, I
ers to see it. I
y, close by the
as alive, some
distant; it was
about

about fifteen feet long, and eleven broad, and of a proportionable height: one end was wholly open, and the other end, and the two sides, were partly enclosed with a kind of wicker work. The bier on which the corps was deposited, was a frame of wood like that in which the sea beds, called cotts, are placed, with a matted bottom, and supported by four posts, at the height of about five feet from the ground. The body was covered first with a matt, and then with white cloth; by the side of it lay a wooden mace, one of their weapons of war, and near the head of it, which lay next to the close end of the shed, lay two cocoa nut-shells, such as are sometimes used to carry water in; at the other end a bunch of green leaves, with some dried twigs, all tied together, were stuck in the ground, by which lay a stone about as big as a cocoa nut: near these lay one of the young plantain trees, which are used for emblems of peace, and close by it a stone ax. At the open end of the shed also hung, in several strings, a great number of palm-nuts, and without the shed, was stuck upright in the ground, the stem of a plantain tree about five feet high, upon the top of which was placed a cocoa-nut shell full of fresh water: against the side of one of the posts hung a small bag, containing a few pieces of bread-fruit ready roasted, which were not all put in at the same time, for some of them were fresh, and others stale. I took notice that several of the natives observed us with a mixture of solicitude and jealousy in their countenances, and by their gestures expressed uneasiness when we went near the body, standing themselves at a little distance while we were making our examination, and appearing to be pleased when we came away.

Our residence on shore would by no means have been disagreeable if we had not been incessantly tormented by the flies, which, among other mischief, made it almost impossible for Mr Parkinson, Mr Banks's natural history painter, to work; for they not only covered his subject so as that no part of its surface could be seen, but even eat the colour off the paper as fast as he could lay
it

it on. We had recourse to musquito nets and fly-traps, which, though they made the inconvenience tolerable, were very far from removing it.

On the 22d, Tootahah gave us a specimen of the music of this country; four persons performed upon flutes which had only two stops, and therefore could not sound more than four notes, by half tones: they were sounded like our German flutes, except that the performer, instead of applying it to his mouth, blew into it with one nostril, while he stopped the other with his thumb: to these instruments four other persons sung, and kept very good time; but only one tune was played during the whole concert.

Several of the natives brought us axes, which they had received from on board the Dolphin, to grind and repair; but among others, there was one which became the subject of much speculation, as it appeared to be French: after much enquiry, we learnt that a ship had been here between our arrival and the departure of the Dolphin, which we then conjectured to have been a Spaniard, but now know to have been the Boudeuse, commanded by M. Bongainville.

On the 24th, Mr Banks and Dr Solander examined the country for several miles along the shore to the eastward: for about two miles it was flat and fertile; after that the hills stretched quite to the water's edge, and a little farther ran out into the sea, so that they were obliged to climb over them. These hills, which were barren, continued for about three miles more, and then terminated in a large plain, which was full of good houses, and people who appeared to live in great affluence. In this place there was a river, much more considerable than that at our fort, which issued from a deep and beautiful valley, and, where our travellers crossed it, though at some distance from the sea, was near one hundred yards wide. About a mile beyond this river the country became again barren, the rocks every where projecting into the sea, for which reason they resolved to return. Just as they had formed this resolution, one of
the

the natives offered them refreshment, which they accepted. They found this man to be of a kind that has been described by various authors, as mixed with many nations, but distinct from them all. His skin was of a dead white, without the least appearance of what is called complexion, though some parts of his body were in a small degree less whiter than others: his hair, eyebrows, and beard were as white as his skin; his eyes appeared as if they were bloodshot, and he seemed to be very short-sighted.

At their return they were met by Tubourai Tamaide, and his women, who, at seeing them, felt a joy which not being able to express, they burst into tears, and wept some time before their passion could be restrained.

This evening Dr Solander lent his knife to one of these women, who neglected to return it, and the next morning Mr Banks's also was missing; upon this occasion I must bear my testimony, that the people of this country, of all ranks, men and women, are the errantest thieves upon the face of the earth: the very day after we arrived here, when they came on board us, the chiefs were employed in stealing what they could in the cabin, and their dependants were no less industrious in other parts of the ship; they snatched up every thing that it was possible for them to secret till they got on shore, even to the glass ports, two of which they carried off undetected. Tubourai Tamaide was the only one except Tootahah who had not been found guilty, and the presumption, arising from this circumstance, that he was exempt from a vice, of which the whole nation besides were guilty, cannot be supposed to outweigh strong appearances to the contrary. Mr Banks therefore, though not without some reluctance, accused him of having stolen his knife: he solemnly and steadily denied that he knew any thing of it; upon which Mr Banks made him understand, that whoever had taken it, he was determined to have it returned: upon this resolute declaration, one of the natives who was present, produced a rag in which three knives were very carefully

fully tied up. One was that which Dr Solander had lent to the woman, another was a table knife belonging to me, and the owner of the third was not known. With these the chief immediately set out, in order to make restitution of them to their owners at the tents. Mr Banks remained with the women, who expressed great apprehensions that some mischief was designed against their lord. When he came to the tents he restored one of the knives to Dr Solander and another to me, the third not being owned, and then began to search for Mr Banks's in all the places where he had ever seen it. After some time, one of Mr Banks's servants, understanding what he was about, immediately fetched his master's knife, which it seems he had laid by the day before, and till now knew nothing of its having been missed. Tubourai Tamaide, upon this demonstration of his innocence, expressed the strongest emotions of mind, both in his looks and gestures; the tears started from his eyes, and he made signs, with the knife, that, if he was ever guilty of such an action as had been imputed to him, he would submit to have his throat cut. He then rushed out of the lines, and returned hastily to Mr Banks, with a countenance that severely reproached him with his suspicions. Mr Banks soon understood that the knife had been received from his servant, and was scarcely less affected at what had happened than the Chief; he felt himself to be the guilty person, and was very desirous to atone for his fault. The poor Indian, however violent his passions, was a stranger to fullen resentment; and upon Mr Banks's spending a little time familiarly with him, and making him a few trifling presents, he forgot the wrong that had been done him, and was perfectly reconciled.

Upon this occasion it may be observed, that these people have a knowledge of right and wrong from the mere dictates of natural conscience; and involuntarily condemn themselves when they do that to others, which they would condemn others for doing to them. That Tubourai Tamaide felt the force of moral obligation, is certain;

certain; for the imputation of an action which he considered as indifferent, would not, when it appeared to be groundless, have moved him with such excess of passion. We must indeed estimate the virtue of these people, by the only standard of morality, the conformity of their conduct to what in their opinion is right; but we must not hastily conclude that theft is a testimony of the same depravity in them that it is in us, in the instances in which our people were sufferers by their dishonesty; for their temptation was such, as to surmount what would be considered as a proof of uncommon integrity among those who have more knowledge, better principles, and stronger motives to resist the temptations of illicit advantage: an Indian among penny knives, and beads, or even nails and broken glass, is in the same state of trial with the meanest servant in Europe among unlocked coffers of jewels and gold.

On the 26th, I mounted six swivel guns upon the fort, which I was sorry to see struck the natives with dread: some fishermen who lived upon the point removed farther off, and Owhaw told us, by signs, that in four days we should fire great guns.

On the 27th, Tubourai Tamaide, with a friend, who eat with a voracity that I never saw before, and the three women that usually attended him, whose names were TERAPO, TIRAO, and OMIE, dined at the fort: in the evening they took their leave, and set out for the house which Tubourai Tamaide had set up in the skirts of the wood; but in less than a quarter of an hour he returned in great emotion, and hastily seizing Mr Banks's arm, made signs that he should follow him. Mr Banks immediately complied, and they soon came up to a place where they found the ship's butcher, with a reaping-hook in his hand: here the chief stopped, and, in a transport of rage which rendered his signs scarcely intelligible, intimated that the butcher had threatened, or attempted, to cut his wife's throat with the reaping-hook. Mr Banks then signified to him, that if he could fully explain the offence, the man should be punished.

Upon this he became more calm, and made Mr Banks understand that the offender, having taken a fancy to a stone hatchet which lay in his house, had offered to purchase it of his wife for a nail: that she having refused to part with it upon any terms, he had caught it up, and throwing down the nail, threatened to cut her throat if she made any resistance: to prove this charge the hatchet and the nail were produced, and the butcher had so little to say in his defence that there was not the least reason to doubt of its truth.

Mr Banks having reported this matter to me, I took an opportunity, when the chief and his women, with other Indians, were on board the ship, to call up the butcher, and after a recapitulation of the charge and the proof, I gave orders that he should be punished, as well to prevent other offences of the same kind, as to acquit Mr Banks of his promise; the Indians saw him stripped and tied up to the rigging with a fixed attention, waiting in silent suspense for the event; but as soon as the first stroke was given, they interfered with great agitation, earnestly intreating that the rest of the punishment might be remitted: to this, however, for many reasons, I could not consent, and when they found that they could not prevail by their intercession, they gave vent to their pity by tears.

Their tears indeed, like those of children, were always ready to express any passion that was strongly excited, and like those of children they also appeared to be forgotten as soon as shed; of which the following among many others, is a remarkable instance. Very early in the morning of the 28th, even before it was day, a great number of them came down to the fort, and Terapo being observed among the women on the outside of the gate, Mr Banks went out and brought her in; he saw that the tears stood in her eyes, and as soon as she entered they began to flow in great abundance: he enquired earnestly the cause, but instead of answering she took from under her garment a shark's tooth, and struck it six or seven times into her head

with

with great force; a profusion of blood followed, and she talked loud, but in a most melancholy tone, for some minutes, without at all regarding his enquiries, which he repeated with still more impatience and concern, while the other Indians, to his great surprize, talked and laughed, without taking the least notice of her distress. But her own behaviour was still more extraordinary. As soon as the bleeding was over, she looked up with a smile, and began to collect some small pieces of cloth, which during her bleeding she had thrown down to catch the blood; as soon as she had picked them up, she carried them out of the tent, and threw them into the sea, carefully dispersing them abroad, as if she wished to prevent the sight of them from reviving the remembrance of what she had done. She then plunged into the river, and after having washed her whole body, returned to the tents with the same gaiety and cheerfulness as if nothing had happened.

It is not indeed strange that the sorrows of these artless people should be transient, any more than that their passions should be suddenly and strongly expressed: what they feel they have never been taught either to disguise or suppress, and having no habits of thinking which perpetually recal the past, and anticipate the future, they are affected by all the changes of the passing hour, and reflect the colour of the time, however frequently it may vary: they have no project which is to be pursued from day to day, the subject of unremitting anxiety and solicitude, that first rushes into the mind when they awake in the morning, and is last dismissed when they sleep at night. Yet if we admit that they are upon the whole happier than we, we must admit that the child is happier than the man, and that we are losers by the perfection of our nature, the increase of our knowledge, and the enlargement of our views.

Canoes were continually coming in during all this forenoon, and the tents at the fort were crowded with people of both sexes from different parts of the Island. I was myself busy on board the ship, but Mr Mollineux,

our master, who was one of those that made the last voyage in the Dolphin, went on shore. As soon as he entered Mr Banks's tent he fixed his eyes upon one of the women, who was sitting there with great composure among the rest, and immediately declared her to be the person who at that time was supposed to be Queen of the island; she also, at the same time, acknowledging him to be one of the strangers whom she had seen before. The attention of all present was now diverted from every other object, and wholly engaged in considering a person who had made so distinguished a figure in the accounts that had been given of this island by its first discoverers; and we soon learnt that her name was OBEREA. She seemed to be about forty years of age, and was not only tall, but of a large make; her skin was white, and there was an uncommon intelligence and sensibility in her eyes: she appeared to have been handsome when she was young, but at this time little more than memorials of her beauty were left.

As soon as her quality was known, an offer was made to conduct her to the ship. Of this she readily accepted, and came on board with two men and several women, who seemed to be all of her family; I received her with such marks of distinction as I thought would gratify her most, and was not sparing of my presents, among which this august personage seemed particularly delighted with a child's doll. After some time spent on board, I attended her back to the shore; and as soon as we landed, she presented me with a hog, and several bunches of plantains, which she caused to be carried from her canoes up to the fort in a kind of procession, of which she and myself brought up the rear. In our way to the fort we met Tootahah, who, though not King, appeared to be at this time invested with the sovereign authority; he seemed not to be well pleased with the distinction that was shewed to the lady, and became so jealous when she produced her doll, that to propitiate him it was thought proper to compliment him with another. At this time he thought fit to present a doll

doll to a hatchet ; but this preference arose only from a childish jealousy, which could not be soothed but by a gift of exactly the same kind with that which had been presented to Oberea ; for dolls in a very short time were universally considered as trifles of no value.

The men who had visited us from time to time had, without scruple, eaten of our provisions ; but the women had never yet been prevailed upon to taste a morsel. To-day, however, though they refused the most pressing solicitations to dine with the gentlemen, they afterwards retired to the servants' apartment, and eat of plantains very heartily ; a mystery of female œconomy here, which none of us could explain.

On the 29th, not very early in the forenoon, Mr Banks went to pay his court to Oberea, and was told that she was still asleep under the awning of her canoe : thither therefore he went, intending to call her up, a liberty which he thought he might take without any danger of giving offence : but, upon looking into her chamber, to his great astonishment, he found her in bed with a handsome young fellow about five and twenty, whose name was OBADEE : he retreated with some haste and confusion, but was soon made to understand, that such amours gave no occasion to scandal, and that Obadee was universally known to have been selected by her as the object of her private favours. The lady being too polite to suffer Mr Banks to wait long in her antichamber, dressed herself with more than usual expedition, and as a token of special grace, clothed him in a suit of fine cloth and proceeded with him to the tents. In the evening, Mr Banks paid a visit to Tubourai Tamaide, as he had often done before, by candle light, and was equally grieved and surprized to find him and his family in a melancholy mood, and most of them in tears : he endeavoured in vain to discover the cause, and therefore his stay among them was but short. When he reported this circumstance to the officers at the fort, they recollected that Owhaw had foretold, that in four days we should fire our great guns ; and as this was the eve

of

of the third day, the situation in which Tubourai Tamaide and his family had been found, alarmed them. The sentries therefore were doubled at the fort, and the gentlemen slept under arms; at two in the morning, Mr Banks himself went round the point, but found every thing so quiet, that he gave up all suspicions of mischief intended by the natives as groundless. We had however another source of security; our little fortification was now complete. The north and south sides consisted of a bank of earth four feet and a half high on the inside, and a ditch without ten feet broad and six deep; on the west side, facing the bay, there was a bank of earth four feet high, and palisadoes upon that, but no ditch, the works here being at high-water mark; on the east side, upon the bank of the river, was placed a double row of water casks, filled with water; and as this was the weakest side, the two four pounders were planted there, and six swivel guns were mounted so as to command the only two avenues from the woods. Our garrison consisted of about five and forty men with small arms, including the officers, and the gentlemen who resided on shore; and our sentries were as well relieved as in the best regulated frontier in Europe.

We continued our vigilance the next day, though we had no particular reason to think it necessary; but about ten o'clock in the morning, Tomio came running to the tents, with a mixture of grief and fear in her countenance, and taking Mr Banks, to whom they applied in every emergency and distress, by the arm, intimated that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, in consequence of something which our people had given him to eat, and that he must instantly go with her to his house. Mr Banks set out without delay, and found his Indian friend leaning his head against a post, in an attitude of the utmost languor and despondency; the people about him intimated that he had been vomiting, and brought out a leaf folded up with great care, which they said contained some of the poison, by the deleterious effects of which he was now dying. Mr Banks hastily open-

ed

ed the leaf, and, upon examining its contents, found them to be no other than a chew of tobacco, which the Chief had begged of some of our people, and which they had indiscreetly given him: he had observed that they kept it long in the mouth, and being desirous of doing the same, he had chewed it to powder, and swallowed the spittle. During the examination of the leaf and its contents, he looked up at Mr Banks with the most piteous aspect, and intimated that he had but a very short time to live. Mr Banks, however, being now master of his disease, directed him to drink plentifully of cocoa-nut milk, which, in a short time, put an end to his sickness and apprehensions, and he spent the day at the fort with that uncommon flow of cheerfulness and good-humour, which is always produced by a sudden and unexpected relief from pain either of body or mind.

Captain Wallis having brought home one of the adzes which these people, having no metal of any kind, make of stone, Mr Stevens, the Secretary to the Admiralty, procured one to be made of iron in imitation of it, which I brought out with me, to shew how much we excelled in making tools after their own fashion: this I had not yet produced, as it never happened to come into my mind. But on the first of May, Tootahah coming on board about ten o'clock in the forenoon, expressed a great curiosity to see the contents of every chest and drawer that was in my cabin; as I always made a point of gratifying him, I opened them immediately, and having taken a fancy to many things that he saw, and collected them together, he at last happened to cast his eye upon this adze; he instantly snatched it up with the greatest eagerness, and putting away every thing which he had before selected, he asked me whether I would let him have that: I readily consented; and, as if he was afraid I should repent, he carried it off immediately in a transport of joy, without making any other request, which, whatever had been our liberality, was seldom the case.

About

About noon, a Chief, who had dined with me a few days before, accompanied by some of his women, came on board alone: I had observed that he was fed by his women, but I made no doubt, that upon occasion he would condescend to feed himself: in this, however, I found myself mistaken. When my noble guest was seated, and the dinner upon the table, I helped him to some victuals: as I observed that he did not immediately begin his meal, I pressed him to eat: but he still continued to sit motionless like a statue, without attempting to put a single morsel into his mouth, and would certainly have gone without his dinner, if one of the servants had not fed him.

In the afternoon of Monday, the 1st of May, we set up the observatory, and took the astronomical quadrant, with some other instruments on shore, for the first time.

The next morning, about nine o'clock, I went on shore with Mr Green to fix the quadrant in a situation for use, when, to our inexpressible surprize and concern, it was not to be found. It had been deposited in the tent which was reserved for my use, where, as I passed the night on board, no body slept: it had never been taken out of the packing-case, which was eighteen inches square, and the whole was of considerable weight; a sentinel had been posted the whole night within five yards of the tent door, and none of the other instruments were missing. We at first suspected that it might have been stolen by some of our own people, who seeing a deal box, and not knowing the contents, might think it contained nails, or some other subjects of traffic with the natives. A large reward was therefore offered to any one who could find it, as, without this, we could not perform the service for which our voyage was principally undertaken. Our search in the mean time was not confined to the fort and the places adjacent, but as the case might possibly have been carried back to the ship, if any of our own people had been the thieves, the most diligent search was made for it on board; all the parties however returned without any

any news of the quadrant. Mr Banks, therefore, who, upon such occasions, declined neither labour nor risk, and who had more influence over the Indians than any of us, determined to go in search of it into the woods; he hoped, that if it had been stolen by the natives, he should find it where-ever they had opened the box, as they would immediately discover that to them it would be wholly useless: or, if in this expectation he should be disappointed, that he might recover it by the ascendancy he had acquired over the Chiefs. He set out, accompanied by a midshipman and Mr Green, and as he was crossing the river he was met by Tubourai Tamaide, who immediately made the figure of a triangle with three bits of straw upon his hand. By this Mr Banks knew that the Indians were the thieves; and that, although they had opened the case, they were not disposed to part with the contents. No time was therefore to be lost, and Mr Banks made Tubourai Tamaide understand, that he must instantly go with him to the place whither the quadrant had been carried; he consented, and they set out together to the eastward, the Chief inquiring at every house which they passed after the thief by name: the people readily told him which way he was gone, and how long it was since he had been there: the hope which this gave them that they should overtake him, supported them under their fatigue, and they pressed forward, sometimes walking, sometimes running, though the weather was intolerably hot; when they had climbed a hill at the distance of about four miles, their conductor shewed them a point full three miles farther, and gave them to understand that they were not to expect the instrument till they had got thither. Here they paused; they had no arms, except a pair of pistols, which Mr Banks always carried in his pocket; they were going to a place that was at least seven miles distant from the fort, where the Indians might be less submissive than at home, and to take from them what they had ventured their lives to get; and what, notwithstanding our conjectures, they appeared desirous

to keep: these were discouraging circumstances, and their situation would become more critical at every step. They determined, however, not to relinquish their enterprise, nor to pursue it without taking the best measures for their security that were in their power. It was therefore determined, that Mr Banks and Mr Green should go on, and that the Midshipman should return to me, and desire that I should send a party of men after them, acquainting me at the same time, that it was impossible they should return till it was dark. Upon receiving this message I set out, with such a party as I thought sufficient for the occasion; leaving orders, both at the ship and at the fort, that no canoe should be suffered to go out of the bay, but that none of the natives should be seized or detained.

In the mean time, Mr Banks and Mr Green pursued their journey, under the auspices of Tubourai Tamaide, and in the very spot which he had specified, they met one of his own people, with part of the quadrant in his hand. At this most welcome sight they stopped; and a great number of Indians immediately came up, some of whom pressing rather rudely upon them, Mr Banks thought it necessary to shew one of his pistols, the sight of which reduced them instantly to order: as the crowd that gathered round them was every moment increasing, he marked out a circle in the grass, and they ranged themselves on the outside of it to the number of several hundreds with great quietness and decorum. Into the middle of this circle, the box, which was now arrived, was ordered to be brought, with several reading glasses, and other small matters, which in their hurry they had put into a pistol-case, that Mr Banks knew to be his property, it having been some time before stolen from the tents, with a horse pistol in it, which he immediately demanded, and which was also restored.

Mr Green was impatient to see whether all that had been taken away was returned, and upon examining the box found the stand, and a few small things of less consequence, wanting; several persons were sent in
search

search of these, and most of the small things were returned: but it was signified that the thief had not brought the stand so far, and that it would be delivered to our friends as they went back; this being confirmed by Tubourai Tamaide, they prepared to return, as nothing would then be wanting but what might easily be supplied; and after they had advanced about two miles, I met them with my party, to our mutual satisfaction, congratulating each other upon the recovery of the quadrant, with a pleasure proportioned to the importance of the event.

About eight o'clock, Mr Banks with Tubourai Tamaide got back to the fort; when, to his great surprize, he found Tootahah in custody, and many of the natives in the utmost terror and distress, crowding about the gate. He went hastily in, some of the Indians were suffered to follow him, and the scene was extremely affecting. Tubourai Tamaide pressing forward, ran up to Tootahah, and catching him in his arms, they both burst into tears, and wept over each other, without being able to speak: the other Indians were also in tears for their Chief, both he and they being strongly possessed with the notion that he was to be put to death. In this situation they continued till I entered the fort, which was about a quarter of an hour afterwards. I was equally surprized and concerned at what had happened, the confining Tootahah being contrary to my orders, and therefore instantly set him at liberty. Upon enquiring into the affair, I was told, that my going into the woods with a party of men under arms, at a time when a robbery had been committed, which it was supposed I should resent, in proportion to our apparent injury by the loss, had so alarmed the natives, that in the evening they began to leave the neighbourhood of the fort with their effects: that a double canoe having been seen to put off from the bottom of the bay by Mr Gore, the Second Lieutenant, who was left in command on board the ship, and who had received orders not to suffer any canoe to go out, he sent the Boatswain with a

boat after her to bring her back: that as soon as the boat came up, the Indians, being alarmed, leaped into the sea; and that Tootahah, being unfortunately one of the number, the Boatswain took him up, and brought him to the ship, suffering the rest of the people to swim on shore: that Mr Gore, not sufficiently attending to the order that none of the people should be confined, had sent him to the fort, and Mr Hicks, the First Lieutenant, who commanded there, receiving him in charge from Gore, did not think himself at liberty to dismiss him.

The notion that we intended to put him to death had possessed him so strongly, that he could not be persuaded to the contrary till by my orders he was led out of the fort. The people received him as they would have done a father in the same circumstances, and every one pressed forward to embrace him. Sudden joy is commonly liberal, without a scrupulous regard to merit; and Tootahah, in the first expansion of his heart, upon being unexpectedly restored to liberty and life, insisted upon our receiving a present of two hogs; though, being conscious that upon this occasion we had no claim to favours, we refused them many times.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander attended the next morning in their usual capacity of market-men, but very few Indians appeared, and those who came brought no provisions. Tootahah, however, sent some of his people for the canoe that had been detained, which they took away. A canoe having also been detained that belonged to Oberea, TUPIA, the person who managed her affairs when the Dolphin was here, was sent to examine whether any thing on board had been taken away: and he was so well satisfied of the contrary, that he left the canoe where he found it, and joined us at the fort, where he spent the day, and slept on board the canoe at night. About noon, some fishing boats came abreast of the tents, but would part with very little of what they had on board; and we felt the want of cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit very severely. In the course of the day,

Mr

son as the
eaped into
nately one
nd brought
ble to swim
tending to
e confined,
First Lieu-
n in charge
y to dismiss

o death had
be persuad-
as led out of
would have
d every one
joy is com-
rd to merit;
s heart, upon
life, insisted
though, be-
ad no claim.

the next morn-
but very few
ught no pro-
of his people
ch they took
that belong-
managed her
nt to examine
n away: and
at he left the
s at the fort,
ard the canoe
came abreast
ittle of what
of cocoa-nuts
se of the day.
Mr

Mr Banks walked out into the woods, that by conversing with the people he might recover their confidence and good-will: he found them civil, but they all complained of the ill-treatment of their Chief; who, they said, had been beaten and pulled by the hair. Mr Banks endeavoured to convince them, that he had suffered no personal violence, which to the best of our knowledge was true; yet, perhaps the Boatswain had behaved with a brutality which he was afraid or ashamed to acknowledge. The Chief himself being, probably, upon recollection, of opinion that we had ill-deserved the hogs, which he had left with us as a present, sent a messenger in the afternoon to demand an ax, and a shirt in return; but as I was told that he did not intend to come down to the fort for ten days, I excused myself from giving them till I should see him, hoping that his impatience might induce him to fetch them, and knowing that absence would probably continue the coolness between us, to which the first interview might put an end.

The next day we were still more sensible of the inconvenience we had incurred by giving offence to the people in the person of their Chief, for the market was so ill supplied that we were in want of necessaries. Mr Banks therefore went into the woods to Tubourai Tamaide, and with some difficulty persuaded him to let us have five baskets of bread-fruit; a very seasonable supply, as they contained above one hundred and twenty. In the afternoon another messenger arrived from Tootahah for the ax and shirt; as it was now become absolutely necessary to recover the friendship of this man, without which it would be scarcely possible to procure provisions, I sent word that Mr Banks and myself would visit him on the morrow, and bring what he wanted with us.

Early the next morning he sent again to remind me of my promise, and his people seemed to wait till we should set out with great impatience: I therefore ordered the pinnace, in which I embarked with Mr Banks and Dr Solander about ten o'clock: we took one of Tootahah's

hah's people in the boat with us, and in about an hour we arrived at his place of residence which is called ÉPARRE, and is about four miles to the westward of the tents.

We found the people waiting for us in great numbers upon the shore, so that it would have been impossible for us to have proceeded, if way had not been made for us by a tall well-looking man, who had something like a turban about his head, and a long white stick in his hand, with which he laid about him at an unmerciful rate. This man conducted us to the Chief, while the people shouted round us, *Taio Tootahah*, "Tootahah is your friend." We found him, like an ancient Patriarch, sitting under a tree, with a number of venerable old men standing round him; he made a sign to us to sit down, and immediately asked for his ax: this I presented to him, with an upper garment of broadcloth, made after the country fashion, and trimmed with tape, to which I also added a shirt: he received them with great satisfaction, and immediately put on the garment; but the shirt he gave to the person who had cleared the way for us upon our landing, who was now seated by us, and of whom he seemed desirous that we should take particular notice. In a short time, Oberea, and several other women whom we knew, came and sat down among us: Tootahah left us several times, but after a short absence returned; we thought it had been to show himself in his new finery to the people, but we wronged him, for it was to give directions for our refreshment and entertainment. While we were waiting for his return the last time he left us, very impatient to be dismissed, as we were almost suffocated in the crowd, word was brought us, that he expected us elsewhere: we found him sitting under the awning of our own boat, and making signs that we should come to him: as many of us therefore went on board as the boat would hold, and he then ordered bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts to be brought, of both which we tasted, rather to gratify him than because we had a desire to eat. A message was
soon

ut an hour
n is called
estward of

great num-
been impos-
been made
something
nite stick in
n unmerci-
Chief, while
b, "Toota-
an ancient
mber of ve-
made a sign
for his ax:
ent of broad-
rimmed with
ceived them
t on the gar-
ho had clear-
was now feat-
ous that we
ime, Oberea,
y, came and
al times, but
t it had been
ople, but we
as for our re-
were waiting
impatient to
in the crowd,
s elsewhere:
of our own
ome to him:
e boat would
cocoa-nuts to
her to gratify
message was
foen

soon brought him, upon which he went out of the boat, and we were in a short time desired to follow. We were conducted to a large area or court-yard, which was railed round with bamboos about three feet high, on one side of his house, where an entertainment was provided for us, entirely new: this was a wrestling match. At the upper end of the area sat the Chief, and several of his principal men were ranged on each side of him, so as to form a semicircle; these were the judges, by whom the victor was to be applauded; seats were also left for us at each end of the line, but we chose rather to be at liberty among the rest of the spectators.

When all was ready, ten or twelve persons, whom we understood to be the combatants, and who were naked, except a cloth that was fastened about the waist, entered the area, and walked slowly round it, in a stooping posture, with their left hands on their right breasts, and their right hands open, with which they frequently struck the left fore-arm so as to produce a quick smart sound: this was a general challenge to the combatants whom they were to engage, or any other person present: after these followed others in the same manner, and then a particular challenge was given, by which each man singled out his antagonist: this was done by joining the finger ends of both hands, and bringing them to the breast, at the same time moving the elbows up and down with a quick motion: if the person to whom this was addressed accepted the challenge, he repeated the signs, and immediately each put himself into an attitude to engage: the next minute they closed; but, except in first seizing each other, it was a mere contest of strength: each endeavoured to lay hold of the other, first by the thigh, and if that failed by the hand, the hair, the cloth, or elsewhere as he could: when this was done they grappled, without the least dexterity or skill, till one of them, by having a more advantageous hold, or greater muscular force, threw the other on his back. When the contest was over, the old men gave the plaudit to the victor in a few words, which they repeated

peated together in a kind of tune : his conquest was also generally celebrated by three huzzas. The entertainment was then suspended for a few minutes, after which another couple of wrestlers came forward and engaged in the same manner : if it happened that neither was thrown, after the contest had continued about a minute, they parted, either by consent or the intervention of their friends, and in this case each slapped his arm, as a challenge to a new engagement, either with the same antagonist or some other. While the wrestlers were engaged, another party of men performed a dance which lasted also about a minute ; but neither of these parties took the least notice of each other, their attention being wholly fixed on what they were doing. We observed with pleasure, that the conqueror never exulted over the vanquished, and that the vanquished never repined at the success of the conqueror ; the whole contest was carried on with perfect good-will and good-humour, though in the presence of at least five hundred spectators, of whom some were women. The number of women indeed was comparatively small, none but those of rank were present, and we had reason to believe that they would not have been spectators of this exercise but in compliment to us.

This lasted about two hours ; during all which time the man who had made way for us when we landed, kept the people at a proper distance, by striking those who pressed forward very severely with his stick : upon enquiry we learnt, that he was an officer belonging to Tootahah, acting as a master of his ceremonies.

It is scarcely possible for those who are acquainted with the athletic sports of very remote antiquity, not to remark a rude resemblance of them in this wrestling-match among the natives of a little island in the midst of the Pacific Ocean : and even our female readers may recollect the account given of them by Fenelon in his *Telemachus*, where, though the events are fictitious, the manners of the age are faithfully transcribed from

authors

authors by whom they are supposed to have been truly related.

When the wrestling was over, we were given to understand that two hogs, and a large quantity of bread-fruit were preparing for our dinner, which, as our appetites were now keen, was very agreeable intelligence. Our host, however, seemed to repent of his liberality; for, instead of setting his two hogs before us, he ordered one of them to be carried into our boat; at first we were not sorry for this new disposition of matters, thinking that we should dine more comfortably in the boat than on shore, as the crowd would more easily be kept at a distance: but when we came on board, he ordered us to proceed with his hog to the ship; this was mortifying, as we were now to row four miles while our dinner was growing cold; however, we thought fit to comply, and were at last gratified with the cheer that he had provided, of which he and Tubourai Tamaide had a liberal share.

Our reconciliation with this man operated upon the people like a charm; for he was no sooner known to be on board, than bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and other provisions were brought to the fort in great plenty.

Affairs now went on in the usual channel; but pork being still a scarce commodity, our Master, Mr Mollineux, and Mr Green, went in the pinnace to the eastward, on the 8th, early in the morning, to see whether they could procure any hogs or poultry in that part of the country: they proceeded in that direction twenty miles; but though they saw many hogs, and one turtle, they could not purchase either at any price: the people every where told them, that they all belonged to Tootahah, and that they could sell none of them without his permission. We now began to think that this man was indeed a great Prince; for an influence so extensive and absolute could be acquired by no other. And we afterwards found that he administered the government of this part of the island, as sovereign, for a minor whom we never saw all the time that we were

upon it. When Mr Green returned from this expedition, he said he had seen a tree of a size which he was afraid to relate, it being no less than sixty yards in circumference; but Mr Banks and Dr Solander soon explained to him, that it was a species of the fig, the branches of which, bending down, take fresh root in the earth, and thus form a congeries of trunks, which being very close to each other, and all joined by a common vegetation, might easily be mistaken for one.

Though the market at the fort was now tolerably supplied, provisions were brought more slowly: a sufficient quantity used to be purchased between sun-rise and eight o'clock, but it was now become necessary to attend the greatest part of the day. Mr Banks, therefore, fixed his little boat up before the door of the fort, which was of great use as a place to trade in: hitherto we had purchased cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit for beads; but the market becoming rather slack in these articles, we were now, for the first time, forced to bring out our nails: one of our smallest size, which was about four inches long, procured us twenty cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit in proportion, so that in a short time our first plenty was restored.

On the 9th, soon after breakfast, we received a visit from Oberea, being the first that she had made us after the loss of our quadrant, and the unfortunate confinement of Tootahah; with her came her present favourite, Obadee, and Tupia: they brought us a hog and some bread-fruit, in return for which we gave her a hatchet. We had now afforded our Indian friends a new and interesting object of curiosity, our forge, which having been set up some time, was almost constantly at work. It was now common for them to bring pieces of iron, which we supposed they must have got from the Dolphin, to be made into tools of various kinds; and as I was very desirous to gratify them, they were indulged, except when the smith's time was too precious to be spared. Oberea having received her hatchet, produced as much old iron as would have made another,

ther, with a request that another might be made of it : in this, however, I could not gratify her, upon which she brought out a broken ax, and desired it might be mended ; I was glad of an opportunity to compromise the difference between us : her ax was mended, and she appeared to be content. They went away at night, and took with them the canoe, which had been a considerable time at the point, but promised to return in three days.

On the 10th, I put some seeds of melons and other plants into a spot of ground which had been turned up for the purpose ; they had all been sealed up by the person of whom they were bought, in small bottles with rosin ; but none of them came up except mustard ; even the cucumbers and melons failed, and Mr Banks is of opinion that they were spoiled by the total exclusion of fresh air.

This day we learnt the Indian name of the island, which is *OTAHEITE*, and by that name I shall hereafter distinguish it : but after great pains taken we found it utterly impossible to teach the Indians to pronounce our names ; we had, therefore, new names, consisting of such sounds as they produced in the attempt. They called me *Toote* ; Mr Hicks, *Hete* ; Molineux they renounced in absolute despair, and called the Master *Boba*, from his Christian name Robert ; Mr Gore was *Toarro* ; Dr Solander, *Torano* ; and Mr Banks, *Tapane* ; Mr Green, *Eterce* ; Mr Parkinson, *Patini* ; Mr Sporing, *Polini* ; Peterfgill, *Petrodero* ; and in this manner they had now formed names for almost every man in the ship : in some, however, it was not easy to find any traces of the original, and they were perhaps not mere arbitrary sounds formed upon the occasion, but significant words in their own language. Monkhouse, the Midshipman, who commanded the party that killed the man for stealing the musket, they called *Matte* ; not merely by an attempt to imitate in sound the first syllable of Monkhouse, but because *Matte* signifies *dead* ; and this probably might be the case with others.

Friday, the 12th of May, was distinguished by a visit from some ladies whom we had never seen before, and who introduced themselves with some very singular ceremonies. Mr Banks was trading in his boat at the gate of the fort as usual, in company with Tootahah, who had that morning paid him a visit, and some other of the natives; between nine and ten o'clock, a double canoe came to the landing-place, under the awning of which sat a man and two women: the Indians that were about Mr Banks made signs that he should go out to meet them, which he hastened to do; but by the time he could get out of the boat, they had advanced within ten yards of him: they then stopped, and made signs that he should do so too, laying down about a dozen young plantain trees, and some other small plants: he complied, and the people having made a lane between them, the man, who appeared to be a servant, brought them to Mr Banks by one of each at a time, passing and repassing six times, and always pronouncing a short sentence when he delivered them. Tupia, who stood by Mr Banks, acted as his master of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches as they were brought, laid them down in the boat. When this was done, another man brought a large bundle of cloth, which having opened, he spread piece by piece upon the ground, in the space between Mr Banks and his visitors; there were nine pieces, and having laid three pieces one upon another, the foremost of the women, who seemed to be the principal, and who was called OORATTOOA, stepped upon them, and taking up her garments all round her to the waist, turned about, with great composure and deliberation, and with an air of perfect innocence and simplicity, three times; when this was done, she dropped the veil, and stepping off the cloth, three more pieces were laid on, and she repeated the ceremony, then stepping off as before; the last three were laid on, and the ceremony was repeated in the same manner the third time. Immediately after this the cloth was rolled up, and given to Mr Banks, as a present from the lady, who, with her friend,

friend, came up and saluted him. He made such presents to them both as he thought would be most acceptable, and after having staid about an hour they went away. In the evening, the Gentlemen at the fort had a visit from Oberea, and her favourite female attendant, whose name was OTHEOTHEA, an agreeable girl; whom they were the more pleased to see, because, having been some days absent, it had been reported that she was either sick or dead.

On the 13th, the market being over about ten o'clock, Mr Banks walked into the woods with his gun, as he generally did, for the benefit of the shade in the heat of the day: as he was returning back, he met Tubourat Tamaide, near his occasional dwelling, and stopping to spend a little time with him, he suddenly took the gun out of Mr Banks's hand, cocked it, and holding it up in the air, drew the trigger: fortunately for him, it flashed in the pan: Mr Banks immediately took it from him, not a little surpris'd how he had acquired sufficient knowledge of a gun to discharge it, and reproved him with great severity for what he had done. As it was of infinite importance to keep the Indians totally ignorant of the management of fire arms, he had taken every opportunity of intimating that they could never offend him so highly as by even touching his piece; it was now proper to enforce this prohibition, and he therefore added threats to his reproof: the Indian bore all patiently; but the moment Mr Banks crossed the river, he set off with all his family and furniture for his house at Eparee. This being quickly known from the Indians at the fort, and great inconvenience being apprehended from the displeasure of this man, who upon all occasions had been particularly useful, Mr Banks determin'd to follow him without delay, and solicit his return: he set out the same evening, accompanied by Mr Mollineux, and found him sitting in the middle of a large circle of people, to whom he had probably related what had happened, and his fears of the consequences; he was himself the very picture of grief and dejection, and the same
passions

passions were strongly marked in the countenances of all the people that surrounded him. When Mr Banks and Mr Mollineux went into the circle, one of the women expressed her trouble, as Terapo had done upon another occasion, and struck a shark's tooth into her head several times, till it was covered with blood. Mr Banks lost no time in putting an end to this universal distress; he assured the Chief, that every thing which had passed should be forgotten, that there was not the least animosity remaining on one side, nor any thing to be feared on the other. The Chief was soon soothed into confidence and complacency, a double canoe was ordered to be got ready, they all returned together to the fort before supper, and as a pledge of perfect reconciliation, both he and his wife slept all night in Mr Banks's tent: their presence, however, was no palladium; for, between eleven and twelve o'clock, one of the natives attempted to get into the fort by scaling the walls, with a design, no doubt, to steal whatever he should happen to find; he was discovered by the centinel, who happily did not fire, and he ran away much faster than any of our people could follow him. The iron, and iron-tools, which were in continual use at the armourer's forge, that was set up within the works, were temptations to theft which none of these people could withstand.

On the 14th, which was Sunday, I directed that Divine Service should be performed at the fort: we were desirous that some of the principal Indians should be present, but when the hour came, most of them were returned home. Mr Banks, however, crossed the river, and brought back Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio, hoping that it would give occasion to some enquiries on their part, and some instruction on ours: having seated them, he placed himself between them, and during the whole service, they very attentively observed his behaviour, and very exactly imitated it; standing, sitting, or kneeling, as they saw him do: they were conscious that we were employed about somewhat serious and important, as appeared by their calling

calling to the Indians without the fort to be silent; yet when the service was over, neither of them asked any questions, nor would they attend to any attempt that was made to explain what had been done.

Such were our Matins; our Indians thought fit to perform Vespers of a very different kind. A young man, near six feet high, performed the rites of Venus with a little girl about eleven or twelve years of age, before several of our people, and a great number of the natives, without the least sense of its being indecent or improper, but, as appeared, in perfect conformity to the custom of the place. Among the spectators were several women of superior rank, particularly Oberea, who may properly be said to have assisted at the ceremony; for they gave instructions to the girl how to perform her part, which, young as she was, she did not seem much to stand in need of.

This incident is not mentioned as an object of idle curiosity, but as it deserves consideration in determining a question which has been long debated in philosophy; Whether the shame attending certain actions, which are allowed on all sides to be in themselves innocent, is implanted in Nature, or superinduced by custom, it will, perhaps, be found difficult to trace that custom, however general, to its source; if in instinct, it will be equally difficult to discover from what cause it is subdued or at least over-ruled among these people, in whose manners not the least trace of it is to be found.

On the 14th and 15th, we had another opportunity of observing the general knowledge which these people had of any design that was formed among them. In the night between the 13th and 14th, one of the water-casks was stolen from the outside of the fort: in the morning, there was not an Indian to be seen who did not know that it was gone; yet they appeared not to have been trusted, or not to have been worthy of trust; for they seemed all of them disposed to give intelligence where it might be found. Mr Banks traced it to a part of the bay where he was told it had been put
into

into a canoc, but as it was not of great consequence he did not complete the discovery. When he returned, he was told by Tubourai Tamaide, that another cask would be stolen before the morning: how he came by this knowledge it is not easy to imagine; that he was not a party in the design is certain, for he came with his wife and his family to the place where the water casks stood, and placing their beds near them, he said he would himself be a pledge for their safety, in despite of the thief: of this, however, we would not admit; and making him understand that a sentry would be placed to watch the casks till the morning, he removed the beds into Mr Banks's tent, where he and his family spent the night, making signs to the sentry when he retired, that he should keep his eyes open. In the night this intelligence appeared to be true; about twelve o'clock the thief came, but discovering that a watch had been set, he went away without his booty.

Mr Banks's confidence in Tubourai Tamaide had greatly increased since the affair of the knife, in consequence of which he was at length exposed to temptations which neither his integrity nor his honour was able to resist. They had withstood many allurements, but were at length ensnared by the fascinating charms of a basket of nails; these nails were much larger than any that had yet been brought into trade, and had, with perhaps some degree of criminal negligence, been left in a corner of Mr Banks's tent, to which the Chief had always free access. One of these nails Mr Banks's servant happened to see in his possession, upon his having inadvertently thrown back that part of his garment under which it was concealed. Mr Banks being told of this, and knowing that no such thing had been given him, either as a present or in barter, immediately examined the basket, and discovered, that out of seven nails five were missing. He then, though not without great reluctance, charged him with the fact, which he immediately confessed, and however he might suffer, was probably not more hurt than his accuser. A demand

mand was immediately made of restitution; but this he declined, saying, that the nails were at Eparee: however, Mr Banks appearing to be much in earnest, and using some threatening signs, he thought fit to produce one of them. He was then taken to the fort, to receive such judgment as should be given against him by the general voice.

After some deliberation, that we might not appear to think too lightly of his offence, he was told, that if he would bring the other four nails to the fort, it should be forgotten. To this condition he agreed; but I am sorry to say he did not fulfil it. Instead of fetching the nails, he removed with his family before night, and took all his furniture with him.

As our long-boat had appeared to be leaky, I thought it necessary to examine her bottom, and, to my great surprize, found it so much eaten by the worms, that it was necessary to give her a new one; no such accident had happened to the Dolphin's boats, as I was informed by the officers on board, and therefore it was a misfortune that I did not expect; I feared that the pinnace also might be nearly in the same condition; but, upon examining her, I had the satisfaction to find that not a worm had touched her, though she was built of the same wood, and had been as much in the water; the reason of this difference I imagined to be, that the long-boat was paid with varnish of pine, and the pinnace painted with white lead and oil; the bottoms of all boats therefore which are sent into this country should be painted like that of the pinnace, and the ships should be supplied with a good stock, in order to give them a new coating when it should be found necessary.

Having received repeated messages from Tootahah, that if we would pay him a visit he would acknowledge the favour by a present of four hogs, I sent Mr Hicks, my First Lieutenant, to try if he could not procure the hogs upon easier terms, with orders to show him every civility in his power. Mr Hicks found that he was removed from Eparee to a place called TETTAHAN; five miles

miles farther to the westward. He was received with great cordiality; one hog was immediately produced, and he was told that the other three, which were at some distance, should be brought in the morning. Mr Hicks readily consented to stay; but the morning came without the hogs, and it not being convenient to stay longer, he returned in the evening, with the one that he had got.

On the 25th, Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio made their appearance at the tent, for the first time since he had been detected in stealing the nails; he seemed to be under some discontent and apprehension, yet he did not think fit to purchase our countenance and good-will by restoring the four which he had sent away. As Mr Banks and the other Gentlemen treated him with a coolness and reserve which did not at all tend to restore his peace or good-humour, his stay was short, and his departure abrupt. Mr Monkhouse, the Surgeon, went the next morning in order to effect a reconciliation, by persuading him to bring down the nails, but he could not succeed.

On the 27th, it was determined that we should pay our visit to Tootahah, though we were not very confident that we should receive the hogs for our pains. I therefore set out early in the morning, with Mr Banks and Dr Solander, and three others, in the pinnace. He was now removed from Tettahah, where Mr Hicks had seen him, to a place called ATAHOUROU, about six miles farther, and as we could not go above half way thither in the boat, it was almost evening before we arrived: we found him in his usual state, sitting under a tree, with a great crowd about him. We made our presents in due form, consisting of a yellow stuff petticoat, and some other trifling articles, which were graciously received; a hog was immediately ordered to be killed and dressed for supper, with a promise of more in the morning: however, as we were less desirous of feasting upon our journey than of carrying back with us provisions, which would be more welcome at the

the fort, we procured a reprieve for the hog, and supped upon the fruits of the country. As night now came on, and the place was crowded with many more than the houses and canoes would contain; there being Oberea with her attendants, and many other travellers whom we knew, we began to look out for lodgings. Our party consisted of six: Mr Banks thought himself fortunate in being offered a place by Oberea in her canoe, and wishing his friends a good night, took his leave. He went to rest early, according to the custom of the country, and taking off his clothes, as was his constant practice, the nights being hot, Oberea kindly insisted upon taking them into her own custody, for otherwise she said they would certainly be stolen. Mr Banks having such a safeguard, resigned himself to sleep with all imaginable tranquility: but awaking about eleven o'clock, and wanting to get up, he searched for his clothes where he had seen them deposited by Oberea when he laid down to sleep, and soon perceived that they were missing. He immediately awakened Oberea, who starting up, and hearing his complaint, ordered lights, and prepared in great haste to recover what he had lost: Tootahah himself slept in the next canoe, and being soon alarmed, he came to them and set out with Oberea in search of the thief: Mr Banks was not in a condition to go with them, for of his apparel scarce any thing was left him but his breeches; his coat, and his waistcoat, with his pistols, powder-horn, and many other things that were in the pockets, were gone. In about half an hour his two noble friends returned, but without having obtained any intelligence of his clothes or of the thief. At first he began to be alarmed, his musquet had not indeed been taken away, but he had neglected to load it; where I and Dr Solander had disposed of ourselves he did not know; and therefore, whatever might happen, he could not have recourse to us for assistance. He thought it best, however, to express neither fear nor suspicion of those about him, and giving his musquet to Tupia, who had been

Q 2

waked

waked in the confusion and stood by him, with a charge not to suffer it to be stolen, he betook himself again to rest, declaring himself perfectly satisfied with the pains that Tootahah and Oberea had taken to recover his things, though they had not been successful. As it cannot be supposed that in such a situation his sleep was very sound, he soon after heard music, and saw lights at a little distance on shore: this was a concert or assembly, which they call a HEIVA, a common name for every public exhibition; and as it would necessarily bring many people together, and there was a chance of my being among them with his other friends, he rose, and made the best of his way towards it: he was soon led by the lights and the sound to the hut where I lay, with three other Gentlemen of our party; and easily distinguishing us from the rest, he made up to us more than half naked, and told us his melancholy story. We gave him such comfort as the unfortunate generally give to each other, by telling him that we were fellow-sufferers; I showed him that I was myself without stockings, they having been stolen from under my head, though I was sure I had never been asleep, and each of my associates convinced him, by his appearance, that he had lost a jacket. We determined, however, to hear out the concert, however deficient we might appear in our dress; it consisted of three drums, four flutes, and several voices: when this entertainment, which lasted about an hour, was over, we retired again to our sleeping-places; having agreed, that nothing could be done toward the recovery of our things till the morning.

We rose at day-break, according to the custom of the country; the first man that Mr Banks saw was Tupia, faithfully attending with his musquet; and soon after, Oberea brought him some of her country clothes, as a succedaneum for his own, so that when he came to us he made a most motly appearance, half Indian and half English. Our party soon got together, except Dr Solander, whose quarters we did not know, and who had not assisted at the concert: in a short time Tootahah

made

made his appearance, and we pressed him to recover our clothes; but neither he nor Oberea could be persuaded to take any measure for that purpose, so that we began to suspect that they had been parties in the theft. About eight o'clock, we were joined by Dr Solander, who had fallen into honefter hands, at a house about a mile distant, and had lost nothing.

Having given up all hope of recovering our clothes, which indeed were never afterwards heard of, we spent all the morning in soliciting the hogs which we had been promised; but in this we had no better success: we therefore, in no very good humour, set out for the boat about twelve o'clock, with only that which we had redeemed from the butcher and the cook the night before.

As we were returning to the boat, however, we were entertained with a sight that in some measure compensated for our fatigue and disappointment. In our way we came to one of the few places where access to the island is not guarded by a reef, and, consequently, a high surf breaks upon the shore; a more dreadful one indeed I had seldom seen; it was impossible for any European boat to have lived in it; and if the best swimmer in Europe had, by any accident, been exposed to its fury, I am confident that he would not have been able to preserve himself from drowning; especially as the shore was covered with pebbles and large stones; yet, in the midst of these breakers, were ten or twelve Indians swimming for their amusement: whenever a surf broke near them, they dived under it, and, to all appearance with infinite facility, rose again on the other side. This diversion was greatly improved by the stern of an old canoe, which they happened to find upon the spot; they took this before them, and swam out with it as far as the outermost breach, then two or three of them getting into it, and turning the square end to the breaking wave, were driven in towards the shore with incredible rapidity, sometimes almost to the beach; but generally the wave broke over them before they got half way, in which case they dived, and rose on the

the other side with the canoe in their hands : they then swam out with it again, and were again driven back, just as our holiday youth climb the hill in Greenwich park for the pleasure of rolling down it. At this wonderful scene we stood gazing for more than half an hour, during which time none of the swimmers attempted to come on shore, but seemed to enjoy their sport in the highest degree ; we then proceeded on our journey, and late in the evening got back to the fort.

Upon this occasion it may be observed, that human nature is endued with powers which are only accidentally exerted to the utmost ; and that all men are capable of what no man attains, except he is stimulated to the effort by some uncommon circumstances or situation. These Indians effected what to us appeared to be supernatural, merely by the application of such powers as they possessed in common with us, and all other men who have no particular infirmity or defect. The truth of the observation is also manifest from more familiar instances. The rope-dancer and balance-master owe their art, not to any peculiar liberality of Nature, but to an accidental improvement of her common gifts ; and though equal diligence and application would not always produce equal excellence in these, any more than in other arts ; yet there is no doubt but that a certain degree of proficiency in them might be universally attained. Another proof of the existence of abilities in mankind, that are almost universally dormant, is furnished by the attainments of blind men. It cannot be supposed that the loss of one sense, like the amputation of a branch from a tree, gives new vigour to those that remain. Every man's hearing and touch, therefore, are capable of the nice distinctions which astonish us in those that have lost their sight, and if they do not give the same intelligence to the mind, it is merely because the same intelligence is not required of them : he that can see may do from choice what the blind do by necessity, and by the same diligent attention to the other senses, may receive the same notices from them ; let it therefore

therefore be remembered as an encouragement to persevering diligence, and a principle of general use to mankind, that he who does all he can, will ever effect much more than is generally thought to be possible.

Among other Indians that had visited us, there were some from a neighbouring island which they called EIMEO or IMAO, the same to which Capt. Wallis had given the name of the Duke of York's Island, and they gave us an account of no less than two and twenty islands that lay in the neighbourhood of Otaheite.

As the day of observation now approached, I determined, in consequence of some hints which had been given me by Lord Morton, to send out two parties to observe the transit from other situations; hoping, that if we should fail at Otaheite, they might have better success. We were, therefore, now busily employed in preparing our instruments, and instructing such Gentlemen in the use of them as I intended to send out.

On Thursday the 1st of June, the Saturday following being the day of the Transit, I dispatched Mr Gore in the long-boat to Imao, with Mr Monkhouse and Mr Sporing, a Gentleman belonging to Mr Banks, Mr Green having furnished them with proper instruments. Mr Banks himself thought fit to go upon this expedition, and several natives, particularly Tubourai Tamaide and Tomio, were also of the party. Very early on the Friday morning, I sent Mr Hicks, with Mr Clerk and Mr Petersgill, the Master's Mates, and Mr Saunders, one of the Midshipmen, in the pinnace to the eastward, with orders to fix on some convenient spot, at a distance from our principal observatory, where they also might employ the instruments with which they had been furnished for the same purpose.

The long-boat not having been got ready till Thursday in the afternoon, though all possible expedition was used to fit her out; the people on board, after having rowed most part of the night, brought her to a grappling just under the land of Imao. Soon after day-break, they saw an Indian canoe, which they hailed, and

and the people on board shewed them an inlet through the reef into which they pulled, and soon fixed upon a coral rock, which rose out of the water about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore, as a proper situation for their observatory: it was about eighty yards long and twenty broad, and in the middle of it was a bed of white sand, large enough for the tents to stand upon. Mr Gore and his assistants immediately began to set them up, and make other necessary preparations for the important business of the next day. While this was doing, Mr Banks, with the Indians of Otaheite, and the people whom they had met in the canoe, went ashore upon the main island, to buy provisions; of which he procured a sufficient supply before night. When he returned to the rock he found the observatory in order, and the telescopes all fixed and tried. The evening was very fine, yet their solicitude did not permit them to take much rest in the night: one or other of them was up every half hour, who satisfied the impatience of the rest by reporting the changes of the sky; now encouraging their hope by telling them that it was clear, and now alarming their fears by an account that it was hazy.

At day-break they got up, and had the satisfaction to see the sun rise, without a cloud. Mr Banks then, wishing the observers, Mr Gore and Mr Monkhouse, success, repaired again to the island, that he might examine its produce, and get a fresh supply of provisions: he began by trading with the natives, for which purpose he took his station under a tree; and to keep them from pressing upon him in a crowd, he drew a circle round them, which he suffered none of them to enter.

About eight o'clock, he saw two canoes coming towards the place, and was given to understand by the people about him, that they belonged to TARRAO, the King of the island, who was coming to make him a visit. As soon as the canoes came near the shore, the people made a lane from the beach to the trading-place, and his Majesty landed, with his sister, whose name

name was NUNA ; as they advanced towards the tree where Mr Banks stood, he went out to meet them, and, with great formality, introduced them into the circle from which the other natives had been excluded. As it is the custom of these people to sit during all their conferences, Mr Banks unwrapped a kind of turban of Indian cloth, which he wore upon his head instead of a hat, and spreading it upon the ground, they all sat down upon it together. The royal present was then brought, which consisted of a hog and a dog, some bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and other articles of the like kind. Mr Banks then dispatched a canoe to the observatory for his present, and the messengers soon returned with an adze, a shirt, and some beads, which were presented to his Majesty, and received with great satisfaction.

By this time, Tubourai Tamaide and Tomio joined them, from the observatory. Tomio said, that she was related to Tarrao, and brought him a present of a long nail, at the same time complimenting Nuna with a shirt.

The first internal contact of the planet with the sun being over, Mr Banks returned to the observatory, taking Tarrao, Nuna, and some of their principal attendants, among whom were three very handsome young women, with him : he showed them the planet upon the sun, and endeavoured to make them understand that he and his companions had come from their own country on purpose to see it. Soon after, Mr Banks returned with them to the island, where he spent the rest of the day in examining its produce, which he found to be much the same with that of Otaheite. The people whom he saw there also exactly resembled the inhabitants of that island, and many of them were persons whom he had seen upon it ; so that all those whom he had dealt with, knew of what his trading articles consisted, and the value they bore.

The next morning, having struck the tents, they set out on their return, and arrived at the fort before night.

The observation was made with equal success by the

persons whom I sent to the eastward, and at the fort, there not being a cloud in the sky from the rising to the setting of the sun, the whole passage of the planet Venus over the sun's disk was observed with great advantage by Mr Green, Dr Solander, and myself: Mr Green's telescope and mine were of the same magnifying power, but that of Dr Solander was greater. We all saw an atmosphere or dusky cloud round the body of the planet, which very much disturbed the times of contact, especially of the internal ones; and we differed from each other in our accounts of the times of the contacts much more than might have been expected. According to Mr Green,

	H.	M.	S.
The first external contact, or first appearance of Venus on the Sun, was	9	25	47
The first internal contact, or total immersion, was	9	44	
			Afternoon.
The second internal contact, or beginning of the emerision, —	3	14	8
The second external contact, or total emerision —	3	32	10

The latitude of the observatory was found to be 17 deg. 22 min. 15 sec. and the longitude 149 deg. 32 min. 30 sec. W. of Greenwich. A more particular account will appear by the tables, for which the reader is referred to the Transactions of the Royal Society, vol. lxi. part 2. page 397 and seq. where they are illustrated by a cut.

But if we had reason to congratulate ourselves upon the success of our observation, we had scarce less cause to regret the diligence with which that time had been improved by some of our people to another purpose. While the attention of the officers were engrossed by the Transit of Venus, some of the ship's company broke into one of the store-rooms, and stole a quantity of spike nails, amounting to no less than one hundred weight: this was a matter of public and serious concern; for these nails, if circulated by the people among the Indians, would do us irreparable injury, by reducing the value of iron, our staple commodity. One of the

the thieves was detected, but only seven nails were found in his custody. He was punished with two dozen lashes, but would impeach none of his accomplices.

On the 5th, we kept his Majesty's birth-day; for though it is the 4th, we were unwilling to celebrate it during the absence of the two parties who had been sent out to observe the Transit. We had several of the Indian Chiefs at our entertainment, who drank his Majesty's health by the name of Kihiaro, which was the nearest imitation they could produce of King George.

About this time died an old woman of some rank, who was related to Tomio, which gave us an opportunity to see how they disposed of the body, and confirmed us in our opinion that these people, contrary to the present custom of all other nations now known, never bury their dead. In the middle of a small square, neatly railed in with bamboo, the awning of a canoe was raised upon two posts, and under this the body was deposited upon a frame: it was covered with fine cloth, and near it was placed bread-fruit, fish, and other provisions: we supposed that the food was placed there for the spirit of the deceased, and consequently, that these Indians had some confused notion of a separate state; but upon our applying for further information to Tubourai Tamaido, he told us, that the food was placed there as an offering to their gods. They do not, however, suppose, that the gods eat, any more than the Jews supposed that Jehovah could dwell in a house: the offering is made here upon the same principle as the Temple was built at Jerusalem, as an expression of reverence and gratitude, and a solicitation of the more immediate presence of the Deity. In the front of the area was a kind of stile, where the relations of the deceased stood to pay the tribute of their sorrow; and under the awning were innumerable small pieces of cloth, on which the tears and blood of the mourners had been shed; for in their paroxysms of grief it is a universal custom to wound themselves with the shark's tooth. Within a

the fort,
g to the
net Ve-
advan-
lf: Mr
agnify-
r. We
he body
times of
differed
the con-
d. Ac-

H. M. S.
Morning-
9 25 47
9 44
Afternoon.
3 14 8
3 32 10

e 17 deg.
32 min.
r account
is refer-
vol. lxi.
trated by
ves upon
s cause to
been im-
purpose.
ed by the
ny broke
antity of
hundred
ous con-
le among
by redu-
One of
the

few yards two occasional houses were set up, in one of which some relations of the deceased constantly resided, and in the other the chief mourner, who is always a man, and who keeps there a very singular dress in which a ceremony is performed that will be described in its turn. Near the place where the dead are thus set up to rot, the bones are afterwards buried.

What can have introduced among these people the custom of exposing their dead above ground, till the flesh is consumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impossible to guess; but it is remarkable, that Ælian and Apollonius Rhodius impute a similar practice to the ancient inhabitants of Colchis, a country near Pontus in Asia, now called Mingrelia; except among them this manner of disposing of the dead did not extend to both sexes: the women they buried; but the men they wrapped in a hide, and hung up in the air by a chain. This practice among the Colchians is referred to a religious cause. The principal objects of their worship were the earth and the air; and it is supposed that, in consequence of some superstitious notion, they devoted their dead to both. Whether the natives of Otaheite had any notion of the same kind we were never able certainly to determine; but we soon discovered, that the repositories of their dead were also places of worship. Upon this occasion it may be observed, that nothing can be more absurd than the notion that the happiness or misery of a future life depends, in any degree, upon the disposition of the body when the state of probation is past; yet that nothing is more general than a solicitude about it. However cheap we may hold any funeral rites which custom has not familiarized, or superstition rendered sacred, most men gravely deliberate how to prevent their body from being broken by the mattock, and devoured by the worm, when it is no longer capable of sensation; and purchase a place for it in holy ground, when they believe the lot of its future existence to be irrevocably determined. So strong is the association of pleasing or
painful

painful ideas with certain opinions and actions which affect us while we live, that we involuntarily act as if it was equally certain that they would affect us in the same manner when we are dead, though this is an opinion that nobody will maintain. Thus it happens, that the desire of preserving from reproach even the name that we leave behind us, or of procuring it honour, is one of the most powerful principles of action, among the inhabitants of the most speculative and enlightened nations. Posthumous reputation, upon every principle, must be acknowledged to have no influence upon the dead; yet the desire of obtaining and securing it, no force of reason, no habits of thinking can subdue, except in those whom habitual baseness and guilt have rendered indifferent to honour and shame while they lived. This indeed seems to be among the happy imperfections of our nature, upon which the general good of society in a certain measure depends; for as some crimes are supposed to be prevented by hanging the body of the criminal in chains after he is dead, so in consequence of the same association of ideas, much good is procured to society, and much evil prevented, by a desire of preventing disgrace or procuring honour to a name, when nothing but a name remains.

Perhaps no better use can be made of reading an account of manners altogether new, by which the follies and absurdities of mankind are taken out of that particular connection in which habit has reconciled them to us, than to consider in how many instances they are essentially the same. When an honest devotee of the Church of Rome reads, that there are Indians on the banks of the Ganges, who believe that they shall secure the happiness of a future state by dying with a cow's tail in their hands, he laughs at their folly and superstition; and if these Indians were to be told, that there are people upon the continent of Europe, who imagine that they shall derive the same advantage from dying with the slipper of a St Francis upon their foot, they would laugh in their turn. But if, when the Indian heard the
account

account of the Catholic, and the Catholic that of the Indian, each was to reflect, that there was no difference between the absurdity of the slipper and of the tail; but that the veil of prejudice and custom, which covered it in their own case, was withdrawn in the other, they would turn their knowledge to a profitable purpose.

Having observed that bread-fruit had for some days been brought in less quantities than usual, we enquired the reason; and were told, that there being a great show of fruit upon the trees, they had been thinned all at once, in order to make a kind of four paste, which the natives call *Mahie*, and which, in consequence of having undergone a fermentation, will keep a considerable time; and supply them with food when no ripe fruit is to be had.

On the 10th, the ceremony was to be performed, in honour of the old woman whose sepulchral tabernacle has just been described, by the chief mourner; and Mr Banks had so great a curiosity to see all the mysteries of the solemnity, that he determined to take a part in it, being told; that he could be present upon no other condition. In the evening, therefore, he repaired to the place where the body lay, and was received by the daughter of the deceased, and several other persons, among whom was a boy about fourteen years old, who were to assist in the ceremony. Tubourai Tamaide was to be the principal mourner; and his dress, though extremely fantastical, was not unbecoming. Mr Banks was stripped of his European clothes, and a small piece of cloth being tied round his middle, his body was smeared with charcoal and water, as low as the shoulders, till it was as black as that of a negroe: the same operation was performed upon several others, among whom were some women, who were reduced to a state as near to nakedness as himself; the boy was blacked all over, and then the procession set forward. Tubourai Tamaide uttered something, which was supposed to be a prayer, near the body; and did the same when he came up to his own house:

house: when this was done, the procession was continued towards the fort, permission having been obtained to approach it upon this occasion. It is the custom of the Indians to fly from these processions with the utmost precipitation, so that as soon as those who were about the fort, saw it at a distance, they hid themselves in the woods. It proceeded from the fort along the shore, and put to flight another body of Indians, consisting of more than an hundred, every one hiding himself under the first shelter that he could find: it then crossed the river, and entered the woods, passing several houses, all which were deserted, and not a single Indian could be seen during the rest of the procession, which continued more than half an hour. The office that Mr Banks performed, was called that of the *Nineveh*, of which there were two besides himself; and the natives having all disappeared, they came to the chief mourner, and said *imatata*, there are no people; after which the company was dismissed to wash themselves in the river, and put on their customary apparel.

On the 12th, complaint being made to me, by some of the natives, that two of the seamen had taken from them several bows and arrows, and some strings of plaited hair, I examined the matter, and finding the charge well supported, I punished each of the criminals with two dozen lashes.

Their bows and arrows have not been mentioned before, nor were they often brought down to the fort: This day, however, Tubourai Tamaide brought down his, in consequence of a challenge which he had received from Mr Gore. The Chief supposed it was to try who could send the arrow farthest; Mr Gore, who best could hit a mark: and as Mr Gore did not value himself upon shooting to a great distance, nor the Chief upon hitting a mark, there was no trial of skill between them. Tubourai Tamaide, however, to shew us what he could do, drew his bow, and sent an arrow, none of which are feathered, two hundred and seventy-four yards, which is something more than a seventh, and some-

something less than a sixth part of a mile. Their manner of shooting is somewhat singular; they kneel down, and the moment the arrow is discharged, drop the bow.

Mr Banks, in his morning walk this day, met a number of the natives whom, upon enquiry, he found to be travelling musicians; and having learnt where they were to be at night, we all repaired to the place. The band consisted of two flutes and three drums, and we found a great number of people assembled upon the occasion. The drummers accompanied the musick with their voices, and, to our great surprize, we discovered that we were generally the subject of the song. We did not expect to have found among the uncivilized inhabitants of this sequestered spot, a character, which has been the subject of such praise and veneration where genius and knowledge have been most conspicuous; yet these were the bards or minstrels of Otaheite. Their song was unpremeditated, and accompanied with musick; they were continually going about from place to place, and they were rewarded by the master of the house, and the audience, with such things as one wanted and the other could spare.

On the 14th, we were brought into new difficulties and inconvenience by another robbery at the fort. In the middle of the night, one of the natives contrived to steal an iron coal-rake, that was made use of for the oven. It happened to be set up against the inside of the wall, so that the top of the handle was visible from without; and we were informed that the thief, who had been seen lurking there in the evening, came secretly about three o'clock in the morning, and, watching his opportunity when the centinel's back was turned, very dexterously laid hold of it with a long crooked stick, and drew it over the wall. I thought it of some consequence, if possible, to put an end to these practices at once, by doing something that should make it the common interest of the natives themselves, to prevent them. I had given strict orders that they should not be fired upon, even when detected in these attempts, for which I had
many

many reasons: the common centinels were by no means fit to be entrusted with a power of life and death, to be exerted whenever they should think fit, and I had already experienced that they were ready to take away the lives that were in their power, upon the slightest occasion; neither indeed did I think that the thefts which these people committed against us, were, in them, crimes worthy of death: that thieves are hanged in England, I thought no reason why they should be shot in Otaheite; because, with respect to the natives, it would have been an execution by a law *ex post facto*: they had no such law among themselves, and it did not appear to me that we had any right to make such a law for them. That they should abstain from theft, or be punished with death, was not one of the conditions under which they claimed the advantages of civil society, as it is among us; and as I was not willing to expose them to fire-arms, loaded with shot, neither could I perfectly approve of firing only with powder: at first, indeed, the noise and the smoke would alarm them, but when they found that no mischief followed, they would be led to despise the weapons themselves, and proceed to insults, which would make it necessary to put them to the test, and from which they would be deterred by the very sight of a gun, if it was never used but with effect. At this time, an accident furnished me with what I thought a happy expedient. It happened that above twenty of their sailing canoes were just come in with a supply of fish: upon these I immediately seized, and bringing them into the river behind the fort, gave publick notice, that except the rake, and all the rest of the things which from time to time had been stolen, were returned, the canoes should be burnt. This menace I ventured to publish, though I had no design to put it into execution, making no doubt but that it was well known in whose possession the stolen goods were, and that as restitution was thus made a common cause, they would all of them in a short time be brought back. A list of the things was made out, consisting principally of the rake,

the musquet which had been taken from the marine when the Indian was shot; the pistols which Mr Banks lost with his clothes at Atahourou; a sword belonging to one of the petty officers, and the water cask. About noon, the rake was restored, and great sollicitation was made for the release of the canoes; but I still insisted upon my original condition. The next day came, and nothing farther was restored, at which I was much surprised, for the people were in the utmost distress for the fish, which in a short time would be spoiled; I was, therefore, reduced to a disagreeable situation, either of releasing the canoes, contrary to what I had solemnly and publicly declared, or to detain them, to the great injury of those who were innocent, without answering any good purpose to ourselves: as a temporary expedient, I permitted them to take the fish; but still detained the canoes. This very licence, however, was productive of new confusion and injury; for, it not being easy at once to distinguish to what particular persons the several lots of fish belonged, the canoes were plundered, under favour of this circumstance, by those who had no right to any part of their cargo. Most pressing instances were still made that the canoes might be restored, and I having now the greatest reason to believe, either that the things for which I detained them were not in the island, or that those who suffered by their detention had not sufficient influence over the thieves to prevail upon them to relinquish their booty, determined at length to give them up, not a little mortified at the bad success of my project.

Another accident also about this time was, notwithstanding all our caution, very near embroiling us with the Indians. I sent the boat on shore with an officer to get ballast for the ship, and not immediately finding stones convenient for the purpose, he began to pull down some part of an inclosure where they deposited the bones of their dead: this the Indians violently opposed, and a messenger came down to the tents to acquaint the officers that they would not suffer it. Mr

Banks

Banks immediately repaired to the place, and an amicable end was soon put to the dispute, by sending the boat's crew to the river, where stones enough were to be gathered without a possibility of giving offence. It is very remarkable, that these Indians appeared to be much more jealous of what was done to the dead than the living. This was the only measure in which they ventured to oppose us, and the only insult that was offered to any individual among us was upon a similar occasion. Mr Monkhouse happening one day to pull a flower from a tree which grew in one of their sepulchral inclosures, an Indian, whose jealousy had probably been upon the watch, came suddenly behind him, and struck him: Mr Monkhouse laid hold of him, but he was instantly rescued by two more, who took hold of Mr Monkhouse's hair, and forced him to quit his hold of their companion, and then ran away without offering him any farther violence.

In the evening of the 19th, while the canoes were still detained, we received a visit from Oberea, which surprised us not a little, as she brought with her none of the things that had been stolen, and knew that she was suspected of having some of them in her custody. She said indeed, that her favourite Obadee, whom she had beaten and dismissed, had taken them away; but she seemed conscious, that she had no right to be believed: she discovered the strongest signs of fear, yet she surmounted it with astonishing resolution; and was very pressing to sleep with her attendants in Mr Banks's tent. In this, however, she was not gratified; the affair of the jackets was too recent, and the tent was besides filled with other people. No body else seemed willing to entertain her, and she therefore, with great appearance of mortification and disappointment, spent the night in her canoe.

The next morning early, she returned to the fort, with her canoe and every thing that it contained, putting herself wholly into our power, with something like greatness of mind, which excited our wonder and admiration.

miration. As the most effectual means to bring about a reconciliation, she presented us with a hog, and several other things, among which was a dog. We had lately learnt, that these animals were esteemed by the Indians as more delicate food than their pork; and upon this occasion we determined to try the experiment: the dog, which was very fat, we consigned over to Tupia, who undertook to perform the double office of butcher and cook. He killed him by holding his hands close over his mouth and nose, an operation which continued above a quarter of an hour. While this was doing, a hole was made in the ground about a foot deep, in which a fire was kindled, and some small stones placed in layers alternately with the wood to heat; the dog was then singed, by holding him over the fire, and, by scraping him with a shell, the hair taken off as clean as if he had been scalded in hot water: he was then cut up with the same instrument, and his entrails being taken out, were sent to the sea, where being carefully washed, they were put into cocoa-nut shells, with what blood had come from the body; when the hole was sufficiently heated, the fire was taken out, and some of the stones, which were not so hot as to discolour any thing that they touched, being placed at the bottom, were covered with green leaves: the dog, with the entrails, was then placed upon the leaves, and other leaves being laid upon them, the whole was covered with the rest of the hot stones, and the mouth of the hole close stopped with mould: in somewhat less than four hours it was again opened, and the dog taken out excellently baked, and we all agreed that he made a very good dish. The dogs which are here bred to be eaten, taste no animal food, but are kept wholly upon bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, yams, and other vegetables of the like kind: all the flesh and fish eaten by the inhabitants is dressed in the same way.

On the 21st, we were visited at the fort by a Chief, called OAMO, whom we had never seen before, and who was treated by the natives with uncommon respect; he brought with him a boy about seven years old, and

a young woman about sixteen : the boy was carried upon a man's back, which we considered as a piece of state, for he was as well able to walk as any present. As soon as they were in sight, Oberea, and several other natives who were in the fort, went out to meet them, having first uncovered their heads and bodies as low as the waist : as they came on, the same ceremony was performed by all the natives who were without the fort. Uncovering the body, therefore, is in this country probably a mark of respect ; and as all parts are here exposed with equal indifference, the ceremony of uncovering it from the waist downwards, which was performed by Oorattooa, might be nothing more than a different mode of compliment, adapted to persons of a different rank. The Chief came into the tent, but no entreaty could prevail upon the young woman to follow him, though she seemed to refuse contrary to her inclination : the natives without were indeed all very solicitous to prevent her ; sometimes, when her resolution seemed to fail, almost using force : the boy also they restrained in the same manner ; but Dr Solander happening to meet him at the gate, took him by the hand, and led him in before the people were aware of it : as soon, however, as those that were within saw him, they took care to have him sent out.

These circumstances having strongly excited our curiosity, we enquired who they were, and were informed, that Oamo was the husband of Oberea, though they had been a long time separated by mutual consent ; and that the young woman and the boy were their children. We learnt also, that the boy, whose name was TERRIDIRI, was heir apparent to the sovereignty of the island, and that his sister was intended for his wife, the marriage being deferred only till he should arrive at a proper age. The sovereign at this time was a son of WHAPPAL, whose name was OUTOU, and who, as before has been observed, was a minor. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were brothers : Whappai was the eldest, and Oamo the second ; so that, Whappai having

ing no child but Outou, Terridiri, the son of his next brother Oamo, was heir to the sovereignty. It will perhaps, seem strange that a boy should be sovereign during the life of his father; but, according to the custom of the country, a child succeeds to a father's title and authority as soon as it is born: a regent is then elected, and the father of the new sovereign is generally continued in his authority, under that title, till his child is of age; but, at this time, the choice had fallen upon Tootahah, the uncle, in consequence of his having distinguished himself in a war. Oamo asked many questions concerning England and its inhabitants, by which he appeared to have great shrewdness and understanding.

On Monday the 26th, about three o'clock in the morning, I set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr Banks, to make the circuit of the island, with a view to sketch out the coast and harbours. We took our route to the eastward, and about eight in the forenoon we went on shore, in a district called *Oabounue*, which is governed by AHIO, a young Chief, whom we had often seen at the tents, and who favoured us with his company to breakfast. Here also we found two other natives of our old acquaintance, TITUBOALO and HOONA, who carried us to their houses, near which we saw the body of the old woman, at whose funeral rites Mr Banks had assisted, and which had been removed hither from the spot where it was first deposited, this place having descended from her by inheritance to Hoona, and it being necessary on that account that it should lie here. We then proceeded on foot, the boat attending within call, to the harbour in which Mr. Bougainville lay, called OHIDEA, where the natives shewed us the ground upon which his people pitched their tent, and the brook at which they watered, though no trace of them remained, except the holes where the poles of the tent had been fixed, and a small piece of potsherd, which Mr Banks found in looking narrowly about the spot. We met, however, with ORETTE,

a Chief who was their principal friend, and whose brother OUTORROU went away with them.

This harbour lies on the west side of a great bay, under shelter of a small island called BOUOUROU, near which is another called TAAWIRRII; the breach in the reefs is here very large, but the shelter for the ships is not the best.

Soon after we had examined this place, we took boat, and asked Tituboalo to go with us to the other side of the bay; but he refused, and advised us not to go, for he said the country there was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would kill both him and us. Upon receiving this intelligence, we did not, as may be imagined, relinquish our enterprize; but we immediately loaded our pieces with ball: this was so well understood by Tituboalo as a precaution which rendered us formidable, that he now consented to be of our party.

Having rowed till it was dark, we reached a low neck of land, or isthmus, at the bottom of the bay, that divides the island into two peninsulas, each of which is a district or government wholly independent of the other. From Port-Royal, where the ship was at anchor, the coast trends E. by S. and E. S. E. ten miles, then S. by E. and S. eleven miles to the isthmus. In the first direction, the shore is in general open to the sea; but in the last it is covered by reefs of rocks, which form several good harbours, with safe anchorage, in 16, 18, 20, and 24 fathom of water, with other conveniences. As we had not yet got into our enemy's country, we determined to sleep on shore: we landed, and though we found but few houses, we saw several double canoes whose owners were well known to us, and who provided us with supper and lodging; of which Mr Banks was indebted for his share to Ooratooa, the lady who had paid him her compliments in so singular a manner at the fort.

In the morning, we looked about the country, and found it to be a marshy flat, about two miles over, across
which

which the natives haul their canoes to the corresponding bay on the other side. We then prepared to continue our rout for what Tituboalo called the other kingdom; he said that the name of it was TIARRABOU, or OTAHEITE ETE; and that of the Chief who governed it, WAHEATUA: upon this occasion also, we learnt that the name of the peninsula where we had taken our station was OPOUREONU, or OTAHEITE NUE. Our new associate seemed to be now in better spirits than he had been the day before; the people in Tiarrabou would not kill us, he said, but he assured us that we should be able to procure no victuals among them; and indeed we had seen no bread-fruit since we set out.

After rowing a few miles, we landed in a district, which was the dominion of a Chief called MARAITATA, the burying-place of men; whose father's name was PAHAIREDO, the stealer of boats. Though these names seemed to favour the account that had been given by Tituboalo, we soon found that it was not true. Both the father and the son received us with the greatest civility, gave us provisions, and, after some delay, sold us a very large hog for a hatchet. A crowd soon gathered round us, but we saw only two people that we knew; neither did we observe a single bead or ornament among them that had come from our ship, though we saw several things which had been brought from Europe. In one of the houses lay two twelve-pound shot, one of which was marked with the broad arrow of England, though the people said they had them from the ships that lay in Bougainville's harbour.

We proceeded on foot till we came to the district which was immediately under the government of the principal Chief, or King of the peninsula, Waheatua. Waheatua had a son, but whether, according to the custom of Opoureonu, he administered the government as regent, or in his own right, is uncertain. This district consists of a large and fertile plain, watered by a river so wide, that we were obliged to ferry over it in a canoe; our Indian train, however, chose to swim, and took to the

water with the same facility as a pack of hounds. In this place we saw no house that appeared to be inhabited, but the ruins of many, that had been very large. We proceeded along the shore; which forms a bay, called OAITIPEHA, and at last we found the Chief sitting near some pretty canoe awnings, under which, we supposed, he and his attendants slept. He was a thin old man, with a very white head and beard, and had with him a comely woman, about five and twenty years old, whose name was TOUDIDDE. We had often heard the name of this woman, and, from report and observation, we had reason to think that she was the OBEREA of this peninsula. From this place, between which and the isthmus there are other harbours, formed by the reefs that lie along the shore, where shipping may lie in perfect security, and from whence the land trends S. S. E. and S. to the S. E. part of the island, we were accompanied by TEAREE, the son of Waheatua, of whom we had purchased a hog, and the country we passed through appeared to be more cultivated than any we had seen in other parts of the island: the brooks were every where banked into narrow channels with stone, and the shore had also a facing of stone, where it was washed by the sea. The houses were neither large nor numerous, but the canoes that were hauled up along the shore were almost innumerable, and superior to any that we had seen before, both in size and make; they were longer, the sterns were higher, and the awnings were supported by pillars. At almost every point there was a sepulchral building; and there were many of them also in land. They were of the same figure as those in Opoureonu, but they were cleaner and better kept, and decorated with many carved boards, which were set upright, and on the top of which were various figures of birds and men: on one in particular, there was the representation of a cock, which was painted red and yellow, to imitate the feathers of that animal, and rude images of men were, in some of them, placed one upon the head of another. But in this part of the country, however fertile and cultivated,

we did not see a single bread-fruit; the trees were entirely bare, and the inhabitants seemed to subsist principally upon nuts which are not unlike a chestnut, and which they call *Ahee*:

When we had walked till we were weary, we called up the boat, but both our Indians, Tituboalo and Tuahow, were missing: they had, it seems, stayed behind at Waheatua's, expecting us to return thither, in consequence of a promise which had been extorted from us, and which we had it not in our power to fulfil.

Tearee, however, and another, embarked with us, and we proceeded till we came a-breast of a small island called OTOOAREITE; it being then dark, we determined to land, and our Indians conducted us to a place where they said we might sleep: it was a deserted house, and near it was a little cove, in which the boat might lie with great safety and convenience. We were, however, in want of provisions, having been very sparingly supplied since we set out; and Mr Banks immediately went into the woods to see whether any could be procured. As it was dark, he met with no people, and could find but one house that was inhabited: a bread-fruit and a half, a few Ahees, and some fire, were all that it afforded; upon which, with a duck or two, and a few curlicus, we made our supper, which, if not scanty, was disagreeable, by the want of bread, with which we had neglected to furnish ourselves, as we depended upon meeting with bread-fruit, and took up our lodging under the awning of a canoe belonging to Tearee, which followed us.

The next morning, after having spent some time in another fruitless attempt to procure a supply of provisions, we proceeded round the south east point, part of which is not covered by any reef, but lies open to the sea; and here the hill rises directly from the shore. At the southernmost part of the island, the shore is again covered by a reef, which forms a good harbour; and the land about it is very fertile. We made this rout partly on foot, and partly in the boat: when we had walked

about

about three miles, we arrived at a place where we saw several large canoes, and a number of people with them, whom we were agreeably surpris'd to find were of our intimate acquaintance. Here, with much difficulty, we procur'd some cocoa-nuts, and then embarked, taking with us Tuahow, one of the Indians who had waited for us at Waheatua's, and had returned the night before, long after it was dark.

When we came a-brea'st of the south-east end of the island, we went ashore, by the advice of our Indian guide, who told us that the country was rich and good. The Chief, whose name was MATHIABO, soon came down to us, but seem'd to be a total stranger both to us and to our trade: his subjects, however, brought us plenty of cocoa-nuts, and about twenty bread-fruit. The bread-fruit we bought at a very dear rate, but his excellency sold us a pig for a glass bottle, which he preferred to every thing else that we could give him. We found in his possession a goose and a turkey-cock, which, we were inform'd, had been left upon the island by the Dolphin; they were both enormously fat, and so tame that they followed the Indians, who were fond of them to excess, wherever they went.

In a long house in this neighbourhood, we saw what was altogether new to us. At one end of it, fastened to a semicircular board, hung fifteen human jaw-bones; they appear'd to be fresh, and there was not one of them that wanted a single tooth. A sight so extraordinary, strongly excited our curiosity, and we made many enquiries about it; but at this time could get no information, for the people either could not, or would not understand us.

When we left this place, the Chief, Mathiabo, desir'd leave to accompany us, which was readily granted. He continued with us the remainder of the day, and prov'd very useful, by piloting us over the shoals. In the evening, we opened the bay on the north west side of the island, which answer'd to that on the south east, so as at the isthmus, or carrying-place, almost to inter-

fect the island, as I have observed before ; and when we had coasted about two-thirds of it, we determined to go on shore for the night. We saw a large house at some distance, which, Mathiabo informed us, belonged to one of his friends ; and soon after several canoes came off to meet us, having on board some very handsome women, who, by their behaviour, seemed to have been sent to entice us on shore. As we had before resolved to take up our residence here for the night, little invitation was necessary. We found that the house belonged to the Chief of the district, whose name was WIVEROU : he received us in a very friendly manner, and ordered his people to assist us in dressing our provision, of which we had now got a tolerable stock. When our supper was ready, we were conducted into that part of the house where Wiverou was sitting, in order to eat it ; Mathiabo supped with us, and Wiverou calling for his supper at the same time, we eat our meal very sociably, and with great good humour. When it was over, we began to enquire where we were to sleep, and a part of the house was shewn us, of which we were told we might take possession for that purpose. We then sent for our cloaks, and Mr Banks began to undress, as his custom was, and, with a precaution which he had been taught by the loss of the jackets at Atahourou, sent his clothes aboard the boat, proposing to cover himself with a piece of Indian cloth. When Mathiabo perceived what was doing, he also pretended to want a cloak ; and, as he had behaved very well, and done us some service, a cloak was ordered for him. We lay down, and observed that Mathiabo was not with us ; but we supposed that he was gone to bathe, as the Indians always do before they sleep. We had not waited long, however, when an Indian, who was a stranger to us, came and told Mr Banks, that the cloak and Mathiabo had disappeared together. This man had so far gained our confidence, that we did not at first believe the report ; but it being soon after confirmed by Tuahow, our own Indian, we knew no time was to be lost. As it was

im-

impossible for us to pursue the thief with any hope of success, without the assistance of the people about us, Mr Banks started up, and telling our case, required them to recover the cloak; and to enforce his requisition, shewed one of his pocket pistols, which he always kept about him. Upon the sight of the pistol, the whole company took the alarm, and, instead of assisting to catch the thief, or recover what had been stolen, began with great precipitation to leave the place; one of them, however, was seized, upon which he immediately offered to direct the chase: I set out therefore with Mr Banks, and though we ran all the way, the alarm had got before us, for in about ten minutes we met a man bringing back the cloak, which the thief had relinquished in great terror; and as we did not then think fit to continue the pursuit, he made his escape. When we returned, we found the house, in which there had been between two and three hundred people, entirely deserted. It being, however, soon known that we had no resentment against any body but Mathiabo, the Chief Wiveron, our host, with his wife and many others, returned, and took up their lodging with us for the night. In this place, however, we were destined to more confusion and trouble, for about five o'clock in the morning our sentry alarmed us, with an account that the boat was missing: he had seen her, he said, about half an hour before, at her grappling, which was not above fifty yards from the shore; but upon hearing the sound of oars, he looked out again, and could see nothing of her. At this account we started up greatly alarmed, and ran to the water side: the morning was clear and star light, so that we could see to a considerable distance, but there was no appearance of the boat. Our situation was now such as might justify the most terrifying apprehensions; as it was a dead calm, and we could not therefore suppose her to have broken from her grappling, we had great reason to fear that the Indians had attacked her, and finding the people asleep, had succeeded in their enterprize: we were but four, with only one musquet

musquet and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or a charge of powder for either. In this state of anxiety and distress we remained a considerable time, expecting the Indians every moment to improve their advantage, when, to our unspeakable satisfaction, we saw the boat return, which had been driven from her grappling by the tide; a circumstance to which, in our confusion and surprize, we did not advert.

As soon as the boat returned, we got our breakfast, and were impatient to leave the place, lest some other vexatious accident should befall us. It is situated on the north side of Tiarrabou, the south east peninsula, or division, of the island, at the distant of about five miles south east from the isthmus, having a large and commodious harbour, inferior to none in the island, about which the land is very rich in produce. Notwithstanding we had had little communication with this division, the inhabitants every where received us in a friendly manner; we found the whole of it fertile and populous, and, to all appearance, in a more flourishing state than Opoureonu, though it is not above one fourth part as large.

The next district in which we landed, was the last in Tiarrabou, and governed by a Chief whose name we understood to be OMOE. Omoe was building a house, and being therefore very desirous of procuring a hatchet, he would have been glad to have purchased one with any thing that he had in his possession; it happened, however, rather unfortunately for him and us, that we had not one hatchet left in the boat. We offered to trade with nails, but he would not part with any thing in exchange for them; we therefore re-embarked, and put off our boat, but the Chief being unwilling to relinquish all hope of obtaining something from us that should be of use to him, embarked in a canoe; with his wife WHANNO-OU DA, and followed us. After some time, we took them into the boat, and when we had rowed about a league, they desired we would put ashore: we immediately complied with his request, and found

found some of his people who had brought down a very large hog. We were as unwilling to lose the hog, as the Chief was to part with us, and it was indeed worth the best axe we had in the ship; we therefore hit upon an expedient, and told him, that if he would bring his hog to the fort at MATAVAI; the Indian name for Port Royal bay, he should have a large axe, and a nail into the bargain, for his trouble. To this proposal, after having consulted with his wife, he agreed, and gave us a large piece of his country cloth as a pledge that he would perform his agreement, which, however, he never did.

At this place we saw a very singular curiosity: it was the figure of a man, constructed of basket work, rudely made, but not ill designed; it was something more than seven feet high, and rather too bulky in proportion to its height. The wicker skeleton was completely covered with feathers, which were white where the skin was to appear, and black in the parts which it is their custom to paint or stain, and upon the head, where there was to be a representation of hair: upon the head also were four protuberances, three in front and one behind, which we should have called horns, but which the Indians dignified with the name of TATE ETE, little men. The image was called MANIOE, and was said to be the only one of the kind in Otaheite. They attempted to give us an explanation of its use and design, but we had not then acquired enough of their language to understand them. We learnt, however, afterwards, that it was a representation of Mauwe, one of their Eatuas, or gods of the second class.

After having settled our affairs with Omoe, we proceeded on our return, and soon reached Opourenou, the north-west peninsula. After rowing a few miles, we went on shore again, but the only thing we saw worth notice, was a repository for the dead, uncommonly decorated: the pavement was extremely neat, and upon it was raised a pyramid, about five feet high, which was intirely covered with the fruits of two plants, peculiar

to the country. Near the pyramid was a small image of stone, of very rude workmanship, and the first instance of carving in stone that we had seen among these people. They appeared to set a high value upon it, for it was covered from the weather by a shed, that had been erected on purpose.

We proceeded in the boat, and passed through the only harbour, on the south side of Opoureonu, that is fit for shipping. It is situated about five miles to the westward of the isthmus, between two small islands that lie near the shore, and about a mile distant from each other, and affords good anchorage in eleven and twelve fathom water. We were now not far from the district called PAPARRA, which belonged to our friends Oamo and Oberea, where we proposed to sleep. We went on shore about an hour before night, and found that they were both absent, having left their habitations to pay us a visit at Matavai: this, however, did not alter our purpose, we took up our quarters at the house of Oberea, which, though small, was very neat, and at this time had no inhabitant but her father, who received us with looks that bid us welcome. Having taken possession, we were willing to improve the little day-light that was left us, and therefore walked out to a point, upon which we had seen, at a distance, trees that are here called *Etoa*, which generally distinguish the places where these people bury the bones of their dead: their name for such burying-grounds, which are also places of worship, is MORAI. We were soon struck with the sight of an enormous pile, which, we were told, was the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, and the principal piece of Indian architecture in the island. It was a pile of stone work, raised pyramidically, upon an oblong base, or square, two hundred and sixty-seven feet long, and eighty-seven wide. It was built like the small pyramidal mounts upon which we sometimes fix the pillars of a sun-dial, where each side is a flight of steps; the steps, however, at the sides, were broader than those at the ends, so that it terminated not in a square of the same figure with the base,

base, but in a ridge, like the roof of a house: there were eleven of these steps, each of which was four feet high, so that the height of the pile was forty-four feet; each step was formed of one course of white coral stone, which was neatly squared and polished, the rest of the mass, for there was no hollow within, consisted of round pebbles, which, from the regularity of their figure, seemed to have been wrought. Some of the coral stones were very large; we measured one of them, and found it three feet and an half by two feet and an half. The foundation was of rock stones, which were also squared; and one of them measured four feet seven inches by two feet four. Such a structure, raised without the assistance of iron tools to shape the stones, or mortar to join them, struck us with astonishment: it seemed to be as compact and firm as it could have been made by any workman in Europe, except that the steps, which range along its greatest length, are not perfectly strait, but sink in a kind of hollow in the middle, so that the whole surface, from end to end, is not a right line, but a curve. The quarry stones, as we saw no quarry in the neighbourhood, must have been brought from a considerable distance; and there is no method of conveyance here but by hand: the coral must also have been fished from under the water, where, though it may be found in plenty, it lies at a considerable depth, never less than three feet. Both the rock stone and the coral could be squared only by tools made of the same substance, which must have been a work of incredible labour; but the polishing was more easily effected by means of the sharp coral sand, which is found every where upon the sea-shore in great abundance. In the middle of the top stood the image of a bird, carved in wood; and near it lay the broken one of a fish, carved in stone. The whole of this pyramid made part of one side of a spacious area or square, nearly of equal sides, being three hundred and sixty feet by three hundred and fifty-four, which was walled in with stone, and paved with flat stones in its whole extent; though there were growing

in it, notwithstanding the pavement, several of the trees which they call *Etoa*, and plantains. About an hundred yards to the west of this building, was another paved area or court, in which were several small stages raised on wooden pillars, about seven feet high, which are called by the Indians *Ewattas*, and seem to be a kind of altars, as upon these are placed provisions of all kinds as offerings to their gods; we have since seen whole hogs placed upon them, and we found here the skulls of above fifty, besides the skulls of a great number of dogs.

The principal object of ambition among these people is to have a magnificent Morai, and this was a striking memorial of the rank and power of Oberea. It has been remarked, that we did not find her invested with the same authority that she exercised when the *Dolphin* was at this place, and we now learnt the reason of it. Our way from her house to the Morai lay along the sea-side, and we observed every where under our feet a great number of human bones, chiefly ribs and vertebræ. Upon enquiring into the cause of so singular an appearance, we were told, that in the then last month of *Owarahew*, which answered to our December, 1768, about four or five months before our arrival, the people of Tiarrabou, the S. E. peninsula which we had just visited, made a descent on this place, and killed a great number of people, whose bones were those that we saw upon the shore: that, upon this occasion, Oberea, and Oamo, who then administered the government for her son, had fled to the mountains; and that the conquerors burnt all the houses, which were very large, and carried away the hogs and what other animals they found. We learnt also, that the turkey and goose, which we had seen when we were with Mathiabo, the stealer of cloaks, were among the spoils; this accounted for their being found among people with whom the *Dolphin* had little or no communication; and upon mentioning the jaw-bones, which we had seen hanging from a board in a long house, we were told, that they also had been carried away as trophies, the people here carrying away the jaw-

jaw-bones of their enemies, as the Indians of North America do the scalps.

After having thus gratified our curiosity, we returned to our quarters, where we passed the night in perfect security and quiet. By the next evening we arrived at Atahourou, the residence of our friend Tootahah, where, the last time we passed the night under his protection, we had been obliged to leave the best part of our clothes behind us. This adventure, however, seemed now to be forgotten on both sides. Our friends received us with great pleasure, and gave us a good supper and a good lodging, where we suffered neither loss or disturbance.

The next day, Saturday, July the 1st, we got back to our fort at Matavai, having found the circuit of the island, including both peninsulas, to be about thirty leagues. Upon our complaining of the want of bread-fruit, we were told, that the produce of the last season was nearly exhausted; and that what was seen sprouting upon the trees, would not be fit to use in less than three months; this accounted for our having been able to procure so little of it in our route.

While the bread-fruit is ripening upon the flats, the inhabitants are supplied in some measure from the trees which they have planted upon the hills to preserve a succession; but the quantity is not sufficient to prevent scarcity: they live therefore upon the sour paste which they call *Mahie*, upon wild plantains, and ahee-nuts, which at this time are in perfection. How it happened that the Dolphin, which was here at this season, found such plenty of bread-fruit upon the trees, I cannot tell, except the season in which they ripen varies.

At our return, our Indian friends crowded about us, and none of them came empty-handed. Though I had determined to restore the canoes which had been detained to their owners, it had not yet been done; but I now released them as they were applied for. Upon this occasion I could not but remark with concern, that these people were capable of practising petty frauds against each

each other, with a deliberate dishonesty, which gave me a much worse opinion of them than I had ever entertained from the robberies they committed under the strong temptation to which a sudden opportunity of enriching themselves with the inestimable metal and manufactures of Europe exposed them.

Among others who applied to me for the release of a canoe, was one POTATTOW, a man of some consequence, well known to us all. I consented, supposing the vessel to be his own, or that he applied in the behalf of a friend: he went immediately to the beach, and took possession of one of the boats, which, with the assistance his people, he began to carry off. Upon this, however, it was eagerly claimed by the right owners, who, supported by the other Indians, clamorously reproached him for invading their property, and prepared to take the canoe from him by force. Upon this, he desired to be heard, and told them, that the canoe did, indeed, once belong to those who claimed it; but that I, having seized it as a forfeit, had sold it to him for a pig. This silenced the clamour, the owners, knowing that from my power there was no appeal, acquiesced; and Potattow would have carried off his prize, if the dispute had not fortunately been overheard by some of our people who reported it to me. I gave orders immediately that the Indians should be undeceived; upon which the right owners took possession of their canoe, and Potattow was so conscious of his guilt, that neither he nor his wife, who was privy to his knavery, could look us in the face for some time afterwards.

On the 3d, Mr Banks set out early in the morning, with some Indian guides, to trace our river up the valley from which it issues, and examine how far its banks were inhabited. For about six miles they met with houses, not far distant from each other, on each side of the river, and the valley was every where about four hundred yards wide from the foot of the hill on one side, to the foot of that on the other; but they were now shewn a house which they were told was the last

that

that they would see. When they came up to it, the master of it offered them refreshments of cocoa-nuts and other fruit, of which they accepted; after a short stay, they walked forward for a considerable time; in bad way it is not easy to compute distances, but they imagined that they had walked about six miles farther, following the course of the river, when they frequently passed under vaults, formed by fragments of the rock, in which they were told people who were benighted frequently passed the night. Soon after they found the river banked by steep rocks, from which a cascade, falling with great violence, formed a pool, so steep, that the Indians said they could not pass it. They seemed, indeed, not much to be acquainted with the valley beyond this place, their business lying chiefly upon the declivity of the rocks on each side, and the plains which extended on their summits, where they found plenty of a wild plantain, which they called *Vae*. The way up these rocks from the banks of the river was in every respect dreadful; the sides were nearly perpendicular, and in some places one hundred feet high; they were also rendered exceeding slippery by the water of innumerable springs which issued from the fissures on the surface: yet up these precipices a way was to be traced by a succession of long pieces of the bark of the *Hibiscus tiliaceus* which served as a rope for the climber to take hold of, and assisted him in scrambling from one ledge to another, though upon these ledges there was footing only for an Indian or a goat. One of these ropes was nearly thirty feet in length, and their guides offered to assist them in mounting this pass, but recommended another at a little distance lower down, as less difficult and dangerous. They took a view of this "better way" but found it so bad that they did not chose to attempt it, as there was nothing at the top to reward their toil and hazard but a grove of the wild plantain or *Vae* tree, which they had often seen before.

During this excursion, Mr Banks had an excellent opportunity

portunity to examine the rocks, which were almost every where naked, for minerals; but he found not the least appearance of any. The stones every where, like those of Madeira, shewed manifest tokens of having been burnt; nor is there a single specimen of any stone, among all those that were collected in the island, upon which there are not manifest and indubitable marks of fire; except perhaps small pieces of the hatchet-stone, and even of that, other fragments were collected which are burnt almost to a pumice. Traces of fire are also manifest in the very clay upon the hills; and it may, therefore, not unreasonably be supposed, that this, and the neighbouring islands, are either shattered remains of a continent, which some have supposed to be necessary in this part of the globe, to preserve an equilibrium of its parts, which were left behind when the rest sunk by the mining of a subterraneous fire, so as to give a passage to the sea over it; or were torn from rocks, which, from the creation of the world, had been the bed of the sea, and thrown up in heaps, to a height which the waters never reach. One or other of these suppositions will perhaps be thought the more probable, as the water does not gradually grow shallow as the shore is approached, and the islands are almost every where surrounded by reefs, which appear to be rude and broken, as some violent concussion would naturally leave the solid substance of the earth. It may also be remarked upon this occasion, that the most probable cause of earthquakes seems to be the sudden rushing in of water upon some vast mass of subterraneous fire, by the instantaneous rarefaction of which into vapour, the mine is sprung, and various substances, in all stages of vitrification, with shells, and other marine productions, that are now found fossil, and the strata that covered the furnace, are thrown up; while those parts of the land which are supported upon the broken shell give way, and sink into the gulph. With this theory the phenomena of all earthquakes seem to agree; pools of water are frequently left where land is subsided, and various sub-

substances, which manifestly appear to have suffered by the action of fire, are thrown up. It is indeed true, that fire cannot subsist without air; but this cannot be urged against there being fire below that part of the earth which forms the bed of the sea; because there may be innumerable fissures by which a communication between those parts and the external air may be kept up, even upon the highest mountains, and at the greatest distance from the sea-shore.

On the 4th, Mr Banks employed himself in planting a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, lemons, limes, and other plants and trees which he had collected at Rio de Janeiro. For these he prepared ground on each side of the fort, with as many varieties of soil as he could chuse; and there was little doubt but that they would succeed. He also gave liberally of these seeds to the Indians, and planted many of them in the woods: some of the melon seeds having been planted soon after our arrival, the natives shewed him several of the plants which appeared to be in the most flourishing condition, and were continually asking him for more.

We now began to prepare for our departure, by bending the sails and performing other necessary operations on board the ship, our water being already on board, and the provisions examined. In the mean time we had another visit from Oamo, Oberea, and their son and daughter; the Indians expressing their respect by uncovering the upper parts of their body as they had done before. The daughter, whose name we understood to be TOIMATA, was very desirous to see the fort, but her father would by no means suffer her to come in. Tearee, the son of Waheatua, the sovereign of Tiarrabou, the south east peninsula, was also with us at this time; and we received intelligence of the landing of another guest, whose company we neither expected nor desired: this was no other than the ingenious gentleman who contrived to steal our quadrant. We were told, that he intended to try his fortune again
in

in the night; but the Indians all offered very zealously to assist us against him, desiring that, for this purpose, they might be permitted to lie in the fort. This had so good an effect, that the thief relinquished his enterprize in despair.

On the 7th, the carpenters were employed in taking down the gates and pallisadoes of our little fortification, for firewood on board the ship; and one of the Indians had dexterity enough to steal the staple and hook upon which the gate turned: he was immediately pursued, and after a chase of six miles, he appeared to have been passed, having concealed himself among some rushes in the brook; the rushes were searched, and though the thief had escaped, a scraper was found which had been stolen from the ship sometime before; and soon after our old friend Toubourai Tamaide brought us the staple.

On the 8th and 9th, we continued to dismantle our fort, and our friends still flocked about us; some, I believe, sorry at the approach of our departure, and others desirous to make as much as they could of us, while we staid.

We were in hopes that we should now leave the island, without giving or receiving any other offence; but it unfortunately happened otherwise. Two foreign seamen having been out with my permission, one of them was robbed of his knife, and endeavouring to recover it, probably with circumstances of great provocation, the Indians attacked him, and dangerously wounded him with a stone; they wounded his companion also slightly in the head, and then fled into the mountains. As I should have been sorry to take any farther notice of the affair, I was not displeas'd that the offenders had escaped; but I was immediately involved in a quarrel which I very much regretted, and which yet it was not possible to avoid.

In the middle of the night between the 8th and 9th, Clement Webb and Samuel Gibson, two of the marines, both young men, went privately from the fort, and in
the

8
r
t
f
p
fi
th
th
tr
th
pa
wi
rec
as
ful
the
cou
we
Tu
not
bro
cess
com
to o
little
my
possi
Hick
ship,
Vo

the morning were not to be found. As public notice had been given, that all hands were to go on board on the next day, and that the ship would sail on the morrow of that day or the day following. I began to fear that the absentees intended to stay behind. I knew that I could take no effectual steps to recover them, without endangering the harmony and good-will which at present subsisted among us; and, therefore, determined to wait a day for the chance of their return.

On Monday morning the 10th, the marines, to my great concern, not being returned, an enquiry was made after them of the Indians, who frankly told us, that they did not intend to return, and had taken refuge in the mountains, where it was impossible for our people to find them. They were then requested to assist in the search, and after some deliberation, two of them undertook to conduct such persons as I should think proper to send after them to the place of their retreat. As they were known to be without arms, I thought two would be sufficient, and accordingly dispatched a petty officer, and the corporal of the marines, with the Indian guides, to fetch them back. As the recovery of these men was a matter of great importance, as I had no time to lose, and as the Indians spoke doubtfully of their return, telling us, that they had each of them taken a wife, and were become inhabitants of the country, it was intimated to several of the Chiefs who were in the fort with their women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be permitted to leave it till our deserters were brought back. This precaution I thought the more necessary, as, by concealing them a few days, they might compel me to go without them; and I had the pleasure to observe, that they received the intimation with very little signs either of fear or discontent; assuring me that my people should be secured and sent back as soon as possible. While this was doing at the fort, I sent Mr Hicks in the pinnace to fetch Tootahah on board the ship, which he did, without alarming either him or

his people. If the Indian guides proved faithful and in earnest, I had reason to expect the return of my people with the deserters before evening. Being disappointed, my suspicions increased; and night coming on, I thought it was not safe to let the people whom I had detained as hostages continue at the fort, and I therefore ordered Tubourai Tamaide, Oberea, and some others, to be taken on board the ship. This spread a general alarm, and several of them, especially the women, expressed their apprehensions with great emotion and many tears when they were put into the boat. I went on board with them, and Mr Banks remained on shore, with some others whom I thought it of less consequence to secure.

About nine o'clock, Webb was brought back by some of the natives, who declared, that Gibson, and the petty officer and corporal, would be detained till Tootahah should be set at liberty. The tables were now turned upon me; but I had proceeded too far to retreat. I immediately dispatched Mr Hicks in the long-boat, with a strong party of men, to rescue the prisoners, and told Tootahah that it behoved him to send some of his people with them, with orders to afford them effectual assistance, and to demand the release of my men in his name, for that I should expect him to answer for the contrary. He readily complied; this party recovered my men without the least opposition; and about seven o'clock in the morning, returned with them to the ship, though they had not been able to recover the arms which had been taken from them when they were seized: these, however, were brought on board in less than half an hour, and the Chiefs were immediately set at liberty.

When I questioned the petty officer concerning what had happened on shore, he told me, that neither the natives who went with him, nor those whom they met in their way, would give them any intelligence of the deserters; but, on the contrary, became very troublesome: that, as he was returning for further orders to
the

the ship, he and his comrade were suddenly seized by a number of armed men, who having learnt that Tootahah was confined, had concealed themselves in a wood for that purpose, and, who having taken them at a disadvantage, forced their weapons out of their hands, and declared, that they would detain them till their Chief should be set at liberty. He said, however, that the Indians were not unanimous in this measure; that some were for setting them at liberty, and others for detaining them: that an eager dispute ensued, and that from words they came to blows, but that the party for detaining them at length prevailed: that soon after, Webb and Gibson were brought in by a party of the natives, as prisoners, that they also might be secured as hostages for the Chief; but that it was after some debate resolved to send Webb to inform me of their resolution, to assure me that his companions were safe, and direct me where I might send my answer. Thus it appears that whatever were the disadvantages of seizing the Chiefs, I should never have recovered my men by any other method. When the Chiefs were set on shore from the ship, those at the fort were also set at liberty, and, after staying with Mr Banks about an hour, they all went away. Upon this occasion, as they had done upon another of the same kind, they expressed their joy by an undeserved liberality, strongly urging us to accept of four hogs. These we absolutely refused as a present, and they as absolutely refusing to be paid for them, the hogs did not change masters. Upon examining the detesters, we found that the account which the Indians had given of them was true: they had strongly attached themselves to two girls, and it was their intention to conceal themselves till the ship had sailed, and take up their residence upon the island. This night every thing was got off from the shore, and every body slept on board.

Among the natives who were almost constantly with us, was Tupia, whose name has been often mentioned in this narrative. He had been, as I have before ob-

served, the first minister of Oberea, when she was in the height of her power: he was also the chief Tahowa or priest of the island, consequently well acquainted with the religion of the country, as well with respect to its ceremonies as principles. He had also great experience and knowledge in navigation, and was particularly acquainted with the number and situation of the neighbouring islands. This man had often expressed a desire to go with us, and on the 12th in the morning, having with the other natives left us the day before, he came on board, with a boy about thirteen years of age, his servant, and urged us to let him proceed with us on our voyage. To have such a person on board, was certainly desirable for many reasons; by learning his language, and teaching him ours, we should be able to acquire a much better knowledge of the customs, policy, and religion of the people, than our short stay among them could give us, I therefore gladly agreed to receive them on board. As we were prevented from sailing to-day, by having found it necessary to make new stocks to our small and best bower anchors, the old ones having been totally destroyed by the worms, Tupia said, he would go once more on shore, and make a signal for the boat to fetch him off in the evening. He went accordingly, and took with him a miniature picture of Mr Banks's, to shew his friends, and several little things to give them as parting presents.

After dinner, Mr Banks being desirous to procure a drawing of the Morai belonging to Tootahah at Eparre, I attended him thither, accompanied by Dr Solander, in the pinnace. As soon as we landed, many of our friends came to meet us, though some absented themselves in resentment of what had happened the day before. We immediately proceeded to Tootahah's house, where we were joined by Oberea, with several others who had not come out to meet us, and a perfect reconciliation was soon brought about; in consequence of which they promised to visit us early the next day, to take a last fare-
wel

wel of us, as we told them we should certainly set sail in the afternoon. At this place also we found Tupia, who returned with us, and slept this night on board the ship for the first time.

On the next morning, Thursday the 13th of July, the ship was very early crowded with our friends, and surrounded by a multitude of canoes, which were filled with the natives of an inferior class. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor, and as soon as the ship was under sail, the Indians on board took their leaves, and wept, with a decent and silent sorrow, in which there was something very striking and tender: the people in the canoes, on the contrary, seemed to vie with each other in the loudness of their lamentations, which we considered rather as affectation than grief. Tupia sustained himself in this scene with a firmness and resolution truly admirable: he wept indeed, but the effort that he made to conceal his tears, concurred, with them, to do him honour. He sent his last present, a shirt, by Otheothea, to Potomai, Tootahah's favourite mistress, and then went with Mr Banks to the mast-head, waving to the canoes as long as they continued in sight.

Thus we took leave of Otaheite, and its inhabitants, after a stay of just three months; for much the greater part of the time we lived together in the most cordial friendship, and a perpetual reciprocation of good offices. The accidental differences which now and then happened, could not be more sincerely regretted on their part than they were on ours: the principal causes were such as necessarily resulted from our situation and circumstances, in conjunction with the infirmities of human nature, from our not being able perfectly to understand each other, and from the disposition of the inhabitants to theft, which we could not at all times bear with or prevent. They had not, however, except in one instance, been attended with any fatal consequence; and to that accident were owing the measures that I took to prevent others of the same kind. I hoped,

hoped, indeed, to have availed myself of the impression which had been made upon them by the lives that had been sacrificed in their contest with the Dolphin, so as that the intercourse between us should have been carried on wholly without bloodshed; and by this hope all my measures were directed during the whole of my continuance at the island, and I sincerely wish, that whoever shall next visit it, may be still more fortunate. Our traffick here was carried on with as much order as in the best regulated market in Europe. It was managed principally by Mr Banks, who was indefatigable in procuring provision and refreshments while they were to be had; but during the latter part of our time they became scarce, partly by the increased consumption at the fort and ship, and partly by the coming on of the season in which cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit fail. All kind of fruit we purchased for beads and nails, but no nails less than forty penny were current: after a very short time we could never get a pig of more than ten or twelve pounds, for less than a hatchet; because, though these people set a high value upon spike nails, yet these being an article with which many people in the ship were provided, the women found a much more easy way of procuring them than by bringing down provisions.

The best articles for traffick here are axes, hatchets, spikes, large nails, looking-glasses, knives, and beads, for some of which, every thing that the natives have may be procured. They are indeed fond of fine linen cloth, both white and printed; but an ax worth half a crown, will fetch more than a piece of cloth worth twenty shillings.

* We found the longitude of Port-Royal bay, in this island, as settled by Captain Wallis, who discovered it on the 9th of June 1767, to be within half a degree of the truth. We found Point Venus, the northern extremity of the island, and the eastern point of the bay, to lie in the longitude of 149 deg. 30 min. this being the mean

mean result of a great number of observations made upon the spot. The island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, which forms several excellent bays and harbours, some of which have been particularly described, where there is room and depth of water for any number of the largest ships. Port-Royal bay, called by the natives Matavia, which is not inferior to any in Otaheite, may easily be known by a very high mountain in the middle of the island, which bears due south from Point Venus. To sail into it, either keep the west point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, close on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a small shoal of coral rocks, on which there is but two fathom and a half of water. The best anchoring is on the eastern side of the bay, where there is sixteen and fourteen fathom upon an oozy bottom. The shore of the bay is a fine sandy beach, behind which runs a river of fresh water, so that any number of ships may water here without incommoding each other; but the only wood for firing, upon the whole island, is that of fruit trees, which must be purchased of the natives, or all hope of living upon good terms with them given up.

The face of the country, except that part of it which borders upon the sea, is very uneven; it rises in ridges that run up into the middle of the island, and there form mountains, which may be seen at the distance of sixty miles: between the foot of these ridges and the sea, is a border of low land, surrounding the whole island, except in a few places where the ridges rise directly from the sea; the border of low land is in different parts of different breadths; but no where more than a mile and a half. The soil, except upon the very tops of the ridges, is extremely rich and fertile, watered by a great number of rivulets of excellent water, and covered with fruit trees of various kinds, some of which are of a stately growth and thick foliage, so as to form one continued wood; and even the tops of the ridges, though in general

general they are bare, and burnt up by the sun, are, in some parts, not without their produce.

The low land that lies between the foot of the ridges and the sea, and some of the vallies, are the only parts of the island that are inhabited, and here it is populous; the houses do not form villages or towns, but are ranged along the whole border at the distance of about fifty yards from each other, with little plantations of plantains, the tree which furnishes them with cloth. The whole island, according to Tupia's account, who certainly knew, could furnish six thousand seven hundred and eighty fighting men, from which the number of inhabitants may easily be computed.

The produce of this island is bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas, of thirteen sorts; the best we had ever eaten; plantains; a fruit not unlike an apple, which, when ripe, is very pleasant; sweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of *Arum*; a fruit known here by the name of *Jambu*, and reckoned most delicious; sugar cane, which the inhabitants eat raw; a root of the salop kind, called by the inhabitants *Pea*; a plant called *Ethee*, of which the root only is eaten; a fruit that grows in a pod, like that of a large kidney-bean, which, when it is roasted, eats very much like a chestnut, by the natives called *Abee*; a tree called *Wharra*, called in the East Indies *Pandanes*, which produces fruit, something like the pine-apple; a shrub called *Nono*; the *Morinda*, which also produces fruit; a species of fern, of which the root is eaten, and sometimes the leaves; and a plant called *Theve*, of which the root also is eaten: but the fruits of the *Nono*, the fern, and the *Theve*, are eaten only by the inferior people, and in times of scarcity. All these, which serve the inhabitants for food, the earth produces spontaneously, or with so little culture, that they seem to be exempted from the first general curse, that "man should eat his bread in the sweat of his brow." They have also the Chinese paper mulberry, *morus papyrifera*, which they call *Aout*; a tree resembling the wild fig-tree of the West Indies; another species of fig, which they call *Matte*; the *cordia sebestina*

sebestina orientalis, which they call *Etou*; a kind of Cyperus grass, which they call *Moo*; a species of *tournefortia*, which they call *Tabeinso*; another of the *convolvulus peluce*, which they call *Eurbe*; the *selanum cecitfolium*, which they call *Ebooa*; the *calophyllum mophylum* which they call *Tamannu*; the *hibiscus tiliaceus* called *Poerou*, a frutescent nettle; the *urtica argentea*, called *Erowa*; with many other plants which cannot here be particularly mentioned. They have no European fruit, garden stuff, pulse, or legumes, nor grain of any kind.

Of tame animals they have only hogs, dogs, and poultry; neither is there a wild animal in the island, except ducks, pigeons, paroquets, with a few other birds, and rats, there being no other quadruped, nor any serpent. But the sea supplies them with great variety of most excellent fish, to eat which is their chief luxury, and to catch it their principal labour.

As to the people they are of the largest size of Europeans. The men are tall, strong, well-limbed, and finely shaped. The tallest that we saw was a man upon a neighbouring island, called HUAHEINE, who measured six feet three inches and a half. The women of the superior rank are also in general above our middle stature, but those of the inferior class are rather below it, and some of them are very small. This defect in size probably proceeds from their early commerce with men, the only thing in which they differ from their superiors, that could possibly affect their growth.

Their natural complexion is that kind of clear olive, or *Brunette*, which many people in Europe prefer to the finest white and red. In those that are exposed to the wind and sun, it is considerably deepened, but in others that live under shelter, especially the superior class of women, it continues of its native hue, and the skin is most delicately smooth and soft; they have no tint in their cheeks, which we distinguish by the name of colour. The shape of the face is comely, the cheek bones are not high, neither are the eyes hollow, nor the brow

prominent: the only feature that does not correspond with our ideas of beauty is the nose, which, in general, is somewhat flat; but their eyes, especially those of the women, are full of expression, sometimes sparkling with fire, and sometimes melting with softness; their teeth also are, almost without exception, most beautifully even and white, and their breath perfectly without taint.

The hair is almost universally black, and rather coarse; the men have beards which they wear in many fashions, always, however, plucking out great part of them, and keeping the rest perfectly clean and neat. Both sexes also eradicate every hair from under their arms, and accused us of great uncleanness for not doing the same. In their motions there is at once vigour and ease; their walk is graceful, their deportment liberal, and their behaviour to strangers and to each other affable and courteous. In their dispositions also, they seemed to be brave, open, and candid, without either suspicion or treachery, cruelty or revenge; so that we placed the same confidence in them as in our best friends, many of us, particularly Mr Banks, sleeping frequently in their houses in the woods, without a companion, and consequently wholly in their power. They were, however, all thieves; and when that is allowed, they need not much fear a competition with the people of any other nation upon earth. During our stay in this island we saw about five or six persons, like one that was met by Mr Banks and Dr Solander on the 24th of April, in their walk to the eastward, whose skins were of a dead white, like the nose of a white horse; with white hair, beard, brows, and eye-lashes; red, tender eyes; a short sight, and scurfy skins, covered with a kind of white down; but we found that no two of these belonged to the same family, and therefore concluded, that they were not a species, but unhappy individuals, rendered anomalous by disease.

It is a custom in most countries where the inhabitants have long hair, for the men to cut it short and the wo-

men.

correspond
in general,
those of the
sparkling with
their teeth
beautifully
without

rather coarse;
any fashions,
of them, and

Both sexes
arms, and ac-
ing the same.
d ease; their
and their be-
ble and cour-
d to be brave,
or treachery,
e same confi-
of us, parti-
their houses in
quently whol-
thieves; and
h fear a com-
n upon earth.
ut five or six
Banks and Dr
alk to the east-
like the nose
d, brows, and
at, and scurfy
but we found
e family, and
a species, but
s by disease.
the inhabitants
t and the wo-
men.

men to pride themselves in its length. Here, however, the contrary custom prevails; the women always cut it short round their ears, and the men, except the fishers, who are almost continually in the water, suffer it to flow in large waves over their shoulders, or tie it up in a bunch on the top of their heads.

They have a custom also of anointing their heads, with what they call *Monoo*, an oil expressed from the cocoa-nut, in which some sweet herbs or flowers have been infused: as the oil is generally rancid, the smell is at first very disagreeable to an European; and as they live in a hot country, and have no such thing as a comb, they are not able to keep their heads free from lice, which the children and common people sometimes pick out and eat: a hateful custom, wholly different from their manners in every other particular; for they are delicate and cleanly almost without example, and those to whom we distributed combs, soon delivered themselves from vermin, with a diligence which showed that they were not more odious to us than to them.

They have a custom of staining their bodies, nearly in the same manner as is practised in many other parts of the world, which they call *Tattooing*. They prick the skin, so as just not to fetch blood, with a small instrument, something in the form of a hoe; that part which answers to the blade is made of a bone or shell, scraped very thin, and is from a quarter of an inch to an inch and an half wide; the edge is cut into sharp teeth or points, from the number of three to twenty, according to its size: when this is to be used, they dip the teeth into a mixture of a kind of lamp-black, formed of the smoke that rises from an oily nut which they burn instead of candles, and water; the teeth, thus prepared, are placed upon the skin, and the handle to which they are fastened being struck, by quick smart blows, with a stick fitted to the purpose, they pierce it, and at the same carry into the puncture the black composition, which leaves an indelible stain. The operation is painful, and it is some days before the wounds

are healed. It is performed upon the youth of both sexes when they are about twelve or fourteen years of age, on several parts of the body, and in various figures, according to the fancy of the parent, or perhaps the rank of the party. The women are generally marked with this stain, in the form of a Z, on every joint of their fingers and toes, and frequently round the outside of their feet: the men are also marked with the same figure, and both men and women have squares, circles, crescents, and ill-designed representations of men, birds, or dogs, and various other devices impressed upon their legs and arms, some of which we were told had significations, though we could never learn what they were. But the part on which these ornaments are lavished with the greatest profusion, is the breech: this, in both sexes, is covered with a deep black; above which, arches are drawn one over another as high as the short ribs. They are often a quarter of an inch broad, and the edges are not straight lines, but indented. These arches are their pride, and are shewn both by men and women with a mixture of ostentation and pleasure; whether as an ornament, or a proof of their fortitude and resolution in bearing pain, we could not determine. The face in general is left unmarked; for we saw but one instance to the contrary. Some old men had the greatest part of their bodies covered with large patches of black, deeply indented at the edges, like a rude imitation of flame; but we were told, that they came from a low island called NOOVOORA, and were not natives of Otaheite.

Mr Banks saw the operation of *tattooing* performed upon the backside of a girl about thirteen years old. The instrument used upon this occasion had thirty teeth, and every stroke, of which at least a hundred were made in a minute, drew an ichor or serum a little tinged with blood. The girl bore it with most stoical resolution for about a quarter of an hour; but the pain of so many hundred punctures as she had received in that time then became intolerable: she first complained in

mur-

murmurs, then wept, and at last burst into loud lamentations, earnestly imploring the operator to desist. He was, however, inexorable; and when she began to struggle, she was held down by two women, who sometimes soothed and sometimes chid her, and now and then, when she was most unruly, gave her a smart blow. Mr Banks staid in a neighbouring house an hour, and the operation was not over when he went away; yet it was performed but upon one side, the other having been done sometime before; and the arches upon the loins, in which they most pride themselves, and which give more pain than all the rest, were still to be done.

It is strange that these people should value themselves upon what is no distinction; for I never saw a native of this island, either man or woman, in a state of maturity, in whom these marks were wanting: possibly they may have their rise in superstition, especially as they produce no visible advantage, and are not made without great pain; but though we enquired of many hundreds, we could never get any account of the matter.

Their clothing consists of cloth or matting of different kinds, which will be described among their other manufactures. The cloth, which will not bear wetting, they wear in dry weather, and the matting when it rains; they are put on in many different ways, just as their fancy leads them; for in their garments nothing is cut into shape, nor are any two pieces sewed together. The dress of the better sort of women consists of three or four pieces: one piece, about two yards wide and eleven yards long, they wrap several times round their waist, so as to hang down like a petticoat as low as the middle of the leg, and this they call *Parou*: two or three other pieces, about two yards and an half long and one wide, each having a hole cut in the middle, they place one upon another, and then putting the head through the holes, they bring the long ends down before and behind; the others remain open at the sides, and

and give liberty to their arms: this, which they call the *Tebuta*, is gathered round the waist, and confined with a girdle or sash of thinner cloth, which is long enough to go many times round them, and exactly resembles the garment worn by the inhabitants of Peru and Chili, which the Spaniards call *Poncho*. The dress of the men is the same, except that instead of suffering the cloth that is wound about the hips to hang down like a petticoat, they bring it between their legs so as to have some resemblance to breeches, and it is then called *Maro*. This is the dress of all ranks of people, and being universally the same as to form, the gentlemen and ladies distinguish themselves from the lower people by the quantity; some of them will wrap round them several pieces of cloth, eight or ten yards long, and two or three broad; and some throw a large piece loosely over their shoulders in the manner of a cloak, or perhaps two pieces, if they are very great personages, and are desirous to appear in state. The inferior sort, who have only a small allowance of cloth from the tribes or families to which they belong, are obliged to be more thinly clad. In the heat of the day they appear almost naked, the women have only a scanty petticoat, and the men nothing but the sash that is passed between their legs and fastened round the waist. As finery is always troublesome, and particularly in a hot country, where it consists in putting one covering upon another, the women of rank always uncover themselves as low as the waist in the evening, throwing off all that they wear on the upper part of the body, with the same negligence and ease as our ladies would lay by a cardinal or double handkerchief. And the Chiefs, even when they visited us, though they had as much cloth round their middle as would clothe a dozen people, had frequently the rest of the body quite naked.

Upon their legs and feet they wear no covering; but they shade their faces from the sun with little bonnets, either of matting or of cocoa-nut leaves, which they make occasionally in a few minutes. This, however,

is not all their head-dress; the women sometimes wear little turbans, and sometimes a dress which they value much more, and which, indeed, is much more becoming, called *Tomou*; the *Tomou* consists of human hair, plaited in threads, scarcely thicker than sewing silk. Mr Banks got pieces of it above a mile in length, without a knot. These they wind round the head in such a manner as produces a very pretty effect, and in a very great quantity; for I have seen five or six such pieces wound about the head of one woman: among these threads they stick flowers of various kinds, particularly the cape-jessamine, of which they have great plenty, as it is always planted near their houses. The men sometimes stick the tail feather of the Tropic-bird upright in their hair, which, as I have observed before, is often tied in a bunch upon the top of their heads: sometimes they wear a kind of whimsical garland, made of flowers of various kinds, stuck into a piece of the rind of a plantain; or of scarlet peas, stuck with gum upon a piece of wood: and sometimes they wear a kind of wig, made of the hair of men or dogs, or perhaps of cocoa-nut strings, woven upon one thread, which is tied under their hair, so that these artificial honours of their head may hang down behind. Their personal ornaments, besides flowers, are few; both sexes wear ear-rings, but they are placed only on one side: when we came they consisted of small pieces of shell, stone, berries, red peas, or some small pearls, three in a string; but our beads very soon supplanted them all.

The children go quite naked; the girls till they are three or four years old, and the boys till they are six or seven.

The houses, or rather dwellings of these people have been occasionally mentioned before: they are all built in the wood, between the sea and the mountains, and no more ground is cleared for each house, than just sufficient to prevent the dropping of the branches from rotting the thatch with which they are covered; from the house, therefore, the inhabitant steps immediately under
the

the shade, which is the most delightful that can be imagined. It consists of groves of bread-fruit and coconuts, without underwood, which are intersected, in all directions, by the paths that lead from one house to the other. Nothing can be more grateful than this shade in so warm a climate, nor any thing more beautiful than these walks. As there is no underwood, the shade cools without impeding the air; and the houses, having no walls, receive the gale from whatever point it blows. I shall now give a particular description of a house of a middling size, from which, as the structure is universally the same, a perfect idea may be formed both of those that are bigger, and those that are less.

The ground which it covers is an oblong square, four and twenty feet long, and eleven wide; over this a roof is raised, upon three rows of pillars or posts, parallel to each other, one on each side, and the other in the middle. This roof consists of two flat sides inclining to each other, and terminating in a ridge, exactly like the roofs of our thatched houses in England. The utmost height within is about nine feet, and eaves on each side reach to within about three feet and an half of the ground: below this, and through the whole height at each end, it is open, no part of it being inclosed with a wall. The roof is thatched with palm-leaves, and the floor is covered, some inches deep, with soft hay; over this are laid mats, so that the whole is one cushion, upon which they sit in the day, and sleep in the night. In some houses, however, there is one stool, which is wholly appropriated to the master of the family; besides this, they have no furniture, except a few little blocks of wood, the upper side of which is hollowed into a curve, and which serve them for pillows.

The house is indeed principally used as a dormitory; for, except it rains, they eat in the open air, under the shade of the next tree. The clothes that they wear in the day, serve them for covering in the night; the floor is the common bed of the whole household, and is not divided by any partition. The master of the house and
his

can be ima-
and cocoa-
ected, in all
house to the
n this shade
autiful than
shade cools
, having no
it blows. I
a house of a
e is univer-
ned both of
fs.

square, four
er this a roof
ts, parallel to
r in the mid-
ining to each
like the roofs
utmost height
ch side reach
the ground:
at each end,
a wall. The
e floor is co-
ver this are
upon which
t. In some
h is wholly
besides this,
le blocks of
into a curve,

dormitory;
r, under the
hey wear in
ht; the floor
l, and is not
e house and
his

his wife sleep in the middle, next to them the married people, next to them the unmarried women; and next to them, at a little distance, the unmarried men; the servants, or *Toutous*, as they are called, sleep in the open air, except it rains, and in that case they come just within the shed.

There are, however, houses of another kind, belonging to the Chiefs, in which there is some degree of privacy. These are much smaller, and so constructed as to be carried about in their canoes from place to place, and set up occasionally, like a tent; they are inclosed on the sides with cocoa-nut leaves, but not so close as to exclude the air, and the Chief and his wife sleep in them alone.

There are houses also of a much larger size, not built either for the accommodation of a single Chief, or a single family; but as common receptacles for all the people of a district. Some of them are two hundred feet long, thirty broad, and, under the ridge, twenty feet high; these are built and maintained at the common expence of the district, for the accommodation of which they are intended; and have on one side of them a large area, inclosed with low pallisadoes.

These houses, like those of separate families, have no walls. Privacy, indeed, is little wanted among people who have not even the idea of indecency, and who gratify every appetite and passion before witnesses, with no more sense of impropriety than we feel when we satisfy our hunger at a social board with our family or friends. Those who have no idea of indecency with respect to actions, can have none with respect to words; it is, therefore, scarcely necessary to observe, that, in the conversation of these people, that which is the principal source of their pleasure, is always the principal topic; and that every thing is mentioned without any restraint or emotion, and in the most direct terms, by both sexes.

Of the food eaten here the greater part is vegetable. Here are no tame animals except hogs, dogs, and poultry,

try, as I have observed before, and these are by no means plenty. When a Chief kills a hog, it is almost equally divided among his dependants; and as they are very numerous, the share of each individual at these feasts, which are not frequent, must necessarily be small. Dogs and fowls fall somewhat more frequently to the share of the common people. I cannot much commend the flavour of their fowls; but we all agreed, that a South-Sea dog was little inferior to an English lamb; their excellence is probably owing to their being kept up, and fed wholly upon vegetables. The sea affords them a great variety of fish. The smaller fish, when they catch any, are generally eaten raw, as we eat oysters; and nothing that the sea produces comes amiss to them: they are fond of lobsters, crabs, and other shell-fish, which are found upon the coast; and they will eat not only sea-insects, but what the seamen call *Blubbers*, though some of them are so tough, that they are obliged to suffer them to become putrid before they can be chewed. Of the many vegetables that have been mentioned already as serving them for food, the principal is the bread-fruit, to procure which costs them no trouble or labour but climbing a tree: the tree which produces it, does not indeed shoot up spontaneously; but if a man plants ten of them in his life-time, which he may do in about an hour, he will as completely fulfil his duty to his own and future generations, as the native of our less temperate climate can do by ploughing in the cold of winter, and reaping in the summer's heat, as often as these seasons return; even if, after he has procured bread for his present household, he should convert a surplus into money, and lay it up for his children.

It is true, indeed, that the bread-fruit is not always in season; but cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, and a great variety of other fruits, supply the deficiency.

It may well be supposed, that cookery is but little studied by these people as an art; and, indeed, they have but two ways of applying fire to dress their food, broil-

broiling and baking; the operation of broiling is so simple, that it requires no description, and their baking has been described already, in the account of an entertainment prepared for us by Tupia. Hogs, and large fish, are extremely well dressed in the same manner; and, in our opinion, were more juicy and more equally done than by any art of cookery now practised in Europe. Bread-fruit is also cooked in an oven of the same kind, which renders it soft, and something like a boiled potatoe; not quite so farinaceous as a good one, but more so than those of the middling sort.

Of the bread-fruit they also make three dishes, by putting either water or the milk of the cocoa-nut to it, then beating it to a paste with a stone pestle, and afterwards mixing it with ripe plantains, bananas, or the four paste which they call *Mahie*.

The mahie, which has been mentioned as a succedaneum for ripe bread-fruit, before the season for gathering a fresh crop comes on, is thus made:

The fruit is gathered just before it is perfectly ripe, and being laid in heaps, is closely covered with leaves; in this state it undergoes a fermentation, and becomes disagreeably sweet: the core is then taken out entire, which is done by gently pulling the stalk, and the rest of the fruit is thrown into a hole which is dug for that purpose, generally in the houses, and neatly lined in the bottom and sides with grass; the whole is then covered with leaves, and heavy stones laid upon them: in this state it undergoes a second fermentation, and becomes sour, after which it will suffer no change for many months: it is taken out of the hole as it is wanted for use, and being made into balls, it is wrapped up in leaves and baked; after it is dressed, it will keep five or six weeks. It is eaten both cold and hot, and the natives seldom make a meal without it, though to us the taste was as disagreeable as that of a pickled olive generally is the first time it is eaten.

As the making of this mahie depends, like brewing, upon

upon fermentation, so like brewing, it sometimes fails, without their being able to ascertain the cause; it is very natural, therefore, that the making it should be connected with superstitious notions and ceremonies. It generally falls to the lot of the old women, who will suffer no creature to touch any thing belonging to it, but those whom they employ as assistants, nor even to go into that part of the house where the operation is carrying on. Mr Banks happened to spoil a large quantity of it only by inadvertently touching a leaf which lay upon it. The old woman, who then presided over these mysteries, told him, that the process would fail; and immediately uncovered the hole in a fit of vexation and despair. Mr Banks regretted the mischief he had done, but was somewhat consoled by the opportunity which it gave him of examining the preparation, which perhaps, but for such an accident, would never have offered.

Such is their food, to which salt-water is the universal sauce, no meal being eaten without it: those who live near the sea have it fetched as it is wanted; those who live at some distance keep it in large bamboos, which are set up in their houses, for use. Salt-water, however, is not their only sauce; they make another of the kernels of cocoa-nuts, which being fermented till they dissolve into a paste somewhat resembling butter, are beaten up with salt-water. The flavour of this is very strong, and was, when we first tasted it, exceedingly nauseous; a little use, however, reconciled some of us to it so much, that they preferred it to our own sauces, especially with fish. The natives seemed to consider it as a dainty, and do not use it at their common meals; possibly, because they think it ill management to use cocoa-nuts so lavishly; or perhaps, when we were at the island, they were scarcely ripe enough for the purpose.

For drink, they have in general nothing but water, or the juice of the cocoa-nut; the art of producing liquors that intoxicate, by fermentation, being happily un-

times fails,
; it is very
ld be con-
monies. It
, who will
ging to it,
or even to
peration is
oil a large
ing a leaf
then pre-
he process
iole in a fit
ed the mis-
led by the
g the pre-
a accident,

the univer-
those who
ted; those
bamboos,
Salt-water,
ke another
mented till
ing butter,
of this is
it, exceed-
ciled some
o our own
ned to con-
r common
anagement
when we
enough for

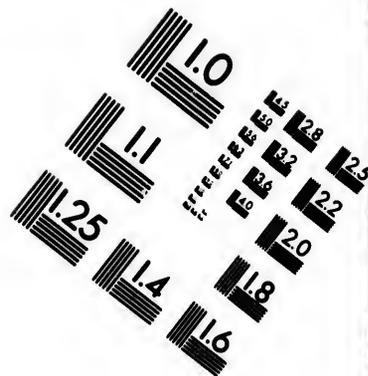
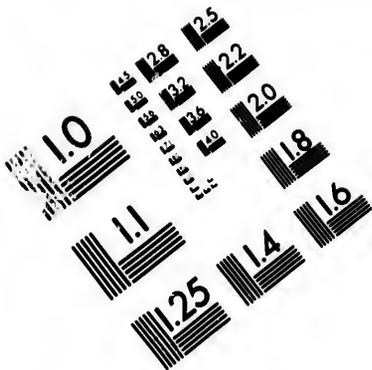
but water,
producing
ng happily
un-

unknown among them; neither have they any narcotic which they chew, as the natives of some other countries do opium, beetle-root, and tobacco. Some of them drank freely of our liquors, and in a few instances became very drunk: but the persons to whom this happened were so far from desiring to repeat the debauch, that they would never touch any of our liquors afterwards. We were however informed, that they became drunk by drinking a juice that is expressed from the leaves of a plant which they call *Ava Ava*. This plant was not in season when we were there, so that we saw no instances of its effects; and as they considered drunkenness as a disgrace, they probably would have concealed from us any instances which might have happened during our stay. This vice is almost peculiar to the Chiefs, and considerable persons, who vie with each other in drinking the greatest number of draughts, each draught being about a pint. They keep this intoxicating juice with great care from their women.

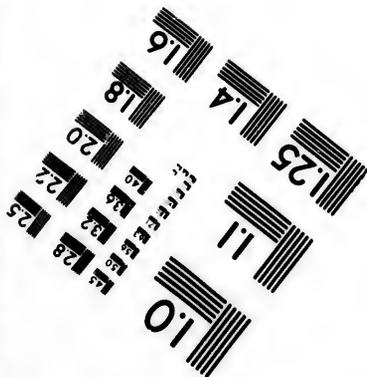
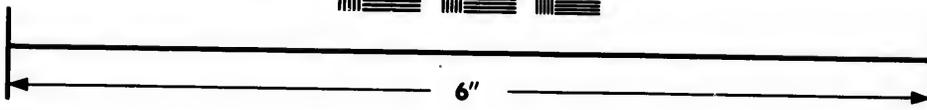
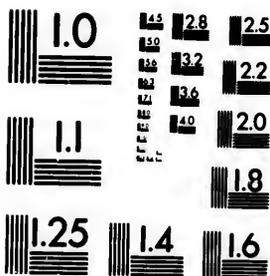
Table they have none; but their apparatus for eating is set out with great neatness, though the articles are too simple and too few to allow any thing for show: and they commonly eat alone; but when a stranger happens to visit them, he sometimes makes a second in their mess. Of the meal of one of their principal people I shall give a particular description.

He sits down under the shade of the next tree, or on the shady side of his house, and a large quantity of leaves either of the bread-fruit or banana, are neatly spread before him upon the ground as a table-cloth; a basket is then set by him that contains his provision, which, if fish or flesh, is ready dressed, and wrapped up in leaves, and two cocoa-nut shells, one full of salt water and the other of fresh: his attendants, which are not few, seat themselves round him, and when all is ready, he begins by washing his hands and mouth thoroughly with the fresh-water, and this he repeats almost continually throughout the whole meal; he then takes part of his provision out of the basket, which generally consists





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
E 28
E 32
E 36
E 40
E 44
E 48
E 52
E 56
E 60
E 64
E 68
E 72
E 76
E 80
E 84
E 88
E 92
E 96
E 100

10
01

sists of a small fish or two, two or three bread-fruits, fourteen or fifteen ripe bananas, or six or seven apples: he first takes half a bread-fruit, peels off the rind, and takes out the core with his nails; of this he puts as much into his mouth as it can hold, and while he chews it takes the fish out of the leaves, and breaks one of them into the salt water, placing the other, and what remains of bread-fruit, upon the leaves that have been spread before him. When this is done, he takes up a small piece of the fish that has been broken into the salt-water, with all the fingers of one hand, and sucks it into his mouth, so as to get with it as much of the salt-water as possible: in the same manner he takes the rest by different morsels, and between each, at least very frequently, takes a small sup of the salt water, either out of the cocoa-nut shell, or the palm of his hand: in the mean time one of his attendants has prepared a young cocoa-nut, by peeling off the outer rind with his teeth, an operation which, to an European, appears very surprising; but it depends so much upon slight, that many of us were able to do it before we left the island, and some that could scarcely crack a filbert: the master, when he chuses to drink, takes the cocoa-nut thus prepared, and boring a hole through the shell with his finger, or breaking it with a stone, he sucks out the liquor. When he has eaten his bread-fruit and fish, he begins with his plantains, one of which makes but a mouthful, though it be as big as a black-pudding; if instead of plantains he has apples, he never tastes them till they have been pared; to do this a shell is picked up from the ground, where they are always in plenty, and tossed to him by an attendant: he immediately begins to cut or scrape off the rind, but so awkwardly that great part of the fruit is wasted. If, instead of fish, he has flesh, he must have some succedaneum for a knife to divide it; and for this purpose a piece of bamboo is tossed to him, of which he makes the necessary implement by splitting it transversely with his nail. While all this has been doing, some of his attendants have been employed

the bread-fruits,
seven apples:
the rind, and
this he puts as
while he chews
breaks one of
, and what re-
that have been
he takes up a
oken into the
d, and sucks it
ch of the salt-
e takes the rest
at least very
r, either out of
d: in the mean
young cocoa-
his teeth, an
ears very fur-
ght, that many
e island, and
: the master,
-nut thus pre-
l with his fin-
out the liquor.
ish, he begins
but a mouth-
g; if instead
them till they
cked up from
enty, and tol-
ely begins to
dly that great
fish, he has
a knife to di-
nboo is tossed
mplement by
While all this
ave been em-
ployed

ployed in beating bread-fruit with a stone pestle upon a block of wood; by being beaten in this manner, and sprinkled from time to time with water, it is reduced to the consistence of a soft paste, and is then put into a vessel somewhat like a butcher's tray, and either made up alone, or mixed with banana or mahie, according to the taste of the master, by pouring water upon it by degrees and squeezing it often through the hand: under this operation it acquires the consistence of a thick custard, and a large cocoa-nut shell full of it being set before him, he sips it as we would do a jelly if we had no spoon to take it from the glass: the meal is then finished by again washing his hands and his mouth. After which the cocoa-nut shells are cleaned, and every thing that is left is replaced in the basket.

The quantity of food which these people eat at a meal is prodigious: I have seen one man devour two or three fishes as big as a perch; three bread-fruits, each bigger than two fists; fourteen or fifteen plantains or bananas, each of them six or seven inches long, and four or five round; and near a quart of the pounded bread-fruit, which is as substantial as the thickest unbaked custard. This is so extraordinary that I scarcely expect to be believed; and I would not have related it upon my own single testimony, but Mr Banks, Dr Solander, and most of the other Gentlemen, have had ocular demonstration of its truth, and know that I mention them upon the occasion.

It is very wonderful, that these people, who are remarkably fond of society, and particularly that of their women, should exclude its pleasures from the table, where among all other nations, whether civil or savage, they have been principally enjoyed. How a meal, which every where else brings families and friends together, came to separate them here, we often enquired; but could never learn. They eat alone, they said, because it was right; but why it was right to eat alone, they never attempted to tell us: such, however, was the force of habit, that they expressed the strongest dislike, and

and even disgust, at our eating in society, especially with our women, and of the same victuals. At first, we thought this strange singularity arose from some superstitious opinion; but they constantly affirmed the contrary. We observed also some caprices in the custom, for which we could as little account as for the custom itself. We could never prevail with any of the women to partake of the victuals at our table when we were dining in company; yet they would go, five or six together, into the servants apartments, and there eat very heartily of whatever they could find, of which I have before given a particular instance; nor were they in the least disconcerted if we came in while they were doing it. When any of us have been alone with a woman, she has sometimes eaten in our company; but then she has expressed the greatest unwillingness that it should be known, and always extorted the strongest promises of secrecy.

Among themselves, even two brothers and two sisters have each their separate baskets, with provisions and the apparatus of their meal. When they first visited us at our tents, each brought his basket with him; and when we sat down to table, they would go out, sit down upon the ground, at two or three yards distance from each other, and turning their faces different ways, take their repast, without interchanging a single word.

The women not only abstain from eating with the men, and of the same victuals, but even have their victuals separately prepared by boys kept for that purpose, who deposit it in a separate shed, and attend them with it at their meals.

But though they would not eat with us or with each other, they have often asked us to eat with them, when we have visited those with whom we were particularly acquainted at their houses; and we have often upon such occasions eaten out of the same basket, and drunk out of the same cup. The elder women, however, always appeared to be offended at this liberty; and if we
hap-

happened to touch their victuals, or even the basket that contained it, would throw it away.

After meals, and in the heat of the day, the middle-aged people of the better sort generally sleep; they are indeed extremely indolent, and sleeping and eating is almost all that they do. Those that are older are less drowsy, and the boys and girls are kept awake by the natural activity and sprightliness of their age.

Their amusements have occasionally been mentioned in my account of the incidents that happened during our residence in this island, particularly music, dancing, wrestling, and shooting with the bow; they also sometimes vie with each other in throwing a lance. As shooting is not at a mark, but for distance; throwing the lance is not for distance, but at a mark: the weapon is about nine feet long, the mark is the bole of a plantain, and the distance about twenty yards.

Their only musical instruments are flutes and drums; the flutes are made of a hollow bamboo about a foot long, and have only two stops, and consequently but four notes, out of which they seem hitherto to have formed but one tune; to these stops they apply the fore finger of the left hand and the middle finger of the right.

The drum is made of a hollow block of wood, of cylindrical form, solid at one end, and covered at the other with shark's skin: these they beat not with sticks, but their hands; and they know how to tune two drums of different notes into concord. They have also an expedient to bring the flutes that play together into unison, which is to roll up a leaf so as to slip over the end of the shortest, like our sliding tubes for telescopes, which they move up or down, till the purpose is answered, of which they seem to judge by their ear with great nicety.

To these instruments they sing; and, as I have observed before, their songs are often extempore: they call every two verses or couplet a song, *Pechay*; they are generally, though not always in rhyme; and when

pronounced by the natives, we could discover that they were metre. Mr Banks took great pains to write down some of them which were made upon our arrival, as nearly as he could express their sounds by combinations of our letters; but when we read them, not having their accent, we could scarcely make them either metre or rhyme. The reader will easily perceive that they are of very different structure.

Tede pahai de parow-a
Ha maru no mina.

E pahah Tayo malama tai ya
No Tabane tonatou whannomi ya.

E Turai eattu terara patee whennua toai
Iao o maio Pretane to whennuaia no Tute.

Of these verses our knowledge of the language is too imperfect to attempt a translation. They frequently amuse themselves by singing such couplets as these when they are alone, or with their families, especially after it is dark; for though they need no fires, they are not without the comfort of artificial light between sunset and bed-time, their candles are made of the kernels of a kind of oily nut, which they stick one over another upon a skewer that is thrust through the middle of them; the upper one being lighted, burns down to the second, at the same time consuming that part of the skewer which goes through it; the second taking fire, burns in the same manner down to the third, and so of the rest: some of these candles will burn a considerable time, and they give a very tolerable light. They do not often sit up above an hour after it is dark; but when they have strangers who sleep in the house, they generally keep a light burning all night, possibly as a check upon such of the women as they wish not to honour them with their favours.

Of their itinerary concerts I need add nothing to what has been said already; especially as I shall have

occa-

occasion, more particularly, to mention them when I relate our adventures upon another island.

In other countries, the girls and unmarried women are supposed to be wholly ignorant of what others upon some occasions may appear to know; and their conduct and conversation are consequently restrained within narrower bounds, and kept at a more remote distance from whatever relates to a connection with the other sex: but here, it is just contrary. Among other diversions, there is a dance, called *Timorodee*, which is performed by young girls, whenever eight or ten of them can be collected together, consisting of motions and gestures beyond imagination wanted, in the practice of which they are brought up from their earliest childhood, accompanied by words, which, if it were possible, would more explicitly convey the same ideas. In these dances they keep time with an exactness which is scarcely excelled by the best performers upon the stages of Europe. But the practice which is allowed to the virgin, is prohibited to the woman from the moment that she has put these hopeful lessons in practice, and realized the symbols of the dance.

It cannot be supposed that, among these people, chastity is held in much estimation. It might be expected that sisters and daughters would be offered to strangers, either as a courtesy, or for reward; and that breaches of conjugal fidelity, even in the wife, should not be otherwise punished than by a few hard words, or perhaps a slight beating, as indeed is the case: but there is a scale in dissolute sensuality, which these people have ascended, wholly unknown to every other nation whose manners have been recorded from the beginning of the world to the present hour, and which no imagination could possibly conceive.

A very considerable number of the principal people of Otaheite, of both sexes, have formed themselves into a society, in which every woman is common to every man; thus securing a perpetual variety as often as their inclination prompts them to seek it, which is so fre-

quent, that the same man and woman seldom cohabit together more than two or three days.

These societies are distinguished by the name of *Arreoy*; and the members have meetings, at which no other are present, where the men amuse themselves by wrestling, and the women, notwithstanding their occasional connection with different men, dance the Timorodee in all its latitude, as an incitement to desires which it is said are frequently gratified upon the spot. This however is comparatively nothing. If any of the women happen to be with child, which, in this manner of life, happens less frequently than if they were to cohabit only with one man, the poor infant is smothered the moment it is born, that it may be no incumbrance to the father, nor interrupt the mother in her diabolical prostitution. It sometimes indeed happens, that the passion which prompts a woman to enter into this society, is surmounted when she becomes a mother, by that instinctive affection which Nature has given to all creatures for the preservation of their offspring; but even in this case, she is not permitted to spare the life of her infant, except she can find a man who will patronise it as his child: if this can be done, the murder is prevented; but both the man and woman, being deemed by this act to have appropriated each other, are ejected from the community, and forfeit all claim to the privileges and pleasures of *Arreoy* for the future; the woman from that time being distinguished by the term *Whannownow*, "bearer of children," which is here a term of reproach; though none can be more honourable in the estimation of wisdom and humanity, of right reason, and every passion that distinguishes the man from the brute.

It is not fit that a practice so horrid and so strange should be imputed to human beings upon slight evidence, but I have such as abundantly justifies me in the account I have given. The people themselves are so far from concealing their connection with such a society as a disgrace, that they boast of it as a privilege; and both

both myself and Mr Banks, when particular persons have been pointed out to us as members of the Arreoy, have questioned them about it, and received the account that has been here given from their own lips. They have acknowledged, that they had long been of this accursed society, that they belonged to it at that time, and that several of their children had been put to death.

But I must not conclude my account of the domestic life of these people without mentioning their personal cleanliness. If that which lessens the good of life and increases the evil is vice, surely cleanliness is a virtue: the want of it tends to destroy both beauty and health, and mingles disgust with our best pleasures. The natives of Otaheite, both men and women, constantly wash their whole bodies in running water three times every day; once as soon as they rise in the morning, once at noon, and again before they sleep at night, whether the sea or river is near them or at a distance. I have already observed, that they wash not only the mouth, but the hands at their meals, almost between every morsel; and their clothes, as well as their persons, are kept without spot or stain; so that in a large company of these people, nothing is suffered but heat, which, perhaps, is more than can be said of the politest assembly in Europe.

Of the Manufactures, Boats, and Navigation of Otaheite.

IF necessity is the mother of invention, it cannot be supposed to have been much exerted where the liberality of Nature has rendered the diligence of Art almost superfluous; yet there are many instances both of ingenuity and labour among these people, which, considering the want of metal for tools, do honour to both.

Their

Their principal manufacture is their cloth, in the making and dying of which I think there are some particulars which may instruct even the artificers of Great Britain, and for that reason my description will be more minute.

Their cloth is of three kinds; and it is made of the bark of three different trees, the Chinese paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the tree which resembles the wild fig-tree of the West Indies.

The finest and whitest is made of the paper mulberry, *Aouta*; this is worn chiefly by the principal people, and when it is dyed red takes a better colour. A second sort, inferior in whiteness and softness, is made of the bread-fruit tree, *Ooroo*, and worn chiefly by the inferior people; and a third of the tree that resembles the fig, which is coarse and harsh, and of the colour of the darkest brown paper: this, though it is less pleasing both to the eye and the touch, is the most valuable, because it resists water, which the other two sorts will not. Of this, which is the most rare as well as the most useful, the better part is perfumed, and worn by the Chiefs as a lining dress.

All these trees are propagated with great care, particularly the mulberry, which covers the largest part of the cultivated land, and is not fit for use after two or three years growth, when it is about six or eight feet high, and somewhat thicker than a man's thumb; its excellence is to be thin, strait, tall, and without branches: the lower leaves, therefore, are carefully plucked off, with their germs, as often as there is any appearance of their producing a branch.

But though the cloth made of these three trees is different, it is all manufactured in the same manner; I shall, therefore, describe the process only in the fine sort, that is made of the mulberry. When the trees are of a proper size, they are drawn up, and stripped of their branches, after which the roots and tops are cut off; the bark of these rods being then slit up longitudinally is easily drawn off, and, when a proper quantity

tity has been procured, it is carried down to some running water, in which it is deposited to soak, and secured from floating away by heavy stones: when it is supposed to be sufficiently softened, the women servants go down to the brook, and stripping themselves, sit down in the water, to separate the inner bark from the green part on the outside; to do this they place the under side upon a flat smooth board, and with the shell which our dealers call Tyger's tongue, *Tellina gargadia*, scrape it very carefully, dipping it continually in the water till nothing remains but the fine fibres of the inner coat. Being thus prepared in the afternoon, they are spread out upon plantain leaves in the evening; and in this part of the work there appears to be some difficulty, as the mistress of the family always superintends the doing of it: they are placed in lengths of about eleven or twelve yards, one by the side of another, till they are about a foot broad, and two or three layers are also laid one upon the other: care is taken that the cloth shall be in all parts of an equal thickness, so that if the bark happens to be thinner in any particular part of one layer than the rest, a piece that is somewhat thicker is picked out to be laid over it in the next. In this state it remains till the morning, when great part of the water which it contained when it was laid out, is either drained off or evaporated, and the several fibres adhere together, so as that the whole may be raised from the ground in one piece.

It is then taken away, and laid upon the smooth side of a long piece of wood, prepared for the purpose, and beaten by the women servants, with instruments about a foot long and three inches thick, made of a hard wood which they call *Etoa*. The shape of this instrument is not unlike a square razor strop, only that the handle is longer, and each of its four sides or faces is marked, lengthways, with small grooves, or furrows, of different degrees of fineness; those on one side being of a width and depth sufficient to receive a small packthread, and the

the others finer in a regular gradation, so that the last are not more than equal to sewing silk.

They beat it first with the coarsest side of this mallet, keeping time like our smiths; it spreads very fast under the strokes, chiefly however in the breadth, and the grooves in the mallet mark it with the appearance of threads; it is successively beaten with the other sides, last with the finest, and is then fit for use. Sometimes, however, it is made still thinner, by beating it with the finest side of the mallet, after it has been several times doubled: it is then called *Hoboo*, and is almost as thin as a muslin; it becomes very white by being bleached in the air, but is made still whiter and softer by being washed and beaten again after it has been worn.

Of this cloth there are several sorts, of different degrees of fineness, in proportion as it is more or less beaten without being doubled: the other cloth also differs in proportion as it is beaten; but they differ from each other in consequence of the different materials of which they are made. The bark of the bread-fruit is not taken till the trees are considerably longer and thicker than those of the fig; the process afterwards is the same.

When cloth is to be washed after it has been worn, it is taken down to the brook, and left to soak, being kept fast to the bottom, as at first, by a stone; it is then gently wrung or squeezed; and sometimes several pieces of it are laid one upon another, and beaten together with the coarsest side of the mallet, and they are then equal in thickness to broad-cloth, and much more soft and agreeable to the touch, after they have been a little while in use, though, when they come immediately from the mallet, they feel as if they had been starched. This cloth sometimes breaks in the beating, but is easily repaired by pasting on a patch with a gluten that is prepared from the root of the *Pea*, which is done so nicely that it cannot be discovered. The women also employ themselves in removing blemishes of every kind, as our ladies do in needle-work or knotting; sometimes when their
their

that the last

of this mallet,
ry fast under
dth, and the
pppearance of
e other sides,
Sometimes,
g it with the
several times
soft as thin as
bleached in
being wash-

different de-
e or less beat-
h also differs
fer from each
rials of which
ruit is not ta-
r and thicker
rwards is the

been worn, it
k, being kept
t is then gent-
veral pieces of
together with
then equal in
soft and agree-
little while in
tely from the
rched. This
ut is easily re-
en that is pre-
done so nicely
n also employ
y kind, as our
ometimes when
their

their work is intended to be very fine, they will paste an entire covering of hot so over the whole. The principal excellencies of this cloth are its coolness and softness; and its imperfections, its being pervious to water like paper, and almost as easily torn.

The colours with which they dye this cloth are principally red and yellow. The red is exceedingly beautiful, and I may venture to say, a brighter and more delicate colour than any we have in Europe; that which approaches nearest is our full scarlet, and the best imitation which Mr Banks's natural history painter could produce, was by a mixture of vermilion and carmine. The yellow is also a bright colour, but we have many as good.

The red colour is produced by the mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which separately has the least tendency to that hue. One is a species of fig, called her. *Matte*, and the other the *Cordia Sebestina*, or *Etou*; of the fig the fruit is used, and of the *Cordia* the leaves.

The fruit of the fig is about as big as a rounceval pea, or very small gooseberry; and each of them, upon breaking off the stalk very close, produces one drop of a milky liquor, resembling the juice of our figs, of which the tree is indeed a species. This liquor the women collect into a small quantity of cocoa-nut water: to prepare a gill of cocoa-nut water will require between three and four quarts of these little figs. When a sufficient quantity is prepared, the leaves of the *Etou* are well wetted in it, and then laid upon a plantain leaf, where they are turned about till they become more and more flaccid, and then they are gently squeezed, gradually increasing the pressure, but so as not to break them; as the flaccidity increases, and they become spongy, they are supplied with more of the liquor; in about five minutes the colour begins to appear upon the veins of the leaves, and in about ten or a little more, they are perfectly saturated with it: they are then

squeezed, with as much force as can be applied, and the liquor strained at the same time that it is expressed.

For this purpose, the boys prepare a large quantity of the Moo, by drawing it between their teeth, or two little sticks, till it is freed from the green bark and the branny substance that lies under it, and a thin web of the fibres only remains; in this the leaves of the Etou are enveloped, and through these the juice which they contain is strained as it is forced out. As the leaves are not succulent, little more juice is pressed out of them than they have imbibed: when they have been once emptied, they are filled again, and again pressed till the quality which tinctures the liquor as it passes through them is exhausted, they are then thrown away; but the Moo, being deeply stained with the colour, is preserved, as a brush to lay the dye upon the cloth.

The expressed liquor is always received into small cups made of the plantain leaf, whether from a notion that it has any quality favourable to the colour, or from the facility with which it is procured, and the convenience of small vessels to distribute it among the artificers, I do not know.

Of the thin cloth they seldom dye more than the edges, but the thick cloth is coloured through the whole surface; the liquor is indeed used rather as a pigment than a dye, for a coat of it is laid upon one side only, with the fibres of the Moo; and though I have seen of the thin cloth that has appeared to have been soaked in the liquor, the colour has not had the same richness and lustre, as when it has been applied in the other manner.

Though the leaf of the Etou is generally used in this process, and probably produces the finest colour; yet the juice of the figs will produce a red by a mixture with the species of *Tournefortia*, which they call *Tabeinoo*, the *Pobuc*, the *Eurbe* or *Convolvulus Brasiliensis*, and a species of a *Solanum* called *Ebooa*; from the use of these different plants, or from different proportions of the materials, many varieties are observable in the colours,

ied, and the pressed.

ge quantity eth, or two ark and the thin web of of the Etou which they e leaves are out of them e been once pressed till sles through ay; but the, is preserv-

l into small om a notion our, or from the conve-g the artifi-

re than the gh the whole a pigment ne side only, have seen of en soaked in me richness n the other

used in this colour; yet y a mixture hey call *Ta-Brasiliensis*, from the use proportions vable in the colours,

colours of their cloth, some of which are conspicuously superior to others.

The beauty, however, of the best is not permanent; but it is probable that some method might be found to fix it, if proper experiments were made, and perhaps to search for latent qualities, which may be brought out by the mixture of one vegetable juice with another, would not be an unprofitable employment: our present most valuable dyes afford sufficient encouragement to the attempt; for by the mere inspection of indico, woad, dyer's weed, and most of the leaves which are used for the like purposes, the colours which they yield could never be discovered. Of this Indian red I shall only add, that the women who have been employed in preparing or using it, carefully preserve the colour upon their fingers and nails, where it appears in its utmost beauty, as a great ornament.

The yellow is made of the bark of the root of the *Morinda citrifolia*, called *Nono*, by scraping and infusing it in water; after standing some time, the water is strained and used as a dye, the cloth being dipped into it. The *Morinda*, of which this is a species, seems to be a good subject for examination with a view to dyeing. Brown, in his history of Jamaica, mentions three species of it, which he says are used to dye brown; and Rumphius says of the *Bancuda Augustifolia*, which is nearly allied to our *Nono*, that it is used by the inhabitants of the East-Indian islands, as a fixing drug for red colours, with which it particularly agrees.

The inhabitants of this island also dye yellow with the fruit of the *Tamanu*; but how the colour is extracted, we had no opportunity to discover. They have also a preparation with which they dye brown and black; but these colours are so indifferent, that the method of preparing them did not excite our curiosity.

Another considerable manufacture is matting of various kinds; some of which is finer, and better in every respect, than any we have in Europe: the coarser sort serves them to sleep upon, and the finer to wear in wet

weather. With the fine; of which there are also two sorts, much pains is taken, especially with that made of the bark of the Poerou, the *Hibiscus tiliaceus* of Linnæus, some of which is as fine as a coarse cloth: the other sort, which is still more beautiful, they call *Vanne*; it is white, glossy, and shining, and is made of the leaves of their *Wharrou*, a species of the *Pandanus*, of which we had no opportunity to see either the flowers or fruit: they have other matts, or as they call them *Moeas*, to sit or to sleep upon, which are formed of a great variety of rushes and grass, and which they make, as they do every thing else that is plaited, with amazing facility and dispatch.

They are also very dexterous in making basket and wicker-work; their baskets are of a thousand different patterns, many of them exceedingly neat; and the making them is an art that every one practises, both men and women: they make occasional baskets and panniers of the cocoa-nut leaf in a few minutes, and the women who visited us early in a morning used to send, as soon as the sun was high, for a few of the leaves, of which they made little bonnets to shade their faces, at so small an expence of time and trouble, that, when the sun was again low in the evening, they used to throw them away. These bonnets, however, did not cover the head, but consisted only of a band that went round it, and a shade that projected from the forehead.

Of the bark of the Poerou they make ropes and lines, from the thickness of an inch to the size of a small pack-thread: with these they make nets for fishing: of the fibres of the cocoa-nut they make thread, for fastening together the several parts of their canoes, and belts, either round or flat, twisted or plaited; and of the bark of the *Erowa*, a kind of nettle which grows in the mountains, and is therefore rather scarce, they make the best fishing lines in the world: with these they hold the strongest and most active fish, such as Bonetas and Albicores, which would snap our strongest silk lines in a minute, though they are twice as thick.

They

They make also a kind of seine, of a coarse broad grass, the blades of which are like flags: these they twist and tie together in a loose manner, till the net, which is about as wide as a large sack, is from sixty to eighty fathom long: this they haul in shoal smooth water, and its own weight keeps it so close to the ground, that scarcely a single fish can escape.

In every expedient, indeed, for taking fish they are exceedingly ingenious; they make harpoons of cane, and point them with hard wood, which, in their hands, strike fish more effectually than those which are headed with iron can do in ours, setting aside the advantage of ours being fastened to a line, so that the fish is secured if the hook takes place, though it does not mortally wound him.

Of fish-hooks they have two sorts, admirably adapted in their construction as well to the purpose they are to answer, as to the materials of which they are made. One of these, which they call *Wittee Wittee*, is used for towing. The shank is made of mother of pearl, the most glossy that can be got: the inside, which is naturally the brightest, is put behind. To these hooks a tuft of white dog's or hog's hair is fixed, so as somewhat to resemble the tail of a fish; these implements, therefore, are both hook and bait, and are used with a rod of bamboo, and line of *Erowa*. The fisher, to secure his success, watches the flight of the birds which constantly attend the Bonetas when they swim in shoals, by which he directs his canoe, and when he has the advantage of these guides, he seldom returns without a prize.

The other kind of hook is also made of mother of pearl, or some other hard shell: they cannot make them bearded like our hooks; but to effect the same purpose, they make the point turn inwards. These are made of all sizes, and used to catch various kinds of fish, with great success. The manner of making them is very simple, and every fisherman is his own artificer: the shell is first cut into square pieces, by the edge of another

other shell, and wrought into a form corresponding with the outline of the hook by pieces of coral which are sufficiently rough to perform the office of a file; a hole is then bored in the middle, the drill being no other than the first stone they pick up that has a sharp corner: this they fix into the end of a piece of bamboo, and turn it between the hands like a chocolate mill; when the shell is perforated, and the hole sufficiently wide, a small file of coral is introduced, by the application of which the hook is in a short time completed, few costing the artificer more time than a quarter of an hour.

Of their masonry, carving, and architecture, the reader has already formed some idea from the account that has been given of the Morais, repositories of the dead: the other most important article of building and carving is their boats; and perhaps, to fabricate one of their principal vessels with their tools, is as great a work, as to build a British man of war with ours.

They have an adze of stone; a chissel, or gouge, of bone, generally that of a man's arm between the wrist and elbow; a rasp of coral; and the skin of a sting-ray, with coral sand as a file or polisher.

This is a complete catalogue of their tools, and with these they build houses, construct canoes, hew stone, and fell, cleave, carve, and polish timber.

The stone which makes the blade of their adzes is a kind of Basaltes, of a blackish or grey colour, not very hard, but of considerable toughness: they are formed of different sizes; some, that are intended for felling weigh from six to eight pounds; others, that are used for carving, not more than so many ounces; but it is necessary to sharpen both almost every minute; for which purpose, a stone and a cocoa-nut shell full of water are always at hand.

Their greatest exploit, to which these tools are less equal than to any other, is felling a tree: this requires many hands, and the constant labour of several days. When it is down, they split it, with the grain, into planks
from

corresponding
of coral which
ce of a file; a
drill being no
at has a sharp
ce of bamboo,
chocolate mill;
ble sufficiently
by the applica-
ne completed,
a quarter of an

Etude, the rea-
e account that
s of the dead:
ng and carving
e of their prin-
a work, as to

, or gouge, of
ween the writ
of a sting-ray,

ools, and with
hew stone, and

their adzes is a
lour, not very
are formed of
r felling weigh
re used for car-
t it is necessary
or which pur-
f water are al-

e tools are less
: this requires
f several days.
in, into planks
from

from three to four inches thick, the whole length and breadth of the tree, many of which are eight feet in the girt, and forty to the branches, and nearly of the same thickness throughout. The tree generally used is in their language called *Avie*, the stem of which is tall and strait; though some of the smaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is a light spongy wood, and easily wrought. They smooth the plank very expeditiously and dexterously with their adzes, and can take off a thin coat from a whole plank without missing a stroke. As they have not the art of warping a plank, every part of the canoe, whether hollow or flat, is shaped by hand.

The canoes, or boats, which are used by the inhabitants of this and the neighbouring islands, may be divided into two general classes; one of which they call *Ivababs*, the other *Pabies*.

The *Ivahah* is used for short excursions to sea, and is wall-sided and flat-bottomed; the *Pahie* for longer voyages, and is bow-sided and sharp-bottomed. The *Ivahahs* are all of the same figure, but of different sizes, and used for different purposes: their length is from seventy-two feet to ten, but the breadth is by no means in proportion; for those of ten feet are about a foot wide, and those of more than seventy are scarcely two. There is the fighting *Ivahah*, the fishing *Ivahah*, and the travelling *Ivahah*; for some of these go from one island to another. The fighting *Ivahah*, is by far the longest, and the head and stern are considerably raised above the body, in a semi-circular form; particularly the stern, which is sometimes seventeen or eighteen feet high, though the boat itself is scarcely three. These never go to sea single; but are fastened together, side by side, at the distance of about three feet, by strong poles of wood, which are laid across them and lashed to the gunwales. Upon these in the fore-part, a stage or platform is raised, about ten or twelve feet long, and somewhat wider than the boats, which is supported by pillars about six feet high: upon this stage stand the fighting

fighting men, whose missile weapons are slings and spears ; for, among other singularities in the manners of these people, their bows and arrows are used only for diversion, as we throw quoits : below these stages sit the rowers, who receive from them those that are wounded, and furnish fresh men to ascend in their room. Some of these have a platform of bamboos or other light wood, through their whole length, and considerably broader, by means of which they will carry a great number of men ; but we saw only one fitted in this manner.

The fishing Ivahahs vary in length from about forty feet to the smallest size, which is about ten ; all that are of the length of twenty-five feet and upwards, of whatever fort, occasionally carry sail. The travelling Ivahah is always double, and furnished with a small neat house about five or six feet broad, and six or seven feet long, which is fastened upon the fore-part for the convenience of the principal people, who sit in them by day, and sleep in them at night. The fishing Ivahahs are sometimes joined together, and have a house on board ; but this is not common.

Those which are shorter than five and twenty feet, seldom or never carry sail ; and, though the stern rises about four or five feet, have a flat head, and a board that projects forward about four feet.

The Pahie is also of different sizes, from sixty to thirty feet long ; but, like the Ivahah, is very narrow. One that I measured was fifty-one feet long, and only one foot and a half wide at the top. In the widest part, it was about three feet ; and this is the general proportion. It does not, however, widen by a gradual swell ; but the sides being strait, and parallel, for a little way below the gunwale, it swells abruptly, and draws to a ridge at the bottom ; so that a transverse section of it has somewhat the appearance of the mark upon cards called a Spade, the whole being much wider in proportion to its length. These, like the largest Ivahahs, are used for fighting ; but principally for long voyages. The fighting Pahie, which

slings and
the manners
used only for
these stages sit
those that are
in their room.
poos or other
and consider-
carry a great
fitted in this

n about forty
; all that are
rds, of what-
elling Ivahah
all neat house
ven feet long,
the conveni-
them by day,
Ivahabs are
ife on board ;

twenty feet,
the stern rises
and a board

sixty to thir-
arrow. One
and only one
widest part, it
proportion.
well ; but the
ay below the
ridge at the
as somewhat
led a Spade,
to its length,
or fighting ;
hting Pahie,
which

which is the largest, is fitted with the stage or platform, which is proportionably larger than those of the Ivahah, as their form enables them to sustain a much greater weight. Those that are used for sailing are generally double ; and the middle size are said to be the best sea-boats. They are sometimes out a month together, going from island to island ; and sometimes, as we were credibly informed, they are a fortnight or twenty days at sea, and could keep it longer if they had more stowage for provisions, and conveniencies to hold fresh water.

When any of these boats carry sail single, they make use of a log of wood which is fastened to the end of two poles that lie across the vessel, and project from six to ten feet, according to the size of the vessel, beyond its side, somewhat like what is used by the flying Proa of the Ladrone islands, and called in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage, an Outrigger. To this outrigger the shrouds are fastened, and it is essentially necessary in trimming the boat when it blows fresh.

Some of them have one mast, and some two ; they are made of a single stick, and when the length of the canoe is thirty feet, that of the mast is somewhat less than five and twenty ; it is fixed to a frame that is above the canoe, and receives a sail of matting about one third longer than itself : the sail is pointed at the top, square at the bottom, and curved at the side ; somewhat resembling what we call a shoulder of mutton sail, and used for boats belonging to men of war : it is placed in a frame of wood, which surrounds it on every side, and has no contrivance either for reefing or furling ; so that, if either should become necessary, it must be cut away, which, however, in these equal climates can seldom happen. At the top of the mast are fastened ornaments of feathers, which are placed inclining obliquely forwards.

The oars or paddles that are used with these boats, have a long handle and a flat blade, not unlike a baker's peel. Of these every person in the boat has one, except those that sit under the awning ; and they push her

forward with them at a good rate. These boats, however, admit so much water at the seams, that one person at least is continually employed in throwing it out. The only thing in which they excel is landing, and putting off from the shore in a surf: by their great length and high sterns they land dry, when our boats could scarcely land at all; and have the same advantages in putting off, by the height of the head.

The Ivahahs are the only boats that are used by the inhabitants of Otaheite; but we saw several Pahies that came from other islands.

These Pahies are kept with great care, in a kind of house built on purpose for their reception; the houses are formed of poles set upright in the ground, the tops of which are drawn towards each other, and fastened together with their strongest cord, so as to form a kind of Gothic arch, which is completely thatched quite to the ground, being open only at the ends; they are sometimes fifty or sixty paces long.

As connected with the navigation of these people, I shall mention their wonderful sagacity in foretelling the weather, at least the quarter from which the wind shall blow at a future time; they have several ways of doing this, of which, however, I know but one. They say, that the Milky-way is always curved laterally; but sometimes in one direction, and sometimes in another: and that this curvature is the effect of its being already acted upon by the wind, and its hollow part therefore towards it; so that, if the same curvature continues a night, a corresponding wind certainly blows the next day. Of their rules, I shall not pretend to judge; but I know that, by whatever means, they can predict the weather, at least the wind, with much greater certainty than we can.

In their longer voyages, they steer by the sun in the day, and in the night by the stars; all of which they distinguish separately by names, and know in what part of the heavens they will appear in any of the months during which they are visible in their horizon; they al-

so know the time of their annual appearing and disappearing with more precision than will easily be believed by an European astronomer.

Of the Divisions of Time in Otabeite ; Numeration, Computation of Distance, Language, Diseases, Disposal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, Government, &c.

WE were not able to acquire a perfect idea of their method of dividing time; but observed, that in speaking of it, either past or to come, they never used any term but *Malama*, which signifies Moon. Of these moons they count thirteen, and then begin again; which is a demonstration that they have a notion of the solar year: but how they compute their months so that thirteen of them shall be commensurate with the year, we could not discover; for they say that each month has twenty-nine days, including one in which the moon is not visible. They have names for them separately, and have frequently told us the fruits that would be in season, and the weather that would prevail, in each of them; and they have indeed a name for them collectively, though they use it only when they speak of the mysteries of their religion.

Every day is subdivided into twelve parts, each of two hours, of which six belong to the day, and six to the night. At these divisions they guess pretty nearly by the height of the sun while he is above the horizon; but there are few of them that can guess at them, when he is below it, by the stars.

In numeration they proceed from one to ten, the number of fingers on both hands; and though they

have for each number a different name, they generally take hold of their fingers one by one, shifting from one hand to the other till they come to the number they want to express. And in other instances, we observed, that when they were conversing with each other, they joined signs to their words, which were so expressive, that a stranger might easily apprehend their meaning.

In counting from ten they repeat the name of that number, and add the word *more*; ten, and one more, is eleven; ten, and two more, twelve; and so of the rest, as we say one and twenty, two and twenty. When they come to ten and ten more, they have a new denomination, as we say a score; and by these scores they count till they get ten of them, when they have a denomination for two hundred; and we never could discover that they had any denomination to express a greater number: neither, indeed, do they seem to want any; for ten of these amount to two thousand, a greater number than they can every apply.

In measuring distance they are much more deficient than in computing numbers, having but one term which answers to fathom; when they speak of distance from place to place, they express it, like the Asiatics, by the time that is required to pass it.

Their language is soft and melodious; it abounds with vowels, and we easily learnt to pronounce it: but found it exceedingly difficult to teach them to pronounce a single word of ours; probably not only from its abounding in consonants, but from some peculiarity in its structure; for Spanish and Italian words, if ending in a vowel, they pronounced with great facility. Whether it is copious, we were not sufficiently acquainted with it to know; but it is certainly very imperfect, for it is almost totally without inflexion, both of nouns and verbs. Few of the nouns have more than one case, and few of the verbs more than one tense; yet we found no great difficulty in making ourselves mutually understood, however strange it may appear in speculation.

They

ey generally
ng from one
umber they
we observed,
other, they
o expressive,
meaning.
ame of that
one more, is
o of the rest,
nty. When
a new deno-
scores they
have a deno-
ould discover
efs a greater
o want any;
greater num-

ore deficient
term which
istance from
atics, by the

it abounds
nce it: but
em to pro-
ot only from
e peculiari-
n words, if
great facility.
ly acquaint-
y imperfect,
oth of nouns
an one case,
se; yet we
es mutually
t in specula-

They

They have, however, certain *affixa*, which, though but few in number, are very useful to them, and puzzled us extremely. One asks another, *Harre hea?* "Where are you going?" the other answers *Ivabinera*, "To my wives;" upon which the first repeating the answer interrogatively, "To your wives?" is answered, *Ivabinereira*; "Yes, I am going to my wives." Here the suffix *era* and *cira* save several words to both parties.

I have inserted a few of their words, from which perhaps some idea may be formed of their language.

Pupò,	<i>the head.</i>	Ahou,	<i>a garment.</i>
Ahewh,	<i>the nose.</i>	Avee,	<i>a fruit like apples.</i>
Roourou,	<i>the hair.</i>	Ahee,	<i>another like chestnuts.</i>
Outou,	<i>the mouth.</i>	Ewharre,	<i>a house.</i>
Niheo,	<i>the teeth.</i>	Whennua,	<i>a high island.</i>
Arrero,	<i>the tongue.</i>	Motu,	<i>a low island.</i>
Meu-eumi,	<i>the beard.</i>	Toto,	<i>blood.</i>
Tiarraboá,	<i>the throat.</i>	Aeve,	<i>bone.</i>
Tuamo,	<i>the shoulders.</i>	Aeo,	<i>flesh.</i>
Tuah,	<i>the back.</i>	Mac,	<i>fat.</i>
Oama,	<i>the breast.</i>	Tuca,	<i>lean.</i>
Eu,	<i>the nipples.</i>	Huru-huru,	<i>hair.</i>
Oboo,	<i>the belly.</i>	Eraow,	<i>a tree.</i>
Rema,	<i>the arm.</i>	Ama,	<i>a branch.</i>
Oprema,	<i>the hand.</i>	Tiale,	<i>a flower.</i>
Manneow,	<i>the fingers.</i>	Huero,	<i>fruit.</i>
Mieu,	<i>the nails.</i>	Etummoo,	<i>the stem.</i>
Touhe,	<i>the buttocks.</i>	Aaa,	<i>the root.</i>
Hoouhah,	<i>the thighs.</i>	Eiherre,	<i>herbaceous plants.</i>
Aviah,	<i>the legs.</i>	Ooopa,	<i>a pigeon.</i>
Tapoa,	<i>the feet.</i>	Avigne,	<i>a paroquet.</i>
Booa,	<i>a hog.</i>	A-a,	<i>another species.</i>
Moa,	<i>a fowl.</i>	Mannu,	<i>a bird.</i>
Euree,	<i>a dog.</i>	Mora,	<i>a duck.</i>
Eure-eure,	<i>iron.</i>	Mattow,	<i>a fish-hook.</i>
Ooroo,	<i>bread-fruit.</i>	Toura,	<i>a rope.</i>
Hearee,	<i>cocoa-nuts.</i>	Mow,	<i>a shark.</i>
Mia,	<i>bananas.</i>	Mahi-mahi,	<i>a dolphin.</i>
Vaee,	<i>wild plantains.</i>	Mattera,	<i>a fishing-rod.</i>
Poe,	<i>beads.</i>	Eupea,	<i>a net.</i>
Poe matawewwe,	<i>pearl.</i>	Mahanna,	<i>the sun.</i>
			<i>Malama,</i>

Malama,	<i>the moon.</i>	Roa,	<i>tall.</i>
Whettu,	<i>a star.</i>	Nehenne,	<i>sweet.</i>
Whettu-cuphe,	<i>a comet.</i>	Mala-mala,	<i>bitter.</i>
Erai,	<i>the sky.</i>	Whanno,	<i>to go far.</i>
Eatta,	<i>a cloud.</i>	Harre,	<i>to go.</i>
Miti,	<i>good.</i>	Arrea,	<i>to stay.</i>
Eno,	<i>bad.</i>	Enoho,	<i>to remain.</i>
A,	<i>yes.</i>	Rohe rohe,	<i>to be tired.</i>
Ima,	<i>no.</i>	Maa,	<i>to eat.</i>
Paree,	<i>ugly.</i>	Inoo,	<i>to drink.</i>
Paroree,	<i>hungry.</i>	Ete,	<i>to understand.</i>
Pia,	<i>full.</i>	Warrido,	<i>to steal.</i>
Timahah,	<i>heavy.</i>	Worridde,	<i>to be angry.</i>
Mama,	<i>light.</i>	Teparahi,	<i>to beat.</i>
Poto,	<i>short.</i>		

Among people whose food is so simple, and who in general are seldom drunk, it is scarcely necessary to say, that there are but few diseases; we saw no critical disease during our stay upon the island, and but few instances of sickness, which were accidental fits of the cholera. The natives, however, are afflicted with the erysipelas, and cutaneous eruptions of the scaly kind, very nearly approaching to a leprosy. Those in whom this distemper was far advanced, lived in a state of seclusion from all society, each in a small house built upon some unfrequented spot, where they were supplied with provisions: but whether they had any hope of relief, or languished out the remainder of their lives in solitude and despair, we could not learn. We observed also a few who had ulcers upon different parts of their bodies, some of which had a very virulent appearance; yet they seemed not much to be regarded by those who were afflicted with them, for they were left intirely without application even to keep off the flies.

Where intemperance produces no diseases, there will be no physicians by profession; yet where there is suffering, there will always be attempts to relieve; and where the cause of the mischief and the remedy are alike unknown, these will naturally be directed by superstition; thus it happens, that in this country, and in all others

tall.
 sweet.
 bitter.
 to go far.
 to go.
 to stay.
 to remain.
 to be tired.
 to eat.
 to drink.
 to understand.
 to steal.
 to be angry.
 to beat.

ble, and who in
 necessary to say,
 no critical dif-
 but few instan-
 s of the cholic.
 the erysipelas,
 and, very nearly
 om this distem-
 seclusion from
 on some unfre-
 with provisions:
 or languished
 de and despair,
 a few who had
 some of which
 ey seemed not
 afflicted with
 ut application

ases, there will
 re there is suf-
 o relieve; and
 medy are alike
 d by supersti-
 try, and in all
 others

others which are not further injured by luxury, or im-
 proved by knowledge, the management of the sick falls
 to the lot of the priest. The method of cure that is prac-
 tised by the priests of Otaheite, consists chiefly of pray-
 ers and ceremonies. When he visits his patient he re-
 peats certain sentences, which appear to be set forms
 contrived for the occasion, and at the same time plait
 the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different figures very
 neatly; some of these he fastens to the fingers and toes
 of the sick, and often leaves behind him a few branches
 of the *thespacia populnea*, which they call *E'midho*: these
 ceremonies are repeated till the patient recovers or dies.
 If he recovers, they say the remedies cured him, if he
 dies, they say the disease was incurable, in which per-
 haps they do not much differ from the custom of other
 countries.

If we had judged of their skill in surgery from the
 dreadful scars which we sometimes saw, we should have
 supposed it to be much superior to the art not only of
 their physicians, but of ours. We saw one man whose
 face was almost intirely destroyed, his nose, including
 the bone, was perfectly flat, and one cheek and one eye
 were so beaten in, that the hollow would almost receive
 a man's fist, yet no ulcer remained; and our compa-
 nion, Tupla, had been pierced quite through his body
 by a spear headed with the bone of the sting-ray, the
 weapon having entered his back, and come out just un-
 der his breast; but except in reducing dislocations and
 fractures, the best surgeon can contribute very little to
 the cure of a wound; the blood itself is the best vulne-
 rary balsam, and when the juices of the body are pure,
 and the patient is temperate, nothing more is necessary
 as an aid to Nature in the cure of the worst wound, than
 the keeping it clean.

Their commerce with the inhabitants of Europe has,
 however, already entailed upon them that dreadful curse
 which avenged the inhumanities committed by the Spa-
 niards in America, the venereal disease. As it is certain
 that no European vessel besides our own, except the
 Dolphin,

Dolphin, and the two that were under the command of Monf. Bougainville, ever visited this island, it must have been brought either by one of them, or by us. That it was not brought by the Dolphin, Captain Wallis has demonstrated in the account of her voyage, and nothing is more certain than that when we arrived it had made most dreadful ravages in the island. One of our people contracted it within five days after we went on shore, and by the enquiries among the natives, which this occasioned, we learnt, when we came to understand a little of their language, that it had been brought by the vessels which had been there about fifteen months before us, and had lain on the east side of the island. They distinguished it by a name of the same import with *rottemess*, but of a more extensive signification, and described, in the most pathetic terms, the sufferings of the first victims to its rage, and told us that it caused the hair and the nails to fall off, and the flesh to rot from the bones: that it spread a universal terror and consternation among them, so that the sick were abandoned by their nearest relations, lest the calamity should spread by contagion, and left to perish alone in such misery as till then had never been known among them. We had some reason, however, to hope that they had found out a specific to cure it: during our stay upon the island we saw none in whom it had made a great progress, and one who went from us infected, returned after a short time in perfect health; and by this it appeared either that the disease had cured itself, or that they were not unacquainted with the virtues of simples, nor implicit dupes to the superstitious follies of their priests. We endeavoured to learn the medical qualities which they imputed to their plants, but our knowledge of their language was too imperfect for us to succeed. If we could have learnt their specific for the venereal disease, if such they have, it would have been of great advantage to us, for when we left the island it had been contracted by more than half the people on board the ship.

It is impossible but that, in relating incidents, many particulars

GE.

command of
it must have
us. That it
allis has de-
d nothing is
it had made
f our people
t on shore,
hich this oc-
erstand a lit-
ght by the
months be-
land. They
ort with rot-
and descri-
rings of the
used the hair
ot from the
onsternation
aed by their
ead by con-
y as till then
e had some
d out a spe-
and we saw
fs, and one
short time
either that
e not unac-
plicit dupes
We endea-
ey imputed
nguage was
have learnt
they have,
s, for when
more than

ents, many
particulars

Cook's Voyages.



Adapted from the original illustration in Cook's Voyages, Vol. 1, Plate 6.

CAPTAIN

particulars with
works of these
repetition, there
the manner of
said already. I
are two places
kind of shed, w
other an enclos
bones are after
PAPOW, and th
also places of w

As soon as a r
the house is fille
some by loud lan
but more genuin
in the nearest de
by the event, an
tering passionate
laughing and tal
concern. In thi
which they affe
night. On the r
their cloth, and c
which the bearer
ed by the priest,
peats his sentenc
rives at the water
the priest renews
the water in his
but not upon it.
yards, and soon a
the prayers and
moved backwards
these ceremonies
been built, and a
the center of this
to support the bic
and placed upon i
trefy till the flesh

particulars with respect to the customs, opinions, and works of these people should be anticipated; to avoid repetition, therefore, I shall only supply deficiencies. Of the manner of disposing of their dead, much has been said already. I must more explicitly observe that there are two places in which the dead are deposited; one a kind of shed, where the flesh is suffered to putrefy; the other an enclosure, with erections of stone, where the bones are afterwards buried. The sheds are called TUPAPOW, and the enclosures Morai. The Morais are also places of worship.

As soon as a native of Otahite is known to be dead, the house is filled with relations, who deplore their loss, some by loud lamentations, and some by less clamorous, but more genuine expressions of grief. Those who are in the nearest degree of kindred, and are really affected by the event, are silent; the rest are one moment uttering passionate exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking without the least appearance of concern. In this manner the remainder of the day on which they assemble is spent, and all the succeeding night. On the next morning the body is shrouded in their cloth, and conveyed to the sea-side upon a bier, which the bearers support upon their shoulders, attended by the priest, who having prayed over the body, repeats his sentences during the procession: when it arrives at the water's edge, it is set down upon the beach; the priest renews his prayers, and taking up some of the water in his hands, sprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it. It is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and soon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and sprinkling are repeated: it is thus removed backwards and forwards several times, and while these ceremonies have been performing a house has been built, and a small space of ground railed in. In the center of this house, or Tupapow, posts are set up to support the bier, which is at length conveyed thither, and placed upon it, and here the body remains to putrefy till the flesh is wholly wasted from the bones.

These houses of corruption are of a size proportioned to the rank of the person whose body they are to contain; those allotted to the lower class are just sufficient to cover the bier, and have no railing round them. The largest we ever saw was eleven yards long, and such as these are ornamented according to the abilities and inclination of the surviving kindred, who never fail to lay a profusion of good cloth about the body, and sometimes almost cover the outside of the house. Garlands of the fruit of the palm-nut or *pandanus*, and cocoa-leaves, twisted by the priests in mysterious knots, with a plant called by them *Ethee no Morai*, which is particularly consecrated to funeral solemnities, are deposited about the place; provision and water are also left at a little distance.

As soon as the body is deposited in the Tupapow, the mourning is renewed. The women assemble, and are led to the door by the nearest relation, who strikes a shark's tooth several times into the crown of her head: the blood copiously follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of linen, which are thrown under the bier. The rest of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the zeal and sorrow of the parties hold out. The tears also which are shed upon these occasions, are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead: some of the younger people cut off their hair, and that is thrown under the bier with the other offerings. This custom is founded upon a notion that the soul of the deceased, which they believe to exist in a separate state, is hovering about the place where the body is deposited: that it observes the actions of the survivors, and is gratified by such testimonies of their affection and grief.

Two or three days after these ceremonies have been commenced by the women, during which the men seem to be wholly insensible of their loss, they also begin to perform their part. The nearest relations take it in turn to assume the dress, and perform the office which have already

ready

ready been particularly described in the account of Toubourai Tamaide's having acted as chief mourner to an old woman, his relation, who died while we were in the island. One part of the ceremony, however, which accounts for the running away of the people as soon as the procession is in sight, has not been mentioned. The chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat stick, the edge of which is set with shark's teeth, and in a phrenzy, which his grief is supposed to have inspired, he runs at all he sees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he strikes them most unmercifully with this indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a dangerous manner.

These processions continue at certain intervals for five moons, but are less and less frequent, by a gradual diminution, as the end of that time approaches. When it is expired, what remains of the body is taken down from the bier, and the bones having been scraped and washed very clean, are buried, according to the rank of the person, either within or without a Morai: if the deceased was an Earee, or Chief, his skull is not buried with the rest of the bones, but is wrapped up in fine cloth, and put in a kind of box made for that purpose, which is also placed in the Morai. This coffer is called *Ewarre no te Orometua*, the house of a teacher or master. After this the mourning ceases, except some of the women continue to be really afflicted for the loss, and in that case they will sometimes suddenly wound themselves with the shark's tooth wherever they happen to be: this perhaps will account for the passion of grief in which Terapo wounded herself at the fort; some accidental circumstance might forcibly revive the remembrance of a friend or relation whom she had lost, with a pungency of regret and tenderness which forced a vent by tears, and prompted her to a repetition of the funeral rite.

The ceremonies, however, do not cease with the mourning: prayers are still said by the priest, who is well paid by the surviving relations, and offerings made:

at the Morai. Some of the things, which from time to time are deposited there, are emblematical: a young plantain represents the deceased, and the bunch of feathers the deity who is invoked. The priest places himself over-against the symbol of the god, accompanied by some of the relations, who are furnished with a small offering, and repeats his oraison in a set form, consisting of separate sentences; at the same time weaving the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different forms, which he afterwards deposits upon the ground where the bones have been interred; the deity is then addressed by a shrill screech, which is used only upon that occasion. When the priest retires, the tuft of feathers is removed, and the provisions left to putrefy, or be devoured by the rats.

Of the religion of these people, we were not able to acquire any clear and consistent knowledge: we found it like the religion of most other countries, involved in mystery, and perplexed with apparent inconsistencies. The religious language is also here, as it is in China, different from that which is used in common; so that Tupia, who took great pains to instruct us, having no words to express his meaning which we understood, gave us lectures to very little purpose: what we learnt, however, I will relate with as much perspicuity as I can.

Nothing is more obvious to a rational being, however ignorant or stupid, than that the universe and its various parts, as far as they fall under his notice, were produced by some agent inconceivably more powerful than himself; and nothing is more difficult to be conceived, even by the most sagacious and knowing, than the production of them from nothing, which among us is expressed by the word *Creation*. It is natural therefore, as no Being apparently capable of producing the universe is to be seen, that he should be supposed to reside in some distant part of it, or to be in his nature invisible, and that he should have originally produced all that now exists in a manner similar to that in which nature is renovated by the succession of one generation to another; but the idea of procreation includes in it that of two persons,

persons,
people i
nally or

The S
they call
they sup
ter of th
thirteen
but upon
produced
with each
ly to be
partly to
have the
cies of pla
moo and
ties whom
they say,
earth, and
man, their
was round
care drew
him into l
signifies
fal instin
no female
ter, and u
generation
being at l
peopled th

Besides
genitors o
Taroataih
cally stile
are more
pose to tal

Their fr
merous, an
the men, a

th from time to
tical: a young
e bunch of fea-
riest places him-
accompanied by
with a small of-
form, consisting
e weaving the
brins, which he
where the bones
ressed by a shrill
ccasion. When
removed, and
ured by the rats.
were not able to
dge: we found
ies, involved in
inconsistencies.
is in China, dif-
on; so that Tu-
aving no words
rstood, gave us
earnt, however,
I can.
being, however
and its various
were produced
erful than him-
conceived, even
an the produc-
g us is expres-
herefore, as no
the universe is
reside in some
invisible, and
ll that now ex-
nature is reno-
on to another;
it that of two
persons,

persons, and from the conjunction of two persons these people imagine every thing in the universe either originally or derivatively to proceed.

The Supreme Deity, one of these two first beings, they call TAROATAIHETOOMOO, and the other, whom they suppose to have been a rock, TEPAPA. A daughter of these was TETTOWMATATAYO, the year, or thirteen months collectively, which they never name but upon this occasion, and she, by the common father, produced the months, and the months, by conjunction with each other, the days: the stars they suppose partly to be the immediate offspring of the first pair, and partly to have increased among themselves; and they have the same notion with respect to the different species of plants. Among other progeny of Taroataihetoomoo and Tepapa, they suppose an inferior race of deities whom they call EATUAS. Two of these Eatuas, they say, at some remote period of time, inhabited the earth, and were the parents of the first man. When this man, their common ancestor, was born, they say that he was round like a ball, but that his mother, with great care drew out his limbs, and having at length moulded him into his present form, she called him EOTHE, which signifies *finished*. That being prompted by the universal instinct to propagate his kind, and being able to find no female but his mother, he begot upon her a daughter, and upon the daughter other daughters for several generations, before there was a son; a son, however, being at length born, he, by the assistance of his sisters, peopled the world.

Besides their daughter Tettowmatatayo, the first progenitors of nature had a son whom they called TANE, Taroataihetoomoo, the Supreme Deity, they emphatically stile the causer of earthquakes; but their prayers are more generally addressed to Tane, whom they suppose to take a greater part in the affairs of mankind.

Their subordinate deities or Eatuas, which are numerous, are of both sexes: the male are worshipped by the men, and the female by the women; and each have

Morais

Morais to which the other sex is not admitted, though they have all Morais common to both. Men perform the office of priest to both sexes, but each sex has its priests, for those who officiate for one sex, do not officiate for the other.

They believe the immortality of the soul, at least its existence in a separate state, and that there are two situations of different degrees of happiness, somewhat analogous to our heaven and hell: the superior situation they call *Tavirua Perai*, the other *Tiababoo*. They do not, however, consider them as places of reward and punishment, but as receptacles for different classes; the first, for their Chiefs and principal people, the other for those of inferior rank, for they do not suppose that their actions here in the least influence their future state, or, indeed, that they come under the cognizance of their deities at all. Their religion, therefore, if it has no influence upon their morals, is at least disinterested; and their expressions of adoration and reverence, whether by words or actions, arise only from a humble sense of their own inferiority, and the ineffable excellence of divine perfection.

The character of the priest or Tahowa, is hereditary: the class is numerous, and consists of all ranks of people; the chief, however, is generally the younger brother of a good family, and is respected in a degree next to their kings. Of the little knowledge that is possessed in this country, the priests have the greatest share; but it consists principally in an acquaintance with the names and ranks of the different Eatuas or subordinate divinities, and the opinions concerning the original things, which have been traditionally preserved among the order in detached sentences, of which some will repeat an incredible number, though but very few of the words that are used in their common dialect occur in them.

The priests, however, are superior to the rest of the people in the knowledge of navigation and astronomy, and, indeed, the name Tahowa signifies nothing more than

than "a man of knowledge." As there are priests of every class, they officiate only among that class to which they belong: the priest of the inferior class is never called upon by those of superior rank, nor will the priest of the superior rank officiate for any of the inferior class.

Marriage, in this island, as appeared to us, is nothing more than an agreement between the man and woman, with which the priest has no concern. Where it is contracted it appears to be pretty well kept, though sometimes the parties separate by mutual consent, and, in that case, a divorce takes place with as little trouble as the marriage.

But though the priesthood has laid the people under no tax for a nuptial benediction, there are two operations which it has appropriated, and from which it derives considerable advantages. One is *tattooing*, and the other circumcision, though neither of them has any connexion with religion. The tattooing has been described already. Circumcision has been adopted merely from motives of cleanliness; it cannot indeed properly be called circumcision, because the *prepuce* is not mutilated by a circular wound, but only slit through the upper part to prevent its contracting over the *glans*. As neither of these can be performed by any but a priest, and as to be without either is the greatest disgrace, they may be considered as a claim to surplice fees like our marriages and christenings, which are cheerfully and liberally paid, not according to any settled stipend, but the rank and abilities of the parties or their friends.

The Morai, as has already been observed, is at once a burying-ground and a place of worship, and in this particular our churches too much resemble it. The Indian, however, approaches his Morai with a reverence and humility that disgraces the Christian, not because he holds any thing sacred that is there, but because he there worships an invisible divinity, for whom, though he neither hopes for reward, nor fears punishment, at
his

his hand, he always expresses the profoundest homage and most humble adoration. I have already given a very particular description both of the Morais and the altars that are placed near them. When an Indian is about to worship at the Morai, or brings his offering to the altar, he always uncovers his body to the waste, and his looks and attitude are such as sufficiently express a corresponding disposition of mind.

It did not appear to us that these people are, in any instance, guilty of idolatry; at least they do not worship any thing that is the work of their hands, nor any visible part of the creation. This island indeed, and the rest that lie near it, have a particular bird, some a heron, and others a king's fisher, to which they pay a peculiar regard, and concerning which they have some superstitious notions with respect to good or bad fortune, as we have of the swallow and robin-red-breast, giving them the name of *EATUA*, and by no means killing or molesting them; yet they never address a petition to them, or approach them with any act of adoration.

Though I dare not assert that these people, to whom the art of writing, and consequently the recording of laws, are utterly unknown, live under a regular form of government; yet a subordination is established among them, that greatly resembles the early state of every nation in Europe under the feudal system, which secured liberty in the most licentious excess to a few, and entailed the most abject slavery upon the rest.

Their orders are, *Earee rahie*, which answers to king; *Earee*, baron; *Manabouni*, vassal; and *Toutou*, villain. The *Earee rahie*, of which there are two in this island, one being the sovereign of each of the peninsulas of which it consists, is treated with great respect by all ranks, but did not appear to us to be invested with so much power as was exercised by the *Earees* in their own districts; nor indeed did we, as I have before observed, once see the sovereign of *Obereonoo*, while we were in the island. The *Earees* are lords of one or more of the districts into which each of the peninsulas is divided

vic
wh
the
hol
rou
the
bor
hou
they
the
cate
E
grea
ther
part
not
othe
dispa
thes
as in
mini
was l
The
reign
of the
was y
the c
ver th
last n
privat
the cl
contin
bably
ments
If a
island
oblige
mon o
distric
Vol.

deft homage
eady given a
orais and the
an Indian is
is offering to
he waste, and
ntly exprefs a

are, in any
do not wor-
nds, nor any
deed, and the
some a heron,
ay a peculiar
some super-
ad fortune, as
breast, giving
ans killing or
a petition to
adoration.

ple, to whom
recording of
regular form
lished among
of every na-
which secured
few, and en-

wers to king;
outou, villain.
n this island,
peninsulas of
efpect by all
efted with fo
rees in their
ve before ob-
o, while we
ope or more
ninsulas is di-
vided

vided, of which there may be about one hundred in the whole island; and they parcel out their territories to the Manahounies, who cultivate each his part which he holds under the baron. The lowest class, called Tootous, seem to be nearly under the same circumstances as the villains in feudal governments: these do all the laborious work, they cultivate the land under the Manahounies, who are only nominal cultivators for the lord, they fetch wood and water, and, under the direction of the mistress of the family, dress the victuals; they also catch the fish.

Each of the Earees keeps a kind of court, and has a great number of attendants, chiefly the younger brothers of their own tribe; and among these some hold particular offices, but of what nature exactly we could not tell. One was called the *Eowa no l'Earee*, and another the *Whanno no l'Earee*, and these were frequently dispatched to us with messages. Of all the courts of these Earees, that of Tootahah was the most splendid, as indeed might reasonably be expected, because he administered the government for Outou, his nephew, who was Earee rahie of Obereonoo, and lived upon his estate. The child of the baron or Earee, as well as of the sovereign or Earee rahie, succeeds to the title and honours of the father as soon as it is born: so that a baron, who was yesterday called Earee, and was approached with the ceremony of lowering the garments, so as to uncover the upper part of the body, is to-day, if his wife was last night deliver'd of a child, reduced to the rank of a private man, all marks of respect being transferred to the child, if it is suffered to live, though the father still continues possessor and administrator of his estate: probably this custom has its share, among other inducements, in forming the societies called Arroy.

If a general attack happens to be made upon the island, every district under the command of an Earee is obliged to furnish its proportion of soldiers for the common defence. The number furnished by the principal districts, which Tupia recollected, when added together,

amounted, as I have observed before, to six thousand six hundred and eighty.

Upon such occasions, the united force of the whole island is commanded in chief by the Earee rahie. Private differences between two Earees are decided by their own people, without at all disturbing the general tranquility.

Their weapons are slings, which they use with great dexterity, pikes headed with slings of sting-rays, and clubs; of about six or seven feet long, made of a very hard heavy wood. Thus armed, they are said to fight with great obstinacy, which is the more likely to be true, as it is certain that they give no quarter to either man, woman, or child, who is so unfortunate as to fall into their hands during the battle, or for some hours afterwards, till their passion, which is always violent, though not lasting, has subsided.

The Earee rahie of Obereonoo, while we were here, was in perfect amity with the Earee rahie of Tiarreboo, the other peninsula, though he took himself the title of king of the whole island: this, however, produced no more jealousy in the other sovereign, than the title of king of France, assumed by our sovereign, does in his most Christian Majesty.

In a government so rude, it cannot be expected that distributive justice should be regularly administered, and indeed where there is so little opposition of interest, in consequence of the facility with which every appetite and passion is gratified, there can be but few crimes. There is nothing like money, the common medium by which every want and every wish is supposed to be gratified by those who do not possess it; there is no apparently permanent good which either fraud or force can unlawfully obtain; and when all the crimes that are committed by the inhabitants of civilized countries, to get money, are set out of the account, not many will remain: add to this, that where the commerce with women is restrained by no law, men will seldom be under any temptation to commit adultery, especially as one
woman

to six thou-

of the whole
rahie. Pri-
e decided by
g the general

se with great
ng-rays, and
de of a very
e said to fight
ly to be true,
o either man,
as to fall into
e hours after-
olent, though

ve were here,
of Tiarreboo,
self the title of
produced no
n. the title of
n, does in his

expected that
ministered, and
of interest, in
very appetite
few crimes.
n medium by
sed to be gra-
e is no appa-
or force can
mes that are
countries, to
many will re-
rce with wo-
om be under
cially as one
woman

woman is always less preferred than another, where they are less distinguished by personal decorations, and the adventitious circumstances which are produced by the varieties of art, and the refinements of sentiment. That they are thieves is true; but as among these people no man can be much injured or benefited by theft, it is not necessary to restrain it by such punishments as in other countries are absolutely necessary to the very existence of civil society. Tupia, however, tells us, that adultery is sometimes committed as well as theft. In all cases where an injury has been committed, the punishment of the offender lies with the sufferer: adultery, if the parties are caught in the fact, is sometimes punished with death in the first ardour of resentment; but without circumstances of immediate provocation, the female sinner seldom suffers more than a beating. As punishment, however, is enforced by no law, nor taken into the hand of any magistrate, it is not often inflicted, except the injured party is the strongest; though the Chiefs do sometimes punish their immediate dependents, for faults committed against each other, and even the dependents of others, if they are accused of any offence committed in their district.

A Description of several other Islands in the Neighbourhood of Otabeite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Customs and Manners of the Inhabitants.

AFTER parting with our friends, we made an easy sail, with gentle breezes and clear weather, and were informed by Tupia, that four of the neighbouring islands,

which he distinguished by the names of HUAHEINE, ULIETEA, OTAHA, and BOLABOLA, lay at the distance of between one and two days sail from Otaheite; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments with which we had of late been but sparingly supplied, were there to be procured in great plenty; but having discovered from the hills of Otaheite, an island lying to the northward, which he called TETHUROA, I determined first to stand that way, to take a nearer view of it. It lies N. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. distant eight leagues from the northern extremity of Otaheite, upon which we had observed the transit, and to which we had, for that reason, given the name of POINT VENUS. We found it to be a small low island, and were told by Tupia, that it had no settled inhabitants, but was occasionally visited by the inhabitants of Otaheite, who sometimes went thither for a few days to fish; we therefore determined to spend no more time in a farther examination of it, but to go in search of Huaheine and Ulietea, which he described to be well peopled, and as large as Otaheite.

At six o'clock in the morning of the 14th, the westernmost part of EIMEO, or York Island, bore S. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. and the body of Otaheite E. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. At noon, the body of York Island bore E. by S. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. and Port-Royal bay, at Otaheite, S. 70 d. 45 m. E. distant 61 miles, and an island which we took to be Saunders's Island, called by the natives TAPOAMANAO, bore S. S. W. We also saw land bearing N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. which Tupia said was Huaheine.

On the 15th, it was hazy, with light breezes and calms succeeding each other, so that we could see no land, and made but little way. Our Indian, Tupia, often prayed for a wind to his god Tane, and as often boasted of his success, which indeed he took a very effectual method to secure, for he never began his address to Tane, till he saw a breeze so near that he knew it must reach the ship before his oration was well over.

On the 16th, we had a gentle breeze; and in the morning about eight o'clock, being close in with the
north

north-west part of the island Huaheine, we sounded, but had no bottom with eighty fathom. Some canoes very soon came off, but the people seemed afraid, and kept at a distance till they discovered Tupia, and then they ventured nearer. In one of the canoes that came up to the ship's side, was the king of the island and his wife. Upon assurances of friendship, frequently and earnestly repeated, their Majesties and some others came on board. At first they were struck with astonishment, and wondered at every thing that was shewn them; yet they made no inquiries, and seeming to be satisfied with what was offered to their notice, they made no search after other objects of curiosity, with which it was natural to suppose a building of such novelty and magnitude as the ship must abound. After some time, they became more familiar. I was given to understand, that the name of the king was OREE, and he proposed, as a mark of amity, that we should exchange names. To this I readily consented; and he was Cookee, for so he pronounced my name, and I was Oree, for the rest of the time we were together. We found these people to be very nearly the same with those of Otaheite, in person, dress, language, and every other circumstance, except, if Tupia might be believed, that they would not steal.

Soon after dinner, we came to an anchor, in a small but excellent harbour on the west side of the island, which the natives call OWHARRE, in eighteen fathom water, clear ground, and secure from all winds. I went immediately ashore, accompanied by Mr Banks, Dr Solander, Mr Monkhouse, Tupia, King Cookee, and some other of the natives who had been on board ever since the morning. The moment we landed Tupia stripped himself as low as the waist, and desired Mr Monkhouse to do the same: he then sat down before a great number of the natives, who were collected together in a large house or shed; for here, as well as at Otaheite, a house consists only of a roof supported upon poles; the rest of us, by his desire, standing behind. He then began

began a speech or prayer which lasted about a quarter of an hour, the King who stood over against him every now and then answering in what appeared to be set responses. In the course of this harangue he delivered at different times two handkerchiefs, a black silk neck-cloth, some beads, two small bunches of feathers, and some plantains, as presents to their Eatua, or God. In return for these, he received for our Eatua, a hog, some young plantains, and two small bunches of feathers, which he ordered to be carried on board the ship. After these ceremonies, which we supposed to be the ratification of a treaty between us, every one was dismissed to go whither he pleased; and Tupia immediately repaired to offer his oblations at one of the Morais.

The next morning, we went on shore again, and walked up the hills, where the productions were exactly the same as those of Otaheite, except that the rocks and clay appeared to be more burnt. The houses were neat, and the boat houses remarkably large; one that we measured was fifty paces long, ten broad, and twenty-four feet high; the whole formed a pointed arch, like those of our old cathedrals, which was supported on one side by twenty-six, and on the other by thirty pillars; or rather posts, about two feet high, and one thick, upon most of which were rudely carved the heads of men, and several fanciful devices, not altogether unlike those which we sometimes see printed from wooden blocks, at the beginning and end of old books. The plains, or flat part of the country, abounded in bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees; in some places, however, there were salt swamps and lagoons, which would produce neither.

We went again a-shore on the 18th, and would have taken the advantage of Tupia's company, in our perambulation; but he was too much engaged with his friends: we took however his boy, whose name was TAYETO, and Mr Banks went to take a farther view of what had much engaged his attention before; it was a kind of chest or ark, the lid of which was nicely sew-

ed on, and thatched very neatly with palm-nut leaves : it was fixed upon two poles, and supported on little arches of wood, very neatly carved ; the use of the poles seemed to be to remove it from place to place, in the manner of our sedan chairs : in one end of it was a square hole, in the middle of which was a ring touching the sides, and leaving the angles open, so as to form a round hole within a square one. The first time Mr Banks saw this coffer, the aperture at the end was stopped with a piece of cloth, which, lest he should give offence, he left untouched ; probably there was then something within, but now the cloth was taken away, and upon looking into it, it was found empty. The general resemblance between this repository and the Ark of the Lord among the Jews, is remarkable ; but it is still more remarkable, that upon enquiring of the boy what it was called, he said, *Ewbarre no Eatua*, the *house of the God* : he could however, give no account of its signification or use. We had commenced a kind of trade with the natives, but it went on slowly ; for when any thing was offered, not one of them would take it upon his own judgment, but collected the opinions of twenty or thirty people, which could not be done without great loss of time. We got, however, eleven pigs, and determined to try for more the next day.

The next day, therefore, we brought out some hatchets, for which we hoped we should have had no occasion, upon an island which no European had ever visited before. These procured us three very large hogs ; and as we proposed to sail in the afternoon, King Oree and several others came on board to take their leave. To the King I gave a small plate of pewter, on which was stamped this inscription, " His Britannic Majesty's ship, Endeavour, Lieutenant Cook Commander, 16th July, 1769, Huaheine." I gave him also some medals or counters, resembling the coin of England, struck in the year 1761, with some other presents ; and he promised that with none of these, particularly the plate, he would ever part. I thought it as lasting a testimony of

our

our having first discovered this island, as any we could leave behind; and having dismissed our visitors well satisfied, and in great good humour, we set sail, about half an hour after two in the afternoon.

The island of Huaheine, or Huahene, is situated in the latitude of 16 d. 43 m. S. and longitude 150 d. 52 m. W. from Greenwich: it is distant from Otaheite about thirty-one leagues, in the direction of N. 58 W. and is about seven leagues in compass. Its surface is hilly and uneven, and it has a safe and commodious harbour. The harbour, which is called by the natives OWALLE, or OWHARRE, lies on the west side, under the northermost high land, and within the north end of the reef, which lies along that side of the island; there are two inlets or openings, by which it may be entered, through the reef, about a mile and a half distant from each other; the southern is the widest, and on the south side of it lies a very small sandy island.

Huaheine seems to be a month forwarder in its productions than Otaheite, as we found the cocoa-nuts full of kernel, and some of the new bread-fruit fit to eat. Of the cocoa-nuts the inhabitants make a food which they call *Poe*, by mixing them with yams; they scrape both fine, and having incorporated the powder, they put it into a wooden trough, with a number of hot stones, by which an oily kind of hasty pudding is made, that our people relished very well, especially when it was fryed. Mr Banks found not more than eleven or twelve new plants; but he observed some insects, and a species of scorpion which he had not seen before.

The inhabitants seem to be larger made, and more stout, than those of Otaheite. Mr Banks measured one of the men, and found him to be six feet three inches and an half high; yet they are so lazy, that he could not persuade any of them to go up the hills with him: they said, if they were to attempt it the fatigue would kill them. The women were very fair, more so than those of Otaheite; and in general, we thought them more hand-

GE.

y we could
sitors well
fail, about

situated in
de 150 d.
m Otaheite
N. 58 W.
surface is
mmodious
the natives
side, under
orth end of
and; there
be entered,
istant from
and on the

r in its pro-
oa-nuts full
fit to eat,
ood which
they scrape
wder, they
ber of hot
pudding is
especially
more than
d some in-
l not seen.

and more
sured one
ree inches
could not
aim: they
would kill
han those
em more
hand.



Cook's Voyages

Dalby & Bonick 3001

handsome, though none that were equal to some individuals. Both sexes seemed to be less timid, and less curious: it has been observed, that they made no enquiries on board the ship; and when we fired a gun, they were frightened indeed, but they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite constantly did when we first came among them. For this difference, however, we can easily account upon other principles; the people at Huaheine had not seen the Dolphin, those at Otaheite had. In one, the report of a gun was connected with the idea of instant destruction; to the other, there was nothing dreadful in it but the appearance and the sound, as they had never experienced its power of dispensing death.

While we were on shore, we found that Tupia had commended them beyond their merit, when he said that they would not steal; for one of them was detected in the fact. But when he was seized by the hair, the rest, instead of running away, as the people at Otaheite would have done, gathered round, and enquired what provocation had been given: but this also may be accounted for without giving them credit for superior courage; they had no experience of the consequence of European resentment, which the people at Otaheite had in many instances purchased with life. It must however be acknowledged, to their honour, that when they understood what had happened, they shewed strong signs of disapprobation, and prescribed a good beating for the thief, which was immediately administered.

We now made sail for the island of ULIATEA, which lies S. W. by W. distant seven or eight leagues from Huaheine, and at half an hour after six in the evening we were within three leagues of the shore, on the eastern side. We stood off and on all night, and when the day broke the next morning, we stood in for the shore: we soon after discovered an opening in the reef which lies before the island, within which Tupia told us there was a good harbour. I did not, however, implicitly take his word; but sent the master out in the pinnace to examine

mine it : he soon made the signal for the ship to follow ; we accordingly stood in, and anchored in two and twenty fathom, with soft ground.

The natives soon came off to us in two canoes, each of which brought a woman and a pig. The woman we supposed was a mark of confidence, and the pig was a present ; we received both with proper acknowledgments, and complimented each of the ladies with a spike nail and some beads, much to their satisfaction. We were told by Tupia, who had always expressed much fear of the men of Bolabola, that they had made a conquest of this island ; and that, if we remained here, they would certainly come down the next day, and fight us. We determined, therefore, to go on shore without delay, while the day was our own.

I landed in company with Mr Banks, Dr Solander, and the other gentlemen, Tupia being also of the party. He introduced us by repeating the ceremonies which he had performed at Huaheine, after which I hoisted an English jack, and took possession of this and the three neighbouring islands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, which were all in sight, in the name of his Britannic Majesty. After this, we took a walk to a great Morai, called TAPODEBOATEA. We found it very different from those of Otaheite ; for it consisted only of four walls, about eight feet high, of coral stones, some of which were of an immense size, inclosing an area of about five and twenty yards square, which was filled up with smaller stones : upon the top of it many planks were set up an end, which were carved in their whole length : at a little distance we found an altar, or Ewhatata, upon which lay the last oblation or sacrifice, a hog of about eighty pounds weight, which had been offered whole, and very nicely roasted. Here were also four or five Ewharre-no-Eatua, or houses of God, to which carriage poles were fitted, like that which we had seen at Huaheine. One of these Mr Banks examined by putting his hand into it, and found a parcel about five feet long and one thick, wrapped up in matts : he broke

a way through several of these matts with his fingers, but at length came to one which was made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut, so firmly plaited together that he found it impossible to tear it, and therefore was forced to desist; especially as he perceived, that what he had done already gave great offence to our new friends. From hence we went to a long house, not far distant, where, among rolls of cloth and several other things, we saw the model of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were tied eight human jaw-bones: we had already learnt that these, like scalps among the Indians of North America, were trophies of war. Tupia affirmed that they were the jaw-bones of the natives of this island; if so, they might have been hung up, with the model of a canoe, as a symbol of invasion, by the warriors of Bolabola, as a memorial of their conquest.

Night now came on apace, but Mr Banks and Dr Solander continued their walk along the shore, and at a little distance saw another Ewharre-no-Eatua, and a tree of the fig kind, the same as that which Mr Green had seen at Otaheite, in great perfection, the trunk, or rather congeries of the roots of which was forty-two paces in circumference.

On the 21st, having dispatched the master in the long-boat to examine the coast of the south part of the island, and one of the mates in the yawl, to sound the harbour where the ship lay, I went myself in the pinnace, to survey that part of the island which lies to the north. Mr Banks and the gentlemen were again on shore, trading with the natives, and examining the products and curiosities of the country; they saw nothing, however, worthy notice, but some more jaw-bones, of which they made no doubt but that the account they had heard was true.

On the 22d and 23d, having strong gales and hazy weather, I did not think it safe to put to sea; but on the 24th, though the wind was still variable, I got under sail, and plied to the northward within the reef, with a view to go out at a wider opening than that by which I

had entered; in doing this, however, I was unexpectedly in the most immediate danger of striking on the rock: the master, whom I had ordered to keep continually sounding in the chains, suddenly called out, "two fathom." This alarmed me, for though I knew the ship drew at least fourteen feet, and that, therefore, it was impossible such a shoal should be under her keel; yet the master was either mistaken, or she went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which, in the neighbourhood of these islands, are as steep as a wall.

This harbour or bay is called by the natives OPOA, and, taken in its greatest extent, it is capable of holding any number of shipping. It extends almost the whole length of the east side of the island, and is defended from the sea by a reef of coral rocks: the southernmost opening in this reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the easternmost point of the island, and may be known by another small woody island, which lies a little to the south east of it, called by the people here OATARA. Between three and four miles north west from this island lie two other islets, in the same direction as the reef, of which they are a part, called OPURURU and TAMOU; between these lies the other channel into the harbour, through which I went out, and which is a full quarter of a mile wide. Still farther to the north west are some other small islands, near which I am told there is another small channel into the harbour; but this I know only by report.

The principal refreshments that are to be procured at this part of the island are, plantains, cocoa-nuts, yams, hogs, and fowls; the hogs and fowls, however, are scarce; and the country, where we saw it, is neither so populous, nor so rich in produce as Otaheite, or even Huaheine. Wood and water may also be procured here; but the water cannot conveniently be got at.

We were now gain at sea, without having received any interruption from the hostile inhabitants of Bola-bola, whom, notwithstanding the fears of Tupia, we intend-

intended to visit. At four o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, we were within a league of Otaha, which bore N. 77 W. To the northward of the south end of that island, on the east side of it, and something more than a mile from the shore, lie two small islands, called TOAHOUTU and WHENNUAIA; between which, Tupia says, there is a channel into a very good harbour, which lies within the reef, and appearances confirmed his report.

As I discovered a broad channel between Otaha and Bolabola, I determined rather to go through it, than run to the northward of all; but the wind being right a-head, I got no ground.

Between five and six in the evening of the 26th, as I was standing to the northward, I discovered a small low island, lying N. by W. or N. N. W. distant four or five leagues from Bolabola. We were told by Tupia that the name of this island is TUBAI; that it produces nothing but cocoa-nuts, and is inhabited only by three families; though it is visited by the inhabitants of the neighbouring islands, who resort thither to catch fish, with which the coast abounds.

On the 27th, about noon, the peak of Bolabola bore N. 25 W. and the north end of Otaha, N. 80 W. distant three leagues. The wind continued contrary all this day and the night following. On the 28th, at six in the morning, we were near the entrance of the harbour on the east side of OTAHA, which has been just mentioned; and finding that it might be examined without losing time, I sent away the master in the long-boat, with orders to sound it; and, if the wind did not shift in our favour, to land upon the island, and traffic with the natives for such refreshments as were to be had. In this boat went Mr Banks and Dr Solander, who landed upon the island, and before night purchased three hogs, twenty-one fowls, and as many yams and plantains as the boat would hold. Plantains we thought a more useful refreshment even than pork; for they were boiled and served to the ship's company as bread, and were
now

now the more acceptable, as our bread was so full of vermin, that, notwithstanding all possible care, we had sometimes twenty of them in our mouths at a time, every one of which tasted as hot as mustard. The island seemed to be more barren than Ulietea, but the produce was of the same kind. The people also exactly resembled those that we had seen at the other islands; they were not numerous, but they flocked about the boat where-ever she went from all quarters, bringing with them whatever they had to sell. They paid the strangers, of whom they had received an account from Tupia, the same compliment which they used towards their own Kings, uncovering their shoulders, and wrapping their garments round their breasts; and were so solicitous to prevent its being neglected by any of their people, that a man was sent with them, who called out to every one they met, telling him what they were, and what he was to do.

In the mean time, I kept plying off and on, waiting for the boat's return; at half an hour after five, not seeing any thing of her, I fired a gun, and after it was dark hoisted a light; at half an hour after eight, we heard the report of a musquet, which we answered with a gun, and soon after the boat came on board. The master reported, that the harbour was safe and commodious, with good anchorage from twenty-five to sixteen fathom water, clear ground.

As soon as the boat was hoisted in, I made sail to the northward, and at eight o'clock in the morning of the 29th, we were close under the Peak of Bolabola, which was high, rude, and craggy. As the island was altogether inaccessible in this part, and we found it impossible to weather it, we tacked and stood off, then tacked again, and after many trips did not weather the south end of it till twelve o'clock at night. At eight o'clock the next morning, we discovered an island, which bore from us N. 63 d. W. distant about eight leagues; at the same time the Peak of Bolabola bore N. 4 E. distant three or four leagues. This island Tupia called MAU-

so full of ver-
 care, we had
 shs at a time,
 mustard. The
 Ulietea, but the
 ple also exact-
 other islands;
 ked about the
 ters, bringing
 They paid the
 account from
 used towards
 ers, and wrap-
 and were so
 py any of their
 who called out
 they were, and

nd on, waiting
 r five, not see-
 fter it was dark
 ght, we heard
 wnered with a
 ard. The ma-
 and commodi-
 five to sixteen

made sail to the
 morning of the
 Bolabola, which
 island was alto-
 found it impos-
 off, then tacked
 rather the south
 At eight o'clock
 nd, which bore
 leagues; at the
 N. 4 E. distant
 ia called MAU-
 RUA

RUA, and said that it was small, wholly surrounded by a reef, and without any harbour for shipping; but inhabited, and bearing the same produce as the neighbouring islands: the middle of it rises in a high round hill, that may be seen at the distance of ten leagues.

When we were off Bolabola, we saw but few people on the shore, and were told by Tupia that many of the inhabitants were gone to Ulietea. In the afternoon we found ourselves nearly the length of the south end of Ulietea, and to windward of some harbours that lay on the west side of this island. Into one of these harbours, though we had before been ashore on the other side of the island, I intended to put, in order to stop a leak which we had sprung in the powder room, and to take in more ballast, as I found the ship too light to carry sail upon a wind. As the wind was right against us, we plied off one of the harbours, and about three o'clock in the afternoon on the first of August, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel leading into in fourteen fathom water, being prevented from ing in, by a tide which set very strong out. We then carried out the kedge-anchor, in order to warp into the harbour; but when this was done, we could not trip the bower-anchor with all the purchase we could make; we were therefore obliged to lie still all night, and in the morning, when the tide turned, the ship going over the anchor, it tripped of itself, and we warped the ship into a proper birth with ease, and moored in twenty-eight fathom, with a sandy bottom. While this was doing many of the natives came off to us with hogs, fowls, and plantains, which they parted with at an easy rate.

When the ship was secured, I went on shore to look for a proper place to get ballast and water, both which I found in a very convenient situation.—This day Mr Banks and Dr Solander spent on shore very much to their satisfaction; every body seemed to fear and respect them, placing in them at the same time the utmost confidence, behaving as if conscious that they possessed the

the power of doing them mischief, without any propensity to make use of it. Men, women, and children, crowded round them, and followed them wherever they went; but none of them were guilty of the least incivility: on the contrary, whenever there happened to be dirt or water in the way, the men vied with each other to carry them over on their backs. They were conducted to the houses of the principal people, and were received in a manner altogether new: the people, who followed them while they were in their way, rushed forward as soon as they came to a house, and went hastily in before them, leaving however a lane sufficiently wide for them to pass. When they entered, they found those who had preceded them ranged on each side of a long matt, which was spread upon the ground, and at the farther end of which sat the family: in the first house they entered they found some very young women or children, dressed with the utmost neatness, who kept their station, expecting the strangers to come up to them and make them presents, which they did with the greatest pleasure; for prettier children or better-dressed they had never seen. One of them was a girl about six years old; her gown, or upper garment, was red; a large quantity of plaited hair was wound round her head, the ornament to which they gave the name of Tamou, and which they value more than any thing they possess. She sat at the upper end of a matt thirty feet long, upon which none of the spectators presumed to set a foot, notwithstanding the crowd; and she leaned upon the arm of a well-looking woman about thirty, who was probably her nurse. Our gentlemen walked up to her, and as soon as they approached, she stretched out her hand to receive the beads which they offered her, and no Princess in Europe could have done it with a better grace.

The people were so much gratified by the presents which were made to these girls, that when Mr Banks and Dr Solander returned they seemed attentive to nothing but how to oblige them; and in one of the houses they

out any pro-
and children,
where-ever
y of the least
re happened
ed with each
They were
people, and
the people,
r way, rush-
e, and went
ne sufficient-
ntered, they
ged on each
the ground,
nily : in the
very young
ost neatness,
gers to come
ch they did
en or better-
n was a girl
arment, was
ound round
ve the name
n any thing
matt thirty
rs presumed
nd she lean-
about thirty,
men walked
ne stretched
they offered
done it with

he presents
Mr Banks
ative to no-
f the houses
they

Cook's Voyages.



A DANCE in TAHITI.

Henry Bewick Esq.

they were, by order of the master, entertained with a dance, different from any that they had seen. It was performed by one man, who put upon his head a large cylindrical piece of wicker-work, or basket, about four feet long and eight inches in diameter, which was faced with feathers, placed perpendicularly, with the tops bending forwards, and edged round with shark's teeth, and the tail feathers of Tropic birds: when he had put on his head dress, which is called a *Whow*, he began to dance, moving slowly, and often turning his head so as that the top of his high wicker-cap described a circle, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the spectators as to make them start back: this was held among them as a very good joke, and never failed to produce a peal of laughter, especially when it was played off upon one of the strangers.

On the 3d, we went along the shore to the northward, which was in a direction opposite to that of the rout Mr Banks and Dr Solander had taken the day before, with a design to purchase stock, which we always found the people more ready to part with, and at a more easy price, at their houses than at the market. In the course of our walk we met with a company of dancers, who detained us two hours, and during all that time afforded us great entertainment. The company consisted of two women dancers, and six men, with three drums; we were informed by Tupia, that they were some of the most considerable people in the island, and that though they were continually going from place to place, they did not, like the little strolling companies of Taheite, take any gratuity from the spectators. The women had upon their heads a considerable quantity of amou, or plaited hair, which was brought several times round the head, and adorned in many parts with the flowers of the cape-jessamine, which were stuck in with much taste, and made a head-dress truly elegant. Their necks, shoulders, and arms were naked; so were the breasts also as low as the parting of the armpits; below that, they were covered with black cloth, which set

close to the body; at the side of each breast, next the arm, was placed a small plume of black feathers, much in the same manner as our ladies now wear their nose-gays or *Bouquets*; upon their hips rested a quantity of cloth plaited very full, which reached up to the breast, and fell down below into long petticoats, which quite concealed their feet, and which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done: the plaits above the waist were brown and white alternately, the petticoats below were all white.

In this dress they advanced sideways in a measured step, keeping excellent time to the drums, which beat briskly and loud; soon after they began to shake their hips, giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion, which was in some degree continued through the whole dance, though the body was thrown into various postures, sometimes standing, sometimes sitting, and sometimes resting on their knees and elbows, the fingers also being moved at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be imagined. Much of the dexterity of the dancers, however, and the entertainment of the spectators, consisted in the wantonness of their attitudes and gestures, which was, indeed, such as exceeds all description.

One of these girls had in her ear three pearls; one of them was very large, but so foul that it was of little value; the other two were as big as a middling pea; these were clear, and of a good colour and shape, though spoiled by the drilling. Mr Banks would fain have purchased them, and offered the owner any thing she would ask for them, but she could not be persuaded to part with them at any price: he tempted her with the value of four hogs, and whatever else she should chuse, but without success; and, indeed, they set a value upon their pearls very nearly equal to what they would fetch among us, except they could be procured before they are drilled.

Between the dances of the women, the men performed a kind of dramatic interlude, in which there was

was dialogue as well as dancing; but we were not sufficiently acquainted with their language to understand the subject.

On the 4th, some of our gentlemen saw a much more regular entertainment of the dramatic kind, which was divided into four acts.

Tupia had often told us that he had large possessions in this island, which had been taken away from him by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and he now pointed them out in the very bay where the ship was at anchor. Upon our going on shore this was confirmed by the inhabitants, who shewed us several districts or Whennuas, which they acknowledged to be his right.

On the 5th, I received a present of three hogs, some fowls, several pieces of cloth, the largest we had seen, being fifty yards long, which they unfolded and displayed so as to make the greatest show possible; and a considerable quantity of plantains, cocoa-nuts, and other refreshments, from Opoony, the formidable king, or, in the language of the country, Earce rahie of Bolabola, with a message that he was at this time upon the island, and that the next day he intended to pay me a visit.

In the mean time Mr Banks and Dr Solander went upon the hills, accompanied by several of the Indians, who conducted them, by excellent paths, to such a height, that they plainly saw the other side of the island, and the passage through which the ship had passed the reef between the little islands of Opururu and Tamou, when we landed upon it the first time. As they were returning, they saw the Indians exercising themselves at what they call *Erowhaw*, which is nothing more than pitching a kind of light lance, headed with hard wood, at a mark; in this amusement, though they seem very fond of it, they do not excel, for not above one in twelve struck the mark, which was the bole of a plantain tree, at about twenty yards distance.

On the 6th, we all staid at home, expecting the visit of the great king, but we were disappointed; we had, however, much more agreeable company, for he sent

three very pretty girls to demand something in return for his present: perhaps he was unwilling to trust himself on board the ship, or perhaps he thought his messengers would procure a more valuable return for his hogs and poultry than he could himself; be that as it may, we did not regret his absence, nor his messengers their visit.

In the afternoon, as the great king would not come to us, we determined to go to the great king. As he was lord of the Bolabola men, the conquerors of this, and the terror of all the other islands, we expected to see a Chief young and vigorous, with an intelligent countenance, and an enterprising spirit: we found, however, a poor feeble wretch, withered and decrepit, half blind with age, and so sluggish and stupid that he appeared scarcely to have understanding enough left to know that it was probable we should be gratified either by hogs or women. He did not receive us sitting, or with any state or formality as the other Chiefs had done: we made him our present, which he accepted, and gave a hog in return. We had learnt that his principal residence was at Otaha; and upon our telling him that we intended to go thither in our boats the next morning, and that we should be glad to have him along with us, he promised to be of the party.

Early in the next morning, therefore, I set out both with the pinnace and long-boat for Otaha, having some of the gentlemen with me; and in our way we called upon Opoony, who was in his canoe, ready to join us. As soon as we landed at Otaha, I made him a present of an ax, which I thought might induce him to encourage his subjects to bring us such provision as we wanted; but in this we found ourselves sadly disappointed, for after staying with him till noon, we left him without being able to procure a single article. I then proceeded to the north point of the island, in the pinnace, having sent the long-boat another way. As I went along I picked up half a dozen hogs, as many fowls, and some plants and yams. Having viewed and sketched the harbour

hour on this side of the island, I made the best of my way back, with the long-boat, which joined me soon after it was dark; and about ten o'clock at night we got on board the ship.

In this excursion Mr Banks was not with us; he spent the morning on board the ship, trading with the natives, who came off in their canoes, for provisions and curiosities; and in the afternoon he went on shore with his draughtsman, to sketch the dresses of the dancers which he had seen a day or two before. He found the company exactly the same, except that another woman had been added to it: the dancing also of the women was the same, but the interludes of the men were somewhat varied; he saw five or six performed, which were different from each other, and very much resembled the drama of our stage dances. The next day, he went ashore again, with Dr Solander, and they directed their course towards the dancing company, which, from the time of our second landing, had gradually moved about two leagues in their course round the island. They saw more dancing and more interludes, the interludes still varying from each other: in one of them the performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, which were distinguished from each other by the colour of their clothes, one being brown and the other white. The brown party represented a master and servants, and the white party a company of thieves: the master gave a basket of meat to the rest of his party, with a charge to take care of it: the dance of the white party consisted of several expedients to steal it, and that of the brown party in preventing their success. After some time, those who had charge of the basket placed themselves round it, upon the ground, and leaning upon it, appeared to go to sleep; the others, improving this opportunity, came gently upon them, and lifting them up from the basket, carried off their prize: the sleepers soon after awaking, missed their basket, but presently fell a dancing, without any farther regarding their loss; so that the dramatic action of this dance was, accord-

According to the severest laws of criticism, one, and our lovers of simplicity would here have been gratified with an entertainment perfectly suited to the chastity of their taste.

On the 9th, having spent the morning in trading with the canoes, we took the opportunity of a breeze, which sprung up at East, and having stopped our leak, and got the fresh stock which we had purchased on board, we sailed out of the harbour. When we were sailing away, Tupia strongly urged me to fire a shot towards Bolabola, possibly as a mark of his resentment, and to shew the power of his new allies: in this I thought proper to gratify him, though we were seven leagues distant.

While we were about these islands, we expended very little of the ship's provisions, and were very plentifully supplied with hogs, fowls, plantains and yams, which we hoped would have been of great use to us in our course to the southward; but the hogs would not eat European grain of any kind, pulse, or bread-dust, so that we could not preserve them alive; and the fowls were all very soon seized with a disease that affected the head so, that they continued to hold it down between their legs till they died: much dependence therefore must not be placed in live stock taken on board at these places, at least not till a discovery is made of some food that the hogs will eat, and some remedy for the disease of the poultry.

Having been necessarily detained at Ulietea so long, by the carpenters in stopping our leak, we determined to give up our design of going on shore at Bolabola, especially as it appeared to be difficult of access.

To these six islands, Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, Huaheine, Tubai, and Maurua, as they lie contiguous to each other, I gave the names of SOCIETY ISLANDS, but did not think it proper to distinguish them separately by any other names than those by which they were known to the natives.

They are situated between the latitude of 16 d. 10 m. and

and 16 d. 55 m. S. and between the longitude of 150 d. 57 m. and 152 d. W. from the meridian of Greenwich. Ulitea and Otaha lie within about two miles of each other, and are both inclosed within one reef of coral rocks, so that there is no passage for shipping between them. This reef forms several excellent harbours; the entrances into them, indeed, are but narrow, yet when a ship is once in, nothing can hurt her. The harbours on the east side have been described already; and on the west side of Ulitea, which is the largest of the two, there are three. The northernmost, in which we lay, is called OHAMANENO: the channel leading into it is about a quarter of a mile wide, and lies between two low sandy islands, which are the northernmost on this side; between, or just within the two islands, there is good anchorage in twenty-eight fathom, soft ground. This harbour, though small, is preferable to the others, because it is situated in the most fertile part of the island, and where fresh water is easily to be got. The other two harbours lie to the southward of this, and not far from the south end of the island; in both of them there is good anchorage, with ten, twelve, and fourteen fathom. They are easily known by three small woody islands at their entrance. The southernmost of these two harbours lies within, and to the southward of the southernmost of these islands, and the other lies between the two northernmost. I was told that there were more harbours at the south end of this island, but I did not examine whether the report was true.

Otaha affords two very good harbours, one on the east side, and the other on the west. That on the east side is called Ohamene, and has been mentioned already; the other is called OHERURUA, and lies about the middle of the south-west side of the island; it is pretty large, and affords good anchorage in twenty and twenty-five fathom, nor is there any want of fresh water. The breach in the reef, that forms a channel into this harbour, is about a quarter of a mile broad, and like all the rest

and our
d with
of their

trading
breeze,
ur leak,
ased on
ve were
shot to-
ntment,
n this I
re seven

xpended
ery plen-
nd yams,
e to us in
ould not
read-dust,
the fowls
t affected
down be-
nce there-
board at
e of some
y for the

a so long,
etermined
Bolabola,
fs.
ola, Hua-
ous to each
s, but did
ely by any
known to

6 d. 10 m.
and

rest is very steep on both sides; in general there is no danger here but what is visible.

The island of Bolabola lies N. W. and by W. from Otaha, distant about four leagues; it is surrounded by a reef of rocks, and several small islands, in compass together about eight leagues. I was told, that on the south west side of the island there is a channel through the reef into a very good harbour, but I did not think it worth while to examine it, for the reasons that have been just assigned. This island is rendered very remarkable by a high craggy hill, which appears to be almost perpendicular, and terminates at the top in two peaks, one higher than the other.

The land of Ulietea and Otaha is hilly, broken, and irregular, except on the sea coast, yet the hills look green and pleasant, and are in many places clothed with wood. The several particulars in which these islands and their inhabitants differ from what we had observed at Otaheite, have been mentioned in the course of the narrative.

We pursued our course without any event worthy of note till the 13th, about noon, when we saw land bearing S. E. which Tupia told us was an island called OHETEROA. About six in the evening, we were within two or three leagues of it, upon which I shortened sail, and stood off and on all night: the next morning stood in for the land. We ran to leeward of the island, keeping close in shore, and saw several of the natives, though in no great numbers, upon the beach. At nine o'clock I sent Mr Gore, one of my Lieutenants, in the pinnace, to endeavour to land upon the island, and learn from the natives whether there was anchorage in a bay then in sight, and what land lay farther to the southward. Mr Banks and Dr Solander accompanied Mr Gore in this expedition, and as they thought Tupia might be useful, they took him with them.

As the boat approached the shore, those on board perceived the natives to be armed with long lances; as they did not intend to land till they got round a point which

run

here is no

W. from
nded by a
mpafs to-
the south
rough the
ot think it
that have
y remark-
be almost
wo peaks,

oken, and
ook green
ith wood.
and their
ed at Ota-
the nar-

worthy of
and bear-
nd called
ere with-
shortened
morning
he ifland,
e natives,

At nine
ts, in the
and learn
e in a bay
he south-
nied Mr
ht Tupia

board per-
s; as they
nt which
run

run out at a little distance, they stood along the coast, and the natives therefore very probably thought they were afraid of them. They had now got together to the number of about sixty, and all of them sat down upon the shore, except two, who were dispatched forward to observe the motions of those in the boat. These men, after walking abreast of her some time, at length leaped into the water, and swam towards her, but were soon left behind; two more then appeared, and attempted to board her in the same manner, but they also were soon left behind; a fifth man then ran forward alone, and having got a good way a-head of the boat before he took to the water, easily reached her. Mr Banks urged the officer to take him in, thinking it a good opportunity to get the confidence and goodwill of a people, who then certainly looked upon them as enemies, but he obstinately refused: this man therefore was left behind like the others, and so was a sixth, who followed him.

When the boat had got round the point, she perceived that all her followers had desisted from the pursuit: she now opened a large bay, at the bottom of which appeared another body of men, armed with long lances like the first. Here our people prepared to land, and pushed towards the shore, a canoe at the same time putting off to meet them. As soon as it came near them, they lay upon their oars, and calling out to them, told them that they were friends, and that if they would come up they would give them nails, which were held up for them to see: after some hesitation they came up to the boat's stern, and took some nails that were offered them with great seeming satisfaction; but in less than a minute they appeared to have formed a design of boarding the boat, and making her their prize: three of them suddenly leaped into it, and the others brought up the canoe, which the motion in quitting her had thrown off a little, manifestly with a design to follow their associates, and support them in their attempt. The first that boarded the boat, entered close to Mr Banks, and

instantly snatched his powder-horn out of his pocket: Mr Banks seized it, and with some difficulty wrenched it out of his hand, at the same time pressing against his breast in order to force him over-board, but he was too strong for him, and kept his place: the officer then snapped his piece, but it missed fire, upon which he ordered some of the people to fire over their heads; two pieces were accordingly discharged; upon which they all instantly leaped into the water: one of the people, either from cowardice or cruelty, or both, levelled a third piece at one of them as he was swimming away, and the ball grazed his forehead; happily, however, the wound was very slight, for he recovered the canoe, and stood up in her as active and vigorous as the rest. The canoe immediately stood in for the shore, where a great number of people not less than two hundred, were now assembled. The boat also pushed in, but found the land guarded all round with a shoal, upon which the sea broke with a considerable surf; it was therefore thought advisable by the officer to proceed along the shore in search of a more convenient landing-place: in the mean time the people on board saw the canoe go on shore, and the natives gather eagerly round her to enquire the particulars of what had happened. Soon after, a single man ran along the shore, armed with his lance, and when he came a-breast of the boat he began to dance, brandish his weapon, and call out in a very shrill tone which Tupia said was a defiance from the people. The boat continued to row along the shore, and the champion followed it, repeating his defiance by his voice and his gestures; but no better landing-place being found than that where the canoe had put the natives on shore, the officer turned back with a view to attempt it there, hoping, that if it should not be practicable, the people would come to a conference either on the shoals or in their canoes, and that a treaty of peace might be concluded with them.

As the boat rowed slowly along the shore back again, another champion came down, shouting defiance, and
bran-

brandishing his lance : his appearance was more formidable than that of the other, for he wore a large cap made of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, and his body was covered with stripes of different coloured cloth, yellow, red, and brown. This gentleman also danced, but with much more nimbleness and dexterity than the first ; our people, therefore, considering his agility and his dress, distinguished him by the name of HARLEQUIN. Soon after a more grave and elderly man came down to the beach, and hailing the people in the boat, enquired who they were, and from whence they came ; Tupia answered in their own language, from Otaheite : the three natives then walked peaceably along the shore till they came to a shoal, upon which a few people were collected ; here they stopped, and after a short conference, they all began to pray very loud : Tupia made his responses, but continued to tell us that they were not our friends. When their prayer, or as they call it, their *Poorah*, was over, our people entered into a parley with them, telling them that if they would lay by their lances and clubs, for some had one and some the other, they would come on shore and trade with them for whatever they would bring : they agreed, but it was only upon condition that we would leave behind us our musquets : this was a condition which, however equitable it might appear, could not be complied with, nor indeed would it have put the two parties upon an equality, except their numbers had been equal. Here then the negotiation seemed to be at an end ; but in a little time they ventured to come nearer to the boat, and at last came near enough to trade, which they did very fairly, for a small quantity of their cloth and some of their weapons ; but as they gave our people no hope of provisions, nor indeed any thing else, except they would venture through a narrow channel to the shore, which, all circumstances considered, they did not think it prudent to do, they put off the boat and left them.

With the ship and the boat we had now made the circuit of the island, and finding that there was neither

harbour nor anchorage about it, and that the hostile disposition of the people would render landing impracticable, without bloodshed, I determined not to attempt it, having no motive that could justify the risk of life.

The bay which the boat entered lies on the west side of the island, the bottom was foul and rocky, but the water so clear that it could plainly be seen at the depth of five and twenty fathom, which is one hundred and fifty feet.

This island is situated in the latitude of 22 d. 27 m. S. and in the longitude of 150 d. 47 m. W. from the meridian of Greenwich. It is thirteen miles in circuit, and rather high than low, but neither populous nor fertile, in proportion to the other islands that we had seen in these seas. The chief produce seems to be the tree of which they make their weapons, called in their language *Etoa*; many plantations of it were seen along the shore, which is not surrounded, like the neighbouring islands, by a reef.

The people seemed to be lusty and well-made, rather browner than those we had left: under their arm-pits they had black marks about as broad as the hand, the edges of which formed not a strait but an indented line; they had also circles of the same colour, but not so broad, round their arms and legs, but were not marked on any other part of the body.

Their dress was very different from any that we had seen before, as well as the cloth of which it was made. The cloth was of the same materials as that which is worn in the other islands, and most of that which was seen by our people was dyed of a bright but deep yellow, and covered on the outside with a composition like varnish, which was either red, or of a dark lead-colour; over this ground it was again painted in stripes of many different patterns, with wonderful regularity, in the manner of our striped silks in England; the cloth that was painted red was striped with black, and that which was painted lead-colour with white. Their habit was a short jacket of this cloth, which reached about as low

as their knees; it was of one piece, and had no other making than a hole in the middle of it, stitched round with long stitches, in which it differed from all that we had seen before: through this hole the head was put, and what hung down was confined to their bodies by a piece of yellow cloth or sash, which passing round the neck behind, was crossed upon the breast, and then collected round the waist like a belt, which passed over another belt of red cloth, so that they made a very gay and warlike appearance; some had caps of the feathers of the tropic bird, which have been before described, and some had a piece of white or lead-coloured cloth wound about the head like a small turban, which our people thought more becoming.

Their arms were long lances made of the Etoa, the wood of which is very hard; they were well polished and sharpened at one end: some were near twenty feet long, though not more than three fingers thick: they had also a weapon which was both club and pike, made of the same wood, about seven feet long; this also was well polished, and sharpened at one end into a broad point. As a guard against these weapons, when they attacked each other, they have mats folded up many times, which they place under their clothes from the neck to the waist: the weapons themselves indeed are capable of much less mischief than those of the same kind which we saw at the other islands, for the lances were there pointed with a sharp bone of the sting-ray that is called the sting, and the pikes were of much greater weight. The other things that we saw here were all superior in their kind to any we had seen before; the cloth was of a better colour in the dye, and painted with greater neatness and taste; the clubs were better cut and polished, and the canoe, though a small one, was very rich in ornament, and the carving was executed in a better manner: among other decorations peculiar to this canoe, was a line of small white feathers, which hung from the head and stern on the outside, and

which

which, when we saw them, were thoroughly wetted by the spray.

Tupia told us, that there were several islands lying at different distances and in different directions from this, between the south and the north west; and that at the distance of three days sail to the north east, there was an island called MANUA, bird island: he seemed, however, most desirous that we should sail to the westward, and described several islands in that direction which he said he had visited: he told us that he had been ten or twelve days in going thither, and thirty in coming back, and that the *Pahie* in which he had made the voyage, sailed much faster than the ship: reckoning his *Pahie* therefore to go at the rate of forty leagues a day, which from my own observation, I have great reason to think these boats will do, it would make four hundred leagues in ten days, which I compute to be the distance of Boscawen and Keppel's islands, discovered by Captain Wallis, westward of Ulietea, and therefore think it very probable that they were the islands he had visited. The farthest island that he knew any thing of to the southward, he said, lay at the distance of about two days sail from Oteroah, and was called MOUTOU; but he said that his father had told him there were islands to the southward of that: upon the whole, I was determined to stand forward in search of a continent, but to spend no time in searching for islands, if we did not happen to fall in with them during our course.

The

The Passage from Oteroah to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-shore there, and while the Ship lay in Poverty Bay.

WE sailed from Oteroah on the 15th of August, 1769, and on Friday the 25th we celebrated the anniversary of our leaving England, by taking a Cheshire cheese from a locker, where it had been carefully treasured up for this occasion, and tapping a cask of porter, which proved to be very good and in excellent order. On the 29th, one of the sailors got so drunk, that the next morning he died: we thought at first that he could not have come honestly by the liquor, but we afterwards learnt that the boatswain, whose mate he was, had in mere good-nature given him part of a bottle of rum.

On the 30th we saw the comet; at one o'clock in the morning it was a little above the horizon in the eastern part of the heavens; at about half an hour after four it passed the meridian, and its tail subtended an angle of forty-two degrees.

Among others that observed the comet, was Tupia, who instantly cried out, that as soon as it should be seen by the people of Bolabola, they would kill the inhabitants of Ulietea, who would with the utmost precipitation fly to the mountains.

We continued our course till Friday, October the 6th, when we saw land from the mast-head, bearing W. by N. and stood directly for it; in the evening it could just be discerned from the deck, and appeared large.

On the 7th it fell calm, we therefore approached the land slowly; and in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, we were still distant seven or eight leagues. It appeared still larger as it was more distinctly seen, with four

four or five ranges of hills, rising one over the other, and a chain of mountains above all, which appeared to be of an enormous height. This land became the subject of much eager conversation; but the general opinion seemed to be that we had found the *Terra australis incognita*. About five o'clock we saw the opening of a bay, which seemed to run pretty far inland, upon which we hauled our wind, and stood in for it; we also saw smoke ascending from different places on shore. When night came on, however, we kept plying off and on till day-light, when we found ourselves to the leeward of the bay, the wind being at north: we could now perceive that the hills were cloathed with wood, and that some of the trees in the valleys were very large. By noon we fetched in with the south west point; but not being able to weather it, tacked and stood off: at this time we saw several canoes standing cross the bay, which in a little time made to shore, without seeming to take the least notice of the ship; we also saw some houses, which appeared to be small, but neat; and near one of them a considerable number of the people collected together, who were sitting upon the beach, and who, we thought, were the same that we had seen in the canoes. Upon a small peninsula, at the north east head, we could plainly perceive a pretty high and regular paling, which inclosed the whole top of a hill; this was also the subject of much speculation, some supposing it to be a park of deer, others an inclosure for oxen and sheep. About four o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored on the north west side of the bay, before the entrance of a small river, in ten fathom water, with a fine sandy bottom, and at about half a league from the shore. The sides of the bay are white cliffs of a great height; the middle is low land, with hills gradually rising behind, one towering above another, and terminating in the chain of mountains which appeared to be far inland.

In the evening I went on shore accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, with the pinnace and yawl, and a party of men. We landed abreast of the ship, on the

east

east side of the river, which was here about forty yards broad; but seeing some natives on the west side whom I wished to speak with, and finding the river not fordable, I ordered the yawl in to carry us over, and left the pinnace at the entrance. When we came near the place where the people were assembled, they all ran away; however, we landed, and leaving four boys to take care of the yawl, we walked up to some huts which were about two or three hundred yards from the water-side. When we had got some distance from the boat, four men, armed with long lances, rushed out of the woods, and running up to attack the boat, would certainly have cut her off, if the people in the pinnace had not discovered them, and called to the boys to drop down the stream: the boys instantly obeyed; but being closely pursued by the Indians, the cockswain of the pinnace, who had the charge of the boats fired a musquet over their heads; at this they stopped and looked round them, but in a few minutes renewed the pursuit, brandishing their lances in a threatening manner: the cockswain then fired a second musquet over their heads, but of this they took no notice; and one of them lifting up his spear to dart it at the boat, another piece was fired, which shot him dead. When he fell, the other three stood motionless for some minutes, as if petrified with astonishment; as soon as they recovered, they went back, dragging after them the dead body, which, however, they soon left, that it might not incumber their flight. At the report of the first musquet we drew together, having straggled to a little distance from each other, and made the best of our way back to the boat; and crossing the river, we soon saw the Indian lying dead upon the ground. Upon examining the body, we found that he had been shot through the heart: he was a man of the middle size and stature; his complexion was brown, but not very dark; and one side of his face was tattowed in spiral lines of a very regular figure: he was covered with a fine cloth, of a manufacture altogether new to us, and it was tied on exactly according

to the representation in Valentyn's Account of Abel Tasman's Voyage, vol. iii. part 2. page 50; his hair also was tied in a knot on the top of his head, but had no feather in it. We returned immediately to the ship, where we could hear the people on shore talking with great earnestness, and in a very loud tone, probably about what had happened, and what should be done.

In the morning, we saw several of the natives where they had been seen the night before, and some walking with a quick pace towards the place where we had landed, most of them unarmed; but three or four with long pikes in their hands. As I was desirous to establish an intercourse with them, I ordered three boats to be manned with seamen and marines, and proceeded towards the shore, accompanied by Mr Banks, Dr Solander, the other gentlemen, and Tupia; about fifty of them seemed to wait for our landing, on the opposite side of the river, which we thought a sign of fear, and seated themselves upon the ground: at first, therefore, myself, with only Mr Banks, Dr Solander, and Tupia, landed from the little boat, and advanced towards them; but we had not proceeded many paces before they all started up, and every man produced either a long pike, or a small weapon of green talc, extremely well polished, about a foot long, and thick enough to weigh four or five pounds: Tupia called to them in the language of Otaheite; but they answered only by flourishing their weapons; and making signs to us to depart; a musquet was then fired wide of them; and the ball struck the water, the river being still between us: they saw the effect, and desisted from their threats; but we thought it prudent to retreat till the marines could be landed. This was soon done; and they marched, with a jack carried before them, to a little bank, about fifty yards from the water-side; here they were drawn up, and I again advanced, with Mr Banks and Dr Solander; Tupia, Mr Green, and Mr Monkhouse, being with us. Tupia was again directed to speak to them, and it was with great pleasure that we perceived he was

per-

perfectly understood, he and the natives speaking only different dialects of the same language. He told them that we wanted provision and water, and would give them iron in exchange, the properties of which he explained as well as he was able. They were willing to trade, and desired that we would come over to them for that purpose: to this we consented, provided they would lay by their arms; which, however, they could by no means be persuaded to do. During this conversation, Tupia warned us to be upon our guard: for that they were not our friends: we then pressed them in our turn to come over to us; and at last one of them stripped himself, and swam over without his arms: he was almost immediately followed by two more, and soon after by most of the rest, to the number of twenty or thirty; but these brought their arms with them. We made them all presents of iron and beads; but they seemed to set little value upon either, particularly the iron, not having the least idea of its use; so that we got nothing in return but a few feathers: they offered indeed to exchange their arms for ours, and, when we refused, made many attempts to snatch them out of our hands. As soon as they came over, Tupia repeated his declaration that they were not our friends, and again warned us to be upon our guard; their attempts to snatch our weapons, therefore, did not succeed; and we gave them to understand by Tupia, that we should be obliged to kill them if they offered any farther violence. In a few minutes, however, Mr Green happening to turn about, one of them snatched away his hanger, and retiring to a little distance, waved it round his head, with a shout of exultation: the rest now began to be extremely insolent, and we saw more coming to join them from the opposite side of the river. It was therefore become necessary to repress them, and Mr Banks fired at the man who had taken the hanger with small shot, at the distance of about fifteen yards: when the shot struck him, he ceased to cry; but instead of returning the hanger, continued to flourish it over his head, at the

same time slowly retreating to a greater distance. Mr Monkhouse seeing this, fired at him with ball, and he instantly dropped. Upon this the main body, who had retired to a rock in the middle of the river upon the first discharge, began to return; two that were near to the man who had been killed, ran up to the body, one seized his weapon of green talc, and the other endeavoured to secure the hanger, which Mr Monkhouse had but just time to prevent. As all that had retired to the rock were now advancing, three of us discharged our pieces, loaded only with small shot, upon which they swam back for the shore; and we perceived, upon their landing, that two or three of them were wounded. They retired slowly up the country, and we re-imbarked in our boats.

As we had unhappily experienced that nothing was to be done with these people at this place, and finding the water in the river to be salt, I proceeded in the boats round the head of the bay in search of fresh water, and with a design, if possible, to surprize some of the natives, and take them on board, where by kind treatment and presents I might obtain their friendship, and by their means establish an amicable correspondence with their countrymen.

To my great regret, I found no place where I could land, a dangerous surf every where beating upon the shore; but I saw two canoes coming in from the sea, one under sail and the other working with paddles. I thought this a favourable opportunity to get some of the people into my possession without mischief, as those in the canoe were probably fishermen and without arms, and I had three boats full of men. I therefore disposed the boats so as most effectually to intercept them in their way to the shore; the people in the canoe that was paddled perceived us so soon, that by making to the nearest land with their utmost strength, they escaped us; the other sailed on till she was in the midst of us, without discerning what we were; but the moment she discovered us, the people on board struck their
sail,

fail, and took to their paddles, which they plied so briskly that she out-ran the boat. They were, however, within hearing, and Tupia called out to them to come along-side, and promised for us that they should come to no hurt: they chose, however, rather to trust to their paddles than our promises, and continued to make from us with all their power. I then ordered a musquet to be fired over their heads, as the least exceptionable expedient to accomplish my design, hoping it would either make them surrender or leap into the water. Upon the discharge of the piece, they ceased paddling; and all of them, being seven in number, began to strip, as we imagined, to jump over-board; but it happened otherwise. They immediately formed a resolution not to fly, but to fight; and when the boat came up, they began the attack with their paddles, and with stones and other offensive weapons that were in the boat, so vigorously, that we were obliged to fire upon them in our defence: four were unhappily killed, and the other three who were boys, the eldest about nineteen, and the youngest about eleven, instantly leaped into the water; the eldest swam with great vigour, and resisted the attempts of our people to take him into the boat by every effort that he could make; he was, however, at last overpowered, and the other two were taken up with less difficulty. I am conscious that the feeling of every reader of humanity will censure me for having fired upon these unhappy people; and it is impossible that, upon a calm review, I should approve it myself. They certainly did not deserve death for not chusing to confide in my promises; or not consenting to come on board my boat, even if they had apprehended no danger; but the nature of my service required me to obtain a knowledge of their country, which I could no otherwise effect than by forcing my way into it in a hostile manner, or gaining admision through the confidence and good-will of the people. I had already tried the power of presents without effect; and I was now prompted, by my desire to avoid further hostilities, to get some of them on board,

board, as the only method left of convincing them that we intended them no harm, and had it in our power to contribute to their gratification and convenience. Thus far my intentions certainly were not criminal; and though in the contest, which I had not the least reason to expect, our victory might have been complete without so great an expence of life; yet in such situations, when the command of fire has been given, no man can restrain its excess, or prescribe its effect.

As soon as the poor wretches whom we had taken out of the water were in the boat, they squatted down, expecting no doubt instantly to be put to death: we made haste to convince them of the contrary, by every method in our power; we furnished them with clothes, and gave them every other testimony of kindness that could remove their fears and engage their good-will. Those who are acquainted with human nature will not wonder, that the sudden joy of these young savages at being unexpectedly delivered from the fear of death, and kindly treated by those whom they supposed would have been their instant executioners, surmounted their concern for the friends they had lost, and was strongly expressed in their countenances and behaviour. Before we reached the ship, their suspicions and fears being wholly removed, they appeared to be not only reconciled to their situation, but in high spirits; and upon being offered bread when they came on board, they devoured it with a voracious appetite. They answered and asked many questions, with great appearance of pleasure and curiosities; and when our dinner came, they expressed an inclination to taste every thing that they saw: they seemed best pleased with the salt pork, though we had other provisions upon the table. At sun-set they eat another meal with great eagerness, each devouring a large quantity of bread, and drinking above a quart of water. We then made them beds upon the lockers, and they went to sleep with great seeming content. In the night, however, the tumult of their minds having subsided, and given way to reflection, they sighed of-

ten

ten
to
cou
the
son
was
ing
we
wh
asp
strik
and
KEE
VET
take
piec
sign
neig
In
eat
and
laces
ed o
asho
ceiv
near
ent
set a
bite
them
caus
wou
I had
and
to la
boys
to le
ing
whic

ten and loud. Tupia, who was always upon the watch to comfort them, got up, and by soothing and encouragement made them not only easy but cheerful; their cheerfulness was encouraged so that they sung a song with a degree of taste that surprised us: the tune was solemn and slow, like those of our Psalms, containing many notes and semitones. Their countenances were intelligent and expressive, and the middlemost, who seemed to be about fifteen, had an openness in his aspect, and an ease in his deportment which were very striking: we found that the two eldest were brothers, and that their names were TAAHOURANGE and KOIKERANGE; the name of the youngest was MARAGOVETE. As we were returning to the ship, after having taken these boys into the boat, we picked up a large piece of pumice stone floating upon the water; a sure sign that there either is, or has been a volcano in this neighbourhood.

In the morning, they all seemed to be cheerful, and eat another enormous meal; after this we dressed them, and adorned them with bracelets, anklets, and necklaces, after their own fashion, and the boat being hoisted out, they were told that we were going to set them ashore: this produced a transport of joy; but upon perceiving that we made towards our first landing-place near the river, their countenances changed, and they entreated with great earnestness that the night not be set ashore at that place, because, they said, it was inhabited by their enemies, who would kill them and eat them. This was a great disappointment to me; because I hoped the report and appearance of the boys would procure a favourable reception for ourselves. I had already sent an officer on shore with the marines and a party of men to cut wood, and I was determined to land near the place; not, however, to abandon the boys, if, when we got ashore, they should be unwilling to leave us; but to send a boat with them in the evening to that part of the bay to which they pointed, and which they called their home. Mr Banks, Dr Solander,

and

and Tupia were with me, and upon our landing with the boys, and crossing the river, they seemed at first to be unwilling to leave us; but at length they suddenly changed their mind, and, though not without a manifest struggle, and some tears, they took their leave: when they were gone, we proceeded along a swamp, with a design to shoot some ducks, of which we saw great plenty, and four of the marines attended us, walking abreast of us upon a bank that overlooked the country. After we had advanced about a mile, these men called out to us, and told us, that a large body of the Indians was in sight, and advancing at a great rate. Upon receiving this intelligence, we drew together, and resolved to make the best of our way to the boats; we had scarcely begun to put this into execution, when the three Indian boys started suddenly from some bushes, where they had concealed themselves, and again claimed our protection: we readily received them, and repairing to the beach as the clearest place, we walked briskly towards the boats. The Indians were in two bodies; one ran along the bank which had been quitted by the marines, the other fetched a compass by the swamp so that we could not see them: when they perceived that we had formed into one body, they slackened their pace; but still followed us in a gentle walk: that they slackened their pace, was for us, as well as for them, a fortunate circumstance; for when we came to the side of the river, where we expected to find the boats that were to carry us over to the wooders, we found the pinnace at least a mile from her station, having been sent to pick up a bird which had been shot by the officer on shore, and the little boat was obliged to make three trips before we could all get over to the rest of the party. As soon as we were drawn up on the other side, the Indians came down, not in a body, as we expected, but by two or three at a time, all armed, and in a short time their number increased to about two hundred: as we now despaired of making peace with them, seeing that the dread of our small arms did not keep them at a distance,

distance, and that the ship was too far off to reach the place with a shot, we resolved to re-embark, lest our stay should embroil us in another quarrel, and cost more of the Indians their lives. We, therefore, advanced towards the pinnace which was now returning, when one of the boys suddenly cried out, that his uncle was among the people who had marched down to us, and desired us to stay and talk with them: we complied, and a parley immediately commenced between them and Tupia; during which the boys held up every thing we had given them as tokens of our kindness and liberality; but neither would either of the boys swim over to them, or any of them to the boys. The body of the man who had been killed the day before, still lay exposed upon the beach; the boys seeing it lie very near us, went up to it, and covered it with some of the clothes that we had given them; and soon after a single man, unarmed, who proved to be the uncle of Maragovete, the youngest of the boys, swam over to us, bringing in his hand a green branch, which we supposed, as well here as at Otaheite, to be an emblem of peace. We received his branch by the hands of Tupia, to whom he gave it, and made him many presents; we also invited him to go on board the ship, but he declined it; we therefore left him, and expected that his nephew, and the two other young Indians would have staid with him, but, to our great surprize, they chose rather to go with us. As soon as we had retired, he went and gathered another green branch, and with this in his hand, he approached the dead body which the youth had covered with part of his clothes, walking sideways, with many ceremonies, and then throwing it towards him. When this was done, he returned to his companions, who had sat down upon the sand to observe the issue of his negotiation: they immediately gathered round him, and continued in a body above an hour, without seeming to take any farther notice of us. We were more curious than they, and observing them with our glasses from on board the ship, we saw some of them cross the river upon a kind

of raft, or catamarine, and four of them carry off the dead body, which had been covered by the boy, and over which his uncle had performed the ceremony of the branch, upon a kind of bier, between four men: the other body was still suffered to remain where it had been first left.

After dinner, I directed Tupia to ask the boys, if they had now any objection to going ashore, where we had left their uncle, the body having been carried off, which we understood was a ratification of peace: they said, they had not; and the boat being ordered, they went into it with great alacrity: when the boat, in which I had sent two midshipmen, came to land, they went willingly ashore; but soon after she put off, they returned to the rocks, and wading into the water, earnestly entreated to be taken on board again; but the people in the boat having positive orders to leave them, could not comply. We were very attentive to what happened on shore, and keeping a constant watch with our glasses, we saw a man pass the river upon another raft, and fetch them to a place where forty or fifty of the natives were assembled, who closed round them, and continued in the same place till sun-set: upon looking again, when we saw them in motion, we could plainly distinguish our three prisoners, who separated themselves from the rest, came down to the beach, and having waved their hands three times towards the ship, ran nimbly back and joined their companions, who walked leisurely away towards that part which the boys had pointed to as their dwelling-place; we had therefore the greatest reason to believe that no mischief would happen to them, especially as we perceived that they went off in the clothes we had given them.

After it was dark, loud voices were heard on shore in the bottom of the bay as usual, of which we could never learn the meaning.

carry off the
the boy, and
ceremony of
four men:
where it had

boys, if they
ere we had
d off, which
: they said,
they went
in which I
y went wil-
y returned
arnestly en-
people in
a, could not
appened on
our glasses,
er raft, and
the natives
d continued
again, when
distinguish
es from the
waved their
y back and
y away to-
to as their
st reason to
n, especial-
clothes we

on shore in
ould never

A Description of Poverty Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country. The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with some Account of the People and the Country, and several Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coast.

THE next morning, at six o'clock, we weighed, and stood away from this unfortunate and inhospitable place, to which I gave the name of POVERTY BAY, and which by the natives is called TĀONEROA or Long Sand, as it did not afford us a single article that we wanted, except a little wood. It lies in latitude 38 d. 42 m. S. and longitude 181 d. 36 m. W. it is in the form of an horse shoe, and is known by an island lying close under the north-east point: the two points which form the entrance are high, with steep white cliffs, and lie a league and a half or two leagues from each other, N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. the depth of water in the bay is from twelve to five fathom, with a sandy bottom and good anchorage; but the situation is open to the wind between the south and east: boats can go in and out of the river at any time of the tide in fine weather; but as there is a bar at the entrance, no boat can go either in or out when the sea runs high: the best place to attempt it, is on the north-east side, and it is there practicable when it is not so in any other part. The shore of the bay, a little within its entrance, is a low flat sand; behind which, at a small distance, the face of the country is finely diversified by hills and valleys, all clothed with wood, and covered with verdure. The country also appears to be well inhabited, especially in the valleys leading up from the bay, where we daily saw smoke rising in

clouds one behind another to a great distance, till the view terminated in mountains of a stupendous height.

The south-west point of the bay I named **YOUNG NICK'S HEAD**, after Nicholas Young, the boy who first saw the land; at noon, it bore N. W. by W. distant about three or four leagues, and we were then about three miles from the shore. The main land extended from N. E. by N. to south, and I proposed to follow the direction of the coast to the southward as far as the latitude of 40 or 41; and then, if I met with no encouragement to proceed farther, to return to the northward.

In the afternoon we lay becalmed, which the people on shore perceiving, several canoes put off, and came within less than a quarter of a mile of the vessel; but could not be persuaded to come nearer, though Tupia exerted all the powers of his lungs and his eloquence on the occasion, shouting, and promising that they should not be hurt. Another canoe was now seen coming from Poverty Bay, with only four people on board, one of whom we well remembered to have seen in our first interview upon the rock. This canoe, without stopping or taking the least notice of the others, came directly alongside of the ship, and with very little persuasion, we got the Indians on board. Their example was soon followed by the rest, and we had about us seven canoes, and about fifty men. We made them all presents with a liberal hand; notwithstanding which, they were so desirous to have more of our commodities, that they sold us every thing they had, even the clothes from their backs, and the paddles from their boats. There were but two weapons among them, these were the instruments of green talc, which were shaped somewhat like a pointed battledore, with a short handle and sharp edges; they were called *Patoo-Patoo*, and were well contrived for close-fighting, as they would certainly split the thickest scull at a single blow.

When these people had recovered from the first impressions of fear, which, notwithstanding their resolution in coming on board, had manifestly thrown them into
some

some confusion, we enquired after our poor boys. The man who first came on board immediately answered, they were unhurt and at home; adding, that he had been induced to venture on board by the account which they had given him of the kindness with which they had been treated, and the wonders that were contained in the ship.

While they were on board they shewed every sign of friendship, and invited us very cordially to go back to our old bay, or to a small cove which they pointed out, that was not quite so far off; but I chose rather to prosecute my discoveries than go back, having reason to hope that I should find a better harbour than any I had yet seen.

About an hour before sun-set, the canoes put off from the ship with the few paddles they had reserved, which were scarcely sufficient to set them on shore; but by some means or other three of their people were left behind: as soon as we discovered it, we hailed them; but not one of them would return to take them on board: this greatly surpris'd us; but we were surpris'd still more to observe that the deserted Indians did not seem at all uneasy at their situation, but entertained us with dancing and singing after their manner, eat their suppers, and went quietly to bed.

A light breeze springing up soon after it was dark, we steered along the shore under an easy sail till midnight, and then brought to, soon after which it fell calm; we were now some leagues distant from the place where the canoes had left us, and at day-break, when the Indians perceived it, they were seized with consternation and terror, and lamented their situation in loud complaints, with gestures of despair and many tears. Tupaia, with great difficulty, pacified them; and about seven o'clock in the morning, a light breeze springing up, we continued to stand south west, along the shore. Fortunately for our poor Indians, two canoes came off about this time, and made towards the ship: they stopped, however, at a little distance, and seem'd unwilling

to

to trust themselves nearer. Our Indians were greatly agitated in this state of uncertainty, and urged their fellows to come alongside of the ship, both by their voice and gestures, with the utmost eagerness and impatience. Tupia interpreted what they said, and we were much surpris'd to find, that, among other arguments, they assur'd the people in the canoes, we did not eat men. We now began seriously to believe that this horrid custom prevail'd among them; for what the boys had said, we consider'd as a mere hyperbolical expression of their fear. One of the canoes at length ventured to come under the ship's side; and an old man came on board, who seem'd to be a Chief, from the finery of his garment, and the superiority of his weapon, which was a Patoo-Patoo, made of bone, that, as he said, had belong'd to a whale. He staid on board but a short time, and when he went away, he took with him our guests, very much to the satisfaction both of them and us.

At the time when we sail'd, we were abreast of a point, from which the land trends S. S. W. and which, on account of its figure, I call CAPE TABLE. This point lies seven leagues to the southward of Poverty Bay, in latitude 39 d. 7 m. S. and longitude 181 d. 36 m. W. it is of a considerable height, makes in a sharp angle, and appears to be quite flat at the top.

At noon, Cape Table bore N. 20 E. distant about four leagues, and a small island, which was the southermost land in sight, bore S. 70 W. at the distance of about three miles. This island, which the natives call TEA HOWRAY, I nam'd the ISLAND of PORTLAND, from its very great resemblance to Portland in the English Channel: it lies about a mile from a point on the main; but there appears to be a ridge of rocks, extending nearly, if not quite, from one to the other. N. 57 E. two miles from the south point of Portland, lies a sunken rock, upon which the sea breaks with great violence. We pass'd between this rock and the land, having from seventeen to twenty fathom.

In sailing along the shore, we saw the natives assembled in great numbers as well upon Portland Island as the main: we could also distinguish several spots of ground that were cultivated; some seemed to be fresh turned up, and lay in furrows like ploughed land, and some had plants upon them in different stages of their growth. We saw also in two places, high rails upon the ridges of hills, like what we had seen upon the peninsula at the north-east head of Poverty Bay: as they were ranged in lines only, and not so as to enclose an area, we could not guess at their use, and therefore supposed they might be the work of superstition.

About noon another canoe appeared, in which were four men; she came within about a quarter of a mile of us, where the people on board seemed to perform divers ceremonies: one of them, who was in the bow, sometimes seemed to ask and to offer peace, and sometimes to threaten war, by brandishing a weapon that he held in his hand: sometimes also he danced, and sometimes he sung. Tupia talked much to him, but could not persuade him to come to the ship.

Between one and two o'clock we discovered land to the westward of Portland, extending to the southward as far as we could see: and as the ship was hauling round the south end of the island, she suddenly fell into shoal water and broken ground: we had, indeed, always seven fathom or more, but the soundings were never twice the same, jumping at once from seven fathom to eleven; in a short time, however, we got clear of all danger, and had again deep water under us.

At this time the island lay within a mile of us, making in white cliffs, and a long spit of low land running from it towards the main. On the sides of these cliffs sat vast numbers of people, looking at us with a fixed attention, and it is probable that they perceived some appearance of hurry and confusion on board, and some irregularity in the working of the ship, while we were getting clear of the shallow water and broken ground, from which they might infer that we were alarmed or

in

in distress; we thought that they wished to take advantage of our situation, for five canoes were put off with the utmost expedition, full of men, and well armed: they came so near, and shewed so hostile a disposition, by shouting, brandishing their lances, and using threatening gestures, that we were in some pain for our small boat, which was still employed in sounding; a musket was therefore fired over them, but finding it did them no harm, they seemed rather to be provoked than intimidated, and I therefore fired a four pounder, charged with grape-shot, wide of them: this had a better effect; upon the report of the piece they all rose up and shouted, but instead of continuing the chase, drew all together, and after a short consultation, went quietly away.

Having got round Portland, we hauled in for the land N. W. having a gentle breeze at N. E. which about five o'clock died away, and obliged us to anchor; we had one and twenty fathom, with a fine sandy bottom: the south point of Portland bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant about two leagues, and a low point on the main bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. in the same direction with this low point, there runs a deep bay, behind the land of which Cape Table is the extremity, so as to make this land a peninsula, leaving only a low narrow neck between that and the main. Of this peninsula, which the natives call TERAKACO, Cape Table is the north point, and Portland the south.

While we lay at anchor, two more canoes came off to us, one armed, and the other a small fishing-boat, with only four men in her; they came so near that they entered into conversation with Tupia; they answered all the questions that he asked them with great civility, but could not be persuaded to come on board; they came near enough, however, to receive several presents that were thrown to them from the ship, with which they seemed much pleased, and went away. During the night many fires were kept upon shore, probably to shew us that the inhabitants were too much upon their guard to be surprized.

About

take advan-
out off with
well armed:
disposition,
sisting threat-
or our small
; a musket
did them no
han intimi-
er, charged
etter effect;
o and shout-
all together,
away.

in for the
which about
anchor; we
dy bottom:
istant about
ore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.
here runs a
Table is the
ula, leaving
d the main.

ERAKACO,
the south.
came off to
g-boat, with
hat they en-
answered all
reat civility,
board; they
eral presents
with which
y. During
e, probably
much upon

About

About five o'clock in the morning of the 13th, a breeze springing up northerly, we weighed, and steered in for the land. The shore here forms a large bay, of which Portland is the north-east point, and the bay that runs behind Cape Table an arm. This arm I had a great inclination to examine, because there appeared to be safe anchorage in it, but not being sure of that, and the wind being right an end, I was unwilling to spare the time: Four and twenty fathom was the greatest depth within Portland, but the ground was every where clear. The land near the shore is of a moderate height, with white cliffs and sandy beaches; within, it rises into mountains, and upon the whole the surface is hilly, for the most part covered with wood, and, to appearance, pleasant and fertile. In the morning nine canoes came after the ship, but whether with peaceable or hostile intentions we could not tell, for we soon left them behind us.

In the evening we stood in for a place that had the appearance of an opening, but found no harbour; we therefore stood out again, and were soon followed by a large canoe, with eighteen or twenty men, all armed, who, though they could not reach us, shouted defiance, and brandished their weapons, with many gestures of menace and insult.

In the morning we had a view of the mountains inland, upon which the snow was still lying: the country near the shore was low and unfit for culture, but in one place we perceived a patch of somewhat yellow, which had greatly the appearance of a corn field, yet was probably nothing more than some dead flags, which are not uncommon in swampy places: at some distance we saw groves of trees, which appeared high and tapering, and being not above two leagues from the south-west cod of the great bay, in which we had been coasting for the two last days, I hoisted out the pinnace and long-boat to search for fresh water; but just as they were about to put off, we saw several boats full of people coming from the shore, and therefore I did not think it safe for them to leave the ship. About ten o'clock,

five of these boats having drawn together, as if to hold a consultation, made towards the ship, having on board between eighty and ninety men, and four more followed at some distance, as if to sustain the attack: when the first five came within about a hundred yards of the ship, they began to sing their war song, and brandishing their pikes prepared for an engagement. We had now no time to lose, for if we could not prevent the attack, we should come under the unhappy necessity of using our fire-arms against them, which we were very desirous to avoid. Tupia was therefore ordered to acquaint them that we had weapons which, like thunder, would destroy them in a moment; that we would immediately convince them of their power by directing their effect so that they should not be hurt; but that if they persisted in any hostile attempt, we should be obliged to use them for our defence: a four-pounder, loaded with grape-shot, was then discharged wide of them, which produced the desired effect; the report, the flash, and above all, the shot, which spread very far in the water, so intimidated them, that they began to paddle away with all their might: Tupia, however, calling after them, and assuring them that if they would come unarmed, they should be kindly received; the people in one of the boats put their arms on board of another, and came under the ship's stern; we made them several presents, and should certainly have prevailed upon them to come on board, if the other canoes had not come up, and again threatened us, shouting and brandishing their weapons: at this the people who had come to the ship unarmed, expressed great displeasure, and soon after they all went away.

In the afternoon we stood over to the south point of the bay, but not reaching it before it was dark, we stood off and on all night. At eight the next morning, being abreast of the point, several fishing boats came off to us, and sold us some stinking fish: it was the best they had, and we were willing to trade with them upon any terms: these people behaved very well, and we should
have

have parted good friends if it had not been for a large canoe, with two and twenty armed men on board, which came boldly up along-side of the ship. We soon saw that this boat had nothing for traffic, yet we gave them two or three pieces of cloth, an article which they seemed very fond of. I observed that one man had a black skin thrown over him, somewhat resembling that of a bear, and being desirous to know what animal was its owner, I offered him for it a piece of red baize, and he seemed greatly pleased with the bargain, immediately pulled off the skin, and holding it up in the boat; he would not, however, part with it till he had the cloth in his possession, and as there could be no transfer of property, if with equal caution I had insisted upon the same condition, I ordered the cloth to be handed down to him, upon which, with amazing coolness, instead of sending up the skin, he began to pack up both that and the baize, which he had received as the purchase of it, in a basket, without paying the least regard to my demand or remonstrances, and soon after, with the fishing boats, put off from the ship; when they were at some distance, they drew together, and after a short consultation returned; the fishermen offered more fish, which, though good for nothing, was purchased, and trade was again renewed. Among others who were placed over the ship's side to hand up what we bought, was little Tayeto, Tupia's boy; and one of the Indians, watching his opportunity, suddenly seized him, and dragged him down into the canoe; two of them held him down in the fore part of it, and the others, with great activity, paddled her off, the rest of the canoes following as fast as they could: upon this the marines, who were under arms upon deck, were ordered to fire. The shot was directed to that part of the canoe which was farthest from the boy, and rather wide of her, being willing rather to miss the rowers than to hurt him: it happened, however, that one man dropped, upon which the others quitted their hold of the boy, who instantly

leaped into the water, and swam towards the ship; the large canoe immediately pulled round and followed him, but some musquets, and a great gun being fired at her, she desisted from the pursuit. The ship being brought to, a boat was lowered, and the poor boy taken up unhurt, though so terrified that for a time he seemed to be deprived of his senses. Some of the gentlemen who traced the canoes to shore with their glasses, said, that they saw three men carried up the beach, who appeared to be either dead or wholly disabled by their wounds.

To the cape off which this unhappy transaction happened, I gave the name of CAPE KIDNAPPERS. It lies in latitude 39 d. 43 m. and longitude 182 d. 24 m. W. and is rendered remarkable by two white rocks like hay stacks, and the high white cliffs on each side. It lies S. W. by W. distant thirteen leagues from the isle of Portland; and between them is the bay of which it is the south point, and which, in honour of Sir Edward Hawke, then First Lord of the Admiralty, I called HAWKE'S BAY. We found in it from twenty-four to seven fathom, and good anchorage. From Cape Kidnappers the land trends S. S. W. and in this direction we made our run along the shore, keeping at about a league distance, with a steady breeze and clear weather.

As soon as Tayeto recovered from his fright, he brought a fish to Tupia, and told him that he intended it as an offering to his Eatua, or god, in gratitude for his escape; Tupia commended his piety, and ordered him to throw the fish into the sea, which was accordingly done.

About two o'clock in the afternoon, we passed a small but high white island, lying close to the shore, upon which we saw many houses, boats, and people. The people we concluded to be fishers, because the island was totally barren; we saw several people also on shore, in a small bay upon the main, within the island. At eleven, we brought to till day-light, and then made
sail

the ship; the
and followed
being fired at
ship being
or boy taken
he seemed
gentlemen
glasses, said,
th, who ap-
ed by their

faction hap-
PPERS. It
82 d. 24 m.
te rocks like
ch side. It
om the isle
f which it is
Sir Edward
ty, I called
enty-four to
n Cape Kid-
irection we
out a league
ther.

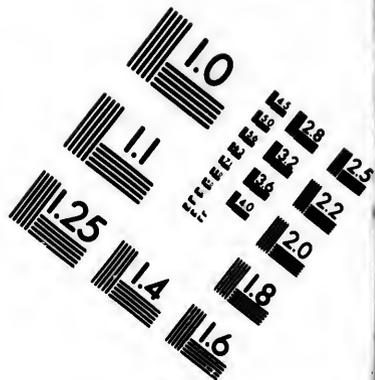
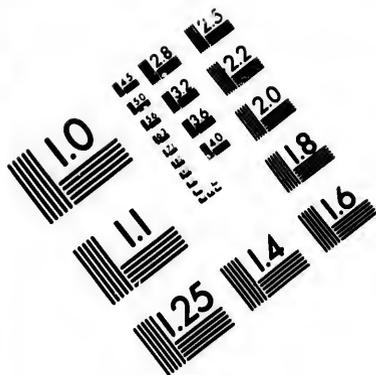
fright, he
he intended
atitude for
and ordered
was accord-

uffed a small
shore, upon
ople. The
the island
o on shore,
island. At
then made
fail

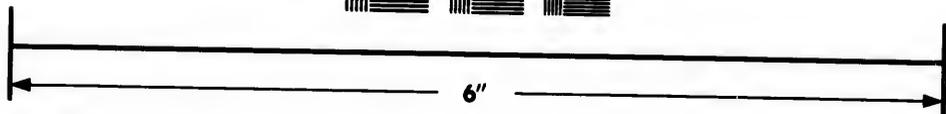
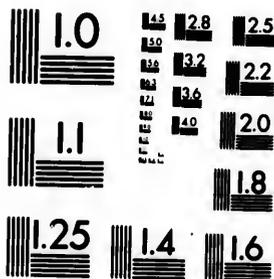
fail to the southward, along the shore. About seven o'clock we passed a high point of land, which lies S. S. W. twelve leagues from Cape Kidnappers: from this point the land trends three-fourths of a point more to the westward; at ten, we saw more land open to the southward, and at noon, the southermost land that was in sight, bore S. 39 W. distant eight or ten leagues, and a high bluff head, with yellowish cliffs, bore W. distant about two miles: the depth of water was thirty-two fathom.

In the afternoon we had a fresh breeze at west, and during the night variable light airs and calms: in the morning a gentle breeze sprung up between the N. W. and N. E. and having till now stood to the southward, without seeing any probability of meeting with a harbour, and the country manifestly altering for the worse, I thought that standing farther in that direction would be attended with no advantage, but on the contrary would be a loss of time that might be employed with a better prospect of success in examining the coast to the northward; about one, therefore, in the afternoon, I tacked, and stood north, with a fresh breeze at west. The high bluff head, with yellowish cliffs, which we were abreast of at noon, I called CAPE TURNAGAIN, because here we turned back. It lies in latitude 40 d. 34 m. S. longitude 182 d. 55 m. W. distant eighteen leagues S. S. W. and S. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. from Cape Kidnappers. The land between them is of a very unequal height; in some places it is lofty next the sea with white cliffs, in others low, with sandy beaches: the face of the country is not so well clothed with wood as it is about Hawke's Bay, but looks more like our high downs in England: it is, however, to all appearance, well inhabited, for as we stood along the shore, we saw several villages, not only in the vallies, but on the tops and sides of the hills, and smoke in many other places. The ridge of mountains which has been mentioned before, extends to the southward farther than we could see, and was





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
E E E E
E E E E
E E E E

1.0

was then every where chequered with snow. At night we saw two fires inland, so very large, that we concluded they must have been made to clear the land of tillage; but, however that be, they are a demonstration that the part of the country where they appeared is inhabited.

On the 18th, at four o'clock in the morning, Cape Kidnappers bore N. 32 W. distant two leagues: in this situation we had sixty-two fathom, and when the Cape bore W. by N. distant three or four leagues, we had forty-five fathom: in the mid-way between the island of Portland and the Cape we had sixty-five fathom. In the evening, being abreast of the peninsula within Portland island, called TERAKACO, a canoe came off from that shore, and with much difficulty overtook the ship: there were on board five people, two of whom appeared to be Chiefs, and the other three servants: the Chiefs, with very little invitation came on board, and ordered the rest to remain in their canoe. We treated them with great kindness, and they were not backward in expressing their satisfaction; they went down into the cabin, and after a short time told us that they had determined not to go on shore till the next morning. As the sleeping on board was an honour which we neither expected nor desired, I remonstrated strongly against it, and told them, that on their account it would not be proper, as the ship would probably be at a great distance from where she was then, the next morning: they persisted, however, in their resolution, and as I found it impossible to get rid of them without turning them by force out of the ship, I complied: as a proper precaution, however, I proposed to take their servants also on board, and hoist their canoe into the ship; they made no objection, and this was accordingly done. The countenance of one of these Chiefs was the most open and ingenuous of all I have ever seen, and I very soon gave up every suspicion of his having any sinister design: they both examined every thing they saw with
great

great curiosity and attention, and received very thankfully such little presents as we made them; neither of them, however, could be persuaded either to eat or drink, but their servants devoured every thing they could get with great voracity. We found that these men had heard of our kindness and liberality to the natives who had been on board before, yet we thought the confidence they placed in us, an extraordinary instance of their fortitude. At night I brought to till daylight, and then made sail; at seven in the morning, I brought to again under Cape Table, and sent away our guests with their canoe, who expressed some surprise at seeing themselves so far from home, but landed abreast of the ship. At this time I saw other canoes putting off from the shore, but I stood away to the northward without waiting for their coming up.

About three, I passed a remarkable head land, which I called GABLE-END-FORELAND, from the very great likeness of the white cliff at the point, to the gable-end of a house: it is not more remarkable for its figure, than for a rock which rises like a spire at a little distance. It lies from Cape Table N. 24 E. distant about twelve leagues. The shore between them forms a bay, within which lies Poverty Bay, at the distance of four leagues from the head land, and eight from the Cape. At this place three canoes came off to us, and one man came on board; we gave him some trifles, and he soon returned to his boat, which, with all the rest dropped astern.

In the morning I made sail in shore, in order to look into two bays, which appeared about two leagues to the northward of the Foreland; the southermost I could not fetch, but I anchored in the other about eleven o'clock.

Into this bay we were invited by the people on board many canoes, who pointed to a place where they said there was plenty of fresh water: I did not find so good a shelter from the sea as I expected, but the natives who
came

came about us, appearing to be of a friendly disposition, I was determined to try whether I could not get some knowledge of the country here before I proceeded farther to the northward.

In one of the canoes that came about us as soon as we anchored, we saw two men, who, by their habits, appeared to be Chiefs: one of them was dressed in a jacket, which was ornamented, after their manner, with dog's skin; the jacket of the other was almost covered with small tufts of red feathers. These men I invited on board, and they entered the ship with very little hesitation: I gave each of them about four yards of linen, and a spike nail; with the linen they were much pleased, but seemed to set no value upon the nail. We perceived that they knew what had happened in Poverty Bay, we had, therefore, no reason to doubt but that they would behave peaceably; however, for further security, Tupia was ordered to tell them for what purpose we came thither, and to assure them that we would offer them no injury, if they offered none to us. In the mean time those who remained in the canoes traded with our people very fairly for what they happened to have with them: the Chiefs, who were old men, staid with us till we had dined, and about two o'clock I put off with the boats, manned and armed, in order to go on shore in search of water, and the two Chiefs went into the boat with me. The afternoon was tempestuous, with much rain, and the surf every where ran so high, that although we rowed almost round the bay, we found no place where we could land; I determined, therefore, to return to the ship, which being intimated to the Chiefs, they called to the people on shore, and ordered a canoe to be sent off for themselves; this was accordingly done, and they left us, promising to come on board again in the morning, and bring us some fish and sweet potatoes.

In the evening, the weather having become fair and moderate, the boats were again ordered out, and I land-

ed,

ed, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander. We were received with great expressions of friendship by the natives, who behaved with a scrupulous attention not to give offence. In particular, they took care not to appear in great bodies: one family, or the inhabitants of two or three houses only, were generally placed together, to the number of fifteen or twenty, consisting of men, women, and children. These little companies sat upon the ground, not advancing towards us, but inviting us to them, by a kind of beckon, moving one hand towards the breast. We made them several little presents; and in our walk round the bay found two small streams of fresh water. This convenience, and the friendly behaviour of the people, determined me to stay at least a day, that I might fill some of my empty casks, and give Mr Banks an opportunity of examining the natural produce of the country.

In the morning of the 21st, I sent Lieutenant Gore on shore, to superintend the watering, with a strong party of men; and they were soon followed by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, with Tupia, Tayeto, and four others.

The natives sat by our people, and seemed pleased to observe them; but did not intermix with them: they traded, however, chiefly for cloth, and after a short time applied to their ordinary occupations, as if no stranger had been among them. In the forenoon, several of their boats went out a-fishing, and at dinner time every one repaired to his respective dwelling; from which, after a certain time, he returned. These fair appearances encouraged Mr Banks and Dr Solander to range the bay with very little precaution, where they found many plants, and shot some birds of exquisite beauty. In their walk, they visited several houses of the natives, and saw something of their manner of life; for they showed, without any reserve, every thing which the gentlemen desired to see. They were sometimes found at their meals, which the approach of the strangers never interrupted. Their food at this season consisted

of fish, with which, instead of bread, they eat the root of a kind of fern, very like that which grows upon our commons in England. These roots they scorch over the fire, and then beat with a stick, till the bark and dry outside fall off; what remains is a soft substance, somewhat clammy and sweet, not unpleasing to the taste, mixed with three or four times its quantity of strings and fibres, which are very disagreeable; these were swallowed by some, but spit out by the far greater number, who had baskets under them to receive the rejected part of what had been chewed, which had an appearance very like that of tobacco in the same state. In other seasons they have certainly plenty of excellent vegetables; but no tame animals were seen among them except dogs, which were very small and ugly. Mr Banks saw some of their plantations, where the ground was as well broken down and tilled as even in the gardens of the most curious people among us: in these spots were sweet potatoes, coccos or eddas, which are well known and much esteemed both in the East and West Indies, and some gourds: the sweet potatoes were planted in small hills, some ranged in rows, and others in quincunx, all laid by a line with the greatest regularity: the coccos were planted upon flat land, but none of them yet appeared above ground; and the gourds were set in small hollows, or dishes, much as in England. These plantations were of different extent, from one or two acres to ten: taken together, there appeared to be from 150 to 200 acres in cultivation in the whole bay, though we never saw an hundred people. Each district was fenced in, generally with reeds, which were placed so close together that there was scarcely room for a mouse to creep between.

The women were plain, and made themselves more so by painting their faces with red ocre and oil, which being generally fresh and wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was easily transferred to the noses of those who thought fit to salute them; and that they were not wholly averse to such familiarity, the noses of several of
our

our people strongly testified: they were, however, as great coquettes as any of the most fashionable ladies in Europe, and the young ones as skittish as an unbroken filly: each of them wore a petticoat, under which there was a girdle, made of blade of grass highly perfumed, and to the girdle was fastened a small bunch of the leaves of some fragrant plant, which served their modesty as its innermost veil. The faces of the men were not so generally painted, yet we saw one whose whole body, and even his garments, were rubbed over with dry ocre, of which he kept a piece constantly in his hand, and was every minute renewing the decoration in one part or another, where he supposed it was become deficient. In personal delicacy they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, for the coldness of the climate did not invite them so often to bathe; but we saw among them one instance of cleanliness in which they exceeded them, and of which perhaps there is no example in any other Indian nation. Every house, or every little cluster of three or four houses, was furnished with a privy, so that the ground was every where clean. The offals of their food, and other litter, were also piled up in regular dunghills, which probably they made use of at a proper time for manure.

In this decent article of civil œconomy they were beforehand with one of the most considerable nations of Europe, for I am credibly informed, that, till the year 1760, there was no such thing as a privy in Madrid, the metropolis of Spain, though it is plentifully supplied with water. Before that time it was the universal practice to throw the ordure out of the windows, during the night, into the street, where numbers of men were employed to remove it, with shovels, from the upper parts of the city to the lower, where it lay till it was dry, and was then carried away in carts, and deposited without the gates. His present Catholic Majesty, having determined to free his capital from so gross a nuisance, ordered, by proclamation, that the proprietor of every house should build a privy, and that sinks, drains,

and common fuers, should be made at the public expence. The Spaniards, though long accustomed to an arbitrary government, resented this proclamation with great spirit, as an infringement of the common rights of mankind, and made a vigorous struggle against its being carried into execution. Every class devised some objection against it, but the physicians bid the fairest to interest the king in the preservation of the ancient privileges of his people; for they remonstrated that if the filth was not, as usual, thrown into the streets a fatal sickness would probably ensue, because the putrescent particles of the air, which such filth attracted would then be imbibed by the human body. But this expedient, with every other that could be thought of, proved unsuccessful, and the popular discontent then ran so high, that it was very near producing an insurrection; his Majesty, however, at length prevailed, and Madrid is now as clear as most of the considerable cities in Europe. But many of the citizens, probably upon the principles advanced by their physicians, that heaps of filth prevent deleterious particles of air from fixing upon neighbouring substances, have, to keep their food wholesome constructed their privies by the kitchen fire.

In the evening, all our boats being employed in carrying the water on board, Mr Banks and his company finding it probable that they should be left on shore after it was dark, by which much time would be lost, which they were impatient to employ in putting the plants they had gathered in order, they applied to the Indians for a passage in one of their canoes: they immediately consented, and a canoe was launched for their use. They went all on board, being eight in number, but not being used to a vessel that required so even a balance, they unfortunately overset her in the surf: no life, however, was lost, but it was thought adviseable that half of them should wait for another turn. Mr Banks, Dr Solander, Tupia, and Tayeto embarked again, and without any farther accident, arrived safely at the ship, well pleased with the good-nature of their Indian friends, who cheerfully undertook to carry them a second time,

ic expence.
 n arbitrary
 great spirit,
 t mankind,
 carried into
 ion against
 ft the king
 of his peo-
 was not, as
 would pro-
 of the air,
 ived by the
 every other
 ul, and the
 t was very
 y, however,
 lear as most
 many of the
 ced by their
 terious par-
 ; substances,
 ructed their
 oyed in car-
 nis company
 on shore at-
 ould be lost;
 putting the
 plied to the
 s: they im-
 hed for their
 ht in num-
 ired so even
 the surf: no
 vifible that
 Mr Banks,
 I again, and
 at the ship,
 dian friends,
 second time,

after having experienced how unfit a freight they were for such a vessel.

While these gentlemen were on shore, several of the natives went off to the ship, and trafficked, by exchanging their cloth for that of Otaheite: of this barter they were for some time very fond, preferring the Indian cloth to that of Europe; but before night it decreased in its value five hundred per cent. Many of these Indians I took on board, and shewed them the ship and her apparatus, at which they expressed equal satisfaction and astonishment.

As I found it exceedingly difficult to get water on board on account of the surf, I determined to stay no longer at this place; on the next morning, therefore, about five o'clock, I weighed anchor and put to sea.

This bay, which is called by the natives TEGADOO, lies in the latitude of 38 d. 10 m. S. but as it has nothing to recommend it, a description of it is unnecessary.

From this bay I intended to stand on to the northward, but the wind being right against me, I could make no way. While I was beating about to windward, some of the natives came on board, and told me, that in a bay which lay a little to the southward, being the same that I could not fetch the day I put into Tegadoo, there was excellent water, where the boats might land without a surf. I thought it better therefore to put into this bay, where I might complete my water, and form farther connexions with the Indians, than to keep the sea. With this view I bore up for it, and sent in two boats to examine the watering-place, who confirming the report of the Indians at their return, I came to an anchor about one o'clock, in eleven fathom water, with a fine sandy bottom, the north point of the bay N. by E. and the south point S. E. The watering-place, which was in a small cove a little within the south point of the bay, bore S. by E. distant about a mile. Many canoes came immediately off from the shore, and all traded very honestly for Otaheite cloth and glass bottles, of which they were immoderately fond.

In the afternoon of the 23d, as soon as the ship was moored, I went on shore to examine the watering-place, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander: the boat landed in the cove, without the least surf; the water was excellent, and conveniently situated; there was plenty of wood close to high-water mark, and the disposition of the people was in every respect such as we could wish.

On the 24th, early in the morning, I sent Lieutenant Gore on shore, to superintend the cutting of wood and filling of water, with a sufficient number of men for both purposes, and all the marines as a guard. After breakfast, I went on shore myself, and continued there the whole day.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander also went on shore to gather plants, and in their walks saw several things worthy of notice. They met with many houses in the vallies that seemed to be wholly deserted, the people living on the ridges of the hills in a kind of shed very slightly built. As they were advancing in one of these vallies, the hills on each side of which were very steep, they were suddenly struck with the sight of a very extraordinary natural curiosity. It was a rock, perforated through its whole substance, so as to form a rude but stupendous arch or cavern, opening directly to the sea; this aperture was seventy-five feet long, twenty seven broad, and five and forty high, commanding a view of the bay and the hills on the other side, which were seen through it, and, opening at once upon the view, produced an effect far superior to any of the contrivances of art.

As they were returning to the watering-place in the evening, they met an old man, who detained them some time by showing them the military exercises of the country with the lance and Patoo-Patoo, which are all the weapons in use. The lance is from ten to fourteen feet long, made of a very hard wood, and sharp at both ends: the Patoo-Patoo has been described already, it is about a foot long, made of talc or bone, with sharp edges, and used

used as a battle-axe. A post or stake was set up as his enemy, to which he advanced with a most furious aspect, brandishing his lance, which he grasped with great firmness; when it was supposed to have been pierced by his lance, he ran at it with his Patoo-Patoo, and falling upon the upper end of it, which was to represent his adversary's head, he laid on with great vehemence, striking many blows, any one of which would probably have split the scull of an ox. From our champion's falling upon his mock enemy with the Patoo-Patoo, after he was supposed to have been pierced with the lance, our gentlemen inferred, that in the battles of this country there is no quarter.

This afternoon we set up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller, which had been broken, and went on getting our wood and water, without suffering the least molestation from the natives; who came down with different sorts of fish, which we purchased with cloth, beads, and glass bottles, as usual.

On the 25th, Mr Banks and Dr Solander went again on shore; and while they were searching for plants, Tupia staid with the waterers: among other Indians who came down to them, was a priest, with whom Tupia entered into a very learned conversation. In their notions of religion they seemed to agree very well, which is not often the case between learned divines on our side of the ocean: Tupia, however, seemed to have the most knowledge, and he was listened to with great deference and attention by the other. In the course of this conversation, after the important points of divinity had been settled, Tupia enquired if it was their practice to eat men, to which they answered in the affirmative; but said, they eat only their enemies who were slain in battle.

On the 26th, it rained all day, so that none of us could go on shore; and very few of the Indians came either to the watering-place or the ship.

On the 27th, I went with Dr Solander to examine the bottom of the bay; but though we went ashore at

two

two places, we met with little worth notice. The people behaved very civilly, shewing us every thing that we expressed a desire to see. Among other trifling curiosities which Dr Solander purchased of them, was a boy's top, shaped exactly like those which children play with in England; and they made signs, that to make it spin it was to be whipped. Mr Banks in the mean time went ashore at the watering-place, and climbed a hill, which stood at a little distance, to see a fence of poles, which we had observed from the ship, and which had been much the subject of speculation. The hill was extremely steep, and rendered almost inaccessible by wood; yet he reached the place, near which he found many houses that for some reason had been deserted by their inhabitants. The poles appeared to be about six feet high; they were placed in two rows, with a space of about six feet between them, and the poles in each row were about ten feet distant from each other. The lane between them was covered by sticks, that were set up sloping towards each other from the top of the poles on each side, like the roof of a house. This rail-work, with a ditch that was parallel to it, was carried about a hundred yards down the hill in a kind of curve; but for what purpose we could not guess.

The Indians, at the watering-place, at our request, entertained us with their war song, in which the women joined, with the most horrid distortions of countenance, rolling their eyes, thrusting out their tongue, and often heaving loud and deep sighs; though all was done in very good time.

On the 28th, we went ashore upon an island that lies to the left hand of the entrance of the bay, where we saw the largest canoe that we had yet met with: she was sixty-eight feet and a half long, five broad, and three feet six high; she had a sharp bottom, consisting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was the longest: the side planks were sixty-two feet long in one piece, and were not despicably carved in bas relief; the head also was adorned with carving
still

ne peo-
ng that
ing cu-
was a
en play
o make
e mean
mbed a
ence of
v hich
le hill
cessible
hich he
een de-
d to be
o rows,
and the
m each
y sticks,
om the
house:
it, was
a kind
ess.
est, en-
women
enance,
d often
done in

that lies
ere we
th: she
ad, and
nsisting
at in the
xty-two
carved
carving
still

Cook's Voyages



Winterbut.

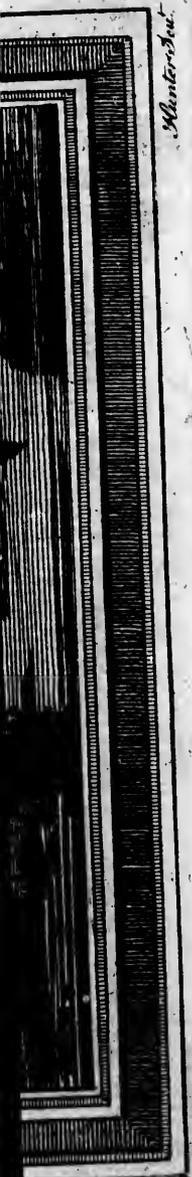
A VIEW OF A PERSIAN GULF

still more richly. Upon this island there was a larger house than any we had yet seen; but it seemed unfinished and was full of chips. The wood work was squared so even and smooth, that we made no doubt of their having among them very sharp tools. The sides of the posts were carved in a masterly stile, though after their whimsical taste, which seems to prefer spiral lines and distorted faces: as these carved posts appeared to have been brought from some other place, such work is probably of great value among them.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 29th, having got on board our wood and water, and a large supply of excellent celery, with which the country abounds, and which proved a powerful antiscorbutic, I unmoored and put to sea.

This bay is called by the natives **TOLAGA**; it is moderately large, and has from seven to thirteen fathom, with a clean sandy bottom and good anchorage; and is sheltered from all winds except the north-east. It lies in latitude 38 d. 22 m. S. and four leagues and a half to the north of Cable-end Foreland. On the south point lies a small but high island, so near the main as not to be distinguished from it. Close to the north end of the island, at the entrance into the bay, are two high rocks; one is round like a corn-stack, but the other is long, and perforated in several places so that the openings appear like the arches of a bridge. Within these rocks is the cove where we cut wood, and filled our water-casks. Off the north point of the bay is a pretty high rocky island; and about a mile without it, are some rocks and breakers. The variation of the compass here is 14 d. 31 m. E. and the tide flows at the full and change of the moon, about six o'clock, and rises and falls perpendicularly from five to six feet: whether the flood comes from the southward or the northward I have not been able to determine.

We got nothing here by traffic but a few fish, and some sweet potatoes, except a few trifles, which we considered merely as curiosities. We saw no four-



A View of a Perron...

A VIEW OF A PERRON... IN...

footed animals, nor the appearance of any, either tame or wild, except dogs and rats, and these were scarce: the people eat the dogs, like our friends at Otaheite; and adorn their garments with the skins, as we do ours with fur and ermine. I climbed many of the hills, hoping to get a view of the country, but I could see nothing from the top except higher hills, in a boundless succession. The ridges of these hills produce little besides fern; but the sides are most luxuriantly clothed with wood, and verdure of various kinds, with little plantations intermixed. In the woods, we found trees of about twenty different sorts, and carried specimens of each on board; but there was no body among us to whom they were not altogether unknown. The tree which we cut for firing was somewhat like our maple, and yielded a whitish gum. We found another sort of it of a deep yellow, which we thought might be useful in dying. We found also one cabbage tree, which we cut down for the cabbages. The country abounds with plants, and the woods with birds, in an endless variety, exquisitely beautiful, and of which none of us had the least knowledge. The soil both of the hills and vallies is light and sandy, and very fit for the production of all kinds of roots; though we saw none except sweet potatoes and yams.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay, with an account of many Incidents that happened both on board and ashore: A description of several Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppabs, or fortified Villages of the Inhabitants.

ON Monday the 30th, about half an hour after one o'clock, having made sail again to the northward for about ten hours, with a light breeze, I hauled round a small island which lay east one mile from the north-east point of the land: from this place I found the land trend away N. W. by W. and W. N. W. as far as I could see, this point being the easternmost land on the whole coast. I gave it the name of EAST CAPE, and I called the island that lies off it EAST ISLAND; it is of a small circuit, high and round, and appears white and barren: the Cape is high, with white cliffs, and lies in latitude 37 d. 42 m. 30 f. S. and longitude 181 d. W. The land from Tolaga Bay to East Cape is of a moderate but unequal height, forming several small bays, in which are sandy beaches: of the inland country we could not see much, the weather being cloudy and hazy. The soundings were from twenty to thirty fathom at the distance of about a league from the shore. After we had rounded the Cape, we saw in our run along the shore a great number of villages, and much cultivated land; the country in general appeared more fertile than before, and was low near the sea, but hilly within. At six in the evening, being four leagues to the westward of East Cape, we passed a bay which was first discovered by Lieutenant Hicks, and which therefore I called HICKS' BAY. At eight in the evening, being eight leagues to the westward of the Cape, and three or four miles from the shore, I shortened sail and brought to for the night, having at this time a fresh gale at S. S. E. and squally;

but it soon became moderate, and at two in the morning, we made sail again to the S. W. as the land now trended; and at eight o'clock in the morning, saw land, which made like an island, bearing west, the south west-ermost part of the main bearing south-west; and about nine no less than five canoes came off, in which were more than forty men, all armed with their country pikes and battle-axes, shouting, and threatening an attack: this gave us great uneasiness, and was, indeed, what we did not expect; for we hoped, that the report both of our power and clemency had spread to a greater extent. When one of these canoes had almost reached the ship, another, of an immense size, the largest we had yet seen, crowded with people who were all armed, put off from the shore, and came up at a great rate; as it approached it received signals from the canoe that was nearest to the ship, and we could see that it had sixteen paddles on a side, beside people that sat, and others that stood in a row from stem to stern, being in all about sixty men: as they made directly to the ship, we were desirous of preventing an attack, by showing what we could do; and therefore fired a gun, loaded with grape-shot, ahead of them: this made them stop, but not retreat; a round shot was then fired over them, and upon seeing it fall, they seized their paddles and made towards the shore with such precipitation that they seemed scarcely to allow themselves time to breathe. In the evening, three or four more canoes came off unarmed; but they would not venture within a musquet shot of the vessel. The cape, off which we had been threatened with hostilities, I called, from the hasty retreat of the enemy, **CAPE RUNAWAY**. It lies in latitude 37 d. 32 m. longitude 181 d. 48 m. In this day's run, we found that the land, which made like an island in the morning, bearing west, was so; and we gave it the name of **WHITE ISLAND**.

At day-break, on the first of November, we counted no less than five and forty canoes that were coming from the shore towards the ship: seven of them came
up

up with us, and, after some conversation with Tupia, sold us some lobsters and muscles, and two conger eels. These people traded pretty fairly; but when they were gone, some others came off from another place, who began also to trade fairly; but after some time they took what was handed down to them, without making any return; one of them who had done so, upon being threatened, began to laugh, and, with many marks of derision, set us at defiance, at the same time putting off the canoe from the ship: a musquet was then fired over his head, which brought him back in a more serious mood, and trade went on with great regularity. At length, when the cabin and gun-room had got as much as they wanted, the men were allowed to come to the gang-way, and trade for themselves. Unhappily the same care was not taken to prevent frauds as had been taken before, so that the Indians, finding that they could cheat with impunity, grew insolent again, and proceeded to take great liberties. One of the canoes, having sold every thing on board, pulled forward, and the people that were in her seeing some linen hang over the ship's side to dry, one of them, without any ceremony, untied it, and put it up in his bundle: he was immediately called to, and required to return it; instead of which, he let his canoe drop astern, and laughed at us: a musquet was fired over his head, which did not put a stop to his mirth; another was then fired at him with small shot, which struck him upon the back; he shrunk a little when the shot hit him, but did not regard it more than one of our men would have done the stroke of a rattan: he continued, with great composure, to pack up the linen that he had stolen. All the canoes now dropped astern about a hundred yards, and all set up their song of defiance, which they continued till the ship was distant from them about four hundred yards. As they seemed to have no design to attack us, I was not willing to do them any hurt; yet I thought their going off in a bravado might have a bad effect when it should be reported ashore. To shew them, therefore, that they were still

still in our power, though very much beyond the reach of any missile weapon with which they were acquainted, I gave the ship a yaw, and fired a four pounder so as to pass near them. The shot happened to strike the water, and rise several times at a great distance beyond the canoes: this struck them with terror, and they paddled away without once looking behind them.

About two in the afternoon, we saw a pretty high island bearing west from us; and at five, saw more islands and rocks to the westward of that. We hauled our wind in order to go without them, but could not weather them before it was dark. I therefore bore up, and ran between them and the main. At seven, I was close under the first, from which a large double canoe, or rather two canoes lashed together at the distance of about a foot, and covered with boards so as to make a deck, put off, and made sail for the ship: this was the first vessel of the kind that we had seen since we left the South Sea islands. When she came near, the people on board entered very freely into conversation with Tupia, and, we thought, showed a friendly disposition; but when it was just dark, they ran their canoe close to the ship's side, and threw in a volley of stones, after which they paddled ashore.

We learnt from Tupia, that the people in the canoe called the island which we were under MOWTOHORA; it is but of a small circuit, though high, and lies six miles from the main; on the south side is anchorage in fourteen fathom water. Upon the main land S. W. by W. of this island, and apparently at no great distance from the sea, is a high round mountain, which I called MOUNT EDGECOMBE: it stands in the middle of a large plain, and is therefore the more conspicuous; latitude 37 d. 59 m. longitude 193 d. 7 m.

In standing westward, we suddenly shoaled our water from seventeen to ten fathom; and knowing that we were not far from the small islands and rocks which we had seen before dark, and which I intended to have passed before I brought to for the night, I thought it more prudent

prudent to tack, and spend the night under Mowtohora, where I knew there was no danger. It was, indeed, happy for us that we did so; for in the morning, after we had made sail to the westward, we discovered ahead of us, several rocks, some of which were level with the surface of the water, and some below it: they lay N. N. E. from Mount Edgecombe, one league and a half distant from the island Mowtohora, and about nine miles distant from the main. We passed between these rocks and the main, having from ten to seven fathom water.

This morning, many canoes and much people were seen along the shore; several of the canoes followed us, but none of them could reach us, except one with a sail, which proved to be the same that pelted us the night before. The people on board again entered into conversation with Tupia; but we expected another volley of their ammunition, which was not, indeed, dangerous to any thing but the cabin windows. They continued abreast of the ship about an hour, and behaved very peaceably; but at last the salute which we expected was given; we returned it by firing a musquet over them, and they immediately dropped astern and left us, perhaps rather satisfied with having given a test of their courage by twice insulting a vessel so much superior to their own, than intimidated by the shot.

At half an hour after ten, we passed between a low flat island and the main: the distance from one to the other was about four miles, and the depth of water from ten to twelve fathom. The main land between this flat island and Mowtohora is of a moderate height, but level, pretty clear of wood, and full of plantations and villages. The villages, which were larger than any we had yet seen, were built upon eminences near the sea, and fortified on the land side by a bank and ditch, with a high paling within it, which was carried all round: beside a bank, ditch, and pallisadoes, some of them appeared to have out-works. Tupia had a notion that the small inclosures of pallisadoes, and a ditch that we had

had seen before, were Morais or places of worship ; but we were of opinion that they were forts, and concluded that these people had neighbouring enemies, and were always exposed to hostile attacks.

At two o'clock we passed a small high island, lying four miles from a high round head upon the main. From this head the land trends N. W. as far as can be seen, and has a rugged and hilly appearance. As the weather was hazy, and the wind blew fresh on the shore, we hauled off for the weathermost island in sight, which bore from us N. N. E. distant about six or seven leagues.

Under this island, which I have called the MAYOR, we spent the night. At seven in the morning it bore S. 47 E. distant six leagues, and a cluster of small islands and rocks bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant one league, to which I gave the name of the COURT of ALDERMEN. They lie in the compass of about half a league every way, and five leagues from the main, between which and them lie other islands, most of them barren rocks, of which there is a great variety: some of them are as small in compass as the Monument of London, but rise to a much greater height, and some of them are inhabited. They lie in latitude 36 d. 57 m. and at noon bore S. 60 E. distant three or four leagues ; and a rock like a castle, lying not far from the main, bore N. 40 W. at the distance of one league. The country that we passed the night before, appeared to be well inhabited, many towns were in sight, and some hundreds of large canoes lay under them upon the beach ; but this day, after having sailed about fifteen leagues, it appeared to be barren and desolate. As far as we had yet coasted this country from Cape Turnagain, the people acknowledged one Chief, whom they called TERATU, and to whose residence they pointed, in a direction that we thought to be very far inland, but afterwards found to be otherwise.

About one o'clock three canoes came off to us from the main, with one and twenty men on board. The
con-

construction of these vessels appeared to be more simple than that of any we had seen, they being nothing more than trunks of a single tree hollowed by fire, without any convenience or ornament. The people on board were almost naked, and appeared to be of a browner complexion; yet naked and despicable as they were, they sung their song of defiance, and seemed to denounce against us inevitable destruction: they remained, however, some time out of stones throw, and then venturing nearer, with less appearance of hostility, one of our men went to the ship side, and was about to hand them a rope; this courtesy, however, they thought fit to return by throwing a lance at him, which having missed him, they immediately threw another into the ship: upon this a musquet was fired over them, which at once sent them away.

About two, we saw a large opening, or inlet, for which we bore up: we had now forty-one fathom water, which gradually decreased to nine, at which time we were one mile and an half distant from a high towered rock which lay near the south point of the inlet: this rock, and the northermost of the Court of Aldermen being in one, bearing S. 61 E.

About seven in the evening we anchored in seven fathom, a little within the south entrance of the bay: to this place we were accompanied by several canoes and people like those we had seen last, and for some time behaved very civilly. While they were hovering about us, a bird was shot from the ship, as it was swimming upon the water: at this they shewed less surprize than we expected, and taking up the bird, they tied it to a fishing line that was towing astern; as an acknowledgment for this favour we gave them a piece of cloth: but notwithstanding this effect of our fire-arms, and this interchange of civilities, as soon as it grew dark they sung their war song, and attempted to tow away the buoy of the anchor. Two or three muskets were then fired over them, but this seemed rather to make them angry than afraid, and they went away, threaten-

ing that to-morrow they would return with more force, and be the death of us all; at the same time sending off a boat, which they told us was going to another part of the bay for assistance.

There was some appearance of generosity, as well as courage, in acquainting us with the time when they intended to make their attack, but they forfeited all credit which this procured them, by coming secretly upon us in the night, when they certainly hoped to find us asleep: upon approaching the ship they found themselves mistaken, and therefore retired without speaking a word, supposing that they were too early; after some time they came a second time, and being again disappointed, they retired as silently as before.

In the morning, at day-break, they prepared to effect by force what they had in vain attempted by stealth and artifice: no less than twelve canoes came against us, with about a hundred and fifty men, all armed with pikes, lances, and stones. As they could do nothing till they came very near the ship, Tupia was ordered to expostulate with them, and if possible divert them from their purpose: during the conversation they appeared to be sometimes friendly and sometimes otherwise; at length, however, they began to trade, and we offered to purchase their weapons, which some of them consented to sell: they sold two very fairly, but having received what had been agreed upon for the purchase of a third, they refused to send it up, but offered it for a second price; a second was then sent down, but the weapon was still detained, and a demand made of a third; this being refused with some expressions of displeasure and resentment, the offender, with many ludicrous tokens of contempt and defiance, paddled his canoe off a few yards from the ship. As I intended to continue in this place five or six days, in order to make an observation of the transit of Mercury, it was absolutely necessary, in order to prevent future mischief, to shew these people that we were not to be treated ill with impunity;

some

word
word
what
else id
it but
to word

bay
 pla
 oth
 wh
 van
 the
 pro
 bay
 poin
 scrib
 far f
 A
 in n
 and
 poin
 river
 dista

some small shot were therefore fired at the thief, and a musket ball through the bottom of his boat: upon this it was paddled to about a hundred yards distance, and to our great surprize, the people in the other canoes took not the least notice of their wounded companion, though he bled very much, but returned to the ship, and continued to trade with the most perfect indifference and unconcern. They sold us many more of their weapons, without making any other attempt to defraud us, for a considerable time; at last, however, one of them thought fit to paddle away with two different pieces of cloth which had been given for the same weapon: when he had got about an hundred yards distance, and thought himself secure of his prize, a musket was fired after him, which fortunately struck the boat just at the water's edge, and made two holes in her side; this only incited them to ply their paddles with greater activity, and the rest of the canoes also made off with the utmost expedition. As the last proof of our superiority therefore, we fired a round shot over them, and not a boat stopped till they got on shore.

About ten o'clock, I went with two boats to sound the bay, and look out for a more convenient anchoring-place, the Master being in one boat and myself in the other. We pulled first over to the north shore, from which some canoes came out to meet us; as we advanced, however, they retired, inviting us to follow them: but, seeing them all armed, I did not think it proper to comply, but went towards the head of the bay, where I observed a village upon a very high point, fortified in the manner that has been already described, and having fixed upon an anchoring-place not far from where the ship lay, I returned on board.

At three o'clock in the afternoon, I weighed, run in nearer to the shore, and anchored in four fathom and a half water, with a soft sandy bottom, the south point of the bay bearing E. distant one mile, and a river which the boats can enter at low water S. S. E. distant a mile and an half.

In the morning, the natives came off again to the ship, and we had the satisfaction to observe that their behaviour was very different from what it had been yesterday: among them was an old man, whom we had before remarked for his prudence and honesty: his name was TOIAVA, and he seemed to be a person of a superior rank; in the transactions of yesterday morning he had behaved with great propriety and good sense, lying in a small canoe, always near the ship, and treating those on board as if he neither intended a fraud nor suspected an injury; with some persuasion this man and another came on board, and ventured into the cabin, where I presented each of them with a piece of English cloth and some spike nails. They told us that the Indians were now very much afraid of us, and on our part we promised friendship if they would behave peaceably, desiring only to purchase what they had to sell upon their own terms.

After the natives had left us, I went with the pinnace and long-boat into the river with a design to haul the seine, and sent the Master in the yawl to sound the bay and dredge for fish. The Indians who were on one side of the river, expressed their friendship by all the signs they could devise, beckoning us to land among them; but we chose to go ashore on the other side, as the situation was more convenient for hauling the seine and shooting birds, of which we saw great numbers of various kinds: the Indians with much persuasion, about noon, ventured over to us. With the seine we had very little success, catching only a few mullets, neither did we get any thing by the trawl or the dredge, except a few shells; but we shot several birds, most of them resembling sea-pies, except that they had black plumage, and red bills and feet. While we were absent with our guns, the people who staid by the boats saw two of the Indians quarrel and fight: they began the battle with their lances, but some old men interposed and took them away, leaving them to decide the difference, like Englishmen, with their fists: they boxed with great vi-
gour

gour and obstinacy for some time, but by degrees all retired behind a little hill, so that our people could not see the event of the combat.

In the morning the long-boat was sent again to trawl in the bay, and an officer, with the marines, and a party of men, to cut wood and haul the seine. The Indians on shore appeared very peaceable and submissive, and we had reason to believe that their habitations were at a considerable distance, for we saw no houses, and found that they slept under the bushes: the bay is probably a place to which they frequently resort in parties to gather shell-fish, of which it affords incredible plenty, for where-ever we went, whether upon the hills or in the vallies, the woods or the plains we saw vast heaps of shells, often many waggon loads together, some appearing to be very old, and others recent. We saw no cultivation in this place, which had a desolate and barren appearance; the tops of the hills were green, but nothing grew there except a large kind of fern, the roots of which the natives had got together in large quantities, in order to carry away with them. In the evening Mr Banks walked up the river, which at the mouth looked fine and broad, but at the distance of about two miles was not deep enough to cover the foot; and the country inland was still more barren than at the sea-side. The seine and dredge were not more successful to-day than yesterday, but the Indians in some measure compensated for the disappointment by bringing us several baskets of fish, some dry, and some fresh dressed; it was not, indeed, of the best, but I ordered it all to be bought for the encouragement of trade.

On the 7th, the weather was so bad that none of us left the ship, nor did any of the Indians come on board.

On the 8th, I sent a party of men on shore to wood and water; and in the mean time many canoes came off, in one of which was our friend Toiava; soon after he was alongside of the ship, he saw two canoes coming from the opposite side of the bay, upon which he hastened back

back again to the shore with all his canoes, telling us that he was afraid of the people who were coming: this was a farther proof that the people of this country were perpetually committing hostilities against each other. In a short time, however, he returned, having discovered that the people who had alarmed him were not the same that he had supposed. The natives that came to the ship this morning sold us, for a few pieces of cloth, as much fish of the mackrel kind as served the whole ship's company, and they were as good as ever were eaten. At noon, this day, I observed the sun's meridional zenith distance by an astronomical quadrant, which gave the latitude 36 d. 47 m. 43 f. within the south entrance of the bay.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander went on shore and collected a great variety of plants, altogether unknown, and not returning till the evening, had an opportunity of observing in what manner the Indians disposed themselves to pass the night. They had no shelter but a few shrubs: the women and the children were ranged innermost, or farthest from the sea; the men lay in a kind of half circle round them, and their arms were set up against the trees close by them, in a manner which showed that they were afraid of an attack by some enemy not far distant. It was also discovered that they acknowledged neither Teratu, nor any other person as their king: as in this particular they differed from all the people that we had seen upon other parts of the coast, we thought it possible that they might be a set of outlaws, in a state of rebellion against Teratu, and in that case they might have no settled habitations, or cultivated land in any part of the country.

On the 9th, at day-break, a great number of canoes came on board, loaded with mackrel of two sorts, one exactly the same with those caught in England, and the other somewhat different: we imagined the people had taken a large shoal, and brought us an overplus which they could not consume; for they sold them at a very low rate. They were, however, very welcome to us;

at

at eight o'clock, the ship had more fish on board than all her people could eat in three days; and before night, the quantity was so much increased, that every man who could get salt, cured as many as would last him a month.

About noon, we were alarmed by the firing of a great gun from the ship; Mr Gore, my Second Lieutenant, was at this time commanding officer on board, and the account that he gave was this. While some small canoes were trading with the people, two very large ones came up, full of men, one of them having on board forty-seven, all armed with pikes, darts, and stones, and apparently with a hostile intention: they appeared to be strangers, and to be conscious of superiority over us by their numbers, than afraid of any weapons which could give us the superiority over them: no attack however was made; probably because they learnt from the people in the other canoes, with whom they immediately entered into conference, what kind of an enemy they had to deal with: after a little time, they began to trade, some of them offering their arms, and one of them a square piece of cloth, which makes a part of their dress, called a *Haahow*; several of the weapons were purchased, and Mr Gore having agreed for a *Haahow*, sent down the price which was a piece of British cloth, and expected his purchase: but the Indian, as soon as he had got Mr Gore's cloth in his possession, refused to part with his own, and put off the canoe: upon being threatened for this fraud, he and his companions began to sing their war song in defiance, and shook their paddles: still however they began no attack, only defying Mr Gore to take any remedy in his power, which so provoked him that he levelled a musquet loaded with ball at the offender, while he was holding the cloth in his hand, and shot him dead. It would have been happy, if the effect of a few small shot had been tried on this occasion, which upon some others had been successful.

When the Indian dropped, all the canoes put off to some

some distance; but as they did not go away, it was thought they might still meditate an attack. To secure therefore a safe passage for the boat, which it was necessary to send on shore, a round shot was fired over their heads, which effectually answered the purpose, and put them all to flight. When an account of what had happened was brought ashore, our Indians were alarmed, and drawing all together, retreated in a body. After a short time, however, they returned, having heard a more particular account of the affair; and intimated that they thought the man who had been killed deserved his fate.

A little before sunset the Indians retired to eat their supper, and we went with them to be spectators of the repast; it consisted of fish of different kinds, among which were lobsters, and some birds, of a species unknown to us: these were either roasted or baked; to roast them, they fastened them upon a small stick, which was stuck up in the ground, inclining towards their fire; and to bake them, they put them into a hole in the ground with hot stones, in the same manner as the people of Otaheite.

Among the natives that were assembled upon this occasion, we saw a woman, who, after their manner, was mourning for the death of her relation; she sat upon the ground near the rest, who, one only excepted, seemed not at all to regard her: the tears constantly trickled down her cheeks, and she repeated in a low, but very mournful voice, words, which even Tupia did not at all understand: at the end of every sentence she cut her arms, her face, or her breast with a shell that she held in her hand, so that she was almost covered with blood, and was indeed one of the most affecting spectacles that can be conceived. The cuts, however, did not appear to be so deep as are sometimes made upon similar occasions, if we may judge by the scars which we saw upon the arms, thighs, breasts, and cheeks of many of them, which we were told were the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves as testimonies of their affection and sorrow.

The

The next day, I went with two boats, accompanied by Mr Banks and the other gentlemen, to examine a large river that empties itself into the head of the bay. We rowed about four or five miles up, and could have gone much farther if the weather had been favourable. It was here wider than at the mouth, and divided into many streams by small flat islands, which are covered with mangroves, and overflowed at high-water. From these trees exudes a viscous substance which very much resembles resin: we found it first in small lumps upon the sea beach, and now saw it sticking to the trees, by which we knew whence it came. We landed on the east side of the river, where we saw a tree upon which several shags had built their nests, and here, therefore, we determined to dine; twenty of the shags were soon killed, and, being broiled upon the spot, afforded us an excellent meal. We then went upon the hills, from whence I thought I saw the head of the river. The shore on each side, as well as the islands in the middle, were covered with mangroves; and the sand-banks abounded in cockles and clams: in many places there were rock oysters, and every where plenty of wild fowl, principally shags, ducks, curleus, and the sea-pie, that has been described before. We also saw fish in the river, but of what kind we could not discover: the country, on the east side of this river, is for the most part barren, and destitute of wood; but on the west it has a better aspect, and in some places is adorned with trees, but has in no part the appearance of cultivation. In the entrance of the river, and, for two or three miles up, there is good anchoring in four and five fathom water, and places very convenient for laying a vessel on shore, where the tide rises and falls seven feet at the full and change of the moon. We could not determine, whether any considerable stream of fresh water came into this river out of the country; but we saw a number of small rivulets issue from the adjacent hills. Near the mouth of this river, on the east side, we found a little Indian village, consisting of small temporary sheds,

where we landed, and were received by the people with the utmost kindness and hospitality: they treated us with a flat shell-fish of a most delicious taste, somewhat like a cockle, which we eat hot from the coals. Near this place is a high point or peninsula, projecting into the river, and upon it are the remains of a fort, which they call *Eppab* or *Heppab*. The best engineer in Europe could not have chosen a situation better adapted to enable a small number to defend themselves against a greater. The steepness of the cliffs renders it wholly inaccessible from the water which incloses it on three sides; and, to the land, it is fortified by a ditch, and a bank raised on the inside: from the top of the bank to the bottom of the ditch, is two and twenty feet; the ditch on the outside is fourteen feet deep, and its breadth is in proportion. The whole seemed to have been executed with great judgment; and there had been a row of pickets or pallisadoes, both on the top of the bank and along the brink of the ditch on the outside; those on the outside had been driven very deep into the ground, and were inclined towards the ditch, so as to project over it; but of these the thickest posts only were left, and upon them there were evident marks of fire, so that the place had probably been taken and destroyed by an enemy. If any occasion should make it necessary for a ship to winter here, or stay any time, tents might be built in this place, which is sufficiently spacious, with great convenience, and might easily be made impregnable to the whole country.

On the 11th, there was so much wind and rain that no canoe came off; but the long-boat was sent to fetch oysters from one of the beds which had been discovered the day before: the boat soon returned, deeply laden, and the oysters, which were as good as ever came from Colchester; and about the same size, were laid down under the booms, and the ship's company did nothing but eat them from the time they came on board till night, when, as may reasonably be supposed, great part of them were expended; this, however, gave us
no

no concern, as we knew that not the boat only, but the ship might have been loaded, almost in one tide, as the beds are dry at half ebb.

In the morning of Sunday the 12th, two canoes came off full of people whom we had never seen before, but who appeared to have heard of us by the caution which they used in approaching us. As we invited them to come alongside with all the tokens of friendship that we could shew, they ventured up, and two of them came on board; the rest traded very fairly for what they had: a small canoe also came from the other side of the bay, and sold us some very large fish, which they gave us to understand they would have brought yesterday, having caught them the day before, but that the wind was so high they could not venture to sea.

After breakfast, I went with the pinnace and yawl, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, over to the north side of the bay, to take a view of the country, and two fortified villages which we had discovered at a distance. We landed nearest the smallest of them, the situation of which was the most beautifully romantic that can be imagined; it was built upon a small rock, detached from the main, and surrounded at high water. The whole body of this rock was perforated by an hollow or arch, which possessed much the largest part of it; the top of the arch was above sixty feet perpendicular above the sea, which at high water flowed through the bottom of it: the whole summit of the rock above the arch was fenced round after their manner; but the area was not large enough to contain more than five or six houses: it was accessible only by one very narrow and steep path, by which the inhabitants, at our approach, came down, and invited us into the place; but we refused, intending to visit a much more considerable fort of the same kind at about a mile's distance. We made some presents however to the women, and in the mean time we saw the inhabitants of the town which we were going to, coming towards us in a body, men, women, and children,

to the number of one hundred : when they came near enough to be heard, they waved their hands and called out *Horomai* ; after which they sat down among the bushes near the beach : these ceremonies we were told were certain signs of their friendly disposition. We advanced to the place where they were sitting, and when we came up, made them a few presents, and asked leave to visit their Heppah ; they consented with joy on their countenances, and immediately led the way. It is called *WHARETOUWA*, and is situated upon a high promontory or point, which projects into the sea, on the north side, and near the head of the bay : two sides of it are washed by the sea, and these are altogether inaccessible ; two other sides are to the land : up one of them, which is very steep, lies the avenue from the beach ; the other is flat and open to the country upon the hill, which is a narrow ridge : the whole is inclosed by a pallisade about ten feet high, consisting of strong pales bound together with withes. The weak side next the land is also defended by a double ditch, the innermost of which has a bank and an additional pallisade ; the inner pallisades are upon the bank next the town, but at such a distance from the top of the bank as to leave room for men to walk and use their arms, between them and the inner ditch : the outermost pallisades are between the two ditches, and driven obliquely into the ground, so that their upper ends incline over the inner ditch : the depth of this ditch, from the bottom to the top or crown of the bank, is four and twenty feet. Close within the innermost pallisade is a stage, twenty feet high, forty feet long, and six broad ; it is supported by strong posts, and is intended as a station for those who defend the place, from which they may annoy the assailants by darts and stones, heaps of which lay ready for use. Another stage of the same kind commands the steep avenue from the beach, and stands also within the pallisade ; on this side of the hill there are some little outworks and huts, not intended as advanced posts, but

near
alled
the
told
e ad-
when
leave
their
s cal-
pro-
n the
les of
inac-
ne of
n the
upon
closed
trong
e next
inner-
ifade;
town,
t as to
tween
les are
to the
inner
to the
Close
y feet
ed by
e who
he af-
dy for
ds the
in the
e little
s, but

Cook's Voyages



Burby, & Co. Lith. Scul.

The Islands of a Heron in New Zealand.

as the habitations of people who for want of room could not be accommodated within the works, but who were, notwithstanding, desirous of placing themselves under their protection. The pallisades, as has been observed already, run round the whole brow of the hill, as well towards the sea as towards the land; but the ground within having originally been a mount, they have reduced it not to one level, but to several, rising in stages one above the other, like an amphitheatre, each of which is inclosed within its separate pallisade; they communicate with each other by narrow lanes, which might easily be stopped up, so that if an enemy should force the outward pallisade, he would have others to carry before the place could be wholly reduced, supposing these places to be obstinately defended one after the other.

The only entrance is by a narrow passage, about twelve feet long, communicating with the steep ascent from the beach: it passes under one of the fighting stages, and though we saw nothing like a door or gateway, it may be easily barricaded in a manner that will make the forcing it a very dangerous and difficult undertaking. Upon the whole, this must be considered as a place of great strength, in which a small number of resolute men may defend themselves against all the force which a people with no other arms than those that are in use here could bring against it. It seemed to be well furnished for a siege with every thing but water; we saw great quantities of fern root, which they eat as bread, and dried fish piled up in heaps; but we could not perceive that they had any fresh water nearer than a brook, which runs close under the foot of the hill: whether they have any means of getting it from this place during a siege, or whether they have any method of storing it within the works in gourds or other vessels, we could not learn; some resource they certainly have with respect to this article, an indispensable necessary of life, for otherwise the laying up dry provisions could answer no purpose. Upon our expressing a desire to
see

see their method of attack and defence, one of the young men mounted a fighting stage, which they call *Porava*, and another went into the ditch: both he that was to defend the place and he that was to assault it, sung the war-song, and danced with the same frightful gesticulations that we had seen used in more serious circumstances, to work themselves up into a degree of that mechanical fury, which, among all uncivilized nations, is the necessary prelude to a battle; for dispassionate courage, a strength of mind that can surmount the sense of danger, without a flow of animal spirits by which it is extinguished, seems to be the prerogative of those who have projects of more lasting importance, and a keener sense of honour and disgrace, than can be formed or felt by men who have few pains or pleasures besides those of mere animal life, and scarcely any purpose but to provide for the day that is passing over them, to obtain plunder, or revenge an insult: they will march against each other, indeed, in cool blood, though they find it necessary to work themselves into passion before they engage; as among us there have been many instances of people who have deliberately made themselves drunk, that they might execute a project which they formed when they were sober, but which, while they continued so, they did not dare to undertake.

On the side of the hill, near this inclosure, we saw about half an acre planted with gourds and sweet potatoes, which was the only cultivation in the bay: under the foot of the point upon which this fortification stands, are two rocks, one just broken off from the main, and the other not perfectly detached from it: they are both small, and seem more proper for the habitations of birds than men; yet there are houses and places of defence upon each of them. And we saw many other works of the same kind upon small islands, rocks, and ridges of hills, on different parts of the coast, besides many fortified towns, which appeared to be much superior to this.

The

one of the
 ch they call
 ooth he that
 to assault it,
 me frightful
 ferious cir-
 gree of that
 zed nations,
 dispassionate
 nt the sense
 by which it
 ve of those
 ance, and a
 an be form-
 or pleasures
 ly any pur-
 over them,
 will march
 ough they
 ffion before
 n many in-
 made them-
 oject which
 hich, while
 ertake.

, we saw a-
 sweet pota-
 e bay: un-
 fortification
 F from the
 d from it:
 or the habi-
 houses and
 and we saw
 small islands,
 of the coast,
 eared to be

The

The perpetual hostility in which these poor savages, who have made every village a fort, must necessarily live, will account for there being so little of their land in a state of cultivation; and, as mischiefs very often reciprocally produce each other, it may perhaps appear, that there being so little land in a state of cultivation, will account for their living in perpetual hostility. But it is very strange, that the same invention and diligence which have been used in the construction of places so admirably adapted to defence, almost without tools, should not, when urged by the same necessity, have furnished them with a single missile weapon except the lance, which is thrown by hand: they have no contrivance like a bow to discharge a dart, nor any thing like a sling to assist them in throwing a stone; which is the more surprising, as the invention of slings, and bows and arrows, is much more obvious than of the works which these people construct, and both these weapons are found among much ruder nations, and in almost every other part of the world. Besides the long lance and Patoo-Patoo, which have been mentioned already, they have a staff about five feet long, sometimes pointed, like a Serjeant's halberd, sometimes only tapering to a point at one end, and having the other end broad, and shaped somewhat like the blade of an oar. They have also another weapon, about a foot shorter than these, pointed at one end, and at the other shaped like an axe. The points of their long lances are barbed, and they handle them with such strength and agility, that we can match them with no weapon but a loaded musquet.

After taking a slight view of the country, and loading both the boats with celery, which we found in great plenty near the beach, we returned from our excursion, and about five o'clock in the evening got on board the ship.

On the 15th, I sailed out of the bay, and at the same time had several canoes on board, in one of which was our friend Toiava, who said, that as soon as we were gone

gone he must repair to his Heppah or fort, because the friends of the man who had been shot by Mr Gore on the 9th, had threatened to revenge his death upon him, whom they had reproached as being our friend. Off the north point of the bay, I saw a great number of islands, of various extent, which lay scattered to the north-west, in a direction parallel with the main as far I could see. I steered north-east for the north-eastermost of these islands; but the wind coming to the north-west, I was obliged to stand out to sea.

To the bay which we had now left I gave the name of MERCURY BAY, on account of the observation which we had made there of the transit of that planet over the sun. It lies in latitude 36 d. 47 m. S. and in the longitude of 184 d. 4 m. W. there are several islands lying both to the southward and northward of it, and a small island or rock in the middle of the entrance: within this island the depth of water no where exceeds nine fathom: the best anchoring is in a sandy bay, which lies just within the south head, in five and four fathom, bringing a high tower or rock, which lies without the head, in one with the head, or just shut in behind it. This place is very convenient both for wooding and watering, and in the river there is an immense quantity of oysters and other shell-fish: I have for this reason given it the name of OYSTER RIVER. But for a ship that wants to stay here any time, the best and safest place is in the river at the head of the bay; which, from the number of mangrove trees about it, I have called MANGROVE RIVER. To sail into this river, the south shore must be kept all the way on board. The country, on the east side of the river and bay, is very barren, its only produce being fern, and a few other plants that will grow in a poor soil. The land on the north-west side is covered with wood, and the soil being much more fertile, would doubtless produce all the necessaries of life with proper cultivation: it is not, however, so fertile as the lands that we have seen to the southward; nor do the inhabitants, though numerous, make so good an appear-

because the
Mr Gore on
upon him,
friend. Off
number of
ered to the
main as far
orth-easter-
to the north-

re the name
observation
that planet
n. S. and in
veral islands
of it, and a
ance: with-
xceeds nine
bay, which
our fathom,
without the
n behind it.
ooding and
se quantity
this reason
at for a ship
t and safest
which, from
have called
r, the south
he country,
y barren, its
ants that will
th-west side
much more
aries of life
er, so fertile
ward; nor
so good an
appear-

appearance: they have no plantations; their canoes are mean, and without ornament; they sleep in the open air; and say, that Teratu, whose sovereignty they do not acknowledge, if he was to come among them, would kill them. This favoured our opinion of their being outlaws; yet they told us, that they had Heppahs or strong holds, to which they retired in time of imminent danger.

We found, thrown upon the shore, in several parts of this bay, great quantities of iron-sand, which is brought down by every little rivulet of fresh water that finds its way from the country; which is a demonstration that there is ore of that metal not far inland: yet neither the inhabitants of this place, or any other part of the coast that we have seen, know the use of iron, or set the least value upon it; all of them preferring the most worthless and useless trifle, not only to a nail, but to any tool of that metal.

Before we left the bay, we cut upon one of the trees near the watering-place the ship's name, and that of the Commander, with the date of the year and month when we were there; and, after displaying the English colours, I took a formal possession of it in the name of his Britannic Majesty King George the Third.

The Range from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands: An Expedition up the River Thames: Some Account of the Indians who inhabit its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there: Several Interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coast, and a Skirmish with them upon an Island.

I Continued plying to windward two days to get under the land, and on the 18th, about seven in the morning, we were abreast of a very conspicuous promontory, being then in latitude 36 d. 26 m. and in the direction of N. 48 W. from the north head of Mercury Bay or Point Mercury, which was distant nine leagues: upon this point stood many people, who seemed to take little notice of us, but talked together with great earnestness. In about half an hour, several canoes put off from different places, and came towards the ship; upon which the people on the point also launched a canoe, and about twenty of them came in her up with the others. When two of these canoes, in which there might be about sixty men, came near enough to make themselves heard, they sung their war-song; but seeing that we took little notice of it, they threw a few stones at us, and then rowed off towards the shore. We hoped that we had now done with them, but in a short time they returned as if with a fixed resolution to provoke us into a battle, animating themselves by their song as they had done before. Tupia, without any directions from us, went to the poop, and began to expostulate: he told them, that we had weapons which would destroy them in a moment; and that, if they ventured to attack us, we should be obliged to use them. Upon this, they flourished their weapons, and cried out, in their language,

guage, "Come on shore, and we will kill you all!" Well, said Tupia, but why should you molest us while we are at sea? as we do not wish to fight, we shall not accept your challenge to come on shore; and here there is no pretence for a quarrel, the sea being no more your property than the ship. This eloquence of Tupia, though it greatly surpris'd us, having given him no hints for the arguments he us'd, had no effect upon our enemies, who very soon renewed their battery: a musquet was then fired through one of their boats, and this was an argument of sufficient weight, for they immediately fell astern and left us.

From the point, of which we were now abreast, the land trends W. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. near a league, and then S. S. E. as far as we could see; and, besides the islands that lay without us, we could see land round by the S. W. as far as the N. W. but whether this was the main or islands, we could not then determine: the fear of losing the main, however, made me resolve to follow its direction. With this view, I hauled round the point and steered to the southward, but there being light airs all round the compass, we made but little progress.

About one o'clock, a breeze sprung up at east, which afterwards came N. E. and we steered along the shore S. by E. and S. S. E. having from twenty-five to eighteen fathom.

At about half an hour after seven in the evening, having run seven or eight leagues since noon, I anchored in twenty-three fathom, not chusing to run any farther in the dark, as I had now land on both sides, forming the entrance of a streight, bay, or river, laying S. by E. for on that point we could see no land.

At day-break, on the 19th, the wind being still favourable, we weighed and stood with an easy sail up the inlet, keeping nearest to the east side. In a short time, two large canoes came off to us from the shore; the people on board said, that they knew Toiava very well, and called Tupia by his name. I invit'd some of them on board; and as they knew they had nothing

to fear from us, while they behaved honestly and peaceably, they immediately complied : I made each of them some presents, and dismissed them much gratified. Other canoes afterwards came up to us from a different side of the bay ; and the people on board of these also mentioned the name of Toiava, and sent a young man into the ship, who told us he was his grandson, and he also was dismissed with a present.

After having run about five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, our depth of water gradually decreased to six fathom ; and not chusing to go into less, as it was tide of flood, and the wind blew right up the inlet, I came to an anchor about the middle of the channel, which is near eleven miles over ; after which I sent two boats out to sound, one on one side, and the other on the other.

The boats not having found above three feet more water than we were now in, I determined to go no farther with the ship, but to examine the head of the bay in the boats ; for, as it appeared to run a good way inland, I thought this a favourable opportunity to examine the interior part of the country, and its produce.

At day-break, therefore, I set out in the pinnace and long-boat, accompanied by Mr Banks, Dr Solander, and Tupia ; and we found the inlet end in a river, about nine miles above the ship : into this river we entered with the first of the flood, and within three miles found the water perfectly fresh. Before we had proceeded more than one third of that distance, we found an Indian town, which was built upon a small bank of dry sand, but intirely surrounded by a deep mud, which possibly the inhabitants might consider as a defence. These people, as soon as they saw us, thronged to the banks, and invited us on shore. We accepted the invitation, and made them a visit notwithstanding the mud. They received us with open arms, having heard of us from our good old friend Toiava ; but our stay could not be long, as we had other objects of curiosity in view. We proceeded up the river till near noon, when we
were

were fourteen miles within its entrance; and then, finding the face of the country to continue nearly the same, without any alteration in the course of the stream, which we had no hope of tracing to its source, we landed on the west side, to take a view of the lofty trees which every where adorned its banks. They were of a kind that we had seen before, though only at a distance, both in Poverty Bay and Hawke's Bay. Before we had walked an hundred yards into the wood, we met with one of them which was nineteen feet eight inches in the girth, at the height of six feet above the ground: having a quadrant with me, I measured its height from the root to the first branch, and found it to be eighty-nine feet: it was as strait as an arrow, and tapered but very little in proportion to its height; so that I judged there were three hundred and fifty-six feet of solid timber in it, exclusive of the branches. As we advanced, we saw many others that were still larger; we cut down a young one, and the wood proved heavy and solid, not fit for masts, but such as would make the finest plank in the world. Our carpenter, who was with us, said that the timber resembled that of the pitch-pine, which is lightened by tapping; and possibly some such method might be found to lighten these, and they would then be such masts as no country in Europe can produce. As the wood was swampy, we could not range far; but we found many stout trees of other kinds, all of them utterly unknown to us, specimens of which we brought away.

The river at this height is as broad as the Thames at Greenwich, and the tide of flood as strong; it is not indeed quite so deep, but has water enough for vessels of more than a middle size, and a bottom of mud, so soft that nothing could take damage by running ashore.

About three o'clock, we reembarked, in order to return with the first of the ebb, and named the river the THAMES, it having some resemblance to our own river of that name. In our return, the inhabitants of the village where we had been ashore, seeing us take another channel,

channel, came off to us in their canoes, and trafficked with us in the most friendly manner, till they had disposed of the few trifles they had. The tide of ebb just carried us out of the narrow part of the river, into the channel that run up from the sea, before it was dark; and we pulled hard to reach the ship, but meeting the flood, and a strong breeze at N. N. W. with showers of rain; we were obliged to desist; and about midnight, we run under the land, and came to a grappling, where we took such rest as our situation would admit. At break of day, we set forward again, and it was past seven o'clock before we reached the ship. We were all extremely tired, but thought ourselves happy to be on board; for before nine it blew so hard that the boat could not have rowed ahead, and must therefore either have gone ashore, or taken shelter under it.

About three o'clock, having the tide of ebb, we took up our anchor, made sail, and plied down the river till eight in the evening, when we came to an anchor again: early in the morning we made sail with the first ebb, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. As we had now only a light breeze, I went in the pinnace, accompanied by Dr Solander, to the western shore; but I saw nothing worthy of notice.

When I left the ship, many canoes were about it; Mr Banks therefore chose to stay on board, and traffic with the natives: they bartered with their clothes and arms, chiefly for paper, and behaved with great friendship and honesty. But while some of them were below with Mr Banks, a young man who was upon the deck stole a half minute glass which was in the binacle; and was detected just as he was carrying it off. Mr Hicks, who was commanding officer on board, took it into his head to punish him, by giving him twelve lashes with a cat-o-nine-tails; and accordingly ordered him to be taken to the gang-way, and tied up to the shrouds. When the other Indians who were on board saw him seized, they attempted to rescue him; and being resisted, called for their arms, which were handed up from the canoes,
and

and the people of one of them attempted to come up the ship's side. The tumult was heard by Mr Banks, who, with Tupia, came hastily upon the deck to see what had happened. The Indians immediately ran to Tupia, who, finding Mr Hicks inexorable, could only assure them, that nothing was intended against the life of their companion; but that it was necessary he should suffer some punishment for his offence, which being explained to them, they seemed to be satisfied. The punishment was then inflicted, and as soon as the criminal was unbound, an old man among the spectators, who was supposed to be his father, gave him a hearty beating, and sent him down into his canoe. All the canoes then dropped a-stern, and the people said that they were afraid to come any more near the ship: after much persuasion, however, they ventured back again, but their cheerful confidence was at an end, and their stay was short; they promised indeed, at their departure, to return with some fish, but we saw no more of them.

On the 23d, the wind being contrary, we kept plying down the river, and at seven in the evening, got without the N. W. point of the islands lying on the west side of it. The weather being bad, night coming on, and having land on every side of us, I thought it most advisable to tack, and stretch in under the point, where we anchored in nineteen fathom. At five in the morning, of the 24th, we weighed, and made sail to the N. W. under our courses and double reefed top-sails, the wind being at S. W. by W. and W. S. W. a strong gale and squally. As the gale would not permit us to come near the land, we had but a slight and distant view of it from the time when we got under sail till noon, during a run of twelve leagues, but we never once lost sight of it. At this time, our latitude, by observation, was 36 d. 15 m. 20 s. we were not above two miles from a point of land on the main, and three leagues and a half from a very high island, which bore N. E. by E. in this situation we had twenty-six fathom water: the farthest point on the main that we could see bore N. W. but we could

per-

perceive several small islands lying to the north of that direction.

The point of land of which we were now abreast, and which I called POINT RODNEY, is the N. W. extremity of the river Thames; for under that name I comprehended the deep bay which terminates in the fresh water stream, and the N. E. extremity is the promontory which we passed when we entered it, and which I called CAPE COLVILLE, in honour of the Right Honourable Lord Colville.

Cape Colville lies in latitude 36 d. 26 m. longitude 104 d. 27 m. it rises directly from the sea to a considerable height, and is remarkable for a lofty rock, which stands to the pitch of the point, and may be distinguished at a very great distance. From the south point of this Cape the river runs in a direct line S. by E. and is no where less than three leagues broad for the distance of fourteen leagues above the Cape, and there it is contracted to a narrow stream, but continues the same course through a low flat country, or broad valley, which lies parallel with the sea coast, and the end of which we could not see. On the east side of the broad part of this river the land is tolerably high and hilly; on the west side it is rather low, but the whole is covered with verdure and wood, and has the appearance of great fertility, though there were but a few small spots which had been cultivated. At the entrance of the narrow part of the river the land is covered with mangroves and other shrubs: but farther, there are immense woods of perhaps the finest timber in the world, of which some account has already been given: in several places the wood extends to the very edge of the water, and where it is at a little distance, the intermediate space is marshy, like some parts of the banks of the Thames in England: it is probable that the river contains plenty of fish, for we saw poles stuck up in many places to set nets for catching them, but of what kinds I do not know. The greatest depth of water that we found in this river was six and twenty fathom, which gradually decreased to
one

one fathom and an half: in the mouth of the fresh water stream it is from four to three fathom, but there are large flats and sand banks lying before it. A ship of moderate draught may, notwithstanding, go a long way up this river with a flowing tide, for it rises perpendicularly near ten feet, and at the full and change of the moon, it is high water about nine o'clock.

Six leagues within Cape Colville, under the eastern shore are several small islands, which, together with the main, seem to form good harbours; and opposite to these islands, under the western shore, lie other islands, by which it is also probable that good harbours may be formed: but if there are no harbours about this river, there is good anchoring in every part of it where the depth of water is sufficient, for it is defended from the sea by a chain of islands of different extent, which lie cross the mouth of it, and which I have, for that reason, called BARRIER ISLANDS: they stretch N. W. and S. E. ten leagues. The south end of the chain lies N. E. between two and three leagues from Cape Colville; and the north end lies N. E. four leagues and an half from Point Rodney. Point Rodney lies W. N. W. nine leagues from Cape Colville, in latitude 36 d. 15 m. S. longitude 184 d. 53 m. W.

The natives residing about this river do not appear to be numerous, considering the great extent of the country. But they are a strong, well-made, and active people, and all of them paint their bodies with red oker and oil from head to foot, which we had not seen before. Their canoes were large and well built, and adorned with carving, in as good a taste as any that we had seen upon the coast.

We continued to stand along the shore till night, with the main land on one side, and islands on the other, and then anchored in a bay, with fourteen fathom and a sandy bottom. We had no sooner come to an anchor, than we tried our lines, and in a short time caught near one hundred fish, which the people called Sea-bream; they weighed from six to eight pounds

a-piece, and consequently would supply the whole ship's company with food for two days. From the succels of our lines here, we called the place BREAM BAY: the two points that form it lie north and south, five leagues from each other; it is every where of a good breadth, and between three and four leagues deep: at the bottom of it there appears to be a river of fresh water. The north head of the bay, called BREAM HEAD, is high land, and remarkable for several pointed rocks, which stand in a range upon the top of it: it may also be known by some small islands which lie before it called the HEN AND CHICKENS, one of which is high, and terminates in two peaks. It lies in latitude 45 d. 36 m. S. and at the distance of seventeen leagues and an half from Cape Colville, in the direction of N. 41 W.

The land between Point Rodney and Bream Head, an extent of ten leagues, is low, and wooded in tufts, with white sand banks between the sea and the firm land. We saw no inhabitants, but many fires in the night; and where there are fires, there are always people.

At day-break, on the 25th, we left the bay, and steered along the shore to the northward: we found the variation of the compass to be 12 d. 42 m. E. At noon our latitude was 36 d. 38 m. S. Bream Head bore south, distant ten miles; and we saw some small islands, to which I gave the name of POOR KNIGHTS, at N. E. by N. distant three leagues; the northermost land in sight bore N. N. W. we were in this place at the distance of two miles from the shore, and had twenty-six fathom water.

The country appeared low, but well covered with wood: we saw some straggling houses, three or four fortified towns, and near them a large quantity of cultivated land.

In the evening, some large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men: some of them came on board, and said that they had heard of us. To two of them,

them, who appeared to be Chiefs, I gave presents; but when these were gone out of the ship, the others became exceedingly troublesome. Some of those in the canoes began to trade, and, according to their custom, to cheat, by refusing to deliver what had been bought, after they had received the price: among these was one who had received an old pair of black breeches, which, upon a few small shot being fired at him, he threw in the sea. All the boats soon after paddled off to some distance, and when they thought they were out of reach, they began to defy us, by singing their song and brandishing their weapons. We thought it advisable to intimidate them, as well for their sakes as our own, and therefore fired first some small arms, and then round shot over their heads; the last put them in a terrible fright, though they received no damage, except by over-heating themselves in paddling away, which they did with astonishing expedition.

In the night we had variable light airs; but towards the morning a breeze sprung up at S. and afterwards at S. E. with which we proceeded slowly to the northward, along the shore.

Between six and seven o'clock two canoes came off, and told us that they had heard of yesterday's adventure, notwithstanding which the people came on board, and traded very quietly and honestly for whatever they had: soon after two canoes came off from a more distant part of the shore; these were of a much larger size, and full of people: when they came near, they called off the other canoes which were along-side of the ship, and, after a short conference, they all came up together. The strangers appeared to be persons of a superior rank; their canoes were well carved with many ornaments, and they had with them a great variety of weapons: they had Patoo-patoos both of stone and whale-bone, upon which they appeared to set a great value; they had also ribs of whale, of which we had before seen imitations in wood, carved and adorned with tufts of dog's hair. Their complexions were browner than those

those of the people we had seen to the southward, and their bodies and faces were more marked with the black stains which they call Amoco: they had a broad spiral on each buttock; and the thighs of many of them were almost intirely black, some narrow lines only being left untouched, so that at first sight they appeared to wear striped breeches. With respect to the Amoco, every different tribe seemed to have a different custom, for all the men, in some canoes, seemed to be almost covered with it, and those in others had scarcely a stain, except on the lips, which were black in all of them without a single exception. These gentlemen, for a long time, refused to part with any of their weapons, whatever was offered for them; at last, however, one of them produced a piece of talc, wrought into the shape of an ax, and agreed to sell it for a piece of cloth; the cloth was handed over the ship's side, but his honour immediately put off his canoe with the ax. We had recourse to our usual expedient, and fired a musket ball over the canoe, upon which it put back to the ship, and the piece of cloth was returned; all the boats then went ashore, without offering any further intercourse.

At noon, the main land extended from S. by E. to N. W. by W. a remarkable point of land bearing W. distant four or five miles; at three we passed it, and I gave it the name of CAPE BRET, in honour of Sir Piercy. The land of this Cape is considerably higher than any part of the adjacent coast: at the point of it, is a high round hillock, and N. E. by N. at the distance of about a mile, is a small high island or rock, which, like several that have already been described, was perforated quite through, so as to appear like the arch of a bridge. This Capé, or at least some part of it, is by the natives called MOTUGOGOGO, and it lies in latitude 35 d. 10 m. 30 f. S. longitude 183 d. 25 m. W. On the west side of it is a large and pretty deep bay, lying in S. W. by W. in which there appeared to be several small islands: the point forms the N. W. entrance, lies W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. at the distance of three or four leagues from
Cape

Cape Bret, and I distinguished it by the name of POINT POCOCKE. On the west side of the bay we saw several villages, both upon islands and the main, and several very large canoes came off to us, full of people, who made a better appearance than any we had seen yet: they were all stout and well-made; their hair, which was black, was tied up in a bunch on the crown of their heads, and stuck with white feathers. In each of the canoes were two or three Chiefs, whose habits were of the best sort of cloth, and covered with dog's skin, so as to make an agreeable appearance: most of these people were marked with the Amoco, like those who had been alongside of us before: their manner of trading was also equally fraudulent; and the officers neglecting either to punish or fright them, one of the midshipmen who had been defrauded in his bargain, had recourse, for revenge, to an expedient which was equally ludicrous and severe: he got a fishing line, and when the man who had cheated him was close under the ship's side in his canoe, he heaved the lead with so good an aim, that the hook caught him by the backside; he then pulled the line, and the man holding back, the hook broke in the shank, and the beard was left sticking in the flesh.

During the course of this day, though we did not range more than six or eight leagues of the coast, we had alongside and on board the ship between four and five hundred of the natives, which is a proof that this part of the country is well inhabited.

At eight o'clock the next morning, we were within a mile of a group of islands which lie close under the main, at the distance of two and twenty miles from Cape Bret, in the direction of N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At this place, having but little wind, we lay about two hours, during which time several canoes came off, and sold us some fish, which we called Cavalles, and, for that reason, I gave the same name to the islands. These people were very insolent, frequently threatening us, even while they were selling their fish; and when some more
canoes

canoes came up, they began to pelt us with stones. Some small shot were fired, and hit one of them while he had a stone in his hand, in the very action of throwing it into the ship; they did not, however, desist, till some others had been wounded, and then they went away, and we stood off to sea.

The wind being directly against us, we kept plying to windward till the 29th, when we had rather lost than gained ground; I therefore bore up for a bay which lies to the westward of Cape Bret; at this time it was about two leagues to leeward of us; and at about eleven o'clock we anchored under the south west side of one of the many islands which line it on the south east, in four fathom and a half water; we shoaled our water to this depth all at once, and if this had not happened I should not have come to an anchor so soon. The Master was immediately sent out with two boats to sound, and he soon discovered that we had got upon a bank, which runs out from the north west end of the island, and that on the outside of it there was from eight to ten fathom.

In the mean time the natives, to the number of near four hundred, crowded upon us in their canoes, and some of them were admitted on board: to one, who seemed to be a chief, I gave a piece of broad cloth, and distributed some trifling presents among the rest. I perceived that some of these people had been about the ship when she was off at sea, and that they knew the power of our fire arms, for the very sight of a gun threw them into manifest confusion: under this impression they traded very fairly; but the people in one of the canoes took the opportunity of our being at dinner to tow away our buoy: a musket was fired over them without effect, we then endeavoured to reach them with some small shot, but they were too far off: by this time they had got the buoy into their canoe, and we were obliged to fire a musket at them with ball: this hit one of them, and they immediately threw the buoy overboard: a round shot was then fired over them, which struck the water and went ashore. Two or three of

the

the canoes immediately landed their people, who ran about the beach, as we imagined, in search of the ball. Tupia called to them, and assured them that while they were honest they should be safe, and with a little persuasion many of them returned to the ship, and their behaviour was such as left us no reason to suspect that they intended to give us any farther trouble.

After the ship was removed into deeper water, and properly secured, I went with the pinnace and yawl, manned and armed, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, and landed upon the island, which was about three quarters of a mile distant: we observed that the canoes which were about the ship, did not follow us upon our leaving her, which we thought a good sign; but we had no sooner landed than they crowded to different parts of the island and came on shore. We were in a little cove, and in a few minutes were surrounded by two or three hundred people, some rushing from behind the heads of the cove, and others appearing on the tops of the hills: they were all armed, but they came on in so confused and straggling a manner that we scarcely suspected they meant us any harm, and we were determined that hostilities should not begin on our part. We marched towards them, and then drew a line upon the sand between them and us, which we gave them to understand they were not to pass: at first they continued quiet, but their weapons were held ready to strike, and they seemed to be rather irresolute than peaceable. While we remained in this state of suspense, another party of Indians came up, and now growing more bold as their number increased, they began the dance and song, which are their preludes to a battle: still however, they delayed the attack, but a party ran to each of our boats and attempted to draw them on shore; this seemed to be the signal, for the people about us at the same time began to press in upon our line: our situation was now become too critical for us to remain longer inactive, I therefore discharged my musket, which was loaded with small shot, at one of the forwardest, and Mr Banks and

two

two of the men fired immediately afterwards: this made them fall back in some confusion, but one of the Chiefs, who was at the distance of about twenty yards, rallied them, and running forward waving his patoo-patoo, and calling loudly to his companions, led them to the charge. Dr Solander, whose piece was not yet discharged, fired at this champion, who stopped short upon feeling the shot, and then ran away with the rest: they did not however disperse, but got together upon a rising ground, and seemed only to want some leader of resolution to renew their attack. As they were now beyond the reach of small shot, we fired with ball, but as none of them took place they still continued in a body, and in this situation we remained about a quarter of an hour: in the mean time the ship, from whence a much greater number of Indians were seen than could be discovered in our situation, brought her broadside to bear, and intirely dispersed them, by firing a few shot over their heads.

In this skirmish only two of the Indians were hurt with the small shot, and not a single life was lost, which would not have been the case if I had not restrained the men, who, either from fear or the love of mischief, shewed as much impatience to destroy them as a sportsman to kill his game.

When we were in quiet possession of our cove, we laid down our arms, and began to gather selery, which grew here in great plenty: after a little time we recollected to have seen some of the people hide themselves in a cave of one of the rocks, we therefore went towards the place, when an old Indian, who proved to be the Chief that I had presented with a piece of broad cloth in the morning, came out with his wife and his brother, and, in a supplicating posture, put themselves under our protection. We spoke kindly to them, and the old man then told us that he had another brother, who was one of those that had been wounded by the small shot, and inquired with much solicitude and concern if he would die. We assured him that he would not, and at
the

ds: this made
of the Chiefs,
yards, rallied
patoo-patoo,
d them to the
t yet discharg-
ort upon feel-
rest: they did
upon a rising
leader of reso-
e now beyond
l, but as none
n a body, and
er of an hour:
much greater
be discovered
o bear, and in-
hot over their

ans were hurt
was lost, which
restrained the
e of mischief,
em as a sport-

our cove, we
felery, which
ime we recol-
de themselves
went towards
ved to be the
of broad cloth
d his brother,
ves under our
and the old
her, who was
he small shot,
concern if he
d not, and at
the

the same time put into his hand both a musket ball and some small shot, telling him, that those only who were wounded with the ball would die, and that the others would recover; at the same time assuring him, that if we were attacked again, we should certainly defend ourselves with the ball, which would wound them mortally. Having now taken courage, they came and sat down by us, and as tokens of our perfect amity, we made them presents of such trifles as we happened to have about us.

Soon after we re-imbarked in our boats, and having rowed to another cove in the same island, climbed a neighbouring hill, which commanded the country to a considerable distance. The prospect was very uncommon and romantic, consisting of innumerable islands, which formed as many harbours, where the water was as smooth as a mill-pool: we saw also many towns, scattered houses, and plantations, the country being much more populous than any we had seen. One of the towns was very near us, from which many of the Indians advanced, taking great pains to shew us that they were unarmed, and in their gestures and countenances expressing great meekness and humility. In the mean time some of our people, who, when the Indians were to be punished for a fraud, assumed the inexorable justice of a Lycurgus, thought fit to break into one of their plantations, and dig up some potatoes: for this offence I ordered each of them to be punished with twelve lashes, after which two of them were discharged; but the third, insisting that it was no crime in an Englishman to plunder an Indian plantation, though it was a crime in an Indian to defraud an Englishman of a nail, I ordered him back into his confinement, from which I would not release him till he had received six lashes more.

On the 30th, there being a dead calm, and no probability of our getting to sea, I sent the Master, with two boats to sound the harbour; and all the forenoon had several canoes about the ship, who traded in a very fair

and friendly manner. In the evening we went ashore upon the main, where the people received us very cordially; but we found nothing worthy of notice.

In this bay we were detained by contrary winds and calms several days, during which time our intercourse with the natives was continued in the most peaceable and friendly manner, they being frequently about the ship, and we ashore, both upon the islands and the main. In one of our visits to the continent, an old man shewed us the instrument they use in staining their bodies, which exactly resembled those that were employed for the same purpose at Otaheite. We saw also the man who was wounded in attempting to steal our buoy: the ball had passed through the fleshy part of his arm, and grazed his breast; but the wound, under the care of Nature, the best surgeon, and a simple diet, the best nurse, was in a very good state, and seemed to give the patient neither pain nor apprehension. We saw also the brother of our old Chief, who had been wounded with small shot in our skirmish: they had struck his thigh obliquely, and though several of them were still in the flesh, the wound seemed to be attended with neither danger nor pain. We found among their plantations the *morus paprifera*, of which these people, as well as those at Otaheite, make cloth: but here the plant seems to be rare, and we saw no pieces of the cloth large enough for any use but to wear by way of ornament in their ears.

Having one day landed in a very distant part of the bay, the people immediately fled, except one old man, who accompanied us where-ever we went, and seemed much pleased with the little presents we made him. We came at last to a little fort, built upon a small rock, which, at high water, was surrounded by the sea, and accessible only by a ladder: we perceived that he eyed us with a kind of restless solicitude as we approached it, and upon our expressing a desire to enter it, he told us that his wife was there: he saw that our curiosity was not diminished by this intelligence, and after some hesitation,

sitation, he said, if we would promise to offer no indecency he would accompany us: our promise was readily given, and he immediately led the way. The ladder consisted of steps fastened to a pole, but we found the ascent both difficult and dangerous. When we entered we found three women, who, the moment they saw us, burst into tears of terror and surprize: some kind words and a few presents soon removed their apprehensions, and put them into good humour. We examined the house of our old friend, and, by his interest, two others, which were all that the fortification contained, and having distributed a few more presents, we parted with mutual satisfaction.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 5th of December, we weighed, with a light breeze, but it being variable with frequent calms, we made little way. We kept turning out of the bay till the afternoon, and about ten o'clock we were suddenly becalmed, so that the ship would neither wear nor stay, and the tide or current setting strong, she drove towards land so fast, that before any measures could be taken for her security she was within a cable's length of the breakers: we had thirteen fathom water, but the ground was so foul that we did not dare to drop our anchor; the pinnace therefore was immediately hoisted out to take the ship in tow, and the men, sensible of their danger, exerted themselves to the utmost, and a faint breeze springing up off the land, we perceived, with unspeakable joy, that she made head way, after having been so near the shore that Tupia, who was not sensible of our hair's-breadth escape, was at this very time conversing with the people upon the beach, whose voices were distinctly heard, notwithstanding the roar of the breakers. We now thought all danger was over, but about an hour afterwards, just as the man in the chains had cried "seventeen fathom," the ship struck. The shock threw us all into the utmost consternation; Mr Banks, who had undressed himself and was stepping into bed, ran hastily up to the deck, and the man in the chains

S f 2

called

called out "five fathom;" by this time, the rock on which we had struck being to windward, the ship went off without having received the least damage, and the water very soon deepened to twenty fathom.

This rock lies half a mile W. N. W. of the northernmost or outermost island on the south-east side of the bay. We had light airs from the land, with calms, till nine o'clock the next morning, when we got out of the bay, and a breeze springing up at N. N. W. we stood out to sea.

This bay, as I have before observed, lies on the west side of Cape Bret, and I named it the BAY of ISLANDS, from the great number of islands which line its shores, and form several harbours equally safe and commodious, where there is room and depth for any number of shipping. That in which we lay is on the south-west side of the south-westernmost island, called MATUARO, on the south-east side of the bay. I have made no accurate survey of this bay, being discouraged by the time it would cost me; I thought also that it was sufficient to be able to affirm that it afforded us good anchorage, and refreshment of every kind. It was not the season for roots, but we had plenty of fish, most of which, however, we purchased of the natives, for we could catch very little ourselves either with net or line. When we shewed the natives our seine, which is such as the King's ships are generally furnished with, they laughed at it, and in triumph produced their own, which was, indeed, of an enormous size, and made of a kind of grass, which is very strong: it was five fathom deep, and, by the room it took up, it could not be less than three or four hundred fathom long. Fishing seems indeed to be the chief business of life in this part of the country; we saw about all their towns, a great number of nets, laid in heaps like hay-cocks, and covered with a thatch to keep them from the weather, and we scarcely entered a house where some of the people were not employed in making them. The fish we procured

the rock on
the ship went
age, and the
m.

the norther-
side of the
th calms, till
ot out of the
V. we stood

on the west
of ISLANDS,
e its shores,
d commodi-
y number of
e south-west

MATUARO,
made no ac-
ged by the
it was suf-
us good an-
was not the
sh, most of
ves, for we
net or line.
hich is such
with, they
their own,
and made
was five fa-
ould not be
g. Fishing
in this part
ns, a great
and cover-
eather, and
the people
sh we pro-
cured

cured here were sharks, sting-rays, sea-bream, mullet, mackrel, and some others.

The inhabitants in this bay are far more numerous than in any other part of the country that we had before visited; it did not appear to us that they were united under one head, and though their towns were fortified, they seemed to live together in perfect amity.

It is high water in this bay at the full and change of the moon, about eight o'clock, and the tide then rises from six to eight feet perpendicularly. It appears, from such observations as I was able to make of the tides upon the sea-coast, that the flood comes from the southward; and I have reason to think that there is a current which comes from the westward, and sets along the shore to the S. E. or S. S. E. as the land happens to lie.

On Thursday the 7th of December, at noon, Cape Bret bore S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant ten miles, and our latitude, by observation, was 34 d. 59 m. S. soon after we made several observations of the sun and moon, the result of which made our longitude 185 d. 36. m. W. The wind being against us, we had made but little way. In the afternoon, we stood in shore, and fetched close under the Cavalles, from which islands the main trends W. by N. several canoes put off and followed us, but a light breeze springing up, I did not chuse to wait for them. I kept standing to the N. N. W. and N. W. till the next morning ten o'clock, when I tacked and stood in for the shore, from which we were about five leagues distant. At noon, the westernmost land in sight bore W. by S. and was about four leagues distant. In the afternoon, we had a gentle breeze to the west, which in the evening came to the south, and continuing so all night, by day-light brought us pretty well in with the land, seven leagues to the westward of the Cavalles, where we found a deep bay running in S. W. by W. and W. S. W. the bottom of which we could but just see, and there the land appeared to be low and level. To this

this bay, which I called DOUBTLESS BAY, the entrance is formed by two points, which lie N. N. W. and E. S. E. and are five miles distant from each other. The wind not permitting us to look in here, we steered for the westernmost land in sight, which bore from us W. N. W. about three leagues, but before we got the length of it it fell calm.

While we lay becalmed, several canoes came off to us but the people having heard of our guns, it was not without great difficulty that they were persuaded to come under our stern: after having bought some of their cloaths, as well as their fish, we began to make enquiries concerning their country, and learnt, by the help of Tupia, that, at the distance of three days rowing in their canoes, at a place called MOORE-WHENNUA, the land would take a short turn to the southward, and from thence extend no more to the west. This place we concluded to be the land discovered by Tasman, which he called CAPE MARIA VAN DIEMEN, and finding these people so intelligent, we enquired farther, if they knew of any country besides their own: they answered, that they never had visited any other, but that their ancestors had told them, that to the N. W. by N. or N. N. W. there was a country of great extent, called ULIMAROA, to which some people had sailed in a very large canoe; that only part of them returned; and reported, that after a passage of a month they had seen a country where the people eat hogs. Tupia then enquired whether these adventurers brought any hogs with them when they returned; they said No: then, replied Tupia, your story is certainly false, for it cannot be believed that men who came back from an expedition without hogs, had ever visited a country where hogs were to be procured. It is however remarkable, notwithstanding the shrewdness of Tupia's objection, that when they mentioned hogs it was not by description but by name, calling them *Booah*, the name which is given them in the South-sea islands; but if the animal had been wholly unknown to them,

GE.

the entrance
 and E. S. E.
 The wind
 red for the
 W. N. W.
 length of it

me off to us
 , it was not
 persuaded to
 ht some of
 to make en-
 by the help
 s rowing in
 ENNUA, the
 d, and from
 place we con-
 n; which he
 finding these
 if they knew
 swered, that
 heir ancestors
 or N. N. W.
 ULIMAROA,
 large canoe;
 ted, that after
 try where the
 whether these
 when they re-
 a, your story
 hat men who
 ogs, had ever
 procured. It
 he shrewdness
 ntioned hogs.
 calling them
 the South-sea
 y unknown to
 them,

them, and they had had no communication with people to whom it was known, they could not possibly have been acquainted with the name.

From the 9th of December, in a range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape, to the 14th of January nothing material occurred.—At noon that day the north west extremity of the land in sight bore S. 63 W. and some high land, which had the appearance of an island lying under the main; bore S. S. E. distant five leagues. We were now in a bay, the bottom of which bearing south we could not see, though it was clear in that quarter. Our latitude by observation was 40 d. 27 m. S. longitude 184 d. 29 m. W. — At eight in the evening, we were within two leagues of the land which we had discovered in the morning, having run ten leagues since noon: the land then bore S. 63 W. now bore N. 59 W. at the distance of seven or eight leagues, and had the appearance of an island. Between this land and CAPE EGMONT lies the bay, the west side of which was our situation at this time, and the land here is of a considerable height, and diversified by hill and valley.

[Faint, mostly illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

Trans-

Matthew Birkley

Matthew Birkley

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound: Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain: Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants: Remarkable Melody of Birds: A Visit to a Heppah, and many other Particulars.

THE shore at this place seemed to form several bays, into one of which I proposed to carry the ship, which was become very foul, in order to careen her, and at the same time repair some defects, and recruit our wood and water.

With this view, I kept plying on and off all night, having from eighty to sixty-three fathom. At day-break the next morning, I stood for an inlet which runs in S. W. and at eight I got within the entrance, which may be known by a reef of rocks, stretching from the north-west point, and some rocky islands which lie off the south-east point. At nine o'clock, there being little wind, and what there was being variable, we were carried by the tide or current within two cables' length of the north-west shore, where we had fifty-four fathom water, but, by the help of our boats, we got clear. Just at this time we saw a sea-lion rise twice near the shore, the head of which exactly resembles that of the male which has been described in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage. We also saw some of the natives in a canoe cross the bay, and a village situated upon the point of an island which lies seven or eight miles within the entrance. At noon, we were the length of this island, but there being little wind, the boats were ordered ahead to tow. About one o'clock, we hauled close round the south-west end of the island; and the inha-

inhabitants of the village which was built upon it, were immediately up in arms. About two, we anchored in a very safe and convenient cove, on the north-west side of the bay, and facing the south-west end of the island, in eleven fathom water, with soft ground, and moored with the stream anchor.

We were about four long cannon shot distant from the village or Heppah, from which four canoes were immediately dispatched, as we imagined to reconnoitre, and, if they should find themselves able, to take us. The men were all well armed, and dressed nearly as they are represented in the figure published by Tasman; two corners of the cloth which they wrapped round the body were passed over the shoulders from behind, and being brought down to the upper edge of it before, were made fast to it just under the breast; but few, or none, had feathers in their hair. They rowed round the ship several times, with their usual tokens of menace and defiance, and at last began the assault by throwing some stones; Tupia expostulated with them, but apparently to very little purpose; and we began to fear that they would oblige us to fire at them, when a very old man in one of the boats expressed a desire of coming on board. We gladly encouraged him in his design, a rope was thrown into his canoe, and she was immediately alongside of the ship: the old man rose up, and prepared to come up the ship's side, upon which all the rest expostulated with great vehemence against the attempt, and at last laid hold of him, and held him back: he adhered, however, to his purpose with a calm but steady perseverance, and having at length disengaged himself, he came on board. We received him with all possible expressions of friendship and kindness, and after some time, dismissed him, with many presents to his companions. As soon as he was returned on board his canoe, the people in all the rest began to dance, but whether as a token of enmity or friendship we could not certainly determine, for we had seen them dance in a disposition both for peace and war. In a short

time, however, they retired to their fort, and soon after I went on shore, with most of the gentlemen, at the bottom of the cove, abreast of the ship.

We found a fine stream of excellent water, and wood in the greatest plenty, for the land here was one forest, of vast extent. As we brought the seine with us, we hauled it once or twice, and with such success that we caught near three hundred weight of fish of different sorts, which was equally distributed among the ship's company.

At day-break, while we were busy in careening the ship, three canoes came off to us, having on board above a hundred men, besides several of their women, which we were pleased to see, as, in general, it is a sign of peace; but they soon afterwards became very troublesome, and gave us reason to apprehend some mischief from them to the people that were in our boats alongside the ship. While we were in this situation, the long-boat was sent ashore with some water casks, and some of the canoes attempting to follow her, we found it necessary to intimidate them by firing some small shot: we were at such a distance that it was impossible to hurt them, yet our reproof had its effect, and they desisted from the pursuit. They had some fish in their canoes which they now offered to sell, and which, though it stunk, we consented to buy: for this purpose a man in a small boat was sent among them, and they traded for some time very fairly. At length, however, one of them, watching his opportunity, snatched at some paper which our market-man held in his hand, and missing it, immediately put himself in a posture of defence, flourishing his Patoo-patoo, and making show as if he was about to strike; some small shot were then fired at him from the ship, a few of which struck him upon the knee: this put an end to our trade, but the Indians still continued near the ship, rowing round her many times, and conversing with Tupia, chiefly concerning the traditions they had among them with respect to the antiquities of their country. To this sub-
ject

ject they were led by the enquiries which Tupia had been directed to make, whether they had ever seen such a vessel as ours, or had ever heard that any such had been upon their coast. These enquiries were all answered in the negative, so that tradition has preserved among them no memorial of Tasman; though, by an observation made this day, we find that we are only fifteen miles south of Murderer's bay, our latitude being 41 d. 5 m. 32 f. and Murderer's bay, according to his account, being 40 d. 50 m.

The women in these canoes, and some of the men, had a head-dress which we had not before seen. It consisted of a bunch of black feathers, made up in a round form, and tied upon the top of the head, which it entirely covered, and made it twice as high, to appearance, as it was in reality.

After dinner, I went in the pinnace with Mr Banks, Dr Solander, Tupia, and some others, into another cove, about two miles distant from that in which the ship lay: in our way we saw something floating upon the water, which we took for a dead seal, but upon rowing up to it, found it to be the body of a woman, which, to all appearance had been dead some days. We proceeded to our cove, where we went on shore, and found a small family of Indians, who appeared to be greatly terrified at our approach, and all ran away except one. A conversation between this person and Tupia soon brought back the rest, except an old man and a child, who still kept aloof, but stood peeping at us from the woods. Of these people, our curiosity naturally led us to enquire after the body of the woman which we had seen floating upon the water: and they acquainted us, by Tupia, that she was a relation, who had died a natural death; and that, according to their custom, they had tied a stone to the body, and thrown it into the sea, which stone, they supposed, had by some accident been disengaged.

This family, when we came on shore, was employed in dressing some provisions: the body of a dog was

at this time buried in their oven, and many provision baskets stood near it. Having cast our eyes carelessly into one of these, as we passed it, we saw two bones pretty cleanly picked, which did not seem to be the bones of a dog, and which, upon a nearer examination, we discovered to be those of a human body. At this sight we were struck with horror, though it was only a confirmation of what we had heard many times since we arrived upon this coast. As we could have no doubt but that the bones were human, neither could we have any doubt but that the flesh which covered them had been eaten. They were found in a provision basket; the flesh that remained appeared manifestly to have been dressed by fire, and in the gristles at the end were the marks of the teeth which had gnawed them: to put and end, however, to conjecture, founded upon circumstances and appearances, we directed Tupia to ask what bones they were; and the Indians, without the least hesitation, answered, the bones of a man: they were then asked what was become of the flesh, and they replied that they had eaten it: but, said Tupia, why did you not eat the body of the woman which we saw floating upon the water: the woman, said they, died of disease; besides, she was our relation, and we eat only the bodies of our enemies, who are killed in battle. Upon enquiry who the man was whose bones we had found, they told us, that about five days before a boat belonging to their enemies came into the bay, with many persons on board, and that this man was one of seven whom they had killed. Though stronger evidence of this horrid practice prevailing among the inhabitants of this coast will scarcely be required, we have still stronger to give. One of us asked if they had any human bones with the flesh remaining upon them, and upon their answering us that all had been eaten, we affected to disbelieve that the bones were human, and said, that they were the bones of a dog; upon which one of the Indians, with some eagerness, took hold of his own fore-arm, and thrusting it towards us, said, that the
bone

bone which Mr Banks held in his hand had belonged to that part of a human body; at the same time, to convince us that the flesh had been eaten, he took hold of his own arm with his teeth, and made shew of eating: he also bit and gnawed the bone which Mr Banks had taken, drawing it through his mouth, and shewing, by signs, that it had afforded a delicious repast; the bone was then returned to Mr Banks, and he brought it away with him. Among the persons of this family, there was a woman who had her arms, legs, and thighs frightfully cut in several places; and we were told that she had inflicted the wounds upon herself, in token of her grief for the loss of her husband, who had been lately killed and eaten by their enemies, who had come from some place to the eastward, towards which the Indians pointed.

The ship lay at the distance of somewhat less than a quarter of a mile from the shore, and in the morning we were awakened by the singing of birds: the number was incredible, and they seemed to strain their throats in emulation of each other. This wild melody was infinitely superior to any that we had ever heard of the same kind; it seemed to be like small bells most exquisitely tuned, and perhaps the distance, and the water between, might be no small advantage to the sound. Upon enquiry, we were informed that the birds here always began to sing about two hours after midnight, and continuing their music till sun-set, were, like our nightingales, silent the rest of the day. In the forenoon, a small canoe came off from the Indian village to the ship, and among those that were in it, was the old man who had first come on board at our arrival in the bay. As soon as it came alongside, Tupia renewed the conversation, that had passed the day before, concerning their practice of eating human flesh, during which they repeated what they had now told us already: but, said Tupia, where are the heads? do you eat them too? Of the heads, said the old man, we eat only the brains, and the next time I come I will bring some of them to

con-

convince you that what we have told you is truth. After some farther conversation between these people and Tupia, they told him that they expected their enemies to come very shortly, to revenge the death of the seven men whom they had killed and eaten.

On the 18th, the Indians were more quiet than usual, no canoe came near the ship, nor did we see one of them moving on the shore, their fishing, and other usual occupations being totally suspended. We thought they expected an attack on this day, and therefore attended more diligently to what passed on shore; but we saw nothing to gratify our curiosity.

After breakfast, we went out in the pinnace, to take a view of the bay, which was of vast extent, and consisted of numberless small harbours and coves, in every direction: we confined our excursion, however, to the western side, and the country being an impenetrable forest where we landed, we could see nothing worthy of notice: we killed, however, a good number of shaggs, which we saw sitting upon their nests in the trees, and which, whether roasted or stewed, we considered as very good provision. As we were returning, we saw a single man in a canoe fishing; we rowed up to him, and to our great surprize he took not the least notice of us, but even when we were alongside of him, continued to follow his occupation, without adverting to us any more than if we had been invisible. He did not, however, appear to be either sullen or stupid: we requested him to draw up his net, that we might examine it, and he readily complied: it was of a circular form, extended by two hoops, and about seven or eight feet in diameter: the top was open, and sea-ears were fastened to the bottom as a bait: this he let down so as to lie upon the ground, and when he thought fish enough were assembled over it, he drew it up by a very gentle and even motion, so that the fish rose with it, scarcely sensible that they were lifted, till they came very near the surface of the water, and then were brought out in the net by a sudden jerk. By this simple method he had caught
abun-

abundance of fish, and indeed they are so plenty in this bay, that the catching them requires neither much labour nor art.

This day, some of our people found in the skirts of the wood, near a hole or oven, three human hip bones, which they brought on board; a farther proof that these people eat human flesh: Mr Monkhouse, our Surgeon, also brought on board, from a place where he saw many deserted houses, the hair of a man's head, which he had found, among many other things, tied up to the branches of trees.

In the morning of the 19th, we set up the armourer's forge to repair the braces of the tiller, and other iron-work, all hands on board being still busy in careening, and other necessary operations about the vessel: this day, some Indians came on board from another part of the bay, where they said there was a town which we had not seen: they brought plenty of fish, which they sold for nails, having now acquired some notion of their use; and in this traffick no unfair practice was attempted.

In the morning of the 20th, our old man kept his promise, and brought on board four of the heads of the seven people who had been so much the subject of our enquiries: the hair and flesh were entire, but we perceived that the brains had been extracted; the flesh was soft, but had by some method been preserved from putrefaction, for it had no disagreeable smell. Mr Banks purchased one of them, but they sold it with great reluctance, and could not by any means be prevailed upon to part with a second; probably they may be preserved as trophies, like the scalps in America, and the jaw-bones in the islands of the South Seas. Upon examining the head which had been bought by Mr Banks, we perceived that it had received a blow upon the temples, which had fractured the skull. This day we made another excursion in the pinnace, to survey the bay, but we found no flat large enough for a potatoe garden, nor could we discover the least appearance of cultivation: we met not a single Indian, but found an excellent harbour; and

about

about eight o'clock in the evening returned on board the ship.

On the 21st, Mr Banks and Dr Solander went a fishing with hook and line, and caught an immense quantity every where upon the rocks, in between four and five fathom water: the seine was hauled every night, and seldom failed to supply the whole ship's company with as much fish as they could eat. This day all the people had leave to go on shore at the watering-place, and divert themselves as they should think proper.

In the morning of the 22d, I set out again in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, with a design to examine the head of the inlet, but after rowing about four or five leagues without so much as coming in sight of it, the wind being contrary, and the day half spent, we went on shore on the south east side, to try what might be discovered from the hills.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander immediately employed themselves in botanizing near the beach, and I, taking a seaman with me, ascended one of the hills: when I reached the summit, I found a view of the inlet intercepted by hills, which in that direction rose still higher, and which were rendered inaccessible by impenetrable woods; I was, however, abundantly compensated for my labour, for I saw the sea on the eastern side of the country, and a passage leading from it to that on the west, a little to the eastward of the entrance of the inlet where the ship now lay. The main land which lay on the south east side of this inlet, appeared to be a narrow ridge of very high hills, and to form part of the south west side of the streight; the land on the opposite side appeared to trend away east as far as the eye could reach; and to the south east there appeared to be an opening to the sea, which washed the the eastern coast: on the east side of the inlet also I saw some islands which I had before taken to be part of the main land. Having made this discovery, I descended the hill, and as soon as we had taken some refreshment, we set out on our return to the ship. In our way we examined the harbours and coves

coves which lie behind the islands that I had discovered from the hill; and in this rout we saw an old village, in which there were many houses that seemed to have been long deserted: we also saw another village which was inhabited, but the day was too far spent for us to visit it, and we, therefore, made the best of our way to the ship, which we reached between eight and nine o'clock at night.

The 23^d I employed in carrying on a survey of the place; and upon one of the islands where I landed, I saw many houses which seemed to have been long deserted, and no appearance of any inhabitant.

On the 24th, we went to visit our friends at the Hippah or village on the point of the island near the ship's station, who had come off to us on our first arrival in the bay. They received us with the utmost confidence and civility, shewing us every part of their habitations, which were commodious and neat. The island or rock on which this town is situated, is divided from the main by a breach or fissure so narrow, that a man might almost lean from one to the other: the sides of it are every where so steep as to render the artificial fortification of these people almost unnecessary: there was, however, one slight pallisade, and one small fighting-stage, towards that part of the rock where access was least difficult.

The people here brought us out several human bones, the flesh of which they had eaten, and offered them to sale; for the curiosity of those among us who had purchased them as memorials of the horrid practice which many, notwithstanding the reports of travellers, have professed not to believe, had rendered them a kind of article of trade. In one part of this village we observed, not without surprize, a cross exactly like that of a crucifix; it was adorned with feathers, and upon our enquiring for what purpose it had been set up, we were told that it was a monument for a man who was dead: we had before understood that their dead were not buried, but thrown into the sea; but to our enquiry how

the body of the man had been disposed of, to whose memory this cross had been erected, they refused to answer.

When we left these people, we went to the other end of the island, and there taking water, crossed over to the main, where we saw several houses, but no inhabitants, except a few in some straggling canoes, that seemed to be fishing. After viewing this place, we returned on board the ship to dinner.

During our visit to the Indians this day, Tupia being always of our party, they had been observed to be continually talking of guns, and shooting people: for this subject of their conversation we could not at all account; and it had so much engaged our attention, that we talked of it all the way back, and even after we got on board the ship: we had perplexed ourselves with various conjectures, which were all given up in their turn; but now we learnt, that on the 21st one of our officers, upon pretence of going out to fish, had rowed up to the Heppah, and that two or three canoes coming off towards his boat, his fears suggested that an attack was intended, in consequence of which three muskets were fired, one with small shot, and two with ball, at the Indians, who retired with the utmost precipitation, having probably come out with friendly intentions, for such their behaviour both before and afterwards expressed, and having no reason to expect such treatment from people who had always behaved to them not only with humanity, but kindness, and to whom they were not conscious of having given offence.

On the 25th I made another excursion along the coast, in the pinnace, towards the mouth of the inlet, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, and going on shore at a little cove, to shoot shags, we fell in with a large family of Indians, whose custom it is to disperse themselves among the different creeks and coves, where fish is to be procured in the greatest plenty, leaving a few only in the Heppah, to which the rest repair in times of danger. Some of these people came
out

Indians had told us, who visited us on the 19th: this, like that which we had seen before, was built upon a small island or rock, so difficult of access, that we gratified our curiosity at the risk of our necks. The Indians here also received us with open arms, carried us to every part of the place, and shewed us all that it contained: this town, like the other, consisted of between eighty and an hundred houses, and had only one fighting stage. We happened to have with us a few nails and ribands, and some paper, with which our guests were so gratified, that at our coming away they filled our boat with dried fish, of which we perceived they had laid up great quantities.

The 27th and 28th we spent in refitting the ship for the sea, fixing a transom for the tiller, getting stones on board to put into the bottom of the bread-room, to bring the ship more by the stern, in repairing the casks, and catching fish.

On the 29th, we received a visit from our old man, whose name we found to be TOPAA, and three other natives, with whom Tupia had much conversation. The old man told us, that one of the men who had been fired upon by the officer who had visited their Heppah, under pretence of fishing, was dead; but to my great comfort I afterwards discovered that this report was not true, and that if Topaa's discourses were taken literally, they would frequently lead us into mistakes. Mr Banks and Dr Solander were several times on shore during the last two or three days, not without success, but greatly circumscribed in their walks by climbers of a most luxuriant growth, which were so interwoven together, as to fill up the space between the trees about which they grew, and render the woods altogether impassable. This day also I went on shore again myself, upon the western point of the inlet, and from a hill of considerable height, I had a view of the coast to the N. W. The farthest land I could see in that quarter, was an island at the distance of about ten leagues, lying not far from the main: between this island and the place where I stood,

19th: this, upon a small gratified our ns here also very part of : this town, and an hun- stage. We libands, and o gratified, t with dried d up great

the ship for ng stones on om, to bring e casks, and

ur old man, three other onversation. ho had been eir Heppah, to my great port was not ken literally,

Mr Banks e during the but greatly a most lux- gether, as to which they impassable. f, upon the f considera- . W. The as an island ot far from ce where I stood,

stood, I discovered, close under the shore, several other islands, forming many bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for shipping. After I had set off the different points for my survey, I erected another pile of stones, in which I left a piece of silver coin, with some musket balls and beads, and a piece of an old pendant flying on the top. In my return to the ship, I made a visit to several of the natives, whom I saw along the shore, and purchased a small quantity of fish.

On the 30th, early in the morning, I sent a boat to one of the islands for celery, and while the people were gathering it, about twenty of the natives, men, women, and children, landed near some empty huts: as soon as they were on shore, five or six of the women sat down upon the ground together, and began to cut their legs, arms, and faces, with shells, and sharp pieces of talc or jasper, in a terrible manner. Our people understood that their husbands had lately been killed by their enemies; but while they were performing this horrid ceremony, the men set about repairing the huts, with the utmost negligence and unconcern.

The carpenter having prepared two posts to be left as memorials of our having visited this place, I ordered them to be inscribed with the ship's name, and the year and month; one of them I set up at the watering-place, hoisting the Union flag upon the top of it; and the other I carried over to the island that lies nearest to the sea, called by the natives MOTUARA. I went first to the village or Heppah, accompanied by Mr Monkhouse and Tupia, where I met with our old man, and told him and several others, by means of Tupia, that we were come to set up a mark upon the Island, in order to show to any other ship which should happen to come thither, that we had been there before. To this they readily consented, and promised that they never would pull it down: I then gave something to every one present; and to the old man I gave a silver threepence, dated 1736, and some spike nails, with the king's broad arrow cut deep upon them; things which I thought most

most likely to remain long among them : I then took the post to the highest part of the island, and, after fixing it firmly in the ground, I hoisted upon it the Union flag, and honoured this inlet with the name of **QUEEN CHARLOTTE'S SOUND**, at the same time taking formal possession of this and the adjacent country, in the name and for the use of his Majesty King George the Third. We then drank a bottle of wine to her Majesty's health, and gave the bottle to the old man who had attended us up the hill, and who was mightily delighted with his present.

While the post was setting up, we enquired of the old man concerning the passage into the eastern sea, the existence of which he confirmed ; and then asked him about the land to the S. W. of the strait, where we were then situated : this land, he said, consisted of two Whennuas or islands, which might be circumnavigated in a few days, and which he called **TOVY POENAMMOO** ; the literal translation of this word is, " the water of green talc : " and probably if we had understood him better, we should have found that Tovy Poenam-moo was the name of some particular place where they got the green talc or stone of which they make their ornaments and tools, and not a general name for the whole southern district : he said, there was also a third Whennua, on the east side of the strait, the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons : this he called **EAHEINOMAUWE** ; and to the land on the borders of the strait he gave the name of **TIERA WITTE**. Having set up our post, and procured this intelligence, we returned on board the ship, and brought the old man with us, who was attended by his canoe, in which, after dinner, he returned home.

On the 31st, having completed our wooding, and filled all our water casks, I sent out two parties, one to cut and make brooms, and another to catch fish. In the evening, we had a strong gale from the N. W. with such a heavy rain that our little wild musicians on shore suspended their song, which till now we had constant-ly

then took the
after fixing it
union flag, and
EEN CHAR-
g formal pos-
in the name
ge the Third.
esty's health,
d attended us
hted with his

quired of the
aftern sea, the
en asked him
ht, where we
nsisted of two
cumnavigated
VY POENAM-
is, "the water
d understood
ovy Poenam-
ce. where they
make their or-
e for the whole
third When-
circumnaviga-
s: this he call-
n the borders
ERA WITTE.
s intelligence,
ought the old
oe, in which,

wooding, and
parties, one to
atch fish. In
e N. W. with
ians on shore
had constant-
ly

ly heard during the night, with a pleasure which it was impossible to lose without regret.

On the 1st of February, the gale increased to a storm, with heavy gusts from the high land, one of which broke the hawser, that we had fastened to the shore, and obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards midnight, the gale became more moderate, but the rain continued with such violence, that the brook which had supplied us with water overflowed its banks, and carried away ten small casks which had been left there full of water, and notwithstanding we searched the whole cove, we could never recover one of them.

On the 3d, as I intended to sail the first opportunity, I went over to the Heppah on the east side of the Sound, and purchased a considerable quantity of split and half-dried fish, for sea stores. The people here confirmed all that the old man had told us concerning the freight and the country, and about noon I took leave of them: some of them seemed to be sorry, and others glad, that we were going: the fish which I had bought they sold freely, but there were some who shewed manifest signs of disapprobation. As we returned to the ship, some of us made an excursion along the shore to the northward, to traffick with the natives for a farther supply of fish; in which, however, they had no great success. In the evening, we got every thing off from the shore, as I intended to sail in the morning, but the wind would not permit.

On the 4th, while we were waiting for a wind, we amused ourselves by fishing, and gathering shells and seeds of various kinds: and early in the morning of the 5th, we cast off the hawser, hove short on the bower, and carried the kedg anchor out in order to warp the ship out of the cove, which having done about two o'clock in the afternoon, we hove up the anchor and got under sail; but the wind soon failing, we were obliged to come to an anchor again a little above Motuara. When we were under sail our old man Topaa came on board to take his leave of us, and as we were still

still desirous of making farther enquiries whether any memory of Tasman had been preserved among these people, Tupia was directed to ask him whether he had ever heard that such a vessel as ours had before visited the country. To this he replied in the negative, but said, that his ancestors had told him, there had once come to this place, a small vessel, from a distant country, called Ulimaroa. in which were four men, who, upon their coming on shore, were all killed: upon being asked where this distant land lay, he pointed to the northward.

Of Ulimaroa we had heard something before, from the people about the Bay of Islands, who said that their ancestors had visited it; and Tupia had also talked to us of Ulimaroa, concerning which he had some confused traditionary notions, not very different from those of our old man, so that we could draw no certain conclusion from the accounts of either.

Soon after the ship came to an anchor the second time, Mr Banks and Dr Solander went on shore, to see if any gleanings of natural knowledge remained, and by accident fell in with the most agreeable Indian family they had seen, which afforded them a better opportunity of remarking the personal subordination among these people, than had before offered. The principal persons were a widow, and a pretty boy about ten years old: the widow was mourning for her husband with tears of blood, according to their custom, and the child by the death of its father, was become proprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. The mother and the son were sitting upon mats, and the rest of the family, to the number of sixteen or seventeen, of both sexes, sat round them in the open air, for they did not appear to have any house, or other shelter from the weather, the inclemencies of which, custom has probably enabled them to endure without any lasting inconvenience. Their whole behaviour was affable, obliging, and unsuspecting; they presented each person with fish, and a brand of fire to dress it, and pressed them many times

to stay till the morning, which they would certainly have done if they had not expected the ship to fail, greatly regretting that they had not become acquainted with them sooner, as they made no doubt but that more knowledge of the manners and disposition of the inhabitants of this country would have been obtained from them in a day, than they had yet been able to acquire during our whole stay upon the coast.

On the 6th, about six o'clock in the morning, a light breeze sprung up at north, and we again got under sail, but the wind proving variable, we reached no farther than just without Motuara; in the afternoon, however, a more steady gale at N. by W. set us clear of the Sound, which I shall now describe.

The entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound is situated in latitude 41 d. S. longitude 184 d. 45 m. W. and near the middle of the south-west side of the strait in which it lies. The land of the south-east head of the Sound, called by the natives KOAMAROO, off which lie two small islands and some rocks, makes the narrowest part of the strait. From the north-west head a reef of rocks runs out about two miles, in the direction of N. E. by N. part of which is above the water, and part below. By this account of the heads, the Sound will be sufficiently known: at the entrance, it is three leagues broad, and lies S. W. by S. S. W. and W. S. W. at least ten leagues, and is a collection of some of the finest harbours in the world. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay, is called by the natives TOTARRANUE: the harbour itself, which I called SHIP COVE, is not inferior to any in the Sound, either for convenience or safety: it lies on the west side of the sound, and is the southermost of three coves, that are situated within the island of Motuara, which bears east of it. Ship Cove may be entered, either between Motuara and a long island, called by the natives HAMOTE, or between Motuara and the western shore. In the last of these channels are two ledges of rocks, three

fathom under water, which may easily be known by the sea-weed that grows upon them. In sailing either in or out of the Sound, with little wind, attention must be had to the tides, which flow about nine or ten o'clock at the full and change of the moon, and rise and fall between seven and eight feet perpendicularly. The flood comes in through the streight from the S. E. and sets strongly over upon the north west head, and the reef that lies off it: the ebb sets with still greater rapidity to the S. E. over upon the rocks and islands that lie off the south east head. The variation of the compass we found from good observation to be 13 d. 5 m. E.

The land about this sound, which is of such a height that we saw it at the distance of twenty leagues, consists wholly of high hills and deep vallies, well stored with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all purposes except masts, for which it is too hard and heavy. The sea abounds with a variety of fish, so that without going out of the cove where we lay, we caught every day, with the seine and hooks and lines, a quantity sufficient to serve the whole ship's company: and along the shore we found plenty of shags and a few other species of wild fowl, which those who have long lived upon salt provisions will not think despicable food.

The number of inhabitants scarcely exceeds four hundred, and they live dispersed along the shores, where their food, consisting of fish and fern roots, is most easily procured: for we saw no cultivated ground. Upon any appearance of danger, they retire to their Heppahs, or forts; in this situation we found them, and in this situation they continued for some time after our arrival. In comparison of the inhabitants of other parts of this country, they are poor, and their canoes are without ornament: the little traffic we had with them was wholly for fish, and indeed they had scarcely any thing else to dispose of. They seemed, however, to have some knowledge of iron, which the inhabitants of some other parts had not; for they willingly took nails for their fish, and
some-

sometimes seemed to prefer it to every thing else that we could offer, which had not always been the case. They were at first very fond of paper; but when they found that it was spoiled by being wet, they would not take it: neither did they set much value upon the cloth of Otaheite; but English broad cloth, and red kersey, were in high estimation; which shewed that they had sense enough to appreciate the commodities which we offered by their use; which is more than could be said of some of their neighbours, who made a much better appearance. Their dress has been mentioned already, particularly their large round head-dresses of feathers; which were far from being unbecoming.

As soon as we got out of the Sound, I stood over to the eastward, in order to get the streight well open before the tide of ebb came on. At seven in the evening, the two small islands which lie off Cape Koarmaroo, the south-east head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, bore east, distant about four miles: at this time it was nearly calm, and the tide of ebb setting out, we were, in a very short time, carried by the rapidity of the stream close upon one of the islands, which was a rock rising almost perpendicularly out of the sea: we perceived our danger increase every moment, and had but one expedient to prevent our being dashed to pieces, the success of which a few minutes would determine. We were now within little more than a cable's length of the rock, and had more than seventy-five fathom water; but upon dropping an anchor, and veering about one hundred and fifty fathom of cable, the ship was happily brought up: this, however, would not have saved us, if the tide which set S. by E. had not, upon meeting with the island, changed its direction to S. E. and carried us beyond the first point. In this situation, we were not above two cable's length from the rocks; and here we remained in the strength of the tide, which set to the S. E. after the rate of at least five miles an hour, from a little after seven till near midnight, when the tide abated, and we began to heave. By three in the morning the anchor

was at the bows, and having a light breeze at N. W. we made fail for the eastern shore: but the tide being against us, we made but little way: the wind however afterwards freshened, and came to N. and N. E. with which, and the tide of ebb, we were in a short time hurried through the narrowest part of the streight, and then stood away for the southermost land we had in sight, which bore from us S. by W. Over this land appeared a mountain of stupendous height, which was covered with snow.

The narrowest part of the streight, through which we had been driven with such rapidity, lies between Cape Tierawitte, on the coast of Eaheinomauwe, and Cape Koamaroo; the distance between them I judged to be between four and five leagues, and notwithstanding the tide, now its strength is known, may be passed without much danger. It is however safest to keep on the north-east shore, for on that side there appeared to be nothing to fear; but on the other shore there are not only the islands and rocks which lie off Cape Koamaroo, but a reef of rocks stretching from these islands six or seven miles to the southward, at the distance of two or three miles from the shore, which I had discovered from the hill when I took my second view of the streight from the east to the western sea.

About nine leagues north from Cape Tierawitte, and under the same shore, is a high and remarkable island which may be distinctly seen from Queen Charlotte's Sound, from which it is distant about six or seven leagues. This island, which was noticed when we passed it on the 14th of January, I have called ENTRY ISLE.

On the east side of Cape Tierawitte, the land trends away S. E. by E. about eight leagues, where it ends in a point, and is the southermost land on Eatheinomauwe. To this point I have given the name of CAPE PALLISER, in honour of my worthy friend Captain Palliser. It lies in latitude 41 d. 34 m. S. longitude 183 d. 58 m. W. and bore from us this day at noon S. 79 E. distant about thirteen leagues, the ship being then in the latitude
of

t N. W. we
 tide being
 and however
 N. E. with
 rt time hur-
 ht, and then
 ad in fight,
 ad appeared
 was covered

ugh which
 ies between
 nauwe, and
 em I judged
 withstanding
 passed with-
 keep on the
 eared to be
 here are not
 e Koainaroo,
 lands six or
 of two or
 covered from
 treight from

rawitte, and
 kable island
 Charlotte's
 ix or seven
 en we passed
 TRY ISLE.
 land trends
 it ends in a
 inomauwe.
 PE PALLI-
 ain Palliser.
 83 d. 58 m.
 E. distant
 the latitude
 of

of 41 d. 27 m. S. Koamaroo at the same time bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant seven or eight leagues.

The southermost land in sight bore S. 16 W. and the snowy mountain S. W. At this time we were about three leagues from the shore, and abreast of a deep bay or inlet, to which I gave the name of CLOUDY BAY, and at the bottom of which there appeared low land covered with tall trees.

At three o'clock in the afternoon we were abreast of the southermost point of the land that we had seen at noon, which I called CAPE CAMPBELL; it lies S. by W. distant between twelve and thirteen leagues from Cape Koamaroo, in latitude 41 d. 44 m. S. longitude 183 d. 45 m. W. and with Cape Palliser forms the southern entrance of the streight, the distance between them being between thirteen and fourteen leagues W. by S. and E. by N.

From this Cape we steered along the shore S. W. by S. till eight o'clock in the evening, when the wind died away. About half an hour afterwards, however, a fresh breeze sprung up at S. W. and I put the ship right before it. My reason for this, was a notion which some of the officers had just started, that Eahienomauwe was not an island, and that the land might stretch away to the S. E. from between Cape Turnagain and Cape Palliser, there being a space of between twelve and fifteen leagues that we had not seen. I had, indeed, the strongest conviction that they were mistaken, not only from what I had seen the first time I discovered the streight, but from many other concurrent testimonies that the land in question was an island; but being resolved to leave no possibility of doubt with respect to an object of such importance, I took the opportunity of the wind's shifting, to stand eastward, and accordingly steered N. E. by E. all the night. At nine o'clock in the morning we were abreast of Cape Palliser, and found the land trend away N. E. towards Cape Turnagain, which I reckoned to be distant about twenty-six leagues:
 how-

however, as the weather was hazy, so as to prevent our seeing above four or five leagues, I still kept standing to the N. E. with a light breeze at south; and at noon Cape Palliser bore N. 72 W. distant about three leagues.

About three o'clock in the afternoon, three canoes came up to the ship with between thirty and forty people on board, who had been pulling after us with great labour and perseverance for some time: they appeared to be more cleanly, and a better class, than any we had met with since we left the Bay of Islands, and their canoes were also distinguished by the same ornaments which we had seen upon the northerly part of the coast. They came on board with very little invitation; and their behaviour was courteous and friendly: upon receiving presents from us, they made us presents in return, which had not been done by any of the natives that we had seen before. We soon perceived that our guests had heard of us, for as soon as they came on board, they asked for *Whow*, the name by which nails were known among the people with whom we had trafficked: but though they had heard of nails, it was plain they had seen none; for when nails were given them, they asked Tupia what they were. The term *Whow*, indeed, conveyed to them the idea not of their quality, but only of their use; for it is the same by which they distinguish a tool, commonly made of bone, which they use both as an augur and a chissel. However, their knowing that we had *Whow* to sell, was a proof that their connections extended as far north as Cape Kidnappers, which was distant no less than forty-five leagues; for that was the southermost place on this side the coast where we had had any traffic with the natives. It is also probable, that the little knowledge which the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound had of iron, they obtained from their neighbours at Tierawitte; for we had no reason to think that the inhabitants of any part of this coast had the least knowledge

prevent our
 ept standing
 th; and at
 about three
 three canoes
 nd forty peo-
 us with great
 ey appeared
 any we had
 and their ca-
 e ornaments
 t of the coast.
 vitation; and
 ly: upon re-
 presents in re-
 of the natives
 eived that our
 ey came on
 y which nails
 hom we had
 nails, it was
 s were given
 e. The term
 a not of their
 the same by
 made of bone,
 iffel. How-
 to fell, was a
 far north as
 fs than forty-
 place on this
 affic with the
 e knowledge
 's Sound had
 ours at Tiera-
 at the inhabi-
 t knowledge
 of

of iron or its use before we came among them, especially as when it was first offered they seemed to disregard it as of no value. We thought it probable, that we were now once more in the territories of Teratu; but upon enquiring of these people, they said that he was not their King. After a short time, they went away, much gratified with the presents that we had made them; and we pursued our course along the shore to the N. E. till eleven o'clock the next morning. About this time, the weather happening to clear up, we saw Cape Turnagain, bearing N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. at the distance of about seven leagues: I then called the officers upon deck, and asked them, whether they were not now satisfied, that Eahienomauwe was an island; they readily answered in the affirmative, and all doubts being now removed, we hauled our wind to the eastward.

Range

Range from Cape Turnagain southward along the eastern Coast of Poenamoo, round Cape South, and back to the western Entrance of Cook's Streight, which completed the Circumnavigation of this Country; with a Description of the Coast, and of Admiralty Bay: The Departure from New Zealand, and various Particulars.

AT four o'clock in the afternoon of Friday the 9th of February, having tacked, we stood S. W. and continued to make sail to the southward till sunset on the 11th, when a fresh breeze at N. E. had carried us back again the length of Cape Palliser, of which, as the weather was clear, we had a good view. Between the foot of the high land and the sea there is a low flat border, off which there are some rocks that appeared above water. Between this Cape and Cape Turnagain, the land near the shore is, in many places, low and flat, and has a green and pleasant appearance; but farther from the sea it rises into hills. The land between Cape Palliser and Cape Tierawitte is high and makes in table-points; it also seemed to us to form two bays, but we were at too great a distance from this part of the coast, to judge accurately from appearances. The wind having been variable, with calms, we had advanced no farther by the 12th at noon than latitude 41 d. 52 m. Cape Palliser then bearing north, distant about five leagues; and the snowy mountain S. 83 W.

At noon on the 13th, we found ourselves in the latitude of 42 d. 2 m. S. Cape Palliser bearing N. 20 E. distant eight leagues. In the afternoon, a fresh gale sprung up at N. E. and we steered S. W. by W. for the southernmost land in sight, which at sunset bore from us S. 74 W. At this time the variation, was 15 d. 4 m. E.

At

At eight o'clock in the morning of the 14th, having run one and twenty leagues S. 58° W. since the preceding noon, it fell calm. We were then abreast of the snowy mountain which bore from us N. W. and in this direction lay behind a mountainous ridge of nearly the same height, which rises directly from the sea, and runs parallel with the shore, which lies N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. The north-west end of the ridge rises inland, not far from Cape Campbell; and both the mountain and the ridge are distinctly seen as well from Cape Koamaroo as Cape Palliser: from Koamaroo they are distant two and twenty leagues S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and from Cape Palliser thirty leagues W. S. W. and are of a height sufficient to be seen at a much greater distance. At noon this day, we were in latitude 42 d. 34 m. S. The southernmost land in sight bore S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and some low land that appeared like an island, and lay close under the foot of the ridge, bore N. W. by N about five or six leagues.

In the afternoon, when Mr Banks was out in the boat a-shooting, we saw, with our glasses, four double canoes, having on board fifty-seven men, put off from that shore, and make towards him: we immediately made signals for him to come on board; but the ship, with respect to him, being right in the wake of the fun, he did not see them. We were at a considerable distance from the shore, and he was at a considerable distance from the ship, which was between him and the shore; so that, it being a dead calm, I began to be in some pain for him, fearing that he might not see the canoes time enough to reach the ship before they should get up with him: soon after, however, we saw his boat in motion, and had the pleasure to take him on board before the Indians came up, who probably had not seen him, as their attention seemed to be wholly fixed upon the ship. They came within about a stone's cast, and then stopped gazing at us with a look of vacant astonishment: Tupia exerted all his eloquence to prevail upon them to come nearer, but without any effect.

After surveying us for some time, they left us, and made towards the shore; but had not measured more than half the distance between that and the ship before it was dark. We imagined that these people had heard nothing of us, and could not but remark the different behaviour and dispositions of the inhabitants of the different parts of this coast upon their first approaching the vessel. These kept aloof with a mixture of timidity and wonder; others had immediately commenced hostilities, by pelting us with stones: the gentleman whom we had found alone, fishing in his boat, seemed to think us entirely unworthy his notice; and some, almost without invitation, had come on board with an air of perfect confidence and good-will. From the behaviour of our last visitors, I gave the land from which they had put off, and which, as I have before observed, had the appearance of an island, the name of LOOKER'S-ON.

At eight o'clock in the evening, a breeze sprung up at S. S. W. with which I stretched off south-east, because some on board thought they saw land in that quarter. In this course we continued till six o'clock the next morning, when we had run eleven leagues, but saw no land, except that which we had left. Having stood to the S. E. with a light breeze, which veered from the west to the north, till noon, our latitude by observation was 42 d. 56 m. S. and the high land that we were abreast of the preceding noon bore N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. In the afternoon we had a light breeze at N. E. with which we steered west, edging in for the land, which was distant about eight leagues. At seven in the evening, we were about six leagues from the shore, and the southermost extremity of the land in sight bore W. S. W.

At day-break on the 16th, we discovered land bearing S. by W. and seemingly detached from the coast we were upon. About eight, a breeze sprung up, at N. by E. and we steered directly for it. At noon, we were in latitude 43 d. 19 m. S. the peak on the snowy mountain bore N. 20 E. distant twenty-seven leagues; the

the southern extremity of the land we could see bore west, and the land which had been discovered in the morning appeared like an island extending from S. S. W. to S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant about eight leagues. In the afternoon, we stood to the southward of it, with a fresh breeze at north: at eight in the evening, we had run eleven leagues, and the land then extended from S. W. by W. to N. by W. We were then distant about three or four leagues from the nearest shore, and in this situation had fifty fathom water, with a fine sandy bottom. The variation of the compass by this morning's amplitude was 14 d. 39 m. E.

At sun-rise, the next morning, our opinion that the land we had been standing for was an island, was confirmed, by our seeing part of the land of Tovy Poenam-moo open to the westward of it, extending as far as W. by S. At eight in the morning, the extremes of the island bore N. 76 W. and N. N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. and an opening near the south point, which had the appearance of a bay or harbour, N. 20 W. distant between three and four leagues: in this situation we had thirty-eight fathom water with a brown sandy bottom.

This island, which I named after Mr Banks, lies about five leagues from the coast of Tovy Poenam-moo; the south point bears S. 21 W. from the highest peak on the snowy mountain, and lies in latitude 43 d. 32 m. S. and in longitude 186 d. 30 m. W. by an observation of the sun and moon which was made this morning: it is of a circular figure, and about twenty-four leagues in compass: it is sufficiently high to be seen at the distance of twelve or fifteen leagues, and the land has a broken irregular surface, with the appearance rather of barrenness than fertility; yet it was inhabited, for we saw smoke in one place, and a few straggling natives in another.

When this island was first discovered in the direction of S. by W. some persons on board were of opinion that they also saw land bearing S. S. E. and S. E. by E. I was myself upon the deck at the time, and told them,

that in my opinion it was no more than a cloud, and that as the sun rose it would dissipate and vanish. However, as I was determined to leave no subject for disputation which experiment could remove, I ordered the ship to be wore, and steered E. S. E. by compass, in the direction which the land was said to bear from us at that time. At noon we were in latitude 44 d. 7 m. S. the south point of Banks's Island bearing north, distant five leagues. By seven o'clock at night we had run eight and twenty miles, when seeing no land, nor any signs of any, but that which we had left, we bore away S. by W. and continued upon that course till the next day at noon, when we were in latitude 45 d. 16 m. the south point of Banks's Island bearing N. 6 d. 30 m. W. distant twenty-eight leagues. The variation by the azimuth this morning was 15 d. 30 m. E. As no signs of land had yet appeared to the southward, and as I thought that we had stood far enough in that direction to weather all the land we had left, judging from the report of the natives in Queen Charlotte's Sound, I hauled to the westward.

We had a moderate breeze at N. N. W. and N. till eight in the evening, when it became unsettled; and at ten fixed at south: during the night, it blew with such violence that it brought us under our close reefed topsails. At eight the next morning, having run twenty-eight leagues upon a W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. course, and judging ourselves to be to the westward of the land of Tovy Poenammoo, we bore away N. W. with a fresh gale at south. At ten, having run eleven miles upon this course, we saw land extending from the S. W. to the N. W. at the distance of about ten leagues, which we hauled up for. At noon, our latitude by observation was 44 d. 38 m. the south-east point of Banks's Island bore N. 58 d. 30 m. E. distant thirty leagues, and the main body of the land in sight W. by N. A head sea prevented us from making much way to the southward; at seven in the evening the extremes of the land stretched from S. W. by S. to N. by W. and at six leagues from the shore we had
thirty-

thirty-two fathom water. At four o'clock the next morning, we stood in for the shore W. by S. and during a course of four leagues, our depth of water was from thirty-two to thirteen fathom. When it was thirteen fathom we were but three miles distant from the shore, and therefore stood off; its direction is here nearly N. and S. The surface, to the distance of about five miles from the sea, is low and flat; but it then rises into hills of a considerable height. It appeared to be totally barren, and we saw no signs of its being inhabited. Our latitude, at noon, was 44 d. 44 m. and the longitude which we made from Banks's Island to this place was 2 d. 22 m. W. During the last twenty-four hours, though we carried as much sail as the ship would bear, we were driven three leagues to the leeward.

We continued to stand off and on all this day and the next, keeping at the distance of between four and twelve leagues from the shore, and having water from thirty-five to fifty-three fathom. On the 22d, at noon, we had no observation, but by the land judged ourselves to be about three leagues farther north than we had been the day before. At sun-set, the weather, which had been hazy, clearing up, we saw a mountain which rose in a high peak, bearing N. W. by N. and at the same time, we saw the land more distinctly than before, extending from N. to S. W. by S. which, at some distance within the coast, had a lofty and mountainous appearance. We soon found that the accounts which had been given us by the Indians in Queen Charlotte's Sound of the land to the southward were not true; for they had told us that it might be circumnavigated in four days.

On the 23d, having a hollow swell from the S. E. and expecting wind from the same quarter, we kept plying between seven and fifteen leagues from the shore, having from seventy to forty-four fathom. At noon, our latitude by observation was 44 d. 40 m. S. and our longitude from Banks's Island 1 d. 31 m. W. From this time to six in the evening it was calm; but a light breeze
then

then springing up at E. N. E. we steered S. S. E. all night, edging off from the land, the hollow swell still continuing; our depth of water was from sixty to seventy-five fathom. While we were becalmed, Mr Banks, being out in the boat, shot two Port Egmont hens, which were in every respect the same as those that are found in great numbers upon the island of Faro, and were the first of the kind we had seen upon this coast, though we fell in with some a few days before we made land.

At day-break, the wind freshened, and before noon we had a strong gale at N. N. E. At eight in the morning we saw the land extending as far as S. W. by S. and steered directly for it. At noon, we were in latitude 45 d. 22 m. S. and the land, which now stretched from S. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. to N. N. W. appeared to be rudely diversified by hill and valley. In the afternoon, we steered S. W. by S. and S. W. edging in for the land with a fresh gale at north; but though we were at no great distance, the weather was so hazy that we could see nothing distinctly upon it, except a ridge of high hills lying not far from the sea, and parallel to the coast, which in this place stretches S. by W. and N. by E. and seemed to end in a high bluff point to the southward. By eight in the evening we were abreast of this point; but it being then dark, and I not knowing which way the land trended, we brought to for the night. At this time, the point bore west, and was distant about five miles; our depth of water was thirty-seven fathom, and the bottom consisted of small pebbles.

At day-break, having made sail, the point bore north, distant three leagues, and we now found that the land trended from it S. W. by W. as far as we could see. This point I named CAPE SAUNDERS, in honour of Sir Charles. Our latitude was 45 d. 35 m. S. and longitude 189 d. 4 m. W. By the latitude, and the angles that are made by the coast, this point will be sufficiently known; there is however, about three or four leagues to the south west of it, and very near the shore, a remarkable

S. S. E. all
 low swell fill
 sixty to seven-
 l, Mr Banks,
 gmont hens,
 those that are
 of Faro, and
 on this coast,
 fore we made

before noon
 in the morn-
 W. by S. and
 re in latitude
 stretched from
 udely diverli-
 we steered S.
 l with a fresh
 great distance,
 e nothing dis-
 lying not far
 which in this
 seemed to end
 y eight in the
 it being then
 and trended,
 me, the point
 s; our depth
 bottom con-

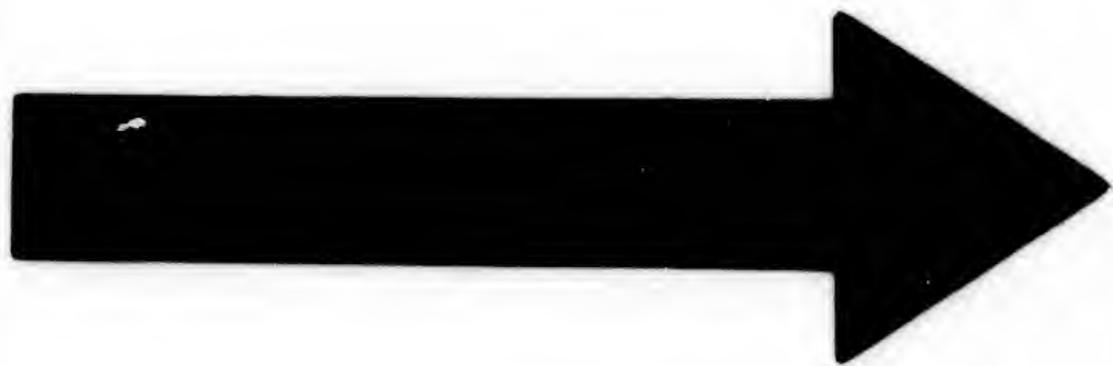
at bore north,
 that the land
 we could see,
 in honour of
 S. and lon-
 nd the angles
 be sufficiently
 four leagues
 shore, a re-
 markable

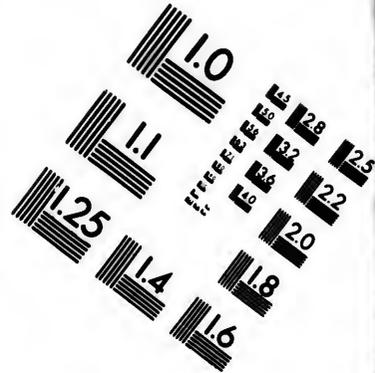
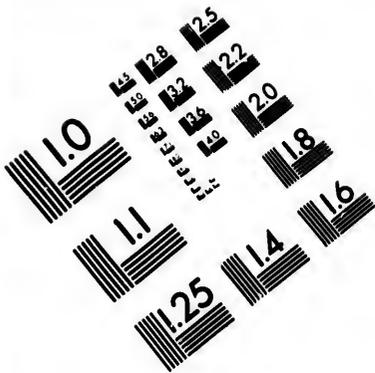
markable saddle-hill, which is a good direction to it on that quarter. From one league to four leagues north of Cape Saunders, the shore forms two or three bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage, and effectual shelter from the S. W. westerly, and N. westerly winds; but my desire of getting to the southward, in order to ascertain whether this country was an island or a continent, prevented my putting into any of them.

We kept at a small distance from the shore all this morning, with the wind at S. W. and had a very distinct view it: it is of a moderate height, and the surface is broken by many hills, which are green and woody; but we saw no appearance of inhabitants. At noon, Cape Saunders bore N. 30 W. distant about four leagues. We had variable winds and calms till five o'clock in the evening, when it fixed at W. S. W. and soon blew so hard that it put us past our topsails, and split the foresail all to pieces: after getting another to the yard, we continued to stand to the southward under two courses; and at six the next morning, the southernmost land in sight bore W. by N. and Cape Saunders N. by W. distant eight leagues: at noon it bore N. 20 W. fourteen leagues; and our latitude by observation was 46 d. 36 m. The gale continued, with heavy squalls and a large hollow sea all the afternoon; and at seven in the evening, we lay to under our foresail, with the ship's head to the southward: at noon on the 27th our latitude was 46 d. 54 m. and our longitude from Cape Saunders 1 d. 24 m. E.

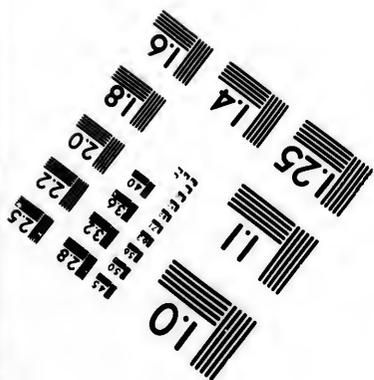
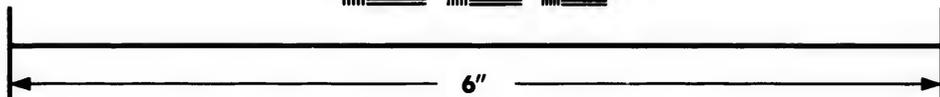
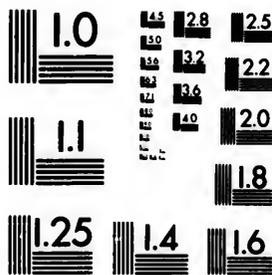
At seven in the evening, we made sail under our courses; and at eight the next morning set the topsails close reefed. At noon, our latitude was 47 d. 34 m. and our longitude east from Cape Saunders 2 d. 10 m. At this time, we wore and stood to the northward: in the afternoon, we found the variation to be 16 d. 34 m. E. At eight in the evening, we tacked and stood to the southward, with the wind at west.

At noon on the 1st of March, our latitude by account was 47 d. 52 m. and our longitude from Cape Saunders





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

12 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

Saunders 1 d. 8 m. E. We stood to the southward till half an hour past three in the afternoon; and then, being in latitude 48 d. S. and longitude 188 d. W. and seeing no appearance of land, we tacked and stood to the northward, having a large swell from the S. W. by W. At noon the next day, our latitude was 46 d. 42 m. S. and Cape Saunders bore N. 46 W. distant eighty-six miles. The south-west swell continuing till the 3d, confirmed our opinion, that there was no land in that quarter. At four in the afternoon, we stood to the westward with all the sail we could make. In the morning of the 4th, we found the variation to be 16 d. 16 m. E. This day we saw some whales and seals, as we had done several times after our having passed the streight; but we saw no seal while we were upon the coast of Eahienomauwe. We sounded both in the night and this morning, but had no ground with one hundred and fifty fathom. At noon we saw Cape Saunders bearing N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and our latitude by observation was 46 d. 31 m. S. At half an hour past one o'clock, we saw land bearing W. by S. which we steered for, and before it was dark were within three or four miles of it: during the whole night we saw fires upon it, and at seven in the morning were within about three leagues of the shore, which appeared to be high, but level. At three o'clock in the afternoon, we saw the land extending from N. E. by N. to N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and soon after we discovered some low land, which appeared like an island, bearing S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. We continued our course to the W. by S. and in two hours we saw high land over the low land, extending to the southward as S. W. but it did not appear to be joined to the land to the northward, so that there is either water, a deep bay, or low land between them.

At noon on the 6th, we were nearly in the same situation as at noon on the day before: in the afternoon we found the variation, by several azimuths and the amplitude, to be 15 d. 10 m. E. On the 7th at noon, we were in latitude 47 d. 6 m. S. and had made twelve

miles

*Matthew Burley, Secy. Navy
November 8-1796*

Southward till
and then, be-
8 d. W. and
and stood to
the S. W. by
le was 46 d.
6 W. distant
continuing till
was no land
, we stood to
make. In the
on to be 16 d.
and seals, as
ng passed the
ere upon the
a in the night
with one hun-
Cape Saun-
y observation
one o'clock,
e steered for,
or four miles
upon it, and
about three
be high, but
we saw the
W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and
which appear-
continued our
we saw high
outhward as
o the land to
, a deep bay,
the same situ-
the afternoon
ths and the
7th at noon,
made twelve
miles

miles easting during the last twenty-four hours. We stood to the westward the remainder of this day, and all the next till sun-set, when the extremes of the land bore from N. by E. to W. distant about seven or eight leagues: in this situation our depth of water was fifty-five fathom, and the variation, by amplitude, 16 d. 29 m. E. The wind now veered from the N. to the W. and as we had fine weather, and moonlight, we kept standing close upon the wind to the S. W. all night. At four in the morning, we had sixty fathom water; and at day-light, we discovered under our bow a ledge of rocks, extending from S. by W. to W. by S. upon which the sea broke very high: they were not more than three quarters of a mile distant, yet we had five and forty fathom water. As the wind was at N. W. we could not now weather them, and as I was unwilling to run to leeward, I tacked and made a trip to the eastward: the wind, however, soon after coming to the northward, enabled us to get clear of all. Our soundings, while we were passing within the ledge, were from thirty-five to forty-seven fathom, with a rocky bottom.

This ledge lies S. E. six leagues from the southermost part of the land, and S. E. by E. from some remarkable hills which stand near the shore: about three leagues to the northward of it, there is another ledge which lies full three leagues from the shore, and on which the sea broke in a dreadful surf. As we passed these rocks to the north in the night, and discovered the others under our bow at break of day, it is manifest that our danger was imminent, and our escape critical in the highest degree: from the situation of these rocks, so well adapted to catch unwary strangers, I called them the TRAPS. Our latitude at noon was 47 d. 26 m. S. The land in sight, which had the appearance of an island, extended from N. E. by N. to N. W. by W. and seemed to be about five leagues distant from the main; the eastermost ledge of rocks bore S. S. E. distant one league and an half, and the northermost N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about

three leagues. This land is high and barren, with nothing upon it but a few straggling shrubs, for not a single tree was to be seen; it was, however, remarkable for a number of white patches, which I took to be marble, as they reflected the sun's rays very strongly: other patches of the same kind we had observed in different parts of this country, particularly in Mercury Bay: we continued to stand close upon a wind to the westward, and at sun-set the southermost point of land bore N. 38 E. distant four leagues, and the westernmost land in sight bore N. 2 E. The point which lies in latitude 47 d. 19 m. S. longitude 192 d. 12 m. W. I named SOUTH CAPE; the westernmost land was a small island, lying off the point of the main.

Supposing South Cape to be the southern extremity of this country, as, indeed, it proved to be, I hoped to get round it by the west, for a large hollow swell from the south-west, ever since our last hard gale, had convinced me that there was no land in that direction.

In the night of Saturday the 10th we had a hard gale at N. E. by N. and N. which brought us under our courses, but about eight in the morning it became moderate; and at noon, veering to the west, we tacked and stood to the northward, having no land in sight. Our latitude, by observation, was 47 d. 33 m. S. our longitude, west from the South Cape, 59 m. We stood away N. N. E. close upon a wind, without seeing any land, till two the next morning, when we discovered an island bearing N. W. by N. distant about five leagues: about two hours afterwards we saw land ahead, upon which we tacked and stood off till six, when we stood in to take a nearer view of it: at eleven we were within three leagues of it, but the wind seeming to incline upon the shore, I tacked and stood off to the southward.

We had now sailed round the land which we had discovered on the 5th, and which then did not appear to be joined to the main which lay north of it; and being now come to the other side of what we supposed to be water,

water, a bay, or low land, it had the same appearance, but when I came to lay it down upon paper I saw no reason to suppose it to be an island; on the contrary, I was clearly of opinion that it made part of the main. At noon, the western extremity of the main bore N. 59 W. and the island which we had seen in the morning, S. 59 W. distant about five leagues. It lies in latitude 46 d. 31 m. S. longitude 192 d. 59 m. W. and is nothing but a barren rock about a mile in circuit, remarkably high, and lies full five leagues distant from the main. This island I named after Dr Solander, and called it SOLANDER'S ISLAND. The shore of the main lies nearest E. by S. and W. by N. and forms a large open bay, in which there is no appearance of any harbour or shelter for shipping against S. W. and southerly winds: the surface of the country is broken into craggy hills, of a great height, on the summits of which are several patches of snow: it is not, however, wholly barren, for we could see wood not only in the vallies, but upon the highest ground, yet we saw no appearance of its being inhabited.

We continued to stand to the S. W. by S. till eleven o'clock the next morning, when the wind shifted to the S. W. by W. upon which we wore, and stood to the N. N. W. being then in latitude 47 d. 40 m. S. longitude 193 d. 50 m. W. and having a hollow sea from the S. W.

During the night of the 13th, we steered N. N. W. till six in the morning, when, seeing no land, we steered N. by E. till eight, when we steered N. E. by E. ¼ E. to make the land, which at ten we saw bearing E. N. E. but it being hazy, we could distinguish nothing upon it. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 46 d. S. About two it cleared up, and the land appeared to be high, rude, and mountainous: about half an hour after three I hauled in for a bay, in which there appeared to be good anchorage; but in about an hour, finding the distance too great to run before it would be dark, and the

wind blowing too hard to make the attempt safe in the night, I bore away along the shore.

This bay, which I called **DUSKY BAY**, lies in latitude 45 d. 47 m. S. it is between three and four miles broad at the entrance, and seems to be full as deep as it is broad: it contains several islands, behind which there must be shelter from all winds, though possibly there may not be sufficient depth of water. The north point of this bay, when it bears S. E. by S. is rendered very remarkable by five high peaked rocks which lie off it, and have the appearance of the four fingers and thumb of a man's hand, for which reason I called it **POINT FIVE FINGERS**: the land of this Point is farther remarkable, for being the only level land within a considerable distance. It extends near two leagues to the northward, is lofty, and covered with wood: the land behind it is very different, consisting wholly of mountains, totally barren and rocky; and this difference gives the Cape the appearance of an island.

At sun-set, the southermost land in sight bore due south, distant about five or six leagues; and as this is the westernmost point of land upon the whole coast I called it **WEST CAPE**. It lies about three leagues to the southward of Dusky Bay, in the latitude of 45 d. 54 m. S. and in the longitude of 193 d. 17 m. W. The land of this Cape is of a moderate height next the sea, and has nothing remarkable about it, except a very white cliff, two or three leagues to the southward of it: to the southward of it also the land trends away to the S. E. and to the northward it trends N. N. E.

Having brought to for the night, we made sail along the shore at four in the morning, in the direction of N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. with a moderate breeze at S. S. E. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 45 d. 13 m. S. At this time, being about a league and a half from the shore, we sounded, but had no ground with seventy fathom: we had just passed a small narrow opening in land, where there seemed to be a very safe and convenient harbour, formed by an island, which lay in the middle
of

not safe in the
 es in latitude
 r miles broad
 as it is broad :
 ere must be
 ere may not
 point of this
 very remark-
 f it, and have
 b of a man's
 FIVE FIN-
 markable, for
 ble distance.
 ward, is lofty,
 it is very dif-
 otally barren
 cape the ap-

ht bore due
 as this is the
 coast I called
 to the south-
 d. 54 m. S.
 The land of
 sea, and has
 white cliff,
 to the south-
 S. E. and to

le sail along
 ection of N.
 At noon,
 S. At this
 the shore,
 ty fathom :
 ng in land,
 convenient
 the middle
 of

of the opening at east. The opening lies in latitude 45 d. 16 m. S. and on the land behind it are mountains, the summits of which were covered with snow, that appeared to have been recently fallen ; and indeed for two days past we had found the weather very cold. On each side the entrance of the opening, the land rises almost perpendicularly from the sea to a stupendous height, and this indeed was the reason why I did not carry the ship into it, for no wind could blow there but right in, or right out, in the direction of either east or west, and I thought it by no means advisable to put into a place whence I could not have got out but with a wind which experience had taught me did not blow more than one day in a month. In this, however, I acted contrary to the opinion of some persons on board, who in very strong terms expressed their desire to harbour for present convenience, without any regard to future disadvantages.

In the evening, being about two leagues from the shore, we sounded, and had no ground with 108 fathom: the variation of the needle, by azimuth, was 14 d. E. and by amplitude 15 d. 2 m. We made the best of our way along the shore with what wind we had, keeping at the distance of between two and three leagues. At noon, we were in latitude 44 d. 47 m. having run only twelve leagues upon a N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. course, during the last four and twenty hours.

We continued to steer along the shore, in the direction of N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. till six o'clock in the evening, when we brought to for the night. At four in the morning, we stood in for the land, and when the day broke we saw what appeared to be an inlet ; but upon a nearer approach proved to be only a deep valley between two high lands : we proceeded therefore in the same course, keeping the shore at the distance of between four and five miles.

At noon on the 16th, the northermost point of land in sight bore N. 60 E. at the distance of ten miles ; and our

our latitude, by observation, was 44 d. 5 m. our longitude from Cape West 2 d. 8 m. E. About two we passed the point which at noon had been distant ten miles, and found it to consist of high red cliffs, down which there fell a cascade of water in four small streams, and I therefore gave it the name of CASCADE POINT. From this point the land trends first N. 76 E. and afterwards more to the northward. At the distance of eight leagues from Cascade Point, in the direction of E. N. E. and at a little distance from shore, lies a small low island, which bore from us S. by E. at the distance of about a league and a half.

At seven in the evening, we brought to, in thirty-three fathom with a fine sandy bottom; at ten we had fifty fathom, and at twelve wore in sixty-five fathom, having driven several miles N. N. W. after our having brought to.

At two in the morning of the 17th, we had no ground with 140 fathom, by which it appears that the soundings extend but a little way from the shore. About this time it fell calm; at eight, a breeze sprung up at S. W. with which we steered along the shore, in the direction of N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. at the distance of about three leagues. At six in evening, being about one league from the shore, we had seventeen fathom; and at eight, being about three leagues from the shore, we had forty-four: we now shortened sail and brought to, having run ten leagues N. E. by E. since noon.

It was calm most part of the night; but at ten in the morning of the 18th a light breeze sprung up at S. W. by W. when we made sail again along the shore, N. E. by N. having a large swell from the W. S. W. which had risen in the night; at noon, our latitude, by observation, was 43 d. 4 m. S. and our longitude from Cape West 4 d. 12 m. E. We observed, that the vallies as well as the mountains were this morning covered with snow, part of which we supposed to have fallen during the night, when we had rain. At six in the evening
we

we shortened sail, and at ten brought to, at the distance of about five leagues from the shore, where we had 150 fathom. At midnight, there being little wind, we made sail, and at eight in the morning of the 19th, we stood to the N. E. close upon a wind till noon, when we tacked, being about three leagues from the land, and, by observation, in latitude 42 d. 8 m. and longitude from Cape West, 5 d. 5 m. E.

We continued to stand westward till two in the morning of the 20th when we made a trip to the eastward, and afterwards stood westward till noon, when, by our reckoning, we were in the latitude of 42 d. 23 m. and longitude from Cape West 3 d. 55 m. E. We now tacked and stood eastward, with a fresh gale at N. by W. till six in the evening, when the wind shifted to the S. and S. S. W. with which we steered N. E. by N. till six in the morning of the 21st, when we hauled in E. by N. to make the land, which we saw soon afterwards; at noon, our latitude, by account, was 41 d. 37 m. and our longitude from Cape West 5 d. 42 m. E. We were now within three or four leagues of the land, but it being foggy, we could see nothing upon it distinctly, and as we had much wind, and a vast swell rolling in upon the shore, from the W. S. W. I did not think it safe to go nearer.

In the afternoon, we had a gentle breeze from the S. S. W. with which we steered north along the shore till eight, when, being within between two and three leagues, we sounded, and had but thirty-four fathom; upon which we hauled off N. W. by N. till eleven at night, and then brought to, having sixty-four fathom.

At four in the morning of the 22d, we made sail to the N. E. with a light breeze at S. S. W. which at eight veered to the westward, and soon after died away: at this time we were within three or four miles of the land, and had fifty-four fathom, with a large swell from the W. S. W. rolling obliquely upon the shore, which made me fear that I should be obliged to anchor; but by

the

the help of a light air now and then from the S. W. I was able to keep the ship from driving. At noon, the northermost land in sight bore N. E. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about ten leagues; our latitude, by account, was 40 d. 55 m. S. longitude from Cape West 6 d. 35 m. E.

From this time we had light airs from the southward, with intervals of calm, till noon on the 23d, when our latitude, by observation, was 40 d. 36 m. 30 f. S. and our longitude from Cape West 6 d. 52 m. E. The eastermost point of land in sight bore E. 10 N. at the distance of seven leagues, and a bluff head or point, of which we had been abreast at noon the day before, and off which lay some rocks above water, bore S. 18 W. at the distance of six leagues. This point I called **ROCK'S POINT**. Our latitude was now 40 d. 55 m. S. and having nearly run down the whole of the north-west coast of **Tovy Poenamoo**, I shall give some account of the face of the country.

I have already observed, that on the 11th, when we were off the southern part, the land then seen was craggy and mountainous, and there is great reason to believe that the same ridge of mountains extends nearly the whole length of the island. Between the westermost land which we saw that day, and the eastermost which we saw on the 13th, there is a space of about six or eight leagues, of which we did not see the coast, though we plainly discovered the mountains inland. The sea coast near Cape West is low, rising with an easy and gradual ascent to the foot of the mountains, and being in most parts covered with wood. From Point Five Fingers, down to latitude 44 d. 20 m. there is a narrow ridge of hills that rises directly from the sea, and is covered with wood: close behind these hills are the mountains, extending in another ridge of a stupendous height, and consisting of rocks that are totally barren and naked, except where they are covered with snow, which is to be seen in large patches upon many parts of them, and has probably lain there ever since the creation of the world:

n the S. W. I
 At noon, the
 E. distant
 nt, was 40 d.
 35 m. E.
 he southward,
 3d, when our
 30 f. S. and
 m. E. The
 10 N. at the
 d or point, of
 ay before, and
 e S. 18 W. at
 called Rock's
 55 m. S. and
 he north-west
 me account of

th, when we
 een was crag-
 reason to be-
 xtends nearly
 n the wester-
 he eastermost
 e of about six
 see the coast,
 tains inland.
 t with an easy
 tains, and be-
 om Point Five
 re is a narrow
 and is cover-
 e the moun-
 ndous height,
 en and naked,
 which is to
 of them, and
 reation of the
 world:

world : a prospect more rude, craggy, and desolate than this country affords from the sea, cannot possibly be conceived, for as far inland as the eye can reach, nothing appears but the summits of rocks, which stand so near together, that, instead of vallies, there is only fissures between them. From the latitude of 44 d. 20 m. to the latitude of 42 d. 8 m. these mountains lie farther inland, and the sea coast consists of woody hills and vallies, of various height and extent, and has much appearance of fertility: many of the vallies form plains of considerable extent, wholly covered with wood, but it is very probable that the ground, in many places, is swampy and interspersed with pools of water. From latitude 42 d. 8 m. to 41 d. 30 m. the land is not distinguished by any thing remarkable: it rises into hills directly from the sea, and is covered with wood; but the weather being foggy while we were upon this part of the coast, we could see very little inland, except now and then the summits of the mountains, towering above the cloudy mists that obscured them below, which confirmed my opinion that a chain of mountains extended from one end of the island to the other.

In the afternoon, we had a gentle breeze at S. W. which, before it was quite dark, brought us abreast of the eastern point which we had seen at noon; but not knowing what course the land took on the other side of it, we brought to in thirty-four fathom, at the distance of about one league from the shore. At eight in the evening, there being little wind, we filled and stood on till midnight, and then we brought to till four in the morning of the 24th, when we again made sail, and at break of day we saw low land extending from the point to the S. S. E. as far as the eye could reach, the eastern extremity of which appeared in round hillocks: by this time the gale had veered to the eastward, which obliged us to ply to windward. At noon the next day, the eastern point bore S. W. by S. distant sixteen miles, and our latitude was 40 d. 19 m. the wind continuing easterly we were nearly in the same situation at noon on

the day following. About three o'clock the wind came to the westward, and we steered E. S. E. with all the sail we could set till it was dark, and then shortened sail till the morning of the 27th: as we had thick hazy weather all night, we kept sounding continually, and had from thirty-seven to forty-two fathom. When the day broke we saw land bearing S. E. by E. and an island lying near it, bearing E. S. E. distant about five leagues: this island I knew to be the same that I had seen from the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound, from which it bears N. W. by N. distant nine leagues. At noon, it bore south, distant four or five miles, and the north-west head of the sound S. E. by S. distant ten leagues and an half. Our latitude; by observation, was 40 d. 33 m. S.

As we had now circumnavigated the whole country, it became necessary to think of quitting it, but as I had thirty tons of empty water casks on board, this could not be done till I had filled them: I therefore hauled round the island, and entered a bay, which lies between that and Queen Charlotte's Sound, leaving three more islands, which lay close under the western shore, between three or four miles within the entrance, on our starboard hand: while we were running in, we kept the lead continually going; and had from forty to twelve fathom.

At six o'clock in the evening, we anchored in eleven fathom with a muddy bottom, under the west shore, in the second cove, that lies within the three islands; and as soon as it was light the morning of the 28th, I took a boat, and went on shore to look for a watering-place, and a proper birth for the ship, both which I found, much to my satisfaction. As soon as the ship was moored, I sent an officer on shore to superintend the watering, and the carpenter, with his crew, to cut wood, while the long-boat was employed in landing the empty casks.

In this employment we were busy till the 30th, when the wind seeming to settle at S. E. and our water being nearly
nearly

nearly compleat'd, we warped the ship out of the cove, that we might have room to get under sail: and at noon I went away in the pinnace to examine as much of the bay as my time would admit.

After rowing about two leagues up it, I went ashore upon a point of land on the western side, and having climbed a hill, I saw the western arm of this bay run in S. W. by W. about five leagues farther, yet I could not discover the end of it: there appeared to be several other inlets, or at least small bays, between this and the north-west head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in each of which, I make no doubt, there is anchorage and shelter, as they are all covered from the sea wind by the islands which lie without them. The land about this bay, as far as I could see of it, is of a hilly surface, chiefly covered with trees, shrubs, and fern, which render travelling difficult and fatiguing.

In this excursion I was accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, who found several new plants. We met with some huts, which seemed to have been long deserted, but saw no inhabitants. Mr Banks examined several of the stones that lay upon the beach, which were full of veins, and had a mineral appearance; but he did not discover any thing in them which he knew to be ore: if he had had an opportunity to examine any of the bare rocks, perhaps he might have been more fortunate. He was also of opinion that what I had taken for marble in another place, was a mineral substance; and that, considering the correspondence of latitude between this place and South America, it was not improbable but that, by a proper examination, something very valuable might be found.

At my return in the evening, I found all the wood and water on board, and the ship ready for the sea: I resolved therefore to quit the country, and return home by such a route as might be of most advantage to the service; and upon this subject took the opinion of my officers. I had myself a strong desire to return by Cape

Horn, because that would have enabled me finally to determine, whether there is or is not a southern continent; but against this it was a sufficient objection that we must have kept in a high southern latitude in the very depth of winter, with a vessel which was not thought sufficient for the undertaking: and the same reason was urged against our proceeding directly for the Cape of Good Hope, with still more force, because no discovery of moment could be hoped for in that route; it was therefore resolved that we should return by the East Indies, and that with this view we should, upon leaving the coast, steer westward, till we should fall in with the east coast of New Holland, and then follow the direction of that coast to the northward, till we should arrive at its northern extremity; but if that should be found impracticable, it was further resolved that we should endeavour to fall in with the land, or islands, said to have been discovered by Quiros.

With this view, at break of day on Saturday the 31st of March 1770, we got under sail, and put to sea, with the advantage of a fresh gale at S. E. and clear weather, taking our departure from the eastern point, which we had seen at noon on the 23^d, and to which, on this occasion, I gave the name of CAPE FAREWELL.

The bay out of which we had just sailed I called ADMIRALTY BAY, giving the name of CAPE STEPHENS to the north-west point, and of CAPE JACKSON to the south-east, after the two gentlemen who at this time were Secretaries to the Board.

Admiralty Bay may easily be known by the island that has been just mentioned, which lies two miles N. E. of Cape Stephens, in latitude 40 d. 37 m. S. longitude 185 d. 6 m. W. and is of a considerable height. Between this island and Cape Farewell, which are between 14 and 15 leagues distant from each other, in the direction of W. by N. and E. by S. the shore forms a large deep bay, the bottom of which we could scarcely see while we were sailing in a strait line from one Cape to the other;

other; it is, however, probably of less depth than it appeared to be, for as we found the water shallower here, than at the same distance from any other part of the coast, there is reason to suppose, that the land at the bottom which lies next the sea is low, and therefore not easily to be distinguished from it. I have for this reason called it **BLIND BAY**, and am of opinion that it is the same which was called **Murderer's Bay** by Tasman.

Such particulars of this country and its inhabitants, with their manners and customs, as could be learnt while we were circumnavigating the coast, shall now be related.

*A general Account of New Zealand: its first Discovery,
Situation, Extent, Climate, and Productions.*

NEW ZEALAND was first discovered by Abel Jansen Tasman, a Dutch navigator, whose name has been several times mentioned in this narrative, on the 13th of December, in the year 1642. He traversed the eastern coast from latitude 34 d. to 43d. and entered the streight which divides the two islands, and is called COOK'S STREIGHT; but being attacked by the natives soon after he came to an anchor, in the place to which he gave the name of Murderer's Bay, he never went on shore. He gave the country the name of STAATEN LAND, or the land of the States, in honour of the States General, and it is now generally distinguished in our maps and charts by the name of NEW ZEALAND. As the whole of this country, except that part of the coast which was seen by Tasman from on board his ship, has from his time, to the voyage of the Endeavour, remained altogether unknown, it has by many been supposed to be part of the southern continent. It is, however, now known to consist of two large islands, divided from each other by a streight or passage, which is about four or five leagues broad.

These islands are situated between the latitudes of 34 d. and 48 d. S. and between the longitudes of 181 d. and 194 d. W. which is now determined with uncommon exactness, from innumerable observations of the sun and moon, and one of the transits of Mercury, by Mr Green, a person of known abilities, who, as has been observed before, was sent out by the Royal Society, to observe the transit of Venus in the South Seas.

The northermost of these islands is called by the natives

Discovery,
tions.

red by Abel
se name has
ative, on the
traverfed the
d entered the
and is called
by the natives
lace to which
never went on
of STAATEN
r of the States
uished in our
ALAND. As
art of the coast
d his ship, has
ndeavour, re-
many been sup-
t. It is, how-
lands, divided
which is about

the latitudes of
tudes of 181 d.
d with uncom-
rvations of the
f Mercury, by
s, who, as has
the Royal So-
s in the South
alled by the na-
tives

tives Eaheinomauwe, and the southermost Tovy, or Tavai Poenamoo; yet, as I have observed before, we are not sure whether the name Tovy Poenamoo comprehends the whole southern island, or only part of it.

Tovy Poenamoo is for the most part a mountainous, and, to all appearance, a barren country; and the people whom we saw in Queen Charlotte's Sound, those that came off to us under the snowy mountains, and the fires to the west of Cape Saunders, were all the inhabitants, and signs of inhabitants, that we discovered upon the whole island.

Eaheinomauwe has a much better appearance; it is indeed not only hilly but mountainous; yet even the hills and mountains are covered with wood, and every valley has a rivulet of water: the soil in these vallies, and in the plains, of which there are many that are not overgrown with wood, is in general light but fertile, and, in the opinion of Mr Banks and Dr Solander, as well as of every other gentleman on board, every kind of European grain, plants, and fruit, would flourish here in the utmost luxuriance: from the vegetables that we found here, there is reason to conclude, that the winters are milder than those in England, and we found the summer not hotter, though it was more equally warm; so that if this country should be settled by people from Europe, they would, with a little industry, be very soon supplied not only with the necessaries, but the luxuries of life in great abundance.

In this country there are no quadrupeds but dogs and rats, at least we saw no other, and the rats are so scarce that many of us never saw them. The dogs live with the people, who breed them for no other purpose than to eat: there might, indeed, be quadrupeds that we did not see, but this is not probable, because the chief pride of the natives, with respect to their dress, is in the skins and hair of such animals as they have, and we never saw the skin of any animal about them but those of dogs and birds: there are, indeed, seals upon the coast, and we once saw a sea lion, but we imagine they are seldom caught,

caught, for, though we saw some of their teeth, which were fashioned into an ornament like a bodkin, and worn by the natives at their breast, and highly valued, we saw none of their skins : there are whales also upon this coast, and, though the people did not appear to have any art or instrument by which such an animal could be taken and killed, we saw Pattoo-pattoos in the possession of some of them, which were made of the bone of a whale, or of some other animal whose bone had exactly the same appearance.

Of birds the species are not many ; and of these none, except perhaps the gannet, is the same with those of Europe : here are ducks indeed, and shags of several kinds, sufficiently resembling those of Europe, to be called the same, by those who have not examined them very nicely. Here are also hawks, owls, and quails, which differ but little from those of Europe at first sight ; and several small birds, whose song, as has been remarked in the course of the narrative, is much more melodious than any that we had ever heard.

The sea coast is also visited by many oceanic birds, particularly albatrosses, sheerwaters, pintados, and a few of the birds which Sir John Narborough has called Penguins, and which indeed are what the French call *Nuance*, and seem to be a middle species between bird and fish ; for their feathers, especially those upon their wings, differ very little from scales ; and their wings themselves, which they use only in diving, and not to accelerate their motion even upon the surface of the water, may, perhaps with equal propriety be called fins.

Neither are insects in greater plenty than birds : a few butterflies and beetles, flesh flies, very like those in Europe, and some musquitos and sand flies, perhaps exactly the same with those of North America, make up the whole catalogue. Of musquitos and sand flies, however, which are justly accounted the curse of every country where they abound, we did not see many ; there were, indeed, a few in almost every place where we went on shore, but they gave us so little trouble, that

that we did not make use of the shades which we had provided for the security of our faces.

For this scarcity of animals upon the land, the sea, however, makes an abundant recompence; every creek swarming with fish, which are not only wholesome, but equally delicious with those of Europe: the ship seldom anchored in any station, or with a light gale passed any place, that did not afford us enough with hook and line to serve the whole ship's company, especially to the southward: when we lay at anchor, the boats, with hook and line, near the rocks, could take fish in any quantity; and the seine seldom failed of procuring a still more ample supply; so that both times when we anchored in Cook's Streight, every mess in the ship, that was not careless and improvident, salted as much as lasted many weeks after they went to sea. Of this article, the variety was equal to the plenty; we had mackrel of many kinds, among which, one was exactly the same as we have in England: these came in immense shoals, and were taken by the natives in their seines, who sold them to us at a very easy rate. Besides these, there were fish of many species which we had never seen before, but to all which the seamen very readily gave names; so that we talked here as familiarly of flakes, bream, cole-fish, and many others, as we do in England; and though they are by no means of the same family, it must be confessed that they do honour to the name. But the highest luxury which the sea afforded us, even in this place, was the lobster or sea cray-fish, which are probably the same that in the account of Lord Anson's Voyage are said to have been found at the island of Juan Fernandes, except that, although large they are not quite equal in size: they differ from ours in England in several particulars, they have a greater number of prickles on their backs, and they are red when first taken out of the water. These we also bought every where to the northward in great quantities of the natives, who catch them by diving near the shore, and finding out where they lie with their

feet. We had also a fish that Frezier, in his Voyage to the Spanish Main in South America, has described by the names of *Elefant Pejegallo*, or *Poison ccq*, which though coarse, we eat very heartily. Several species of the skate, or sting-ray, are also found here, which were still coarser than the *Elefant*; but, as an atonement, we had among many kinds of dog-fish one spotted with white, which was in flavour exactly similar to our best skate, but much more delicious. We had also flat fish resembling both soles and flounders, besides eels and congers of various kinds, with many others of which those who shall hereafter visit this coast will not fail to find the advantage; and shell-fish in great variety, particularly clams, cockles, and oysters.

Among the vegetable productions of this country, the trees claim a principal place; for here are forests of vast extent, full of the straightest, the cleanest, and the largest timber trees that we had ever seen; their size, their grain, and apparent durability, render them fit for any kind of building, and, indeed, for every other purpose except masts; for which, as I have already observed, they are too hard and too heavy: there is one in particular which, when we were upon the coast, was rendered conspicuous by a scarlet flower, that seemed to be a compendage of many fibres; it is about as large as an oak, and the wood is exceedingly hard and heavy, and excellently adapted to the use of the mill-wright. There is another which grows in the swamps, remarkably tall and straight, thick enough to make masts for vessels of any size, and, if a judgment may be formed by the direction of its grain, very tough: this, which, as has been before remarked, our carpenter thought to resemble the pitch-pine, may probably be lightened by tapping, and it will then make the finest masts in the world: it has a leaf not unlike a yew, and bears berries in small bunches.

Great part of the country is covered with a luxuriant verdure, and our natural historians were gratified by the novelty, if not the variety of the plants. Sow-thistle,

thistle, garden night-shade, one or two kinds of grass, the same as in England, and two or three kinds of fern, like those of the West Indies, with a few plants that are to be found in almost every part of the world, were all, out of about four hundred species, that have hitherto been described by any botanists, or had been seen elsewhere during the course of this voyage, except about five or six which had been gathered at Terra del Fuego:

Of eatable vegetables there are but few; our people, indeed, who had been long at sea, eat, with equal pleasure and advantage, of wild celery, and a kind of cresses, which grew in great abundance upon all parts of the sea-shore. We also, once or twice, met with a plant like what the country people in England call *Lambs' quarters*, or *Fat-hen*, which we boiled instead of greens; and once we had the good fortune to find a cabbage tree, which afforded us a delicious meal; and, except the fern-root, and one other vegetable, totally unknown in Europe, and which, though eaten by the natives, was extremely disagreeable to us, we found no other vegetable production that was fit for food, among those that appeared to be the wild produce of the country; and we could find but three excellent plants among those which are raised by cultivation, yams, sweet potatoes, and coccos. Of the yams and potatoes there are plantations consisting of many acres, and I believe that any ship which should happen to be here in the autumn, when they are dug up, might purchase them in any quantity.

Gourds are also cultivated by the natives of this place, the fruit of which furnishes them with vessels for various uses. We also found here the Chinese paper mulberry tree, the same as that of which the inhabitants of the South Sea islands make their cloth; but it is so scarce, that, though the New Zealanders also make their cloth of it, they have not enough for any other purpose than to wear as an ornament in the holes which they make in their ears, as I have observed before.

But among all the trees, shrubs, and plants of this

country, there is not one that produces fruit; except a berry which has neither sweetness nor flavour, and which none but the boys took pains to gather, should be honoured with that appellation. There is, however, a plant that serves the inhabitants instead of hemp and flax, which excels all that are put to the same purposes in other countries. Of this plant there are two sorts; the leaves of both resemble those of flax, but the flowers are smaller, and their clusters more numerous; in one kind they are yellow, and in the other a deep red. Of the leaves of these plants, with very little preparation, they make all their common apparel; and of these they make also their strings, lines, and cordage for every purpose, which are so much stronger than any thing we can make with hemp, that they will not bear a comparison. From the same plant, by another preparation, they draw long slender fibres which shine like silk, and are as white as snow: of these, which are also surprisingly strong, the finer clothes are made; and of the leaves, without any other preparation than splitting them into proper breadths, and tying the stripes together, they make their fishing nets; some of which, as I have before remarked, are of an enormous size.

A plant, which with such advantage might be applied to so many useful and important purposes, would certainly be a great acquisition to England, where it would probably thrive with very little trouble, as it seems to be hardy, and to affect no particular soil; being found equally in hill and valley; in the driest mould, and the deepest bogs: the bog, however, it seems rather to prefer, as near such places we observed it to be larger than elsewhere.

I have already observed, that we found great plenty of iron sand in Mercury Bay, and therefore that iron ore is undoubtedly to be found at no great distance. As to other metals we had scarcely knowledge enough of the country for conjecture.

If the settling of this country should ever be thought an object worthy the attention of Great Britain, the best place

place for establishing a colony would be either on the banks of the Thames, or in the country bordering upon the Bay of Islands. In either place there would be the advantage of an excellent harbour; and, by means of the river, settlements might be extended, and a communication established with the inland parts of the country: vessels might be built of the fine timber which abounds in these parts, at very little trouble and expence, fit for such a navigation as would answer the purpose. I cannot, indeed, exactly assign the depth of water which a vessel intended to navigate this river, even as far up as I went with the boat, should draw, because this depends upon the depth of water that is upon the bar, or flats, which lie before the narrow part of the river, for I had no opportunity to make myself acquainted with them; but I am of opinion, that a vessel which should draw not more than twelve feet would perfectly answer the purpose.

When we first arrived upon the coast of this country, we imagined it to be much better peopled than we afterwards found it, concluding that the inland parts were populous from the smoke that we saw at a considerable distance from the shore; and, perhaps, that may really be the case with respect to the country behind Poverty Bay, and the Bay of Plenty, where the inhabitants appeared to be more numerous than in other places. But we had reason to believe, that in general no part of the country but the sea coast is inhabited; and even there we found the people but thinly scattered, all the western coast from Cape Maria Van Diemen to Mount Egmont being totally desolate; so that upon the whole the number of inhabitants bears no proportion to the extent of country.

A

A Description of the Inhabitants, their Habitations, Apparel, Ornaments, Food, Cookery, and Manner of Life.

THE stature of the men in general is equal to the largest of those in Europe: they are stout, well limbed, and fleshy; but not fat, like the lazy and luxurious inhabitants of the islands in the South Seas: they are also exceedingly vigorous and active; and have an adroitness, and manual dexterity in an uncommon degree, which are discovered in whatever they do. I have seen the strokes of fifteen paddles on a side in one of their canoes made with incredible quickness, and yet with such minute exactness of time, that all the rowers seemed to be actuated by one common soul. Their colour in general is brown; but in few deeper than that of a Spaniard, who has been exposed to the sun; in many not so deep. The women have not a feminine delicacy in their appearance, but their voice is remarkably soft; and by that, the dress of both sexes being the same, they are principally distinguished: they have, however, like the women of other countries, more airy cheerfulness, and a greater flow of animal spirits, than the other sex. Their hair, both of the head and beard, is black; and their teeth extremely regular, and as white as ivory: the features of both sexes are good; they seem to enjoy high health, and we saw many who appeared to be of a great age. The dispositions both of the men and women seemed to be mild and gentle; they treat each other with the tenderest affection, but are implacable towards their enemies, to whom, as I have before observed, they never give quarter. It may perhaps, at first, seem strange, that where there is so little to be got by victory, there should so often be war; and

and that every little district of a country inhabited by people so mild and placid, should be at enmity with all the rest. But possibly more is to be gained by victory among these people than at first appears, and they may be prompted to mutual hostilities by motives which no degree of friendship or affection is able to resist. It appears, by the account that has already been given of them, that their principal food is fish, which can only be procured upon the sea coast; and there, in sufficient quantities, only at certain times: the tribes, therefore, who live inland, if any such there are, and even those upon the coast, must be frequently in danger of perishing by famine. Their country produces neither sheep, nor goats, nor hogs, nor cattle; tame fowls they have none, nor any art by which those that are wild can be caught in sufficient plenty to serve as provision. If there are any whose situation cuts them off from a supply of fish, the only succedaneum of all other animal food, except dogs, they have nothing to support life, but the vegetables that have already been mentioned, of which the chief are fern root, yams, clams, and potatoes: when by any accident these fail, the distress must be dreadful; and even among the inhabitants of the coast, many tribes must frequently be reduced to nearly the same situation, either by the failure of their plantations, or the deficiency of their dry stock, during the season when but few fish are to be caught. These considerations will enable us to account, not only for the perpetual danger in which the people who inhabit this country appear to live, by the care which they take to fortify every village, but for the horrid practice of eating those who are killed in battle; for the hunger of him who is pressed by famine to fight, will absorb every feeling, and every sentiment which would restrain him from allaying it with the body of his adversary. It may however be remarked, that, if this account of the origin of so horrid a practice is true, the mischief does by no means end with the necessity that produced it: after the practice has been once begun on one side by hunger, it will naturally be adopted on the other by revenge.

venge. Nor is this all, for though it may be pretended, by some who wish to appear speculative and philosophical, that whether the dead body of an enemy be eaten or buried, is in itself a matter perfectly indifferent; as it is, whether the breasts and thighs of a woman should be covered or naked; and that prejudice and habit only make us shudder at the violation of custom in one instance, and blush at it in the other: yet, leaving this as a point of doubtful disputation, to be discussed at leisure, it may safely be affirmed, that the practice of eating human flesh, whatever it may be in itself, is relatively, and in its consequences most pernicious; tending manifestly to eradicate a principle which is the chief security of human life, and more frequently restrains the hand of murder than the sense of duty, or even the fear of punishment.

Among those who are accustomed to eat the dead, death must have lost much of its horror; and where there is little horror at the sight of death, there will not be much repugnance to kill. A sense of duty, and fear of punishment, may be more easily surmounted than the feelings of Nature, or those which have been engrafted upon Nature by early prejudice and uninterrupted custom. The horror of the murderer arises less from the guilt of the fact, than its natural effect; and he who has familiarised the effect, will consequently lose much of the horror. By our laws, and religion, murder and theft incur the same punishment, both in this world and the next; yet, of the multitude who would deliberately steal, there are but very few who would deliberately kill, even to procure much greater advantage. But there is the strongest reason to believe, that those who have been so accustomed to prepare a human body for a meal, that they can with as little feeling cut up a dead man, as our cook-maids divide a dead rabbit for a fricassée, would feel as little horror in committing a murder as in picking a pocket, and consequently would take away life with as little compunction as property; so that men, under these circumstances, would be made murderers by the slight temptations that now make them thieves. If any man doubts

doubts whether this reasoning is conclusive, let him ask himself, whether in his own opinion he should not be safer with a man in whom the horror of destroying life is strong, whether in consequence of natural instinct unsubdued, or of early prejudice, which has nearly an equal influence; than in the power of a man who under any temptation to murder him would be restrained only by considerations of interest; for to these all motives of mere duty may be reduced, as they must terminate either in hope of good, or fear of evil.

The situation and circumstances, however, of these poor people, as well as their temper, are favourable to those who shall settle as a colony among them. Their situation sets them in need of protection, and their temper renders it easy to attach them by kindness; and whatever may be said in favour of a savage life, among people who live in luxurious idleness upon the bounty of Nature, civilization would certainly be a blessing to those whom her parsimony scarcely furnishes with the bread of life, and who are perpetually destroying each other by violence, as the only alternative of perishing by hunger.

But these people, from whatever cause, being inured to war, and by habit considering every stranger as an enemy, were always disposed to attack us when they were not intimidated by our manifest superiority. At first, they had no notion of any superiority but numbers; and when this was on their side, they considered all our expressions of kindness as the artifices of fear and cunning, to circumvent them, and preserve ourselves: but when they were once convinced of our power, after having provoked us to the use of our fire-arms, though loaded only with small shot; and of our clemency, by our forbearing to make use of weapons so dreadful except in our defence; they became at once friendly, and even affectionate, placing in us the most unbounded confidence, and doing every thing which could incite us to put equal confidence in them. It is also remarkable, that when an intercourse was once established between

us, they were very rarely detected in any act of dishonesty. Before, indeed, and while they considered us as enemies, who came upon their coast only to make an advantage of them, they did not scruple by any means to make an advantage of us; and would, therefore, when they had received the price of any thing they had offered to sell, pack up both the purchase and the purchase-money with all possible composure, as so much lawful plunder from people who had no view but to plunder them.

I have observed that our friends in the South Seas had not even the idea of indecency, with respect to any object or any action; but this was by no means the case with the inhabitants of New Zealand, in whose carriage and conversation there was as much modest reserve and decorum with respect to actions, which yet in their opinion were not criminal, as are to be found among the politest people in Europe. The women were not impregnable; but the terms and manner of compliance were as decent as those in marriage among us, and according to their notions, the agreement was as innocent. When any of our people made an overture to one of their young women, he was given to understand that the consent of her friends was necessary, and by the influence of a proper present, it was generally obtained; but when these preliminaries were settled, it was also necessary to treat the wife for a night, with the same delicacy that is here required by the wife for life, and the lover who presumed to take any liberties by which this was violated, was sure to be disappointed.

One of our gentlemen having made his addresses to a family of the better sort, received an answer, which translated into our language, according to the mode and spirit of it, as well as the letter, would have been exactly in these terms: "Any of these young ladies will think themselves honoured by your addresses, but you must first make me a suitable present, and you must then come and sleep with us on shore, for daylight must by no means be a witness of what passes between you."

I have already observed, that in personal cleanliness they are not quite equal to our friends at Otaheite; because, not having the advantage of so warm a climate, they do not so often go into the water; but the most disgusting thing about them is the oil, with which, like the Islanders, they anoint their hair: it is certainly the fat either of fish or birds, melted down, and though the better sort have it fresh, their inferiors use that which is rancid, and consequently are almost as disagreeable to the smell, as a Hottentot; neither are their heads free from vermin, though we observed that they were furnished with combs, both of bone and wood: these combs are sometimes worn stuck upright in the hair as an ornament, a fashion which at present prevails among the ladies of England. The men generally wear their beards short, and their hair tied upon the crown of the head in a bunch, in which they stick the feathers of various birds, in different manners, according to their fancies; sometimes one is placed on each side of the temples, pointing forwards, which we thought made a very disagreeable appearance. The women wear their hair sometimes cropped short, and sometimes flowing over their shoulders.

The bodies of both sexes are marked with the black stains called Amoco, by the same method that is used at Otaheite, and called Tattowing; but the men are more marked, and the women less. The women in general stain no part of their bodies but the lips, though sometimes they are marked with small black patches on other parts: the men, on the contrary, seem to add something every year to the ornaments of the last, so that some of them, who appeared to be of an advanced age, were almost covered from head to foot. Besides the Amoco, they have marks impressed by a method unknown to us, of a very extraordinary kind: they are furrows of about a line deep, and a line broad, such as appear upon the bark of a tree which has been cut through, after a year's growth: the edges of these furrows are afterwards in-

dented by the same method, and being perfectly black, they make a most frightful appearance.

The faces of the old men are almost covered with these marks; those who are very young, black only their lips like the women; when they are somewhat older, they have generally a black patch upon one cheek, and over one eye, and so proceed gradually, that they may grow old and honourable together: but though we could not but be disgusted with the horrid deformity which these stains and furrows produced in the "human face divine," we could not but admire the dexterity and art with which they were impressed. The marks upon the face in general are spiral, which are drawn with great nicety, and even elegance, those on one side exactly corresponding with those on the other: the marks on the body somewhat resemble the foliage in old chased ornaments, and the convolutions of fillagree work; but in these they have such a luxuriance of fancy, that of an hundred, which at first sight appeared to be exactly the same, no two were, upon a close examination, found to be alike. We observed, that the quantity and form of these marks were different in different parts of the coast, and that as the principal seat of them at Otaheite was the breech, in New Zealand, it was sometimes the only part which was free, and in general was less distinguished than any other.

The skins of these people, however, are not only dyed, but painted, for as I have before observed, they smear their bodies with red oker, some rubbing it on dry, and some applying it in large patches mixed with oil, which is always wet, and which the least touch will rub off, so that the transgressions of such of our people as were guilty of ravishing a kiss from these blooming beauties, were most legibly written upon their faces.

The dress of a New Zealander is certainly, to a stranger at first sight, the most uncouth that can be imagined. It is made of the leaves of the flag, which has been described among the vegetable productions of this coun-

ty:

try: these leaves are split into three or four slips, and the slips, when they are dry, interwoven with each other into a kind of stuff between netting and cloth, with all the ends, which are eight or nine inches long, hanging out on the upper side, like the shag or thrumb matts, which we sometimes see lying in a passage. Of this cloth, if cloth it may be called, two pieces serve for a complete dress; one of them is tied over their shoulders with a string, and reaches as low as the knees; to the end of this string is fastened a bodkin of bone, which is easily passed through any two parts of this upper garment, so as to tack them together; the other piece is wrapped round the waist, and reaches nearly to the ground: the lower garment, however, is worn by the men only upon particular occasions; but they wear a belt, to which a string is fastened, for a very singular use. The inhabitants of the South Sea islands slit up the prepuce so as to prevent it from covering the glans of the penis, but these people, on the contrary, bring the prepuce over the glans, and, to prevent it from being drawn back by the contraction of the part, they tie the string which hangs from the girdle, round the end of it. The glans, indeed, seemed to be the only part of their body which they were solicitous to conceal, for they frequently threw off all their dress but the belt and string, with the most careless indifference, but shewed manifest signs of confusion, when, to gratify our curiosity they were requested to untie the string, and never contented without the utmost reluctance and shame. When they have only their upper garment on, and sit upon their hams, they bear some resemblance to a thatched house; but this covering, though it is ugly, is well adapted to the use of those who frequently sleep in the open air, without any other shelter from the rain.

But besides this coarse shag or thatch, they have two sorts of cloth, which have an even surface, and are very ingeniously made, in the same manner with that manufactured

nufactured by the inhabitants of South America, some of which we procured at Rio de Janeiro. One sort is as coarse as our coarsest canvas, and somewhat resembles it in the manner of laying the threads, but it is ten times as strong: the other is formed by many threads lying very close one way, and a few crossing them the other, so as to bind them together; but these are about half an inch asunder, somewhat like the round pieces of cane matting which are sometimes placed under the dishes upon a table. This is frequently striped, and always had a pretty appearance, for it is composed of the fibres of the same plant, which are prepared so as to shine like silk. It is made in a kind of frame of the size of the cloth, generally about five feet long, and four broad, across which the long threads, which lie close together, or warp, are stained, and the cross threads, or woof, are worked in by hand, which must be a very tedious operation.

To both these kinds of cloth they work borders of different colours, in stitches, somewhat like carpeting, or rather like those used in the samplers which girls work at school. These borders are of various patterns, and wrought with a neatness, and even an elegance, which, considering they have no needle, is surprising: but the great pride of their dress consists in the fur of their dogs, which they use with such œconomy that they cut it into stripes, and sew them upon their cloth at a distance from each other, which is a strong proof that dogs are not plenty among them; these stripes are also of different colours, and disposed so as to produce a pleasing effect. We saw some dresses that were adorned with feathers instead of fur, but these were not common; and we saw one that was intirely covered with the red feathers of the parrot.

The dress of the man who was killed, when we first went ashore in Poverty Bay, has been described already; but we saw the same dress only once more during our stay upon the coast, and that was in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

The

The women, contrary to the custom of the sex in general, seemed to affect dress rather less than the men: their hair, which, as I have observed before, is generally cropt short, is never tied upon the top of the head when it is suffered to be long, nor is it ever adorned with feathers. Their garments were made of the same materials, and in the same form, as those of the other sex, but the lower one was always bound fast round them, except when they went into the water to catch lobsters, and then they took great care not to be seen by the men. Some of us happening one day to land upon a small island in Tolaga Bay, we surprized several of them at this employment; and the chaste Diana, with her nymphs, could not have discovered more confusion and distress at the sight of Aetæon, than these women expressed upon our approach. Some of them hid themselves among the rocks, and the rest crouched down in the sea till they had made themselves a girdle and apron of such weeds as they could find, and when they came out, even with this veil, we could perceive that their modesty suffered much pain by our presence. The girdle and apron which they wear in common, have been mentioned before.

Both sexes bore their ears, and by stretching them the holes become large enough to admit a finger at least. In these holes they wear ornaments of various kinds; cloth, feathers, bones of large birds, and even sometimes a stick of wood; and to these receptacles of finery they generally applied the nails which we gave them, and every thing which it was possible they could contain. The women sometimes thrust through them the down of the albatrois, which is as white as snow, and which, spreading before and behind the hole in a bunch almost as big as the fist, makes a very singular, and, however strange it may be thought, not a disagreeable appearance. Besides the ornaments that are thrust through the holes of the ears, many others are suspended to them by strings; such as chisels or bodkins made

of

The

of green talc, upon which they set a high value, the nails and teeth of their deceased relations, the teeth of dogs, and every thing else that they can get, which they think either curious or valuable. The women also wear bracelets and anklets, made of the bones of birds, shells, or any other substances which they can perforate and string upon a thread. The men had sometimes hanging to a string, which went round the neck, a piece of green talc, or whalebone, somewhat in the shape of a tongue, with the rude figure of a man carved upon it; and upon this ornament they set a high value. In one instance, we saw the gristles that divides the nostrils, and called by anatomists, the *septum nasi*, perforated, and a feather thrust through the whole, which projected on each side over the cheeks: it is probable that this frightful singularity was intended as an ornament, but of the many people we saw, we never observed it in any other, nor even a perforation that might occasionally serve for such a purpose.

Their houses are the most inartificially made of any thing among them, being scarcely equal, except in size, to an English dog-kennel: they are seldom more than eighteen or twenty feet long, eight or ten broad, and five or six high, from the pole that runs from one end to the other, and forms the ridge, to the ground: the framing is of wood, generally slender sticks, and both walls and roof consist of dry grass and hay, which, it must be confessed, is very tightly put together; and some are also lined with the bark of trees, so that in cold weather they must afford a very comfortable retreat. The roof is sloping, like those of our barns, and the door is at one end, just high enough to admit a man creeping upon his hands and knees: near the door is a square hole, which serves the double office of window and chimney, for the fire-place is at that end, nearly in the middle between the two sides: in some conspicuous part, and generally near the door, a plank is fixed covered with carving after their manner: this they value

value as we do a picture, and in their estimation it is not an inferior ornament: the side walls and roof project about two feet beyond the walls at each end, so as to form a kind of porch, in which there are benches for the accommodation of the family. That part of the floor which is allotted for the fire-place, is enclosed in a hollow square, by partitions either of wood or stone, and in the middle of it the fire is kindled. The floor, along the inside of the walls, is thickly covered with straw, and upon this the family sleep.

Their furniture and implements consist of but few articles, and one chest commonly contains them all, except their provision-baskets, the gourds that hold their fresh water, and the hammers that are used to beat their fern root, which generally stand without the door: some rude tools, their clothes, arms, and a few feathers to stick in their hair, make the rest of their treasure.

Some of the better sort, whose families are large, have three or four houses enclosed within a court-yard, the walls of which are constructed of poles and hay, and are about ten or twelve feet high.

When we were on shore in the district called Tolaga, we saw the ruins, or rather the frame of a house, for it had never been finished, much superior in size to any that we saw elsewhere: it was thirty feet in length, about fifteen in breadth, and twelve high: the sides of it were adorned with many carved planks, of a workmanship much superior to any other that we had met with in the country; but for what purpose it was built, or why it was deserted, we could never learn.

But these people, though in their houses they are so well defended from the clemency of the weather, seem to be quite indifferent whether they have any shelter at all during their excursions in search of fern roots and fish, sometimes setting up a small shade to windward, and sometimes altogether neglecting even that precaution, sleeping with their women and children under bushes, with their weapons ranged round them, in the manner that has already been described. The party

consisting of forty or fifty, whom we saw at Mercury Bay, in a district which the natives call Opoorage, never erected the least shelter while we staid there, though it sometimes rained incessantly for four and twenty hours together.

The articles of their food have been enumerated already; the principal, which to them is what bread is to the inhabitants of Europe, is the roots of the fern which grows upon the hills, and is nearly the same with what grows upon our high commons in England, and is called indifferently fern, bracken, or brakes. The birds, which sometimes serve them for a feast, are chiefly penguins and albatrosses, with a few other species that have been occasionally mentioned in this narrative.

Having no vessel in which water can be boiled, their cookery consists wholly of baking and roasting. They bake nearly in the same manner as the inhabitants of the South Seas, and to the account that has been already given of their roasting, nothing need be added, but that the long skewer or spit to which the flesh is fastened, is placed sloping towards the fire, by setting one stone against the bottom of it, and supporting it near the middle with another, by the moving of which to a greater or less distance from the end, the degree of obliquity is increased or diminished at pleasure.

To the northward, as I have observed, there are plantations of yams, sweet potatoes, and coccos, but we saw no such to the southward; the inhabitants, therefore, of that part of the country must subsist wholly upon fern root and fish, except the scanty and accidental resource which they may find in sea fowl and dogs; and that fern and fish are not to be procured at all seasons of the year, even at the sea-side, and upon the neighbouring hills, is manifest from the stores of both that we saw laid up dry, and the reluctance which some of them expressed at selling any part of them to us when we offered to purchase them, at least the fish, for sea stores: and this particular seems to confirm my opinion that this country scarcely sustains the present number of its
inhab-

inhabitants, who are urged to perpetual hostilities by hunger, which naturally prompted them to eat the dead bodies of those who were slain in the contest.

Water is their universal and only liquor, as far as we could discover, and if they have really no means of intoxication, they are, in this particular, happy beyond any other people that we have yet seen or heard of.

As there is perhaps no source of disease either critical or chronic, but intemperance and inactivity, it cannot be thought strange that these people enjoy perfect and uninterrupted health: in all our visits to their towns, where young and old, men and women, crowded about us, prompted by the same curiosity that carried us to look at them, we never saw a single person who appeared to have any bodily complaint, nor among the numbers that we have seen naked, did we once perceive the slightest eruption upon the skin, or any marks that an eruption had left behind: at first, indeed, observing that some of them when they came off to us were marked in patches with a white flowery appearance upon different parts of their bodies, we thought that they were leprous, or highly scorbutic; but upon examination we found that these marks were owing to their having been wetted by the spray of the sea in their passage, which, when it was dried away, left the salts behind it in a fine white powder.

Another proof of health, which we have mentioned upon a former occasion, is the facility with which the wounds healed that had left scars behind them, and that we saw in a recent state; when we saw the man who had been shot with a musket ball through the fleshy part of his arm, his wound seemed to be so well digested, and in so fair a way of being perfectly healed, that if I had not known no application had been made to it, I should certainly have enquired, with a very interested curiosity, after the vulnerary herbs and surgical art of the country.

A farther proof that human nature is here untainted

with disease, is the great number of old men that we saw, many of whom, by the loss of their hair and teeth, appeared to be very ancient, yet none of them were decrepit, and though not equal to the young in muscular strength, were not a whit behind them in cheerfulness and vivacity.

Of the Canoes and Navigation of the Inhabitants of New Zealand; their Tillage, Weapons, and Music: Government, Religion, and Language: With some Reasons against the Existence of a Southern Continent.

THE ingenuity of these people appears in nothing more than in their canoes: they are long and narrow, and in shape very much resemble a New England whale boat: the larger sort seem to be built chiefly for war, and will carry from forty to eighty, or an hundred armed men. We measured one which lay ashore at Tolaga: she was sixty-eight feet and an half long, five feet broad, and three feet and a half deep; the bottom was sharp, with strait sides like a wedge, and consisted of three lengths, hollowed out to about two inches, or an inch and an half thick, and well fastened together with strong plaiting: each side consisted of one intire plank, sixty-three feet long, ten or twelve inches broad, and about an inch and a quarter thick, and these were fitted and lashed to the bottom part with great dexterity and strength. A considerable number of thwarts were laid from gunwale to gunwale, to which they were securely lashed on each side, as a strengthening to the boat. The ornament at the head projected five or six feet beyond the

the body, and was about four feet and an half high; the ornament at the stern was fixed upon that end, as the stern-post of a ship is upon her keel, and was about fourteen feet high, two feet broad, and an inch and an half thick. They both consisted of boards of carved work, of which the design was much better than the execution. All their canoes, except a few at Opoorage or Mercury Bay, which were of one piece, and hollowed by fire, are built after this plan, and few are less than twenty feet long: some of the smaller sort have outriggers, and sometimes two of them are joined together, but this is not common. The carving upon the stern and head ornaments of the inferior boats, which seem to be intended wholly for fishing, consists of the figure of a man, with a face as ugly as can be conceived, and a monstrous tongue thrust out of the mouth, with the white shells of sea-ears stuck in for the eyes. But the canoes of the superior kind, which seem to be their men of war, are magnificently adorned with open work, and covered with loose fringes of black feathers, which had a most elegant appearance: the gunwale boards were also frequently carved in a grotesque taste, and adorned with tufts of white feathers placed upon a black ground. Of visible objects that are wholly new, no verbal description can convey a just idea, but in proportion as they resemble some that are already known, to which the mind of the reader must be referred: the carving of these people is of a singular kind, and not in the likeness of any thing that is known on our side of the ocean, either "in the heaven above or in the earth beneath, or in the waters that are under the earth."

The paddles are small, light, and neatly made; the blade is of an oval shape, or rather of a shape resembling a large leaf, pointed at the bottom, broadest in the middle, and gradually losing itself in the shaft, the whole length being about six feet, of which the shaft or loom including the handle is four, and the blade two. By the

the help of these oars they push on their boats with amazing velocity.

In sailing they are not expert, having no art of going otherwise than before the wind: the sail is of netting or mat, which is set up between two poles that are fixed upright upon each gunwale, and serve both for masts and yards: two ropes answered the purpose of sheets, and were consequently fastened above to the top of each pole. But clumsy and inconvenient as this apparatus is, they make good way before the wind, and are steered by two men who sit in the stern, with each a paddle in his hand for that purpose.

Having said thus much of their workmanship, I shall now give some account of their tools; they have adzes, axes, and chisels, which serve them also as augers for the boring of holes; as they have no metal, their adzes and axes are made of a hard black stone, or of a green talc, which is not only hard but tough; and their chisels of human bone, or small fragments of jasper, which they chip off from a block in sharp angular pieces like a gun flint. Their axes they value above all that they possess, and never would part with one of them for any thing that we could give: I once offered one of the best axes I had in the ship, besides a number of other things for one of them, but the owner would not sell it; from which I conclude that good ones are scarce among them. Their small tools of jasper, which are used in finishing their nicest work, they use till they are blunt, and then, as they have no means of sharpening them, throw them away. We had given the people at Tolaga a piece of glass, and in a short time they found means to drill a hole through it, in order to hang it round the neck as an ornament by a thread; and we imagine the tool must have been a piece of this jasper. How they bring their larg tools first to an edge, and sharpen the weapon which they call Patoo-patoo, we could not certainly learn; but probably it is by bruising the same substance to powder, and, with this, grinding two pieces against each other.

Their

boats with
 rt of going
 netting or
 at are fixed
 for masts
 e of sheets,
 top of each
 apparatus is,
 are steered
 a paddle in
 hip, I shall
 have adzes,
 augers for
 their adzes
 of a green
 their chis-
 sper, which
 pieces like
 all that they
 em for any
 e of the best
 other things
 ll it; from
 ce. among
 are used in
 are blunt,
 oing them,
 e at Tolaga
 und means
 round the
 e imagine
 er. How
 nd sharpen
 e could not
 g the same
 two pieces

pon with which we could reach them: here then the defiance was given, and the words were almost universally the same, *Haromai, haromai, barre uta a Patoo-patoo oge*: "Come to us, come on shore, and we will kill you all with our Patoo-patoos." While they were uttering these menaces they came gradually nearer and nearer, till they were close alongside; talking at intervals in a peaceable strain, and answering any questions that we asked them; and at intervals renewing their defiance and threats, till, being encouraged by our apparent timidity, they began their war-song and dance, as a prelude to an attack, which always followed, and was sometimes continued till it became absolutely necessary to repress them by firing some small-shot; and sometimes ended after throwing a few stones on board, as if content with having offered us an insult which we did not dare to revenge.

The war-dance consists of a great variety of violent motions, and hideous contortions of the limbs, during which the countenance also performs its part: the tongue is frequently thrust out to an incredible length, and the eye-lids so forcibly drawn up that the white appears both above and below, as well as on each side of the iris, so as to form a circle round it; nor is any thing neglected that can render the human shape frightful and deformed: at the same time they brandish their spears, shake their darts, and cleave the air with their Patoo-patoos. This horrid dance is always accompanied by a song; it is wild, indeed, but not disagreeable, and every strain ends in a loud and deep sigh, which they utter in concert. In the motions of the dance, however horrid, there is a strength, firmness, and agility, which we could not but behold with admiration; and in their song they keep time with such exactness, that I have often heard above an hundred paddles struck against the sides of their boats at once, so as to produce but a single sound, at the divisions of their music.

A song not altogether unlike this, they sometimes sing without the dance, and as a peaceable amusement: they

Their

have also other songs which are sung by the women, whose voices are remarkably mellow and soft, and have a pleasing and tender effect; the time is slow, and the cadence mournful; but it is conducted with more taste than could be expected among the poor ignorant savages of this half desolate country; especially as it appeared to us who were none of us much acquainted with music as a science, to be sung in parts; it was at least sung by many voices at the same time.

They have sonorous instruments, but they can scarcely be called instruments of music; one is the shell, called the Triton's trumpet, with which they make a noise not unlike that which our boys sometimes make with a cow's horn: the other is a small wooden pipe, resembling a child's nine-pin, only much smaller, and in this there is no more music than in a pea-whistle. They seem sensible, indeed, that these instruments are not musical; for we never heard an attempt to sing to them, or to produce with them any measured tones that bore the least resemblance to a tune.

To what has been already said of the practice of eating human flesh, I shall only add, that in almost every cove where we landed, we found fresh bones of men near the places where fires had been made; and that among the heads that were brought on board by the old man, some seemed to have false eyes, and ornaments in their ears as if alive. That which Mr Banks bought was sold with great reluctance by the possessor: the head was manifestly that of a young person about fourteen or fifteen years of age, and by the contusions on one side appeared to have received many violent blows, and, indeed, a part of the bone near the eye was wanting. These appearances confirmed us in the opinion that the natives of this country give no quarter, nor take any prisoners to be killed and eaten at a future time, as is said to have been a practice among the Indians of Florida: for if prisoners had been taken, this poor young creature, who cannot be supposed capable of making much resistance, would probably have been one,
and

women,
and have
and the
ore taste
rant fa-
as it ap-
ed with
at least

n scarce-
ell; call-
e a noise
e with a
, resem-
d in this
. They
are not
to them,
that bore

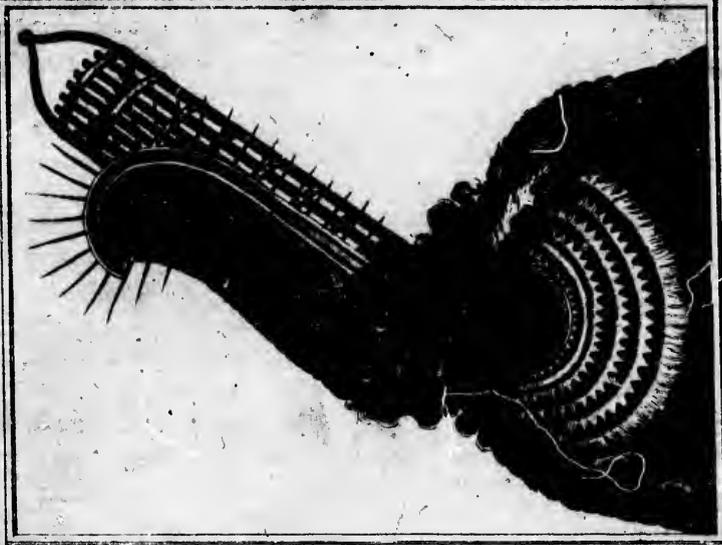
ce of eat-
ost every
s of men
d that a-
y the old
ments in
s bought
ffor: the
out four-
tions on
nt blows,
as want-
opinion
nor take
time, as
adians of
his poor
pable of
een one,
and

Cook's Voyages



Bell & Howick Sculp.

A NEW ZEALAND CHIEF.



A PRIEST of the SOCIETY ISLES.

and we knew that he was killed with the rest, for the fray had happened but a few days before.

The towns or Heppahs of these people, which are all fortified, have been sufficiently described already, and from the Bay of Plenty to Queen Charlotte's Sound, they seem to be the constant residence of the people: but about Poverty Bay, Hawk's Bay, Tegadoo, and Tolaga, we saw no Heppahs, but single houses scattered at a distance from each other; yet upon the sides of the hills there were stages of a great length, furnished with stones and darts, probably as retreats for the people at the last extremity, as upon these stages a fight may be carried on with much advantage against those below, who may be reached with great effect by darts and stones, which it is impossible for them to throw up with equal force. And, indeed, the forts themselves seem to be no farther serviceable than by enabling the possessors to repel a sudden attack; for as there is no supply of water within the lines, it would be impossible to sustain a siege. A considerable stock of fern root and dry fish is indeed laid up in them; but they may be reserved against seasons of scarcity, and that such seasons there are, our observations left us no room to doubt; besides, while an enemy should be prowling in the neighbourhood, it would be easy to snatch a supply of water from the side of the hill, though it would be impossible to dig up fern root or catch fish.

In this district, however, the people seemed to live in a state of conscious security, and to avail themselves of their advantage: their plantations were more numerous, their canoes were more decorated, and they had not only finer carving, but finer clothes. This part of the coast also was much the most populous, and possibly their apparent peace and plenty might arise from their being united under one Chief or King; for the inhabitants of all this part of the country told us, that they were the subjects of Teratu: when they pointed to the residence of this prince, it was in a direction which we

thought inland; but which, when we knew the country better, we found to be the Bay of Plenty.

It is much to be regretted that we were obliged to leave this country without knowing any thing of Teratu but his name. As an Indian monarch, his territory is certainly extensive: he was acknowledged from Cape Kidnappers to the northward, and westward as far as the Bay of Plenty, a length of coast upwards of eighty leagues; and we do not yet know how much farther westward his dominions may extend. Possibly the fortified towns which we saw in the Bay of Plenty may be his barrier; especially as at Mercury Bay he was not acknowledged, nor, indeed, any other single Chief: for when ever we landed, or spoke with the people upon that coast, they told us that we were at but a small distance from their enemies.

In the dominions of Teratu we saw several subordinate Chiefs, to whom great respect was paid, and by whom justice was probably administered; for upon our complaint to one of them, of a theft that had been committed on board the ship by a man that came with him, he gave him several blows and kicks, which the other received as the chastisement of authority, against which no resistance was to be made, and which he had no right to resent. Whether this authority was possessed by appointment or inheritance we could not learn; but we observed that the Chiefs, as well here as in other parts, were elderly men. In other parts, however, we learnt that they possessed their authority by inheritance.

The little societies which we found in the southern parts seemed to have several things in common, particularly their fine clothes and fishing nets. Their fine clothes, which possibly might be the spoils of war, were kept in a small hut, which was erected for that purpose in the middle of the town: the nets we saw making in almost every house, and the several parts being afterwards collected, were joined together. Less account seems to be made of the women here than in the South

Sea

Sea islands; such at least was the opinion of Tupia, who complained of it as an indignity to the sex. We observed that the two sexes eat together; but how they divide their labour we do not certainly know. I am inclined to believe, that the men till the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their boats to fish; and that the women dig up fern roots, collect lobsters and other shell fish near the beach, dress the victuals, and weave cloth: such at least were their employments when we had an opportunity of observing them, which was but seldom; for in general our appearance made a holiday where-ever we went, men, women and children, flocking round us, either to gratify their curiosity, or to purchase some of the valuable merchandize which we carried about with us, consisting principally of nails, paper, and broken glafs.

Of the religion of these people it cannot be supposed that we could learn much; they acknowledge the influence of superior beings, one of whom is supreme, and the rest subordinate; and gave nearly the same account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite: Tupia, however, seemed to have a much more deep and extensive knowledge of these subjects than any of the people here; and whenever he was disposed to instruct them, which he sometimes did in a long discourse, he was sure of a numerous audience, who listened in profound silence, with such reverence and attention, that we could not but wish them a better teacher.

What homage they pay to the deities they acknowledge we could not learn; but we saw no place of public worship, like the Morais of the South Sea islands: yet we saw, near a plantation of sweet potatoes, a small area, of a square figure, surrounded with stones, in the middle of which one of the sharpened stakes which they use as a spade was set up, and upon it was hung a basket of fern roots: upon enquiry, the natives told us, that it was an offering to the gods, by which the
owner

owner hoped to render them propitious, and obtain a plentiful crop.

As to their manner of disposing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion of it, for the accounts that we received by no means agreed. In the northern parts, they told us that they buried them in the ground; and in the southern, that they threw them into the sea: it is, however, certain that we saw no grave in the country, and that they affected to conceal every thing relating to their dead with a kind of mysterious secrecy. But whatever may be the sepulchre, the living are themselves the monuments; for we saw scarcely a single person of either sex whose body was not marked by the scars of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves as a testimony of their regret for the loss of a relation or friend: some of these wounds we saw in a state so recent that the blood was scarcely stanch'd, which shows that death had been among them while we were upon the coast; and makes it more extraordinary that no funeral ceremony should have fallen under our notice: some of the scars were very large and deep, and, in many instances had greatly disfigured the face. One monument, indeed, we observed of another kind, the cross that was set up near Queen Charlotte's Sound.

Having now given the best account in my power of the customs and opinions of the inhabitants of New Zealand, with their boats, nets, furniture, and dress, I shall only remark, that the similitude between these particulars here and in the South Sea islands is a very strong proof that the inhabitants have the same origin; and that the common ancestors of both, were natives of the same country. They have both a tradition that their ancestors, at a very remote period of time, came from another country; and, according to the tradition of both, that the name of that country was HEAWIJE; but the similitude of the language seems to put the matter altogether out of doubt. I have observed, that Tupia, when

when he accosted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly understood; and I shall give a specimen of the similitude by a list of words in both languages, according to the dialect of the northern and southern islands of which New Zealand consists, by which it will appear that the language of Otaheite does not differ more from that of New Zealand, than the language of the two islands from each other.

ENGLISH.	NEW ZEALAND.		OTAKEITE.
	<i>Northern.</i>	<i>Southern.</i>	
<i>A Chief</i>	Eareete	Eareete	Earee
<i>A man</i>	Taata	Taata	Taata
<i>A woman</i>	Whahine	Whahine	Ivahine
<i>The head</i>	Eupo	Heaowpoho	Eupo
<i>The hair</i>	Macauwe	Heoo-oo	Roorou
<i>The ear</i>	Terringa	Hetaheyei	Terrea
<i>The forehead</i>	Erai	Hei	Erai
<i>The eyes</i>	Mata	Hemata	Mata
<i>The cheeks</i>	Paparinga	Hepapaeh	Paparee
<i>The nose</i>	Ahewh	Heeih	Ahew
<i>The mouth</i>	Hangoutou	Hegaowai	Outou
<i>The chin</i>	Ecouwai	Hakaoewai	
<i>The arm</i>	Haringaringu		Rema
<i>The finger</i>	Maticara	Hermaigawh	Mancow
<i>The belly</i>	Ateraboo		Oboo
<i>The navel</i>	Apeto	Heeapeto	Peto
<i>Come hither</i>	Haromai	Heromai	Harromai
<i>Fish</i>	Heica	Heica	Eyea
<i>A lobster</i>	Kooura	Kooura	Tooura
<i>Coacos</i>	Taro	Taro	Taro
<i>Sweet potatoes</i>	Cumala	Cumala	Cumala
<i>Yams</i>	Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe
<i>Birds</i>	Mannu	Mannu	Mannu
<i>No</i>	Kaoura	Kaoura	Oure
<i>One</i>	Tahai		Tahai
<i>Two</i>	Rua		Rua
<i>Three</i>	Torou		Torou
<i>Four</i>	Ha		Hea
<i>Five</i>	Rema		Rema

<i>Six</i>	Ono		Ono
<i>Seven</i>	Etu		Hetu
<i>Eight</i>	Warou		Warou
<i>Nine</i>	Iva		Heva
<i>Ten</i>	Angahourou		Ahourou
<i>The teeth</i>	Hennihew	Heneaho	Nihio
<i>The wind</i>	Mehow		Mattai
<i>A thief</i>	Amootoo		Teto
<i>To examine</i>	Mataketake		Mataitai
<i>To sing</i>	Eheara		Heiva
<i>Bad</i>	Keno	Keno	Eno
<i>Trees</i>	Eratou	Eratou	Eraou
<i>Grandfather</i>	Toubouna	Toubouna	Toubouna
<i>What do you call this or that</i>	Owy Terra		Owy Terra

By this specimen, I think, it appears to demonstration that the language of New Zealand and Otaheite is radically the same. The language of the northern and southern parts of New Zealand differs chiefly in the pronunciation, as the same English word is pronounced *gate* in Middlesex, and *geate* in Yorkshire: and as the southern and northern words were not written down by the same person, one might possibly use more letters to produce the same sound than the other.

I must also observe, that it is the genius of the language, especially in the southern parts, to put some article before a noun, as we do *the* or *a*; the articles used here were generally *he* or *ko*: it is also common here to add the word *oeia* after another word, as an iteration, especially if it is an answer to a question; as we say *yes indeed, to be sure, really, certainly*: this sometimes led our gentlemen into the formation of words of an enormous length, judging by the ear only, without being able to refer each sound into its signification. An example will make this perfectly understood.

In the Bay of Islands there is a remarkable one, called by the natives MATU ARO. One of our gentlemen having

having asked a native the name of it, he answered with the particle, *Kematuaro*; the gentleman hearing the sound imperfectly, repeated his question, and the Indian repeating his answer, added *oeia*, which made the word *Kematuaroocia*; and thus it happened that in the log book I found *Matuaro* transformed into *Cumettiwarro-woia*: and the same transformation, by the same means, might happen to an English word. Suppose a native of New Zealand at Hackney church, to enquire "what village is this?" the answer would be, "it is Hackney indeed," and the New Zealander, if he had the use of letters, would probably record, for the information of his countrymen, that, during his residence among us, he had visited a village called "Ityshakneedede." The article used by the inhabitants of the South Sea islands, instead of *he* or *ku*, is *to* or *ta*, but the word *oeia* is common to both; and when we began to learn the language, it led us into many ridiculous mistakes.

But supposing these islands, and those in the South Seas to have been peopled originally from the same country, it will, perhaps, for ever remain a doubt what country that is: we were, however, unanimously of opinion, that the people did not come from America, which lies to the eastward; and except there should appear to be a continent to the southward, in a moderate latitude, it will follow that they came from the westward.

Thus far our navigation has certainly been unfavourable to the notion of a southern continent, for it has swept away at least three-fourths of the positions upon which it has been founded. The principal navigators, whose authority has been urged on this occasion, are Tasman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, the commander of a Dutch squadron, Quiros, and Foggewein; and the track of the Endeavour has demonstrated that the land seen by these persons, and supposed to be part of a continent, is not so; it has also totally subverted the theoretical arguments which have been brought to prove that the existence of a southern continent is necessary to

preserve an equilibrium between the two hemispheres; for upon this principle what we have already proved to be water, would render the southern hemisphere too light. In our route to the northward, after doubling Cape Horn, when we were in the latitude of 40 d. our longitude was 110 d. and in our return to the southward, after leaving Ulitea, when we were again in latitude 40 d. our longitude was 145 d. the difference is 35 d. When we were in latitude 30 d. the difference of longitude between the two tracks was 21 d. which continued till we were as low as 20 d. but a single view of the chart will convey a better idea of this than the most minute description: yet as upon a view of the chart it will appear that there is a large space extending quite to the Tropics, which neither we, nor any other navigators to our knowledge have explored, and as there will appear to be room enough for the Cape of a southern continent to extend northward into a low southern latitude, I shall give my reasons for believing there is no Cape, of any southern continent, to the northward of 40 d. south.

Notwithstanding what has been laid down by some geographers in their maps, and alledged by Mr Dalrymple, with respect to Quiros, it is improbable in the highest degree that he saw to the southward of two islands, which he discovered in latitude 25 or 26, and which I suppose may lie between the longitude of 130 d. and 140 d. W. any signs of a continent, much less any thing which, in his opinion, was a known or indubitable sign of such land; for if he had, he would certainly have sailed southward in search of it, and if he had sought, supposing the signs to have been indubitable, he must have found: the discovery of a southern continent was the ultimate object of Quiro's voyage, and no man appears to have had it more at heart; so that if he was in latitude 26 d. S. and in longitude 146 d. W. where Mr Dalrymple has placed the islands he discovered, it may fairly be inferred that no part of a southern continent extends to that latitude.

It

It will, I think, appear with equal evidence from the accounts of Roggewein's voyage, that between the longitudes of 130 d. and 150 d. W. there is no main land to the northward of 35 d. S. Mr Pingre, in a treatise concerning the transit of Venus, which he went out to observe, has inserted an extract of Roggewein's voyage, and a map of the South Seas; and for reasons which may be seen at large in his work, supposes him, after leaving Easter Island, which he places in latitude $28\frac{1}{2}$ S. longitude 123 d. W. to have steered S. W. as high as 34 d. S. and afterwards W. N. W. and if this was indeed his route, the proof that there is no main land to the northward of 35 d. S. is irrefragable. Mr Dalrymple, indeed, supposes his route to have been different, and that from Easter Isle he steered N. W. taking a course afterwards very little different from that of La Maire; but, I think, it is highly improbable that a man, who, at his own request, was sent to discover a southern continent, should take a course in which La Maire had already proved no continent could be found: it must, however, be confessed, that Roggewein's track cannot certainly be ascertained, because in the accounts that have been published of his voyage, neither longitudes nor latitudes are mentioned. As to myself I saw nothing that I thought a sign of land, in my route either to the northward, southward, or westward, till a few days before I made the east coast of New Zealand: I did, indeed, frequently see large flocks of birds, but they were generally such as are found at a very remote distance from any coast; and it is also true that I frequently saw pieces of rock-weed, but I could not infer the vicinity of land from these, because I have been informed, upon indubitable authority, that a considerable quantity of the beans called *ox-eyes*, which are known to grow nowhere but in the West Indies, are every year thrown up on the coast of Ireland, which is not less than twelve hundred leagues distant.

Thus have I given my reasons for thinking that there is no continent to the northward of latitude 40 d. S. of

what may lie farther to the southward than 40 d. I can give no opinion; but I am so far from wishing to discourage any future attempt, finally to determine a question which has long been an object of attention to many nations, that now this voyage has reduced the only possible scite of a continent in the southern hemisphere, north of latitude 40 d. to so small a space, I think it would be pity to leave that any longer unexamined, especially as the voyage may turn to good account, besides determining the principal question, if no continent should be found, by the discovery of the new islands in the Tropical regions, of which there is probably a great number, that no European vessel has ever yet visited. Tupia, from time to time, gave us an account of about one hundred and thirty, and in a chart, drawn by his own hand, he actually laid down no less than seventy-four.

The

The Run from New Zealand to Botany Bay, on the East Coast of New Holland, now called New South Wales; various Incidents that happened there; with some Account of the Country and its Inhabitants.

HAVING failed from Cape Farewell, which lies in latitude 40 d. 33 m. S. longitude 186 d. W. on Saturday the 31st of March, 1770, we steered westward, with a fresh gale at N. N. E. and at noon on the 2d of April, our latitude, by observation, was 40 d. our longitude from Cape Farewell 2 d. 31 m. W.

In the morning of the 9th, being in latitude 38 d. 29 m. S. we saw a tropic bird, which in so high a latitude is very uncommon.

In the morning of the 10th, being in latitude 38 d. 51 m. S. longitude 202 d. 43 m. W. we found the variation, by the amplitude, to be 11 d. 25 m. E. and, by the azimuth, 11 d. 20 m.

In the morning of the 11th, the variation was 13 d. 48 m. which is two degrees and an half more than the day before, though I expected to have found it less.

In the course of the 13th, being in latitude 39 d. 23 m. S. longitude 204 d. 2 m. W. I found the variation to be 12 d. 27 m. E. and in the morning of the 14th, it was 11 d. 30 m. this day we also saw some flying fish. On the 15th, we saw an egg bird and a gannet, and as these are birds that never go far from the land, we continued to sound all night, but had no ground with 130 fathom. At noon on the 16th, we were in latitude 39 d. 45 m. S. longitude 208 d. W. At about two o'clock the wind came about to the W. S. W. upon which we tacked and stood to the N. W. soon after a
small

small land-bird perched upon the rigging, but we had no ground with 120 fathom. At eight we wore and stood to the southward till twelve at night, and then wore and stood to the N. W. till four in the morning, when we again stood to the southward, having a fresh gale at W. S. W. with squalls and dark weather till nine, when the weather became clear, and there being little wind, we had an opportunity to take several observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of which gave 207 d. 56 m. W. longitude: our latitude at noon was 39 d. 36 m. S. We had now a hard gale from the southward, and a great sea from the same quarter, which obliged us to run under our fore-sail and mizen all night, during which we sounded every two hours, but had no ground with 120 fathom.

In the morning of the 18th, we saw two Port Egmont hens, and a Pintado bird, which are certain signs of approaching land, and, indeed, by our reckoning, we could not be far from it, for our longitude was now one degree to the westward of the east side of Van Diemen's land, according to the longitude laid down by Tasman, whom we could not suppose to have erred much in so short a run as from this land to New Zealand, and by our latitude we could not be above fifty or fifty-five leagues from the place whence he took his departure. All this day we had frequent squalls and a great swell.

At one in the morning of the 19th, we brought to and sounded, but had no ground with 130 fathom; at six we saw land extending from N. E. to W. at the distance of five or six leagues, having eighty fathom water with a fine sandy bottom.

We continued standing westward, with the wind at S. S. W. till eight, when we made all the sail we could, and bore away along the shore N. E. for the eastermost land in sight, being at this time in latitude 37 d. 58 m. S. and longitude 210 d. 39 m. W. The southermost point of land in sight, which bore from us W. 7 S. I judged to lie in latitude 38 d. longitude 211 d. 7 m. and gave

gave it the name of **POINT HICKS**, because Mr Hicks, the First Lieutenant, was the first who discovered it. To the southward of this Point no land was to be seen, though it was very clear in that quarter, and by our longitude, compared with that of Tasman, not as it is laid down in the printed charts, but in the extracts from Tasman's journal, published by Rembrantse, the body of Van Diemen's land ought to have borne due south; and, indeed, from the sudden falling of the sea after the wind abated, I had reason to think it did; yet as I did not see it, and as I found this coast trend N. E. and S. W. or rather more to the eastward, I cannot determine whether it joins to Van Diemen's land or not.

At noon, we were in latitude 37 d. 50 m. longitude 210 d. 20 m. W. The extreems of the land extended from N. W. to E. N. E. and a remarkable point bore N. 20 E. at the distance of about four leagues. This point rises in a round hillock, very much resembling the Ram Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, and therefore I called it by the same name. The variation, by an azimuth, taken this morning, was 3 d. 7 m. E. and what we had now seen of the land appeared low and level: the sea shore was a white sand, but the country within was green and woody. About one o'clock we saw three water spouts at once; two were between us and the shore, and the third at some distance, upon our larboard quarter: this phenomenon is so well known, that it is not necessary to give a particular description of it here.

At six o'clock in the evening, we shortened sail, and brought to for the night, having fifty-six fathom water, and a fine sandy bottom. The northermost land in sight then bore N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and a small island lying close to a point on the main, bore W. distant two leagues. This point, which I called **CAPE HOWE**, may be known by the trending of the coast, which is north on the one side, and south-west on the other; it may also be known by some round hills upon the main, just within it.

We

We brought to for the night, and at four in the morning of the 20th, made sail along shore to the northward. At six, the northermost land in sight bore N. N. W. and we were at this time about four leagues from the shore. At noon we were in latitude 36 d. 51 m. S. longitude 209 d. 53 m. W. and about three leagues distant from the shore. The weather being clear, gave us a good view of the country, which has a very pleasing appearance: it is of a moderate height, diversified by hills and vallies, ridges and plains, interspersed with a few lawns of no great extent, but, in general, covered with wood: the ascent of the hills and ridges is gentle, and the summits are not high.

We continued to sail along the shore to the northward, with a southerly wind, and in the afternoon we saw smoke in several places, by which we knew the country to be inhabited. At six in the evening, we shortened sail, and founded: we found forty-four fathom water, with a clear sandy bottom, and stood on under an easy sail till twelve, when we brought to for the night, and had ninety fathom water.

At four in the morning of the 21st, we made sail again, at the distance of about five leagues from the land, and at six, we were abreast of a high mountain, lying near the shore, which, on account of its figure, I called MOUNT DROMEDARY: under this mountain the shore forms a point, to which I gave the name of POINT DROMEDARY, and over it there is a peaked hillock. At this time, being in latitude 36 d. 18 m. S. longitude 209 d. 55 m. W. we found the variation to be 10 d. 42 m. E.

Between ten and eleven, Mr Green and I took several observations of the sun and moon, the mean result of which gave 209 d. 17 m. longitude W. By an observation made the day before, our longitude was 210 d. 9 m. W. from which, 20 m. being subtracted, there remains 209 d. 49 m. the longitude of the ship this day at noon, the mean of which, with this day's observation, gives 209 d. 33 m. by which I fix the longitude of

of this coast. At noon, our latitude was 35 d. 49 m. S. Cape Dromedary bore S. 30 W. at the distance of twelve leagues, and an open bay, in which were three or four small islands, bore N. W. by W. at the distance of five or six leagues. This bay seemed to afford but little shelter from the sea winds, and yet it is the only place where there appeared a probability of finding anchorage upon the whole coast.

We continued to steer along the shore N. by E. and N. N. E. at the distance of about three leagues, and saw smoke in many places near the beach. At five in the evening, we were abreast of a point of land which rose in a perpendicular cliff, and which, for that reason, I called POINT UPRIGHT. Our latitude was 35 d. 35 m. S. when this point bore from us due west, distant about two leagues: in this situation we had about thirty-one fathom water with a sandy bottom. At six in the evening, the wind falling, we hauled off E. N. E. and at this time the northermost land in sight bore N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.

At midnight, being in seventy fathom water, we brought to till four in the morning of the 22d, when we made sail in for the land; but at day break, found our situation nearly the same as it had been at five the evening before, by which it was apparent that we had been driven about three leagues to the southward, by a tide or current, during the night. After this we steered along the shore N. N. E. with a gentle breeze at S. W. and were so near the land as to distinguish several of the natives upon the beach, who appeared to be of a black, or very dark colour. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 35 d. 27 m. S. and longitude 209 d. 23 m. W. Cape Dromedary bore S. 28 W. distant nineteen leagues, a remarkable peaked hill, which resembled a square dove-house, with a dome at the top, and which, for that reason, I called the PIGEON HOUSE, bore N. 32 d. 30 m. W. and a small low island, which lay close under the shore, bore N. W. distant about two or three leagues. When I first discovered

covered this island, in the morning, I was in hopes, from its appearance, that I should have found shelter for the ship behind it, but when we came near it, it did not promise security even for the landing of a boat: I should however have attempted to send a boat on shore, if the wind had not veered to that direction, with a large hollow sea rolling in upon the land from the S. E. which indeed had been the case ever since we had been upon it. The coast still continued to be of a moderate height, forming alternately rocky points and sandy beaches; but within, between Mount Dromedary and the Pigeon House, we saw high mountains, which, except two, are covered with wood: these two lie inland behind the Pigeon House, and are remarkably flat at the top, with steep rocky cliffs all round them, as far as we could see. The trees which almost every where clothe this country, appear to be large and lofty. This day the variation was found to be 9 d. 50 m. E. and for the two last days, the latitude, by observation, was twelve or fourteen miles to the southward of the ship's account, which could have been the effect of nothing but a current setting in that direction. About four in the afternoon, being near five leagues from the land, we tacked and stood off S. E. and E. and the wind having veered in the night, from E. to N. E. and N. we tacked about four in the morning, and stood in, being then about nine or ten leagues from the shore. At eight, the wind began to die away, and soon after it was calm. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 35 d. 38 m. and our distance from the land about six leagues. Cape Dromedary bore S. 37 W. distant seventeen leagues, and the Pigeon House N. 40 W. in this situation we had seventy-four fathom water. In the afternoon, we had variable light airs and calms, till six in the evening, when a breeze sprung up at N. by W. at this time, being about four or five leagues from the shore, we had seventy fathom water. The Pigeon House bore N. 45 W. Mount Dromedary S. 30 W. and the northernmost land in sight N. 19 E.

We

We stood to the north-east till noon the next day, with a gentle breeze at N. W. and then we tacked and stood westward. At this time, our latitude, by observation, was 35 d. 10 m. S. and longitude 208 d. 51 m. W. A point of land which I had discovered on St. George's day, and which therefore I called **CAPE GEORGE**, bore W. distant nineteen miles, and the Pigeon House, (the latitude and longitude of which I found to be 35 d. 19 m. S. and 209 d. 42 m. W) S. 75° W. In the morning, we had found the variation, by amplitude, to be 7 d. 50 m. E. and by several azimuths 7 d. 54 m. E. We had a fresh breeze at N. W. from noon till three; it then came to the west, when we tacked and stood to the northward. At five in the evening, being about five or six leagues from the shore, with the Pigeon House bearing W. S. W. distant about nine leagues, we had eighty-six fathom water; and at eight, having thunder and lightning, with heavy squalls, we brought to in 120 fathom.

At three in the morning, we made sail again to the northward, having the advantage of a fresh gale at S. W. At noon, we were about three or four leagues from the shore, and in latitude 34 d. 22 m. S. longitude 208 d. 36 m. W. In the course of this day's run from the preceding noon, which was forty-five miles north-east, we saw smoke in several places near the beach. About two leagues to the northward of Cape George, the shore seemed to form a bay, which promised shelter from the north-east winds, but as the wind was with us, it was not in my power to look into it without beating up, which would have cost me more time than I was willing to spare. The north point of this bay, on account of its figure, I named **LONG NOSE**; its latitude is 35 d. 6 m. and about eight leagues north of it there lies a point, which, from the colour of the land about it, I called **RED POINT**: its latitude is 34 d. 29 m. and longitude 208 d. 45 m. W. To the north-west of Red Point, and a little way inland, stands a round hill, the top of which looks like the crown of a

bat. In the afternoon of this day, we had a light breeze at N. N. W. till five in the evening, when it fell calm: at this time we were between three and four leagues from the shore, and had forty-eight fathom water: the variation, by azimuth, was 8 d. 48 m. E. and the extremities of this land were from N. E. by N. to S. W. by S. Before it was dark, we saw smoke in several places along the shore, and a fire two or three times afterwards.

During the night we lay becalmed, driving in before the sea till one in the morning of the 26th, when we got a breeze from the land, with which we steered N. E. being then in thirty-eight fathom. At noon, it veered N. E. by N. and we were then in latitude 34 d. 10 m. S. longitude 208 d. 27 m. W. the land was distant about five leagues, and extended from S. 37 W. to N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. In this latitude, there are some white cliffs, which rise perpendicularly from the sea to a considerable height. We stood off the shore till two o'clock, and then tacked and stood in till six, when we were within four or five miles of it, and at that distance had fifty fathom water. The extremities of the land bore from S. 28 W. to N. 25 d. 30 E.

We now tacked and stood off till twelve, then tacked and stood in again till four in the morning of the 27th, when we made a trip off till daylight; and during all this time we lost ground, owing to the variableness of the winds. We continued at the distance of between four and five miles from the shore, till the afternoon, when we came within two miles, and I then hoisted out the pinnace and yawl to attempt a landing, but the pinnace proved to be so leaky, that I was obliged to hoist her in again. At this time we saw several of the natives walking briskly along the shore, four of whom carried a small canoe upon their shoulders: we flattered ourselves that they were going to put her into the water, and come off to the ship, but finding ourselves disappointed, I determined to go on shore in the yawl, with as many as it would carry: I embarked, therefore,

fore, with only Mr Banks, Dr Solander, Tupia, and four rowers: we pulled for that part of the shore where the Indians appeared, near which four small canoes were lying at the water's edge. The Indians sat down upon the rocks, and seemed to wait for our landing; but to our great regret, when we came within about a quarter of a mile, they ran away into the woods: we determined, however, to go ashore, and endeavour to procure an interview, but in this we were again disappointed, for we found so great a surf beating upon every part of the beach, that landing with our little boat was altogether impracticable: we were therefore obliged to be content with gazing at such objects as presented themselves from the water: the canoes, upon a near view, seemed very much to resemble those of the smaller fort at New Zealand. We observed, that among the trees on shore, which were not very large, there was no underwood; and could distinguish that many of them were of the palm kind, and some of them cabbage trees: after many a wishful look we were obliged to return, with our curiosity rather excited than satisfied, and about five in the evening got on board the ship. About this time it fell calm, and our situation was by no means agreeable; we were now not more than a mile and a half from the shore, and within some breakers, which lay to the southward; but happily a light breeze came off the land, and carried us out of danger. With this breeze we stood to the northward, and at day-break on the 28th, we discovered a bay, which seemed to be well sheltered from all winds, and into which, therefore, I determined to go with the ship. The pinnace being repaired, I sent her with the master to sound the entrance, while I kept turning up, having the wind right out.

At noon the mouth of the bay bore N. N. W. distant about a mile, and seeing a smoke on the shore, we directed our glasses to the spot, and soon discovered ten people, who, upon our nearer approach, left their fire, and retired to a little eminence, whence they could conveniently

veniently observe our motions. Soon after two canoes, each having two men on board, came to the shore just under the eminence, and the men joined the rest on the top of it. The pinnace, which had been sent ahead to sound, now approached the place, upon which all the Indians retired farther up the hill, except one, who hid himself among some rocks near the landing-place. As the pinnace proceeded along the shore, most of the people took the same route, and kept abreast of her at a distance; when she came back, the master told us, that in a cove, a little within the harbour, some of them had come down to the beach, and invited him to land, by many signs and words of which he knew not the meaning; but that all of them were armed with long pikes, and a wooden weapon, shaped somewhat like a cimeter. The Indians who had not followed the boat, seeing the ship approach, used many threatening gestures, and brandished their weapons; particularly two, who made a very singular appearance, for their faces seemed to have been dusted with a white powder, and their bodies painted with broad streaks of the same colour, which passing obliquely over their breasts and backs, looked not unlike the cross-belts worn by our soldiers; the same kind of streak were also drawn round their legs and thighs like broad garters: each of these men held in his hand the weapon that had been described to us as like a cimeter, which appeared to be about two feet and an half long, and they seemed to talk to each other with great earnestness.

We continued to stand into the bay, and early in the afternoon anchored under the south shore, about two miles within the entrance, in six fathom water, the south point bearing S. E. and the north point East. As we came in we saw, on both points of the bay, a few huts, and several of the natives, men, women, and children. Under the south head we saw four small canoes, with each one man on board, who were very busily employed in striking fish with a long pike or spear: they ventured almost into the surf, and were so intent upon what they

they were doing, that although the ship passed within a quarter of a mile of them, they scarcely turned their eyes towards her; possibly being deafened by the surf, and their attention wholly fixed upon their business, or sport, they neither saw nor heard her go past them.

The place where the ship had anchored was abreast of a small village, consisting of about six or eight houses; and while we were preparing to hoist out the boat, we saw an old woman, followed by three children, come out of the wood; she was loaded with fire-wood, and each of the children had also its little burden: when she came to the houses three more children, younger than the others, came out to meet her: she often looked at the ship, but expressed neither fear nor surprize: in a short time she kindled a fire, and the four canoes came in from fishing. The men landed, and having hauled up their boats, began to dress their dinner, to all appearance wholly unconcerned about us, though we were within half a mile of them. We thought it remarkable that of all the people we had yet seen, not one had the least appearance of clothing, the old woman herself being destitute even of a fig-leaf.

After dinner the boats were manned, and we set out from the ship, having Tupia of our party. We intended to land where we saw the people, and began to hope that as they had so little regarded the ship's coming into the bay, they would as little regard our coming on shore: in this, however, we were disappointed; for as soon as we approached the rocks, two of the men came down upon them to dispute our landing, and the rest ran away. Each of the two champions was armed with a lance about ten feet long, and a short stick which he seemed to handle as if it was a machine to assist him in managing or throwing the lance: they called to us in a very loud tone, and in a harsh dissonant language, of which neither we nor Tupia understood a single word: they brandished their weapons, and seemed resolved to defend their coast to the uttermost, though they were but two, and we were forty. I could not but admire their

their courage, and being very unwilling that hostilities should commence with such inequality of force between us, I ordered the boat to lie upon her oars: we then parlied by signs for about a quarter of an hour, and to bespeak their good-will, I threw them nails, beads, and other trifles, which they took up and seemed to be well pleased with. I then made signs that I wanted water, and, by all the means that I could devise, endeavoured to convince them that we would do them no harm: they now waved to us, and I was willing to interpret it as an invitation; but upon our putting the boat in, they came again to oppose us. One appeared to be a youth about nineteen or twenty, and the other a man of middle age: as I had now no other resource I fired a musquet between them. Upon the report, the youngest dropped a bundle of lances upon the rock, but recollecting himself in an instant he snatched them up again with great haste: a stone was then thrown at us, upon which I ordered a musquet to be fired with small shot, which struck the eldest upon the legs, and he immediately ran to one of the houses, which was distant about an hundred yards: I now hoped that our contest was over, and we immediately landed; but we had scarcely left the boat when he returned, and we then perceived that he had left the rock only to fetch a shield or target for his defence. As soon as he came up, he threw a lance at us, and his comrade another; they fell where we stood thickest, but happily hurt nobody. A third musquet with small shot was then fired at them, upon which one of them threw another lance, and both immediately ran away: if we had pursued, we might probably have taken one of them; but Mr Banks suggesting that the lances might be poisoned, I thought it not prudent to venture into the woods. We repaired immediately to the huts, in one of which we found the children, who had hidden themselves behind a shield and some bark; we peeped at them, but left them in their retreat, without their knowing that they had been discovered, and we threw into the house when we went away some beads.

beads, ribbons, pieces of cloth, and other presents, which we hoped would procure us the good-will of the inhabitants when they should return; but the lances which we found lying about, we took away with us, to the number of about fifty: they were from six to fifteen feet long, and all of them had four prongs in the manner of a fish-gig, each of which was pointed with fish-bone, and very sharp: we observed that they were smeared with a viscous substance of a green colour, which favoured the opinion of their being poisoned, though we afterwards discovered that it was a mistake: they appeared, by the sea-weed that we found sticking to them, to have been used in striking fish. Upon examining the canoes that lay upon the beach, we found them to be the worst we had ever seen: they were between twelve and fourteen feet long, and made of the bark of a tree in one piece, which was drawn together and tied up at each end, the middle being kept open by sticks which were placed across them from gunwale to gunwale as thwarts. We then searched for fresh water, but found none, except in a small hole which had been dug in the sand.

Having reimarked in our boat, we deposited our lances on board the ship, and then went over to the north point of the bay, where we had seen several of the inhabitants when we were entering it, but which we now found totally deserted. Here, however, we found fresh water, which trickled down from the top of the rocks, and stood in pools among the hollows at the bottom; but it was situated so as not to be procured for our use without difficulty.

In the morning of the 29th, therefore, I sent a party of men to that part of the shore where we first landed, with orders to dig holes in the sand where the water might gather; but going ashore myself with the gentlemen soon afterwards, we found, upon a more diligent search, a small stream, more than sufficient for our purpose.

Upon visiting the hut where we had seen the children,

dren, we were greatly mortified to find that the beads and ribbons which we had left there the night before, had not been moved from their places, and that not an Indian was to be seen.

Having sent some empty water-casks on shore, and left a party of men to cut wood, I went myself in the pinnace to sound, and examine the bay; during my excursions I saw several of the natives, but they all fled at my approach. In one of the places where I landed I found several small fires, and fresh muscles broiling upon them; here also I found some of the largest oyster shells I had ever seen.

As soon as the wooders and waterers came on board to dinner, ten or twelve of the natives came down to the place, and looked with great attention and curiosity at the casks, but did not touch them: they took away, however, the canoes which lay near the landing place, and again disappeared. In the afternoon, when our people were again ashore, sixteen or eighteen Indians, all armed, came boldly within about an hundred yards of them, and then stopped: two of them advanced somewhat nearer; and Mr Hicks, who commanded the party on shore, with another, advanced to meet them, holding out presents to them as he approached, and expressing kindness and amity by every sign he could think of, but all without effect; for before he could get up with them they retired, and it would have answered no purpose to pursue. In the evening, I went with Mr Banks and Dr Solander to a sandy cove on the north side of the bay, where, in three or four hauls with the seine, we took above three hundred weight of fish, which was equally divided among the ship's company.

The next morning, before day-break, the Indians came down to the houses that were abreast of the ship, and were heard frequently to shout very loud. As soon as it was light, they were seen walking along the beach; and soon after they retired to the woods, where, at the distance of about a mile from the shore, they kindled several fires.

Our

Our people went ashore as usual, and with them Mr Banks and Dr Solander, who, in search of plants, repaired to the woods. Our men, who were employed in cutting grass, being the farthest removed from the main body of the people, a company of fourteen or fifteen Indians advanced towards them, having sticks in their hands, which, according to the report of the Sergeant of the marines, shone like a musquet. The grass-cutters, upon seeing them approach, drew together, and repaired to the main body. The Indians, being encouraged by this appearance of a flight, pursued them; they stopped, however, when they were within about a furlong of them, and after shouting several times, went back into the woods. In the evening they came again in the same manner, stopped at the same distance, shouted, and retired. I followed them myself, alone and unarmed, for a considerable way along the shore, but I could not prevail upon them to stop.

This day Mr Green took the sun's meridian altitude a little within the south entrance of the bay, which gave the latitude 34 d. S. the variation of the needle was 11 d. 3 m. E.

Early the next morning, May the 1st, the body of Forby Sutherland, one of our seamen, who died the evening before, was buried near the watering-place; and from this incident I called the south point of this bay SUTHERLAND POINT. This day we resolved to make an excursion into the country. Mr Banks, Dr Solander, myself, and seven others, properly accoutred for the expedition, set out, and repaired first to the huts near the watering-place, whither some of the natives continued every day to resort; and though the little presents which we had left there before had not yet been taken away, we left others of somewhat more value, consisting of cloth, looking-glasses, combs, and beads, and then went up into the country. We found the soil to be either swamp or light sand, and the face of the country finely diversified by wood and lawn.

The trees are tall, strait, and without underwood, stand.

standing at such a distance from each other that the whole country, at least where the swamps do not render it incapable of cultivation, might be cultivated without cutting down one of them: between the trees the ground is covered with grass, of which there is great abundance, growing in tufts about as big as can well be grasped in the hand, which stand very close to each other.

We saw many houses of the inhabitants, and places where they had slept upon the grass without any shelter; but we saw only one of the people, who, the moment he discovered us, ran away. At all these places we left presents, hoping that at length they might produce confidence and good-will. We had a transient and imperfect view of a quadruped about as big as a rabbit: Mr Banks's greyhound, which was with us, got sight of it, and would probably have caught it, but the moment he set off he lamed himself against a stump which lay concealed in the long grass. We afterwards saw the dung of an animal which fed upon grass, and which we judged could not be less than a deer; and the footsteps of another, which was clawed like a dog, and seemed to be about as big as a wolf: we also tracked a small animal, whose foot resembled that of a polecat or weasel. The trees over our heads abounded with birds of various kinds, among which were many of exquisite beauty, particularly loriquets and cockatoos, which flew in flocks of several scores together. We found some wood which had been felled by the natives with a blunt instrument, and some that had been barked. The trees were not of many species; among others there was a large one which yielded a gum not unlike the *Sanguis draconis*; and in some of them steps had been cut at about three feet distance from each other, for the convenience of climbing them.

From this excursion we returned between three and four o'clock, and having dined on board, we went ashore again at the watering-place, where a party of men were filling casks. Mr Gore, the Second Lieutenant, had been

been sent out in the morning with a boat to dredge for oysters at the head of the bay; when he had performed this service, he went ashore, and having taken a midshipman with him, and sent the boat away, set out to join the waterers by land. In his way he fell in with a body of two and twenty Indians, who followed him, and were often not more than twenty yards distant; when Mr Gore perceived them so near, he stopped, and faced about, upon which they stopped also; and when he went on again, continued their pursuit: they did not however attack him, though they were all armed with lances, and he and the midshipman got in safety to the watering-place. The Indians, who had slackened their pursuit when they came in sight of the main body of our people, halted at about the distance of a quarter of a mile, where they stood still. Mr Monkhouse and two or three of the waterers took it in their head to march up to them; but seeing the Indians keep their ground till they came pretty near them, they were seized with a sudden fear very common to the rash and fool-hardy, and made a hasty retreat: this step, which insured the danger that it was taken to avoid, encouraged the Indians, and four of them running forward discharged their lances at the fugitives, with such force that, flying no less than forty yards, they went beyond them. As the Indians did not pursue, our people, recovering their spirits, stopped to collect the lances when they came up to the place where they lay; upon which the Indians, in their turn, began to retire. Just at this time I came up, with Mr Banks, Dr Solander, and Tupia; and being desirous to convince the Indians that we were neither afraid of them, nor intended them any mischief, we advanced towards them, making signs of expostulation and entreaty, but they could not be persuaded to wait till we could come up. Mr Gore told us, that he had seen some of them up the bay, who had invited him by signs to come on shore, which he, certainly with great prudence, declined.

The morning of the next day was so rainy, that we were

were all glad to stay on board. In the afternoon, however, it cleared up, and we made another excursion along the sea coast to the southward: we went ashore, and Mr Banks and Dr Solander gathered many plants; but besides these we saw nothing worthy of notice. At our first entering the woods, we met with three of the natives, who instantly ran away: more of them were seen by some of the people, but they all disappeared, with great precipitation, as soon as they found that they were discovered. By the boldness of these people at our first landing, and the terror that seized them at the sight of us afterwards, it appears that they were sufficiently intimidated by our fire-arms; not that we had any reason to think the people much hurt by the small-shot which we were obliged to fire at them, when they attacked us at our coming out of the boat; but they had probably seen the effects of them, from their lurking places, upon the birds that we had shot. Tupia, who was now become a good marksman, frequently strayed from us to shoot parrots; and he had told us, that while he was thus employed, he had once met with nine Indians, who, as soon as they perceived he saw them, ran from him, in great confusion and terror.

The next day, May 3d, twelve canoes, in each of which was a single Indian, came towards the watering-place, and were within half a mile of it a considerable time: they were employed in striking fish, upon which, like others that we had seen before, they were so intent that they seemed to regard nothing else. It happened, however, that a party of our people were out a shooting near the place, and one of the men, whose curiosity might at length perhaps be roused by the report of the fowling-pieces, was observed by Mr Banks to haul up his canoe upon the beach, and go towards the shooting party: in something more than a quarter of an hour he returned, launched his canoe, and went off in her to his companions. This incident makes it probable that the natives acquired a knowledge of the destructive power of our fire-arms, when we knew nothing of the matter;

for

noon, how-
er excursion
went ashore,
many plants;
notice. At
three of the
f them were
disappeared,
and that they
people at our
n at the sight
e sufficiently
had any rea-
the small-shot
when they at-
but they had
their lurking
Tupia, who
uently strayed
us, that while
with nine In-
saw them, ran
es, in each of
the watering-
a considerable
upon which,
were so intent
It happened,
ut a shooting
hose curiosity
report of the
ks to haul up
the shooting
of an hour he
in her to his
pable that the
uctive power
f the matter;
for

or this man was not seen by any of the party whose operations he had reconnoitered.

While Mr Banks was gathering plants near the watering-place, I went with Dr Solander and Mr Monkhouse to the head of the bay, that I might examine that part of the country, and make farther attempts to form some connection with the natives. In our way we met with eleven or twelve small canoes, with each a man in, probably the same that were afterwards abreast of the shore, who all made into shoal water upon our approach. We met other Indians on shore the first time we landed, who instantly took to their canoes, and paddled away. We went up the country to some distance, and found the face of it nearly the same with that which has been described already, but the soil was much richer; for instead of sand, I found a deep black mould, which I thought very fit for the production of grain of any kind. In the woods we found a tree which bore fruit that in colour and shape resembled a cherry; the juice had an agreeable tartness, though but little flavour. We found also interspersed some of the finest meadows in the world: some places, however, were rocky, but these were comparatively few. the stone is sandy, and might be used, with advantage, for building. When we returned to the boat, we saw some smoke upon another part of the coast, and went thither in hopes of meeting with the people, but, at our approach, these so ran away. We found six small canoes, and six fires very near the beach, with some muscles roasting upon them, and a few oysters lying near: by this we judged that there had been one man in each canoe, who having picked up some shell-fish were come ashore to eat them, and that each had made his separate fire for that purpose: we tasted of their cheer, and left them in return some strings of beads, and other things which we thought would please them. At the foot of a tree at this place we found a small well of fresh water, supplied by a spring; and the day being now far spent, we return-

returned to the ship. In the evening, Mr Banks made a little excursion with his gun, and found such a number of quails, resembling those in England, that he might have shot as many as he pleased; but his object was variety, and not number.

The next morning, May the 4th, as the wind would not permit me to sail, I sent out several parties into the country, to try again whether some intercourse could not be established with the natives. A midshipman who belonged to one of these parties, having straggled a long way from his companions, met with a very old man and woman, and some little children; they were sitting under a tree by the water side, and neither party saw the other till they were close together: the Indians shewed signs of fear, but did not attempt to run away. The man happened to have nothing to give them but a parrot that he had shot; this he offered, but they refused to accept it, withdrawing themselves from his hand either through fear or aversion. His stay with them was but short, for he saw several canoes near the beach fishing, and being alone, he feared they might come ashore and attack him: he said, that these people were very dark coloured, but not black; that the man and woman appeared to be very old, being both grey-headed; that the hair of the man's head was bushy, and his beard long and rough; that the woman's hair was cropped short, and both of them were stark naked.

Mr Monkhouse, the Surgeon, and one of the men, who were with another party near the watering-place, also strayed from their companions, and as they were coming out of the thicket, observed six Indians standing together, at the distance of about fifty yards. One of them pronounced a word very loud, which was supposed to be a signal, for a lance was immediately thrown at him out of the wood, which very narrowly missed him. When the Indians saw that the weapon had not taken effect, they ran away with the greatest precipitation; but on turning about towards the place whence

whence the lance had been thrown, he saw a young Indian, whom he judged to be about nineteen or twenty years old, come down from a tree, and he also ran away with such speed as made it hopeless to follow him. Mr Monkhouse was of opinion that he had been watched by these Indians in his passage through the thicket, and that the youth had been stationed in the tree, to discharge the lance at him, upon a signal as he should come by; but however this be, there could be no doubt but that he was the person who threw the lance.

In the afternoon, I went myself with a party over to the north shore, and while some of our people were hauling the seine, we made an excursion a few miles into the country, proceeding afterwards in the direction of the coast. We found this place without wood, and somewhat resembling our moors in England; the surface of the ground, however, was covered with a thin brush of plants, about as high as the knees: the hills near the coast are low, but others rise behind them, increasing by a gradual ascent to a considerable distance, with marshes and morasses between. When we returned to the boat, we found that our people had caught with the seine a great number of small fish, which are well known in the West Indies, and which our sailors call Leather Jackets, because their skin is remarkably thick. I had sent the Second Lieutenant out in the yawl a striking, and when we got back to the ship, we found that he also had been very successful. He had observed that the large sting-rays, of which there is great plenty in the bay, followed the flowing tide into very shallow water; he therefore took the opportunity of flood, and struck several in not more than two or three feet water: one of them weighed no less than two hundred and forty pounds after his entrails were taken out.

The next morning, May the 5th, as the wind still continued northerly, I sent out the yawl again, and the people struck one still larger, for when his entrails were

taken out he weighed three hundred and thirty-six pounds.

The great quantity of plants which Mr Banks and Dr Solander collected in this place induced me to give it the name of BOTANY BAY. It is situated in the latitude of 34 d. S. longitude 208 d. 37 m. W. It is capacious, safe, and convenient, and may be known by the land on the sea-coast, which is nearly level, and of a moderate height; in general higher than it is farther inland, with steep rocky cliffs next the sea, which have the appearance of a long island lying close under the shore. The harbour lies about the middle of this land, and in approaching it from the southward, is discovered before the ship comes abreast of it; but from the northward it is not discovered so soon: the entrance is a little more than a quarter of a mile broad, and lies in W. N. W. To sail into it the southern shore should be kept on board, till the ship is within a small bare island, which lies close under the north shore; within this island the deepest water on that side is seven fathom, shallowing to five a good way up. At a considerable distance from the south shore there is a shoal, reaching from the inner south point quite to the head of the harbour; but over towards the north and north-west shore there is a channel of twelve or fourteen feet at low water, for three or four leagues, up to a place where there is three or four fathom, but here I found very little fresh water.

We anchored near the south shore, about a mile within the entrance, for the convenience of sailing with a southerly wind, and because I thought it the best situation for watering; but I afterwards found a very fine stream on the north shore, in the first sandy cove within the island, before which a ship might lie almost landlocked, and procure wood as well as water in great abundance. Wood, indeed, is every where plenty, but I saw only two kinds which may be considered as timber. These trees are as large, or larger than the English oak,

oak, and one of them has not a very different appearance: this is the same that yields the reddish gum like *sanguis draconis*, and the wood is heavy, hard, and dark-coloured, like *lignum vitæ*: the other grows tall and straight, something like the pine; and the wood of this, which has some resemblance to the live oak of America, is also hard and heavy. There are a few shrubs, and several kinds of the palm; mangroves also grow in great plenty near the head of the bay. The country in general is level, low, and woody, as far as we could see. The woods, as I have before observed, abound with birds of exquisite beauty, particularly of the parrot kind; we found also crows here, exactly the same with those in England. About the head of the harbour, where there are large flats of sand and mud, there is great plenty of water-fowl, most of which were altogether unknown to us: one of the most remarkable was black and white, much larger than a swan, and in shape somewhat resembling a pelican. On these banks of sand and mud there are great quantities of oysters, mussels, cockles, and other shell-fish, which seem to be the principal subsistence of the inhabitants, who go into shoal water with their little canoes, and pick them out with their hands. We did not observe that they eat any of them raw, nor do they always go on shore to dress them, for they have frequently fires in their canoes for that purpose. They do not, however, subsist wholly upon this food, for they catch a variety of other fish, some of which they strike with gigs, and some they take with hook and line.

All the inhabitants that we saw were stark naked: they did not appear to be numerous, nor to live in societies, but, like other animals, were scattered about along the coast, and in the woods.

Of their manner of life, however, we could know but little, as we were never able to form the least connection with them: after the first contest at our landing, they would never come near enough to parley; nor

nor did they touch a single article of all that we had left at their huts, and the places they frequented, on purpose for them to take away.

During my stay in this harbour, I caused the English colours to be displayed on shore every day, and the ship's name, and the date of the year, to be inscribed upon one of the trees near the watering-place.

It is high water here at the full and change of the moon about eight o'clock, and the tide rises and falls perpendicularly between four and five feet.

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

The

E.

we had left
d, on pur-

d the Eng-
ay, and the
be inscribed
ce.

ange of the
fes and falls

*The Range from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay; with a
farther Account of the Country, its Inhabitants, and
Productions.*

AT day-break, on Sunday the 6th of May, 1770, we set sail from Botany Bay, with a light breeze at N. W. which soon after coming to the southward, we steered along the shore N. N. E. and at noon, our latitude, by observation, was 33 d. 50 m. S. At this time we were between two and three miles distant from the land, and abreast of a bay, or harbour, in which there appeared to be good anchorage, and which I called PORT JACKSON. This harbour lies three leagues to the northward of Botany Bay: the variation, by several azimuths, appeared to be 8 d. E. At sun-set the northermost land in sight bore N. 26 E. and some broken land, that seemed to form a bay, bore N. 40 W. distant four leagues. This bay, which lies in latitude 33 d. 42 m. I called BROKEN BAY. We steered along the shore N. N. E. all night, at the distance of about three leagues from the land, having from thirty-two to thirty-six fathom water, with a hard sandy bottom.

Soon after sun-rise on the 7th, I took several azimuths, with four needles belonging to the azimuth compass, the mean result of which gave the variation 7 d. 56 m. E. At noon our latitude, by observation, was 33 d. 22 m. S. we were about three leagues from the shore; the northermost land in sight bore N. 19 E. and some lands which projected in three bluff points, and which, for that reason, I called CAPE THREE POINTS; bore S. W. distant five leagues. Our longitude

The

tude from Botany Bay was 19 m. E. In the afternoon we saw smoke in several places upon the shore, and in the evening, found the variation to be 8 d. 25 m. E.

At this time we were between two and three miles from the shore, in twenty-eight fathom; and at noon the next day, we had not advanced one step to the northward. We stood off shore, with the winds northerly, till twelve at night, and, at the distance of about five leagues, had seventy fathom; at the distance of six leagues we had eighty fathom, which is the extent of the soundings; for at the distance of ten leagues, we had no ground with 150 fathom.

The wind continuing northerly till the morning of the 10th, we continued to stand in and off the shore, with very little change of situation in other respects; but a gale then springing up at S. W. we made the best of our way along the shore to the northward. At sun-rise, our latitude was 33 d. 2 m. S. and the variation 8 d. E. At nine in the forenoon, we passed a remarkable hill, which stood a little way inland, and somewhat resembled the crown of a hat: and at noon, our latitude, by observation, was 32 d. 53 m. S. and our longitude 208 d. W. We were about two leagues distant from the land, which extended from N. 41 E. to S. 41 W. and a small round rock, or island, which lay close under the land, bore S. 82 W. distant between three and four leagues. At four in the afternoon we passed, at the distance of about a mile, a low rocky point, which I called POINT STEPHENS, on the north side of which is an inlet, which I called PORT STEPHENS: this inlet appeared to me, from the mast head, to be sheltered from all winds. It lies in latitude 32 d. 40 m. longitude 207 d. 51 m. and at the entrance are three small islands, two of which are high; and on the main near the shore are some high round hills, which at a distance appear like islands. In passing this bay, at the distance of two or three miles from the shore, our

our soundings were from thirty-three to twenty-seven fathom, from which I conjectured that there must be a sufficient depth of water within it. At a little distance within land, we saw smoke in several places; and at half an hour past five, the northermost land in sight bore N. 36 E. and Point Stephens S. W. distant four leagues. Our soundings in the night, were from forty-eight to sixty-two fathom, at the distance of between three and four leagues from the shore, which made in two hillocks.

This Point I called CAPE HAWKE: it lies in the latitude of 32 d. 14 m. S. longitude 207 d. 30 m. W. and at four o'clock in the morning of the 11th, bore W. distant about eight miles; at the same time the northermost land in sight bore N. 6 E. and appeared like an island. At noon, this land bore N. 8 E. the northermost land in sight N. 13 E. and Cape Hawke S. 37 W. Our latitude, by observation, was 32 d. 2 m. S. which was twelve miles to the southward of that given by the log; so that probably we had a current setting that way: by the morning amplitude and azimuth, the variation was 9 d. 10 m. E. During our run along the shore, in the afternoon, we saw smoke in several places, at a little distance from the beach, and one upon the top of a hill, which was the first we had seen upon elevated ground since our arrival upon the coast. At sun-set, we had twenty-three fathom, at the distance of a league and a half from the shore: the northermost land then bore N. 13 E. and three hills, remarkably large and high, lying contiguous to each other, and not far from the beach, N. N. W. As these hills bore some resemblance to each other, we called them the THREE BROTHERS. They lie in latitude 31 d. 40 m. and may be seen fourteen or sixteen leagues. We steered N. E. by N. all night, having from twenty-seven to sixty-seven fathom, at the distance of between two and six leagues from the shore.

At day-break, we steered north, for the northermost land in sight. At noon, the 12th, we were four leagues from

from the shore, and by observation, in latitude 31 d. 18 m. S. which was fifteen miles to the southward of that given by the log; our longitude 206 d. 58 m. W. In the afternoon, we stood in for the land, where we saw smoke in several places, till six in the evening, when being within three or four miles of it, and in twenty-four fathom of water, we stood off with a fresh breeze at N. and N. N. W. till midnight, when we had 118 fathom, at the distance of eight leagues from the land, and then tacked. At three in the morning, the wind veered to the westward, when we tacked and stood to the northward. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 30 d. 43 m. S. and our longitude 206 d. 45 m. W. At this time we were between three and four leagues from the shore, the northermost part of which bore from us N. 13 W. and a point, or head land, on which we saw fires that produced a great quantity of smoke, bore W. distant four leagues. To this Point I gave the name of SMOKEY CAPE: it is of a considerable height, and over the pitch of the Point is a round hillock; within it are two others, much higher and larger, and within them the land is very low. Our latitude was 30 d. 31 m. S. longitude 206 d. 54 m. W. this day the observed latitude was only five miles south of the log. We saw smoke in several parts along the coast, besides that seen upon Smokey Cape.

In the afternoon, the wind being at N. E. we stood off and on, and at three or four miles distance from the shore had thirty fathom water: the wind afterwards coming cross off land, we stood to the northward, having from thirty to twenty-one fathom, at the distance of four or five miles from the shore.

At five in the morning of the 14th, the wind veered to the north, and blew fresh, attended with squalls: at eight, it began to thunder and rain, and in about an hour it fell calm, which gave us an opportunity to sound, and we had eighty-six fathom at between four and five leagues from the shore: soon after this we had a gale from the southward, with which we steered N. by W. for

for the northermost land in sight. At noon, we were about four leagues from the shore, and by observation, in latitude 30 d. 22 m. which was nine miles to the southward of our reckoning, longitude 206 d. 39 m. W. Some lands near the shore, of a considerable height, bore W.

As we advanced to the northward, from Botany Bay, the land gradually increased in height, so that in this latitude it may be called a hilly country. Between this latitude and the Bay, it exhibits a pleasing variety of ridges, hills, vallies, and plains, all clothed with wood, of the same appearance with that which has been particularly described: the land near the shore is in general low and sandy, except the points, which are rocky, and over many of them are high hills, which, at their first rising out of the water, have the appearance of islands. In the afternoon, we had some small rocky islands between us and the land, the southermost of which lies in latitude 30 d. 10 m. and the northermost in 29 d. 58 m. and somewhat more than two leagues from the land: about two miles without the northermost island we had thirty-three fathom water. Having the advantage of a moon, we steered along the shore all night, in the direction of N. and N. by E. keeping at the distance of about three leagues from the land, and having from twenty to twenty-five fathom water. As soon as it was light, having a fresh gale, we made all the sail we could, and at nine o'clock in the morning, being about a league from the shore, we discovered smoke in many places, and having recourse to our glasses, we saw about twenty of the natives, who had each a large bundle upon his back, which we conjectured to be palm leaves for covering their houses: we continued to observe them above an hour, during which they walked upon the beach, and up a path that led over a hill of a gentle ascent, behind which we lost sight of them: not one of them was observed to stop and look towards us, but they trudged along, to all appearance, without the least emotion either of curiosity or surprize, though it is impossible they

should not have seen the ship by a casual glance as they walked along the shore; and though she must, with respect to every other object they had yet seen, have been little less stupendous and unaccountable than a floating mountain with all its woods would have been to us. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 28 d. 39 m. S. and longitude 206 d. 27 m. W. A high point of land, which I named **CAPE BYRON**, bore N. W. by W. at the distance of three miles. It lies in latitude 28 d. 37 m. 30 s. S. longitude 206 d. 30 m. W. and may be known by a remarkable sharp peaked mountain, which lies inland, and bears from it N. W. by W. From this point, the land trends N. 13 W. inland it is high and hilly, but low near the shore; to the southward of the point it is also low and level. We continued to steer along the shore with a fresh gale, till sun-set, when we suddenly discovered breakers a head, directly in the ship's course, and also on our larboard bow. At this time we were about five miles from the land, and had twenty fathom water: we hauled up east till eight, when we had run eight miles, and increased our depth of water to forty-four fathom: we then brought to, with the ship's head to the eastward, and lay upon this tack till ten, when, having increased our sounding to seventy-eight fathom, we wore, and lay with the ship's head to the land till five in the morning, when we made sail, and at daylight were greatly surprized to find ourselves farther to the southward, than we had been the evening before, though the wind had been southerly, and blown fresh all night: we now saw the breakers again within us, and passed them at the distance of one league. They lie in latitude 28 d. 8 m. S. stretching off east two leagues from a point of land, under which is a small island. Their situation may always be known by the peaked mountain which has been just mentioned, and which bears from them S. W. by W. for this reason I have named it **MOUNT WARNING**. It lies seven or eight leagues inland, in latitude 28 d. 22 m. S. The land about it is high and hilly, but it is of itself sufficiently conspicuous

to be at once distinguished from every other object. The point off which these shoals lie, I have named **POINT DANGER**. To the northward of this point the land is low, and trends N. W. by N. but it soon turns again more to the northward.

At noon we were about two leagues from the land, and, by observation, in latitude 27 d. 46 m. S. which was seventeen miles to the southward of the log; our longitude was 206 d. 26 m. W. Mount Warning bore S. 26 W. distant fourteen leagues, and the northermost land in sight bore N. We pursued our course along the shore, at the distance of about two leagues, in the direction of N. 4 E till between four and five in the afternoon, when we discovered breakers on our larboard bow. Our depth of water was thirty-seven fathom, and at sunset, the northermost land bore N. by W. the breakers N. W. by W. distant four miles, and the northermost land set at noon, which formed a point, and to which I gave the name of **POINT LOOK-OUT**, W. distant five or six miles, in the latitude of 27 d. 6 m. On the north side of this point, the shore forms a wide open bay, which I called **MORETON'S BAY**, in the bottom of which the land is so low that I could but just see it from the top-mast head. The breakers lie between three and four miles from Point Look-out; and at this time we had a great sea from the southward, which broke upon them very high. We stood on N. N. E. till eight o'clock, when, having passed the breakers, and deepened our water to fifty-two fathom, we brought to till midnight, when we made sail again to the N. N. E.

At four in the morning of the 17th, we had 135 fathom, and when the day broke, I perceived that, during the night, I had got much farther northward, and from the shore, than I expected from the course we steered, for we were distant at least seven leagues; I therefore hauled in N. W. by W. with a fresh gale at S. S. W. The land that was farthest to the north the night before, now bore S. S. W. distant six leagues, and I gave it the

name of CAPE MORETON, it being the north point of Moreton's Bay : its latitude is 26 d. 56 m. and its longitude is 206 d. 28 m. From Cape Moreton the land trends away west, farther than can be seen, for there is a small space, where at this time no land is visible, and some on board having also observed that the sea looked paler than usual, were of opinion that the bottom of Moreton's Bay opened into a river : we had here thirty-four fathom water, and a fine sandy bottom : this alone would have produced the change that had been observed in the colour of the water ; and it was by no means necessary to suppose a river to account for the land at the bottom of the Bay not being visible, for, supposing the land there to be as low as we knew it to be in a hundred other parts of the coast, it would have been impossible to see it from the station of the ship ; however, if any future navigator should be disposed to determine the question, whether there is or is not a river in this place, which the wind would not permit us to do, the situation may always be found by three hills which lie to the northward of it, in the latitude of 26 d. 53 m. These hills lie but a little way inland, and not far from each other : they are remarkable for the singular form of their elevation, which very much resembles a glass-house, and for which reason I called them the GLASS HOUSES : the northermost of the three is the highest and largest : there are also several other peaked hills inland to the northward of these, but they are not nearly so remarkable. At noon our latitude was, by observation, 26 d. 28 m. S. which was ten miles to the northward of the log, a circumstance which had never before happened upon this coast ; our longitude was 206 d. 46 m. At this time we were between two and three leagues from the land, and had twenty-four fathom water. A low bluff point, which was the south head of a sandy bay, bore N. 62 W. distant three leagues, and the northermost point of land in sight bore N. 4 E. This day we saw smoke in several places, and some at a considerable distance inland.

outh point of
 and its lon-
 ton the land:
 for there is
 visible, and
 the sea looked
 the bottom of
 here thirty-
 : this alone
 ad been ob-
 was by no
 ount for the
 visible, for,
 e knew it to
 would have
 of the ship;
 e disposed to
 is not a river
 permit us to
 y three hills
 tude of 26 d.
 and, and not
 or the singu-
 ch resembles
 ed them the
 three is the
 other peaked
 they are not
 ide was, by
 miles to the
 h had never
 ngitude was
 een two and
 enty-four fa-
 as the south
 hree leagues,
 bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E.
 ad some at a

In

In steering along the shore at the distance of two leagues, our soundings were from twenty-four to thirty-two fathom, with a sandy bottom. At six in the evening, the northermost point of land bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant four leagues; at ten it bore N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and as we had seen no land to the northward of it, we brought to, not well knowing which way to steer.

At two in the morning of the 18th, however, we made sail with the wind at S. W. and at daylight, we saw the land extending as far as N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. the point we had set the night before bore S. W. by W. distant between three and four leagues. It lies in latitude 25 d. 58 m. longitude 206 d. 48 m. W. the land within it is of a moderate and equal height, but the point itself is so unequal, that it looks like two small islands lying under the land, for which reason I gave it the name of DOUBLE ISLAND POINT; it may also be known by the white cliffs on the north side of it. Here the land trends to the N. W. and forms a large open bay, the bottom of which is so low a flat, that from the deck it could scarcely be seen. In crossing this bay, our depth of water was from thirty to twenty-two fathom, with a white sandy-bottom. At noon we were about three leagues from the shore, in latitude 25 d. 34 m. S. longitude 206 d. 45 m. W. Double Island Point bore S. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and the northermost land in sight N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. This part of the coast, which is of a moderate height, is more barren than any we had seen, and the soil more sandy. With our glasses we could discover that the sands, which lay in great patches of many acres, were moveable, and that some of them had not been long in the place they possessed; for we saw in several parts, trees half buried, the tops of which were still green; and in others, the naked trunks of such as the sand had surronuded long enough to destroy. In other places the woods appeared to be low and shrubby, and we saw no signs of inhabitants. Two water snakes swam by the ship: they were beautifully spotted; and in every respect like land snakes,

snakes, except that their tails were broad and flat, probably to serve them instead of fins in swimming. In the morning of this day, the variation was 8 d. 20 m. E. and in the evening 8 d. 36 m. During the night we continued our course to the northward, with a light breeze from the land, being distant from it between two and three leagues, and having from twenty-three to twenty-seven fathom with a fine sandy bottom.

At noon on the 19th, we were about four miles from the land, with only thirteen fathom. Our latitude was 25 d. 4 m. and the northernmost land in sight bore N. 21 W. distant eight miles. At one o'clock, being still four miles distant from the shore, but having seventeen fathom water, we passed a black bluff head, or point of land, upon which a great number of the natives were assembled, and which, therefore, I called **INDIAN HEAD**: it lies in latitude 25 d. 3 m. About four miles N. by W. of this head, is another very like it, from whence the land trends away somewhat more to the westward: next to the sea it is low and sandy, and behind it nothing was to be seen, even from the mast-head. Near Indian Head we saw more of the natives, and upon the neighbouring shore fires by night, and smoke by day. We kept to the northward all night, at the distance of from four miles to four leagues from the shore, and with a depth of water from seventeen to thirty-four fathom.

At day-break on the 20th, the northernmost land bore from us W. S. W. and seemed to end in a point, from which we discovered a reef running out to the northward as far as we could see. We had hauled our wind to the westward before it was light, and continued the course till we saw the breakers upon our lee bow. We now edged away N. W. and N. N. W. along the east side of the shoal, from two to one mile distant, having regular soundings from thirteen to seven fathom, with a fine sandy bottom. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 24 d. 26 m. which was thirteen miles to the north-

and flat, pro-
 mising. In
 as 8 d. 20 m.
 ing the night
 , with a light
 m it between
 twenty-three
 bottom.

our miles from
 r latitude was
 eight bore N.
 ock, being still
 ving seventeen
 ad, or point of
 e natives were
 lled INDIAN
 out four miles
 like it, from
 t more to the
 andy, and be-
 om the mast-
 of the natives,
 by night, and
 rd all night, at
 leagues from the
 a seventeen to

most land bore
 a point, from
 t to the north-
 ailed our wind
 continued the
 lee bow. We
 along the east
 distant, having
 fathom, with a
 de, by observa-
 en miles to the
 north-

northward of the log: we judged the extreme point of the shoal to bear from us about N. W. and the point from which it seemed to run out, bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant twenty miles. This point I named SANDY CAPE, from two very large patches of white sand which lay upon it. It is sufficiently high to be seen at the distance of twelve leagues, in clear weather, and lies in latitude 24 d. 45 m. longitude 206 d. 51 m. the land trends from it S. W. as far as can be seen. We kept along the east side of the shoal till two in the afternoon, when, judging that there was a sufficient depth of water upon it to allow passage for the ship, I sent the boat ahead to sound, and upon her making the signal for more than five fathoms, we hauled our wind, and stood over the tail of it in six fathom. At this time we were in latitude 24 d. 22 m. and Sandy Cape bore S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant eight leagues; but the direction of the shoal is nearest N. N. W. and S. S. E. It is remarkable that when on board the ship we had six fathom, the boat, which was scarcely a quarter of a mile to the southward, had little more than five, and that immediately after six fathom we had thirteen, and then twenty, as fast as the man could cast the lead: from these circumstances, I conjectured that the west side of the shoal was steep. This shoal I called BREAK SEA SPIT, because we had now smooth water, and to the southward of it we had always a high sea from the S. E. At six in the evening, the land of Sandy Cape extended from S. 17 E. to S. 27 E. at the distance of eight leagues; our depth of water was twenty-three fathom: with the same soundings we stood to the westward all night.

At seven in the morning of the 21st, we saw, from the mast-head, the land of Sandy Cape bearing S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about thirteen leagues: at nine, we discovered land to the westward, and soon after saw smoke in several places. Our depth of water was now decreased to seventeen fathom, and by noon we had no more than thirteen, though we were seven leagues from the land, which

which extended from S. by W. to W. N. W. Our latitude at this time was 24 d. 28 m. S.

For a few days past we had seen several of the sea birds called boobies, not having met with any of them before; last night a small flock of them passed the ship, and went away to the N. W. and in the morning, from about half an hour before sun-rise, to half an hour after, flights of them were continually coming from the N. N. W. and flying to the S. S. E. nor was one of them seen to fly in any other direction; we therefore conjectured that there was a lagoon, river, or inlet of shallow water, in the bottom of the deep bay, to the southward of us, whither these birds resorted to feed in the day, and that not far to the northward there were some islands to which they repaired in the night. To this bay I gave the name of HERVEY'S BAY, in honour of Captain Hervey. In the afternoon, we stood in for the land, steering S. W. with a gentle breeze at S. E. till four o'clock, when, being in latitude 24 d. 36 m. about two leagues from the shore, and having nine fathom water, we bore away along the coast N. W. by W. and at the same time could see land extending to the S. S. E. about eight leagues. Near the sea the land is very low, but within there are some lofty hills, all thickly clothed with wood. While we were running along the shore, we shallowed our water from nine to seven fathom, and at one time we had but six, which determined us to anchor for the night.

At six in the morning of the 22d, we weighed, with a gentle breeze from the southward, and steered N. W. & W. edging in for the land till we got within two miles of it, with water from seven to eleven fathom: we then steered N. N. W. as the land lay, and at noon, our latitude was 24 d. 19 m. We continued in the same course, at the same distance, with from twelve fathom to seven, till five in the evening, when we were abreast of the south point of a large open bay, in which I intended to anchor. During this course, we discover-
ed

ed with our glasses that the land was covered with palm-nut-trees, which we had not seen from the time of our leaving the islands within the Tropic: we also saw two men walking along the shore, who did not condescend to take the least notice of us. In the evening, having hauled close upon a wind, and made two or three trips, we anchored about eight o'clock in five fathom, with a fine sandy bottom. The south point of the bay bore E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant two miles, the north point N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and about the same distance from the shore.

Early the next morning I went ashore, with a party of men, in order to examine the country, accompanied by Mr Banks, Dr Solander, the other gentlemen, and Tupia: the wind blew fresh, and we found it so cold, that being at some distance from the shore, we took our cloaks as a necessary equipment for the voyage. We landed a little within the south point of the bay, where we found a channel leading into a large lagoon: this channel I proceeded to examine, and found three fathom water till I got about a mile up it, where I met with a shoal, upon which there was little more than one fathom, but having passed over it, I had three fathom again. The entrance of this channel lies close to the south point of the bay, being formed by the shore on the east, and on the west by a large spit of sand: it is about a quarter of a mile broad, and lies in S. by W. In this place there is room for a few ships to lie in great security, and a small stream of fresh water; I would have rowed into the lagoon, but was prevented by shallows. We found several bogs, and swamps of salt water, upon which, and by the sides of the lagoon, grows the true mangrove, such as is found in the West Indies, and the first of the kind that we had met with. In the branches of these mangroves there were many nests of a remarkable kind of ant, that was as green as grass: when the branches were disturbed they came out in great numbers, and punished the offender by a much sharper bite than ever we had felt from the same kind of animal before. Upon these mangroves also we saw

small green caterpillars in great numbers: their bodies were thick set with hairs, and they were ranged upon the leaves side by side like a file of soldiers, to the number of twenty or thirty together: when we touched them, we found that the hair on their bodies had the quality of a nettle, and gave us a much more acute, though less durable pain. The country here is manifestly worse than about Botany Bay: the soil is dry and sandy, but the sides of the hills are covered with trees, which grow separately, without underwood. We found here the tree that yields a gum like the *Sanguis draconis*; but it is somewhat different from the trees of the same kind which we had seen before, for the leaves are longer; and hang down like those of the weeping willow. We found also much less gum upon them, which is contrary to the established opinion, that the hotter the climate, the more gums exude. Upon a plant also, which yielded a yellow gum, there was less than upon the same kind of plant in Botany Bay. Among the shoals and sand-banks we saw many large birds, some in particular of the same kind that we had seen in Botany Bay, much bigger than swans, which we judged to be pelicans; but they were so shy that we could not get within gun-shot of them. Upon the shore we saw a species of the bustard, one of which we shot, it was as large as a turkey, and weighed seventeen pounds and an half. We all agreed that this was the best bird we had eaten since we left England; and, in honour of it, we called this inlet BUSTARD BAY. It lies in latitude 24 d. 4 m. longitude 208 d. 18 m. The sea seemed to abound with fish; but, unhappily, we tore our seine all to pieces at the first haul: upon the mud-banks, under the mangroves, we found innumerable oysters of various kinds; among others the hammer-oyster, and a large proportion of small pearl-oysters: if in deeper water there is equal plenty of such oysters at their full growth, a pearl fishery might certainly be established here to very great advantage.

The people who were left on board the ship said, that while we were in the woods about twenty of the na-

their bodies
 nged upon
 to the num-
 ve touched
 es had the
 more acute,
 re is mani-
 l is dry and
 with trees,
 We found
is draconis ;
 of the same
 leaves are
 eeping wil-
 nem, which
 e hotter the
 plant also,
 than upon
 Among the
 birds, some
 seen in Bo-
 we judged
 ve could not
 ore we saw
 shot, it was
 pounds and
 best bird we
 honour of
 it lies in lati-
 the sea seem-
 we tore our
 n the mud-
 nnumerable
 ne hammer-
 rl-oysters : if
 ch oysters at
 certainly be
 hip said, that
 y of the na-

tives came down to the beach, abreast of her, and hav-
 ing looked at her some time; went away; but we that
 were ashore, though we saw smoke in many places, saw
 no people: the smoke was at places too distant for
 us to get to them by land, except one, to which we
 repaired: we found ten small fires still burning with-
 in a few paces of each other; but the people were
 gone: we saw near them several vessels of bark, which
 we supposed to have contained water, and some shells
 and fish-bones, the remains of a recent meal. We saw
 also, lying upon the ground, several pieces of soft bark,
 about the length and breadth of a man, which we ima-
 gined might be their beds; and, on the windward side
 of the fires, a small shade, about a foot and a half high,
 of the same substance. The whole was in a thicket of
 close trees, which afforded good shelter from the wind.
 The place seemed to be much trodden, and as we saw
 no house, nor any remains of a house, we were inclined
 to believe that as these people had no clothes, they had
 no dwelling; but spent their nights, among the other
 commoners of Nature, in the open air: and Tupia
 himself, with an air of superiority and compassion, shook
 his head, and said that they were *Taata Enos*, 'poor
 wretches.' I measured the perpendicular height of the
 last tide, and found it to be eight feet above low-water
 mark, and from the time of low-water this day, I found
 that it must be high-water at the full and change of the
 moon at eight o'clock.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 24th, we
 weighed, and with a gentle breeze at south, made sail out
 of the bay. In standing out our soundings were from
 five to fifteen fathom; and at day-light, when we were
 in the greatest depth, and abreast of the north head of
 the bay, we discovered breakers stretching out from it
 N. N. E. between two and three miles, with a rock at
 the outermost point of them, just above water. While
 we were passing these rocks, at the distance of about
 half a mile, we had from fifteen to twenty fathom, and
 as soon as we had passed them, we hauled along shore

W. N. W. for the farthest land we had in sight. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 23 d. 52 m. S. the north part of Bustard Bay bore S. 62 E. distant ten miles; and the northernmost land in sight N. 60 W. the longitude was 208 d. 37 m. and our distance from the nearest shore six miles, with fourteen fathom water.

Till five in the afternoon it was calm, but afterwards we steered before the wind N. W. as the land lay till ten at night, and then brought to, having had all along fourteen and fifteen fathom.

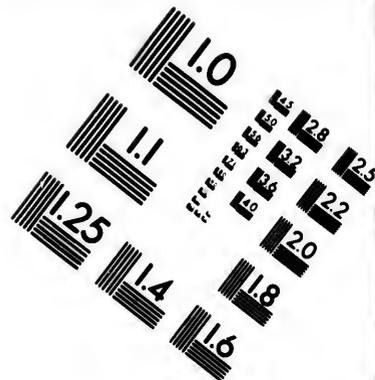
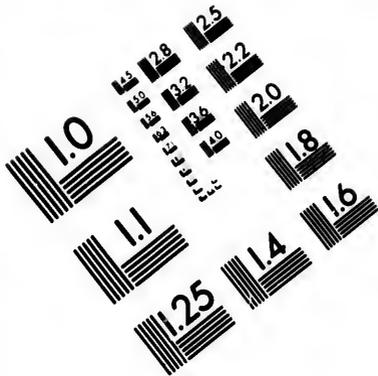
At five in the morning of the 25th, we made sail; and at day-light the northernmost point of the main bore N. 70 W. Soon after we saw more land, making like islands, and bearing N. W. by N. At nine we were abreast of the point, at the distance of one mile, with fourteen fathom water. This point I found to lie directly under the Tropic of Capricorn; and, for that reason, I called it CAPE CAPRICORN: its longitude is 208 d. 58 m. W. it is of a considerable height, looks white and barren, and may be known by some islands which lie to the N. W. of it, and some small rocks at the distance of about a league S. E. On the west side of the Cape there appeared to be a lagoon, and on the two spits which formed the entrance we saw an incredible number of the large birds that resemble a pelican. The northernmost land now in sight bore from Cape Capricorn N. 24 W. and appeared to be an island; but the main land trended W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. which course we steered, having from fifteen to six fathom, and from six to nine, with a hard sandy bottom. At noon our latitude, by observation, was 23 d. 24 m. S. Cape Capricorn bore S. 60 E. distant two leagues; and a small island N. by E. two miles: in this situation we had nine fathom, being about four miles from the main, which, next the sea, is low and sandy, except the points which are high and rocky. The country inland is hilly, but by no means of a pleasing aspect. We continued to stand to the N. W. till four o'clock in the afternoon, when it fell calm; and we soon after anchored in twelve fathom,

fathom, having the main land and islands in a manner all round us, and Cape Capricorn bearing S. 54 E. distant four leagues. In the night we found the tide rise and fall near seven feet; and the flood to set to the westward, and the ebb to the eastward, which is just contrary to what we found when we were at anchor to the eastward of Bustard Bay.

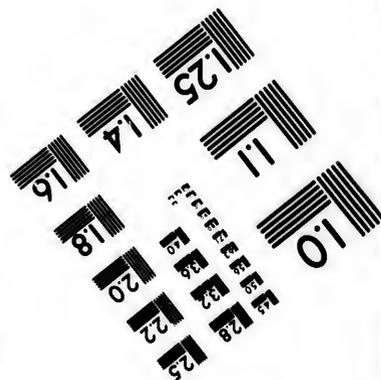
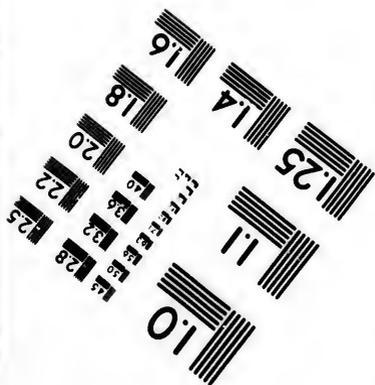
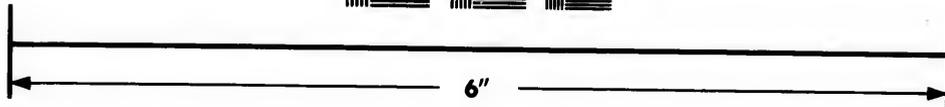
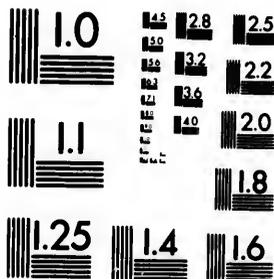
At six in the morning of the 26th, we weighed, with a gentle breeze at south, and stood away to the N. W. between the outermost range of islands and the main, leaving several small islands between the main and the ship, which we passed at a very little distance: our soundings being irregular, from twelve to four fathom, I sent a boat ahead to sound. At noon we were about three miles from the main, and about the same distance from the islands without us: our latitude, by observation, was 23 d. 7 m. S. the main land here is high and mountainous; the islands which lie off it are also most of them high, and of a small circuit, having an appearance rather of barrenness than fertility. At this time we saw smoke in many places at a considerable distance inland, and, therefore, conjectured that there might be a lagoon, river, or inlet running up the country, the rather as we had passed two places which had the appearance of being such; but our depth of water was too little to encourage me to venture where I should probably have less. We had not stood to the northward above an hour, before we suddenly fell into three fathom; upon which I anchored, and sent away the master to sound the channel which lay to leeward of us, between the northermost island and the main: it appeared to be pretty broad, but I suspected that it was shallow, and so indeed it was found; for the master reported at his return that in many places he had only two fathom and an half, and where we lay at anchor we had only sixteen feet, which was not two feet more than the ship drew.

While the master was sounding the channel, Mr Banks tried to fish from the cabin windows with hook and





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

28 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
16
18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

4
5
6
7
8
9
10

and line : the water was too shallow for fish ; but the ground was almost covered with crabs, which readily took the bait, and some times held it so fast in their claws, that they did not quit their hold till they were considerably above water.

These crabs were of two sorts, and both of them such as we had not seen before : one of them was adorned with the finest blue that can be imagined, in every respect equal to the ultramarine, with which all his claws, and every joint was deeply tinged : the under part of him was white, and so exquisitely polished that in colour and brightness it exactly resembled the white of old china : the other was also marked with the ultramarine upon his joints, and his toes, but somewhat more sparingly ; and his back was marked with three brown spots which had a singular appearance. The people who had been out with the boat to sound, reported, that upon an island where we had observed two fires, they had seen several of the inhabitants, who called to them, and seemed very desirous that they should land. In the evening, the wind veered to E. N. E. which gave us an opportunity to stretch three or four miles back by the way we came ; after which, the wind shifted to the South, and obliged us again to anchor in six fathom.

At five in the morning of the 27th, I sent away the master to search for a passage between the islands, while we got the ship under sail ; and, as soon as it was light, we followed the boat, which made a signal that a passage had been found. As soon as we got again into deep water, we made sail to the northward, as the land lay, with soundings from nine fathom to fifteen, and some small islands still without us. At noon we were about two leagues distant from the main ; and, by observation, in latitude 22 d. 53 m. S. The northernmost point of land in sight now bore N. N. W. distant ten miles. To this point I gave the name of CAPE MANIFOLD, from the number of high hills which appeared over it : it lies in latitude 22 d. 43 m. S. and distant about

about seventeen leagues from Cape Capricorn, in the direction of N. 26 W. Between these capes the shore forms a large bay, which I called **KEPPEL BAY**; and I also distinguished the islands by the name of **KEPPEL'S ISLANDS**. In this bay there is good anchorage; but what refreshments it may afford, I know not: we caught no fish, though we were at anchor; but probably there is fresh water in several places, as both the islands and the main are inhabited. We saw smoke and fires upon the main; and upon the islands we saw people.

At three in the afternoon, we passed Cape Manifold, from which the land trends N. N. W. The land of the Cape is high, rising in hills directly from the sea; and may be known by three islands which lie off it, one of them near the shore, and the other two eight miles out at sea. One of these islands is low and flat, and the other high and round. At six o'clock in the evening we brought to, when the northermost part of the main in sight bore N. W. and some islands which lie off it N. 31 W. Our soundings after twelve o'clock were from twenty to twenty-five fathom, and in the night from thirty to thirty-four.

At day-break on the 28th, we made sail, Cape Manifold bearing S. by E. distant eight leagues, and the islands which I had set the night before were distant four miles in the same direction. The farthest visible point of the main bore N. 67 W. at the distance of twenty-two miles; but we could see several islands to the northward of this direction. At nine o'clock in the forenoon, we were abreast of the point which I called **CAPE TOWNSHEND**. It lies in latitude 22 d. 15 m. longitude 209 d. 43 m. the land is high and level, and rather naked than woody. Several islands lie to the northward of it, at the distance of four or five miles out at sea; three or four leagues to the S. E. the shore forms a bay, in the bottom of which there appeared to be an inlet or harbour. To the westward of the Cape the land trends S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and there forms a very large bay

bay which turns to the eastward, and probably communicates with the inlet, and makes the land of the Cape an island. As soon as we got round this Cape, we hauled our wind to the westward, in order to get within the islands, which lie scattered in the bay in great numbers, and extend out to sea as far as the eye could reach even from the mast-head: these islands vary both in height and circuit from each other; so that, although they are very numerous, no two of them are alike. We had not stood long upon a wind before we came into shoal water, and were obliged to tack at once to avoid it. Having sent a boat ahead, I bore away W. by N. many small islands, rocks, and shoals, lying between us and the main, and many of a larger extent without us: our soundings till near noon were from fourteen to seventeen fathom, when the boat made the signal for meeting with shoal water: upon this we hauled close upon a wind to the eastward, but suddenly fell into three fathom and a quarter; we immediately dropped an anchor, which brought the ship up with all her sails standing. When the ship was brought up, we had four fathom, with a coarse sandy bottom, and found a strong tide setting to the N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. at the rate of near three miles an hour, by which we were so suddenly carried upon the shoal. Our latitude, by observation, was 22 d. 8 m. S. Cape Townshend bore E. 16 S. distant thirteen miles; and the westernmost part of the main in sight W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. At this time a great number of islands lay all round us.

In the afternoon, having sounded round the ship, and found that there was water sufficient to carry her over the shoal, we weighed, and about three o'clock made sail and stood to the westward, as the land lay, having sent a boat ahead to sound. At six in the evening, we anchored in ten fathom, with a sandy bottom, at about two miles distance from the main; the westernmost part of which bore W. N. W. and a great number of islands, lying a long way without us, were still in sight.

At

At five o'clock the next morning, the 29th, I sent away the master with two boats to sound the entrance of an inlet which bore from us west, at about the distance of a league, into which I intended to go with the ship, that I might wait a few days till the moon should increase, and in the mean time examine the country. As soon as the ship could be got under sail, the boats made the signal for anchorage; upon which we stood in, and anchored in five fathom water, about a league within the entrance of the inlet; which, as I observed a tide to flow and ebb considerably, I judged to be a river that ran up the country to a considerable distance. In this place I had thoughts of laying the ship ashore, and clearing her bottom; I therefore landed with the master in search of a convenient place for that purpose, and was accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander. We found walking here exceedingly troublesome, for the ground was covered with a kind of grass, the seeds of which were very sharp and bearded backwards; so that whenever they stuck into our clothes, which, indeed, was at every step, they worked forwards by means of the beard, till they got at the flesh; and at the same time we were surrounded by a cloud of musquitos, which incessantly tormented us with their stings. We soon met with several places where the ship might conveniently be laid ashore; but to our great disappointment we could find no fresh water. We proceeded, however, up the country, where we found gum trees like those that we had seen before, and observed that here also the gum was in very small quantities. Upon the branches of these trees, and some others, we found ants' nests, made of clay, as big as a bushel, something like those described in Sir Hans Sloan's Natural History of Jamaica, vol. ii. page 221, tab. 258, but not so smooth: the ants which inhabited these nests were small, and their bodies white. But upon another species of the tree we found a small black ant, which perforated all the twigs, and having worked out the pith, occupied the pipe which had contained it; yet the parts in which these

insects had thus formed a lodgment, and in which they swarmed in amazing numbers, bore leaves and flowers, and appeared to be in as flourishing a state as those that were found. We found also an incredible number of butterflies, so that, for the space of three or four acres, the air was so crowded with them, that millions were to be seen in every direction, at the same time that every branch and twig was covered with others that were not upon the wing. We found here also a small fish of a singular kind; it was about the size of a minnow, and had two very strong breast fins: we found it in places that were quite dry, where we supposed it might have been left by the tide; but it did not seem to have become languid by the want of water; for, upon our approach, it leaped away, by the help of the breast fins, as nimbly as a frog: neither indeed did it seem to prefer water to land; for when we found it in the water, it frequently leaped out, and pursued its way upon dry ground: we also observed that when it was in places where small stones were standing above the surface of the water at a little distance from each other, it chose rather to leap from stone to stone, than to pass through the water; and we saw several of them pass entirely over puddles in this manner, till they came to dry ground, and then leap away.

In the afternoon we renewed our search after fresh water, but without success; and therefore I determined to make my stay here but short: however, having observed from an eminence that the inlet penetrated a considerable way into the country, I determined to trace it in the morning.

At sun-rise on the 30th, I went ashore, and climbing a considerable hill, I took a view of the coast and the islands that lie off it, with their bearings, having an azimuth compass with me for that purpose; but I observed that the needle differed very considerably in its position, even to thirty degrees, in some places more, in others less; and once I found it differ from itself no less than two points in the distance of fourteen feet. I took
up

up some of the loose stones that lay upon the ground, and applied them to the needle, but they produced no effect; and I therefore concluded that there was iron ore in the hills, of which I had remarked other indications, both here and in the neighbouring parts. After I had made my observations upon the hill, I proceeded with Dr Solander up the inlet; I set out with the first of the flood, and long before high-water I had advanced above eight leagues. Its breadth thus far was from two to five miles, upon a S. W. by S. direction; but here it opened every way, and formed a large lake, which to the N. W. communicated with the sea; and I not only saw the sea in this direction, but found the tide of flood coming strongly in from that point: I also observed an arm of this lake extending to the eastward, and it is not improbable that it may communicate with the sea in the bottom of the bay, which lies to the westward of Cape Townshend. On the south side of the lake is a ridge of high hills which I was very desirous to climb; but it being high-water, and the day far spent, I was afraid of being bewildered among the shoals in the night, especially as the weather was dark and rainy; and therefore I made the best of my way to the ship. In this excursion I saw only two people, and they were at a distance; they followed the boat along the shore a good way, but, the tide running strongly in my favour, I could not prudently wait for them: I saw, however, several fires in one direction, and smoke in another, but they also were at a distance.

While I was tracing the inlet with Dr Solander, Mr Banks was endeavouring to penetrate into the country, where several of the people who had leave to go ashore were also rambling about. Mr Banks and his party found their course obstructed by a swamp, covered with mangroves, which, however, they resolved to pass; the mud was almost knee deep, yet they resolutely went on; but before they got half way, they repented of their undertaking: the bottom was covered with

branches of trees interwoven with each other, sometimes they kept their footing upon them, sometimes their feet slipt through, and sometimes they were so entangled among them, that they were forced to free themselves by groping in the mud and slime with their hands. In about an hour however they crossed it, and judged it might be about a quarter of a mile over. After a short walk they came up to a place where there had been four small fires, and near them some shells and bones of fish, that had been roasted: they found also heaps of grass laid together, where four or five people appeared to have slept. The Second Lieutenant, Mr Gore, who was at another place, saw a little water lying at the bottom of a gully, and near it the track of a large animal: some bustards were also seen, but none of them shot, nor any other bird except a few of the beautiful lori-quets which we had seen in Botany Bay. Mr Gore, and one of the midshipmen, who were in different places, said that they had heard the voices of Indians near them, but had seen none: the country in general appeared sandy and barren, and being destitute of fresh water, it cannot be supposed to have any settled inhabitants. The deep gullies which were worn by torrents from the hills, prove, that at certain seasons the rains here are very copious and heavy.

The inlet in which the ship lay, I called THIRSTY SOUND, because it afforded us no fresh water. It lies in latitude 22 d. 10 m. S. and longitude 210 d. 18 m. W. and may be known by a group of small islands lying under the shore, from two to five leagues distant, in the direction of N. W. and by another group of islands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at sea. Over each of the points that form the entrance is a high round hill, which on the N. W. is a peninsula, that at high-water is surrounded by the sea: they are bold to both the shores, and the distance between them is about two miles. In this inlet is good anchorage in seven, six, five, and four fathom; and places

places very convenient for laying a ship down, where, at spring-tides, the water does not rise less than sixteen or eighteen feet. The tide flows at the full and change of the moon about eleven o'clock. I have already observed that here is no fresh water, nor could we procure refreshment of any other kind: we saw two turtles, but we were not able to take either of them: neither did we catch either fish or wild-fowl, except a few small land-birds: we saw indeed the same sorts of water-fowl as in Botany Bay, but they were so shy that we could not get a shot at them.

As I had not, therefore, a single inducement to stay longer in this place, I weighed anchor at six o'clock in the morning of Thursday the 31st of May, and put to sea. We stood to the N. W. with a fresh breeze at S. S. E. and kept without the group of islands that lie in shore, and to the N. W. of Thirsty Sound, as there appeared to be no safe passage between them and the main: at the same time we had a number of islands without us, extending as far as we could see: during our run in this direction our depth of water was ten, eight, and nine fathom. At noon, the west part of Thirsty Sound, which I have called PIER HEAD, bore S. 36 E. distant five leagues; the east point of the other inlet, which communicates with the sound, bore S. by W. distant two leagues; the group of islands, just mentioned, lay between us and the point, and the farthest part of the main in sight, on the other side of the inlet, bore N. W. Our latitude, by observation, was 21 d. 53 m.

At half an hour after twelve, the boat, which was sounding ahead, made the signal for shoal water, and we immediately hauled our wind to the N. E. At this time we had seven fathom, at the next cast five, and at the next three, upon which we instantly dropped an anchor, that brought the ship up. Pier Head, the north-west point of Thirsty Sound, bore S. E. distant six leagues, being half way between the islands which lie off the east point of the western inlet, and three small islands which lie directly without them. It was now
the

the first of the flood, which we found to set N. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and having founded about the shoal, upon which we had three fathom, and found deep water all round it, we got under sail, and having hauled round the three islands that have been just mentioned, came to an anchor under the lee of them, in fifteen fathom water; and the weather being dark, hazy, and rainy, we remained there till seven o'clock in the morning of the 1st of June.

At this time we got again under sail, and stood to the N. W. with a fresh breeze at S. S. E. having the main land in sight, and a number of islands all round us, some of which lay out at sea as far as the eye could reach. The western inlet, called Broad Sound, we had now all open; at the entrance, it is at least nine or ten leagues wide: in it, and before it lie several islands, and probably shoals also; for our soundings were very irregular, varying suddenly from ten to four fathom. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 21 d. 29 m. S. a point of land which forms the north-west entrance into Broad Sound, and which I have named CAPE PALMERSTON, lying in latitude 21 d. 30 m. longitude 210 d. 54 m. W. bore W. by N. distant three leagues. Our latitude was 21 d. 27 m. our longitude 210 d. 57 m. Between this Cape and Cape Townshend lies the bay which I have called the BAY of INLETS.

We continued to stand to the N. W. and N. W. by N. as the land lay, under an easy sail, having a boat ahead to sound: at first the soundings were very irregular from nine to four fathom; but afterwards they were regular, from nine to eleven. At eight in the evening, being about two leagues from the main land, we anchored in eleven fathom, with a sandy bottom; and soon after we found the tide setting with a slow motion to the westward.

At one o'clock it was slack, or low-water; and at half an hour after two the ship tended to the eastward, and rode so till six in the morning of the 2d, when the tide had risen eleven feet. We now got under sail, and
stood

stood away in the direction of the coast N. N. W. From what we had observed of the tide during the night, it is plain, that the flood came from the N. W. whereas the preceding day, and several days before, it came from the S. E. nor was this the first, or even second time that we had remarked the same thing.

At sun rise this morning, we found the variation to be 60 d. 45 m. E. and in steering along the shore, between the island and the main, at the distance of about two leagues from the main, and three or four from the island, our soundings were regular from twelve to nine fathom; but about eleven o'clock in the forenoon we were again embarrassed with shoal water, having at one time not more than three fathom; yet we got clear, without casting anchor. At noon, we were about two leagues from the main, and four from the islands within us. Our latitude, by observation, was 20 d. 56 m. and a high promontory, which I named CAPE HILLSBOROUGH, bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant seven miles. The land here is diversified by mountains, hills, plains, and valleys, and seems to be well clothed with herbage and wood: the islands which lie parallel to the coast, and from five to eight or nine miles distant, are of various height and extent; scarcely any of them are more than five leagues in circumference, and many are not four miles: besides this chain of islands, which lies at a distance from the coast, there are others much less, which lie under the land, from which we saw smoke rising in different places. We continued to steer along the shore at the distance of about two leagues, with regular soundings from nine to ten fathom. At sun-set, the farthest point of the main bore N. 48 W. and to the northward of this lay some high land, which I took to be an island, and of which the north west point bore 41 W. but not being sure of a passage, I came to an anchor about eight o'clock in the evening, in ten fathom water, with a muddy bottom. About ten we had a tide setting to the northward, and at two it had fallen nine feet; after this it began to rise, and the flood came from the northward,

ward, in the direction of the islands which lay out to sea; a plain indication that there was no passage to the N. W. This however had not appeared at day-break, when we got under sail, and stood to the N. W. At eight o'clock the next morning, we discovered low land quite across what we took for an opening, which proved to be a bay, about five or six leagues deep; upon this we hauled our wind to the eastward round the north point of the bay, which at this time bore from us N. E. by N. distant four leagues: from this point we found the land trend way N. by W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and a streight or passage between it and a large island, or islands, lying parallel to it. Having the tide of ebb in our favour, we stood for this passage; and at noon were just within the entrance: our latitude, by observation, was 20 d. 26 m. S. Cape Hillsborough bore S. by E. distant ten leagues; and the north point of the bay S. 19 W. distant four miles. This point which I named CAPE CONWAY, lies in latitude 26 d. 36 m. S. longitude 211 d. 28 m. W. and the bay which lies between this Cape and Cape Hillsborough I called REPULSE BAY. The greatest depth of water which we found in it was thirteen fathom, and the least eight. In all parts there was safe anchorage, and I believe that, upon proper examination, some good harbours would be found in it; especially at the north side, within Cape Conway; for just within that Cape there lie two or three small islands, which alone would shelter that side of the bay from the southerly and south easterly winds, that seem to prevail here as a Trade. Among the many islands that lie upon this coast, there is one more remarkable than the rest; it is of a small circuit, very high and peaked, and lies E. by S. ten miles from Cape Conway, at the south end of the passage. In the afternoon, we steered through this passage, which we found to be from three to seven miles broad, and eight or nine leagues in length, N. by W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. It is formed by the main on the west, and by the islands on the east, one of which is at least five leagues in length: our depth of water in running through
was

was from twenty to five and twenty fathom, with good anchorage every where, and the whole passage may be considered as one safe harbour, exclusive of the small bays and coves which abound on each side, where ships might lie as in a basin. The land both upon the main and islands is high, and diversified by hill and valley, wood and lawn, with a green and pleasant appearance. On one of the islands we discovered with our glasses two men and a woman, and a canoe with an outrigger, which appeared to be larger, and of a construction very different from those of bark tied together at the ends, which we had seen upon other parts of the coast; we hoped therefore that the people here had made some farther advances beyond mere animal life than those that we had seen before. At six o'clock in the evening, we were nearly the length of the north end of the passage; the north westernmost point of the main in sight bore N. 54 W. and the north end of the island N. N. E. with an open sea between the two points. As this passage was discovered on Whitsunday, I called it WHITSUNDAY'S PASSAGE, and I called the islands that form it CUMBERLAND ISLANDS, in honour of his Royal Highness the Duke. We kept under an easy sail, with the lead going all night, being at the distance of about three leagues from the shore, and having from twenty-one to twenty-three fathom water.

At day-break of the 4th, we were abreast of the point which had been the farthest in sight to the north west the evening before, which I named CAPE GLOUCESTER. It is a lofty promontory, in latitude 19 d. 59 m. S. longitude 211 d. 49 m. W. and may be known by an island which lies out at sea N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. at the distance of five or six leagues from it, and which I called HOLBORNE ISLE; there are also islands lying under the land between Holborne Isle, and Whitsunday's Passage. On the west side of Cape Gloucester the land trends away S. W. and S. S. W. and forms a deep bay, the bottom of which I could but just see from the mast head: it is very low, and a continuation of the low land

which we had seen at the bottom of Repulse Bay. This bay I called EDGCUMBE BAY, but without staying to look into it, we continued our course to the westward, for the farthest land we could see in that direction, which bore W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. and appeared very high. At noon, we were about three leagues from the shore, by observation, in latitude 19 d. 47 m. S. and Cape Gloucester bore S. 63 E. distant seven leagues and an half. At six in the evening, we were abreast of the westernmost point just mentioned, at about three miles distance, and because it rises abruptly from the low lands which surround it, I called it CAPE UPSTART. It lies in latitude 19 d. 39 m. S. longitude 212 d. 32 m. W. fourteen leagues W. N. W. from Cape Gloucester, and is of a height sufficient to be seen at the distance of twelve leagues: inland there are some high hills or mountains, which, like the Cape, afford but a barren prospect.

Having passed this Cape, we continued standing to the W. N. W. as the land lay, under an easy sail, having from sixteen to ten fathom, till two o'clock in the morning of the 5th, when we fell into seven fathom; upon which we hauled our wind to the northward, judging ourselves to be very near land: at day-break, we found our conjecture to be true, being within little more than two leagues of it. In this part of the coast, the land, being very low, is nearer than it appears to be, though it is diversified with here and there a hill. At noon, we were about four leagues from the land, in fifteen fathom water, and our latitude, by observation, was 19 d. 12 m. S. Cape Upstart bearing S. 32 d. 30 m. E. distant twelve leagues. About this time some very large columns of smoke were seen rising from the low lands. At sun-set, the preceding night, when we were close under Cape Upstart, the variation was nearly 9 d. E. and at sun-rise this day, it was no more than 5 d. 35 m. I judged therefore that it had been influenced by iron ore, or other magnetical matter, contained under the surface of the earth.

We

We continued to steer W. N. W. as the land lay, with twelve or fourteen fathom water, till noon on the 6th, when our latitude, by observation, was 19 d. 1 m. S. and we had the mouth of a bay all open, extending from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant two leagues. This bay, which I named CLEAVELAND BAY, appeared to be about five or six miles in extent every way: the east point I named CAPE CLEAVELAND, and the west, which had the appearance of an island, MAGNETICAL ISLE, as we perceived that the compass did not traverse well when we were near it: they are both high, and so is the main land within them, the whole forming a surface the most rugged, rocky, and barren of any we had seen upon the coast; it was not, however, without inhabitants, for we saw smoke in several parts of the bottom of the bay. The northernmost land that was in sight at this time, bore N. W. and it had the appearance of an island, for we could not trace the main land farther than W. by N. We steered W. N. W. keeping the main land on board, the outermost part of which, at sunset, bore W. by N. but without it lay high land, which we judged not to be part of it.

At day-break on the 7th, we were abreast of the eastern part of this land, which we found to be a group of islands, lying about five leagues from the main: at this time, being between the two shores, we advanced slowly to the N. W. till noon, when our latitude, by observation, was 18 d. 49 m. S. and our distance from the main about five leagues: the north-west part of it bore from us N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. the islands extending from N. to E. and the nearest being distant about two miles: Cape Cleaveland bore S. 50 E. distant eighteen leagues. Our soundings, in the course that we had sailed, between this time and the preceding noon, were from fourteen to eleven fathom.

In the afternoon, we saw several large columns of smoke upon the main; we saw also some people and canoes, and upon one of the islands what had the appearance of cocoa-nut trees: as a few of these nuts would

now have been very acceptable, I sent Lieutenant Hicks ashore, and with him went Mr Banks and Dr Solander, to see what refreshment could be procured, while I kept standing in for the island with the ship. About seven o'clock in the evening they returned, with an account that what we had taken for cocoa-nut trees, were a small kind of cabbage palm, and that, except about fourteen or fifteen plants, they had met with nothing worth bringing away. While they were ashore they saw none of the people, but just as they had put off, one of them came very near the beach, and shouted with a loud voice; it was so dark that they could not see him, however they turned towards the shore, but when he heard the boat putting back, he ran away or hid himself, for they could not get a glimpse of him, and though they shouted, he made no reply.

After the return of the boats, we stood away N. by W. for the northermost land in sight, of which we were abreast at three o'clock in the morning of the 8th, having passed all the islands three or four hours before. This land, on account of its figure, I named POINT HILLOCK: it is of a considerable height, and may be known by a round hillock, or rock, which joins to the Point, but appears to be detached from it. Between this Cape and Magnetical Isle the shore forms a large bay, which I called HALIFAX BAY: before it lay the group of islands which has been just mentioned, and some others, at a less distance from the shore. By these islands the Bay is sheltered from all winds, and it affords good anchorage. The land near the beach, in the bottom of the Bay, is low and woody, but farther back it is one continued ridge of high land, which appeared to be barren and rocky.

Having passed Point Hillock, we continued standing to the N. N. W. as the land trended, having the advantage of a light moon. At six we were abreast of a point of land which lies N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant eleven miles from Point Hillock, which I named CAPE SANDWICH. Between these two points the land is very high, and the

nant Hicks
Dr Solan-
ured, while
ip. About
with an ac-
trees, were
cept about
ith nothing
ashore they
put off, one
uted with a
not see him,
ut when he
hid himself,
and though

away N. by
ich we were
he 8th, hav-
ours before.
ned POINT
and may be
joins to the
. Between
rans a large
re it lay the
tioned, and
e. By these
nd it affords
in the bot-
ther back it
appeared to

ed standing
g the advan-
ft of a point
eleven miles
ANDWICH.
y high, and
the

the surface is craggy and barren. Cape Sandwich may be known not only by the high craggy land over it, but by a small island which lies east of it, at the distance of a mile, and some others that lie about two leagues to the northward. From Cape Sandwich the land trends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which I called ROCKINGHAM BAY, where there appears to be good shelter, and good anchorage, but I did not stay to examine it; I kept ranging along the shore to the northward, for a cluster of small islands, which lie off the northern point of the Bay. Between the three outermost of these islands, and those near the shore, I found a channel of about a mile broad, through which I passed, and upon one of the nearest islands we saw, with our glasses, about thirty of the natives, men, women, and children, all standing together, and looking with great attention at the ship; the first instance of curiosity that we had seen among them: they were all stark naked, with short hair, and of the same complexion with those we had seen before. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 17 d. 59 m. and we were abreast of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W. at the distance of about two miles. This boundary of the Bay is formed by an island of considerable height, called DUNK ISLE, and which lies so near the shore as not to be easily distinguished from it. Our longitude was 213 d. 57 m. W. Cape Sandwich bore S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant nineteen miles, and the northernmost land in sight N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. our depth of water for the last ten hours had not been more than sixteen, nor less than seven fathom. At sun-set, the northern extremity of the land bore N. 25 W. and we kept our course N. by W. along the coast, at the distance of between three and four leagues, with an easy sail all night, having from twelve to fifteen fathom water.

At six o'clock in the morning of the 9th, we were abreast of some small islands, which we called FRANKLAND'S ISLES, and which lie about two leagues distant from the main land. The most distant point in sight

to the northward bore N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and we thought it was part of the main, but afterwards found it to be an island of considerable height, and about four miles in circuit. Between this island and a point on the main, from which it is distant about two miles, I passed with the ship. At noon, we were in the middle of the channel, and, by observation, in the latitude of 16 d. 57 m. S. with twenty fathom water. The point on the main, of which we were abreast, I called CAPE GRAFTON: its latitude is 16 d. 57 m. S. and longitude 214 d. 6 m. W. and the land here, as well as the whole coast for about twenty leagues to the southward, is high, has a rocky surface, and is thinly covered with wood: during the night we had seen several fires, and about noon some people. Having hauled round Cape Grafton, we found the land trend away N. W. by W. and three miles to the westward of the Cape we found a bay, in which we anchored about two miles from the shore, in four fathom water with an ouzy bottom. The east point of the bay bore S. 74 E. the west point S. 83 W. and a low, green, woody island, which lies in the offing, N. 35 E. This island, which lies N. by E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. distant three or four leagues from Cape Grafton, is called GREEN ISLAND.

As soon as the ship was brought to an anchor, I went ashore, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander. As my principal view was to procure some fresh water, and as the bottom of the bay was low land covered with mangroves, where it was not probable fresh water was to be found, I went out towards the Cape, and found two small streams, which however were rendered very difficult of access by the surf and rocks upon the shore: I saw also, as I came round the Cape, a small stream of water run over the beach, in a sandy cove, but I did not go in with the boat, because I saw that it would not be easy to land. When we got ashore, we found the country every where rising into steep rocky hills, and as no fresh water could conveniently be procured, I was unwilling to lose time by going in search of lower land

d we thought
found it to be
out four miles
t on the main,
I passed with
e of the chan-
f 16 d. 57 m.
t on the main,
GRAFTON:
e 214 d. 6 m.
hole coast for
s high, has a
wood: during
about noon
Grafton, we
W. and three
und a bay, in
n the shore, in
n. The east
point S. 83 W.
in the offing,
E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant
on, is called

Anchor, I went
Dr Solander.
e fresh water,
covered with
esh water was
e, and found
endered very
on the shore:
small stream of
ve, but I did
it would not
ve found the
ky hills, and
e procured, I
arch of lower
land

land elsewhere: we therefore made the best of our way back to the ship, and about midnight we weighed and stood to the N. W. having but little wind, with some showers of rain.

At four in the morning of the 10th, the breeze freshened at S. by E. and the weather became fair: we continued steering N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. as the land lay, at about three leagues distance, with ten, twelve, and fourteen fathom water. At ten we hauled off north, in order to get without a small low island, which lay at about two leagues distance from the main, and great part of which at this time, it being high water, was overflowed: about three leagues to the north-west of this island, close under the main land, is another island, the land of which rises to a greater height, and which at noon bore from us N. 55 W. distant seven or eight miles. At this time, our latitude was 16 d. 20 m. S. Cape Grafton bore S. 29 E. distant forty miles, and the northermost point of land in sight, N. 20 W. our depth of water was fifteen fathom. Between this point and Cape Grafton, the shore forms a large, but not a very deep bay, which being discovered on Trinity Sunday, I called TRINITY BAY.

Dangerous

*Dangerous Situation of the Ship in her Course from Trinity
Bay to Endeavour River.*

HITHERTO we had safely navigated this dangerous coast, where the sea in all parts conceals shoals that suddenly project from the shore, and rocks that rise abruptly like a pyramid from the bottom, for an extent of two and twenty degrees of latitude, more than one thousand three hundred miles; and, therefore, hitherto none of the names which distinguish the several parts of the country that we saw, are memorials of distress; but here we became acquainted with misfortune, and we therefore called the point which we had just seen farthest to the northward, CAPE TRIBULATION.

This Cape lies in latitude 16 d. 6 m. S. and longitude 214 d. 39 m. W. We steered along the shore N. by W. at the distance of between three and four leagues, having from fourteen to twelve, and ten fathom water: in the offing we saw two islands which lie in latitude 16 d. S. and about six or seven leagues from the main. At six in the evening, the northernmost land in sight bore N. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and two low woody islands, which some of us took to be rocks above water, bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. At this time we shortened sail, and hauled off shore E. N. E. and N. E. by E. close upon a wind, for it was my design to stretch off all night, as well to avoid the danger we saw ahead, as to see whether any islands lay in the offing, especially as we were now near the latitude assigned to the islands which were discovered by Quiros, and which some geographers, for what reason I know not, have thought fit to join to this land. We had the advantage of a fine breeze, and a clear

from Trinity

this danger-
 ls shoals that
 s that rise ab-
 an extent of
 re than one
 fore, hitherto
 several parts
 ls of distress;
 rtune, and we
 just seen fac-
 ION.
 S. and longi-
 ng the shore
 ree and four
 nd ten fathom
 which lie in
 leagues from
 hermost land
 low woody
 above water,
 sail, and haul-
 close upon a
 f all night, as
 o see whether
 we were now
 hich were dis-
 graphers, for
 to join to this
 breeze, and a
 clear

clear moonlight night, and in standing off from six till near nine o'clock, we deepened our water from fourteen to twenty-one fathom, but while we were at supper it suddenly shoaled, and we fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathom, within the space of a few minutes; I immediately ordered every body to their station, and all was ready to put about and come to an anchor; but meeting at the next cast of the lead with deep water again, we concluded that we had gone over the tail of the shoals which we had seen at sun-set, and that all danger was past: before ten, we had twenty and one and twenty fathom, and this depth continuing, the gentlemen left the deck in great tranquility, and went to bed; but a few minutes before eleven, the water shallowed at once from twenty to seventeen fathom, and before the lead could be cast again, the ship struck, and remained immoveable, except by the heaving of the surge, that beat her against the craggs of the rock upon which she lay. In a few moments every body was upon the deck, with countenances which sufficiently expressed the horrors of our situation. We had stood off the shore three hours and an half, with a pleasant breeze, and therefore knew that we could not be very near it, and we had too much reason to conclude that we were upon a rock of coral, which is more fatal than any other, because the points of it are sharp, and every part of the surface so rough as to grind away whatever is rubbed against it, even with the gentlest motion. In this situation all the sails were immediately taken in, and the boats hoisted out to examine the depth of water round the ship: we soon discovered that our fears had not aggravated our misfortune, and that the vessel had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it: in some places there was from three to four fathom, and in others not so many feet. The ship lay with her head to the N. E. and at the distance of about thirty yards on the starboard side, the water deepened to eight, ten, and twelve fathom. As soon as the long-boat was out, we struck our yards and top-masts, and carried out the

stream anchor on the starboard bow, got the coasting anchor and cable into the boat, and were going to carry it out the same way; but upon sounding a second time round the ship, the water was found to be deepest astern: the anchor therefore was carried out from the starboard quarter instead of the starboard bow, that is, from the stern instead of the head, and having taken ground, our utmost force was applied to the capstern, hoping that if the anchor did not come home, the ship would be got off, but to our great misfortune and disappointment we could not move her: during all this time she continued to beat with great violence against the rock, so that it was with the utmost difficulty that we kept upon our legs: and to complete the scene of distress, we saw by the light of the moon the sheathing boards from the bottom of the vessel floating away all round her, and at last her false keel, so that every moment was making way for the sea to rush in which was to swallow us up. We had now no chance but to lighten her, and we had lost the opportunity of doing that to the greatest advantage, for unhappily we went on shore just at high water, and by this time it had considerably fallen, so that after she should be lightened so as to draw as much less water as the water had sunk, we should be but in the same situation as at first; and the only alleviation of this circumstance was, that as the tide ebbed, the ship settled to the rocks, and was not beaten against them with so much violence. We had indeed some hope from the next tide, but it was doubtful whether she would hold together so long, especially as the rock kept grating her bottom under the starboard bow with such force as to be heard in the fore store-room. This however was no time to indulge conjecture, nor was any effort remitted in despair of success: that no time might be lost, the water was immediately started in the hold, and pumped up; six of our guns, being all we had upon the deck, our iron and stone ballast, casks, hoop staves, oil jars, decayed stores, and many other things that lay in the way of heavier materials, were thrown overboard with the
the

the utmost expedition, every one exerting himself with an alacrity almost approaching to cheerfulness, without the least repining or discontent; yet the men were so far impress'd with a sense of their situation, that not an oath was heard among them, the habit of profaneness, however strong, being instantly subdued by the dread of incurring guilt when death seem'd to be so near.

While we were thus employed, day broke upon us, and we saw the land at about eight leagues distance, without any island in the intermediate space, upon which, if the ship should have gone to pieces, we might have been set ashore by the boats, and from which they might have taken us by different turns to the main: the wind however gradually died away, and early in the forenoon it was a dead calm; if it had blown hard, the ship must inevitably have been destroyed. At eleven in the forenoon, we expected high water, and anchors were got out, and every thing made ready for another effort to heave her off if she should float, but to our inexpressible surprize and concern she did not float by a foot and an half, though we had lightened her near fifty ton, so much did the day-tide fall short of that in the night. We now proceeded to lighten her still more, and threw overboard every thing that it was possible for us to spare: hitherto she had not admitted much water, but as the tide fell, it rush'd in so fast, that two pumps, incessantly worked, could scarcely keep her free. At two o'clock, she lay heaving two or three streaks to starboard, and the pinnace, which lay under her bows, touch'd the ground: we had now no hope but from the tide at midnight, and to prepare for it we carried out our two bower anchors, one on the starboard quarter, and the other right a stern, got the blocks and tackle which were to give us a purchase upon the cables in order, and brought the falls, or ends of them, in abaft. straining them tight, that the next effort might operate upon the ship, and by shortening the length of the cable between that and the anchors, draw her off the ledge upon which she rested, towards the deep water. About

five o'clock in the afternoon, we observed the tide begin to rise, but we observed at the same time that the leak increased to a most alarming degree, so that two more pumps were manned, but unhappily only one of them would work: three of the pumps however were kept going, and at nine o'clock the ship righted, but the leak had gained upon us so considerably, that it was imagined she must go to the bottom as soon as she ceased to be supported by the rock: this was a dreadful circumstance, so that we anticipated the floating of the ship not as an earnest of deliverance, but as an event that would probably precipitate our destruction. We well knew that our boats were not capable of carrying us all on shore, and that when the dreadful crisis should arrive, as all command and subordination would be at an end, a contest for preference would probably ensue, that would increase the horrors even of shipwreck, and terminate in the destruction of us all by the hands of each other; yet we knew that if any should be left on board to perish in the waves, they would probably suffer less upon the whole than those who should get on shore, without any lasting or effectual defence against the natives, in a country, where even nets and fire-arms would scarcely furnish them with food; and where, if they should find the means of subsistence, they must be condemned to languish out the remainder of life in a desolate wilderness, without the possession, or even hope, of any domestic comfort, and cut off from all commerce with mankind, except the naked savages who prowled the desert, and who perhaps were some of the most rude and uncivilized upon the earth.

To those only who have waited in a state of suspense, death has approached in all his terrors; and as the dreadful moment that was to determine our fate came on, every one saw his own sensations pictured in the countenances of his companions: however, the capstan and windlace were manned with as many hands as could be spared from the pumps, and the ship floating about twenty minutes after ten o'clock, the effort was made, and

and she was heaved into deep water. It was some comfort to find that she did not now admit more water than she had done upon the rock; and though, by the gaining of the leak upon the pumps, there was no less than three feet nine inches water in the hold, yet the men did not relinquish their labour, and we held the water as it were at bay; but having now endured excessive fatigue of body and agitation of mind for more than four and twenty hours, and having but little hope of succeeding at last, they began to flag; none of them could work at the pump more than five or six minutes together, and then, being totally exhausted, they threw themselves down upon the deck, though a stream of water was running over it from the pumps between three and four inches deep; when those who succeeded them had worked their spell, and were exhausted in their turn, they threw themselves down in the same manner, and the others started up again, and renewed their labour; thus relieving each other till an accident was very near putting an end to their efforts at once. The planking which lines the inside of the ship's bottom is called the cieling, and between this and the outside planking, there is a space of about eighteen inches: the man, who till this time had attended the well to take the depth of water, had taken it only to the cieling, and gave the measure accordingly; but he being now relieved, the person who came in his stead, reckoned the depth, to the outside planking, by which it appeared in a few minutes to have gained upon the pumps eighteen inches, the difference between the planking without and within. Upon this, even the bravest was upon the point of giving up his labour with his hope, and in a few minutes every thing would have been involved in all the confusion of despair.

But this accident, however dreadful in its first consequences, was eventually the cause of our preservation: the mistake was soon detected, and the sudden joy which every man felt upon finding his situation better than his fears had suggested, operated like a charm.

charm, and seemed to possess him with a strong belief that scarcely any real danger remained. New confidence and new hope, however founded, inspired new vigour; and though our state was the same as when the men first began to slacken in their labour, through weariness and despondency, they now renewed their efforts with such alacrity and spirit, that before eight o'clock in the morning the leak was so far from having gained upon the pumps, that the pumps had gained considerably upon the leak. Every body now talked of getting the ship into some harbour, as a thing not to be doubted, and as hands could be spared from the pumps, they were employed in getting up the anchors: the stream anchor and best bower we had taken on board; but it was found impossible to save the little bower, and therefore it was cut away at a whole cable: we lost also the cable of the stream anchor among the rocks; but in our situation these were trifles which scarcely attracted our notice. Our next business was to get up the fore-topmast and fore-yard, and warp the ship into the south-east, and at eleven, having now a breeze from the sea, we once more got under sail and stood for the land.

It was, however, impossible long to continue the labour by which the pumps had been made to gain upon the leak, and as the exact situation of it could not be discovered we had no hope of stopping it within. In this situation, Mr Monkhouse, one of my midshipmen, came to me and proposed an expedient that he had once seen used on board a merchant ship, which sprung a leak that admitted above four feet water an hour, and which, by this expedient; was brought safely from Virginia to London; the master having such confidence in it, that he took her out of harbour, knowing her condition, and did not think it worth while to wait till the leak could be otherwise stopped. To this man, therefore, the care of the expedient, which is called fothering the ship, was immediately committed, four or five

a strong be-
 mained. New
 ded, inspired
 the same as
 their labour,
 now renew-
 it, that before
 as so far from
 e pumps had
 ery body now
 ur, as a thing
 e spared from
 ng up the an-
 we had taken
 save the little
 whole cable:
 or among the
 trifles which
 business was to
 and warp the
 having now a
 under sail and
 continue the la-
 e to gain upon
 ould not be dis-
 ithin. In this
 midshipmen,
 t that he had
 which sprung
 r an hour, and
 sely from Vir-
 confidence in
 wing her com-
 to wait till the
 is man, there-
 s called fother-
 d, four or five
 of

of the people being appointed to assist him, and he per-
 formed it in this manner: he took a lower studding sail,
 and, having mixed together a large quantity of oak-
 ham and wool, chopped pretty small, he stitched it
 down in handfuls upon the sail, as lightly as possible,
 and over this he spread the dung of our sheep and other
 filth; but horse dung, if we had had it, would have been
 better. When the sail was thus prepared, it was hauled
 under the ship's bottom by ropes, which kept it ex-
 tended, and when it came under the leak, the suction
 which carried in the water, carried in with it the oak-
 ham and wool from the surface of the sail, which in
 other parts the water was not sufficiently agitated to
 wash off. By the success of this expedient, our leak
 was so far reduced, that instead of gaining upon three
 pumps, it was easily kept under with one. This was a
 new source of confidence and comfort; the people
 could scarcely have expressed more joy if they had been
 already in port; and their views were so far from being
 limited to running the ship ashore in some harbour,
 either of an island or the main, and building a vessel out
 of her materials, to carry us to the East Indies, which
 had so lately been the utmost object of our hope, that
 nothing was now thought of but ranging along the shore
 in search of a convenient place to repair the damage
 she had sustained, and then prosecuting the voyage up-
 on the same plan as if nothing had happened. Upon
 this occasion I must observe, both in justice and grati-
 tude to the ship's company, and the gentlemen on
 board, that, although in the midst of our distress, every
 one seemed to have a just sense of his danger, yet no
 passionate exclamations, or frantic gestures, were to be
 heard or seen; every one appeared to have the perfect
 possession of his mind, and every one exerted himself to
 the uttermost, with a quiet and patient perseverance,
 equally distant from the tumultuous violence of terror,
 and the gloomy inactivity of despair.

In the mean time, having light airs at E. S. E. we got
 up

up the main-topmast, and main-yard, and kept edging in for the land, till about six o'clock in the evening, when we came to an anchor in seventeen fathom water, at the distance of seven leagues from the shore, and one from the ledge of rocks upon which we had struck.

This ledge or shoal lies in latitude 15 d. 45 m. S. and between six and seven leagues from the main. It is not, however, the only shoal on this part of the coast, especially to the northward; and at this time we saw one to the southward, the tail of which we passed over, when we had uneven soundings about two hours before we struck. A part of this shoal is always above water, and has the appearance of white sand: a part also of that upon which we had lain is dry at low water, and in that place consists of sand stones; but all the rest of it is a coral rock.

While we lay at anchor for the night, we found that the ship made about fifteen inches water an hour, from which no immediate danger was to be apprehended; and at six o'clock in the morning, we weighed and stood to the N. W. still edging in for the land with a gentle breeze at S. S. E. At nine, we passed close without two small islands that lie in latitude 15 d. 41 m. S. and about four leagues from the main: to reach these islands had, in the height of our distress, been the object of our hope, or perhaps rather our wishes, and therefore I called them HOPE ISLANDS. At noon, we were about three leagues from the land, and in latitude 15 d. 37 m. S. the northernmost part of the main in sight bore N. 30 W. and Hope Islands extended from S. 30 E. to S. 40 E. In this situation we had twelve fathom water, and several sand-banks without us. At this time the leak had not increased; but that we might be prepared for all events, we got the sail ready for another tothing.

In the afternoon, having a gentle breeze at S. E. by E. I sent out the master with two boats, as well to sound ahead

cept edging
ne evening,
fathom wa-
shore, and
ch we had

5 m. S. and
main. It is
of the coast,
me we saw
passed over,
o hours be-
ways above
d: a part al-
t low water,
at all the rest

e found that
n hour, from
prehended ;
veighed and
land with a
d close with-
5 d. 41 m. S.
o reach these
en the object
s, and there-
oon, we were
atitude 15 d.
in sight bore
n S. 30 E. to
e fathom wa-
At this time
might be pre-
y for another

at S. E. by E.
well to found
ahead

ahead of the ship, as to look out for a harbour where we might repair our defects, and put the ship in a proper trim. At three o'clock, we saw an opening that had the appearance of an harbour, and stood off and on while the boats examined it; but they soon found that there was not depth of water in it sufficient for the ship. When it was near sunfer, there being many shoals about us, we anchored in four fathom, at the distance of about two miles from the shore, the land extending from N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. The pinnace was still out with one of the mates; but at nine o'clock she returned, and reported, that about two leagues to leeward she had discovered just such a harbour as we wanted, in which there was a sufficient rise of water, and every other convenience that could be desired, either for laying the ship ashore, or leaving her down.

In consequence of this information, I weighed at six o'clock in the morning of the 14th, and having sent two boats ahead, to lie upon the shoals that we saw in our way, we ran down to the place; but notwithstanding our precaution, we were once in three fathom water. As soon as these shoals were passed, I sent the boats to lie in the channel that led to the harbour, and by this time it began to blow. It was happy for us that a place of refuge was at hand; for we soon found that the ship would not work, having twice missed stays: our situation, however, though it might have been much worse, was not without danger; we were entangled among shoals, and I had great reason to fear being driven to leeward, before the boats could place themselves so as to prescribe our course. I therefore anchored in four fathom, about a mile from the shore, and then made the signal for the boats to come on board. When this was done, I went myself and bouyed the channel, which I found very narrow; the harbour also I found smaller than I expected, but most excellently adapted to our purpose; and it is remarkable, that in the whole course of our voyage we had seen no place which, in our present circumstances, could have afford-

ed us the same relief. At noon, our latitude was 15 d. 26 m. S.

During all the rest of this day, and the whole night, it blew too fresh for us to venture from our anchor and run into the harbour; and for our farther security, we got down the top-gallant yards, unbent the mainfail and some of the small sails; got down the fore-top-gallant mast, and the gibb-boom, and sprit-fail, with a view to lighten the ship forwards as much as possible; in order to come at her leak, which we supposed to be somewhere in that part; for in all the joy of our unexpected deliverance, we had not forgot that at this time there was nothing but a lock of wool between us and destruction. The gale continuing, we kept our station all the 15th.

On the 16th, it was somewhat more moderate; and about six o'clock in the morning, we hove the cable short, with a design to get under sail, but were obliged to desist, and veer it out again. It is remarkable that the sea breeze, which blew fresh when we anchored, continued to do so almost every day while we stayed here; it was calm only while we were upon the rock, except once; and even the gale that afterwards waisted us to the shore, would then certainly have beaten us to pieces. In the evening of the preceding day, we had observed a fire near the beach over against us; and as it would be necessary for us to stay some time in this place, we were not without hope of making an acquaintance with the people. We saw more fires upon the hills to-day, and with our glasses discovered four Indians going along the shore, who stopped, and made two fires; but for what purpose it was impossible we should guess.

The scurvy now began to make its appearance among us, with many formidable symptoms. Our poor Indian, Tupia, who had some time before complained that his gums were sore and swelled, and who had taken plentifully of our lemon juice by the Surgeon's direction, had now livid spots upon his legs, and other indubitable testimonies that the disease had made a rapid progress,

ade was 15 d.

whole night,
ur anchor and
r security, we
e mainfail and
re-top-gallant
with a view to
sible; in order
d to be some-
of our unex-
at at this time
etween us and
ept our station

moderate; and
move the cable
t were obliged
emarkable that
we anchored,
hile we stayed
upon the rock,
erwards wafted
ve beaten us to
day, we had ob-
t us; and as it
ne in this place,
n acquaintance
oon the hills to-
r In-ians going
e two fires; but
ould guess.

pearance among
Our poor Indi-
complained that
who had taken
Surgeon's direc-
gs, and other in-
ad made a rapid
progress,

progress, notwithstanding all our remedies, among which the bark had been liberally administered. Mr Green, our astronomer, was also declining; and these, among other circumstances, imbittered the delay which prevented our going ashore.

In the morning of the 17th, though the wind was still fresh, we ventured to weigh, and push in for the harbour; but in doing this we twice run the ship aground: the first time she went off without any trouble, but the second time she stuck fast. We now got down the fore-yard, fore top-masts, and booms, and taking them overboard, made a raft of them alongside of the ship. The tide was happily rising, and about one o'clock in the afternoon, she floated. We soon warped her into the harbour, and, having moored her alongside of a steep beach to the south, we got the anchors, cables, and all the hawfers on shore before night.

*Transactions while the Ship was refitting in Endeavour
River: A Description of the adjacent Country, its In-
habitants, and Productions.*

IN the morning of Monday the 18th, a stage was made from the ship to the shore, which was so bold that she floated at twenty feet distance: two tents were also set up, one for the sick, and the other for stores and provisions, which were landed in the course of the day. We also landed all the empty water casks, and part of the stores. As soon as the tent for the sick was got ready for their reception, they were sent ashore, to the number of eight or nine, and the boat was dispatched to haul the seine, in hopes of procuring some fish for their refreshment; but she returned without success. In the mean time, I climbed one of the highest hills among those that overlooked the harbour, which afforded by no means a comfortable prospect: the low land near the river is wholly over-run with mangroves, among which the salt-water flows every tide; and the high land appeared to be every where stony and barren. In the mean time, Mr Banks had also taken a walk up the country, and met with the frames of several old Indian houses, and places where they had dressed shell-fish; but they seemed not to have been frequented for some months. Tupia, who had employed himself in angling, and lived intirely upon what he caught, recovered in a surprizing degree; but Mr Green still continued to be extremely ill.

The next morning I got the four remaining guns out of the hold, and mounted them upon the quarter-deck; I also got a spare anchor, and anchor-stock ashore, and the remaining part of the stores and ballast that were

Endeavour
country, its In-

a stage was
so bold that
ents were also
for stores and
se of the day.
, and part of
sick was got
shore, to the
as dispatched
some fish for
hout success.
highest hills
r, which af-
fect: the low
h mangroves,
side; and the
ony and bar-
taken a walk
of several old
dressed shell-
requented for
ed himself in
e caught, re-
reen, still con-

ing guns out
quarter-deck;
k ashore, and
last that were
in

in the hold: set up the smith's forge, and employed the armourer and his mate to make nails and other necessaries for the repair of the ship. In the afternoon, all the officers' stores and the ground tier of water were got out; so that nothing remained in the fore and main hold, but the coals, and a small quantity of stone ballast. This day, Mr Banks crossed the river to take a view of the country on the other side: he found it consist principally of sand-hills, where he saw some Indian houses, which appeared to have been very lately inhabited. In his walk, he met with vast flocks of pigeons and crows: of the pigeons, which were exceedingly beautiful, he shot several; but the crows, which were exactly like those in England, were so shy, that he could not get within reach of them.

On the 20th, we landed the powder, and got out the stone ballast and wood, which brought the ship's draught of water to eight feet ten inches forward, and thirteen feet abaft; and this, I thought, with the difference that would be made by trimming the coals aft, would be sufficient; for I found that the water rose and fell perpendicularly eight feet at the spring tides: but as soon as the coals were trimmed from over the leak, we could hear the water rush in a little abaft the foremast, about three feet from the keel: this determined me to clear the hold intirely. This evening, Mr Banks observed that in many parts of the inlet there were large quantities of pumice stones, which lay at a considerable distance above high-water mark; whither they might have been carried either by the freshes or extraordinary high tides, for there could be no doubt but that they came from the sea.

The next morning we went early to work, and by four o'clock in the afternoon had got out all the coals, cast the moorings loose, and warped the ship a little higher up the harbour to a place, which I thought most convenient for laying her ashore in order to stop the leak. Her draught of water forward was now seven feet nine inches, and abaft thirteen feet six inches. At
eight

eight o'clock, it being high-water, I hauled her bow close ashore; but kept her stern afloat, because I was afraid of neiping her; it was, however, necessary to lay the whole of her as near the ground as possible.

At two o'clock in the morning of the 22d, the tide left her, and gave us an opportunity to examine the leak, which we found to be at her floor heads, a little before the starboard fore-chains. In this place the rocks had made their way through four planks; and even into the timbers; three more planks were much damaged, and the appearance of these breaches was very extraordinary: there was not a splinter to be seen, but all was as smooth as if the whole had been cut away by an instrument: the timbers in this place were happily very close, and if they had not, it would have been absolutely impossible to have saved the ship. But, after all, her preservation depended upon a circumstance still more remarkable: one of the holes, which was big enough to have sunk us, if we had had eight pumps instead of four, and been able to keep them incessantly going, was in a great measure plugged up by a fragment of the rock which, after having made the wound, was left sticking in it; so that the water which at first had gained upon our pumps, was what came in at the interstices, between the stone and the edges of the hole that received it. We found also several pieces of the fothering, which had made their way between the timbers, and in a great measure stopped those parts of the leak which the stone had left open. Upon further examination, we found that, besides the leak, considerable damage had been done to the bottom; great part of the sheathing was gone from under the starboard bow; a considerable part of the false keel was also wanting, and these indeed we had seen swim away in fragments from the vessel, while she lay beating against the rock: the remainder of it was in so shattered a condition that it had better have been gone, and the fore foot and main keel were also damaged, but not so as to produce any immediate danger: what damage she might have received abaft could not

hauled her bow because I was r, necessary to as possible.

22d, the tide to examine the heads, a little place the rocks; and even in- much damaged, s very extraor- en, but all was away by an in- e happily very been absolute- nt, after all, her ance still more as big enough mps instead of rtly going, was ent of the rock as left sticking d gained upon stices, between hat received it. thering, which , and in a great which the stone ion, we found nage had been sheathing was onsiderable part hese indeed we the vessel, while emainder of it ad better have keel were also mmediate dan- ived abaft could not

not yet be exactly known, but we had reason to think it was not much, as but little water made its way into her bottom, while the tide kept below the leak which has already been described. By nine o'clock in the morning, the carpenters got to work upon her, while the smiths were busy in making bolts and nails. In the mean time, some of the people were sent on the other side of the water to shoot pigeons for the sick, who, at their return, reported that they had seen an animal as large as a greyhound, of a slender make, a mouse colour, and extremely swift; they discovered also many Indian houses, and a fine stream of fresh water.

The next morning, the 23d, I sent a boat to haul the seine; but at noon it returned with only three fish, and yet we saw them in plenty leaping about the harbour. This day the carpenter finished the repairs that were necessary on the starboard side; and at nine o'clock in the evening, we heeled the ship the other way, and hauled her off about two feet for fear of neiping. This day almost every body had seen the animal which the pigeon-shooters had brought an account of the day before; and one of the seamen, who had been rambling in the woods, told us at his return, that he verily believed he had seen the devil: we naturally inquired in what form he had appeared, and his answer was in so singular a style, that I shall set down his own words; "He was, says John, as large as a one gallon keg, and very like it; he had horns and wings, yet he crept so slowly through the grass, that, if I had not been *afeard*, I might have touched him." This formidable apparition we afterwards discovered to have been a bat; and the bats here must be acknowledged to have a frightful appearance, for they are nearly black, and full as large as a partridge; they have no horns, but the fancy of a man who thought he saw the devil might easily supply that defect.

Early on the 24th, the carpenters began to repair the sheathing under the larboard bow, where we found two planks cut about half through; and in the mean time

time I sent a party of men, under the direction of Mr. Gore, in search of refreshments for the sick: this party returned about noon with a few palm cabbages, and a bunch or two of wild plantains; the plantains were the smallest I had ever seen, and the pulp, though it was well tasted, was full of small stones. As I was walking this morning at a little distance from the ship, I saw myself one of the animals which had been so often described; it was of a light mouse colour, and in size and shape very much resembling a greyhound; it had a long tail also, which it carried like a greyhound; and I should have taken it for a wild dog, if, instead of running, it had not leapt like a hare or deer: its legs were said to be very slender, and the print of its foot to be like that of a goat; but where I saw it the grass was so high that the legs were concealed, and the ground was too hard to receive the track. Mr Banks also had an imperfect view of this animal, and was of opinion that its species was hitherto unknown.

After the ship was hauled ashore, all the water that came into her of course went backwards; so that although she was dry forward, she had nine feet water abaft: as in this part, therefore, her bottom could not be examined on the inside, I took the advantage of the tide being out this evening to get the master and two of the men to go under her, and examine her whole larboard side without. They found the sheathing gone about the floor heads abreast of the main-mast, and part of the plank a little damaged; but all agreed that she had received no other material injury. The loss of her sheathing alone was a great misfortune, as the worm would now be let into her bottom, which might expose us to great inconvenience and danger; but as I knew no remedy for the mischief but heaving her down, which would be a work of immense labour and long time, if practicable at all in our present situation, I was obliged to be content. The carpenters, however, continued to work under her bottom in the evening till they were prevented by the tide; the morning tide did not

'no
for
four
wh
wh
pri
had
cur
plan
the
as a
thou
muc
were
ever,
to a
and
The
hauli
finish
other
at; so
cilitat
ter, w
cess, f
way.
The
more
noon
ship's
so pro
to the
This
excurfi
a plant
West I
proved
little in
plants v
Vol. I

not ebb out far enough to permit them to work at all, for we had only one tolerable high and low tide in four and twenty hours, as indeed we had experienced when we lay upon the rock. The position of the ship, which threw the water in her abaft, was very near depriving the world of all the knowledge which Mr Banks had endured so much labour, and so many risks to procure; for he had removed the curious collection of plants which he made during the whole voyage, into the bread room, which lies in the after part of the ship, as a place of the greatest security; and nobody having thought of the danger to which laying her head so much higher than the stern would expose them, they were this day found under water. Most of them, however, were, by indefatigable care and attention, restored to a state of preservation, but some were entirely spoilt and destroyed.

The 25th was employed in filling water and overhauling the rigging, and at low water the carpenters finished the repairs under the larboard bow, and every other place which the tide would permit them to come at; some casks were then lashed under her bows to facilitate her floating, and at night, when it was high water, we endeavoured to heave her off, but without success, for some of the casks that were lashed to her gave way.

The morning of the 26th was employed in getting more casks ready for the same purpose, and in the afternoon we lashed no less than eight and thirty under the ship's bottom, but, to our great mortification, these also proved ineffectual, and we found ourselves reduced to the necessity of waiting till the next spring-tide.

This day, some of our gentlemen, who had made an excursion into the woods, brought home the leaves of a plant, which was thought to be the same that in the West Indies is called coccos, but upon trial, the roots proved too acrid to be eaten; the leaves, however, were little inferior to spinnage. In the place where these plants were gathered, grew plenty of the cabbage trees

which have occasionally been mentioned before, a kind of wild plantain, the fruit of which was so full of stones, as scarcely to be eatable; another fruit was also found about the size of a small golden pippin, but flatter, and of a deeper colour: when first gathered from the tree it was very hard and disagreeable, but after being kept a few days became soft, and tasted very much like an indifferent damascene.

The next morning, the 27th, we began to move some of the weight from the after-part of the ship forward, to ease her; in the mean time the armourer continued to work at the forge, the carpenter was busy in caulking the ship, and the men employed in filling water and over-hauling the rigging: in the forenoon, I went myself in the pinnace up the harbour, and made several hauls with the seine, but caught only between twenty and thirty fish, which were given to the sick and convalescent.

On the 28th, Mr Banks went with some of the seamen up the country, to shew them the plant which in the West Indies is called Indian kale, and which served us for greens. Tupia had much meliorated the root of the coccos, by giving them a long dressing in his country oven, but they were so small that we did not think them an object for the ship. In their walk they found one tree which had been notched for the convenience of climbing it, in the same manner with those we had seen in Botany Bay: they saw also many nests of white ants, which resemble those of the East Indies, the most pernicious insects in the world. The nests were of a pyramidical figure, from a few inches to six feet high, and very much resembled the stones in England, which are said to be monuments of the Druids. Mr Gore, who was also this day four or five miles up the country, reported that he had seen the footsteps of men, and tracked animals of three or four different sorts, but had not been fortunate enough to see either man or beast.

At two o'clock in the morning of the 29th, I observed, in conjunction with Mr Green, an emersion of Jupiter's

piter's first satellite ; the time here was 2 h. 18 m. 53 f. which gave the longitude of this place 214 d. 42 m. 30 f. W. its latitude is 15 d. 26 m. S. At break of day, I sent the boat out again with the seine, and in the afternoon, it returned with as much fish as enabled me to give every man a pound and an half. One of my midshipmen, an American, who was this day abroad with his gun, reported that he had seen a wolf, exactly like those which he had been used to see in his own country, and that he had shot at it, but did not kill it.

The next morning, encouraged by the success of the day before, I sent a boat again to haul the seine, and another party to gather greens : I sent also some of the young gentlemen to take a plan of the harbour, and went myself upon a hill, which lies over the south point, to take a view of the sea. At this time it was low water, and I saw, with great concern, innumerable sand banks and shoals lying all along the coast, in every direction. The innermost lay about three or four miles from the shore, the outermost extended as far as I could see with my glass, and many of them did but just rise above water. There was some appearance of a passage to the northward, and I had no hope of getting clear but in that direction, for as the wind blows constantly from the S. E. it would have been difficult, if not impossible, to return back to the southward.

Mr Gore reported, that he had this day seen two animals like dogs, of a straw colour, that they ran like a hare, and were about the same size. In the afternoon, the people returned from hauling the seine, with still better success than before, for I was now able to distribute two pounds and an half to each man : the greens that had been gathered I ordered to be boiled among the peas, and they made an excellent mess, which, with two copious supplies of fish, afforded us unspeakable refreshment.

The next day, July the 1st, being Sunday, every body had liberty to go ashore, except one from each mess, who were again sent out with the seine. The

Seine was again equally successful, and the people who went up the country gave an account of having seen several animals, though none of them were to be caught. They saw a fire also about a mile up the river, and Mr Gore, the Second Lieutenant, picked up the husk of a cocoa nut, which had been cast upon the beach, and was full of barnacles: this probably might come from some island to windward, perhaps from the Terra del Espirito Santo of Quiros, as we were now in the latitude where it is said to lie. This day the thermometer in the shade rose to 87, which was higher than it had been on any day since we came upon this coast.

Early the next morning, I sent the master in the pinnace, out of the harbour, to sound about the shoals in the offing, and look for a channel to the northward: at this time we had a breeze from the land, which continued till about nine o'clock, and was the first we had had since our coming into the river. At low water we lashed some empty casks under the ship's bows, having some hope that as the tides were rising she would float the next high-water. We still continued to fish with great success, and at high-water we again attempted to heave the ship off, but our utmost efforts were still ineffectual.

The next day at noon, the 3d, the master returned, and reported that he had found a passage out to sea between the shoals, and described its situation. The shoals, he said, consisted of coral rocks, many of which were dry at low water, and upon one of which he had been ashore. He found here some cockles of so enormous a size, that one of them was more than two men could eat, and a great variety of other shell-fish, of which he brought us a plentiful supply: in the evening, he had also landed in a bay about three leagues to the northward of our station, where he disturbed some of the natives who were at supper: they all fled with the greatest precipitation at his approach, leaving some fresh sea eggs, and a fire ready kindled behind them, but there was neither house nor hovel near the place. We observed,
that

people who having seen were to be le up the rit, picked up raft upon the sbably might aps from the were now in day the ther- s higher than n this coast. after in the out the shoals northward: , which con- first we had ow water we oows, having e would float to fish with attempted to were still in-

ter returned, ut to sea be- The shoals, which were he had been enormous a o men could of which he ing, he had e northward the natives greatest pre- sh sea eggs, at there was e observed, that

that although the shoals that lie just in sight of the coast, abound with shell-fish, which may be easily caught at low water; yet we saw no such shells about the fire-places on shore. This day an allegator was seen to swim about the ship for some time, and at high-water we made another effort to float her; which happily succeeded: we found, however, that, by lying so long with her head aground and her stern afloat, she had sprung a plank between decks, abreast of the main chains, so that it was become necessary to lay her ashore again.

The next morning, the 4th, was employed in trimming her upon an even keel, and in the afternoon, having warped her over, and waited for high-water, we laid her ashore on the sand bank on the south side of the river, for the damage she had received already from the great descent of the ground, made me afraid to lay her broad-side to the shore in the same place from which we had just floated her. I was now very desirous to make another trial to come at her bottom, where the sheathing had been rubbed off, but though she had scarcely four feet water under her, when the tide was out, yet that part was not dry.

On the 5th, I got one of the carpenter's crew, a man in whom I could confide, to go down again to the ship's bottom, and examine the place. He reported, that three streaks of the sheathing, about eight feet long, were wanting, and that the main plank had been a little rubbed; this account perfectly agreed with the report of the master and others, who had been under her bottom before; I had the comfort, however, to find the carpenter of opinion that this would be of little consequence, and therefore, the other damage being repaired, she was again floated at high-water, and moored along-side the beach, where the stores had been deposited: we then went to work to take the stores on board, and put her in a condition for the sea.

This day, Mr Banks crossed to the other side of the harbour, where, as he walked along a sandy beach, he found

found innumerable fruits, and many of them such as no plants which he had discovered in this country produced: among others were some cocoa nuts, which Tupia said had been opened by a kind of crab, which from his description we judged to be the same that the Dutch call *Beurs Krabbe*, and which we had not seen in these seas. All the vegetable substances which he found in this place, were encrusted with marine productions, and covered with barnacles; a sure sign that they must have come far by sea, and, as the trade-wind blows right upon the shore, probably from Terra del Espirito Santo, which has been mentioned already.

The next morning, the 6th, Mr Banks, with Lieutenant Gore, and three men, set out in a small boat up the river, with a view to spend two or three days in an excursion, to examine the country, and kill some of the animals which had been so often seen at a distance.

On the 7th, I sent the Master again out to sound about the shoals, the account which he had brought me of a channel being by no means satisfactory; and we spent the remainder of this day, and the morning of the next, in fishing, and other necessary occupations.

About four o'clock in the afternoon of the 6th, Mr Banks and his party returned, and gave us an account of their expedition. Having proceeded about three leagues among swamps and mangroves, they went up into the country, which they found to differ but little from what they had seen before: they pursued their course therefore up the river, which at length was contracted into a narrow channel, and was bounded, not by swamps and mangroves, but by steep banks, that were covered with trees of a most beautiful verdure, among which was that which in the West Indies is called *Moboe*, or the bark tree, the *hibiscus tiliaceus*; the land within was in general low, and had a thick covering of long grass: the soil seemed to be such as promised great fertility, to any who should plant and improve it. In the course of the day, Tupia saw an animal, which, by his description, Mr Banks judged to be a wolf: they also saw three other animals,

them such as
country pro-
nuts, which
crab, which
me that the
l not seen in
ich he found
productions,
at they must
l blows right
pirito Santo,

with Lieu-
small boat up
e days in an
l some of the
distance.

out to sound
brought me
ory; and we
orning of the
ations.

the 6th, Mr
an account of
three leagues
t up into the
le from what
urse therefore
ed into a nar-
swamps and
covered with
which was that
or the bark
was in gene-
rals: the soil
to any who
e of the day,
cription, Mr
y three other
animals,

animals, but could neither catch nor kill one of them, and a kind of bat, as large as a partridge, but this eluded all their diligence and skill. At night, they took up their lodging close to the banks of the river, and made a fire, but the musquitos swarmed about them in such numbers, that their quarters were almost untenable; they followed them into the smoke, and almost into the fire, which, hot as the climate was, they could better endure than the stings of these insects, which were an intolerable torment. The fire, the flies, and the want of a better bed than the ground, rendered the night extremely uncomfortable, so that they passed it not in sleep, but in restless wishes for the return of day. With the first dawn they set out in search of game, and in a walk of many miles, they saw four animals of the same kind, two of which Mr Banks's greyhound fairly chased, but they threw him out at a great distance, by leaping over the long thick grass, which prevented his running: this animal was observed not to run upon four legs, but to bound or hop forward upon two, like the *Jerbua*, or *Mus Jaculus*. About noon, they returned to the boat, and again proceeded up the river, which was soon contracted into a fresh water brook, where, however, the tide rose to a considerable height: as evening approached, it became low water, and it was then so shallow that they were obliged to get out of the boat and drag her along, till they could find a place in which they might, with some hope of rest, pass the night. Such a place at length offered, and while they were getting the things out of the boat, they observed a smoke at the distance of about a furlong: as they did not doubt but that some of the natives, with whom they had so long and earnestly desired to become personally acquainted, were about the fire, three of the party went immediately towards it, hoping that so small a number would not put them to flight: when they came up to the place, however, they found it deserted, and therefore they conjectured that before they had discovered the Indians, the Indians had discovered them. They found the fire still burning, in
the

the hollow of an old tree that was become touch-wood, and several branches of trees newly broken down, with which children appeared to have been playing: they observed also many foot-steps upon the sand, below high-water mark, which were certain indications that the Indians had been recently upon the spot. Several houses were found at a little distance, and some ovens dug in the ground, in the same manner as those of Otaheite, in which victuals appeared to have been dressed since the morning, and, scattered about them, lay some shells of a kind of clam, and some fragments of roots, the refuse of the meal. After regretting their disappointment, they repaired to their quarters, which was a broad sand bank, under the shelter of a bush. Their beds were plantain leaves, which they spread upon the sand, and which were as soft as a mattress, their cloaks served them for bed-clothes, and some bunches of grass for pillows: with these accommodations they hoped to pass a better night than the last, especially as, to their great comfort, not a musquito was to be seen. Here then they lay down, and, such is the force of habit, they resigned themselves to sleep, without once reflecting upon the probability and danger of being found by the Indians in that situation. If this appears strange, let us for a moment reflect, that every danger, and every calamity, after a time becomes familiar, and loses its effect upon the mind.

If it were possible that a man should first be made acquainted with his mortality, or even with the inevitable debility and infirmities of old age, when his understanding had arrived at its full strength, and life was endeared by the enjoyments of youth, and vigour, and health, with what an agony of terror and distress would the intelligence be received! yet, being gradually acquainted with these mournful truths, by insensible degrees, we scarce know when they lose all their force, and we think no more of the approach of old age and death, than these wanderers of an unknown desert did

of

of a less obvious and certain evil, the approach of the native savages; at a time when they must have fallen an easy prey to their malice or their fears. And it is remarkable, that the greater part of those who have been condemned to suffer a violent death, have slept the night immediately preceding their execution, though there is perhaps no instance of a person accused of a capital crime having slept the first night of his confinement. Thus is the evil of life in some degree a remedy for itself, and though every man at twenty deprecates fourscore, almost every man is as tenacious of life at fourscore, as at twenty; and if he does not suffer under any painful disorder, loses as little of the comforts that remain by reflecting that he is upon the brink of the grave, where the earth already crumbles under his feet, as he did of the pleasures of his better days, when his dissolution, though certain, was supposed to be at a distance.

Our travellers, having slept without once awaking till the morning, examined the river, and finding the tide favoured their return, and the country promised nothing worthy of a farther search, they re embarked in their boat, and made the best of their way to the ship.

Soon after the arrival of this party, the master also returned, having been seven leagues out to sea, and he was now of opinion, that there was no getting out where before he thought there had been a passage; his expedition, however, was by no means without its advantage, for having been a second time upon the rock where he had seen the large cockles, he met with a great number of turtle, three of which he caught, that together weighed seven hundred and ninety-one pounds, though he had no better instrument than a boat hook.

The next morning, therefore, I sent him out again, with proper instruments for taking them, and Mr Banks went with him, but the success did not at all answer our expectations, for, by the unaccountable conduct of the officer, not a single turtle was taken, nor could he be persuaded to return: Mr Banks, however,

went ashore upon the reef, where he saw several of the large cockles, and, having collected many shells and marine productions, he returned at eleven o'clock at night, in his own small boat, the master still continuing with the large one upon the rock. In the afternoon, seven or eight of the natives had appeared on the south side of the river, and two of them came down to the sandy point, opposite to the ship; but, upon seeing me put off in the boat to speak with them, they all ran away with the greatest precipitation.

As the master continued absent with the boat all night, I was forced to send the Second Lieutenant for him, early in the morning of the 10th, in the yawl; and soon after four of the natives appeared upon the sandy point, on the north side of the river, having with them a small wooden canoe, with outriggers: they seemed, for some time, to be busily employed in striking fish: some of our people were for going over to them in a boat, but this I would by no means permit, repeated experience having convinced me that it was more likely to prevent than procure an interview. I was determined to try what could be done by a contrary method, and accordingly let them alone, without appearing to take the least notice of them: this succeeded so well, that at length two of them came in the canoe within a musket shot of the ship, and there talked a great deal in a very loud tone: we understood nothing that they said, and therefore could answer their harangue only by shouting and making all the signs of invitation and kindness that we could devise. During this conference, they came insensibly nearer and nearer, holding up their lances, not in a threatening manner, but as if to intimate that if we offered them any injury, they had weapons to revenge it. When they were almost along-side of us, we threw them some cloth, nails, beads, paper, and other trifles, which they received without the least appearance of satisfaction: at last, one of the people happened to throw a small fish; at this they expressed the greatest joy imaginable, and, intimating, by signs, that they

several of the
shells and
at o'clock at
will continu-
n the after-
ared on the
ne down to
, upon see-
em, they all

at all night,
nt for him,
l; and soon
andy point,
hem a small
d, for some
: some of
a boat, but
experience
to prevent
ined to try
d, and ac-
to take the
ell, that at
n a musket
l in a very
y said, and
y shouting
ndness that
they came
eir lances,
imate that
ons to re-
ide of us,
aper, and
e least ap-
ople hap-
ressed the
signs, that
they

they would fetch their companions, immediately paddled away towards the shore. In the mean time some of our people, and among them Tupia, landed on the opposite side of the river: the canoe, with all the four Indians, very soon returned to the ship, and came quite along-side, without expressing any fear or distrust. We distributed some more presents among them, and soon after they left us, and landed on the same side of the river where our people had gone ashore: every man carried in his hand two lances, and a stick, which is used in throwing them, and advanced to the place where Tupia and the rest of our people were sitting; Tupia soon prevailed upon them to lay down their arms, and come forward without them: he then made signs that they should sit down by him, with which they complied, and seemed to be under no apprehension or constraint: several more of us then going ashore, they expressed some jealousy lest we should get between them and their arms; we took care, however, to shew them that we had no such intention, and, having joined them, we made them some more presents, as a farther testimony of our good-will, and our desire to obtain theirs. We continued together, with the utmost cordiality, till dinner time, and then, giving them to understand that we were going to eat, we invited them, by signs, to go with us; this, however, they declined, and as soon as we left them, they went away in their canoe.

One of these men was somewhat above the middle age, the other three were young; they were in general of the common stature, but their limbs were remarkably small; their skin was of the colour of wood foot, or what would be called a dark chocolate colour; their hair was black, but not woolly; it was short cropped, in some lank, and in others curled. Dampier says, that the people whom he saw on the western coast of this country, wanted two of their fore-teeth, but these had no such defect: some part of their bodies had been painted red, and the upper lip and breast of one of them was painted with streaks of white, which he call-

ed *Carbanda*; their features were far from disagreeable, their eyes were lively, and their teeth even and white, their voices were soft and tuneable, and they repeated many words after us with great facility. In the night, Mr Gore and the Master returned with the long-boat, and brought one turtle and a few shell-fish. The yawl had been left upon the shoal with six men, to make a farther trial for turtle.

The next morning, we had a visit from four of the natives; three of them had been with us before, but the fourth was a stranger, whose name, as we learnt from his companions who introduced him, was YAPARICO. This gentleman was distinguished by an ornament of a very striking appearance: it was the bone of a bird, nearly as thick as a man's finger, and five or six inches long, which he had thrust into a hole, made in the gristle that divides the nostrils; of this we had seen one instance, and only one, in New Zealand; but upon examination, we found that among all these people this part of the nose was perforated, to receive an ornament of the same kind: they had also holes in their ears, though nothing was then hanging to them, and had bracelets upon the upper part of their arms, made of plaited hair, so that, like the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, they seem to be fond of ornament, though they are absolutely without apparel; and one of them, to whom I had given part of an old shirt, instead of throwing it over any part of his body, tied it as a fillet round his head. They brought with them a fish, which they gave us, as we supposed, in return for the fish that we had given them the day before. They seemed to be much pleased, and in no haste to leave us, but seeing some of our gentlemen examine their canoe with great curiosity and attention, they were alarmed, and jumping immediately into it, paddled away without speaking a word.

About two the next morning, the 12th, the yawl, which had been left upon the shoal, returned with three turtles and a large skate. As it seemed now probable that

disagreeable,
and white,
they repeated
in the night,
the long-boat,
The yawl
to make a

four of the
ore, but the
earnt from
APARICO.
ament of a
of a bird,
r six inches
in the gristle
en one in-
t upon ex-
people this
ornament
their ears,
n, and had
s, made of
Terra del
ough they
f them, to
of throw-
illet round
which they
sh that we
med to be
but seeing
with great
jumping
peaking a
the yawl,
with three
probable
that

that this fishery might be prosecuted with advantage, I sent her out again, after breakfast, for a further supply. Soon after, three Indians ventured down to Tupia's tent, and were so well pleased with their reception, that one of them went with the canoe to fetch two others whom we had never seen: when he returned, he introduced the strangers by name, a ceremony which, upon such occasions, was never omitted. As they had received the fish that was thrown into their canoe, when they first approached the ship, with so much pleasure, some fish was offered to them now, and we were greatly surprised to see that it was received with the greatest indifference: they made signs, however, to some of the people, that they should dress it for them, which was immediately done, but after eating a little of it, they threw the rest to Mr Banks's dog. They staid with us all the forenoon, but would never venture above twenty yards from their canoe. We now perceived that the colour of their skin was not so dark as it appeared, what we had taken for their complexion, being the effects of dirt and smoke, in which, we imagined, they contrived to sleep, notwithstanding the heat of the climate, as the only means in their power to keep off the musquitos. Among other things that we had given them when we first saw them, were some medals, which we had hung round their necks by a riband; and these ribands were so changed by smoke, that we could not easily distinguish of what colour they had been: this incident led us more narrowly to examine the colour of their skin. While these people were with us, we saw two others on the point of land that lay on the opposite side of the river, at the distance of about two hundred yards, and by our glasses discovered them to be a woman and a boy; the woman, like the rest, being stark naked. We observed, that all of them were remarkably clean-limbed, and exceedingly active and nimble. One of these strangers had a necklace of shells, very prettily made, and a bracelet upon his arm, formed of several strings, so as to resemble what in England is called gymp: both of them had

had a piece of bark tied over the forehead, and were disfigured by the bone in the nose. We thought their language more harsh than that of the Islanders in the South Sea, and they were continually repeating the word *chercau*, which we imagined to be a term expressing admiration, by the manner in which it was uttered: they also cried out when they saw any thing new, *cher, tut, tut, tut, tut!* which probably had a similar signification. Their canoe was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but it was fitted with an outrigger, much like those of the islands, though in every respect very much inferior: when it was in shallow water, they set it on with poles, and when in deep, they worked it with paddles about four feet long: it contained just four people, so that the people who visited us to-day went away at two turns. Their lances were like those that we had seen in Botany Bay, except that they had but a single point, which in some of them was the sting of the ray, and barbed with two or three sharp bones of the same fish: it was indeed a most terrible weapon, and the instrument which they used in throwing it, seemed to be formed with more art than any we had seen before. About twelve o'clock next day, the yawl returned, with another turtle, and a large sting-ray, and in the evening, was sent out again.

The next morning, the 14th, two of the Indians came on board, but after a short stay, went along the shore, and applied themselves with great diligence to the striking of fish. Mr Gore, who went out this day with his gun, had the good fortune to kill one of the animals which had been so much the subject of our speculation. In form, it is most like the gerbua, which it also resembles in its motion, as has been observed already, but it greatly differs in size, the gerbua not being larger than a common rat, and this animal when full grown, being as big as a sheep: this individual was a young one, much under its full growth, weighing only thirty-eight pounds. The head, neck, and shoulders, are very small in proportion to the other parts of the
body;

and were dif-
 ght their lan-
 nders in the
 epeating the
 term expres-
 it was utter-
 y thing new,
 a similar fig-
 en feet long,
 n outrigger,
 every respect
 w water, they
 y worked it
 ned just four
 to-day went
 ce those that
 y had but a
 the sting of
 bones of the
 eapon, and
 g it, seemed
 een before.
 urned, with
 he evening,

the Indians
 along the
 illigence to
 ut this day
 one of the
 est of our
 oua, which
 bserved al-
 not being
 when full
 ual was a
 hing only.
 houlders,
 rts of the
 body;

body; the tail is nearly as long as the body, thick near the rump, and tapering towards the end: the fore legs of this individual were only eight inches long, and the hind legs two and twenty: its progress is by successive leaps or hops, of a great length, in an erect posture; the fore legs are kept bent close to the breast, and seemed to be of use only for digging: the skin is covered with a short fur, of a dark mouse or grey colour, excepting the head and ears, which bear a slight resemblance to those of a hare. This animal is called by the natives *Kangaroo*.

The next day, the 15th, our Kangaroo was dressed for dinner, and proved most excellent meat; we might now indeed be said to fare sumptuously every day, for we had turtle in great plenty, and we all agreed that they were much better than any we had tasted in England, which we imputed to their being eaten fresh from the sea, before their natural fat had been wasted, or their juices changed by a diet and situation so different from what the sea affords them, as garbage and a tub. Most of those that we caught here, were of the kind called green turtle, and weighed from two to three hundred weight, and when these were killed, they were always found to be full of turtle grass, which our naturalists took to be a kind of *conferva*: two of them were logger-heads, the flesh of which was much less delicious, and in their stomachs nothing was to be found but shells.

In the morning of the 16th, while the people were employed as usual in getting the ship ready for the sea, I climbed one of the hills on the north side of the river; from which I had an extensive view of the inland country, and found it agreeably diversified by hills, vallies, and large plains, which in many places were richly covered with wood. This evening we observed an emersion of Jupiter's first satellite, which gave 214 d. 53 m. 45 f. of longitude. The observation which was made on the 29th of June gave 214 d. 42 m. 30 f. the mean is 214 d. 48 m. 7½ f. the longitude of this place west of Greenwich.

On

On the 17th, I sent the master and one of the mates in the pinnace to look for a channel to the northward; and I went myself with Mr Banks and Dr Solander into the woods on the other side of the water. Tupia, who had been thither by himself, reported, that he had seen three Indians who had given him some roots about as thick as a man's finger, in shape not much unlike a rhadish, and of a very agreeable taste. This induced us to go over, hoping that we should be able to improve our acquaintance with the natives: in a very little time we discovered four of them in a canoe, who as soon as they saw us, came ashore, and, though they were all strangers, walked up to us, without any signs of suspicion or fear. Two of these had necklaces of shells, which we could not persuade them to part with for any thing we could give them: we presented them, however, with some beads, and, after a short stay, they departed. We attempted to follow them, hoping that they would conduct us to some place where we should find more of them, and have an opportunity of seeing their women; but they made us understand, by signs, that they did not desire our company.

At eight o'clock the next morning, we were visited by several of the natives, who were now become quite familiar. One of them, at our desire, threw his lance, which was about eight feet long: it flew with a swiftness and steadiness that surprised us, and though it was never more than four feet from the ground, it entered deeply into a tree at fifty paces distance. After this they ventured on board, where I left them, to all appearance, much entertained, and went again with Mr Banks to take a view of the country; but chiefly to indulge an anxious curiosity, by looking round us upon the sea, of which our wishes almost persuaded us we had formed an idea more disadvantageous than the truth. After having walked about seven or eight miles along the shore to the northward, we ascended a very high hill, and were soon convinced that the danger of our

our situation was at least equal to our apprehensions; for in whatever direction we turned our eyes, we saw rocks and shoals without number, and no passage out to sea, but through the winding channels between them, which could not be navigated without the last degree of difficulty and danger. We returned therefore to the ship, not in better spirits than when we left it; we found several natives still on board, and we were told that the turtles, of which we had then no less than twelve upon the deck, had fixed their attention more than any thing else in the ship.

On the 19th in the morning, we were visited by ten of the natives, the greater part from the other side of the river, where we saw six or seven more, most of them women, and like all the rest of the people we had seen in this country, they were stark naked. Our guests brought with them a greater number of lances than they had ever done before, and having laid them up in a tree, they set a man and a boy to watch them: the rest then came on board, and we soon perceived that they had determined to get one of our turtles, which was probably as great a dainty to them as to us. They first asked us, by signs, to give them one; and being refused, they expressed, both by looks and gestures, great disappointment and anger. At this time we happened to have no victuals dressed, but I offered one of them some biscuit, which he snatched and threw overboard with great disdain. One of them renewed his request to Mr Banks, and upon a refusal stamped with his foot, and pushed him from him in a transport of resentment and indignation: having applied by turns to almost every person who appeared to have any command in the ship, without success, they suddenly seized two of the turtles, and dragged them towards the side of the ship where their canoe lay: our people soon forced them out of their hands, and replaced them with the rest. They would not however relinquish their enterprise, but made several other attempts of the same kind, in all which being equally disappointed, they suddenly

leaped into their canoe in a rage, and began to paddle towards the shore. At the same time, I went into the boat with Mr Banks, and five or six of the ship's crew, and we got ashore before them, where many more of our people were already engaged in various employments; as soon as they landed, they seized their arms, and, before we were aware of their design, they snatched a brand from under a pitch kettle which was boiling, and making a circuit to the windward of the few things we had on shore, they set fire to the grass in their way, with surprising quickness and dexterity: the grass, which was five or six feet high, and as dry as stubble, burnt with amazing fury; and the fire made a rapid progress towards a tent of Mr Banks's, which had been set up for Tupia when he was sick, taking in its course a sow and pigs, one of which it scorched to death. Mr Banks leaped into a boat, and fetched some people from on board, just time enough to save his tent, by hauling it down upon the beach; but the smith's forge, at least such part of it as would burn, was consumed. While this was doing, the Indians went to a place at some distance, where several of our people were washing, and where our nets, among which was the seine, and a great quantity of linen, were laid out to dry; here they again set fire to the grass, entirely disregarding both threats and entreaties. We were therefore obliged to discharge a musquet, loaded with small shot, at one of them, which drew blood at the distance of about forty yards, and this putting them to flight, we extinguished the fire at this place before it had made much progress; but where the grass had been first kindled, it spread into the woods to a great distance. As the Indians were still in sight, I fired a musquet, charged with ball, abreast of them among the mangroves, to convince them that they were not yet out of our reach: upon hearing the ball they quickened their pace, and we soon lost sight of them. We thought they would now give us no more trouble; but soon after we heard their voices in the woods, and perceived that they came nearer and nearer.

nearer. I set out, therefore, with Mr Banks and three or four more, to meet them: when our parties came in sight of each other, they halted; except one old man, who came forward to meet us: at length he stopped, and having uttered some words, which we were very sorry we could not understand, he went back to his companions, and the whole body slowly retreated. We found means however to seize some of their darts, and continued to follow them about a mile: we then sat down upon some rocks, from which we could observe their motions, and they also sat down at about an hundred yards distance. After a short time, the old man again advanced towards us, carrying in his hand a lance without a point: he stopped several times, at different distances, and spoke; we answered by beckoning and making such signs of amity as we could devise; upon which the messenger of peace, as we supposed him to be, turned and spoke aloud to his companions, who then set up their lances against a tree, and advanced towards us in a friendly manner: when they came up, we returned the darts or lances that we had taken from them, and we perceived with great satisfaction that this rendered the reconciliation complete. We found in this party four persons whom we had never seen before, who as usual were introduced to us by name; but the man who had been wounded in the attempt to burn our nets and linen, was not among them; we knew however that he could not be dangerously hurt, by the distance at which the shot had reached him. We made all of them presents of such trinkets as we had about us, and they walked back with us towards the ship: as we went along, they told us, by signs, that they would not set fire to the grass any more; and we distributed among them some musquet balls, and endeavoured to make them understand their use and effect. When they came abreast of the ship, they sat down, but could not be prevailed upon to come on board; we therefore left them, and in about two hours they went away, soon after which we perceived the woods on fire at about

two miles distance. If this accident had happened a very little while sooner, the consequence might have been dreadful; for our powder had been aboard but a few days, and the store tent, with many valuable things which it contained, had not been removed many hours. We had no idea of the fury with which grass would burn in this hot climate, nor consequently of the difficulty of extinguishing it; but we determined, that if it should ever again be necessary for us to pitch our tents in such a situation, our first measure should be to clear the ground round us.

In the afternoon we got every thing on board the ship, new birthed her, and let her swing with the tide; and at night the master returned, with the discouraging account, that there was no passage for the ship to the northward.

The next morning, the 20th, at low water, I went and sounded and buoyed the bar, the ship being now ready for the sea. We saw no Indians this day, but all the hills round us, for many miles, were on fire, which at night made a most striking and beautiful appearance.

The 21st passed without our getting sight of any of the inhabitants, and, indeed, without a single incident worth notice.

On the 22d, we killed a turtle for the day's provision, upon opening which we found a wooden harpoon or turtle-peg, about as thick as a man's finger, near fifteen inches long, and bearded at the end, such as we had seen among the natives, sticking through both shoulders: it appeared to have been struck a considerable time, for the wound had perfectly healed up over the weapon.

Early in the morning of the 23d, I sent some people into the country to gather a supply of the greens which have been before mentioned by the name of Indian Kale; and one of them having straggled from the rest, suddenly fell in with four Indians, three men and a boy, whom he did not see till, by turning short in the wood,
he

l happened a
e might have
e aboard but a
valuable things
many hours,
a grafs would
y of the diffi-
nined, that if
to pitch our
ould be to

on board the
with the tide;
discouraging
ne ſhip to the

water, I went
p being now
s day, but all
on fire, which
tiful appear-
ght of any of
ngle incident

y's proviſion,
n harpoon or
ger, near fif-
, ſuch as we
rough both
k a conſider-
aled up over

ſome people
reens which
e of Indian
rom the reſt,
n and a boy,
n the wood,
he

found himſelf among them. They had kindled a
e, and were broiling a bird of ſome kind, and part of a
anguroo, the remainder of which, and a cockatoo, hung
a little diſtance upon a tree: the man, being unarm-
, was at firſt greatly terrified; but he had the pre-
ce of mind not to run away, judging, very rightly,
at he was moſt likely to incur danger by appearing to
prehend it; on the contrary, he went and ſat down
them, and, with an air of chearfulneſs and good
mour, offered them his knife, the only thing he had
out him which he thought would be acceptable to
em; they received it, and, having handed it from one
the other, they gave it him again: he then made an
ffer to leave them; but this they ſeemed not diſpoſed
permit: ſtill, however, he diſſembled his fears, and
t down again; they conſidered him with great at-
tion and curioſity, particularly his clothes, and then
lt his hands and face, and ſatiſfied themſelves that his
ody was of the ſame texture with their own. They
eated him with the greateſt civility, and, having kept
im about half an hour, they made ſigns that he might
epart; he did not wait for a ſecond diſmiſſion, but
hen he left them, not taking the direct way to the
hip, they came from their fire and directed him; ſo
at they well knew whence he came.

In the mean time, Mr Banks, having made an ex-
curſion on the other ſide of the river to gather plants,
ound the greateſt part of the cloth that had been given
to the Indians lying in a heap together, probably as uſe-
leſs lumber, not worth carrying away; and, perhaps, if
e had ſought further, he might have found the other
inkets; for they ſeemed to ſet very little value upon
ny thing we had, except our turtle, which was a com-
modity that we were leaſt able to ſpare.

The blowing weather, which prevented our attempt
to get out to ſea, ſtill continuing, Mr Banks and Dr
Polander went again out on the 24th to ſee whether any
new plant could be picked up: they traversed the
woods all day without ſucceſs; but as they were return-
ing

ing through a deep valley, the sides of which, though almost as perpendicular as a wall, were covered with trees and bushes; they found lying upon the ground several marking nuts, the *Anacardium orientale*; they put them upon a new scent, and they made a most diligent search after the tree that bore them, which, perhaps no European botanist ever saw; but, to their great mortification, they could not find it: so that, after spending much time, and cutting down four or five trees, they returned quite exhausted with fatigue to the ship.

On the 25th, having made an excursion up the river, I found a canoe belonging to our friends, the Indians, whom we had not seen since the affair of the turtle; they had left it tied to some mangroves, about a mile distant from the ship, and I could see by their fire that they were retired at least six miles directly inland.

As Mr Banks was again gleaning the country for his Natural History, on the 26th, he had the good fortune to take an animal of the *Opossum* tribe; it was a male, and with it he took two young ones: it was found much to resemble the remarkable animal of the kind, which Mons. de Buffon has described in his Natural History by the name of *Phalanger*, but it was not the same. Mons. Buffon supposes this tribe to be peculiar to America, but, in this, he is certainly mistaken, and probably, as Pallas has observed in his Zoology, the *Phalanger* itself is a native of the East Indies, as the animal which was caught by Mr Banks resembled it in the extraordinary conformation of the feet, in which it differs from animals of every other tribe.

On the 27th, Mr Gore shot a Kangaroo, which with the skin, entrails, and head weighed eighty-four pounds. Upon examination, however, we found that this animal was not at its full growth, the innermost grinders not being yet formed. We dressed it for dinner the next day; but, to our great disappointment, we found it had a much worse flavour than that we had catch before.

f which, though
ere covered with
pon the ground
orientale; the
made a most
em, which, pe
out, to their gre
that, after spen
our or five tre
gue to the ship
ion up the river
nds, the Indian
air of the turtle
es, about a mil
ee by their fire
iles directly in

the country for
ad the good for
ibe; it was a
ag ones: it wa
le animal of the
cribed in his Na
r, but it was not
is tribe to be pe
tainly mistaken
his Zoology, the
ndies, as the au
sembled it in the
in which it di

nguroo, which
hed eighty-four
, we found the
the innermost
ressed it for dis
disappointment
han that we ha

The

The wind continued in the same quarter, and with the same violence, till five o'clock in the morning of the 4th, when it fell calm; soon after a light breeze sprung up from the land, and it being about two hours ebb, I sent a boat to see what water was upon the bar; in the mean time we got the anchor up, and made all ready to start to sea. But when the boat came back, the officer reported that there was only thirteen feet water upon the bar, which was six inches less than the ship drew. We were therefore obliged to come to, and the sea breeze setting in again about eight o'clock, we gave up all hope of sailing that day.

We had fresh gales at S. E. with hazy weather and rain, till two in the morning of the 31st, when the weather being something more moderate, I had thoughts of trying to warp the ship out of the harbour; but upon going out myself first in the boat, I found it still blow too fresh for the attempt. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable success; sometimes taking a turtle, and frequently bringing in from two to three hundred weight of fish.

On the 1st of August, the carpenter examined the pumps, and, to our great mortification, found them all in a state of decay, owing, as he said, to the sap's having been left in the wood; one of them was so rotten as, when hoisted up, to drop to pieces, and the rest were little better; so that our chief trust was now in the soundness of our vessel, which happily did not admit more than one inch of water in an hour.

At six o'clock in the morning of Friday the third, we made another unsuccessful attempt to warp the ship out of harbour; but at five o'clock in the morning of the 4th, our efforts had a better effect, and about seven we got once more under sail, with a light air from the land, which soon died away, and was followed by the sea-breeze from S. E. by S. with which we stood off to sea E. by N. having the pinnace ahead, which was ordered to keep sounding continually. The yawl had been

been sent to the turtle bank, to take up the net which had been left there ; but as the wind freshened, we got out before her.

A little before noon, we anchored in fifteen fathom water, with a sandy bottom ; for I did not think it safe to run in among the shoals, till I had well viewed them, at low-water, from the mast-head, which might determine me which way to steer ; for as yet I was in doubt whether I should beat back to the southward, round all the shoals, or seek a passage to the eastward or the northward, all which at present appeared to be equally difficult and dangerous. When we were at anchor, the harbour from which we sailed bore S. 70 W. distant about five leagues ; the northermost point of the main in sight, which I named CAPE BEDFORD, and which lies in latitude 15 d. 16 m. S. longitude 214 d. 45 m. W. bore N. 20 W. distant three leagues and an half ; but to the N. E. of this Cape we could see land which had the appearance of two high islands : the turtle banks bore east, distant one mile : our latitude, by observation, was 15 d. 32 m. S. and our depth of water in standing off from the land was from three and an half to fifteen fathom.

Depar-

n
ha
th
th
of
at
is f
lie
wit
for
the
seve
fere
bein
it is
also
ricad
diffic
ward
the w
titude
the f
is for
Vol.

the net which
 ned, we got

fteen fathom
 think it safe
 viewed them,
 might deter-
 was in doubt
 rd, round all
 ward or the
 o be equally
 anchor, the
 W. distant
 of the main
 and which
 d. 45 m.W.
 an half; but
 l which had
 turtle banks
 by observa-
 of water in
 d an half to

*Departure from Endeavour River; a particular Description
 of the Harbour there, in which the Ship was refitted,
 the adjacent Country, and several Islands near the Coast:
 the Range from Endeavour River to the Northern Ex-
 tremity of the Country, and the Dangers of that Navi-
 gation.*

TO the harbour which we had now left, I gave the name of ENDEAVOUR RIVER. It is only a small bar harbour, or creek, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues inland, and at the head of which there is a small brook of fresh water: there is not depth of water for shipping above a mile within the bar, and at this distance, only on the north side, where the bank is so steep, for near a quarter of a mile, that a ship may lie afloat at low-water, so near the shore as to reach it with a stage, and the situation is extremely convenient for heaving down; but, at low-water, the depth upon the bar is not more than nine or ten feet, nor more than seventeen or eighteen at the height of the tide; the difference between high and low-water, at spring-tides, being about nine feet. At the new and full of the moon it is high-water between nine and ten o'clock: it must also be remembered, that this part of the coast is so barricaded with shoals, as to make the harbour still more difficult of access; the safest approach is from the southward, keeping the main land close upon the board all the way. Its situation may always be found by the latitude, which has been very accurately laid down. Over the south point is some high land, but the north point is formed by a low sandy beach, which extends about

three miles to the northward, where the land begins again to be high.

The chief refreshment that we procured here, was turtle, but, as they were not to be had without going five leagues out to sea, and the weather was frequently tempestuous, we did not abound with this dainty: what we caught, as well as the fish, was always equally divided among us all by weight, the meanest person on board having the same share as myself; and, I think, every commander, in such a voyage as this, will find it his interest to follow the same rule. In several parts of the sandy beaches, and sand hills near the sea, we found purslain, and a kind of bean that grows upon a stalk, which creeps along the ground: the purslain we found very good when it was boiled, and the beans are not to be despised, for we found them of great service to our sick: the best greens, however, that could be procured here, were the tops of the cocos, which have been mentioned already, as known in the West Indies by the name of *Indian kale*: these were, in our opinion, not much inferior to spinnage, which, in taste, they somewhat resemble; the roots, indeed, are not good, but they may probably be meliorated by proper cultivation. They are found here chiefly in boggy ground. The few cabbage palms that we met with, were in general small, and yielded so little cabbage that they were not worth seeking.

Besides the kangaroo, and the opossum, that have been already mentioned, and a kind of polecat, there are wolves upon this part of the coast, if we were not deceived by the tracts upon the ground, and several species of serpents; some of the serpents are venomous, and some harmless: there are no tame animals here except dogs, and of these we saw but two or three, which frequently came about the tents, to pick up the scraps and bones that happened to lie scattered near them. There does not indeed seem to be many of any animal, except the kangaroo; we scarcely saw any other above once,
but

but this we met with almost every time we went into the woods.

Of land fowls we saw crows, kites, hawks, cockatoos of two sorts, one white and the other black, a very beautiful kind of loriquets, some parrots, pigeons of two or three sorts, and several small birds not known in Europe. The water fowls are herons, whistling ducks, which perch, and, I believe, roost upon trees, wild geese, curlews, and a few others, but these do not abound.

The face of the country, which has been occasionally mentioned before, is agreeably diversified by hill and valley, lawn and wood. The soil of the hills is hard, dry, and stony, yet it produces coarse grass besides wood: the soil of the plains and vallies is in some places sand, and in some clay; in some also it is rocky and stony, like the hills; in general, however, it is well clothed, and has at least the appearance of fertility. The whole country, both hill and valley, wood and plain, abounds with ant hills, some of which are six or eight feet high, and twice as much in circumference. The trees here are not of many sorts; the gum tree, which we found on the southern part of the coast, is the most common, but here it is not so large: on each side of the river, through its whole course, there are mangroves in great numbers, which in some places extend a mile within the coast. The country is in all parts well watered, there being several fine rivulets at a small distance from each other, but none in the place where we lay, at least not during the time we were there, which was the dry season; we were however well supplied with water by springs, which were not far off.

In the afternoon of the 4th, we had a gentle breeze at S. E. and clear weather, but as I did not intend to sail till the morning, I sent all the boats to the reef, to get what turtle and shell fish they could. At low-water, I went up to the mast-head, and took a view of the shoals, which made a very threatening appearance: I could see several at a remote distance, and part of many of them was above water. The sea appeared

most open to the north-east of the turtle reef, and I came to a resolution to stretch out that way close upon a wind, because if we should find no passage, we could always return the way we went.

In the evening, the boats brought in a turtle, a sting-ray, and as many large cockles as came to about a pound and an half a man, for in each of them there was no less than two pounds of meat: in the night also we caught several sharks, which, though not a dainty, were an acceptable increase of our fresh provision.

In the morning of the 5th, I waited till half ebb before I weighed, because at that time the shoals begin to appear, but the wind then blew so hard that I was obliged to remain at anchor: in the afternoon, however, the gale becoming more moderate, we got under sail, and stood out upon a wind N. E. by E. leaving the turtle reef to windward, and having the pinnace sounding ahead: we had not kept this course long, before we discovered shoals before us, and upon both the bows; and at half an hour after four, having run about eight miles, the pinnace made the signal for shoal water, where we little expected it: upon this we tacked, and stood on and off, while the pinnace stretched farther to the eastward, and, night approaching, I came to an anchor in twenty fathom water, with a muddy bottom. Endeavour River then bore S. 52 W. Cape Bedford W. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant five leagues, the northernmost land in sight, which had the appearance of an island, N. and a shoal, a small sandy part of which appeared above water, bore N. E. distant between two and three miles: in standing off from turtle reef to this place, we had from fourteen to twenty fathom water, but when the pinnace was about a mile farther to the E. N. E. there was no more than four or five feet water, with rocky ground; and yet this did not appear to us in the ship.

In the morning of the 6th, we had a strong gale, so that instead of weighing, we were obliged to veer away more cable, and strike our top-gallant yards. At low-water,

reef, and I
y close upon
ge, we could

rtle, a sting-
out a pound
here was no
ght also we
ot a dainty,
ovision.

half ebb be-
als begin to
that I was

noon, how-
ve got under
y E. leaving

the pinnacle
se long, be-
on both the

g run about
or shoal wa-
s we tacked,

retched far-
g, I came to
muddy bot-

. Cape Bed-
he norther-

rance of an
f which ap-

etween two
e reef to this
hom water,

ther to the
ive feet wa-
not appear

ong gale, so
o veer away
s. At low-
water,

water, myself, with several of the officers, kept a look-out at the mast-head, to see if any passage could be discovered between the shoals, but nothing was in view except breakers, extending from the S. round by the E. as far as N. W. and out to sea beyond the reach of our sight; these breakers, however, did not appear to be caused by one continued shoal, but by several, which lay detached from each other: on that which lay farthest to the eastward, the sea broke very high, which made me think it was the outermost, for upon many of these within, the breakers were inconsiderable, and from about half ebb to half flood, they were not to be seen at all, which makes sailing among them still more dangerous, especially as the shoals here consist principally of coral rocks, which are as steep as a wall; upon some of them however, and generally at the north end, there are patches of sand, which are covered only at high-water, and which are to be discerned at some distance. Being now convinced that there was no passage to sea, but through the labyrinth formed by these shoals, I was altogether at a loss which way to steer, when the weather should permit us to get under sail. It was the Master's opinion, that we should beat back the way we came, but this would have been an endless labour, as the wind blew strongly from that quarter, almost without intermission; on the other hand, if no passage could be found to the northward, we should be compelled to take that measure at last. These anxious deliberations engaged us till eleven o'clock at night, when the ship drove, and obliged us to veer away to a cable and one third, which brought her up; but in the morning, the gale increasing; she drove again, and we therefore let go the small bower, and veered away to a whole cable upon it, and two cables upon the other anchors, yet she still drove, though not so fast; we then got down her top-gallant masts, and struck the yards and top-masts close down, and at last had the satisfaction to find that she rode. Cape Bedford now bore W. S. W. distant three leagues and an half, and in this situation we had shoals

to the eastward, extending from the S. E. by S. to the N. N. W. the nearest of which was about two miles distant. As the gale continued, with little remission, we rode till seven o'clock in the morning of the 10th, when, it being more moderate, we weighed and stood in for the land, having at length determined to seek a passage along the shore to the northward, still keeping the boat ahead: during our run in we had from nineteen to twelve fathom: after standing in about an hour, we edged away for three small islands that lay N. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. three leagues from Cape Bedford, which the Master had visited while we were in port. At nine o'clock, we were abreast of them, and between them and the main: between us and the main there was another low island, which lies N. N. W. four miles from the three islands; and in this channel we had fourteen fathom water. The northermost point of land in sight bore N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant about two leagues. Four or five leagues to the north of this head land, we saw three islands, near which lay some that were still smaller, and we could see the shoals and reefs without us, extending to the northward, as far as these islands: between these reefs and the head land, we directed our course, leaving to the eastward a small island, which lies N. by E. distant four miles from the three islands. At noon, we were got between the head land and the three islands: from the head land we were distant two leagues, and from the islands four; our latitude, by observation, was 14 d. 51 m. We now thought we saw a clear opening before us, and hoped that we were once more out of danger; in this hope, however, we soon found ourselves disappointed, and for that reason I called the head land CAPE FLATTERY. It lies in latitude 14 d. 56 m. S. longitude 214 d. 43 m. W. and is a lofty promontory, making next the sea in two hills, which have a third behind them, with low sandy ground on each side: it may however be still better known by the three islands out at sea; the northermost and largest lies about five leagues from the Cape, in the direction of N. N. E. From Cape Flattery the
land

by S. to the
two miles dif-
remission, we
ne 10th, when,
d stood in for
seek a passage
eping the boat
n nineteen to
an hour, we
lay N. N. E. $\frac{1}{4}$
ich the Master
ne o'clock, we
and the main:
er low island,
e three islands;
n water. The
N. N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W.
leagues to the
ds, near which
could see the
the northward,
s and the head
the eastward a
our miles from
pt between the
e head land we
ands four; our
m. We now
us, and hoped
in this hope,
ointed, and for
FLATTERY.
e 214 d. 43 m.
ext the sea in
em, with low
ver be still bet-
; the norther-
om the Cape,
e Flattery the
land

land trends away N. W. and N. W. by W. We steer-
ed along the shore N. W. by W. till one o'clock, for
what we thought the open channel, when the petty offi-
cer at the mast-head cried out that he saw land ahead,
extending quite round to the islands that lay without us,
and a large reef between us and them: upon this I ran
up to the mast-head myself, from whence I very plainly
saw the reef, which was now so far to windward, that
we could not weather it, but the land ahead, which he
had supposed to be the main, appeared to me to be only
a cluster of small islands. As soon as I got down from
the mast-head, the Master, and some others went up,
who all insisted that the land ahead was not islands,
but the main, and to make their report still more alarm-
ing, they said that they saw breakers all round us. In
this dilemma, we hauled upon a wind in for the land,
and made the signal for the boat that was sounding ahead
to come on board, but as she was far to leeward, we
were obliged to edge away to take her up, and soon af-
ter we came to an anchor, under a point of the main, in
somewhat less than five fathom, and at about the distance
of a mile from the shore. Cape Flattery now bore S. E.
distant three leagues and an half. As soon as the ship
was at anchor, I went ashore upon the point, which is
high, and afforded me a good view of the sea coast,
trending away N. W. by W. eight or ten leagues, which,
the weather not being very clear, was as far as I could
see. Nine or ten small low islands, and some shoals ap-
peared off the coast; I saw also some large shoals between
the main and the three high islands, without which, I
was clearly of opinion there were more islands, and not
any part of the main. Except the point I was now
upon, which I called POINT LOOK-OUT, and Cape
Flattery, the main land, to the northward of Cape Bed-
ford, is low and chequered with white sand and green
bushes; for ten or twelve miles inland, beyond which it
rises to a considerable height. To the northward of
Point Look-out, the coast appeared to be shoal and flat,
for a considerable distance, which did not encourage the
hope

hope that the channel we had hitherto found in with the land would continue. Upon this point, which was narrow, and consisted of the finest white sand we had ever seen, we discovered the footsteps of people, and we saw also smoke and fire at a distance up the country.

In the evening, I returned to the ship, and resolved the next morning to visit one of the high islands in the offing, from the top of which, as they lay five leagues out to sea, I hoped to discover more distinctly the situation of the shoals and the channel between them.

In the morning, therefore, of the 11th, I set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr Banks, whose fortitude and curiosity made him a party in every expedition, for the northermost and largest of the three islands, and at the same time I sent the master in the yawl to leeward, to sound between the low islands and the main. In my way, I passed over a reef of coral rock and sand, which lies about two leagues from the island, and I left another to leeward, which lies about three miles from it: on the north part of the reef, to the leeward, there is a low sandy island, with trees upon it; and upon the reef which we passed over, we saw several turtles: we chased one or two, but having little time to spare, and the wind blowing fresh, we did not take any.

About one o'clock, we reached the island, and immediately ascended the highest hill, with a mixture of hope and fear, proportioned to the importance of our business, and the uncertainty of the event: when I looked round, I discovered a reef of rocks, lying between two and three leagues without the islands, and extending in a line N. W. and S. E. farther than I could see, upon which the sea broke in a dreadful surf; this, however, made me think that there were no shoals beyond them, and I conceived hopes of getting without these, as I perceived several breaks or openings in the reef, and deep water between that and the islands. I continued

upon

the
the
the
A
as
fa
no
fa
di
tio
dis
Ba
up
foi
dis
and
we
som
and
this
some
two
little
sea;
sandy
Notw
main,
Vol.

upon this hill till sun-set, but the weather was so hazy during the whole time, that I came down much disappointed. After reflecting upon what I had seen, and comparing the intelligence I had gained with what I expected, I determined to stay upon the island all night, hoping that the morning might be clearer, and afford me a more distinct and comprehensive view. We therefore took up our lodging under the shelter of a bush which grew upon the beach, and at three in the morning, having sent the pinnace with one of the mates whom I had brought out with me, to sound between the island and the reefs, and examine what appeared to be a channel through them, I climbed the hill a second time; but, to my great disappointment, found the weather much more hazy than it had been the day before. About noon the pinnace returned, having been as far as the reef, and found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathom of water; but it blew so hard that the mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which he said appeared to him to be very narrow: this, however, did not discourage me, for I judged from his description of the place he had been at, that he had seen it to disadvantage. While I was busy in my survey, Mr Banks was attentive to his favourite pursuit, and picked up several plants which he had not before seen. We found the island, which is visible at twelve leagues distance, to be about eight leagues in circumference, and in general very rocky and barren. On the north-west side, however, there are some sandy bays, and some low land, which is covered with long thin grass, and trees of the same kind with those upon the main: this part also abounded with lizards of a very large size, some of which we took. We found also fresh water in two places; one was a running stream, but that was a little brackish where I tasted it, which was close to the sea; the other was a standing pool, close behind the sandy beach, and this was perfectly sweet and good. Notwithstanding the distance of this island from the main, we saw, to our great surprize, that it was some-

times visited by the natives; for we found seven or eight frames of their huts, and vast heaps of shells, the fish of which we supposed had been their food. We observed that all these huts were built upon eminences, and entirely exposed to the S. E. contrary to those which we had seen upon the main; for they were all built either upon the side of a hill, or under some bushes which afforded them shelter from the wind. From these huts, and their situation, we concluded that at some seasons of the year the weather here is invariably calm and fine; for the inhabitants have no boat which can navigate the sea to so great a distance, in such weather as we had from the time of our first coming upon the coast. As we saw no animals upon this place but lizards, I called it LIZARD ISLAND; the other two high islands, which lie at the distance of four or five miles from it, are comparatively small; and near them lie three others smaller still, and low, with several shoals or reefs, especially to the S. E. there is, however, a clear passage from Cape Flattery to these islands, and even quite to the outward reefs, leaving Lizard Island to the north-west, and the others to the south-east.

At two in the afternoon, there being no hope of clear weather, we set out from Lizard Island to return to the ship, and in our way landed upon the low sandy island with trees upon it, which we had remarked in our going out. Upon this island we saw an incredible number of birds, chiefly sea-fowl: we found also the nest of an eagle with young ones, which we killed; and the nest of some other bird, we knew not what, of a most enormous size; it was built with sticks upon the ground, and was no less than six and twenty feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. We found also that this place had been visited by the Indians, probably to eat turtle, many of which we saw upon the island, and a great number of their shells, piled one upon another in different places.

To this spot we gave name of EAGLE ISLAND, and after leaving it, we steered S. W. directly for the ship,
sound-

nd seven or
of shells, the
food. We
eminences,
those which
ere all built
some bushes
wind. From
uded that at
is invariably
o boat which
in such wea-
coming upon
his place but
ne other two
f four or five
nd near them
several shoals
wever, a clear
nds, and even
Island to the
est.

o hope of clear
o return to the
y sandy island
in our going
ble number of
ne nest of an
and the nest
a most enor-
e ground, and
ircumference,
ound also that
s, probably to
he island, and
upon another

ISLAND, and
for the ship,
found-

sounding all the way, and we had never less than eight fathom, nor more than fourteen; the same depth of water that I had found between this and Lizard Island.

When I got on-board, the master informed me that he had been down to the low islands, between which and the main I had directed him to sound; that he judged them to lie about three leagues from the main; that without them he found from ten to fourteen fathom, and between them and the main seven; but that a flat, which ran two leagues out from the main, made this channel narrow. Upon one of these low islands he slept, and was ashore upon others; and he reported, that he saw every where piles of turtle-shells, and fins hanging upon the trees in many places, with the flesh upon them, so recent, that the boat's crew eat of them: he saw also two spots, clear of grass, which appeared to have been lately dug up, and, from the shape and size of them, he conjectured they were graves.

After considering what I had seen myself, and the report of the master, I was of opinion that the passage to leeward would be dangerous, and that, by keeping in with the main, we should run the risk of being locked in by the great reef, and at last be compelled to return back in search of another passage, by which, or any other accident that should cause the same delay, we should infallibly lose our passage to the East Indies, and endanger the ruin of the voyage, as we had now but little more than three months provisions on board at short allowance.

Having stated this opinion, and the facts and appearances upon which it was founded, to the officers, it was unanimously agreed, that the best thing we could do would be to quit the coast altogether, till we could approach it with less danger.

In the morning of the 13th, therefore, at break of day, we got under sail, and stood out N. E. for the north-west end of Lizard Island, leaving Eagle Island to windward, and some other islands and shoals to the leeward, and having the pinnace ahead to ascertain the

depth of water in every part of our course. In this channel we had from nine to fourteen fathom.

At noon, the north west end of Lizard Island bore E. S. E. distant one mile; our latitude, by observation, was 14 d. 38 m. and our depth of water fourteen fathom. We had a steady gale at S. E. and by two o'clock we just fetched to windward of one of the channels or openings in the outer reef, which I had seen from the island. We now tacked, and made a short trip to the S. W. while the Master in the pinnace examined the channel; he soon made the signal for the ship to follow, and in a short time she got safe out. As soon as we had got without the breakers, we had no ground with one hundred and fifty fathom, and found a large sea rolling in from the S. E. a certain sign that neither land nor shoals were near us in that direction.

Our change of situation was now visible in every countenance, for it was most sensibly felt in every breast: we had been little less than three months entangled among shoals and rocks, that every moment threatened us with destruction: frequently passing our nights at anchor within hearing of the surge that broke over them; sometimes driving towards them even while our anchors were out, and knowing that if by any accident, to which an almost continual tempest exposed us, they should not hold, we must in a few minutes inevitably perish. But now, after having sailed no less than three hundred and sixty leagues, without once having a man out of the chains heaving the lead, even for a minute, which perhaps never happened to any other vessel, we found ourselves in an open sea, with deep water; and enjoyed a flow of spirits which was equally owing to our late dangers and our present security: yet the very waves, which by their swell convinced us that we had no rocks or shoals to fear convinced us also that we could not safely put the same confidence in our vessel as before she had struck; for the blows she received from them so widened her leaks, that she admitted no less than nine inches water in an hour, which, considering the state of
our

our pumps, and the navigation that was still before us, would have been a subject of more serious consideration, to people whose danger had not so lately been so much more imminent.

The passage or channel through which we passed into the open sea beyond the reef, lies in latitude 14 d. 32 m. S. and may be always be known by the three high islands within it, which I have called the ISLANDS OF DIRECTION, because by these a stranger may find a safe passage through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Island N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and not more in length. Lizard Island which is, as I have before observed, the largest and the northermost of the three, affords safe anchorage under the north west side, fresh water, and wood for fuel. The low islands and shoals also which lie between it and the main abound with turtle and fish, which may probably be caught in all seasons of the year, except when the weather is very tempestuous; so that, all things considered, there is not perhaps a better place for ships to refresh at upon the whole coast than this island. And before I dismiss it, I must observe, that we found upon it, as well as upon the beach in and about Endeavour River, bamboos, cocoa nuts, pumice stone, and the seeds of plants which are not the produce of this country, and which it is reasonable to suppose are brought from the eastward by the trade winds. The islands which were discovered by Quiros, and called Australia del Espiritu Santa, lie in this parallel; but how far to the eastward cannot now be ascertained; in most charts they are placed in the same longitude with this country, which, as appears by the account of his voyage that has been published, he never saw; for that places his discoveries no less than two and twenty degrees to the eastward of it.

As soon as we were without the reef, we brought to, and having hoisted in the boats, we stood off and on upon a wind all night; for I was not willing to run to leeward till I had a whole day before me. In the
morn-

morning of the 14th, at day-break, Lizard Island bore S. 15 E. distant ten leagues; and we then made sail and stood away N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. till nine o'clock, when we stood N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. having the advantage of a fresh gale at S. E. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 13 d. 46 m. S. and at this time we had no land in sight. At six in the evening we shortened sail and brought the ship to, with her head to the N. E. and at six in the morning made sail and steered west, in order to get within sight of the land, that I might be sure not to overshoot the passage, if a passage there was, between this land and New Guinea. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 13 d. 2 m. S. longitude 216 d. W. which was 1 d. 23 m. W. of Lizard Island: at this time we had no land in sight; but a little before one o'clock, we saw high land from the mast-head, bearing W. S. W. At two we saw more land to the N. W. of that we had seen before: it appeared in hills, like islands; but we judged it to be a continuation of the main land. About three, we discovered breakers between the land and the ship extending to the southward farther than we could see; but to the north we thought we saw them terminate abreast of us. What we took for the end of them in this direction, however, soon appeared to be only an opening in the reef; for we presently saw them again, extending northward beyond the reach of our sight. Upon this we hauled close upon a wind, which was now at E. S. E. and we had scarcely trimmed our sails before it came to E. by N. which was right upon the reef, and consequently made our clearing it doubtful. At sun set the northernmost part of it that was in sight bore from us N. by E. and was two or three leagues distant; this however being the best tack to clear it, we kept standing to the northward with all the sail we could set till midnight; when, being afraid of standing too far in this direction, we tacked and stood to the southward, our run from sun set to this time being six leagues N. and N. by E.

When

Island bore
 en made sail
 'clock, when
 ge of a fresh
 observation,
 ad no land in
 ened sail and
 N. E. and at
 west, in order
 ht be sure not
 was, between
 ur latitude, by
 e 216 d. W.
 l: at this time
 e one o'clock,
 earing W. S.
 J. W. of that
 , like islands;
 he main land.
 ween the land
 d farther than
 t we saw them
 for the end of
 appeared to be
 ently saw them
 e reach of our
 a wind, which
 y trimmed our
 was right upon
 aring it doubt-
 f it that was in
 two or three
 e best tack to
 rd with all the
 being afraid of
 cked and stood
 to this time be-

When

When we had stood about two miles S. S. E. it fell
 calm; we had sounded several times during the night,
 but had no bottom with one hundred and forty fathom,
 neither had we any ground now with the same length
 of line; yet, about four in the morning of the 16th,
 we plainly heard the roaring of the surf, and at break of
 day saw it foaming to a vast height, at not more than a
 mile's distance. Our distress now returned upon us
 with double force; the waves which rolled in upon the
 reef, carried us towards it very fast; we could reach no
 ground with an anchor, and had not a breath of wind
 for the sail. In this dreadful situation, no source was
 left us but the boats; and to aggravate our misfortune
 the pinnace was under repair: the longboat and yawl,
 however, were put into the water, and sent ahead to
 tow, which, by the help of our sweeps abaft, got the
 ship's head round to the northward; which, if it could
 not prevent our destruction, might at least delay it. But
 it was six o'clock before this was effected, and we were
 not then an hundred yards from the rock upon which
 the same billow which washed the side of the ship, broke
 to a tremendous height the very next time it rose; so
 that between us and destruction there was only a dreary
 valley, no wider than the base of one wave, and even
 now the sea under us was unfathomable, at least no bot-
 tom was to be found with a hundred and twenty fa-
 thom. During this scene of distress the carpenter had
 found means to patch up the pinnace; so that she was
 hoisted out, and sent ahead, in aid of the other boats,
 to tow; but all our efforts would have been ineffectual,
 if, just at this crisis of our fate, a light air of wind had
 not sprung up, so light, that at any other time we should
 not have observed it, but which was enough to turn the
 scale in our favour, and in conjunction with the assist-
 ance which was afforded us by the boats, to give the
 ship a perceptible motion obliquely from the reef. Our
 hopes now revived; but in less than ten minutes it was
 again a dead calm, and the ship was again driven to-
 wards

wards the breakers, which were not now two hundred yards distant. The same light breeze however returned before we had lost all the ground it had enabled us to gain, and lasted about ten minutes more. During this time we discovered a small opening in the reef, at about the distance of a quarter of a mile: I immediately sent one of the mates to examine it, who reported that its breadth was not more than the length of the ship, but that within it there was smooth water: this discovery seemed to render our escape possible, and that was all, by pushing the ship through the opening, which was immediately attempted. It was uncertain, indeed, whether we could reach it; but if we should succeed thus far, we made no doubt of being able to get through: in this, however, we were disappointed, for having reached it by the joint assistance of our boats and the breeze, we found that in the mean time it had become high-water, and, to our great surprize, we met the tide of ebb rushing out of it like a mill-stream. We gained, however, some advantage, though in a manner directly contrary to our expectations; we found it impossible to go through the opening, but the stream that prevented us, carried us out about a quarter of a mile: it was too narrow for us to keep in it longer; yet this tide of ebb so much assisted the boats, that, by noon, we had got an offing of near two miles. We had, however, reason to despair of deliverance, even if the breeze, which had now died away, should revive, for we were still embayed in the reef; and the tide of ebb being spent, the tide of flood, notwithstanding our utmost efforts, again drove the ship into the bight. About this time, however, we saw another opening, near a mile to the westward, which I immediately sent the First Lieutenant, Mr Hicks, in the small boat to examine: in the mean time we struggled hard with the flood, sometimes gaining a little, and sometimes losing; but every man still did his duty with as much calmness and regularity as if no danger had been near. About two o'clock, Mr
Hicks

two hundred
 however return-
 had enabled us
 more. During
 in the reef, at
 I immediate-
 who reported
 gth of the ship,
 : this discovery
 d that was all,
 ng, which was
 a, indeed, whe-
 l succeed thus
 o get through :
 d, for having
 boats and the
 it had become
 we met the tide
 . We gained,
 manner direct-
 d it impossible
 n that prevent-
 a mile : it was
 yet this tide of
 noon, we had
 had, however,
 if the breeze,
 e, for we were
 e of ebb being
 ng our utmost
 nt. About this
 , near a mile to
 the First Lieu-
 tamine : in the
 pod, sometimes
 but every man
 and regularity
 wo o'clock, Mr
 Hicks

Hicks returned with an account that the opening was narrow and dangerous, but that it might be passed: the possibility of passing it was sufficient encouragement to make the attempt, for all danger was less imminent than that of our present situation. A light breeze now sprung up at E. N. E. with which, by the help of our boats, and the very tide of flood that, without an opening, would have been our destruction, we entered it, and were hurried through with amazing rapidity, by a torrent that kept us from driving against either side of the channel, which was not more than a quarter of a mile in breadth. While we were shooting this gulph, our soundings were from thirty to seven fathom, very irregular, and the ground at bottom very foul.

As soon as we had got within the reef we anchored in nineteen fathom, over a bottom of coral and shells. And now, such is the vicissitude of life, we thought ourselves happy in having regained a situation, which, but two days before it was the utmost object of our hope to quit. Rocks and shoals are always dangerous to the mariner, even where their situation has been ascertained; they are more dangerous in seas which have never before been navigated, and in this part of the globe they are more dangerous than in any other; for here they are reefs of coral rock, rising like a wall almost perpendicularly out of the unfathomable deep, always overflowed at high-water, and at low-water dry in many places; and here the enormous waves of the vast Southern Ocean, meeting with so abrupt a resistance, break, with inconceivable violence, in a surf which no rocks or storms in the northern hemisphere can produce. The danger of navigating unknown parts of this ocean was now greatly increased by our having a crazy ship, and being short of provisions and every other necessary; yet the distinction of a first discoverer made us cheerfully encounter every danger, and submit to every inconvenience; and we chose rather to incur the censure of imprudence and temerity, which the idle and voluptuous so liberally bestow upon unsuccessful fortitude and per-
 severance,

severance, than leave a country which we had discovered unexplored, and give colour to a charge of timidity and irresolution.

Having now congratulated ourselves upon getting within the reef, notwithstanding we had so lately congratulated ourselves upon getting without it, I resolved to keep the main land on board in my future rout to the northward, whatever the consequence might be; for if we had now gone without the reef again, it might have carried us so far from the coast, as to prevent my being able to determine, whether this country did, or did not, join to New Guinea; a question which I was determined to resolve from my first coming within sight of land. However, as I had experienced the disadvantage of having a boat under repair, at a time when it was possible I might want to use her, I determined to remain fast at anchor, till the pinnace was perfectly refitted.

As I had no employment for the other boats, I sent them out in the morning of the 17th to the reef, to see what refreshments could be procured, and Mr Banks, in his little boat, accompanied by Dr Solander, went with them. In this situation I found the variation, by amplitude and azimuth, to be 4 d. 9 m. E. and at noon our latitude, by observation, was 12 d. 38 m. S. and our longitude 216 d. 45 m. W. The main land extended from N. 66 W. to S. W. by S. and the nearest part of it was distant about nine leagues. The opening through which we had passed, I called PROVIDENTIAL CHANNEL; and this bore E. N. E. distant ten or twelve miles: on the main land within us was a lofty promontory which I called CAPE WEYMOUTH; on the north side of which is a bay, which I called WEYMOUTH BAY: they lie in latitude 12 d. 42 m. S. longitude 127 d. 15 m. W. At four o'clock in the afternoon the boats returned with two hundred and forty pounds of the meat of shell-fish, chiefly of cockles, some of which was as much as two men could move, and contained twenty pounds of good meat. Mr

Banks

Banks also brought back many curious shells, and *Mollusca*; besides many species of coral, among which was that called the *Tubipora musica*.

At six o'clock in the morning of the 18th, we got under sail, and stood away to the N. W. having two boats ahead to direct us; our soundings were very irregular, varying five or six fathom every cast, between ten and twenty-seven. A little before noon, we passed a low sandy island, which we left on our starboard side, at the distance of two miles. At noon, our latitude was 12 d. 28 m. and our distance from the main about four leagues: it extended from S. by W. to N. 71 W. and some small islands from N. 40 W. to 54 W. Between us and the main were several shoals, and some without us, besides the main or outermost reef, which we could see from the mast-head, stretching away to the N. E. At two in the afternoon, as we were steering N. W. by N. we saw a large shoal right ahead, extending three or four points upon each bow; upon this we hauled up N. N. E. and N. E. by N. to get round the north point of it, which we reached by four, and then edged away to the westward, and ran between the north end of this shoal and another, which lies two miles to the northward of it, having a boat all the way ahead sounding; our depth of water was still very irregular, from twenty-two to eight fathom. At half an hour after six, we anchored in thirteen fathom: the northermost of the small islands seen at noon bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant three miles: these islands we distinguished by the name of FORBES'S ISLANDS, and lie about five leagues from the main, which here forms a high point that we called BOLT HEAD, from which the land trends more westerly, and is in that direction all low and sandy; to the southward it is high and hilly even near the sea.

At six in the morning of the 19th, we got again under sail, and steered for an island which lay at a small distance from the main, and at this time bore from us N. 40 W. distant about five leagues: our course was soon interrupted by shoals; however, by the help of the

boats, and a good look-out from the top of the mast, we got into a fair channel that led us down to the island, between a very large shoal on our starboard side and several small ones towards the main: in this channel we had from twenty to thirty fathom water. Between eleven and twelve o'clock we hauled round the north-east side of the island, leaving it between us and the main, from which it is distant about seven or eight miles. This island is about a league in circuit, and we saw upon it five of the natives, two of whom had lances in their hands; they came down upon a point, and having looked a little while at the ship, retired. To the N.W. of it are several low islands and quays, which lie not far from the main; and to the northward and eastward are several other islands and shoals; so that we were now encompassed on every side: but having lately been exposed to much greater danger, and rocks and shoals being grown familiar, we looked at them comparatively with little concern. The main land appeared to be low and barren, interspersed with large patches of the very fine white sand, which we had found upon Lizard Island and different parts of the main. The boats had seen many turtle upon the shoals which they passed, but it blew too hard for them to take any. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 12 d. and our longitude 217 d. 25 m. our depth of water was fourteen fathom; and our course and distance, reduced to a strait line, was, between this time and the preceding noon, N. 29 W. thirty two miles.

The main land within the islands that have been just mentioned forms a point which I called CAPE GRENVILLE: it lies in latitude 11 d. 58 m. longitude 217 d. 38 m. and between it and Bolt Head is a bay which I called TEMPLE BAY. At the distance of nine leagues from Cape Grenville, in the direction of E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. lie some high islands, which I called SIR CHARLES HARDY'S ISLES; and those which lie off the Cape I called COCKBURN'S ISLES. Having lain by for the boats, which had got out of their station, till about one o'clock,

we

of the mast, down to the larboard side in this channel-water. Being round the between us and seven or eight quit, and we whom had on a point, retired. To quays, which thward and ; so that we having later d rocks and them com- and appear- rge patches found upon main. The which they ce any. At d. and our r was four- reduced to a e preceding

we been just
CAPE GREN-
tude 217 d.
ay which I
ine leagues
E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. lie
LES HAR-
pe I called
the boats,
one o'clock,
we

we then took the yawl in tow ; and the pinnace having got ahead, we filled, and stood N. by W. for some small islands which lay in that direction ; such at least they were in appearance, but upon approaching them we perceived that they were joined together by a large reef ; upon this we edged away N. W. and left them on our larboard hand ; we steered between them and the islands that lay off the main, having a clear passage, and from fifteen to twenty-three fathom water. At four o'clock, we discovered some low islands and rocks, bearing W. N. W. and stood directly for them : at half an hour after six, we anchored on the north-east side of the northermost of them, at one mile distance, and in sixteen fathom. These islands lie N. W. four leagues from Cape Grenville, and, from the number of birds that I saw upon them, I called them BIRD ISLES. A little before sun-set, we were in sight of the main land, which appeared all very low and sandy, extending as far to the northward as N. W. by N. some shoals, quays, and low sandy isles stretching away to the N. E.

At six o'clock in the morning of the 20th, we got again under sail with a fresh breeze at E. and stood away W. N. W. for some low islands in that direction, but were soon obliged to haul close upon a wind to weather a shoal which we discovered upon our larboard bow, leaving at the same time others to the eastward ; by the time we had weathered this shoal to leeward, we had brought the island well upon our lee bow, but seeing some shoals run off from them, and some rocks on our larboard bow, which we did not discover till we were very near them, I was afraid to go to windward of the islands, and therefore brought to, and, having made the signal for the pinnace, which was ahead, to come on board, I sent her to leeward of the islands, with orders to keep along the edge of the shoal, which ran off from the south side of the southermost island, sending the yawl at the same time to run over the shoal in search of turtle. As soon as the pinnace had got to a proper distance, we wore, and stood after her : as we ran to leeward

leeward of this island, we took the yawl in tow, having seen only one small turtle, and therefore made but little stay upon the shoal. The island we found to be a small spot of sand, with some trees upon it, and we could discern many huts, or habitations of the natives whom we supposed occasionally to visit these islands from the main, they being only five leagues distant, to catch turtle, when they come ashore to lay their eggs. We continued to stand after the pinnacle N. N. E. and N. by E. for two other low islands, having two shoals without us, and one between us and the main. At noon, we were about four leagues from the main, which we saw extending to the northward, as far as N. W. by N. all flat and sandy. Our latitude, by observation, was 11 d. 23 m. S. and our longitude 217 d. 46 m. W. our soundings were from fourteen to twenty-three fathom.

By one o'clock, we had run nearly the length of the southermost of the two islands in sight, and finding that the going to windward of them would carry us too far from the main, we bore up and ran to leeward, where finding a fair open passage, we steered N. by W. in a direction parallel to the main, leaving a small island which lay between it and the ship, and some low sandy isles and shoals without us, of all which we lost sight at four o'clock, and saw no more before the sun went down: at this time the farthest part of the land in sight bore N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and soon after we anchored in thirteen fathom, upon soft ground, at the distance of about five leagues from the land, where we lay till daylight.

Early in the morning of the 21st, we made sail again and steered N. N. W. by compass, for the northermost land in sight; and at this time, we observed the variation of the needle to be 3 d. 6 m. E. At eight o'clock we discovered shoals ahead, and on our larboard board and saw that the northermost land, which we had taken for the main, was detached from it, and that we might pass between them, by running to leeward of the shoals.

yawl in tow, and therefore made
and we found
s upon it, and
ons of the native
visit these islands
leagues distant,
to lay their eggs
nce N. N. E. and
aving two shoals
d the main. At
n the main, which
as far as N. W. by
t. by observation
de 217 d. 46 m.
n to twenty-three

the length of the
t, and finding the
ould carry us too far
to leeward, when
ed N. by W. in
ng a small island
nd some low sands
ch we lost sight of
ore the sun was
f the land in sight
e anchored in the
e distance of about
we lay till day

we made sail again
or the northernmost
berved the various
At eight o'clock
our larboard boat
which we had taken
and that we might
eward of the shoals

our larboard bow, which were now near us: we therefore wore and brought to, sending away the pinnace and yawl to direct us, and then steered N. W. along the S. W. or inside of the shoals, keeping a good lookout from the mast-head, and having another shoal on our larboard side: we found however a good channel of a mile broad between them, in which we had from ten to fourteen fathom. At eleven o'clock, we were nearly the length of the land detached from the main, and there appeared to be no obstruction in the passage between them, yet having the long-boat astern, and rigged, we sent her away to keep in shore upon our larboard bow, and at the same time dispatched the pinnace astarboard; precautions which I thought necessary, as we had a strong flood that carried us an end very fast, and it was near high-water: as soon as the boats were ahead, we stood after them, and, by noon, got through the passage. Our latitude, by observation, was then 10 d. 36 m. and the nearest part of the main, which we soon after found to be the northernmost, bore W. 2 d. distant between three or four miles: we found the island which was detached from the main, to be a single island, extending from N. to N. 75 E. distant between two and three miles; at the same time we saw other islands at a considerable distance, extending from N. by W. to W. N. W. and behind them another chain of high land, which we judged also to be islands: there were still other islands, extending as far as N. 71 W. which at this time we took for the main.

The point of the main which forms the side of the channel through which we had passed, opposite to the island, is the northern promontory of the country, and we called it YORK CAPE. Its longitude is 218 d. 24 m. W. the latitude of the north point is 10 d. 37 m. and of the east point 10 d. 42 m. S. The land over the east point, and to the southward of it, is rather low, and, as far as the eye can reach, very flat, and of a barren appearance. To the southward of the Cape the shore forms

forms a large open bay, which I called **NEWCASTLE BAY**, and in which are some small low islands and shoals; the land adjacent is also very low, flat, and sandy. The land of the northern part of the Cape is more hilly, the vallies seem to be well clothed with wood, and the shore forms some small bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage. Close to the eastern point of the Cape are three small islands, from one of which a small ledge of rocks runs out into the sea: there is also an island close to the northern point. The island that forms the streight or channel through which we had passed, lies about four miles without these, which, except two, are very small: the southernmost is the largest, and much higher than any part of the main land. On the north-west side of this island there appeared to be good anchorage, and, on shore, vallies that promised both wood and water. These islands we called **YORK ISLES**. To the southward, and south-east, and even to the eastward and northward of them, there are several other low islands, rocks, and shoals: our depth of water in sailing between them and the main, was twelve, thirteen, and fourteen fathom.

We stood along the shore to the westward, with a gentle breeze at S. E. by S. and when we had advanced between three and four miles, we discovered the land ahead, which, when we first saw it, we took for the main, to be islands detached from it by several channels: upon this we sent away the boats with proper instructions, to lead us through that channel which was next the main; but soon after discovering rocks and shoals in this channel, I made a signal for the boats to go through the next channel to the northward, which lay between these islands, leaving some of them between us and the main: the ship followed, and had never less than five fathom water in the narrowest part of the channel, where the distance from island to island was about one mile and an half.

ed NEWCASTLE
low islands and
ow, flat, and fan-
of the Cape is
vell clothed with
all bays, in which
c. Close to the
all islands, from
runs out into the
e northern point.
channel through
ur miles without
small: the souther-
than any part of
ide of this island
e, and, on shore,
d water. These
ne southward, and
and northward of
lands, rocks, and
ng between them
and fourteen fa-
westward, with a
we had advanced
fcovered the land
, we took for the
by several chan-
ts with proper in-
hannel which was
covering rocks and
l for the boats to
northward, which
ome of them be-
ollowed, and had
he narrowest part
om island to island

A

At four o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored, being about a mile and a half, or two miles within the entrance, in six fathom and a half, with clear ground: the channel here had begun to widen, and the islands on each side of us were distant about a mile: the main land stretched away to the S. W. the farthest point in view bore S. 48 W. and the southermost point of the islands, on the north west side of the passage, bore S. 76 W. Between these two points we could see no land, so that we conceived hopes of having, at last, found a passage into the Indian sea; however, that I might be able to determine with more certainty, I resolved to land upon the island which lies at the south east point of the passage. Upon this island we had seen many of the inhabitants when we first came to an anchor, and when I went into the boat, with a party of men, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, in order to go ashore, we saw ten of them upon a hill: nine of them were armed with such lances as we had been used to see, and the tenth had a bow, and a bundle of arrows, which we had never seen in the possession of the natives of this country before: we also observed, that two of them had large ornaments of mother of pearl hanging round their necks. Three of these, one of whom was the bowman, placed themselves upon the beach abreast of us, and we expected that they would have opposed our landing, but when we came within about a musquet's shot of the beach, they walked leisurely away. We immediately climbed the highest hill, which was not more than three times as high as the mast-head, and the most barren of any we had seen. From this hill, no land could be seen between the S. W. and W. S. W. so that I had no doubt of finding a channel through. The land on the north west of it consisted of a great number of islands of various extent, and different heights, ranged one behind another, as far to the northward and westward as I could see, which could not be less than thirteen leagues. As I was now about to quit the eastern coast of New Holland, which I had coasted from latitude 38 to this place,

and which I am confident no European had ever seen before, I once more hoisted English colours, and though I had already taken possession of several particular parts, I now took possession of the whole eastern coast, from latitude 38 d. to this place, latitude 10½ S. in right of his Majesty King George the Third, by the name of **NEW SOUTH WALES**, with all the bays, harbours, rivers, and islands situated upon it: we then fired three volleys of small arms, which were answered by the same number from the ship. Having performed this ceremony upon the island, which we called **POSSESSION ISLAND**, we re embarked in our boat, but a rapid ebb tide setting N. E. made our return to the vessel very difficult and tedious. From the time of our last coming among the shoals, we constantly found a moderate tide, the flood setting to the N. W. and the ebb to the S. E. At this place, it is high water at the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock, and the water rises and falls perpendicularly about twelve feet. We saw smoke rising in many places from the adjacent lands and islands, as we had done upon every part of the coast, after our last return to it through the reef.

We continued at anchor all night, and between seven and eight o'clock in the morning of the 22d, we saw three or four of the natives upon the beach gathering shell-fish; we discovered, by the help of our glasses, that they were women, and, like all the other inhabitants of this country, stark naked. At low water, which happened about ten o'clock, we got under sail, and stood to the S. W. with a light breeze at E. which afterwards veered to N. by E. our depth of water was from six to ten fathom, except in one place, where we had but five. At noon, Possession Island bore N. 53 E. distant four leagues, the western extremity of the main land in sight bore S. 43 W. distant between four and five leagues, and appeared to be extremely low, the south west point of the largest island on the north west side of the passage bore N. 71 W. distant eight miles, and this point I called **CAPE CORNWALL**. It lies in latitude 10 d. 43 m. S. lon-

had ever seen
s, and though
particular parts,
n coast, from
S. in right of
the name of
ys, harbours,
en fired three
d by the same
ned this cere-
POSSESSION
a rapid ebb
he vessel very
ur last coming
moderate tide,
bb to the S. E.
and change of
the water rises
eet. We saw
cent lands and
t of the coast,

between seven
e 22d, we saw
each gathering
our glasses, that
inhabitants of
which happen-
d stood to the
erwards veered
n six to ten fa-
l but five. At
ht four leagues,
n sight bore S.
agues, and ap-
st point of the
ne passage bore
point I called
to d. 43 m. S.
lon-

longitude 219 d. W. and some low lands that lie about the middle of the passage, which I called WALLIS'S ISLES, bore W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. distant about two leagues: our latitude by observation, was 10 d. 46 m. S.

We continued to advance with the tide of flood W. N.W. having little wind, and from eight to five fathom water. At half an hour after one, the pinnacle, which was ahead, made the signal for shoal water, upon which we tacked, and sent away the yawl to sound also: we then tacked again, and stood after them: in about two hours, they both made the signal for shoal water, and the tide being nearly at its greatest height, I was afraid to stand on, as running aground at that time might be fatal; I therefore came to an anchor in somewhat less than seven fathom, sandy ground. Wallis's islands bore S. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant five or six miles, the islands to the northward extend from S. 73 E. to N. 10 E. and a small island, which was just in sight, bore N.W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. Here we found the flood tide set to the westward, and the ebb to the eastward.

After we had come to an anchor, I sent away the master in the long-boat to sound, who, upon his return in the evening, reported, that there was a bank stretching north and south, upon which there were but three fathom, and that beyond it there were seven. About this time it fell calm, and continued so till nine the next morning, when we weighed with a light breeze at S. S. E. and steered N.W. by W. for the small island which was just in sight, having first sent the boats ahead to sound: the depth of water was eight, seven, six, five, and four fathom, and three fathom upon the bank, it being now the last quarter ebb. At this time the northernmost island in sight bore N. 9 E. Cape Cornwall E. distant three leagues, and Wallis's Isles S. 3 E. distant three leagues. This bank, at least so much as we have sounded, extends nearly N. and S. but to what distance I do not know: its breadth is not more than half a mile at the utmost.

When we had got over the bank, we deepened our

water to six fathom three quarters, and had the same depth all the way to the small island ahead, which we reached by noon, when it bore S. distant about half a mile. Our depth of water was now five fathom, and the northermost land in sight, which is part of the same chain of islands that we had seen to the northward from the time of our first entering the streight, bore N. 71 E. Our latitude, by observation, was 10 d. 33 m. S. and our longitude 219 d. 22 m. W. in this situation, no part of the main was in sight. As we were now near the island, and had but little wind, Mr Banks and I landed upon it, and found it, except a few patches of wood, to be a barren rock, the haunt of birds, which had frequented it in such numbers, as to make the surface almost uniformly white with their dung: of these birds, the greater part seemed to be boobies, and I therefore called the place BOOBY ISLAND. After a short stay, we returned to the ship, and in the mean time the wind had got to the S. W. it was but a gentle breeze, yet it was accompanied by a swell from the same quarter, which, with other circumstances, confirmed my opinion that we were got to the westward of Carpentaria, or the northern extremity of New Holland, and had now an open sea to the westward, which gave me great satisfaction, not only because the dangers and fatigues of the voyage were drawing to an end, but because it would no longer be a doubt whether New Holland and New Guinea were two separate islands, or different parts of the same.

The north-east entrance of this passage, or streight, lies in the latitude of 10 d. 39 m. S. and in the longitude of 218 d. 36 m. W. It is formed by the main, or the northern extremity of New Holland, on the S. E. and by a congeries of islands, which I called the PRINCE OF WALES'S ISLANDS, to the N. W. and it is probable that these islands extend quite to New Guinea. They differ very much both in height and circuit, and many of them seemed to be well clothed, with herbage and wood: upon most, if not all of them, we saw smoke,
and

had the same
 head, which we
 at about half a
 fathom, and
 part of the same
 northward from
 bore N. 71 E.
 33 m. S. and
 situation, no
 were now near
 r Banks and I
 few patches of
 f birds, which
 take the surface
 of these birds,
 and I therefore
 a short stay,
 time the wind
 breeze, yet it
 same quarter,
 rmed my opi-
 of Carpentaria,
 land, and had
 gave me great
 s and fatigues
 but because it
 v Holland and
 , or different

re, or streight,
 in the longi-
 the main, or
 on the S. E.
 l the PRINCE
 it is probable
 uinea. They
 it, and many
 herbage and
 e saw smoke,
 and

and therefore there can be no doubt of there being in-
 habited: it is also probable, that among them there are
 at least as good passages as that we came through. per-
 haps better, though better would not need to be desired,
 if the access to it, from the eastward, were less danger-
 ous: that a less dangerous access may be discovered, I
 think, there is little doubt; and to find it, little more
 seems to be necessary, than to determine how far the
 principal, or outer reef, which bounds the shoals to the
 eastward, extends towards the north, which I would
 not have left to future navigators, if I had been less ha-
 rassed by danger and fatigue, and had had a ship in bet-
 ter condition for the purpose.

To this channel, or passage, I have given the name
 of the ship, and called it ENDEAVOUR STREIGHTS.
 Its length from N. E. to S. W. is ten leagues, and it is
 about five leagues broad, except at the north-east en-
 trance, where it is somewhat less than two miles, being
 contracted by the islands which lie there. That which
 I called Possession Island is of a moderate height and
 circuit, and this we left between us and the main, pas-
 sing between it and two small round islands, which lie
 about two miles to the N. W. of it. The two small
 islands, which I called Wallis's Islands, lie in the mid-
 dle of the south-west entrance, and these we left to the
 southward. Our depth of water in the streight, was
 from four to nine fathom, with every where good an-
 chorage, except upon the bank, which lies two leagues
 to the northward of Wallis's Islands, where, at low-
 water, there are but three fathom.

Depar-

*Departure from New South Wales ; a particular Description
of the Country, its Products and People : A Specimen of the
Language, &c.*

OF this country, its products, and its people, many particulars have already been related in the course of the narrative, being so interwoven with the events, as not to admit of a separation. I shall now give a more full and circumstantial description of each, in which, if some things should happen to be repeated, the greater part will be found new.

New Holland, or, as I have now called the eastern coast, New South Wales, is of a larger extent than any other country in the known world that does not bear the name of a continent : the length of the coast along which we sailed, reduced to a strait line, is no less than twenty-seven degrees of latitude, amounting to near 2000 miles, so that its square surface must be much more than equal to all Europe. To the southward of 33 or 34, the land in general is low and level ; farther northward it is hilly, but in no part can be called mountainous, and the hills and mountains, taken together, make but a small part of the surface, in comparison with the vallies and plains. It is upon the whole rather barren than fertile, yet the the rising ground is chequered by woods and lawns, and the plains and vallies are in many places covered with herbage : the soil however is frequently sandy, and many of the lawns, or savannahs, are rocky and barren, especially to the northward, where, in the best spots, vegetation was less vigorous than in the southern part of the country ; the trees were not so tall, nor was the herbage so rich. The grass, in general, is high, but thin ; and the trees,
where

Particular Description
: A Specimen of the

its people, many
in the course of
with the events, as
now give a more
each, in which, if
reated, the greater

called the eastern
r extent than any
that does not bear
of the coast along
ne, is no less than
mounting to near
e must be much
the southward of
nd level; farther
n be called moun-
, taken together,
e, in comparison
the whole rather
g ground is che-
plains and vallies
ge: the soil how-
of the lawns, or
especially to the
vegetation was
of the country;
herbage so rich.
n; and the trees,
where

where they are largest, are seldom less than forty feet under; nor is the country inland, as far as we could examine it, better clothed than the sea coast. The banks of the bays are covered with mangroves, to the distance of a mile within the beach, under which the soil is a rank mud, that is always overflowed by a spring tide; farther in the country we sometimes met with a bog, upon which the grass was very thick and luxuriant, and sometimes with a valley, that was clothed with under-wood: the soil in some parts seemed to be capable of improvement, but the far greater part is such as can admit of no cultivation. The coast, at least that part of it which lies to the northward of 25 d. S. abounds with fine bays and harbours, where vessels may lie in perfect security from all winds.

If we may judge by the appearance of the country while we were there, which was in the very height of the dry season, it is well watered: we found innumerable small brooks and springs, but no great rivers; these brooks, however, probably become large in the rainy season. Thirsty Sound was the only place where fresh water was not to be procured for the ship, and even there one or two small pools were found in the woods, though the face of the country was every where intersected by salt-creeks, and mangrove land.

Of trees there is no great variety. Of those that could be called timber, there are but two sorts; the largest is the gum tree, which grows all over the country, and has been mentioned already: it has narrow leaves, not unlike a willow; and the gum, or rather resin, which it yields, is of a deep red, and resembles the *sanguis draconis*; possibly it may be the same, for this substance is known to be the produce of more than one plant. It is mentioned by Dampier, and is perhaps the same that Tasman found upon Diemen's Land, where he says he saw "gum of the trees, and gum lac of the ground." The other timber tree is that which grows somewhat like our pines, and has been particularly mentioned in the
account

account of Botany Bay. The wood of both these trees as I have before remarked; is extremely hard and heavy. Besides these, here are trees covered with a bark that is easily peeled off, and is the same that in the East Indies is used for the caulking of ships.

We found here the palm of three different sorts. The first, which grows in great plenty to the southward, has leaves that are plaited like a fan: the cabbage of these is small, but exquisitely sweet: and the nuts, which it bears in great abundance, are very good food for hogs. The second sort bore a much greater resemblance to the true cabbage tree of the West Indies; its leaves were long and pinnated, like those of the cocoa-nut, and these also produced a cabbage, which, though not so sweet as the other, was much larger. The third sort, which, like the second, was found only in the northern parts, was seldom more than ten feet high, with small pinnated leaves, resembling those of some kind of fern: it bore no cabbage, but a plentiful crop of nuts, about the size of a large chestnut, but rounder: as we found the hulls of these scattered round the places where the Indians had made their fires, we took for granted that they were fit to eat; those, however, who made the experiment paid dear for their knowledge of the contrary, for they operated both as an emetic and cathartic with great violence. Still, however, we made no doubt but that they were eaten by the Indians; and judging that the constitution of the hogs might be as strong as theirs, though our own had proved to be so much inferior, we carried them to the sty; the hogs eat them, indeed, and for some time we thought without suffering any inconvenience; but in about a week they were so much disordered that two of them died, and the rest were recovered with great difficulty. It is probable, however, that the poisonous quality of these nuts may lie in the juice, like that of the cassia of the West Indies; and that the pulp, when dried, may be not only wholesome, but nutritious. Besides these species

of both these trees
nely hard and hea
covered with a fo
the same that in th
of ships.

different forts. Th

to the southward

n: the cabbage of

and the nuts, which

very good food for

greater resemblance

at Indies; its leaves

of the cocoa-nut:

which, though not

larger. The third

found only in the

than ten feet high,

ing those of some

out a plentiful crop

of nut, but rounder:

ed round the places

fires, we took for

use, however, who

their knowledge of

as an emetic and

however, we made

y the Indians; and

hogs might be as

nd proved to be so

the stye; the hogs

we thought with-

t in about a week

two of them died,

at difficulty. It is

s quality of these

the cassida of the

en dried, may be

Besides these spe-

cies

cies of the palm, and mangroves, there were several small trees and shrubs altogether unknown in Europe; particularly one which produced a very poor kind of fig; another that bore what we called a plum, which it resembled in colour, but not in shape, being flat on the sides like a little cheese; and a third that bore a kind of purple apple; which, after it had been kept a few days, became eatable, and tasted somewhat like a damascene.

Here is a great variety of plants to enrich the collection of a botanist, but very few of them are of the æsculent kind. A small plant, with long, narrow, grassy leaves, resembling that kind of bulrush which, in England, is called the Cat's-tail, yields a resin of a bright yellow colour, exactly resembling gambouge, except that it does not stain; it has a sweet smell, but its properties we had no opportunity to discover, any more than those of many others with which the natives appeared to be acquainted, as they have distinguished them by names.

I have already mentioned the root and leaves of a plant resembling the cocoa of the West Indies, and a kind of bean; to which may be added, a sort of parsley and purselain, and two kinds of yams; one shaped like a radish, and the other round, and covered with stringy fibres: both sorts are very small, but sweet: and we never could find the plants that produced them, though we often saw the places where they had been newly dug up; it is probable that the drought had destroyed the leaves, and we could not, like the Indians, discover them by the stalks.

Most of the fruits of this country, such as they are, have been mentioned already. We found one in the southern part of the country resembling a cherry, except that the stone was soft; and another not unlike a pine-apple in appearance, but of a very disagreeable taste, which is well known in the East Indies, and is called by the Dutch *Pyn Appel Boomen*.

Of the quadrupeds, I have already mentioned the dog, and particularly described the kangaroo, and the

animal of the opossum kind, resembling the phalanger of Buffon; to which I can add only one more, resembling a polecat, which the natives call *Quoll*; the back is brown, spotted with white, and the belly white unmixed. Several of our people said they had seen wolves; but, perhaps, if we had not seen tracts that favoured the account, we might have thought them little more worthy of credit than he who reported that he had seen the devil.

Of bats, which hold a middle place between the beasts and the birds, we saw many kinds, particularly one which, as I have observed already, was larger than a partridge; we were not fortunate enough to take one either alive or dead, but it was supposed to be the same as Buffon has described by the name of *Rouset* or *Rouget*.

The sea and other water-fowl of this country, are gulls, shags, soland geese, or gannets, of two sorts; boobies, noddies, curlews, ducks, pelicans of an enormous size, and many others. The land-birds, are crows, parrots, paroquets, cockatoos, and other birds of the same kind, of exquisite beauty; pigeons, doves, quails, bustards, herons, cranes, hawks, and eagles. The pigeons flew in numerous flocks, so that notwithstanding their extreme shyness, our people frequently killed ten or twelve of them in a day: these birds are very beautiful, and crested very differently from any we had seen before.

Among other reptiles, here are serpents of various kinds, some noxious, and some harmless; scorpions, centipeds, and lizards. The insects are but few. The principal are the musquito, and the ant. Of the ant there are several sorts; some are as green as a leaf, and live upon trees, where they build their nests of various sizes, between that of a man's head and his fist. These nests are of a very curious structure: they are formed by bending down several of the leaves, each of which is as broad as a man's hand, and gluing the points of them together, so as to form a purse; the viscus used for
this

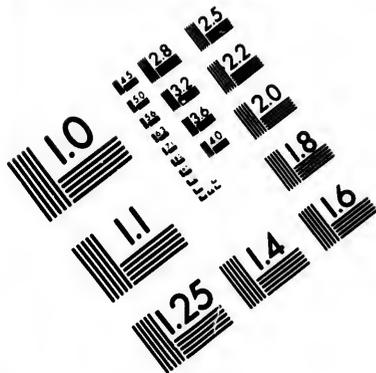
this purpose, is an animal juice, which Nature has enabled them to elaborate. Their method of first bending down the leaves, we had not an opportunity to observe; but we saw thousands uniting all their strength to hold them in this position, while other busy multitudes were employed within, in applying the gluten that was to prevent their returning back.

To satisfy ourselves that the leaves were bent, and held down by the effort of these diminutive artificers, we disturbed them in their work, and as soon as they were driven from their station, the leaves on which they were employed sprung up with a force much greater than we could have thought them capable to conquer by any combination of their strength. But though we gratified our curiosity at their expence, the injury did not go unrevenge'd: for thousands immediately threw themselves upon us, and gave us intolerable pain with their stings, especially those which took possession of our necks and our hair, from whence they were not easily driven: the sting was scarcely less painful than that of a bee; but, except it was repeated, the pain did not last more than a minute.

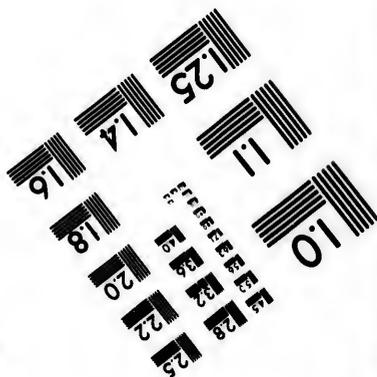
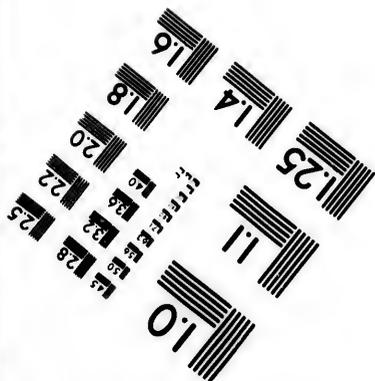
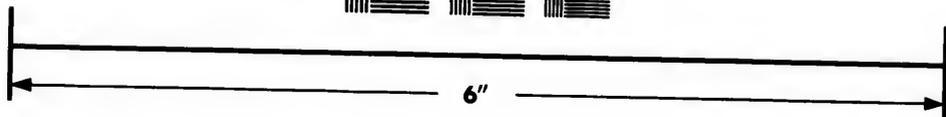
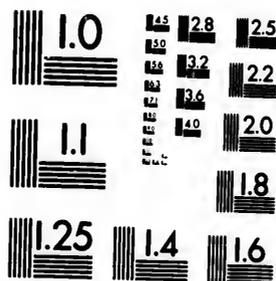
Another sort are quite black, and their operations and manner of life are not less extraordinary. Their habitations are the inside of the branches of a tree, which they contrive to excavate by working out the pith almost to the extremity of the slenderest twig; the tree at the same time flourishing, as if it had no such inmate. When we first found the tree, we gathered some of the branches, and were scarcely less astonished than we should have been to find that we had profaned a consecrated grove, where every tree, upon being wounded, gave signs of life; for we were instantly covered with legions of these animals, swarming from every broken bough, and inflicting their stings with incessant violence.

A third kind we found nested in the root of a plant, which grows on the bark of trees in the manner of mistletoe, and which they had perforated for that use. This root is commonly as big as a large turnip, and some-





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25

10

times much bigger : when we cut it, we found it intersected by innumerable winding passages, all filled with these animals, by which however the vegetation of the plant did not appear to have suffered any injury. We never cut one of these roots that was not inhabited, though some were not bigger than a hazle-nut. The animals themselves are very small, not more than half as big as the common red ant in England. They had stings, but scarcely force enough to make them felt; they had however a power of tormenting us in an equal, if not a greater degree; for the moment we handled the root, they swarmed from innumerable holes, and running about those parts of the body that were uncovered, produced a titillation more intolerable than pain, except it is increased to great violence.

We found a fourth kind, which are perfectly harmless, and almost exactly resemble the white-ants of the East Indies : the architecture of these is still more curious than that of the others. They have houses of two sorts, one is suspended on the branches of trees, and the other erected upon the ground : those upon the trees are about three or four times as big as a man's head, and are built of a brittle substance, which seems to consist of small parts of vegetables kneaded together with a glutinous matter, which their bodies probably supply; upon breaking this crust, innumerable cells, swarming with inhabitants, appear in a great variety of winding directions, all communicating with each other, and with several apertures that lead to other nests upon the same tree : they have also one large avenue, or covered way, leading to the ground, and carried on under it to the other nest or house that is constructed there. This house is generally at the root of a tree, but not of that upon which their other dwellings are constructed: it is formed like an irregularly sided cone, and sometimes is more than six feet high, and nearly as much in diameter. Some are smaller, and these are generally flat sided, and very much resemble in figure the stones which are seen in many parts of England, and supposed to be the remains of druidi-

druidical antiquity. The outside of these is of well tempered clay, about two inches thick; and within are the cells, which have no opening outwards, but communicate only with the subterranean way to the houses on the tree, and to the tree near which they are constructed, where they ascend up the root, and so up the trunk and branches, under covered ways of the same kind as those by which they descended from their other dwellings. To these structures on the ground they probably retire in the winter, or rainy seasons, as they are proof against any wet that can fall; which those in the tree, though generally constructed under some overhanging branch, from the nature and thinness of their crust or wall, cannot be.

The sea in this country is much more liberal of food to the inhabitants than the land; and though fish is not quite so plenty here as they generally are in higher latitudes, yet we seldom hauled the seine without taking from fifty to two hundred weight. They are of various sorts; but, except the mullet, and some of the shell-fish, none of them are known in Europe: most of them are palatable, and some are very delicious. Upon the shoals and reef there are incredible numbers of the finest green turtle in the world, and oysters of various kinds, particularly the rock-oyster and the pearl-oyster. The gigantic cockles have been mentioned already; besides which there are sea-crayfish, or lobsters, and crabs; of these, however, we saw only the shells. In the rivers and salt creeks there are aligators.

The only person who has hitherto given any account of this country or its inhabitants is Dampier, and though he is, in general, a writer of credit, yet in many particulars he is mistaken. The people whom he saw were indeed inhabitants of a part of the coast very distant from that which we visited; but we also saw inhabitants upon parts of the coast very distant from each other, and there being a perfect uniformity in person and customs among them all, it is reasonable to con-

clude;

druidi-

clude, that distance in another direction has not considerably broken it.

The number of inhabitants in this country appears to be very small in proportion to its extent. We never saw so many as thirty of them together but once, and that was at Botany Bay, when men, women, and children, assembled upon a rock to see the ship pass by; when they manifestly formed a resolution to engage us; they never could muster above fourteen or fifteen fighting men; and we never saw a number of their sheds or houses together that could accommodate a larger party. It is true, indeed, that we saw only the sea-coast on the eastern side; and that, between this and the western shore, there is an immense tract of country wholly unexplored: but there is great reason to believe that this immense tract is either wholly desolate, or at least still more thinly inhabited than the parts we visited. It is impossible that the inland country should subsist in inhabitants at all seasons without cultivation; it is extremely improbable that the inhabitants of the coast should be totally ignorant of arts of cultivation, which were practised inland; and it is equally improbable that, if they knew such arts, there should be no traces of them among them. It is certain that we did not see one foot of ground in a state of cultivation in the whole country; and therefore it may well be concluded that where the sea does not contribute to feed the inhabitants, the country is not inhabited.

The only tribe with which we had any intercourse, we found where the ship was careened; it consisted of one and twenty persons; twelve men, seven women, one boy, and one girl: the women we never saw but at a distance; for when the men came over the river they were always left behind. The men here, and in other places, were of a middle size, and in general well made, clean limbed, and remarkably vigorous, active, and nimble: their countenances were not altogether without expression, and their voices were remarkably soft and effeminate.

Their

Their skins were so uniformly covered with dirt, that it was very difficult to ascertain their true colour: we made several attempts, by wetting our fingers and rubbing it, to remove the incrustations, but with very little effect. With the dirt they appear nearly as black as a Negroe; and according to our best discoveries, the skin itself is of the colour of wood foot, or what is commonly called a chocolate colour. Their features are far from being disagreeable, their noses are not flat, nor are their lips thick; their teeth are white and even, and their hair naturally long and black, it is however universally cropped short; in general it is strait, but sometimes it has a slight curl; we saw none that was not matted and filthy, though without oil or grease, and, to our great astonishment, free from lice. Their beards were of the same colour with their hair, and bushy and thick: they are not however suffered to grow long. A man whom we had seen one day with his beard somewhat longer than his companions, we saw the next, with it somewhat shorter, and upon examination found the ends of the hairs burnt: from this incident, and our having never seen any sharp instrument among them, we concluded that both the hair and the beard were kept short by singeing them.

Both sexes, as I have already observed, go stark naked, and seem to have no more sense of indecency in discovering the whole body, than we have in discovering our hands and face. Their principal ornament is the bone which they thrust through the cartilage that divides the nostrils from each other: what perversion of taste could make them think this a decoration, or what could prompt them, before they had worn it or seen it worn, to suffer the pain and inconvenience that must of necessity attend it, is perhaps beyond the power of human sagacity to determine: as this bone is as thick as a man's finger, and between five and six inches long, it reaches quite across the face, and so effectually stops up both the nostrils that they are forced to keep their mouths

Their

mouths wide open for breath, and snuffle so when they attempt to speak, that they are scarcely intelligible even to each other. Our seamen, with some humour, call it their spritsail-yard; and indeed it had so ludicrous appearance, that till we were used to it, we found it difficult to refrain from laughter.

Beside this nose-jewel, they had necklaces made of shells, very neatly cut and strung together; bracelets of small cord, wound two or three times about the upper part of their arm, and a string of plaited human hair about as thick as a thread of yarn, tied round the waist. Besides these, some of them had gorgets of shells hanging round the neck, so as to reach across the breast. But though these people wear no clothes, their bodies have a covering besides the dirt, for they paint them both white and red; the red is commonly laid on in broad patches upon the shoulders and breast; and the white in stripes, some narrow, and some broad: the narrow were drawn over the limbs, and the broad over the body, not without some degree of taste. The white was all laid on in small patches upon the face, and drawn in a circle round each eye. The red seemed to be ochre, but what the white was we could not discover; it was close grained, saponaceous to the touch, and almost as heavy as white lead; possibly it might be a kind of *Steatites*, but to our great regret we could not procure a bit of it to examine. They have holes in their ears, but we never saw any thing worn in them. Upon such ornaments as they had, they set so great a value, that they would never part with the least article for any thing we could offer; which was the more extraordinary as our beads and ribbands were ornaments of the same kind, but of a more regular form and more showy materials. They had indeed no idea of traffic, nor could we communicate any to them: they received the things that we gave them; but never appeared to understand our signals when we required a return. The same indifference which prevented them from buying what we had, prevented them also from attempting to steal: if they had

cove-

coveted more, they would have been less honest; for when we refused to give them a turtle, they were enraged, and attempted to take it by force, and we had nothing else upon which they seemed to set the least value; for, as I have before observed, many of the things that we had given them, we found left negligently about in the woods, like the playthings of children, which please only while they are new. Upon their bodies we saw no marks of disease or sores, but large scars in irregular lines, which appeared to be the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves with some blunt instrument, and which we understood by signs to have been memorials of grief for the dead.

They appeared to have no fixed habitations, for we saw nothing like a town or village in the whole country. Their houses, if houses they may be called, seem to be formed with less art and industry than any we had seen, except the wretched hovels at Terra del Fuego, and in some respects they are inferior even to them. At Botany Bay, where they were best, they were just high enough for a man to sit upright in; but not large enough for him to extend himself in his whole length in any direction: they are built with pliable rods about as thick as a man's finger, in the form of an oven, by sticking the two ends into the ground, and then covering them with palm leaves, and broad pieces of bark: the door is nothing but a large hole at one end, opposite to which the fire is made, as we perceived by the ashes. Under these houses, or sheds, they sleep, coiled up with their heels to their head; and in this position one of them will hold three or four persons. As we advanced northward, and the climate became warmer, we found these sheds still more slight: they were built, like the others, of twigs, and covered with bark; but none of them were more than four feet deep, and one side was intirely open: the close side was always opposed to the course of the prevailing wind, and opposite to the open side was the fire, probably more as a defence from the

musquitos than the cold. Under these hovels, it is probable, that they thrust only their heads and the upper part of their bodies, extending their feet towards the fire. They were set up occasionally by a wandering hord, in any place that would furnish them for a time with subsistence, and left behind them when, after it was exhausted, they went away: but in places where they remained only for a night or two, they slept without any shelter, except the bushes or grass, which is here near two feet high. We observed, however, that though the sleeping huts which we found upon the main, were always turned from the prevailing wind, those upon the islands were turned towards it; which seems to be a proof that they have a mild season here, during which the sea is calm, and that the same weather which enables them to visit the islands, makes the air welcome even while they sleep.

The only furniture belonging to these houses that fell under our observation, is a kind of oblong vessel made of bark, by the simple contrivance of tying up the two ends with a withy, which not being cut off serves for a handle; these we imagined were used as buckets to fetch water from the spring, which may be supposed sometimes to be at a considerable distance. They have however a small bag, about the size of a moderate cabbage-net, which is made by laying threads loop within loop, somewhat in the manner of knitting used by our ladies to make purses. This bag the man carries loose upon his back by a small string which passes over his head; it generally contains a lump or two of paint and resin, some fish-hooks and lines, a shell or two, out of which their hooks are made, a few points of darts, and their usual ornaments, which includes the whole worldly treasure of the richest man among them.

Their fish-hooks are very neatly made, and some of them are exceedingly small. For striking turtle they have a peg of wood which is about a foot long, and very well bearded; this fits into a socket at the end of a staff of light wood, about as thick as a man's wrist, and
about

about seven or eight feet long : to the staff is tied one end of a loose line about three or four fathom long, the other end of which is fastened to the peg. To strike the turtle, the peg is fixed into the socket, and when it has entered his body, and is retained there by the barb, the staff flies off and serves for a float to trace their victim in the water ; it assists also to tire him, till they can overtake him with their canoes, and haul him ashore. One of these pegs, as I have mentioned already, we found buried in the body of a turtle, which had healed up over it. Their lines are from the thickness of a half inch rope to the fineness of a hair, and are made of some vegetable substance, but what in particular we had no opportunity to learn.

Their food is chiefly fish, though they sometimes contrive to kill the kangaroo, and even birds of various kinds ; notwithstanding they are so shy that we found it difficult to get within reach of them with a fowling-piece. The only vegetable that can be considered as an article of food is the yam ; yet doubtless they eat the several fruits which have been mentioned among other productions of the country ; and indeed we saw the shells and hulls of several of them lying about the places where they had kindled their fire.

They do not appear to eat any animal food raw ; but having no vessel in which water can be boiled, they either broil it upon the coals, or bake it in a hole by the help of hot stones, in the same manner as is practised by the inhabitants of the islands in the South Seas.

Whether they are acquainted with any plant that has an intoxicating quality, we do not know ; but we observed that several of them held leaves of some sort constantly in their mouths, as an European does tobacco, and an East Indian betel : we never saw the plant, but when they took it from their mouths at our request ; possibly it might be a species of the betel, but, whatever it was, it had no effect upon the teeth or the lips.

As they have no nets, they catch fish only by striking,

or with a hook and line, except such as they find in the hollows of the rocks and shoals, which are dry at half ebb.

Their manner of hunting we had no opportunity to see; but we conjectured by the notches which they had every where cut in large trees in order to climb them, that they took their station near the tops of them, and there watched for such animals as might happen to pass near enough to be reached by their lances: it is possible also, that in this situation they might take birds when they came to roost.

I have observed that when they went from our tents upon the banks of Endeavour river, we could trace them by the fires which they kindled in their way; and we imagined that these fires were intended some way for the taking the kangaroo, which we observed to be so much afraid of fire, that our dogs could scarcely force it over places which had been newly burnt, though the fire was extinguished.

They produce fire with great facility, and spread it in a wonderful manner. To produce it they take two pieces of dry soft wood, one is a stick about eight or nine inches long, the other piece is flat: the stick they shape into an obtuse point at one end, and pressing it upon the other, turn it nimbly by holding it between both their hands as we do a chocolate mill, often shifting their hands up, and then moving them down upon it, to increase the pressure as much as possible. By this method they get fire in less than two minutes, and from the smallest spark they increase it with great speed and dexterity. We have often seen one of them run along the shore, to all appearance, with nothing in his hand, who stooping down for a moment, at the distance of every fifty or a hundred yards, left fire behind him, as we could see first by the smoke, and then by the flame among the drift wood, and other litter which was scattered along the place. We had the curiosity to examine one of these planters of fire, when he set off, and we saw

they find in the
re dry at half

opportunity to
which they
order to climb
tops of them,
ght happen to
ances: it is
ght take birds

from our tents
e could trace
eir way; and
ed some way
bserved to be
scarcely force
t, though the

nd spread it in
hey take two
bout eight or
the stick they
nd pressing it
ng it between
l, often shift-
n down upon
ble. By this
ates, and from
eat speed and
em run along
t in his hand,
e distance of
hind him, as
by the flame
hich was scat-
y to examine
off, and we
faw

aw him wrap up a small spark in dry grass, which,
hen he had run a little way, having been fanned by
he air that his motion produced began to blaze; he
hen laid it down in a place convenient for his purpose,
nclosing a spark of it in another quantity of grass, and
o continued his course.

There are perhaps few things in the history of man-
kind more extraordinary than the discovery and appli-
cation of fire: it will scarcely be disputed that the man-
ner of producing it, whether by collision or attrition,
was discovered by chance: but its first effects would natu-
rally strike those to whom it was a new object, with
consternation and terror: it would appear to be an ene-
my to life and nature, and to torment and destroy what-
ever was capable of being destroyed or tormented;
and therefore it seems not easy to conceive what should
incline those who first saw it receive a transient existence
from chance, to reproduce it by design. It is by no
means probable that those who first saw fire, approach-
ed it with the same caution, as those who are familiar
with its effects, so as to be warmed only and not burnt;
and it is reasonable to think that the intolerable pain
which, at its first appearance, it must produce upon ig-
norant curiosity, would sow perpetual enmity between
this element and mankind; and that the same principle
which incites them to crush a serpent, would incite them
to destroy fire, and avoid all means by which it would
be produced, as soon as they were known. These cir-
cumstances considered, how men became sufficiently fa-
miliar with it to render it useful, seems to be a problem
very difficult to solve: nor is it easy to account for the
first application of it to culinary purposes, as the eating
both animal and vegetable food raw, must have become
a habit, before there was fire to dress it, and those who
have considered the force of habit will readily believe,
that to men who had always eaten the flesh of animals
raw, it would be as disagreeable dressed, as to those who
have always eaten it dressed, it would be raw. It is re-
markable that the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego pro-
duce

duce fire from a spark by collision, and that the happier natives of this country, New Zealand, and Otaheite, produce it by the attrition of one combustible substance against another: is there not then some reason to suppose that these different operations correspond with the manner in which chance produced fire in the neighbourhood of the torrid and frigid zones? Among the rude inhabitants of a cold country, neither any operation or art, or occurrence of accident, could be supposed so easily to produce fire by attrition, as in a climate where every thing is hot, dry, and adust, teeming with a latent fire which a slight degree of motion was sufficient to call forth; in a cold country, therefore, it is natural to suppose that fire was produced by the accidental collision of two metallic substances, and in a cold country, for that reason, the same expedient was used to produce it by design: but in hot countries, where two combustible substances easily kindle by attrition, it is probable that the attrition of such substances first produced fire, and here it was therefore natural for art to adopt the same operation, with a view to produce the same effect. It may, indeed, be true that fire is now produced in many cold countries by attrition, and in many hot by a stroke; but, perhaps, upon enquiry there may appear reason to conclude that this has arisen from the communication of one country with another, and that with respect to the original production of fire in hot and cold countries, the distinction is well founded.

There may, perhaps, be some reason to suppose that men became gradually acquainted with the nature and effects of fire, by its permanent existence in a volcano, there being remains of volcanoes, or vestiges of their effects, in almost every part of the world: by a volcano, however, no method of producing fire, otherwise than by contact, could be learnt; the production and application of fire, therefore, still seem to afford abundant subject of speculation to the curious.

The weapons of these people are spears or lances, and these are of different kinds: some that we saw upon the southern

south
bone
hard
enter
the
or th
very
long
let in
ted p
wood
that v
larger
that v
the p
sharp
at the
thus
once t
back v
sharp
the be
are th
to wo
yards,
ty or f
ing sti
dith v
broad,
small k
three o
end is
for tha
but fro
forwar
chine,
the per
and aft
lance v

the happier
 and Otaheite,
 the substance
 reason to sup-
 and with the
 the neigh-
 Among the
 any opera-
 be supposed
 n a climate
 eming with
 on was sup-
 refore, it is
 by the acci-
 and in a cold
 ent was used
 , where two
 on, it is pro-
 ft produced
 art to adopt
 ce the same
 is now pro-
 and in many
 y there may
 en from the
 er, and that
 e in hot and
 ed.
 suppose that
 e nature and
 a volcano
 s of their ef-
 y a volcano
 herwise that
 and applica-
 abundant sub-
 r lances, an
 aw upon the
 southern

southern part of the coast had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed; the points were also smeared with a hard resin, which gave them a polish, and made them enter deeper into what they struck. To the northward, the lance has but one point: the shaft is made of cane, or the stalk of a plant somewhat resembling a bulrush, very strait and light, and from eight to fourteen feet long, consisting of several joints, where the pieces are let into each other, and bound together; to this are fitted points of different kinds; some are of hard heavy wood, and some are the bones of fish: we saw several that were pointed with the stings of the sting-ray, the largest that they could procure, and barbed with several that were smaller, fastened on in a contrary direction; the points of wood were also sometimes armed with sharp pieces of broken shells, which were stuck in, and at the junctures covered with resin: the lances that are thus barbed, are indeed dreadful weapons, for when once they have taken place, they can never be drawn back without tearing away the flesh, or leaving the sharp ragged splinters of the bone or shell which forms the beard, behind them in the wound. These weapons are thrown with great force and dexterity; if intended to wound at a short distance, between ten and twenty yards, simply with the hand, but if at the distance of forty or fifty, with an instrument which we called a throwing stick. This is a plain smooth piece of a hard reddish wood, very highly polished, about two inches broad, half an inch thick, and three feet long, with a small knob, or hook at one end, and a cross piece about three or four inches long at the other: the knob at one end is received in a small dent or hollow, which is made for that purpose in the shaft of the lance near the point, but from which it easily slips, upon being impelled, forward: when the lance is laid along upon this machine, and secured in a proper position by the knob, the person that is to throw it holds it over his shoulder, and after shaking it, delivers both the throwing stick and lance with all his force, but the stick being stopped by the

the cross piece which comes against the shoulder, with a sudden jerk, the lance flies forward with incredible swiftness, and with so good an aim, that at the distance of fifty yards these Indians were more sure of the mark than we could be with a single bullet. Besides these lances, we saw no offensive weapon upon this coast, except when we took our last view of it with our glasses, and then we thought we saw a man with a bow and arrows, in which it is possible we might be mistaken. We saw, however, at Botany Bay, a shield or target, of an oblong shape, about three feet long, and eighteen inches broad, which was made of the bark of a tree: this was fetched out of a hut by one of the men that opposed our landing, who, when he ran away, left it behind him, and upon taking it up, we found that it had been pierced through with a single pointed lance near the centre. These shields are certainly in frequent use among the people here, for, though this was the only one that we saw in their possession, we frequently found trees from which they appeared manifestly to have been cut, the marks being easily distinguished from those that were made by cutting buckets: sometimes also we found the shields cut out, but not yet taken off from the tree, the edges of the bark only being a little raised by wedges, so that these people appeared to have discovered that the bark of a tree becomes thicker and stronger by being suffered to remain upon the trunk after it has been cut round.

The canoes of New Holland are as mean and rude as the houses. Those on the southern part of the coast are nothing more than a piece of bark, about twelve feet long, tied together at the ends, and kept open in the middle by small bows of wood: yet in a vessel of this construction we once saw three people. In shallow water they are set forward by a pole, and in deeper by paddles, about eighteen inches long, one of which the boatman holds in each hand; mean as they are, they have many conveniences, they draw but little water, and

oulder, with
with incredible
at the distance
sure of their
illet. Besides
on upon this
of it with our
an with a bow
t be mistaken
d or target, of
and eighteen
rk of a tree:
the men that
a away, left it
found that it
pointed lance
ly in frequent
this was the
we frequently
manifestly to
distinguished
uckets: some-
but not yet
rk only being
ple appeared
tree becomes
remain upon

n and rude as
f the coast are
t twelve feet
open in the
vessel of this
In shallow
in deeper by
of which the
ey are, they
little water,
and

and they are very light, so that they go upon mud banks to pick up shell fish, the most important use to which they can be applied, better perhaps than vessels of any other construction. We observed, that in the middle of these canoes there was a heap of sea-weed, and upon that a small fire; probably that the fish may be broiled and eaten the moment it is caught.

The canoes that we saw when we advanced farther to the northward, are not made of bark, but of the trunk of a tree hollowed, perhaps, by fire. They are about fourteen feet long, and, being very narrow, are fitted with an outrigger to prevent their oversetting. These are worked with paddles, that are so large as to require both hands to manage one of them: the outside is wholly unmarked by any tool, but at each end the wood is left longer at the top than at the bottom, so that there is a projection beyond the hollow part resembling the end of a plank; the sides are tolerably thin, but how the tree is felled and fashioned, we had no opportunity to learn. The only tools that we saw among them are an adze, wretchedly made of stone, some small pieces of the same substance in form of a wedge, a wooden mallet, and some shells and fragments of coral. For polishing their throwing sticks, and the points of their lances, they use the leaves of a kind of wild fig-tree, which bites upon wood almost as keenly as the shave-grass of Europe, which is used by our joiners: with such tools, the making even such a canoe as I have described, must be a most difficult and tedious labour: to those who have been accustomed to the use of metal, it appears altogether impracticable; but there are few difficulties that will not yield to patient perseverance, and he who does all he can, will certainly produce effects that greatly exceed his apparent power.

The utmost freight of these canoes is four people, and if more at any time wanted to come over the river, one of those who came first was obliged to go back for the rest: from this circumstance, we conjectured that the boat we saw, when we were lying in Endeavour River,

River, was the only one in the neighbourhood: we have, however, some reason to believe that the bark canoes are also used where the wooden ones are constructed, for upon one of the small islands where the natives had been fishing for turtle, we found one of the little paddles which had belonged to such a boat, and would have been useless on board any other.

By what means the inhabitants of this country are reduced to such a number as it can subsist, is not perhaps very easy to guess; whether, like the inhabitants of New Zealand, they are destroyed by the hands of each other in contests for food; whether they are swept off by accidental famine, or whether there is any cause which prevents the increase of the species, must be left for future adventurers to determine. That they have wars, appears by their weapons; for supposing the lances to serve merely for the striking of fish, the shield could be intended for nothing but a defence against men; the only mark of hostility, however, which we saw among them, was the perforation of the shield by a spear which has been just mentioned, for none of them appeared to have been wounded by an enemy. Neither can we determine whether they are pusillanimous or brave; the resolution with which two of them attempted to prevent our landing, when we had two boats full of men, in Botany Bay, even after one of them was wounded with small shot, gave us reason to conclude that they were not only naturally courageous, but that they had acquired a familiarity with the dangers of hostility, and were, by habit, as well as nature, a daring and warlike people; but their precipitate flight from every other place that we approached, without even a menace, while they were out of our reach, was an indication of uncommon tameness and timidity, such as those who had only been occasionally warriors must be supposed to have shaken off, whatever might have been their natural disposition. I have faithfully related facts, the reader must judge of the people for himself.

From

Ex
The
Hair
Eyes
Ears
Lips

From the account that has been given of our commerce with them, it cannot be supposed that we should know much of their language; yet as this is an object of great curiosity, especially to the learned, and of great importance in their researches into the origin of the various nations that have been discovered, we took some pains to bring away such a specimen of it as might, in a certain degree, answer the purpose, and I shall now give an account how it was procured. If we wanted to know the name of a stone, we took a stone up into our hands, and as well as we could, intimated by signs that we wished they should name it: the word that they pronounced upon the occasion, we immediately wrote down. This method, though it was the best we could contrive, might certainly lead us into many mistakes; for if an Indian was to take up a stone, and ask us the name of it, we might answer a pebble or a flint; so when we took up a stone, and asked an Indian the name of it, he might pronounce a word that distinguished the species and not the genus, or that, instead of signifying stone simply, might signify a rough stone, or a smooth stone; however, as much as possible to avoid mistakes of this kind, several of us contrived, at different times, to get from them as many words as we could, and having noted them down, compared our lists: those which were the same in all, and which, according to every one's account, signified the same thing, we ventured to record, with a very few others, which, from the simplicity of the subject, and the ease of expressing our question with plainness and precision by a sign, have acquired equal authority.

ENGLISH.	NEW HOLLAND.	ENGLISH.	NEW HOLLAND.
<i>The head</i>	Wageege	<i>Nails</i>	Kulke
<i>Hair</i>	Morye	<i>Sun</i>	Gallan
<i>Eyes</i>	Meul	<i>Fire</i>	Meanang
<i>Ears</i>	Melea	<i>A stone</i>	Walba
<i>Lips</i>	Yembe	<i>Sand</i>	Yowall

ENGLISH.	NEW HOLLAND.	ENGLISH.	NEW HOLLAND.
<i>Nose</i>	Bonjoo	<i>A rope</i>	Gurka
<i>Tongue</i>	Unjar	<i>A man</i>	Bama
<i>Beard</i>	Wallar	<i>A male turtle</i>	Poinga
<i>Neck</i>	Doomboo	<i>A female</i>	Mameingo
<i>Nipples</i>	Cayo	<i>A canoe</i>	Marigan
<i>Hands</i>	Maringal	<i>To paddle</i>	Palenyo
<i>Thighs</i>	Coman	<i>Sit down</i>	Takai
<i>Navel</i>	Toolpoor	<i>Smooth</i>	Mier Carrar
<i>Knees</i>	Pongo	<i>A dog</i>	Cotta, or Kota
<i>Feet</i>	Edamal	<i>A loriquet</i>	{ Perpere, or pier-pier
<i>Heel</i>	Kniorror	<i>Blood</i>	Garmbe
<i>Cockatoo</i>	Wanda	<i>Wood</i>	Yocou
<i>The foal of the foot</i>	Chumal	<i>The bone in the nose</i>	Tapool
<i>Ankle</i>	Chongurn	<i>A bag</i>	Charngala
<i>Arms</i>	Aco, or Acol	<i>A great cockle</i>	Moingo
<i>Thumb</i>	Eboorbalga	<i>Cocos, yams</i>	Maracotu
<i>The fore, middle, and ring fingers</i>	{ Egalbaiga	<i>Expressions, as we supposed, of ad- miration, which they continually used when they were in company with us</i>	{ Cherr Cherco Yarcaw
<i>The little finger</i>	{ Nakil, or Eboornakil		{ Tut, tut, tut, tut.
<i>The sky</i>	Kere, or Kearre		
<i>A father</i>	Dunjo		
<i>A fan</i>	Jumurre.		

The

W HOLLAND,

rka

ma

inga

meingo

arigan

enyo

kai

er Carrar

tta, or Kota

rperere, or

pier-pier

armbe

ocou

pool

arngala

oingo

aracotu

Cherr

Cherco

Yarcaw

Tut, tut,

tut, tut.

*The Passage from New South Wales to New Guinea, with an
Account of what happened upon landing there.*

IN the afternoon of Thursday, August the 23d, after leaving Booby Island, we steered W. N. W. with light airs from the S. S. W. till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and the tide of ebb soon after setting to the N. E. we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a soft sandy bottom. Booby Island bore S. 50 E. distant five miles, and the Prince of Wales's Isles extended from N. E. by N. to S. 55 E. between these there appeared to be a clear open passage, extending from N. 46 E. to E. by N.

At half an hour after five in the morning of the 24th, as we were purchasing the anchor, the cable parted at about eight or ten fathom from the ring: the ship then began to drive, but I immediately dropped another anchor, which brought her up before she got more than a cable's length from the buoy; the boats were then sent to sweep for the anchor, but could not succeed. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 10 d. 30 m. S. As I was resolved not to leave the anchor behind, while there remained a possibility of recovering it, I sent the boats again after dinner, with a small line, to discover where it lay; this being happily effected, we swept for it with a hawser, and by the same hawser hove the ship up to it: we proceeded to weigh it, but just as we were about to ship it, the hawser slipped, and we had all our labour to repeat: by this time it was dark, and we were obliged to suspend our operations till the morning.

As soon as it was light, we swept it again, and heaved it to the bows: by eight o'clock, we weighed the

the

The

the other anchor, got under fail, and, with a fine breeze at E. N. E. stood to the north-west. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 10 d. 18 m. S. longitude 219 d. 39 m. W. At this time we had no land in sight but about two miles to the southward of us lay a large shoal, upon which the sea broke with great violence, a part of which, I believe, is dry at low water. It extends N. W. and S. E. and is about five leagues in circumference. Our depth of water, from the time we weighed anchor now, was nine fathom, but it soon shallowed to seven fathom; and at half an hour after one, having run eleven miles between noon and that time, the boat which was ahead made the signal for shoal water; we immediately let go an anchor, and brought the ship up with all the sails standing, for the boat having just been relieved, was at but a little distance: upon looking out from the ship, we saw shoal water almost all round us both wind and tide at the same time setting upon it. The ship was in six fathom, but upon sounding round her, at the distance of half a cable's length, we found scarcely two. This shoal reached from the east, round by the north and west; as far as the south-west, so that there was no way for us to get clear but that which we came. This was another hair's-breadth escape, for it was near high water, and there run a short cockling sea, which must very soon have bulged the ship if she had struck; and if her direction had been half a cable's length more either to the right or left, she must have struck before the signal for the shoal was made. The shoals which, like these lie a fathom or two under water, are the most dangerous of any, for they do not discover themselves till the vessel is just upon them, and then indeed the water looks brown, as if it reflected a dark cloud. Between three and four o'clock the tide of ebb began to make and I sent the master to sound to the southward and south-westward, and in the mean time, as the ship tended, I weighed anchor, and with a little sail stood first to the southward, and afterwards edging away to the westward, got once more out of danger. At sunset, we anchored

with a fine breeze
 At noon, our latitude
 8 m. S. longitude
 d no land in sight,
 d of us lay a large
 great violence, and
 y water. It extends
 leagues in circuit.
 e we weighed till
 shallowed to seven
 r one, having run
 hat time, the boat
 or shoal water; we
 brought the ship up
 boat having just been
 : upon looking out
 almost all round us,
 ime setting upon it.
 on sounding round
 's length, we found
 from the east, round
 e south-west, so that
 ar but that which we
 adth escape, for it was
 rt cockling sea, which
 if she had struck; and
 's length more either
 ruck before the signal
 als which, like these,
 are the most danger-
 er themselves till the
 en indeed the water
 ark cloud. Between
 ebb began to make,
 o the southward and
 me, as the ship tend-
 little sail stood first to
 ng away to the west-
 c. At sunset, we an-
 chored

chored in ten fathom, with a sandy bottom, having a fresh gale at E. S. E.

At six in the morning, we weighed again and stood west, having, as usual, first sent a boat ahead to sound. I had intended to steer N. W. till I had made the south coast of New Guinea, desigining, if possible, to touch upon it; but upon meeting with these shoals, I altered my course, in hopes of finding a clearer channel, and deeper water. In this I succeeded, for by noon our depth of water was gradually increased to seventeen fathom. Our latitude was now, by observation, 10 d. 10 m. S. and our longitude 220 d. 12 m. W. No land was in sight. We continued to steer west till sunset, our depth of water being from twenty-seven to twenty-three fathom: we then shortened sail, and kept upon a wind all night; four hours on one tack and four on another.

At day-light on the 27th, we made all the sail we could, and steered W. N. W. till eight o'clock, and then N. W. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 9 d. 56 m. S. longitude 221 d. W. variation 2 d. 30 m. E. We continued our N. W. course till sunset, when we again shortened sail, and hauled close upon a wind to the northward: our depth of water was twenty one fathom.

At eight, we tacked, and stood to the southward till twelve; then stood to the northward with little sail till day-light the next morning: our soundings were from twenty-five to seventeen fathom, the water growing gradually shallow as we stood to the northward. At this time we made sail and stood to the north, in order to make the land of New Guinea: from the time of our making sail till noon, the depth of water gradually decreased from seventeen to twelve fathom, with a stony and shelly bottom. Our latitude, by observation, was now 8 d. 52 m. S. which is in the same parallel as that in which the southern parts of New Guinea are laid down; but there are only two points so far to the south,

south, and I reckoned that we were a degree to the westward of them both, and therefore did not see the land, which trends more to the northward. We found the sea here to be in many parts covered with a brown scum, such as sailors generally call spawn. When I first saw it, I was alarmed, fearing that we were among shoals; but upon sounding, we found the same depth of water as in other places. This scum was examined both by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, but they could not determine what it was: it was formed of innumerable small particles, not more than half a line in length, each of which in the microscope appeared to consist of thirty or forty tubes; and each tube was divided through its whole length by small partitions into many cells, like the tubes of the conferva: they were supposed to belong to the vegetable kingdom, because upon burning them they produced no smell like that of an animal substance. The same appearance had been observed upon the coast of Brazil and New Holland, but never at any considerable distance from the shore. In the evening a small bird hovered about the ship, and at night, settling among the rigging, was taken. It proved to be exactly the same bird which Dampier has described, and of which he has given a rude figure, by the name of a Noddy from New Holland.

We continued standing to the northward with a fresh gale till six in the evening, having very irregular soundings, the depth changing at once from twenty four fathom to seven. At four, we had seen the land from the mast-head, bearing N. W. by N. it appeared to be very low, and to stretch from W. N. W. to N. N. E. distant four or five leagues. We now hauled close upon a wind till seven, then tacked and stood to the southward till twelve, at which time we wore and stood to the northward till four in the morning of the 29th, then laid the head of the vessel off till day light, when we again saw the land, and stood in N. N. W. directly for it, with a fresh gale at E. by S. Our soundings during the night were very irregular from seven to five fathom, suddenly chang-

agree to the
not see the
We found
with a brown
When I first
among shoals;
depth of water
ned both by
id not deter-
nerable small
ngth, each of
t of thirty or
ugh its whole
like the tubes
elong to the
; them they
stance. The
the coast of
considerable
a small bird
g among the
tly the same
which he has
Noddy from

with a fresh
gular sound-
enty four fa-
and from the
ed to be very
N. E. distant
upon a wind
outhward till
to the north-
then laid the
re again saw
for it, with a
ng the night
om, suddenly
chang-

changing from deep to shallow, and from shallow to deep, without in the least corresponding with our distance from the land. At half an hour after six in the morning a small low island, which lay at the distance of about a league from the main, bore N. by W. distant five miles: this island lies in latitude 8 d. 13 m. S. longitude 221 d. 25 m. W. and I find it laid down in the charts by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoyfen. We now steered N. W. by W. W. N. W. W. by N. W. by S. and S. W. by W. as we found the land lie, with from five to nine fathom; and though we reckoned we were not more than four leagues from it, yet it was so low and level that we could but just see it from the deck. It appeared however to be well covered with wood, and among other trees, we thought we could discover the cocoa-nut. We saw smoke in several places, and therefore knew there were inhabitants. At noon, we were about three leagues from the land; the westernmost part of which that was in sight bore S. 79 d. W. Our latitude, by observation, was 8 d. 19 m. S. and longitude 221 d. 44 m. W. The island of St Bartholomew bore N. 74 E. distant 20 miles.

After steering S. W. by W. six miles, we had shoal water on our starboard bow, which I sent the yawl to sound, and at the same time hauled off upon a wind till four o'clock, and though during that time we had run six miles, we had not deepened our water an inch. I then edged away S. W. four miles more; but finding it still shoal water, I brought to and called the boats aboard. At this time, being between three and four leagues from the shore, and the yawl having found only three fathom water in the place to which I had sent her to sound, I hauled off close upon a wind, and weathered the shoal about half a mile.

Between one and two o'clock, we passed a bay or inlet between which lies a small island that seems to shelter it from the southerly winds; but I very much doubt whether there is sufficient depth of water behind it for shipping. I could not attempt to determine the question,

because the S. E. trade wind blows right into the bay, and we had not as yet had any breeze from the land.

We stretched off to sea till twelve o'clock, when we were about eleven leagues from the land, and had deepened our water to twenty-nine fathom. We now tacked and stood in till five in the morning of the 30th, when, being in six fathom and an half, we tacked and laid the head of the vessel off till day-light, when we saw the land bearing N. W. by W. at about the distance of four leagues. We now made sail, and steered first W. S. W. then W. by S. but coming into five fathom and an half, we hauled off S. W. till we deepened our water to eight fathom, and then kept away W. by S. and W. having nine fathom, and the land just in sight from the deck; we judged it to be about four leagues distant, and it was still very low and woody. Great quantities of the brown scum continued to appear upon the water, and the sailors, having given up the notion of its being spawn, found a new name for it, and called it Sea-sawdust. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 8 d. 30 m. S. our longitude 222 d. 34 m. W. and Saint Bartholomew's Isle bore N. 69 E. distant seventy-four miles.

As all this coast appears to have been very minutely examined by the Dutch, it is sufficient to say, that we continued our course to the northward with very shallow water, upon a bank of mud, at such a distance from the shore as that it could scarcely be seen from the ship, till the 3d of September. During this time we made many attempts to get near enough to go on shore, but without success; and having now lost six days of fair wind, at a time when we knew the south-east monsoon to be nearly at an end, we began to be impatient of farther delay, and determined to run the ship in as near to the shore as possible, and then land with the pinnace, while she kept plying off and on, to examine the produce of the country, and disposition of the inhabitants. For the two last days we had early in the morning a light breeze from the shore, which was strongly impregnated

nated with the fragrance of the trees, shrubs, and herbage that covered it, the smell being something like that of Gum Benjamin.

On the 3d of September, at day-break, we saw the land extending from N. by E. to S. E. at about four leagues distance, and we then kept standing in for it with a fresh gale at E. S. E. and E. by S. till nine o'clock, when being within about three or four miles of it, and in three fathom water, we brought to. The pinnace being hoisted out, I set off from the ship with the boat's crew, accompanied by Mr Banks, who also took his servants, and Dr Solander, being in all twelve persons well armed; we rowed directly towards the shore, but the water was so shallow that we could not reach it by about two hundred yards: we waded however the rest of the way, having left two of the seamen to take care of the boat. Hitherto we had seen no signs of inhabitants at this place; but as soon as we got ashore we discovered the prints of human feet, which could not long have been impressed upon the sand, as they were below high-water mark: we therefore concluded that the people were at no great distance, and, as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we thought it necessary to proceed with caution, lest we should fall into an ambuscade and our retreat to the boat be cut off. We walked along the skirts of the wood, and at the distance of about two hundred yards from the place where we landed, we came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, which stood upon the banks of a little brook of brackish water. The trees were of a small growth, but well hung with fruit; and near them was a shed or hut, which had been covered with their leaves, though most of them were now fallen off: about the hut lay a great number of the shells of the fruit, some of which appeared to be just fresh from the tree. We looked at the fruit very wishfully, but not thinking it safe to climb, we were obliged to leave it without tasting a single nut. At a little distance from this place we found plantains,

and a bread-fruit tree, but it had nothing upon it; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed out of the wood with a hideous shout, at about the distance of a hundred yards; and as they ran towards us, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burnt exactly like gun-powder, but made no report: the other two instantly threw their lances at us; and, as no time was now to be lost, we discharged our pieces, which were loaded with small shot. It is probable that they did not feel the shot, for, though they halted a moment, they did not retreat; and a third dart was thrown at us. As we thought their farther approach might be prevented with less risk of life, than it would cost to defend ourselves against their attack, if they should come nearer, we loaded our pieces with ball, and fired a second time: by this discharge it is probable that some of them were wounded; yet we had the satisfaction to see that they all ran away with great agility. As I was not disposed forcibly to invade this country, either to gratify our appetites or our curiosity, and perceived that nothing was to be done upon friendly terms, we improved this interval, in which the destruction of the natives was no longer necessary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned towards our boat. As we were advancing along the shore, we perceived that the two men on board made signals that more Indians were coming down: and before we got into the water we saw several of them coming round a point at the distance of about five hundred yards: it is probable that they had met with the three who first attacked us: for as soon as they saw us they halted and seemed to wait till their main body should come up. We entered the water, and waded towards the boat; and they remained at their station, without giving us any interruption. As soon as we were aboard we rowed abreast of them, and their number then appeared to be between sixty and a hundred. We now took a view of them at our leisure; they made much the same
appear-

appearance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the same stature, and having their hair short cropped: like them also they were all stark naked, but we thought the colour of their skin was not quite so dark; this however might perhaps be merely the effect of their not being quite so dirty. All this while they were shouting defiance, and letting off their fires by four or five at a time. What these fires were, or for what purpose intended, we could not imagine: those who discharged them had in their hands a short piece of stick, possibly a hollow cane, which they swung sideways from them, and we immediately saw fire and smoke, exactly resembling those of a musquet, and of no longer duration. This wonderful phenomenon was observed from the ship, and the deception was so great, that the people on board thought they had fire-arms; and in the boat, if we had not been so near as that we must have heard the report, we should have thought they had been firing vollies. After we had looked at them attentively some time, without taking any notice of their flashing and vociferation, we fired some musquets over their heads: upon hearing the balls rattle among the trees, they walked leisurely away, and we returned to the ship. Upon examining the weapons they had thrown at us, we found them to be light darts, about four feet long, very well made of a reed or bamboo cane, and pointed with hard wood, in which there were many barbs. They were discharged with great force; for though we were at sixty yards distance, they went beyond us, but in what manner we could not exactly see: possibly they might be shot with a bow; but we saw no bows among them when we surveyed them from the boat, and we were in general of opinion that they were thrown with a stick, in the manner practised by the New Hollanders.

This place lies in the latitude of 6 d. 15 m. S. and about sixty-five leagues to the N. E. of Port Saint Augustine, or Walche Caep, and is near what is called in the charts C. de la Colta de St Bonaventura. The land here,

here, like that in every other part of the coast, is very low, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage that can scarcely be conceived. We saw the cocoa-nut, the bread-fruit, and the plantain tree, all flourishing in a state of the highest perfection, though the cocoa-nuts were green, and the bread-fruit not in season; besides most of the trees, shrubs, and plants that are common to the South Sea islands, New Zealand, and New Holland.

Soon after our return to the ship, we hoisted in the boat and made sail to the westward, being resolved to spend no more time upon this coast, to the great satisfaction of a very considerable majority of the ship's company. But I am sorry to say that I was strongly urged by some of the officers to send a party of men ashore, and cut down the cocoa-nut trees for the sake of the fruit. This I peremptorily refused, as equally unjust and cruel. The natives had attacked us merely for landing upon their coast, when we attempted to take nothing away, and it was therefore morally certain that they would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property if it had been invaded, in which case many of them must have fallen a sacrifice to our attempt, and perhaps also some of our own people. I should have regretted the necessity of such a measure, if I had been in want of the necessaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred of green cocoa-nuts, which would at most have procured us a mere transient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coast to the northward and westward, in search of a place where the ship might have lain so near the shore as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the mischief, and though it might have secured us, it would probably in the very act have been fatal to the natives. Besides, we had reason to think that before such a place would have been found, we should have been carried so far to the westward as to have been obliged to go to Bata-

cast, is very
od and her-
We saw the
ain tree, all
ion, though
-fruit not in
d plants that
New Zealand,

oisted in the
g resolved to
e great satis-
ne ship's com-
strongly urged
f men ashore,
e sake of the
equally unjust
us merely for
empted to take
ily certain that
to defend their
h case many of
r attempt, and
I should have
if I had been
rtainly it would
g was to be ob-
een cocoa-nuts,
a mere transient
occeeded farther
ward, in search
lain so near the
guns when they
only part of the
ured us, it would
al to the natives
efore such a place
e been carried so
ged to go to Bata-
via

via, on the north side of Java; which I did not think so safe a passage as to the south of Java, through the Straights of Sunda: the ship also was so leaky that I doubted whether it would not be necessary to heave her down at Batavia, which was another reason for making the best of our way to that place; especially as no discovery could be expected in seas which had already been navigated, and where every coast had been laid down by the Dutch geographers. The Spaniards indeed, as well as the Dutch, seem to have circumnavigated all the islands in New Guinea.

As the two countries lie very near each other, and the intermediate space is full of islands, it is reasonable to suppose that they were both peopled from one common stock: yet no intercourse appears to have been kept up between them; for if there had, the cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, plantains, and other fruits of New Guinea, which are equally necessary for the support of life, would certainly have been transplanted to New Holland, where no traces of them are to be found. The Author of the "Histoire des Navigations aux Terres Australes," in his account of La Maire's voyage, has given a vocabulary of the language that is spoken in an island near New Britain, and we find, by comparing that vocabulary with the words which we learnt in New Holland, that the languages are not the same. If therefore it should appear, that the languages of New Britain and New Guinea are the same, there will be reason to suppose that New Britain and New Guinea were peopled from a common stock; but that the inhabitants of New Holland had a different origin, notwithstanding the proximity of the countries.

*The Passage from New Guinea to the Island of Savu, and
the Transactions there.*

WE made sail, from noon on Monday the 3d to noon on Tuesday the 4th, standing to the westward, and all the time kept in soundings, having from fourteen to thirty fathom; not regular, but sometimes more, sometimes less. At noon on the 4th, we were in fourteen fathom, and in latitude 6 d. 44 m. S. longitude 223 d. 51 m. W. our course and distance since the 3d at noon, were S. 76 W. one hundred and twenty miles to the westward.

At noon on the 5th of September, we were in latitude 7 d. 25 m. S. longitude 225 d. 41 m. W. having been in soundings the whole time from ten to twenty fathom.

At half an hour after one in the morning of the next day, we passed a small island which bore from us N. N. W. distant between three and four miles; and at daylight we discovered another low island, extending from N. N. W. to N. N. E. distant about two or three leagues. Upon this island, which did not appear to be very small, I believe I should have landed to examine its produce, if the wind had not blown too fresh to admit of it. When we passed this island we had only ten fathom water, with a rocky bottom; and therefore I was afraid of running down to leeward, lest I should meet with shoal water and foul ground.

We continued to steer W. S. W. at the rate of four miles and an half an hour, till ten o'clock at night, when we had forty-two fathom, at eleven we had thirty-seven, at twelve forty-five, at one in the morning forty-nine,

nine, and at three 120, after which we had no ground. At day-light, we made all the sail we could, and at ten o'clock, saw land, extending from N. N. W. to W. by N. distant between five and six leagues: at noon, it bore from N. to W. and at about the same distance: it appeared to be level, and of a moderate height: by our distance from New Guinea, it ought to have been part of the Arrou Islands, but it lies a degree farther to the south than any of these islands are laid down in the charts; and by the latitude should be Timor Laoet: we sounded, but had no ground with fifty fathom.

As I was not able to satisfy myself from any chart, what land it was that I saw to leeward, and fearing that it might trend away more southerly, the weather also being so hazy that we could not see far, I steered S. W. and by four had lost sight of the island. I was now sure that no part of it lay to the southward of 8 d. 15 m. S. and continued standing to the S. W. with an easy sail, and a fresh breeze at S. E. by E. and E. S. E. we sounded every hour, but had no bottom with 120 fathom.

At day-break in the morning, we steered W. S. W. and afterwards W. by S. which by noon brought us into the latitude of 9 d. 30 m. S. longitude 229 d. 34 m. W. and by our run from New Guinea, we ought to have been within sight of Weasel Isles, which in the charts are laid down at the distance of twenty or twenty-five leagues from the coast of New Holland; we however saw nothing, and therefore they must have been placed erroneously; nor can this be thought strange, when it is considered that not only these islands, but the coast which bounds this sea, have been discovered and explored by different people, and at different times, and the charts upon which they are delineated, put together by others, perhaps at the distance of more than a century after the discoveries had been made: not to mention that the discoverers themselves had not all the requisites for keeping an accurate journal, of which those of the present age are possessed.

We continued our course, steering W. till the evening of the 8th, when the variation of the compass, by several azimuths, was 13 m. W. and by the amplitude, 5 m. W. At noon, on the 9th, our latitude, by observation, was 9 d. 46 m. S. longitude 232 d. 7 m. W. For the last two days we had steered due W. yet, by observation, we made sixteen miles southing, six miles from noon on the 6th to noon on the 7th, and ten miles from noon on the 7th to noon on the 8th, by which it appeared that there was a current setting to the southward. At sun-set, we found the variation to be 2 W. and at the same time, saw an appearance of very high land bearing N. W.

In the morning of the 10th, we saw clearly that what had appeared to be land the night before, was Timor. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was 10 d. 1 m. S. which was fifteen miles to the southward of that given by the log; our longitude, by observation, was 233 d. 27 m. W. We steered N. W. in order to obtain a more distinct view of the land in sight, till four o'clock in the morning of the 11th, when the wind came to the N. W. and W. with which we stood to the southward till nine, when we tacked and stood N. W. having the wind now at W. S. W. At sun-rise, the land had appeared to extend from W. N. W. to N. E. and at noon, we could see it extend to the westward as far as W. by S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. but no farther to the eastward than N. by E. We were now well assured, that as the first land we had seen was Timor, the last island we had passed was Timor Laoet, or Laut. Laoet is a word in the language of Malaca, signifying Sea, and this island was named by the inhabitants of that country. The south part of it lies in latitude 8 d. 15 m. S. longitude 228 d. 10 m. W. but in the charts the south point is laid down in various latitudes, from 8 d. 30 m. to 9 d. 30 m. it is indeed possible that the land we saw might be some other island, but the presumption to the contrary is very strong, for if Timor Laut had lain where it is placed in the charts, we must have seen it there. We were now

in latitude 9 d. 37 m. S. longitude, by an observation of the sun and moon, 233 d. 54 m. W. we were the day before in 233 d. 27 m. the difference is 27 m. exactly the same that was given by the log: this, however, is a degree of accuracy in observation that is seldom to be expected. In the afternoon, we stood in shore till eight in the evening, when we tacked and stood off, being at the distance of about three leagues from the land, which at sun-set extended from S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. to N. E. at this time we sounded, and had no ground with 140 fathom. At midnight, having but little wind, we tacked and stood in, and at noon the next day, our latitude, by observation, was 9 d. 36 m. S. This day, we saw smoke on shore in several places, and had seen many fires during the night. The land appeared to be very high, rising in gradual slopes one above another: the hills were in general covered with thick woods, but among them we could distinguish naked spots of a considerable extent, which had the appearance of having been cleared by art. At five o'clock in the afternoon, we were within a mile and a half of the shore, in sixteen fathom water, and abreast of a small inlet into the low land, which lies in latitude 9 d. 34 m. S. and probably is the same that Dampier entered with his boat, for it did not seem to have sufficient depth of water for a ship. The land here answered well to the description that he has given of it: close to the beach it was covered with high spiry trees, which he mentions as having the appearance of pines; behind these there seemed to be salt water creeks, and many mangroves, interspersed however with cocoa-nut trees: the flat land at the beach appeared in some places to extend inward two or three miles before the rise of the first hill; in this part, however, we saw no appearance of plantations or houses, but great fertility, and from the number of fires we judged that the place must be well peopled.

When we had approached within a mile and a half of the shore, we tacked and stood off, and the extremes of the coast then extended from N. E. by E. to W. by S.

S. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. The south westerly extremity was a low point, distant from us about three leagues. While we were standing in for the shore, we sounded several times, but had no ground till we came within about two miles and a half, and then we had five and twenty fathom, with a soft bottom. After we had tacked, we stood off till midnight, with the wind at S. we then tacked and stood two hours to the westward, when the wind veered to S. W. and W. S. W. and we then stood to the southward again. In the morning, we found the variation to be 1 d. 20 m. W. by the amplitude, and by the azimuth 1 d. 27 m. At noon, our latitude was, by observation 9 d. 45 m. S. our longitude 234 d. 12 m. W. we were then about seven leagues distant from the land, which extended from N. 31 E. to W. S. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W.

With light land breezes from W. by N. for a few hours in a morning, and sea breezes from S. S. W. and S. we advanced to the westward but slowly. At noon on the 14th, we were between six and seven leagues from the land, which extended from N. by E. to S. 78 W. we still saw smoke in many places by day, and fire by night, both upon the low land and the mountains beyond it. We continued steering along the shore, till the morning of the 15th, the land still appearing hilly, but not so high as it had been: the hills in general came quite down to the sea, and where they did not, we saw instead of flats and mangrove land, immense groves of cocoa-nut trees, reaching about a mile up from the beach; there the plantations and houses commenced, and appeared to be innumerable. The houses were shaded by groves of the fan palm, or *borassus*, and the plantations, which were inclosed by a fence, reached almost to the tops of the highest hills. We saw however neither people nor cattle, though our glasses were continually employed, at which we were not a little surpris'd.

We continued our course, with little variation, till nine o'clock in the morning of the 16th, when we saw the

the small island called ROTTE; and at noon, the island SEMAU, lying off the south end of Timor, bore N. W.

Dampier, who has given a large description of the island of Timor, says, that it is seventy leagues long, and sixteen broad, and that it lies nearly N. E. and S. W. I found the east side of it to lie nearest N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. and the south end to lie in latitude $10^{\circ} 23'$ S. longitude $236^{\circ} 5'$ W. We ran about forty-five leagues along the east side, and found the navigation altogether free from danger. The land which is bounded by the sea, except near the south end, is low for two or three miles within the beach, and in general intersected by salt creeks; behind the low land are mountains, which rise one above another to a considerable height. We steered W. N. W. till two in the afternoon, when, being within a small distance of the north end of Rotte, we hauled up N. N. W. in order to go between it and Semau; after steering three leagues upon this course, we edged away N. W. and W. and by six, we were clear of all the islands. At this time, the south part of Semau, which lies in latitude $10^{\circ} 15'$ S. bore N. E. distant four leagues, and the island of Rotte extended as far to the southward as S. 36° W. The north end of this island, and the south end of Timor lie N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and are about three or four leagues distant from each other. At the west end of the passage between Rotte and Semau, are two small islands, one of which lies near the Rotte shore, and the other off the south west point of Semau; there is a good channel between them, about six miles broad, through which we passed.

The isle of Rotte has not so lofty and mountainous an appearance as Timor, though it is agreeably diversified by hill and valley: on the north side, there are many sandy beaches, near which grew some trees of the fan palm, but the far greater part was covered with a kind of brushy wood, that was without leaves. The appearance of Semau was nearly the same with that of Timor, but not quite so high.

About

About ten o'clock at night, we observed a phænomenon in the heavens, which in many particulars resembled the aurora borealis, and in others was very different: it consisted of a dull reddish light, and reached about twenty degrees above the horizon: its extent was very different at different times, but it was never less than eight or ten points of the compass: through, and out of this, passed rays of light of a brighter colour, which vanished, and were renewed nearly in the same time as those of the aurora borealis, but had no degree of the tremulous or vibratory motion which is observed in that phænomenon: the body of it bore S. S. E. from the ship, and it continued, without any diminution of its brightness, till twelve o'clock, when we retired to sleep, but how long afterwards, I cannot tell.

Being clear of all the islands, which are laid down in the maps we had on board, between Timor and Java, we steered a west course till six o'clock the next morning, when we unexpectedly saw an island bearing W. S. W. and at first I thought we had made a new discovery. We steered directly for it, and by ten o'clock were close in with the north side of it, where we saw houses, coconut trees, and, to our very agreeable surprize, numerous flocks of sheep. This was a temptation not to be resisted by people in our situation, especially as many of us were in a bad state of health, and many still repining at my not having touched at Timor: it was therefore soon determined to attempt a commerce with people who appeared to be so well able to supply our many necessities, and remove at once the sickness and discontent that had got footing among us. The pinnace was hoisted out, and Mr Gore, the Second Lieutenant, sent to see if there was any convenient place to land, taking with him some trifles, as presents to the natives, if any of them should appear.

While he was gone, we saw from the ship two men on horseback, who seemed to be riding upon the hills, for their amusement, and often stopped to look at the ship.

ed a phænomen-
culars resembled
ry different : it
reached about
extent was very
never less than
rough, and our
r colour, which
ne same time as
o degree of the
observed in that
S. E. from the
mination of its
retired to sleep,

re laid down in
mor and Java,
he next morn-
l bearing W. S.
new discovery.
lock were close
y houses, cocoa-
brise, numerous
not to be resist-
as many of us
still repining at
therefore soon
h people who
g many neces-
and discontent
pace was hoist-
enant, sent to
o land, taking
natives, if any

ship two men
pon the hills,
to look at the
ship.

ship. By this we knew that the place had been settled by Europeans, and hoped, that the many disagreeable circumstances which always attend the first establishment of commerce with savages, would be avoided. In the mean time, Mr Gore landed in a small sandy cove near some houses, and was met by eight or ten of the natives, who, as well in their dress as their persons, very much resembled the Malays: they were without arms, except the knives which it is their custom to wear in their girdles, and one of them had a jack-ass with him: they courteously invited him ashore, and conversed with him by signs, but very little of the meaning of either party could be understood by the other. In a short time he returned with this report, and, to our great mortification, added, that there was no anchorage for the ship. I sent him, however, a second time, with both money and goods, that he might, if possible, purchase some refreshments, at least for the sick; and Dr Solander went in the boat with him. In the mean time I kept standing on and off with the ship, which at this time was within about a mile of the shore. Before the boat could land, we saw two other horsemen, one of whom was in a complete European dress, consisting of a blue coat, a white waistcoat, and a laced hat: these people, when the boat came to the shore, took little notice of her, but sauntered about, and seemed to look with great curiosity at the ship. We saw, however, other horsemen, and a great number of persons on foot, gather round our people, and, to our great satisfaction, perceived several cocoa-nuts carried into the boat, from which we concluded that peace and commerce were established between us.

After the boat had been ashore about an hour and an half, she made the signal for having intelligence that there was a bay to leeward, where we might anchor: we stood away directly for it, and the boat following, soon came on board. The Lieutenant told us, that he had seen some of the principal people, who were dressed in fine linen, and had chains of gold round their necks:

necks: he said, that he had not been able to trade, because the owner of the cocoa-nuts was absent, but that about two dozen had been sent to the boat as a present, and that some linen had been accepted in return. The people, to give him the information that he wanted, drew a map upon the sand, in which they made a rude representation of a harbour to leeward, and a town near it: they also gave him to understand, that sheep, hogs, fowls, and fruit might there be procured in great plenty. Some of them frequently pronounced the word Portuguese, and said something of Larntuca, upon the island Ende: from this circumstance, we conjectured that there were Portuguese somewhere upon the island, and a Portuguese, who was in our boat attempted to converse with the Indians in that language, but soon found that they knew only a word or two of it by rote: one of them however, when they were giving our people to understand that there was a town near the harbour to which they had directed us, intimated, that as a token of going right, we should see somewhat, which he expressed by crossing his fingers, and the Portuguese instantly conceived that he meant to express a cross. Just as our people were putting off, the horseman in the European dress came up, but the officer not having his commission about him, thought it best to decline a conference.

At seven o'clock in the evening, we came to an anchor in the bay to which we had been directed, at about the distance of a mile from the shore, in thirty-eight fathom water, with a clear sandy bottom. The north point of the bay bore N. 30 E. distant two miles and an half, and the south point, or west end of the island, bore S. 63 W. Just as we got round the north point, and entered the bay, we discovered a large Indian town or village, upon which we stood on, hoisting a jack on the fore top-mast head: soon after, to our great surprize, Dutch colours were hoisted in the town, and three guns fired; we stood on, however, till we had soundings, and then anchored.

As

A
we f
of th
fettle
upon
the f
purp
he ca
twen
cond
hoist
that h
witho
he wa
and b
was a
tain, :
he wa
afford
supply
allianc
not at
having
he said
who be
white r
at some
acquair
mean t
an acco
In abou
letter th
be a na
pher La
on horf
great ci
were at
pleased.
coming
- Vol. I.

As soon as it was light in the morning of the 18th, we saw the same colours hoisted upon the beach, abreast of the ship; supposing therefore that the Dutch had a settlement here, I sent Lieutenant Gore ashore, to wait upon the Governor, or the chief person residing upon the spot, and acquaint him who we were, and for what purpose we had touched upon the coast. As soon as he came ashore, he was received by a guard of between twenty and thirty Indians, armed with muskets, who conducted him to the town, where the colours had been hoisted the night before, carrying with them those that had been hoisted upon the beach, and marching without any military regularity. As soon as he arrived, he was introduced to the Raja, or King of the island, and by a Portuguese interpreter, told him, that the ship was a man of war belonging to the King of Great Britain, and that she had many sick on board, for whom he wanted to purchase such refreshments as the island afforded. His Majesty replied, that he was willing to supply us with whatever we wanted, but, that being in alliance with the Dutch East India Company, he was not at liberty to trade with any other people, without having first procured their consent, for which, however, he said he would immediately apply to a Dutchman who belonged to the company, and who was the only white man upon the island. To this man, who resided at some distance, a letter was immediately dispatched, acquainting him with our arrival and request: in the mean time, Mr Gore dispatched a messenger to me, with an account of his situation, and the state of the treaty. In about three hours, the Dutch resident answered the letter that had been sent him, in person: he proved to be a native of Saxony, and his name is Johan Christopher Lange, and the same person whom we had seen on horseback in a European dress: he behaved with great civility to Mr Gore, and assured him, that we were at liberty to purchase of the natives whatever we pleased. After a short time, he expressed a desire of coming on board, so did the king also, and several of his

attendants : Mr Gore intimated that he was ready to attend them, but they desired that two of our people might be left ashore as hostages, and in this also they were indulged.

About two o'clock they all came aboard the ship, and our dinner being ready, they accepted our invitation to partake of it : I expected them immediately to sit down, but the King seemed to hesitate, and at last, with some confusion, said he did not imagine that we, who were white men, would suffer him, who was of a different colour to sit down in our company ; a compliment soon removed his scruples, and we all sat down together with great cheerfulness and cordiality : happily we were at no loss for interpreters, both Dr Solander and Mr Sporing understanding Dutch enough to keep up a conversation with Mr Lange, and several of the seamen were able to converse with such of the natives as spoke Portuguese. Our dinner happened to be mutton, and the King expressed a desire of having an English sheep ; we had but one left, however that was presented to him : the facility with which this was procured encouraged him to ask for an English dog, and Mr Banks politely gave up his greyhound : Mr Lange then intimated that a spying-glass would be acceptable, and one was immediately put into his hand. Our guests then told us that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the beach the next day, that we might purchase as many of them as we should think fit : this put us all into high spirits, and the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear ; they intimated their desire to go away, however, before they were quite drunk, and were received upon deck, as they had been when they came aboard, by the marines under arms. The King expressed a curiosity to see them exercise, in which he was gratified, and they fired three rounds : he looked at them with great attention, and was much surprised at their regularity and expedition, especially in cocking their pieces ; the first
time

was ready to
our people
his also they

rd the ship,
our invita-
mediately to
and at last,
ine that we,
who was of a
; a compli-
all fat down
lity: happi-
Dr Solander
ugh to keep
several of the
he natives as
o be mutton,
; an English
was present-
was procured
and Mr Banks
ge then inti-
ble, and one
guests then
aloes, sheep,
l be driven
might pur-
fit: this put
ulated rather
could bear;
ever, before
upon deck,
by the ma-
curiosity to
ed, and they
great atten-
rity and ex-
s; the first
time

time they did it he struck the side of the ship with a stick that he had in his hand, and cried out with great vehemence, that all the locks made but one clink. They were dismissed with many presents, and when they went away saluted them with nine guns: Mr Banks and Dr Solander went ashore with them; and as soon as they put off they gave us three cheers.

Our Gentlemen, when they came ashore, walked up with them to the town, which consists of many houses, and some of them are large; they are however nothing more than a thatched roof, supported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high. They produced some of their palm wine, which was the fresh unfermented juice of the tree; it had a sweet, but not a disagreeable taste; and hopes were conceived that it might contribute to recover our sick from the scurvy. Soon after it was dark, Mr Banks and Dr Solander returned on board.

In the morning of the 19th, I went ashore with Mr Banks, and several of the officers and gentlemen, to return the King's visit; but my chief business was to procure some of the buffaloes, sheep, and fowls, which we had been told should be driven down to the beach. We were greatly mortified to find that no steps had been taken to fulfil this promise; however, we proceeded to the house of assembly, which with two or three more had been erected by the Dutch East India Company, and are distinguished from the rest, by two pieces of wood resembling a pair of cow's horns, one of which is set up at each end of the ridge that terminates the roof; and these were certainly what the Indian intended to represent by crossing his fingers, though our Portuguese, who was a good Catholic, construed the sign into a cross, which had persuaded us that the settlement belonged to his countrymen. In this place we met Mr Lange, and the King, whose name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, attended by many of the principal people. We told them that we had in the boat goods of various

kinds, which we proposed to barter for such refreshments as they would give us in exchange, and desired leave to bring them on shore; which being granted, they were brought ashore accordingly. We then attempted to settle the price of the buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and other commodities which we proposed to purchase, and for which we were to pay in money; but as soon as this was mentioned Mr Lange left us, telling us that these preliminaries must be settled with the natives: he said, however, that he had received a letter from the Governor of Concordia in Timor, the purport of which he would communicate to us when he returned.

As the morning was now far advanced, and we were very unwilling to return on board and eat salt provisions, when so many delicacies surrounded us ashore, we petitioned his Majesty for liberty to purchase a small hog and some rice, and to employ his subjects to dress them for us. He answered very graciously, that if we could eat victuals dressed by his subjects, which he could scarcely suppose, he would do himself the honour of entertaining us. We expressed our gratitude, and immediately sent on board for liquors.

About five o'clock dinner was ready; it was served in six and thirty dishes, or rather baskets, containing alternately rice and pork; and three bowls of earthen ware, filled with the liquor in which the pork had been boiled: these were ranged upon the floor, and mats laid round them for us to sit upon. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which stood a man with water in a vessel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who assisted us in washing our hands. When this was done, we placed ourselves round the victuals, and waited for the King. As he did not come, we enquired for him, and were told that the custom of the country did not permit the person who gave the entertainment to sit down with his guests; but that, if we suspected the victuals to be poisoned, he would come and taste it. We immediately declared that we had no

such

each sus
hospitalit
prime m
we made
and rice
but the f
small tha
dinner,
enquired
custom o
us, he m
but he a
a feast s
tain way
not how
victuals
the sean
places:
the won
kets, obl
had not
the hear
its influ
the buff
time he
brought
Dutchm
to us th
have re
said, tha
from th
ashore,
provisio
her to f
make a
with th
among
we wer
change

each suspicion, and desired that none of the rituals of hospitality might be violated on our account. The prime minister and Mr Lange were of our party, and we made a most luxurious meal: we thought the pork and rice excellent, and the broth not to be despised; but the spoons, which were made of leaves, were so small that few of us had patience to use them. After dinner, our wime passed briskly about, and we again enquired for our royal host, thinking that though the custom of his country would not allow him to eat with us, he might at least share in the jollity of our bottle; but he again excused himself, saying, that the master of a feast should never be drunk, which there was no certain way to avoid but by not tasting the liquor. We did not however drink our wine where we had eaten our victuals; but as soon as we had dined made room for the seamen and servants, who immediately took our places: they could not dispatch all that we had left, but the women who came to clear away the bowls and baskets, obliged them to carry away with them what they had not eaten. As wine generally warms and opens the heart, we took an opportunity, when we thought its influence began to be felt, to revive the subject of the buffaloes and sheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a syllable, though they were to have been brought down early in the morning. But our Saxon Dutchman, with great phlegm, began to communicate to us the contents of the letter which he pretended to have received from the Governor of Concordia. He said, that after acquainting him that a vessel had steered from thence towards the island where we were now ashore, it required him, if such ship should apply for provisions in distress, to relieve her; but not to suffer her to stay longer than was absolutely necessary, nor to make any presents to the inferior people, or to leave any with those of superior rank to be afterwards distributed among them; but he was graciously pleased to add, that we were at liberty to give beads and other trifles in exchange for petty civilities, and palm-wine.

It was the general opinion that this letter was a fiction, that the prohibitory orders were feigned with a view to get money from us for breaking them; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, this man hoped more easily to turn it into another channel.

In the evening, we received intelligence from our trading-place that no buffaloes or hogs had been brought down, and only a few sheep, which had been taken away before our people, who had sent for money, could procure it. Some fowls however had been bought, and a large quantity of a kind of syrup made of the juice of the palm-tree, which, though infinitely superior to molasses or treacle, sold at a very low price. We complained of our disappointment to Mr Lange, who had now another subterfuge; he said, that if we had gone down to the beach ourselves, we might have purchased what we pleased; but that the natives were afraid to take money of our people, lest it should be counterfeit. We could not but feel some indignation against a man who had concealed this, being true; or alledged it, being false. I started up, however, and went immediately to the beach, but no cattle or sheep were to be seen, nor were any at hand to be produced. While I was gone, Lange, who knew well enough that I should succeed no better than my people, told Mr Banks that the natives were displeas'd at our not having offer'd them gold for their flock; and that if gold was not offer'd, nothing would be bought. Mr Banks did not think it worth his while to reply, but soon after rose up, and we all returned on board, very much dissatisfied with the issue of our negotiations. During the course of the day, the King had promised that some cattle and sheep should be brought down in the morning, and had given a reason for our disappointment somewhat more plausible; he said the buffaloes we far up the country, and that there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

The next morning, the 20th, we went ashore again: Dr Solander went up to the town to speak to Lange, and

er was a fiction
with a view to
and that by pre-
his man hoped
nel.

from our tra-
d been brought
d been taken a-
r money, could
en bought, and
e of the juice of
ly superior to
ice. We com-
ange, who had
if we had gone
have purchased
were afraid to
be counterfeit.
a against a man
lledged it, being
immediately to
to be seen, nor
while I was gone,
should succeed
ks that the na-
g offered them
as not offered,
did not think
rose up, and
satisfied with the
urse of the day,
ttle and sheep
, and had given
at more plausi-
e country, and
them down to

at ashore against
k to Lange, and
I re-

remained upon the beach, to see what could be done
the purchase of provisions. I found here an old In-
an, who, as he appeared to have some authority, we
ad among ourselves called the Prime Minister; to
ngage this man in our interest I presented him with a
pying-glass, but I saw nothing at market except one
small buffalo. I enquired the price of it, and was told
ve guineas: this was twice as much as it was worth;
however, I offered three, which I could perceive the man
who treated with me thought a good price; but he said
e must acquaint the King with what I had offered be-
ore he could take it. A messenger was immediately dis-
atched to his Majesty, who soon returned, and said,
at the buffalo would not be sold for any thing less than
ve guineas. This price I absolutely refused to give;
nd another messenger was sent away with an account
f my refusal: this messenger was longer absent than
he other, and while I was waiting for his return I saw,
o my great astonishment, Dr Solander coming from
he town, followed by above a hundred men, some
rmed with musquets and some with lances. When I
nquired the meaning of this hostile appearance, the
Doctor told me, that Mr Lange had interpreted to him
a message from the King, purporting that the people
ould not trade with us, because we had refused to give
hem more than half the value of what they had to sell;
nd that we should not be permitted to trade upon any
rms longer than this day. Besides the officers who
ommanded the party, there came with it a man who
as born at Timor, of Portuguese parents, and who, as
re afterwards discovered, was a kind of colleague to
he Dutch factor; by this man what they pretended to
be the King's order was delivered to me, of the same
urport with that which Dr Solander had received from
Lange.

We were all clearly of opinion that this was a mere
trifling artifice of the factors to extort money from us, for which
we had been prepared by the account of a letter from

Concor-

Concordia ; and while we were hesitating what step to take, the Portuguese, that he might the sooner accomplish his purpose, began to drive away the people who had brought down poultry and syrup, and others that were now coming in with buffaloes and sheep. At this time, I glanced my eye upon the old man whom I had complimented in the morning with the spying glass, and I thought, by his looks, that he did not heartily approve of what was doing ; I therefore took him by the hand, and presented him with an old broad sword. This instantly turned the scale in our favour ; he received the sword with a transport of joy, and flourishing it over the busy Portuguese, who crouched like a fox to a lion, made him, and the officer who commanded the party, sit down upon the ground behind him : the people, who, whatever were the crafty pretences of these iniquitous factors for a Dutch company, were eager to supply us with whatever we wanted, and seemed also to be more desirous of goods than money, instantly improved the advantage that had been procured them, and the market was stocked almost in an instant. To establish a trade for buffaloes, however, which I most wanted, I found it necessary to give ten guineas for two, one of which weighed no more than a hundred and sixty pounds ; but I bought seven more much cheaper, and might afterwards have purchased as many as I pleased almost upon my own terms, for they were now driven down to the water-side in herds. In the first two that I bought so dear, Lange had certainly a share, and it was in hopes to obtain part of the price of others, that he had pretended we must pay for them in gold. The natives however sold what they afterwards brought down much to their satisfaction, without paying part of the price to him as a reward for exacting money from us. Most of the buffaloes that we bought, after our friend, the Prime Minister, had procured us a fair market, were sold for a musquet apiece, and at this price we might have bought as many as would have loaded our ship.

The

TH
of ni
fowl
of eg
little
syrup

A part
and

THE
dle of
gitude
known
clearly
one, in
Sandel
name of
which
island,
the islar
in a rea
eight le
breadth.
The har
district i
island,
wind, b
bold, tha
anchor ;
west side

Vol. I.

The refreshments which we procured here, consisted of nine buffaloes, six sheep, three hogs, thirty dozen of fowls, a few limes, and some cocoa-nuts; many dozen of eggs, half of which however proved to be rotten; a little garlic, and several hundred gallons of palm-syrup.

A particular Description of the Island of Savu, its Produce and Inhabitants, with a Specimen of their Language.

THIS island is called by the natives SAVU; the middle of it lies in about the latitude 10 d. 35 m. S. longitude 237 d. 30 m. W. and has in general been so little known that I never saw a map or chart in which it is clearly or accurately laid down. I have seen a very old one, in which it is called Sou, and confounded with Sandel Bosch. Rumpius mentions an island by the name of Saow; and he also says that it is the same which the Dutch call Sandel Bosch: but neither is this island, nor Timor, nor Rotte, nor indeed any one of the islands that we have seen in these seas, placed within a reasonable distance of its true situation. It is about eight leagues long from east to west; but what is its breadth, I do not know, as I saw only the north side. The harbour in which we lay is called Seba, from the district in which lies: it is on the north west side of the island, and well sheltered from the south-west trade wind, but it lies open to the north-west. We were told, that there were two other bays where ships might anchor; that the best, called Timo, was on the south-west side of the south-east point: of the third we learnt

neither the name nor situation. The sea coast, in general, is low; but in the middle of the island there are hills of a considerable height. We were upon the coast at the latter end of the dry season, when there had been no rain for seven months; and we were told that when the dry season continues so long, there is no running stream of fresh water upon the whole island, but only small springs, which are at a considerable distance from the sea-side: yet nothing can be imagined so beautiful as the prospect of the country from the ship. The level ground next to the sea-side was covered with cocoa-nut trees, and a kind of palm called *Areca*; and beyond them the hills, which rose in a gentle and regular ascent, were richly clothed, quite to the summit, with plantations of the fan-palm, forming an almost impenetrable grove. How much even this prospect must be improved, when every foot of ground between the trees is covered with verdure, by maize, and millet and indico, can scarcely be conceived but by a powerful imagination, not unacquainted with the stateliness and beauty of the trees that adorn this part of the earth. The dry season commences in March or April, and ends in October or November.

The principal trees of this island, are the fan-palm, the cocoa-nut, tamarind, limes, oranges, and mangoes; the other vegetable productions are maize, Guinea corn, rice, millet, callevances, and water-melons. We saw also one sugar-cane, and a few kinds of European garden stuff; particularly cellery, marjoram, fennel, and garlic. For the supply of luxury, it has betele, areca; tobacco, cotton, indico, and a small quantity of cinnamon, which seems to be planted here only for curiosity; and, indeed, we doubted whether it was the genuine plant, knowing that the Dutch are very careful not to trust the spices out of their proper islands. There are, however, several kinds of fruit, besides those which have been already mentioned; particularly the sweet sop, which is well known to the West Indians, and a small oval fruit, called the *Blimbi*, both of which grow upon trees.

tre
an
ing
ski
see
ligh
it is
a m
T
fow
thel
con
part
alm
othe
have
a we
muc
meal
half,
an h
front
be o
not v
in E
dred
fifty
bone
an o
litera
is we
flesh
this f
Th
thou
espec
inhab
with
the k

trees. The blimbi is about three or four inches long, and in the middle about as thick as a man's finger, tapering towards each end: it is covered with a very thin skin of a light green colour, and in the inside are a few seeds disposed in the form of a star: its flavour is a light, clean, pleasant acid, but it cannot be eaten raw; it is said to be excellent as a pickle; and stewed, it made a most agreeable sour sauce to our boiled dishes.

The tame animals are buffaloes, sheep, goats, hogs, fowls, pigeons, horses, asses, dogs and cats; and of all these there is great plenty. The buffaloes differ very considerably from the horned cattle of Europe in several particulars; their ears are much larger, their skins are almost without hair, their horns are curved towards each other, but together bend directly backwards, and they have no dewlaps. We saw several that were as big as a well grown European ox, and there must be some much larger; for Mr Banks saw a pair of horns which measured from tip to tip three feet nine inches and an half, across their widest diameter four feet one inch and an half, and in the whole sweep of their semicircle in front seven feet six inches and a half. It must however be observed, that a buffalo here of any given size, does not weigh about half as much as an ox of the same size in England; those that we guessed to weigh four hundred weight did not weigh more than two hundred and fifty; the reason is, that so late in the dry season the bones are very thinly covered with flesh: there is not an ounce of fat in a whole carcass, and the flanks are literally nothing but skin and bone; the flesh however is well tasted and juicy, and I suppose better than the flesh of an English ox would be if he was to starve in this sun-burnt country.

The horses are from eleven to twelve hands high, but though they are small, they are spirited and nimble, especially in pacing, which is their common step: the inhabitants generally ride them without a saddle, and with no better bridle than a halter. The sheep are of the kind which in England are called Bengal sheep, and differ

differ from ours in many particulars. They are covered with hair instead of wool, their ears are very large, and hang down under their horns, and their noses are arched; they are thought to have a general resemblance to a goat, and for that reason are frequently called *cabritos*: their flesh we thought the worst mutton we had ever eaten, being as lean as that of the buffalo's, and without flavour. The hogs, however, were some of the fattest we had ever seen, though as we were told, their principal food is the outside husks of rice, and the palm syrup dissolved in water. The fowls are chiefly of the game breed, and large, but the eggs are remarkably small.

Of the fish which the sea produces here, we know but little: turtles were sometimes found upon the coast, and are by these people, as well as all others, considered as a dainty.

The people are rather under, than over the middling size; the women especially are remarkably short and squat built: their complexion is a dark brown, and their hair universally black and lank. We saw no difference in the colour of rich and poor, though in the South Sea Islands those that were exposed to the weather were almost as brown as the New Hollanders, and the better sort nearly as fair as the natives of Europe. The men are in general well-made, vigorous, and active, and have a greater variety in the make and disposition of their features than usual; the countenances of the women, on the contrary, are all alike.

The men fasten their hair up to the top of their heads with a comb, the women tie it behind in a club, which is very far from becoming. Both sexes eradicate the hair from under the arm, and the men do the same by their beards, for which purpose, the better sort always carry a pair of silver pincers hanging by a string round their necks; some however suffer a very little hair to remain upon their upper lips, but this is always kept short.

The dress of both sexes consists of cotton cloth, which being dyed blue in the yarn, and not uniformly of the same shade, is in clouds or waves of that colour, and even
in

are covered
ery large, and
oses are arch-
emblance to a
alled *cabritos* :
we had ever
, and without
of the fattest
their princi-
e palm syrup
of the game
oly small.
re, we know
oon the coast,
rs, considered

the middling
ly short and
wn, and their
no difference
he South Sea
ther were al-
nd the better
. The men
ve, and have
ion of their
e women, on

f their heads
club, which
cate the hair
ine by their
ways carry a
round their
r to remain
t short.

loth, which
rmly of the
r, and even
in

n our eye had not an inelegant appearance. This cloth
they manufacture themselves, and two pieces, each
about two yards long, and a yard and a half wide, make
a dress : one of them is worn round the middle, and the
other covers the other part of the body : the lower edge
of the piece that goes round the middle, the men draw
pretty tight just below the fork, the upper edge of it is
left loose, so as to form a kind of hollow belt, which
serves them as a pocket to carry their knives, and other
little implements which it is convenient to have about
them. The other piece of cloth is passed through this
girdle behind, and one end of it being brought over the
left shoulder, and the other over the right, they fall
down over the breast, and are tucked into the girdle
before, so that by opening or closing the plaits, they
can cover more or less of their bodies as they please ;
the arms, legs, and feet are always naked. The differ-
ence between the dress of the two sexes consists princi-
pally in the manner of wearing the waist-piece, for the
women, instead of drawing the lower edge tight, and
leaving the upper edge loose for a pocket, draw the
upper edge tight, and let the lower edge fall as low as
the knees, so as to form a petticoat ; the body-piece, in-
stead of being passed through the girdle, is fastened
under the arms, and cross the breast, with the utmost
economy. I have already observed, that the men fasten
the hair upon the top of the head, and the women tie
it in a club behind, but there is another difference in the
head-dress, by which the sexes are distinguished : the
women wear nothing as a succedaneum for a cap, but
the men constantly wrap something round their heads
in the manner of a fillet ; it is small, but generally of
the finest materials that can be procured : we saw some
who applied silk handkerchiefs to this purpose, and
others that wore fine cotton, or muslin, in the manner
of a small turban.

These people bore their testimony that the love of
finery is a universal passion, for their ornaments were
very numerous. Some of the better sort wore chains of
gold

gold round their necks, but they were made of plaited wire, and consequently were light and of little value; others had rings, which were so much worn that they seemed to have descended through many generations; and one person had a silver headed cane, marked with a kind of cypher, consisting of the Roman letters V, O, C, and therefore probably a present from the Dutch East India Company, whose mark it is: they have also ornaments made of beads, which some wear round their necks as a solitaire, and others, as bracelets, upon their wrists: these are common to both sexes, but the women have besides, strings or girdles of beads, which they wear round their waists, and which serve to keep up their petticoat. Both sexes had their ears bored, nor was there a single exception that fell under our notice, yet we never saw an ornament in any of them; we never indeed saw either man or woman in any thing but what appeared to be their ordinary dress, except the King and his minister, who in general wore a kind of night-gown of coarse chintz, and one of whom once received us in a black robe, which appeared to be made of what is called prince's stuff. We saw some boys, about twelve or fourteen years old, who had spiral circles of thick brass wire passed three or four times round their arms, above the elbow, and some men wore rings of ivory, two inches in breadth, and above an inch in thickness, upon the same part of the arm: these, we were told, were the sons of the Rajas, or Chiefs, who wore these cumbrous ornaments as badges of their high birth.

Almost all the men had their names traced upon their arms, in indelible characters of a black colour, and the women had a square ornament of flourished lines, impressed in the same manner, just under the bend of the elbow. We were struck with the similitude between these marks, and those made by tattowing in the South Sea islands, and upon enquiring into its origin, we learnt that it had been practised by the natives long before any Europeans came among them; and that in the

neigh

neigh
circ
of th
of th
to th
diffe
that
tain,
T
and
rank
dred
they
high
upon
to th
floor
place
ping
of ou
with
and o
ly div
dle pa
reach
small
the re
to ad
these

* In
bit the
Mexico
" The
have im
this ma
water,
traced
draw th
figure

neighbouring islands the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breasts. The universality of this practice, which prevails among savages in all parts of the world, from the remotest limits of North America, to the islands in the South Seas, and which probably differs but little from the method of staining the body that was in use among the ancient inhabitants of Britain, is a curious subject of speculation.*

The houses of Savu are all built upon the same plan, and differ only in size, being large in proportion to the rank and riches of the proprietor. Some are four hundred feet long, and some are not more than twenty: they are all raised upon posts, or piles, about four feet high, one end of which is driven into the ground, and upon the other end is laid a substantial floor of wood, so that there is a vacant space of four feet between the floor of the house and the ground. Upon this floor are placed other posts or pillars, that support a roof of sloping sides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like those of our barns: the eaves of this roof, which is thatched with palm leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and over-hang it as much: the space within is generally divided lengthwise into three equal parts; the middle-part, or centre, is inclosed by a partition of four sides, reaching about six feet above the floor, and one or two small rooms are also sometimes taken off from the sides, the rest of the space under the roof is open, so as freely to admit the air and the light: the particular uses of these different apartments, our short stay would not permit

* In the account which Mr Bossu has given of some Indians who inhabit the banks of the Akanza, a river of North America, which rises in New Mexico, and falls into the Mississippi, he relates the following incident: "The Akanzas, says he, have adopted me, and as a mark of my privilege, have imprinted a figure of a roe-buck upon my thigh, which was done in this manner: an Indian having burnt some straw, diluted the ashes with water, and with this mixture, drew the figure upon my skin; he then retraced it by pricking the lines with needles, so as at every puncture just to draw the blood, and the blood mixing with the ashes of the straw, forms a figure which can never be effaced."

mit us to learn, except that the close room in the centre was appropriated to the women.

The food of these people consists of every tame animal in the country, of which the hog holds the first place in their estimation, and the horse the second; next to the horse is the buffalo, next to the buffalo their poultry, and they prefer dogs and cats to sheep and goats. They are not fond of fish, and, I believe, it is never eaten but by the poor people, nor by them, except when their duty or business requires them to be upon the beach, and then every man is furnished with a light casting net, which is girt round him, and makes part of his dress; and with this he takes any small fish which happen to come in his way.

The excellent vegetables and fruits have been mentioned already, but the fan-palm requires more particular notice, for at certain times it is a succedaneum for all other food both to man and beast. A kind of wine, called toddy, is procured from this tree, by cutting the buds which are to produce flowers, soon after their appearance, and tying under them small baskets, made of the leaves, which are so close as to hold liquids without leaking. The juice which trickles into these vessels, is collected by persons who climb the trees for that purpose, morning and evening, and is the common drink of every individual upon the island; yet a much greater quantity is drawn off than is consumed in this use, and of the surplus they make both a syrup and coarse sugar. The liquor is called *dua*, or *duac*, and both the syrup and sugar, *gula*. The syrup is prepared by boiling the liquor down in pots of earthen ware, till it is sufficiently inspissated; it is not unlike treacle in appearance, but is somewhat thicker, and has a much more agreeable taste: the sugar is of a reddish brown, perhaps the same with the Jugata sugar upon the continent of India, and it was more agreeable to our palates than any cane sugar, unrefined, that we had ever tasted. We were at first afraid that the syrup, of which some of our
people

people eat very great quantities, would have brought on fluxes, but its aperient quality was so very slight, that what effect it produced was rather salutary than hurtful. I have already observed, that it is given with the husks of rice to the hogs, and that they grow enormously fat without taking any other food: we were told also, that this syrur is used to fatten their dogs and their fowls, and that the inhabitants themselves have subsisted upon this alone for several months, when other crops have failed, and animal food has been scarce. The leaves of this tree are also put to various uses, they thatch houses, and make baskets, cups, umbrellas, and tobacco-pipes. The fruit is least esteemed, and as the blossoms are wounded for the tuac or toddy, there is not much of it: it is about as big as a large turnip, and covered, like the cocoa-nut, with a fibrous coat, under which are three kernels, that must be eaten before they are ripe, for afterwards they become so hard that they cannot be chewed; in their eatable state they taste not unlike a green cocoa-nut, and, like them, probably they yield a nutriment that is watery and unsubstantial.

The common method of dressing food here is by boiling, and as fire wood is very scarce, and the inhabitants have no other fuel, they make use of a contrivance to save it, that is not wholly unknown in Europe, but is seldom practised except in camps. They dig a hollow under ground, in a horizontal direction, like a rabbit burrow, about two yards long, and opening into a hole at each end, one of which is large and the other small: by the large hole the fire is put in, and the small one serves for a draught. The earth over this burrow is perforated by circular holes, which communicate with the cavity below; and in these holes are set earthen pots, generally about three to each fire, which are large in the middle, and taper towards the bottom, so that the fire acts upon a large part of their surface. Each of these pots generally contains about eight or ten gallons, and it is surprising to see with how small a quantity of

fire they may be kept boiling; a palm leaf, or a dry stalk thrust in now and then is sufficient: in this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their fyrtyng and sugar. It appears by Frazier's account of his voyage to the South Sea, that the Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the same kind, and perhaps it might be adopted with advantage by the poor people even of this country, where fuel is very dear. Both sexes are enslaved by the hateful and pernicious habit of chewing beetle and areca, which they contract even while they are children, and practise incessantly from morning till night. With these they always mix a kind of white lime made of coral stone and shells, and frequently a small quantity of tobacco, so that their mouths are disgusting in the highest degree both to the smell and the sight: the tobacco taints their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth not only as black as charcoal, but as rotten too. I have seen men between twenty and thirty, whose teeth have been consumed almost down to the gums, though no two of them were exactly of the same length or thickness, but irregularly corroded like iron by rust. This loss of teeth is, I think, by all who have written upon the subject, imputed to the tough and stringy coat of the areca nut; but I impute it wholly to the lime: they are not loosened, or broken, or forced out, as might be expected if they were injured by the continual chewing of hard and rough substances, but they are gradually wasted like metals that are exposed to the action of powerful acids; the stumps always adhering firmly to the socket in the jaw, when there is no part of the tooth above the gums: and possibly those who suppose that sugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans; may not be mistaken, for it is well known that refined loaf sugar contains a considerable quantity of lime; and he that doubts whether lime will destroy bone of any kind, may easily ascertain the fact by experiment.

If the people here are at any time without this odious mouthful, they are smoking. This operation they perform

form
ting
as t
leaf.
final
won
W
a civ
is d
SEB
whic
Raja
seem
para
spee
the f
pear
direc
pres
mark
facto
DJA
was
notw
ter o
palit
sett
appe
liber
W
who
ties
strie
othe
tion
agai
illar
figh
targ

form by rolling up a small quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube about six inches long, and as thick as a goose quill, which they make of a palm leaf. As the quantity of tobacco in these pipes is very small, the effect of it is increased, especially among the women by swallowing the smoke.

When the natives of this island were first formed into a civil society, is not certainly known, but at present it is divided into five principalities or nigrees: LAAI, SEBA, REGEEUA, TIMO, and MASSARA, each of which is governed by its respective Raja or King. The Raja of Seba, the principality in which we were ashore, seemed to have great authority, without much external parade or show, or much appearance of personal respect. He was about five and thirty years of age, and the fattest man we saw upon the whole island: he appeared to be of a dull phlegmatic disposition, and to be directed almost implicitly by the old man who, upon my presenting him with a sword, had procured us a fair market, in spite of the craft and avarice of the Dutch factors. The name of this person was MANNU DJARME, and it may reasonably be supposed that he was a man of uncommon integrity and abilities, as, notwithstanding his possession of power in the character of a favourite, he was beloved by the whole principality. If any difference arises among the people, it is settled by the Raja and his counsellors, without delay or appeal, and, as we were told, with the most solemn deliberation and impartial justice.

We were informed by Mr Lange, that the chiefs who had successively presided over the five principalities of this island, had lived for time immemorial in the strictest alliance and most cordial friendship with each other; yet he said the people were of a warlike disposition, and had always courageously defended themselves against foreign invaders. We were told also, that the island was able to raise, upon very short notice, 7300 fighting men, armed with muskets, spears, lances, and targets. Of this force, Laai was said to furnish 2600,
 4 G 2
 Seba

Seba 2000, Regeewa 1500, Timo 800, and Massara 400. Besides the arms that have been already mentioned, each man is furnished with a large pole-ax, resembling a wood-bill, except that it has a strait edge, and is much heavier: this, in the hands of people who have courage to come to close quarters with an enemy, must be a dreadful weapon; and we were told that they were so dexterous with their lances, that at the distance of sixty feet they would throw them with such exactness as to pierce a man's heart, and such force as to go quite through his body.

How far this account of the martial prowess of the inhabitants of Savu may be true, we cannot take upon us to determine, but during our stay, we saw no appearance of it. We saw indeed in the town-house, or house of assembly, about one hundred spears and targets, which served to arm the people who were sent down to intimidate us at the trading place; but they seemed to be the refuse of old armories, no two being of the same make or length, for some were six, and some sixteen feet long: we saw no lance among them, and as to the musquets, though they were clean on the outside, they were eaten into holes by the rust within; and the people themselves appeared to be so little acquainted with military discipline, that they marched like a disorderly rabble, every one having, instead of his target, a cock, some tobacco, or other merchandise of the like kind, which he took that opportunity to bring down to sell, and few or none of their cartridge boxes were furnished with either powder or ball, though a piece of paper was thrust into the hole to save appearances. We saw a few swivel guns, and pateraros at the town-house, and a great gun before it; but the swivels and pateraros lay out of their carriages, and the great gun lay upon a heap of stones almost consumed with rust, with the touch-hole downwards, possibly to conceal its size, which might perhaps be little less than that of the bore.

We could not discover that among these people there was any rank of distinction between the Raja and the land-

land-ow
portion
manufa
like the
with th
the land
over his
privity
a hundred
common
man go
of them
hilt of w
large ta
which co
attendan
himself

The c
that of
ancestors
to be ca
even a
generatio
either of
which h
smooth:
possessed
houses, v

Every
vince, or
rial of hi
we lay,
fragment
times, a
ments fee
here is
reigns in
years.

land-owners: the land-owners were respectable in proportion to their possessions; the inferior ranks consist of manufacturers, labouring poor, and slaves. The slaves, like the peasants in some parts of Europe, are connected with the estate, and both descend together: but though the land-owner can sell his slave, he has no other power over his person, not even to correct him, without the privity and approbation of the Raja. Some have five hundred of these slaves, and some not half a dozen: the common price of them is a fat hog. When a great man goes out, he is constantly attended by two or more of them: one of them carries a sword or hanger, the hilt of which is commonly of silver, and adorned with large tassels of horse hair; and another carries a bag which contains beetle, areca, lime, and tobacco. In these attendants consists all their magnificence, for the Raja himself has no other mark of distinction.

The chief object of pride among these people, like that of a Welchman, is a long pedigree of respectable ancestors, and indeed a veneration for antiquity seems to be carried farther here than in any other country: even a house that has been well inhabited for many generations, becomes almost sacred, and few articles either of use or luxury bear so high a price as stones, which having been long sat upon, are become even and smooth: those who can purchase such stones, or are possessed of them by inheritance, place them round their houses, where they serve as seats for their dependants.

Every Raja sets up in the principal town of his province, or nigree, a large stone, which serves as a memorial of his reign. In the principal town of Seba, where we lay, there are thirteen such stones, besides many fragments of others, which had been set up in earlier times, and are now mouldering away: these monuments seem to prove that some kind of civil establishment here is of considerable antiquity. The last thirteen reigns in England make something more than 276 years.

Many

Many of these stones are so large, that is difficult to conceive by what means they were brought to their present station, especially as it is the summit of a hill; but the world is full of memorials of human strength, in which the mechanical powers that have been since added by mathematical science, seem to be surpassed; and of such monuments there are not a few among the remains of barbarous antiquity in our own country, besides those upon Salisbury plain.

These stones not only record the reigns of successive princes, but serve for a purpose much more extraordinary, and probably altogether peculiar to this country. When a Raja dies, a general feast is proclaimed throughout his dominions, and all his subjects assemble round these stones; almost every living creature that can be caught is then killed, and the feast lasts for a less or greater number of weeks or months, as the kingdom happens to be more or less furnished with live stock at the time; the stones serve for tables. When this madness is over, a fast must necessarily ensue, and the whole kingdom is obliged to subsist upon syrup and water, if it happens in the dry season, when no vegetables can be procured, till a new stock of animals can be raised from the few that have escaped by chance, or been preserved by policy from the general massacre, or can be procured from the neighbouring kingdoms. Such, however, is the account that we received from Mr Lange.

We had no opportunity to examine any of their manufactures, except that of their cloth, which they spin, weave, and dye; we did not indeed see them employed, but many of their instruments which they use fell in our way. We saw their machine for clearing cotton of its seeds, which is made upon the same principles as those in Europe, but is so small that it might be taken for a model, or a toy: it consists of two cylinders, like our round rulers, somewhat less than an inch in diameter, one of which, being turned round by a plain winch, turns the other by means of an endless worm; and the whole machine is not more than fourteen inches long,

long, and
much u
about it.
fair spec

We al
consisted
quantity
ton; we
as the wo
of wheel
their way
be in one
not stretc
wood at
rolled, an
about half
was equal
their work
cloth we
digo which
jecture w
count. I
yarn, and
girdles for
drug we d

The reli
informatio
chusing hi
he should
many gods
morals, ho
upon the
ed more t
tween the
instances o
revenging
difference a
as make it
provoked t

long, and seven high: that which we saw had been much used, and many pieces of cotton were hanging about it; so that there is no reason to doubt its being a fair specimen of the rest.

We also once saw their apparatus for spinning; it consisted of a bobbin, on which was wound a small quantity of thread, and a kind of distaff filled with cotton; we conjectured therefore that they spin by hand, as the women of England did before the introduction of wheels; and I am told that they have not yet found their way into some parts of it. Their loom seemed to be in one respect preferable to ours, for the web was not stretched upon a frame, but extended by a piece of wood at each end, round one of which the cloth was rolled, and round the other the threads: the web was about half a yard broad, and the length of the shuttle was equal to the breadth of the web, so that probably their work goes on but slowly. That they dyed this cloth we first guessed from its colour, and from the indigo which we saw in their plantations; and our conjecture was afterwards confirmed by Mr Lange's account. I have already observed that it is dyed in the yarn, and we once saw them dying what was said to be girdles for the women, of a dirty red, but with what drug we did not think it worth while to enquire.

The religion of these people, according to Mr Lange's information, is an absurd kind of paganism, every man choosing his own god, and determining for himself how he should be worshipped; so that there are almost as many gods and modes of worship as people. In their morals, however, they are said to be irreproachable, even upon the principles of Christianity: no man is allowed more than one wife; yet an illicit commerce between the sexes is in a manner unknown among them: instances of theft are very rare; and they are so far from revenging a supposed injury by murder, that, if any difference arises between them, they will not so much as make it the subject of debate, lest they should be provoked to resentment and ill-will, but immediately and

and implicitly refer it to the determination of the King.

They appeared to be a healthy and long-lived people, yet some of them were marked with the small-pox, which Mr Lange told us had several times made its appearance among them, and was treated with the same precautions as the plague. As soon as a person was seized with the distemper, he was removed to some solitary place, very remote from any habitation, where the disease was left to take its course, and the patient supplied with daily food by reaching it to him at the end of a long pole.

Of their domestic oeconomy we could learn but little in one instance however their delicacy and cleanliness are very remarkable. Many of us were ashore but three successive days, from a very early hour in the morning till it was dark; yet we never saw the least trace of an offering to Cloacina, nor could we so much as guess where they were made. In a country so populous this is very difficult to be accounted for, and perhaps there is no country in the world where the secret is so effectually kept.

The boats in use here are a kind of proa.

This island was settled by the Portuguese almost as soon as they first found their way into this part of the ocean; but they were in a short time supplanted by the Dutch. The Dutch, however, did not take possession of it, but only sent sloops to trade with the natives, probably for provisions to support the inhabitants of the spice islands, who applying themselves wholly to the cultivation of that important article of trade, and laying out all their ground in plantations, can breed few animals: possibly their supplies by this occasional traffic were precarious; possibly they were jealous of being supplanted in their turn; but however that their East India Company, about ten years ago, entered into a treaty with the Rajas, by which the company stipulated to furnish each of them with

cert

certain
nd o
hat n
ny p
obtain
reside
lland.
they a
of rice
vances
for tha
dians;
which
nately
livered
cask of
to drink
In c
person
native
ruges
woman
has onc
lland,
shorts t
been r
that he
immed
at Tim
him fo
in open
deal.
Dur
lland
except
ed abo
to be d
and hi
beetle,
Vol. I

ation of the
g-lived peop
the small-p
es made its
with the fa
a person w
ed to some
ion, where
he patient fr
him at the c

learn but lim
and cleanlin
re ashore le
y hour in
saw the le
d we so mu
untry so pop
for, and pe
here the sea

pa.
uefe almost
his part of
planted by
ke possession
e natives, pe
bitants of the
wholly to
de, and lav
an breed
his occasion
ere jealous
wever that
years ago, c
y which
them with
certa

certain quantity of silk, fine linen, cutlery ware, arrack, and other articles, every year; and the Rajas engaged that neither they nor their subjects should trade with any person except the company, without having first obtained their consent, and that they would admit a resident on behalf of the company, to reside upon the island, and see that their part of the treaty was fulfilled: they also engaged to supply annually a certain quantity of rice, maize, and calevances. The maize and calevances are sent to Timor in sloops, which are kept there for that purpose, each of which is navigated by ten Indians; and the rice is fetched away annually by a ship which brings the company's returns, and anchors alternately in each of the three bays. These returns are delivered to the Rajas in the form of a present; and the cask of arrack they and their principal people never cease to drink, as long as a drop of it remains.

In consequence of this treaty, the Dutch placed three persons upon the island: Mr Lange, his colleague, the native of Timor, the son of an Indian woman by a Portuguese, and one Frederick Craig, the son of an Indian woman by a Dutchman. Lange visits each of the Rajas once in two months, when he makes the tour of the island, attended by fifty slaves on horseback. He exhorts these Chiefs to plant, if it appears that they have been remiss, and observes where the crops are got in, that he may order sloops to fetch it; so that it passes immediately from the ground to the Dutch storehouses at Timor. In these excursions he always carries with him some bottles of arrack, which he finds of great use in opening the hearts of the Rajas with whom he is to deal.

During the ten years that he had resided upon this island he had never seen a European besides ourselves, except at the arrival of the Dutch ship, which had sailed about two months before we arrived: and he is now to be distinguished from the natives only by his colour and his dress, for he sits upon the ground, chews his beetle, and in every respect has adopted their charac-

ter and manners: he has married an Indian woman of the island of Timor, who keeps his house after the fashion of her country; and he gave that as a reason for not inviting us to visit him, saying, that he could entertain us in no other manner than the Indians had done, and he spoke no language readily but that of the country.

The office of Mr Frederick Craig is to instruct the youth of the country in reading and writing, and the principles of the Christian religion; the Dutch having printed versions of the New Testament, a catechism, and several other tracts, in the language of this and the neighbouring islands. Dr Solander, who was in his house, saw the books, and the copy-books also of his scholars, many of whom wrote a very fair hand. He boasted that there were no less than six hundred Christians in the township of Seba; but what the Dutch Christianity of these Indians may be, it is not, perhaps, very easy to guess, for there is not a church, nor even a priest, in the whole island.

While we were at this place, we made several enquiries concerning the neighbouring islands, and the intelligence which we received, is to the following effect:

A small island to the westward of Savu, the name of which we did not learn, produces nothing of any consequence but areca-nuts, of which the Dutch receive annually the freight of two sloops, in return for presents that they make to the islanders.

Timor is the chief, and the Dutch residents on the other islands go thither once a year to pass their accounts. The place is nearly in the same state as in Dampier's time, the Dutch having there a fort and storehouses; and, by Lange's account, we might there have been supplied with every necessary that we expected to procure at Batavia, salt provisions and arrack not excepted. But the Portuguese are still in possession of several towns on the north side of the island, particularly Laphao and Sefial.

About

Ab
was v
she ha
broke
the gr
mong
of thei
the roa
compa
of abo
plied v
with p
fished
which
were v
their co
missing
the Ind
very de
struct t
two mo
ed near
fatigue
shipwre
to Euro
Rotte
Dutch f
look' af
articles,
ing the
same m
lately be
The thr
the infl
they are
every ki
harbour
westwar
tuguese,

About two years before our arrival, a French ship was wrecked upon the east coast of Timor; and after she had lain some days upon the shoal, a sudden gale broke her up at once, and drowned the Captain, with the greatest part of the crew: those who got ashore, among whom was one of the Lieutenants, made the best of their way to Concordia; they were four days upon the road, where they were obliged to leave part of their company through fatigue, and the rest, to the number of about eighty, arrived at the town. They were supplied with every necessary and sent back to the wreck, with proper assistance, for recovering what could be fished up: they fortunately got up all their bullion, which was in chests, and several of their guns, which were very large. They then returned to the town, but their companions who had been left upon the road were missing, having, as it was supposed, been kept among the Indians, either by persuasion or force; for they are very desirous of having Europeans among them, to instruct them in the art of war. After a stay of more than two months at Concordia, their number was diminished nearly one half by sickness, in consequence of the fatigue and hardship which they had suffered by the shipwreck, and the survivors were sent in a small vessel to Europe.

Rotte is in much the same situation as Savu; a Dutch factor resides upon it to manage the natives, and look after its produce, which consists, among other articles, of sugar. Formerly it was made only by bruising the canes, and boiling the juice to a syrup, in the same manner as toddy; but great improvements have lately been made in preparing this valuable commodity. The three little islands called the Solars are also under the influence of the Dutch settlement at Concordia: they are flat and low, but abound with provisions of every kind, and the middlemost is said to have a good harbour for shipping. Ende, another little island to the westward of the Solars, is still in the hands of the Portuguese, who have a good town and harbour on the

north east corner of it, but that, being much inferior to Larntuca, has for some time been altogether neglected.

The inhabitants of each of these little islands speak a language peculiar to themselves, and it is an object of Dutch policy to prevent, as much as possible, their learning the language of each other. If they spoke a common language, they would learn, by a mutual intercourse with each other, to plant such things as would be of more value to themselves than their present produce, though of less advantage to the Dutch; but their languages being different, they can communicate no such knowledge to each other, and the Dutch secure to themselves the benefit of supplying their several necessities upon their own terms, which it is reasonable to suppose are not very moderate. It is probably with a view to this advantage that the Dutch never teach their own language to the natives of these islands, and have been at the expence of translating the Testament and catechisms into the different languages of each; for in proportion as Dutch had become the language of their religion, it would have become the common language of them all.

To this account of Savu, I shall only add a small specimen of its language, by which it will appear to have some affinity with that of the South Sea islands, many of the words being exactly the same, and the numbers manifestly derived from the same source.

ENGLISH.	SAVU.	ENGLISH.	SAVU.
<i>A man</i>	Momonne	<i>The ears</i>	Wodecloo
<i>A woman</i>	Mobunnee	<i>The tongue</i>	Vaio
<i>The head</i>	Catoo	<i>The neck</i>	Lacoco
<i>The hair</i>	Row catoo	<i>The breasts</i>	Soofoo
<i>The eyes</i>	Matta	<i>The nipples</i>	Caboo soofoo
<i>The eye-lashes</i>	Rowna matta	<i>The belly</i>	Dulloco
<i>The nose</i>	Swanga	<i>The navel</i>	Afoo
<i>The cheeks</i>	Cavaranga	<i>The thighs</i>	Tooga

ENG

ENGLISH

*The knees**The legs**The feet**The toes**The arms**The hand**A buffalo**A horse**A hog**A sheep**A goat**A dog**A cat**A fowl**The tail**The beak**A fish**A turtle**A cocoa-nut**Fan-palm**Areca**Beetle**Lime**A fish-hook**Tattoo the**on the sh*

In the
member
ties, and
opportu
upon th
alone th

ENGLISH.	SAVU.	ENGLISH.	SAVU.
<i>The knees</i>	Rootoo	<i>The Sun</i>	Lodo
<i>The legs</i>	Baibo	<i>The moon</i>	Wurroo
<i>The feet</i>	Dunceala	<i>The sea</i>	Aidafsee
<i>The toes</i>	Kisfovei yilla	<i>Water</i>	Ailea
<i>The arms</i>	Camacoo	<i>Fire</i>	Aec
<i>The hand</i>	Wulaba	<i>To die</i>	Maate
<i>A buffalo</i>	Cabaou	<i>To sleep</i>	Tabudge
<i>A horse</i>	Djara	<i>To rise</i>	Tatectoo
<i>A hog</i>	Vavee	<i>One</i>	Uffe
<i>A sheep</i>	Doomba	<i>Two</i>	Lhua
<i>A goat</i>	Kefavoo	<i>Three</i>	Tullu
<i>A dog</i>	Guaca	<i>Four</i>	Uppah
<i>A cat</i>	Maio	<i>Five</i>	Lumme
<i>A fowl</i>	Mannu	<i>Six</i>	Unna
<i>The tail</i>	Carow	<i>Seven</i>	Pedu
<i>The beak</i>	Pangoutoo	<i>Eight</i>	Arru
<i>A fish</i>	Ica	<i>Nine</i>	Saou
<i>A turtle</i>	Unjoo	<i>Ten</i>	Singooroo
<i>A cocoa-nut</i>	Nieu	<i>Eleven</i>	Singurung uffe
<i>Fan-palm</i>	Boacerce	20	Lhuangooroo
<i>Areca</i>	Calcella	100	Sing assu
<i>Beetle</i>	Canana	1000	Setuppah
<i>Lime</i>	Aou	10,000	Selacuffa
<i>A fish-hook</i>	Maanadon	100,000	Serata
<i>Tattoo the marks on the skin</i>	} Tata	1,000,000	Sereboo

In the account of the island of Savu it must be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr Lange, upon whose authority alone therefore it must rest.

The

The Run from the Island of Savu to Batavia, and an Account of the Transactions there while the Ship was resitting.

IN the morning of Friday the 21st of September, 1770, we got under sail, and stood away to the westward, along the north side of the island of Savu, and of the smaller that lies to the westward of it, which at noon bore S. S. E. distant two leagues. At four o'clock in the afternoon, we discovered a small low island, bearing S. S. W. distant three leagues, which has no place in any chart now extant, at least in none I have been able to procure: it lies in latitude 10 d. 47 m. S. longitude 238 d. 28 m. W.

At noon on the 22d, we were in latitude 11 d. 10 m. S. longitude 240 d. 38 m. W. In the evening of the 23d, we found the variation of the needle to be 2 d. 44 m. W. as soon as we got clear of the islands we had constantly a swell from the southward, which I imagined was not caused by a wind blowing from that quarter, but by the sea being so determined by the position of the coast of New Holland.

At noon on the 26th, being in latitude 10 d. 47 m. S. longitude 249 d. 52 m. W. we found the variation to be 3 d. 10 m. W. and our situation to be twenty-five miles to the northward of the log; for which I know not how to account. At noon on the 27th, our latitude, by observation, was 10 d. 51 m. S. which was agreeable to the log; and our longitude was 252 d. 11 m. W.

We steered N. W. all day on the 28th, in order to make the land of Java; and at noon on the 29th, our latitude, by observation, was 9 d. 31 m. S. longitude 254 d. 10 m. W. and in the morning of the 30th, I

took

took in
least all
seamen
where t
At se
Head,
were to
E. N. E
we had
o'clock,
ing east.
o'clock i
six, Java
E. distant
bearing E
ing N. E
and at noc
I must
I always a
current, w
especially
allowance
rent upon
At four
close in wi
then stood
sent the bo
fruit for Tu
the buffaloe
she returned
of plantains
and some h
only gave u
try looked
pleasant app
About ele
off Anger po
them to enq
had been abli

took into my possession the log-book and journals, at least all I could find, of the officers, petty officers, and seamen, and enjoined them secrecy with respect to where they had been.

At seven in the evening, being in the latitude of Java Head, and not seeing any land, I concluded that we were too far to the westward: I therefore hauled up E. N. E. having before steered N. by E. In the night, we had thunder and lightning; and about twelve o'clock, by the light of the flashes, we saw the land bearing east. I then tacked and stood to the S. W. till four o'clock in the morning of the 1st of October; and at six, Java Head, or the west end of Java, bore S. E. by E. distant five leagues: soon after we saw Prince's Island, bearing E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. and at ten, the island of Cracatoa, bearing N. E. Cracatoa is a remarkably high peaked island, and at noon it bore N. 40 E. distant seven leagues.

I must now observe that, during our run from Savu, I always allowed twenty minutes a-day for the westerly current, which I concluded must run strong at this time, especially off the coast of Java, and I found that this allowance was just equivalent to the effect of the current upon the ship.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 2d, we fetched close in with the coast of Java, in fifteen fathom; we then stood along the coast, and early in the forenoon, I sent the boat ashore to try if she could procure some fruit for Tupia, who was very ill, and some grass for the buffaloes that were still alive. In an hour or two she returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a small bunch of plantains, which had been purchased for a shilling, and some herbage for the cattle, which the Indians not only gave us, but assisted our people to cut. The country looked like one continued wood, and had a very pleasant appearance.

About eleven o'clock, we saw two Dutch ships lying off Anger point, and I sent Mr Hicks on board of one of them to enquire news of our country, from which we had been absent so long. In the mean time it fell calm, and

and about noon I anchored in eighteen fathom with a muddy bottom. When Mr Hicks returned, he reported that the ships were Dutch East Indiamen from Batavia, one of which was bound to Ceylon, and the other to the coast of Malabar; and that there was also a fly-boat or packet, which was said to be stationed here to carry letters from the Dutch ships that came hither to Batavia, but which I rather think was appointed to examine all ships that pass the freight: from these ships we heard, with great pleasure, that the Swallow had been at Batavia about two years before.

At seven o'clock a breeze sprung up at S. S. W. with which having weighed, we stood to the N. E. between Thwart-the-way-Island and the Cap, sounding from eighteen to twenty-eight fathom: we had but little wind all night, and having a strong current against us, we got no further by eight in the morning than Bantam Point. At this time the wind came to the N. E. and obliged us to anchor in two and twenty fathom, at about the distance of two miles from the shore; the point bore N. E. by E. distant one league, and here we found a strong current setting to the N. W. In the morning we had seen the Dutch packet standing after us, but when the wind shifted to the N. E. she bore away.

At six o'clock in the evening, the wind having obliged us to continue at anchor, one of the country boats came along side of us, on board of which was the Master of the packet. He seemed to have two motives for his visit, one to take an account of the ship, and the other to sell us refreshments; for in the boat were turtles, fowls, ducks, parrots, paroquets, rice-birds, monkeys, and other articles, which they held at a very high price, and brought to a bad market, for our Savu stock was not yet expended: however, I gave a Spanish dollar for a small turtle, which weighed about six and thirty pounds; I gave also a dollar for ten large fowls, and afterwards bought fifteen more at the same price; for a dollar we might also have bought two monkeys, or a whole

whol
broug
fired
name
place
the w
them
matio
and in
the C
the G
that i
guese,
which
having
Europ
satisfie
intend
should

Have
that w
an anc
of the
down
he had
Dutch
vernor
contai
lowing

" 1.
" 2.
" 3.
" 4.
" 5.
parture
" 6.
parted
Vol.

whole cage of rice-birds. The Master of the sloop brought with him two books, in one of which he desired that any of the officers would write down the name of the ship and its commander, with that of the place from which she sailed, and of the port to which she was bound, with such other particulars relating to themselves, as they might think proper, for the information of any of our friends that should come after us; and in the other he entered the names of the ship and the Commander, himself, in order to transmit them to the Governor and Council of the Indies. We perceived that in the first book many ships, particularly Portuguese, had made entries of the same kind with that for which it was presented to us. Mr Hicks, however, having written the name of the ship, only added "from Europe." He took notice of this, but said, that he was satisfied with any thing we thought fit to write, it being intended merely for the information of those who should enquire after us from motives of friendship.

Having made several attempts to sail with a wind that would not stem the current, and as often come to an anchor, a proa came alongside of us in the morning of the 5th, in which was a Dutch officer, who sent me down a printed paper in English, duplicates of which he had in other languages, particularly in French and Dutch, all regularly signed, in the name of the Governor and council of the Indies, by their secretary: it contained nine questions, very ill expressed, in the following terms.

- " 1. To what nation the ship belongs, and its name ?
- " 2. If it comes from Europe, or any other place ?
- " 3. From what place it lastly departed from ?
- " 4. Whereunto designed to go ?
- " 5. What and how many ships of the Dutch Company by departure from the last shore there layed, and their names ?
- " 6. If one or more of these ships in company with this, is departed for this or any other place ?

" 7. If during the voyage any particularities is happened or seen ?

" 8. If not any ships in sea, or the Streights of Sunda, have seen or hailed in, and which ?

" 9. If any other news worth of attention, at the place from whence the ship lastly departed, or during the voyage is happened.

" BATAVIA, in the Castle.

" By order of the Governor General, and the

" Counsellors of India,

" J. BRANDER BUNGL, Sec."

Of these questions I answered only the first and the fourth ; which when the officer saw, he said answers to the rest were of no consequence : yet he immediately added, that he must send that very paper away to Batavia, and that it would be there the next day at noon. I have particularly related this incident, because I have been credibly informed that it is but of late years that the Dutch have taken upon them to examine ships that pass through the Strait.

At ten o'clock the same morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at S. W. but did little more than stem the current, and about two o'clock anchored again under Bantam Point, where we lay till nine ; a light breeze then springing up at S. E. we weighed and stood to the eastward till ten o'clock the next morning, when the current obliged us again to anchor in twenty-two fathom, Pulababi bearing E. by S. $\frac{1}{4}$ S. distant between three and four miles.

Having alternately weighed and anchored several times, till four in the afternoon of the 7th, we then stood to the eastward, with a very faint breeze at N. E. and passed Wapping Island, and the first island to the eastward of it ; when the wind dying away, we were carried by the current between the first and second of the islands that lie to the eastward of Wapping Island, where

we

we w
near
island
the l
shoal
in tw
that a
find
bore
Mr
island
dred
a hou
other
castor
small
bat, v
from
exact
after t
with t
some
turtle,
six po
lately
only f
bargain
then t
was ve
said th
he rea
and g
Portu
us his
twent
not te
We
gettin
we w

we were obliged to anchor in thirty fathom, being very near a ledge of rocks that run out from one of the islands. At two the next morning we weighed with the land wind at south, and stood out clear of the shoal; but before noon were obliged to come to again in twenty-eight fathom, near a small island among those that are called the Thousand Islands, which we did not find laid down in any chart. Pulo Pare at this time bore E. N. E. distance between six and seven miles.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander went ashore upon the island, which they found not to be more than five hundred yards long, and one hundred broad; yet there was a house upon it, and a small plantation, where, among other things, was the *Palma Christi*, from which the castor oil is made in the West Indies: they made a small addition to their collection of plants, and shot a bat, whose wings when extended measured three feet from point to point: they shot also four plovers, which exactly resembled the golden plover of England. Soon after they returned, a small Indian boat came alongside with two Malays on board, who brought three turtles, some dried fish, and a few pumpkins: we bought the turtle, which altogether weighed a hundred and forty-six pounds, for a dollar, and, considering that we had lately paid the Dutchman a dollar for one that weighed only six and thirty pounds, we thought we had a good bargain. The seller appeared equally satisfied, and we then treated with him for his pumpkins, for which he was very unwilling to take any money but a dollar; we said that a whole dollar was greatly too much; to which he readily assented, but desired that we would cut one and give him a part: at last, however, a fine shining Portuguese petacka tempted him, and for that he sold us his whole stock of pumpkins, being in number twenty-six. At parting, he made signs that we should not tell at Batavia that any boat had been aboard us.

We were not able to weather Pulo Pare this day, but getting the land wind at south about ten o'clock at night, we weighed and stood to the E. S. E. all night. At ten

in the morning of the 9th, we anchored again, to wait for the sea breeze; and at noon it sprung up at N. N. E. with which we stood in for Batavia road, where, at four o'clock in the afternoon, we came to an anchor.

We found here the Harcourt Indiaman from England, two English private traders of that country, thirteen sail of large Dutch ships, and a considerable number of small vessels. A boat came immediately on board, from a ship which had a broad pendant flying, and the officer who commanded having enquired who we were, and whence we came, immediately returned with such answers as we thought fit to give him: both he and his people were as pale as spectres, a sad presage of our sufferings in so unhealthy a country; but our people, who, except Tupia, were all rosy and plump, seemed to think themselves so seasoned by various climates that nothing could hurt them. In the mean time, I sent a Lieutenant ashore to acquaint the Governor of our arrival, and to make an excuse for our not saluting; for as I could salute with only three guns, except the swivels, which I was of opinion would not be heard, I thought it was better to let it alone. As soon as the boat was dispatched the carpenter delivered me an account of the defects of the ship, of which the following is a copy:

*The defects of his Majesty's bark Endeavour, Lieutenant James Cook
commander.*

“ The ship very leaky, as she makes from twelve to six inches water an hour, occasioned by her main keel being wounded in many places, and the scarfs of her stern being very open: the false keel gone beyond the midships from forward, and perhaps farther, as I had no opportunity of seeing for the water when hauled ashore for repairing: wounded on the larboard side under the main channel, where I imagine the greatest leak is, but could not come at it for the water: one pump on the larboard side usefess; the others decayed within an inch and an half of the bore. Otherwise masts, yards, boats, and hull, in pretty good condition.”

As

As i
not safe
of her
her dow
be rece
up a req
lated int
We re
the only
place; he
us to din
tions how
saries wh
there was
ernment
obliged to
their good
the house
in a King
we pleased
which wou
would be c
and bring c
upon whom
out as this
s who coul
etermined
eds were i
ve should f
At five o'
the Govern
ally; he t
wanted, and
id before t
About nin
er, lightnin
one of th
ed away b
allant-mast

As it was the universal opinion that the ship could not safely proceed to Europe without an examination of her bottom, I determined to apply for leave to heave her down at this place; and as I understood that it would be necessary to make this application in writing, I drew up a request, and the next morning, having got it translated into Dutch, we all went ashore.

We repaired immediately to the house of Mr Leith, the only Englishman of any credit who is resident at this place; he received us with great politeness, and engaged us to dinner: to this gentleman we applied for instructions how to provide ourselves with lodgings and necessaries while we should stay ashore, and he told us, that there was a hotel, or kind of inn, kept by order of government, where all merchants and strangers were obliged to reside, paying half per cent. upon the value of their goods for warehouse room, which the master of the house was obliged to provide; but that as we came in a King's ship, we should be at liberty to live where we pleased, upon asking the Governor's permission, which would be granted of course. He said, that it would be cheaper for us to take a house in the town, and bring our own servants ashore, if we had any body upon whom we could depend to buy in our provisions; but as this was not the case, having no person among us who could speak the Malay language, our gentlemen determined to go to the hotel. At the hotel, therefore, beds were immediately hired, and word was sent that we should sleep there at night.

At five o'clock in the afternoon, I was introduced to the Governor General, who received me very courteously; he told me that I should have every thing I wanted, and that in the morning my request should be laid before the council, which I was desired to attend. About nine o'clock, we had a dreadful storm of thunder, lightning, and rain, during which the main-mast of one of the Dutch East Indiamen was split, and carried away by the deck; the main-top-mast and top-mast were shivered all to pieces; she had an iron spindle

spindle at the main-top-gallant-mast-head, which probably directed the stroke. This ship lay not more than the distance of two cables' length from ours, and in all probability we should have shared the same fate, but for the electrical chain which we had but just got up, and which conducted the lightning over the side of the ship; but though we escaped the lightning, the explosion shook us like an earthquake, the chain at the same time appearing like a line of fire; a centinel was in the action of charging his piece, and the shock forced the musket out of his hand, and broke the rammer rod. Upon this occasion, I cannot but earnestly recommend chains of the same kind to every ship, whatever be her destination, and I hope that the fate of the Dutchman will be a warning to all who shall read this narrative, against having an iron spindle at the mast-head.

The next morning, I attended at the council-chamber, and was told that I should have every thing I wanted. In the mean time, the gentlemen ashore agreed with the keeper of the hotel for their lodgings and board, at the rate of two rix-dollars, or nine shillings sterling a day for each; and as there were five of them, and they would probably have many visitors from the ship, he agreed to keep them a separate table, upon condition that they should pay one rix dollar for the dinner of every stranger, and another for his supper and bed, if he should sleep ashore. Under this stipulation they were to be furnished with tea, coffee, punch, pipes and tobacco, for themselves and their friends, as much as they could consume; they were also to pay half a rupee, or one shilling and three pence a day for each of their servants.

They soon learnt that these rates were more than double the common charges of board and lodging in the town, and their table, though it had the appearance of magnificence, was wretchedly served. Their dinner consisted of one course of fifteen dishes, and their supper of one course of thirteen, but nine or ten of them consisted of bad poultry, variously dressed, and often
served

served
the fam
found
time in
howeve
by way
of the h
with su
and com
if either
content
but that
till they
fore the
discover
better;
little hou
for him
rate of te
ling a m
either th
pected:
house oc
it, under
went by
fold, then
at Batavi
here hire
are open
by a mar
paid two
As soon
sent for T
upon acc
kind, and
any medi
Tayeto, a
came into
jected, he

served up the second, third, and even the fourth time: the same duck having appeared more than once roasted, found its way to the table as a fricasee, and a fourth time in the form of forced meat. It was not long, however, before they learnt that this treatment was only by way of essay, and that it was the invariable custom of the house, to supply all strangers, at their first coming, with such fare as could be procured for the least money, and consequently would produce the most gain: that if either through indolence or good-nature they were content, it was continued for the benefit of the host, but that if they complained, it was gradually amended till they were satisfied, which sometimes happened before they had the worth of their money. After this discovery, they remonstrated, and their fare became better; however, after a few days, Mr Banks hired a little house, the next door on the left hand to the hotel, for himself and his party, for which he paid after the rate of ten rix-dollars, or two pounds five shillings sterling a month; but here they were very far from having either the convenience or the privacy which they expected: no person was permitted to sleep in this private house occasionally, as a guest to the person who hired it, under a penalty, but almost every Dutchman that went by ran in without any ceremony, to ask what they sold, there having been very seldom any private persons at Batavia who had not something to sell. Every body here hires a carriage, and Mr Banks hired two. They are open chaises, made to hold two people, and driven by a man sitting on a coach box; for each of these he paid two rix-dollars a day.

As soon as he was settled in his new habitation, he sent for Tupia, who till now had continued on board upon account of his illness, which was of the bilious kind, and for which he had obstinately refused to take any medicine. He soon came ashore, with his boy Tayeto, and though while he was on board, and after he came into the boat, he was exceedingly listless and dejected, he no sooner entered the town than he seemed

to

to be animated with a new soul. The houses, carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, all new, which rushed upon him at once, produced an effect like the sudden and secret power that is imagined of fascination. Tayeto expressed his wonder and delight with still less restraint, and danced along the street in a kind of extacy, examining every object with a restless and eager curiosity, which was every moment excited and gratified. One of the first things that Tupia remarked, was the various dresses of the passing multitude, concerning which he made many enquiries; and when he was told that in this place, where people of many different nations were assembled, every one wore the habit of his country, he desired that he might conform to the custom, and appear in that of Otaheite. South Sea cloth was therefore sent for from the ship, and he equipped himself with great expedition and dexterity. The people who had seen Otourou, the Indian who had been brought hither by M. Bougainville, enquired whether Tupia was not the same person: from these enquiries, we learnt who it was that we had supposed to be Spaniards, from the accounts that had been given of two ships by the Islanders.

In the mean time, I procured an order to the superintendant of the island of Ourust, where the ship was to be repaired, to receive her there; and sent by one of the ships that sailed for Holland, an account of our arrival here, to Mr Stephens, the Secretary to the Admiralty.

The expences that would be incurred by repairing and refitting the ship, rendered it necessary for me to take up money in this place, which I imagined might be done without difficulty, but I found myself mistaken; for after the most diligent enquiry, I could not find any private person that had ability and inclination to advance the sum that I wanted. In this difficulty I applied to the Governor himself, by a written request, in consequence of which, the Shebander had orders to supply

me
pan
O
acci
took
days
Coop
take
By
began
Tupia
the p
sudden
was se
Banks
Dr So
almost
affecte
place, a
the tow
tent for
there w
Tupia,
til this
to be re
breathe
which o
he could
be laid d
Mr Bank
called he
pleased w
at this pl
blew dire
tion in hi
him two
town on t
was now
deprive hi
Vol. I.—

me with what money I should require out of the Company's Treasury.

On the 18th, as soon as it was light, having by several accidents and mistakes suffered a delay of many days, I took up the anchor, and ran down to Ourust: a few days afterwards, we went alongside of the wharf, on Cooper's Island, which lies close to Ourust, in order to take out our stores.

By this time, having been here only nine days, we began to feel the fatal effects of the climate and situation; Tupia, after the flow of spirits which the novelties of the place produced upon his first landing, sunk on a sudden, and grew every day worse and worse. Tayeto was seized with an inflammation upon his lungs, Mr Banks's two servants became very ill, and himself and Dr Solander were attacked by fevers: in a few days, almost every person both on board and ashore was sick; affected, no doubt, by the low swampy situation of the place, and the numberless dirty canals which intersect the town in all directions. On the 26th, I set up the tent for the reception of the ship's company, of whom there was but a small number able to do duty. Poor Tupia, of whose life we now began to despair, and who till this time continued ashore with Mr Banks, desired to be removed to the ship, where, he said, he should breathe a freer air than among the numerous houses which obstructed it ashore: on board the ship, however, he could not go, for she was unrigged, and preparing to be laid down at the careening place; but on the 28th, Mr Banks went with him to Cooper's Island, or, as it is called here, Kuypor, where she lay, and as he seemed pleased with the spot, a tent was there pitched for him: at this place, both the sea breeze and the land breeze blew directly over him, and he expressed great satisfaction in his situation. Mr Banks, whose humanity kept him two days with this poor Indian, returned to the town on the 30th, and the fits of his intermittent, which was now become a regular tertian, were so violent as to deprive him of his senses while they lasted, and leave

him so weak that he was scarcely able to crawl down stairs: at this time, Dr Solander's disorder also increased, and Mr Monkhouse, the Surgeon, was confined to his bed.

On the 5th of November, after many delays in consequence of the Dutch ships coming alongside the wharfs to load pepper, the ship was laid down, and the same day Mr Monkhouse, our Surgeon, a sensible, skilful man, fell the first sacrifice to this fatal country, a loss which was greatly aggravated by our situation. Dr Solander was just able to attend his funeral, but Mr Banks was confined to his bed. Our distress was now very great, and the prospect before us discouraging in the highest degree: our danger was not such as we could surmount by any efforts of our own; courage, skill, and diligence were all equally ineffectual, and death was every day making advances upon us, where we could neither resist nor fly. Malay servants were hired to attend the sick, but they had so little sense either of duty or humanity, that they could not be kept within call, and the patient was frequently obliged to get out of bed to seek them. On the 9th, we lost our poor Indian boy Tayeto, and Tupia was so much affected, that it was doubted whether he would survive till the next day.

In the mean time, the bottom of the ship being examined, was found to be in a worse condition than we apprehended: the false keel was all gone to within twenty feet of the stern post; the main keel was considerably injured in many places; a great quantity of the sheathing was torn off, and several planks were much damaged; two of them, and the half of a third, under the main channel near the keel, were for the length of six feet, so worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and here the worms had made their way quite into the timbers; yet in this condition she had sailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the world: how much misery did we escape, by being ignorant that so considerable a part of the bottom of the vessel was thinner
than

than t
pende
and th
we ha
and D
they h
the co
the dif
belong
furnish
they ha
over sla
inattent
of their
causes o
own pr
made t
were m
Tupia,
he loved

By th
repaired
indeed,
yard, no
marine y
with mo
ed with
heave d
now pra
and exp
one, and
customs
not allow
heave d

Mr B
country-
breeze, l
ly contri

than the sole of a shoe, and that every life on board depended upon so slight and fragile a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean ! It seemed, however, that we had been preserved only to perish here ; Mr Banks and Dr Solander were so bad that the physician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country ; a house was therefore hired for them, at the distance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the master of the hotel, who engaged to furnish them with provisions, and the use of slaves. As they had already experienced their want of influence over slaves that had other masters, and the unfeeling inattention of these fellows to the sick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, which removed both the causes of their being so ill served ; the women were their own property, and the tenderness of the sex, even here, made them good nurses. While these preparations were making, they received an account of the death of Tupia, who sunk at once after the loss of the boy, whom he loved with the tenderness of a parent.

By the 14th, the bottom of the ship was thoroughly repaired, and very much to my satisfaction : it would, indeed, be injustice to the officers and workmen of this yard, not to declare that, in my opinion, there is not a marine yard in the world, where a ship can be laid down with more convenience, safety, and dispatch, nor repaired with more diligence and skill. At this place they heave down by two masts, a method which we do not now practise ; it is, however, unquestionably more safe and expeditious to heave down with two masts than one, and he must have a good share of bigotry to old customs, and an equal want of common sense, who will not allow this, after seeing with what facility the Dutch heave down their largest ships at this place.

Mr Banks and Dr Solander recovered slowly at their country-house, which was not only open to the sea breeze, but situated upon a running stream which greatly contributed to the circulation of the air ; but I was

now taken ill myself; Mr Spöring, and a seaman who had attended Mr Banks, were also seized with intermittents; and, indeed, there was not more than ten of the whole ship's company that were able to do duty.

We proceeded, however, in rigging the ship, and getting water and stores aboard: the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of six shillings and eight-pence a leager, or one hundred and fifty gallons.

About the 26th, the westerly monsoon set in, which generally blows here in the night from the S. W. and in the day from the N. W. or N. For some nights before this, we had very heavy rain, with much thunder; and in the night between the 25th and 26th, such rain as we had seldom seen, for near four hours without intermission. Mr Banks's house admitted the water in every part like a sieve, and it ran through the lower rooms in a stream that would have turned a mill: he was by this time sufficiently recovered to go out, and upon his entering Batavia the next morning, he was surprised to see the bedding every where hung out to dry.

The wet season was now set in, though we had some intervals of fair weather. The frogs in the ditches, which croak ten times louder than any frogs in Europe, gave notice of rain by an incessant noise that was almost intolerable, and the gnats and musquitoes, which had been very troublesome even during the dry weather, were now become innumerable, swarming from every plash of water like bees from a hive; they did not, however, much incommode us in the day, and the stings, however troublesome at first, never continued to itch above half an hour, so that none of us felt in the day, the effects of the wounds they had received in the night.

On the 8th of December, the ship being perfectly refitted, and having taken in most of her water and stores, and received her sick on board, we ran up to Batavia
Road,

Road, a
water.

From
getting
villions,
operatio
all which
ness and
number

While
a ship be
came to
Madrafs
here to v
tain Blac
also came

In the
leave of
tlemen o
tions, an
and assist
pened, w
quences.

Dutch shi
the Capta
him as a
pose was
after I re
man appe
delivered

gave the
man up u
on shore,
Commod
order on
liver up t

Dutchma
born in In

Road, and anchored in four fathom and an half of water.

From this time, to the 24th, we were employed in getting on board the remainder of our water and provisions, with some new pumps, and in several other operations that were necessary to fit the ship for the sea, all which would have been effected much sooner, if sickness and death had not disabled or carried off a great number of our men.

While we lay here, the *Eagle of Elgin*, Captain Cook, a ship belonging to the English East India Company, came to an anchor in the Road. She was bound from Madras to China, but having lost her passage, put in here to wait for the next season. The *Phoenix*, Captain Black, an English country ship, from Bencoolen, also came to an anchor at this place.

In the afternoon of Christmas eve, the 24th, I took leave of the Governor, and several of the principal gentlemen of the place, with whom I had formed connections, and from whom I received every possible civility and assistance; but in the mean time an accident happened, which might have produced disagreeable consequences. A seaman had run away from one of the Dutch ships in the Road, and entered on board of mine; the Captain had applied to the Governor, to reclaim him as a subject of Holland, and an order for that purpose was procured: this order was brought to me soon after I returned from my last visit, and I said, that if the man appeared to be a Dutchman, he should certainly be delivered up. Mr Hicks commanded on board, and I gave the Dutch officer an order to him, to deliver the man up under that condition. I slept myself this night on shore, and in the morning, the Captain of the Dutch Commodore came and told me that he had carried my order on board, but that the officer had refused to deliver up the man, alledging, not only that he was not a Dutchman, but that he was a subject of Great Britain, born in Ireland; I replied, that the officer had perfectly

ex-

executed my orders, and that if the man was an English subject, it could not be expected that I should deliver him up. The Captain then said, that he was just come from the Governor, to demand the man of me in his name, as a subject of Denmark, alledging, that he stood in the ship's books as born at Ellsneur. The claim of this man, as a subject of Holland, being now given up, I observed to the Captain, that there appeared to be some mistake in the General's message, for that he would certainly never demand a Danish seaman from me, who had committed no other crime than preferring the service of the English to that of the Dutch. I added, however, to convince him of my sincere desire to avoid disputes, that if the man was a Dane, he should be delivered up as a courtesy, though he could not be demanded as a right; but that if I found he was an English subject, I would keep him at all events. Upon these terms we parted, and soon after I received a letter from Mr Hicks, containing indubitable proof that the seaman in question was a subject of his Britannic Majesty. This letter I immediately carried to the Shebandei, with a request that it might be shewn to the Governor, and that his Excellency might at the same time be told, I would not upon any terms part with the man. This had the desired effect, and I heard no more of the affair.

In the evening, I went on board, accompanied by Mr Banks, and the rest of the gentlemen who had constantly resided on shore, and who, though better, were not yet perfectly recovered.

At six in the morning of the 26th, we weighed and set sail, with a light breeze at S. W. The Elgin Indian saluted us with three cheers and thirteen guns, and the garrison with fourteen, both which, with the help of our swivels, we returned, and soon after the sea breeze set in at N. by W. which obliged us to anchor just without the ships in the Road.

At this time, the number of sick on board amounted

to

to fo
very
except
eight
old m
drunk
three
his bo
All
stagna
his bir
food,
orders
bly ha
pleted
Batavi

to forty, and the rest of the ship's company were in a very feeble condition. Every individual had been sick except the sail-maker, an old man between seventy and eighty years of age, and it is very remarkable that this old man, during our stay at this place, was constantly drunk every day: we had buried seven, the surgeon, three seamen, Mr Green's servant, Tupia, and Tayeto his boy.

All but Tupia fell a sacrifice to the unwholesome, stagnant, putrid air of the country, and he who from his birth had been used to subsist chiefly upon vegetable food, particularly ripe fruit, soon contracted all the disorders that are incident to a sea life, and would probably have sunk under them before we could have completed our voyage, if we had not been obliged to go to Batavia to refit.

Some

Some Account of Batavia, its Inhabitants, and the adjacent Country, with their Manners, Customs, and Manner of Life, &c.

BATAVIA, the capital of the Dutch dominions in India, and generally supposed to have no equal among all the possessions of the Europeans in Asia, is situated on the north side of the Island of Java, in a low fenny plain, where several small rivers, which take their rise in the mountains called Blaeuwen Berg, about forty miles up the country, empty themselves into the sea, and where the coast forms a large bay, called the Bay of Batavia, at the distance of about eight leagues from the Streight of Sunda. It lies in latitude 6 d. 10 m. S. and longitude 106 d. 50 m. E. from the meridian of Greenwich, as appears from astronomical observations made upon the spot, by the Reverend Mr Mohr, who has built an elegant observatory, which is as well furnished with instruments as most in Europe.

The Dutch seem to have pitched upon this spot for the convenience of water-carriage, and in that it is indeed a second Holland, and superior to every other place in the world. There are very few streets that have not a canal of considerable breadth running through them, or rather stagnating in them, and continued for several miles in almost every direction beyond the town, which is also intersected by five or six rivers, some of which are navigable thirty or forty miles up the country. As the houses are large, and the streets wide, it takes up much greater extent, in proportion to the number of houses it contains, than any city in Europe. Valentyn, who wrote an account of it about the year

1726,

1726,

1242

the wa

arraek

peared

respect

The

of the c

very ple

canals to

canals i

and the

some de

the wet

reservoir

lower pa

of the h

where th

tity of fl

cleaned ;

come as

for the b

ferred to l

street, till

to be mad

this mud

regularly

not being

the air wh

the runnin

the nastine

and then a

the shallow

ticular per

left to time

buffalo lay

one of the

was carried

The hou

Vol. I.—N

1726, says, that in his time there were, within the walls, 1242 Dutch houses, and 1200 Chinese; and without the walls 1066 Dutch, and 1240 Chinese, besides 12 arrack houses, making in all 4760: but this account appeared to us to be greatly exaggerated, especially with respect to the number of houses within the walls.

The streets are spacious and handsome, and the banks of the canals are planted with rows of trees, that make a very pleasing appearance; but the trees concur with the canals to make the situation unwholesome. The stagnant canals in the dry season exhale an intolerable stench, and the trees impede the course of the air, by which in some degree the putrid effluvia would be dissipated. In the wet season the inconvenience is equal, for then these reservoirs of corrupted water overflow their banks in the lower part of the town, especially in the neighbourhood of the hotel, and fill the lower stories of the houses, where they leave behind them an inconceivable quantity of slime and filth: yet these canals are sometimes cleaned; but the cleaning them is so managed as to become as great a nuisance as the foulness of the water; for the black mud that is taken from the bottom is suffered to lie upon the banks, that is, in the middle of the street, till it has acquired a sufficient degree of hardness to be made the lading of a boat, and carried away. As this mud consists chiefly of human ordure, which is regularly thrown into the canals every morning, there not being a necessary-house in the whole town, it poisons the air while it is drying to a considerable extent. Even the running streams become nuisances in their turn, by the nastiness or negligence of the people; for every now and then a dead hog, or a dead horse, is stranded upon the shallow parts, and it being the business of no particular person to remove the nuisance, it is negligently left to time and accident. While we were here, a dead buffalo lay upon the shoal of a river that ran through one of the principal streets above a week, and at last was carried away by a flood.

The houses are in general well adapted to the climate; they

they consist of one very large room or hall on the ground floor, with a door at each end, both which generally stand open: at one end a room is taken off by a partition, where the master of the house transacts his business; and in the middle between each end there is a court, which gives light to the hall, and at the same time increases the draught of air. From one corner of the hall the stairs go up to the floor above, where also the rooms are spacious and airy. In the alcove, which is formed by the court, the family dine; and at other times it is occupied by the female slaves, who are not allowed to sit down any where else.

The public buildings are, most of them, old, heavy, and ungraceful; but the new church is not inelegant; it is built with a dome, that is seen from a great distance at sea, and though the outside has rather a heavy appearance, the inside forms a fine room: it is furnished with an organ of a proper size, being very large, and is most magnificently illuminated by chandeliers.

The town is inclosed by a stone wall, of a moderate height: but the whole of it is old, and many parts are much out of repair. This wall itself is surrounded by a river, which in some places is fifty, and in some a hundred yards wide: the stream is rapid, but the water is shallow. The wall is also lined within by a canal, which in different places is of different breadths; so that, in passing either out or in through the gates, it is necessary to cross two draw-bridges; and there is no access for idle people or strangers to walk upon the ramparts, which seem to be but ill provided with guns.

In the north east corner of the town stands the castle or citadel, the walls of which are both higher and thicker than those of the town, especially near the landing-place, where there is depth of water only for boats, which it completely commands, with several large guns that make a very good appearance.

Within this castle are apartments for the Governor General, and all the Council of India, to which they are enjoined to repair in case of a siege. Here are also
large

large
pany's
from
act th
great
walls
compa
is disp
be def
freque
Besid
are dif
ty or
merely
fit for
houses
placed
three
their b
was fro
to the
Chines
ed over
the Du
these fi
procure
confine
the isla
If th
themse
are am
more t
ditch,
approa
greatly
if not i
muster
tion fro

large storehouses, where great quantities of the Company's goods are kept, especially those that are brought from Europe, and where almost all their writers transact their business. In this place also are laid up a great number of cannon, whether to mount upon the walls or furnish shipping, we could not learn; and the company is said to be well supplied with powder, which is dispersed in various magazines, that if some should be destroyed by lightning, which in this place is very frequent, the rest may escape.

Besides the fortifications of the town, numerous forts are dispersed about the country to the distance of twenty or thirty miles; these seem to have been intended merely to keep the natives in awe, and indeed they are fit for nothing else. For the same purpose a kind of houses, each of which mounts about eight guns, are placed in such situations as command the navigation of three or four canals, and consequently the roads upon their banks: some of these are in the town itself, and it was from one of these that all the best houses belonging to the Chinese were levelled with the ground in the Chinese rebellion of 1740. These defences are scattered over all parts of Java, and the other islands of which the Dutch have got possession in these seas. Of one of these singular forts, or fortified houses, we should have procured a drawing, if our gentlemen had not been confined by sickness almost all the time they were upon the island.

If the Dutch fortifications here are not formidable in themselves, they become so by their situation; for they are among morasses where the roads, which are nothing more than a bank thrown up between a canal and a ditch, may easily be destroyed, and consequently the approach of heavy artillery either totally prevented or greatly retarded: for it would be exceedingly difficult, if not impossible, to transport them in boats, as they all muster every night under the guns of the castle, a situation from which it would be impossible for an enemy

to take them. Besides, in this country, delay is death; so that whatever retards an enemy, will destroy him. In less than a week, we were sensible of the unhealthiness of the climate; and in less than a month half of the ship's company were unable to do their duty. We were told, that of a hundred soldiers who arrive here from Europe, it was a rare thing for fifty to survive the first year; that of those fifty, half would then be in the hospital, and not ten of the rest in perfect health: possibly this account may be exaggerated; but the pale and feeble wretches whom we saw crawling about with a musquet, which they were scarcely able to carry, inclined us to believe that it was true. Every white inhabitant of the town indeed is a soldier; the younger are constantly mustered, and those who have served five years are liable to be called out when their assistance is thought to be necessary; but as neither of them are ever exercised, or do any kind of duty, much cannot be expected from them. The Portuguese, indeed, are in general good marksmen, because they employ themselves much in shooting wild hogs and deer: neither the Mardykers nor the Chinese know the use of fire-arms; but as they are said to be brave; they might do much execution with their own weapons, swords, lances, and daggers. The Mardykers are Indians of all nations, who are descended from free ancestors, or have themselves been made free.

But if it is difficult to attack Batavia by land, is utterly impossible to attack it by sea: for the water is so shallow, that it will scarcely admit a longboat to come within cannon shot of the walls, except in a narrow channel, called the river, that is walled on both sides by strong piers, and runs about half a mile into the harbour. At the other end, it terminates under the fire of the strongest part of the castle; and here its communication with the canals that intersect the town is cut off by a large wooden boom, which is shut every night at six o'clock, and upon no pretence opened till the next morning. The

CA
The har
dia, and, to
enough to c
is so good t
says: it ne
is only ind
road and th
it makes a c
long-boat c
tempting to
with some
and rigging

Round th
which the D
different use
transport all
that are not
main there n
some less, do
and during
slaves in ma
other island,
where people
tavia. In a t
belonging to
merchandise
that are to be
which with
charge their c
ent for the pu
of the Falmou
at this place
deposited, and
with only the
Remittances
no notice was
sent, desiring
Dutch though
to sell the ve

The harbour of Batavia is accounted the finest in India, and, to all appearance, with good reason; it is large enough to contain any number of ships, and the ground is so good that one anchor will hold till the cable decays: it never admits any sea that is troublesome, and its only inconvenience is the shoal water between the road and the river. When the sea breeze blows fresh, it makes a cockling sea that is dangerous to boats: our long-boat once struck two or three times as she was attempting to come out, and regained the river's mouth with some difficulty. A Dutch boat, laden with sails and rigging for one of the Indiamen was entirely lost.

Round the harbour, on the outside, lie many islands, which the Dutch have taken possession of, and apply to different uses. To one of them, called Edam, they transport all Europeans who have been guilty of crimes that are not worthy of death: some are sentenced to remain there ninety-nine years, some forty, some twenty, some less, down to five, in proportion to their offence; and during their banishment, they are employed as slaves in making ropes, and other drudgery. In another island, called Purmerent, they have an hospital, where people are said to recover much faster than at Batavia. In a third, called Kuyper, they have warehouses belonging to the Company, chiefly for rice, and other merchandize of small value; and here the foreign ships, that are to be laid down at Ourust, another of these islands, which with Kuyper has been mentioned before, discharge their cargoes at wharfs which are very convenient for the purpose. Here the guns, sails, and other stores of the Falmouth, a man of war, which was condemned at this place when she was returning from Manilla, were deposited, and the ship herself remained in the harbour with only the warrant officers on board for many years. Remittances were regularly made them from home; but no notice was ever taken of the many memorials they sent, desiring to be recalled. Happily for them, the Dutch thought fit, about six months before our arrival, to sell the vessel and all her stores, by public auction, and

and send the officers home in their own ships. At Oorust, they repair all their own shipping, and keep a large quantity of naval stores.

The country round Batavia is for some miles a continued range of country houses and gardens. Many of the gardens are very large, and, by some strange fatality, all are planted with trees almost as thick as they can stand; so that the country derives no advantage from its being cleared of the wood that originally covered it, except the fruit of that which has been planted in its room. These impenetrable forests stand in a dead flat, which extends some miles beyond them, and is intersected in many directions by rivers, and more still by canals, which are navigable for small vessels. Nor is this the worst, for the fence of every field and garden is a ditch; and interspersed among the cultivated ground there are many filthy fens, bogs, and morasses, as well fresh as salt.

It is not strange that the inhabitants of such a country should be familiar with disease and death: preventive medicines are taken almost as regularly as food; and every body expects the returns of sickness, as we do the seasons of the year. We did not see a single face in Batavia that indicated perfect health, for there is not the least tint of colour in the cheeks either of man or woman: the women, indeed, are most delicately fair; but with the appearance of disease there never can be perfect beauty. People talk of death with as much indifference as they do in a camp: and when an acquaintance is said to be dead, the common reply is, "Well, he owed me nothing;" or, "I must get my money of his executors."

To this description of the environs of Batavia there are but two exceptions. The Governor's country house is situated upon a rising ground; but its ascent is so inconsiderable, that it is known to be above the common level only by the canals being left behind, and the appearance of a few bad hedges: his excellency, however, who is a native of this place, has, with some trouble, and

and expenc
a ditch; su
taste and the
ed Passar T
perpendicul
except these
tween thirty
parallel to t
miles inland
where, as
comparative
flourish in
which can
vigorous an
principal pe
once a year
on the plan
of Marlbor
finished.

physicians,
fects of the
patient grow
lapses soon

But the f
der Batavia
render it th
The soil is
niences and
without nu

Rice, wh
countries,
grows in gr
the hilly
islands, a
western pa
by the nat
contrary t
three parts
upon the

and expence, contrived to inclose his own garden with a ditch; such is the influence of habit, both upon the taste and the understanding. A famous market also, called Passar Tanabank, is held upon an eminence that rises perpendicularly about thirty feet above the plain; and except these situations, the ground, for an extent of between thirty and forty miles round Batavia, is exactly parallel to the horizon. At the distance of about forty miles inland there are hills of a considerable height, where, as we were informed, the air is healthy, and comparatively cool. Here the vegetables of Europe flourish in great perfection, particularly strawberries, which can but ill bear heat; and the inhabitants are vigorous and ruddy. Upon these hills some of the principal people have country houses, which they visit once a year; and one was begun for the Governor, upon the plan of Blenheim, the famous seat of the Duke of Marlborough, in Oxfordshire, but it has never been finished. To these hills also people are sent by the physicians, for the recovery of their health, and the effects of the air are said to be almost miraculous: the patient grows well in a short time, but constantly relapses soon after his return to Batavia.

But the same situation and circumstances which render Batavia and the country round it unwholesome, render it the best gardener's ground in the whole world. The soil is fruitful beyond imagination, and the conveniences and luxuries of life that it produces are almost without number.

Rice, which is well known to be the corn of these countries, and to serve the inhabitants instead of bread, grows in great plenty: and I must here observe, that in the hilly parts of Java, and in many of the eastern islands, a species of this grain is planted, which in the western parts of India is entirely unknown. It is called by the natives *Paddy Gunung*, or Mountain rice; this, contrary to the other sort which must be under water three parts in four of the time of its growth, is planted upon the sides of hills where no water but rain can
come:

come : it is, however, planted at the beginning of the rainy season, and reaped in the beginning of the dry. How far this kind of rice might be useful in our West Indian islands, where no bread corn is grown, it may perhaps be worth while to enquire.

Indian corn, or maize, is also produced here ; which the inhabitants gather when young, and toast in the ear. Here is also a great variety of kidney beans, and lentiles, which they call *Cadjang*, and which makes a considerable part of the food of the common people ; besides millet, yams both wet and dry, sweet potatoes, and European potatoes, which are very good, but not cultivated in great plenty. In the gardens, there are cabbages, lettuces, cucumbers, raddishes, the white raddishes of China, which boil almost as well as a turnip ; carrots, parsley, celery, pigeon peas, the egg plant, which broiled, and eaten with pepper and salt, is very delicious ; a kind of greens resembling spinnage ; onions, very small, but excellent ; and asparagus : besides some European plants of a strong smell, particularly sage, hyssop, and ruc. Sugar is also produced here in immense quantities : very great crops of the finest and largest canes that can be imagined are produced with very little care, and yield a much larger proportion of sugar than the canes of the West Indies. White sugar is sold here at two-pence half-penny a pound ; and the molasses makes the arrack, of which, as of rum, it is the chief ingredient ; a small quantity of rice, and some coconut wine, being added, chiefly, I suppose, to give it flavour. A small quantity of indigo is also produced here, not as an article of trade, but merely for home consumption.

But the most abundant article of vegetable luxury here is the fruit ; of which there is no less than six and thirty different kinds, viz:—

The pine apple, sweet oranges, pumplemoeses, which in the West Indies are called shaddock ; lemons, limes, mangoes, bananes, grapes, tamarinds, water melons, pumpkins, papaws, guava, sweet sop, custard apple, cashew

cashew
the jamb
durion,
boa bida
the blim
salack.

Beside
country
which
also told
from Eu
and flou
several
recent fr
another
are eaten
Guilindir
is of the
Sea island
for the
the fruit
that claf
particul

The
increditi
generall
fruit in
from th
inhabite
supplies
bourho
lent in
more th

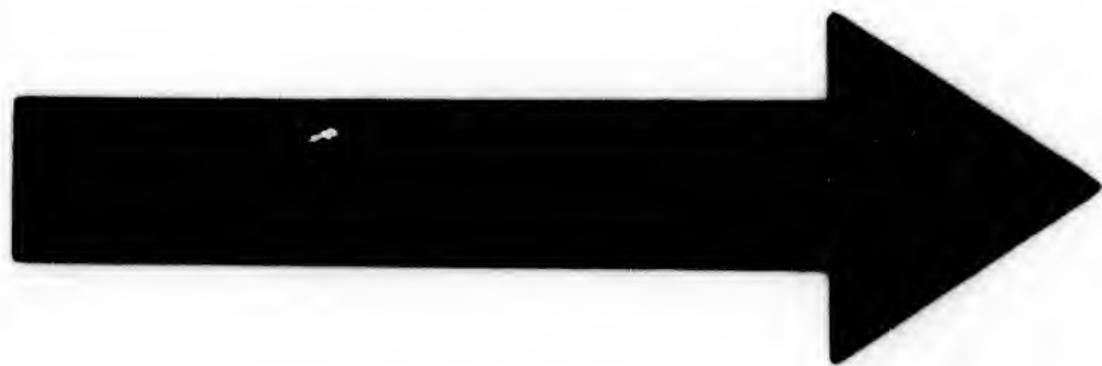
The
distan
merely
to who
town a
Passar
Vol.

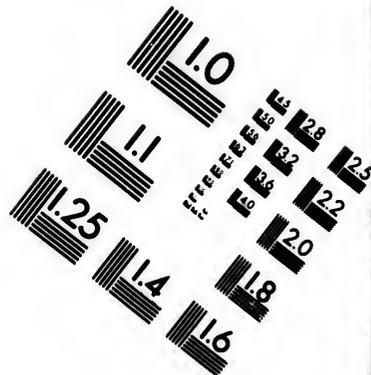
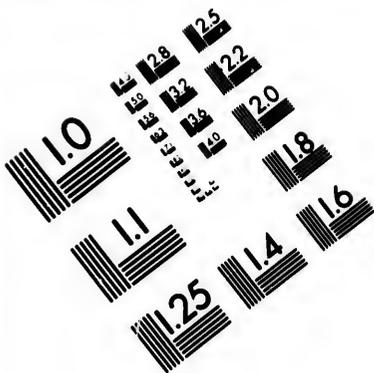
cashew apple, the cocoa-nut, mangoſtan, the jamboo, the jambu-eyer, jumbu-eyer mauwar, the pomegranate, durion, nanca, champada, rambutan, jambolan, the boa bidarra, nam nam, the catappa, the madja, ſuntul, the blimbing, the blimbing beſſe, the cherrema, and the ſalack.

Befides theſe, the iſland of Java, and particularly the country round Batavia, produces many kinds of fruit which were not in ſeaſon during our ſtay; we were alſo told that apples, ſtrawberries, and many other fruits from Europe, had been planted up in the mountains, and flouriſhed there in great luxuriance. We ſaw ſeveral fruits preſerved in ſugar, that we did not ſee recent from the tree, one of which is called *Kimkit*, and another *Boa Atap*: and here are ſeveral others which are eaten only by the natives, particularly the *Kellor*, the *Guilindina*, the *Moringa*, and the *Soccum*. The *Soccum* is of the ſame kind with the bread-fruit in the South Sea iſlands, but ſo much inferior, that if it had not been for the ſimilitude in the outward appearance both of the fruit and the tree, we ſhould not have referred it to that claſs. Theſe and ſome others do not merit to be particularly mentioned.

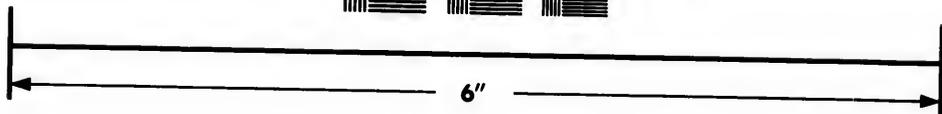
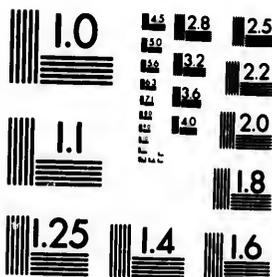
The quantity of fruit that is conſumed at Batavia is incredible; but that which is publicly expoſed to ſale is generally over-ripe. A ſtranger however may get good fruit in a ſtreet called Paſſar Piſſang, which lies north from the great church, and very near it. This ſtreet is inhabited by none but Chineſe fruit-ſellers, who are ſupplied from the gardens of Gentlemen in the neighbourhood of the town, with ſuch as is freſh, and excellent in its kind, for which however they muſt be paid more than four times the market price.

The town in general is ſupplied from a conſiderable diſtance, where great quantities of land are cultivated merely for the production of fruit. The country people, to whom theſe lands belong, meet the people of the town at two great markets; one on Monday, called Paſſar Sineen; and the other on Saturday, called Paſſar





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

Tanabank. These fairs are held at places considerably distant from each other, for the convenience of different districts; neither of them however are more than five miles distant from Batavia. At these fairs, the best fruit may be bought at the cheapest rate; and the sight of them to an European is very entertaining. The quantity of fruit is astonishing; forty or fifty cart loads of the finest pine apples, packed as carelessly as turnips in England, are common, and other fruit in the same profusion. The days however on which these markets are held are ill contrived; the time between Saturday and Monday is too short, and that between Monday and Saturday too long: great part of what is bought on Monday is always much the worse for keeping before a new stock can be bought, either by the retailer or consumer; so that for several days in every week there is no good fruit in the hands of any people but the Chinese in Passar Pissang.

The inhabitants of this part of India practise a luxury which seems to be but little attended to in other countries; they are continually burning aromatic woods and resins, and scatter odours round them in a profusion of flowers, possibly as an antidote to the noisome effluvia of their ditches and canals. Of sweet smelling flowers they have a great variety altogether unknown in Europe.

These are sold about the streets every evening at sunset, either strung upon a thread, in wreaths of about two feet long, or made up into nosegays of different forms, either of which may be purchased for about a halfpenny. With a mixture of flowers, and the leaves of a plant called *pandang*, cut into small pieces, persons of both sexes fill their hair and their clothes, and with the same mixture indulge a much higher luxury by strewing it on their beds, so that the chamber in which they sleep, breathes the richest and purest of all odours, unallayed by the fumes which cannot but arise where the sleeper lies under two or three blankets and a quilt, for the bed

cover-

cov
fine
E
tion
the
This
valu
the i
Caya
and
are b
inhab
Clove
the p
to the
of the
by the
all the
and th
Dutch
them a
stipulat
of trees
punish
quantit
Nutme
islands
supplie
supply
dimensi
trious E
howeve
upon th
be both
eastwar
Europe
The
horses,
horses a

covering here is nothing more than a single piece of fine chintz.

Before I close my account of the vegetable productions of this part of India, I must take some notice of the spices. Java originally produced none but pepper. This is now sent from hence into Europe to a great value, but the quantity consumed here is very small; the inhabitants use *Capsicum*, or, as it is called in Europe, Cayan pepper, almost universally in its stead. Cloves and nutmegs, have been monopolized by the Dutch, are become too dear to be plentifully used by the other inhabitants of this country, who are very fond of them. Cloves, although they are said originally to have been the produce of Machian, or Bachian, a small island far to the eastward, and only fifteen miles to the northward of the line, and to have been from thence disseminated by the Dutch, at their first coming into these parts, over all the eastern islands, are now confined to Amboina, and the small isles that lie in its neighbourhood; the Dutch having, by different treaties of peace between them and the conquered kings of all the other islands, stipulated, that they should have only a certain number of trees in their dominions, and in future quarrels, as a punishment for disobedience and rebellion, lessened the quantity, till at last they left them no claim to any. Nutmegs have in a manner been extirpated in all the islands except their first native soil, Banda, which easily supplies every nation upon earth, and would as easily supply another nation in another globe of the same dimensions, if there was any such to which the industrious Hollander could transport the commodity; it is, however, certain, that there are a few trees of this spice upon the coast of New Guinea. There may perhaps be both cloves and nutmegs upon other islands to the eastward; for those, neither the Dutch, nor any other European, seem to think it worth while to examine.

The principal tame quadrupeds of this country are horses, cattle, buffaloes, sheep, goats, and hogs. The horses are small, never exceeding in size what we call a

stout galloway, but they are nimble and spirited, and are reported to have been found here when the Europeans first came round the Cape of Good Hope. The horned cattle are said to be the same species as those in Europe, but they differ so much in appearance, that we were inclined to doubt it: they have indeed the *palearia* or *dewlap*, which naturalists make the distinguishing characteristic of the European species, but they certainly are found wild, not only in Java but several of the eastern islands. The flesh of those that we eat at Batavia, had a finer grain than European beef, but it was less juicy, and miserably lean. Buffaloes are plenty, but the Dutch never eat them, nor will they drink their milk, being prepossessed with a notion that both are unwholesome, and tend to produce fevers; though the natives and Chinese eat both, without any injury to their health. The sheep are of the kind which have long ears that hang down, and hair instead of wool: the flesh of these is hard and tough, and in every respect the worst mutton we ever saw; we found here, however, a few Cape sheep, which are excellent, but so dear that we gave five and forty shillings apiece for four of them, the heaviest of which weighed only five and forty pounds. The goats are not better than the sheep, but the hogs, especially the Chinese breed, are incomparable, and so fat, that the purchaser agrees for the lean separately. The butcher, who is always a Chinese, without the least scruple cuts off as much of the fat as he is desired, and afterwards sells it to his countrymen, who melt it down, and eat it instead of butter with their rice: but notwithstanding the excellence of this pork, the Dutch are so strongly prejudiced in favour of every thing that comes from their native country, that they eat only of the Dutch breed, which are here sold as much dearer than the Chinese, as the Chinese are sold dearer than the Dutch in Europe.

Besides these animals, which are tame, they have dogs and cats, and there are among the distant mountains some wild horses and cattle: buffaloes are not found

found wild in any part of Java, though they abound in Macassar, and several other eastern islands. The neighbourhood of Batavia, however, is plentifully supplied with two kinds of deer, and wild hogs, which are sold at a reasonable price by the Portuguese, who shoot them, and are very good food.

Among the mountains, and in the desert parts of the island, there are tygers, it is said, in great abundance, and some rhinoceroses; in these parts also there are monkies, and there are a few of them even in the neighbourhood of Batavia.

Of fish, here is an amazing plenty; many sorts are excellent, and all are very cheap, except the few that are scarce. It happens here, as in other places, that vanity gets the better even of appetite: the cheap fish, most of which is of the best kind, is the food only of slaves, and that which is dear, only because it is scarce, and very much inferior in every respect, is placed upon the tables of the rich. A sensible housekeeper once spoke to us freely upon the subject. I know, said he, as well as you, that I could purchase a better dish of fish for a shilling, than what now costs me ten; but if I should make so good a use of my money, I should here be as much despised, as you would be in Europe, if you were to cover your table with offals, fit only for beggars or dogs.

Turtle is also found here, but it is neither so sweet nor so fat as the West Indian turtle, even in London; such as it is, however, we should consider it as a dainty; but the Dutch among other singularities, do not eat it. We saw some lizards, or Iguanas, here of a very large size; we were told that some were as thick as a man's thigh, and Mr Banks shot one that was five feet long: the flesh of this animal proved to be very good food.

Poultry is very good here, and in great plenty: fowls of a very large size, ducks, and geese are very cheap; pigeons are dear, and the price of turkies extravagant. We found the flesh of these animals lean and dry, but this was merely the effect of their being ill fed, for those that we fed ourselves were as good as any of the same kind

kind that we had tasted in Europe, and we sometimes thought them even better.

Wild fowl in general is scarce. We once saw a wild duck in the fields, but never any that were to be sold. We frequently saw snipes of two kinds, one of them exactly the same as that in Europe, and a kind of thrush was always to be had in great plenty of the Portuguese, who, for I know not what reason, seem to have monopolized the wild fowl and game. Of snipes, it is remarkable that they are found in more parts of the world than any other bird, being common almost all over Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.

With respect to drink, Nature has not been quite so liberal to the inhabitants of Java as to some whom she has placed in the less fruitful regions of the north. The native Javanese, and most of the other Indians who inhabit this island, are indeed Mahometans, and therefore have no reason to regret the want of wine; but, as if the prohibition of their law respected only the manner of becoming drunk, and not drunkenness itself, they shew opium, to the total subversion not only of their understanding but their health.

The arrack that is made here, is too well known to need a description: besides which, the palm yields a wine of the same kind with that which has already been described in the account of the island of Savu; it is procured from the same tree, in the same manner, and is sold in three states. The first, in which it is called *Tuac manis*, differs little from that in which it comes from the tree; yet even this has received some preparation altogether unknown to us, in consequence of which it will keep eight and forty hours, though otherwise it would spoil in twelve: in this state it has an agreeable sweetness, and will not intoxicate. In the other two states it has undergone a fermentation, and received an infusion of certain herbs and roots, by which it loses its sweetness, and acquires a taste very austere and disagreeable. In one of these states it is called *Tuac cras*, and in the other *Tuac kuning*, but the specific difference I do not know;

in

in bot
liquor
but th
which
The
served
dia, is
not on
the tov
of Dut
and be
tions,
slaves.
countr
therest
but the
to get
hands,
No ma
in any
pany's
mult co
as this
upon a
from th
of trad
to carr
inhabit
Wor
the her
we we
Datavi
Europ
means
of the
famili
male
ever b
as to

in both, however, it intoxicates very powerfully. A liquor called Tuac is also made from the cocoa-nut tree, but this is used chiefly to put into the arrack, for in that which is good it is an essential ingredient.

The town of Batavia, although, as I have already observed, it is the capital of the Dutch dominions in India, is so far from being peopled with Dutchmen, that not one fifth part, even of the European inhabitants of the town, and its environs, are natives of Holland, or of Dutch extraction: the greater part are Portuguese, and besides Europeans, there are Indians of various nations, and Chinese, besides a great number of negro slaves. In the troops, there are natives of almost every country in Europe, but the Germans are more than all the rest put together; there are some English and French, but the Dutch, though other Europeans are permitted to get money here, keep all the power in their own hands, and consequently possess all public employments. No man, of whatever nation, can come hither to settle, in any other character than that of a soldier in the Company's service, in which, before they are accepted, they must covenant to remain five years. As soon, however, as this form has been complied with, they are allowed, upon application to the council, to absent themselves from their corps, and enter immediately into any branch of trade, which their money or credit will enable them to carry on; and by this means it is that all the white inhabitants of the place are soldiers.

Women, however, of all nations are permitted to settle here, without coming under any restrictions: yet we were told that there were not, when we were at Batavia, twenty women in the place that were born in Europe, but that the white women, who were by no means scarce, were descendants from European parents of the third or fourth generation, the gleanings of many families who had successively come hither, and in the male line become extinct; for it is certain that, whatever be the cause, this climate is not so fatal to the ladies as to the other sex.

These

These women imitate the Indians in every particular; their dress is made of the same materials, their hair is worn in the same manner, and they are equally enslaved by the habit of chewing beetle.

The merchants carry on their business here with less trouble perhaps than in any other part of the world: every manufacture is managed by the Chinese, who sell the produce of their labour to the merchant, resident here, for they are permitted to sell it to no one else; so that when a ship comes in, and bespeaks perhaps a hundred leagers of arrack, or any quantity of other commodities, the merchant has nothing to do but to send orders to his Chinese to see them delivered on board: he obeys the command, brings a receipt signed by the master of the ship for the goods to his employer, who receives the money, and having deducted his profit, pays the Chinese his demand. With goods that are imported, however, the merchant has a little more trouble, for these he must examine, receive, and lay up in his warehouse, according to the practice of other countries.

The Portuguese are called by the natives *Oranferans*, or Nazareen men, (Oran, being Man in the language of the country) to distinguish them from other Europeans; yet they are included in the general appellation of *Caper* or *Cafir*, an opprobrious term, applied by Mahometans to all who do not profess their faith. These people, however, are Portuguese only in name; they have renounced the religion of Rome, and become Lutherans: neither have they the least communication with the country of their forefathers, or even knowledge of it: they speak indeed a corrupt dialect of the Portuguese language, but much more frequently use the Malay: they are never suffered to employ themselves in any but mean occupations: many of them live by hunting, many by washing linen, and some are handicraftsmen and artificers. They have adopted all the customs of the Indians, from whom they are distinguished chiefly by their features and complexion, their skin being

being
their
weari

The
Portug
jacent,
origin
islands
either
descen
and th
of Ora
Faith.

respec
not les
virtues
ploy t
selling
here c
and ev
these I
as it is
cause i
called
India;
many
finell.
fishing
place b
of the
in the r

In th
temper
proport
dried fi
from C
with C
made o

Vol. I

...

particular;
their hair is
usually enfla-

with less
the world;
inese, who
nt, resident
ne else; so
perhaps a
of other
do but to
livered on
ript signed
employer,
ucted his
goods that
ittle more
nd lay up
e of other

Oranferant,
language
r Europe-
ellation of
y Maho-
n. These
ine; they
come Lu-
unication
n know-
ct of the
ly use the
emselves
n live by
re handi-
d all the
inguish-
their skin
being

being considerably darker, and their noses more sharp; their dress is exactly the same, except in the manner of wearing their hair.

The Indians, who are mixed with the Dutch and Portuguese in the town of Batavia, and the country adjacent, are not, as might be supposed, Javaneſe, the original natives of the island, but natives of the various islands from which the Dutch import slaves, and are either such as have themselves been manumized, or the descendants of those who formerly received manumission; and they are all comprehended under the general name of *Oranſlam*, or *Iſalam*, ſignifying Believers of the true Faith. The natives of every country, however, in other respects keep themselves distinct from the rest, and are not less strongly marked than the slaves by the vices or virtues of their respective nations. Many of these employ themselves in the cultivation of gardens, and in selling fruit and flowers. Beetle and areca, which are here called *Siri* and *Pinang*, and chewed by both sexes and every rank in amazing quantities, are all grown by these Indians: lime is also mixed with these roots here as it is in *Savu*, but it is less pernicious to the teeth, because it is first slaked, and, besides the lime, a substance called *gambir*, which is brought from the continent of India; the better sort of women also add cardamum, and many other aromatics, to give the breath an agreeable smell. Some of the Indians, however, are employed in fishing, and as lighter-men, to carry goods from place to place by water; and some are rich, and live with much of the splendour of their country, which chiefly consists in the number of their slaves.

In the article of food these *Iſalams* are remarkably temperate: it consists chiefly of boiled rice, with a small proportion of buffalo, fish, or fowl, and sometimes of dried fish, and dried shrimps, which are brought hither from China; every dish, however, is highly seasoned with *Cayan* pepper, and they have many kinds of pastry made of rice flower, and other things to which I am a

stranger; they eat also a great deal of fruit, particularly plantains.

But notwithstanding their general temperance, their feasts are plentiful, and, according to their manner, magnificent. As they are Mahometans, wine and strong liquors professedly make no part of their entertainment, neither do they often indulge with them privately, contenting themselves with their beetle and opium.

The principal solemnity among them is a wedding, upon which occasion both the families borrow as many ornaments of gold and silver as they can, to adorn the bride and bridegroom, so that their dresses are very showy and magnificent. The feasts that are given upon these occasions among the rich, last sometimes a fortnight, and sometimes longer; and during this time, the man, although married on the first day, is, by the women, kept from his wife.

The language that is spoken among all these people, from what place soever they originally came, is the Malay; at least it is a language so called, and probably it is a very corrupt dialect of that spoken at Malacca. Every little island has a language of its own, and Java has two or three, but this lingua franca is the only language that is now spoken here, and, as I am told, it prevails over a great part of the East Indies. A dictionary of Malay and English was published in London by Thomas Bowrey, in the year 1701.

Their women wear as much hair as can grow upon the head, and to increase the quantity, they use oils, and other preparations of various kinds. Of this ornament Nature has been very liberal; it is universally black, and is formed into a kind of circular wreath upon the top of the head, where it is fastened with a bodkin, in a taste which we thought inexpressibly elegant: the wreath of hair is surrounded by another of flowers, in which the Arabian jessamine is beautifully intermixed with the golden stars of the *Bonger Tonjong*.

Both sexes constantly bathe themselves in the river at least

leaf
is e
The
in t
atten
und
very
perf
half
cross
and
of th
to o
pene
least
is fat
thus
rotter
which
then
excell
these
The
is call
time
muck
cated
drawn
the p
this fe
and o
things
was se
ren, v
today.
ledge.
of wo
himse
dian v

particularly
 erance, their
 er manner,
 wine and
 their enter-
 them pri-
 beetle and

a wedding,
 w as many
 adorn the
 s are very
 given upon
 nes a fort-
 s time, the
 ne women,

ese people,
 is the Ma-
 bably it is
 a. Every
 a has two
 ge that is
 ver a great
 Malay and
 Bowrey,

ow upon
 oils, and
 ornament
 ack, and
 the top
 sin, in a
 nt: the
 wers, in
 ermixed

river at
 least

least once a day, a practice which, in this hot country, is equally necessary both to personal delicacy and health. The teeth of these people also, whatever they may suffer in their colour by chewing beetle, are an object of great attention: the ends of them, both in the upper and under jaw, are rubbed with a kind of whetstone, by a very troublesome and painful operation, till they are perfectly even and flat, so that they cannot lose less than half a line in their length. A deep groove is then made cross the teeth of the upper jaw, parallel with the gums, and in the middle between them and the extremity of the teeth; the depth of this groove is at least equal to one-fourth of the thickness of the teeth, so that it penetrates far beyond what is called the enamel, the least injury to which, according to the dentists of Europe, is fatal; yet among these people, where the practice of thus wounding the enamel is universal, we never saw a rotten tooth; nor is the blackness a stain, but a covering, which may be washed off at pleasure, and the teeth then appear as white as ivory, which however is not an excellence in the estimation of the belles and beaux of these nations.

These are the people among whom the practice that is called *a muck*, or running a muck, has prevailed for time immemorial. It is well known, that to run a muck in the original sense of the word, is to get intoxicated with opium, and then rush into the street with a drawn weapon, and kill whoever comes in the way, till the party is himself either killed or taken prisoner; of this several instances happened while we were at Batavia, and one of the officers, whose business it is, among other things, to apprehend such people, told us, that there was scarcely a week in which he, or some of his brethren, were not called upon to take one of them into custody. In one of the instances that came to our knowledge, the party had been severely injured by the perfidy of women, and was mad with jealousy before he made himself drunk with opium; and we were told, that the Indian who runs a muck is always first driven to desperation

by some outrage, and always first revenges himself upon those who have done him wrong: we were also told, that though these unhappy wretches afterwards run into the streets with a weapon in their hand, frantic and foaming at the mouth, yet they never kill any but those who attempt to apprehend them, or those whom they suspect of such an intention, and that whoever gives them way is safe.

They are generally slaves, & he, indeed, are most subject to insults, and least able to obtain legal redress: freemen, however, are sometimes provoked into this extravagance, and one of the persons who run a muck while we were at Batavia, was free and in easy circumstances. He was jealous of his own brother, whom he first killed, and afterwards two others, who attempted to oppose him: he did not, however, come out of his house, but endeavoured to defend himself in it, though the opium had so far deprived him of his senses, that of three muskets, which he attempted to use against the officers of justice, not one was either loaded or primed. If the officer takes one of these amocks, or mohawks, as they have been called by an easy corruption, alive, his reward is very considerable, but if he kills them, nothing is added to his usual pay; yet such is the fury of their desperation, that three out of four are of necessity destroyed in the attempt to secure them, though the officers are provided with instruments like large tongs, or pincers, to lay hold of them without coming within the reach of their weapon. Those who happen to be taken alive are generally wounded, but they are always broken alive upon the wheel, and if the physician who is appointed to examine their wounds, thinks them likely to be mortal, the punishment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the spot where the first murder was committed.

Among these people, there are many absurd practices and opinions which they derive from their Pagan ancestors: they believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the cause of all sickness and adversity, and for
this

this reason, when they are sick, or in distress, they consecrate meat, money, and other things to him as a propitiation. If any one among them is restless, and dreams for two or three nights successively, he concludes that satan has taken that method of laying his commands upon him, which if he neglects to fulfil, he will certainly suffer sickness or death, though they are not revealed with sufficient perspicuity to ascertain their meaning: to interpret his dream, therefore, he taxes his wits to the uttermost, and if, by taking it literally or figuratively, directly or by contraries, he can put no explanation upon it that perfectly satisfies him, he has recourse to the cawin or priest, who assists him with a comment and illustrations, and perfectly reveals the mysterious suggestions of the night. It generally appears that the devil wants victuals or money, which are always allotted him, and being placed on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, are hung upon the branch of a tree near the river, so that it seems not to be the opinion of these people, that in prowling the earth the devil "walketh through dry places." Mr Banks once asked, whether they thought satan spent the money, or eat the victuals; he was answered, that as to the money it was considered rather as a mulct upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it, and that therefore if it was devoted by the dreamer, it mattered not into whose hands it came, and they supposed that it was generally the prize of some stranger who wandered that way; but as to the meat they were clearly of opinion that, although the devil did not eat the gross parts, yet, by bringing his mouth near it, he sucked out all its favour without changing its position, so that afterwards it was as tasteless as water.

But they have another superstitious opinion that is still more unaccountable. They believe that women, when they are delivered of children, are frequently at the same time delivered of a young crocodile, as a twin to the infant: they believe that these creatures are received most carefully by the midwife, and immediately carried

carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which such a birth is supposed to have happened, constantly put victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, and especially the twin, who, as long as he lives, goes down to the river at stated seasons, to fulfill this fraternal duty, for the neglect of which it is the universal opinion that he will be visited with sickness or death. What could at first produce a notion so extravagant and absurd, it is not easy to guess, especially as it seems to be totally unconnected with any religious mystery, and how a fact which never happened, should be pretended to happen every day, by those who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent interest in the fraud, is a problem still more difficult to solve. Nothing, however, can be more certain than the firm belief of this strange absurdity among them, for we had the concurrent testimony of every Indian who was questioned about it, in its favour. It seems to have taken its rise in the islands of Celebes and Boutou, where many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but, however that be, the opinion has spread over all the eastern islands, even to Timor and Ceram, and westward as far as Java, and Sumatra, where, however, young crocodiles are, I believe, never kept.

These crocodile twins are called *Sudaras*, and I shall relate one of the innumerable stories that were told us, in proof of their existence, from ocular demonstration.

A young female slave, who was born and bred up among the English at Bencoolen, and had learnt a little of the language, told Mr Banks that her father, when he was dying, acquainted her that he had a crocodile for his *sudara*, and solemnly charged her to give him meat when he should be dead, telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in pursuance of her father's instructions and command, she went to the river, and standing upon the bank, called out *Radja Pouti*, white king, upon which a crocodile came to her out of the water, and

eat

eat f
him.
uncle
ling
croco
spott
upon
ears.
patien
remir
a mo
this a
who v
thoug
crocod
many
very y
lets of
these f
day th
could r
Sir, sai
crocod
tongue
they ar
How
ed, car
credulie
howeve
be dece
wilful f
a charg
lieving
of the
king, an
been a
it was i
The gi
a stron

eat from her hand the provisions that she had brought him. When she was desired to describe this paternal uncle, who in so strange a shape had taken up his dwelling in the water, she said, that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handsomer; that his body was spotted and his nose red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and ear-rings of the same metal in his ears. Mr Banks heard this tale of ridiculous falsehood patiently to the end, and then dismissed the girl without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as strange a monster as a dog with a cloven foot. Some time after this a servant whom Mr Banks had hired at Batavia, and who was the son of a Dutchman by a Javanese woman, thought fit to acquaint his master that he had seen a crocodile of the same kind, which had also been seen by many others, both Dutchmen and Malays: that being very young, it was but two feet long, and had bracelets of gold upon its feet. There is no giving credit to these stories, said Mr Banks, for I was told the other day that a crocodile had ear-rings; and you know that could not be true, because crocodiles have no ears. Ah Sir, said the man, these Sudara Oran are not like other crocodiles; they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their mouth, and ears also, although they are indeed very small.

How much of what these people related they believed, cannot be known; for there are no bounds to the credulity of ignorance and folly. In the girl's relation, however, there are some things in which she could not be deceived; and therefore must have been guilty of wilful falsehood. Her father might, perhaps, give her a charge to feed a crocodile, in consequence of his believing that it was his sudara; but its coming to her out of the river, when she called it by the name of white king, and taking the food she had brought it, must have been a fable of her own invention; for this being false, it was impossible that she should believe it to be true. The girl's story, however, as well as that of the man is a strong proof that they both firmly believed the existence

ence of crocodiles that are sudaras to men; and the girl's fiction will be easily accounted for, if we recollect, that the earnest desire which every one feels to make others believe what he believes himself, is a strong temptation to support it by unjustifiable evidence. And the averring what is known to be false, in order to produce in others the belief of what is thought to be true, must, upon the most charitable principles, be imputed to many, otherwise venerable characters, through whose hands the doctrines of Christianity passed for many ages in their way to us, as the source of all the silly fables related of the Romish saints, many of them not less extravagant and absurd than this story of the white king, and all of them the invention of the first relater.

The Bougis, Macassars, and Boetons, are so firmly persuaded that they have relations of the crocodile species in the rivers of their own country, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties of them go out in a boat, furnished with great plenty of provisions, and all kinds of music, and row backwards and forwards, in places where crocodiles and allegators are most common, singing and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears, when the music instantly stops, and provisions, beetle, and tobacco are thrown into the water. By this civility to the species, they hope to recommend themselves to their relations at home; and that it will be accepted instead of offerings immediately to themselves, which it is not in their power to pay.

In the next rank to the Indians stand the Chinese, who in this place are numerous, but possess very little property; many of them live within the walls, and keep shops. The fruit-sellers of Passar Pissang have been mentioned already; but others have a rich show of European and Chinese goods: the far greater part, however, live in a quarter by themselves, without the walls, called Campang China. Many of them are carpenters, joiners, smiths, taylors, slipper makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers; maintaining the character of indus-

try

try that
tered a
few ric
mills th

The
provide
the Ch
they w
any de
down
cards o
that the
in Euro
scarcely
food an
idle, as

In ma
ous; ar
to what
tempt a
the bette
in Engla
though
proachin

In eat
are rich
proporti
they hav
dians, w
which th
on the c
pork, de
and a gr
habitants
eat also

he was p
The C
to the bu
sion oper

Vol. I.-

try that is universally given of them : and some are scattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, sow rice and sugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whose milk they bring daily to town.

There is nothing clean or dirty, honest or dishonest, provided there is not too much danger of a halter, that the Chinese will not readily do for money. But though they work with great diligence, and patiently undergo any degree of labour; yet no sooner have they laid down their tools than they begin to game, either at cards or dice, or some other play among the multitude that they have invented, which are altogether unknown in Europe: to this they apply with such eagerness, as scarcely to allow time for the necessary refreshments of food and sleep; so that it is as rare to see a Chinese idle, as it is to see a Dutchman or an Indian employed.

In manners they are always civil, or rather obsequious; and in dress they are remarkably neat and clean, to whatever rank of life they belong. I shall not attempt a description either of their persons or habits, for the better kind of China paper, which is now common in England, exhibits a perfect representation of both, though perhaps with some slight exaggerations approaching towards the caricatura.

In eating they are easily satisfied, though the few that are rich have many favourable dishes. Rice, with a small proportion of flesh or fish, is the food of the poor; and they have greatly the advantage of the Mahometan Indians, whose religion forbids them to eat of many things which they could most easily procure. The Chinese, on the contrary, being under no restraint, eat, besides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, serpents of many kinds, and a great variety of sea animals, which the other inhabitants of this country do not consider as food: they eat also many vegetables, which an European, except he was perishing with hunger, would never touch.

The Chinese have a singular superstition with regard to the burial of their dead; for they will upon no occasion open the ground a second time, where a body has

been interred. Their burying grounds, therefore, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, cover many hundred acres, and the Dutch, grudging the waste of so much land, will not sell any for this purpose but at the most exorbitant price. The Chinese, however, contrive to raise the purchase money, and afford another instance of the folly and weakness of human nature, in transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that the object of solicitude and expence, which cannot receive the least benefit from either. Under the influence of this universal prejudice, they take an uncommon method to preserve the body intire, and prevent the remains of it from being mixed with the earth that surrounds it. They inclose it in a large thick coffin of wood, not made of planks joined together, but hollowed out of the solid timber, like a canoe; this being covered, and let down into the grave, is surrounded with a coat of their mortar, called Chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a short time becomes as hard as a stone. The relations of the deceased attend the funeral ceremony, with a considerable number of women that are hired to weep: it might reasonably be supposed that the hired appearance of sorrow could no more flatter the living than benefit the dead; yet the appearance of sorrow is known to be hired among people much more reflective and enlightened than the Chinese. In Batavia, the law requires that every man should be buried according to his rank, which is in no case dispensed with; so that if the deceased has not left sufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what was in his possession when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner prescribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors. Thus in many instances are the living sacrificed to the dead, and money that should discharge a debt, or feed an orphan, lavished in idle processions, or deposited in the earth to rot.

Another numerous class among the inhabitants of this country is the slaves; for by slaves the Dutch, Portuguese,

guefe, a
 situation
 from Su
 illands.
 have ob
 have an
 very few
 lated.
 pounds
 times fe
 people;
 content
 boiled ric
 they are
 each oth
 The Afr
 and conse
 they are
 are the I
 Celebes;
 not so m
 cruel and
 ly danger
 they will
 slaves, an
 the illan
 Nias, a s
 are of a t
 sacrifice
 these, the
 nominati
 remembe
 The fl
 with res
 life; but
 though
 tended, t
 is gener
 reason t

guese, and Indians, however different in their rank or situation, are constantly attended: they are purchased from Sumatra, Malacca, and almost all the eastern islands. The natives of Java, very few of whom, as I have observed, live in the neighbourhood of Batavia, have an exemption from slavery under the sanction of very severe penal laws, which I believe are seldom violated. The price of these slaves is from ten to twenty pounds sterling; but girls, if they have beauty, sometimes fetch a hundred. They are a very lazy set of people; but as they will do but little work, they are content with a little victuals, subsisting altogether upon boiled rice, and a small quantity of the cheapest fish. As they are natives of different countries, they differ from each other extremely, both in person and disposition. The African negroes, called here *Papua*, are the worst, and consequently may be purchased for the least money: they are all thieves, and all incorrigible. Next to these are the Bougis and Macassars, both from the island of Celebes; these are lazy in the highest degree, and though not so much addicted to theft as the negroes, have a cruel and vindictive spirit, which renders them extremely dangerous; especially as, to gratify their resentment, they will make no scruple of sacrificing life. The best slaves, and consequently the dearest, are procured from the island of Bali; the most beautiful women from Nias, a small island on the coast of Sumatra; but they are of a tender and delicate constitution, and soon fall a sacrifice to the unwholesome air of Batavia. Besides these, there are Malays, and slaves of several other denominations, whose particular characteristics I do not remember.

The slaves are wholly in the power of their masters with respect to any punishment that does not take away life; but if a slave dies in consequence of punishment, though his death should not appear to have been intended, the master is called to a severe account, and he is generally condemned to suffer capitally. For this reason the master seldom inflicts punishment upon the

slave himself, but applies to an officer called a *Marineu*, one of whom is stationed in every district. The duty of the *Marineu* is to quell riots, and to take offenders into custody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway slaves, and punish them for such crimes as the master, supported by proper evidence, lays to their charge: the punishment however is not inflicted by the *Marineu* in person, but by slaves who are bred up to the business. Men are punished publicly, before the door of their master's house; but women within it. The punishment is by stripes, the number being proportioned to the offence; and they are given with rods made of rattans, which are split into slender twigs for the purpose, and fetch blood at every stroke. A common punishment costs the master a rixdollar, and a severe one a ducateen, about six shillings and eight pence. The master is also obliged to allow the slave three double-cheys, equal to about seven pence half-penny a week, as an encouragement, and to prevent his being under temptations to steal too strong to be resisted.

Concerning the government of this place I can say but little. We observed however a remarkable subordination among the people. Every man who is able to keep house has a certain specific rank acquired by the length of his services to the company; the different ranks which are thus acquired are distinguished by the ornaments of the coaches and the dresses of the coachmen: some are obliged to ride in plain coaches, some are allowed to paint them in different manners and degrees, and some to gild them. The coachman also appears in clothes that are quite plain, or more or less adorned with lace.

The officer who presides here has the title of Governor General of the Indies, and the Dutch Governors of all the other settlements are subordinate to him, and obliged to repair to Batavia that he may pass their accounts. If they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he punishes them by delay, and detains them during pleasure, sometimes one year, sometimes two years,

year
plac
Gov
Edel
lers
that
rise u
and
requ
it is c
of ou
spect
servic
it; y
deter
at the
imme
Just
who h
cernin
know
to be f
respec
Christ
escapin
have b
convid
poor h
upon
mercy
The
own,
tenant
peal to
The
very c
for lib
They
charge

years, and sometimes three; for they cannot quit the place till he gives them a dismissal. Next to the Governor are the members of the council, called here *Edele Heeren*, and by the corruption of the English *Idoleers*. These *Idoleers* take upon them so much state that whoever meets them in a carriage, is expected to rise up and bow, then to drive on one side of the road, and there stop till they are past: the same homage is required also to their wives and even their children; and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. But some of our Captains have thought so slavish a mark of respect beneath the dignity which they derived from the service of his Britannic Majesty, and have refused to pay it; yet, if they were in a hired carriage, nothing could deter the coachman from honouring the Dutch Grandee at their expence, but the most peremptory menace of immediate death.

Justice is administered here by a body of lawyers, who have ranks of distinction among themselves. Concerning their proceedings in questions of property, I know nothing; but their decisions in criminal cases seem to be severe with respect to the natives, and lenient with respect to their own people, in a criminal degree. A Christian always is indulged with an opportunity of escaping before he is brought to a trial, whatever may have been his offence; and if he is brought to a trial and convicted, he is seldom punished with death: while the poor Indians on the contrary are hanged, and broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive without mercy.

The Malays and Chinese have judicial officers of their own, under the denominations of Captains and Lieutenants, who determine in civil cases, subject to an appeal to the Dutch court.

The taxes paid by these people to the Company are very considerable; and that which is exacted of them for liberty to wear their hair, is by no means the least. They are paid monthly, and to save the trouble and charge of collecting them, a flag is hoisted upon the top
of

of a house in the middle of the town when a payment is due, and the Chinese have experienced that it is their interest to repair thither with their money without delay.

The money current here consists of ducats, worth a hundred and thirty-two stivers; ducatoons, eighty stivers; imperial rixdollars, sixty; rupees of Batavia, thirty; schellings, six; double cheys, two stivers and a half; and doits, one-fourth of a stiver. Spanish dollars, when we were here, were at five shillings and five pence; and we were told, that they were never lower than five shillings and four pence, even at the Company's warehouse. For English guineas we could never get more than nineteen shillings upon an average; for though the Chinese would give twenty shillings for some of the brightest, they would give no more than seventeen shillings for those that were much worn.

It may, perhaps, be of some advantage to strangers to be told that there are two kinds of coin here, of the same denomination, milled and unmilled, and that the milled is of most value. A milled ducatoon is worth eighty stivers; but an unmilled ducatoon is worth no more than seventy-two. All accounts are kept in rixdollars and stivers, which, here at least, are mere nominal coins, like our pound sterling. The rixdollar is equal to forty-eight stivers, about four shillings and six pence English currency.

The

The

On
in the
After
Pulo
after
midv
ter's
ping

On
and
flood

W
till th
anche
eight

ter, a
whor
when

I wer
lande
dians

said,
comp
ness;

agree
no do
in th

The Passage from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope: Some Account of Prince's Island and its Inhabitants, and a comparative View of their Language with the Malay and Javanese.

ON Thursday the 27th of December, at six o'clock in the morning, we weighed again and stood out to sea. After much delay by contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Pare on the 29th, and stood in for the main; soon after we fetched a small island under the main, in the midway between Batavia and Bantam, called Manater's Island. The next day, we weathered first Wapping Island, and then Pulo Babi.

On the 31st, we stood over to the Sumatra shore; and on the morning of New-Year's day, 1771, we stood over for the Java shore.

We continued our course as the wind permitted us till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we anchored under the south-east side of Prince's Island, in eighteen fathom, in order to recruit our wood and water, and procure refreshments for the sick, many of whom were now become much worse than they were when we left Batavia. As soon as the ship was secured, I went ashore, accompanied by Mr Banks and Dr Solander, and we were met upon the beach by some Indians who carried us immediately to a man, who, they said, was their King. After we had exchanged a few compliments with his Majesty, we proceeded to business; but in settling the price of turtle we could not agree: this however did not discourage us, as we made no doubt but that we should buy them at our own price in the morning. As soon as we parted, the Indians dispersed,

dispersed, and we proceeded along the shore in search of a watering-place. In this we were more successful; we found water very conveniently situated, and, if a little care was taken in filling it, we had reason to believe that it would prove good. Just as we were going off, some Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, sold us three turtle; but exacted a promise of us that we should not tell the King.

The next morning, while a party was employed in filling water, we renewed our traffic for turtle: at first, the Indians dropped their demands slowly, but about noon, they agreed to take the price that we offered, so that before night we had turtle in plenty: the three that we had purchased the evening before, were in the mean-time served to the ship's company, who, till the day before, had not once been served with salt provisions from the time of our arrival at Savu, which was now near four months. In the evening, Mr Banks went to pay his respects to the King, at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, and though his Majesty was busily employed in dressing his own supper, he received the stranger very graciously.

The next day, the natives came down to the trading-place, with fowls, fish, monkeys, small deer, and some vegetables, but no turtle, for they said that we had bought them all the day before. The next day, however, more turtle appeared at market, and some were brought down every day afterwards, during our stay, though the whole together was not equal to the quantity that we bought the day after our arrival.

On the 11th, Mr Banks having learnt from the servant whom he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this island had a town upon the shore, at some distance to the westward, he determined to see it: with this view he set out in the morning, accompanied by the Second Lieutenant, and as he had some reason to think that his visit would not be agreeable to the inhabitants, he told the people whom he met, as he was advancing along the shore, that he was in search of plants, which indeed

was

was a
place
with
conce
but th
and h
comp
severa
succe
houfes
party,
of it i
houfes
two pa
other t
they m
trading
over to
head.
canoes
canoes
together
to preve
safely p
and wh
received
the hou
are in th
for at th
in the ri
and mor
destroye
hired a l
which b
dine up
pounds,
proved t
We w
ple who

Vol. I.

was also true. In about two hours they arrived at a place where there were four or five houses, and meeting with an old man, they ventured to make some enquiries concerning the town. He said that it was far distant; but they were not to be discouraged in their enterprise, and he, seeing them proceed in their journey, joined company, and went on with them. He attempted several times to lead them out of the way, but without success; and at length they came within sight of the houses. The old man then entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town. The name of it is Samadang, it consists of about four hundred houses, and is divided by a river of brackish water into two parts, one of which is called the old town and the other the new. As soon as they entered the old town, they met several Indians whom they had seen at the trading-place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at the rate of two pence a head. When the bargain was made, two very small canoes were produced, in which they embarked; the canoes being placed alongside of each other, and held together, a precaution which was absolutely necessary to prevent their oversetting, the navigation was at length safely performed, though not without some difficulty; and when they landed in the new town, the people received them with great friendship, and showed them the houses of their Kings and principal people, which are in this district: few of them however were open, for at this time the people had taken up their residence in the rice-grounds, to defend the crop against the birds and monkeys, by which it would otherwise have been destroyed. When their curiosity was satisfied, they hired a large sailing boat for two roupees, four shillings, which brought them back to the ship time enough to dine upon one of the small deer, weighing only forty pounds, which had been bought the day before, and proved to be very good and savoury meat.

We went on shore in the evening, to see how the people who were employed in wooding and watering went

on, and were informed that an axe had been stolen. As the passing over this fault might encourage the commission of others of the same kind, application was immediately made to the King, who after some altercation promised that the axe should be restored in the morning; and kept his word, for it was brought to us by a man who pretended that the thief, being afraid of a discovery, had privately brought it and left it at his house in the night.

We continued to purchase between two and three hundred weight of turtle in a day, besides fowls and other necessaries; and in the evening of the 13th, having nearly completed our wood and water, Mr Banks went ashore to take leave of his Majesty, to whom he had made several trifling presents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciously received. They had much conversation, in the course of which his Majesty enquired, why the English did not touch there as they had been used to do. Mr Banks replied, that he supposed it was because they found a deficiency of turtle, of which there not being enough to supply one ship, many could not be expected. To supply this defect, he advised his Majesty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and sheep, a measure which he did not seem much inclined to adopt.

On the 14th, we made ready to sail, having on board a good stock of refreshments, which we purchased of the natives, consisting of turtle, fowl, fish, two species of deer, one as big as a sheep, the other not larger than a rabbit; with cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer however served only for present use, for we could seldom keep one of them alive more than four and twenty hours after it was on board. On our part, the trade was carried chiefly on with Spanish dollars, the natives seeming to set little value upon any thing else; so that our people, who had a general permission to trade, parted with old shirts and other articles, which they were obliged to substitute for money to great disadvantage.

In

In
breez
whic
S. lon
Pri
Mala
of the
situate
It is v
cleare
Engli
landin
ed by
those
is said
North
Sumat
at Nev
Island
tity of
Island
either
is fillec
will be
The
comes
tle; bu
small c
kind,
three f
to find
puted i
of brac
and w
which
us two
were b
to be h
found

In the morning of the 15th, we weighed, with a light breeze at N. E. and stood out to sea. Java Head, from which I took my departure, lies in latitude 6 d. 49 m. S. longitude 253 d. 12 m. W.

Prince's Island, where we lay about ten days, is, in the Malay language, called *Pulo Selan*; and in the language of the inhabitants, *Pulo Paneitan*. It is a small island, situated in the western mouth of the Streight of Sunda. It is woody, and a very small part of it only has been cleared: there is no remarkable hill upon it, yet the English call the small eminence which is just over the landing-place, the Pike. It was formerly much frequented by the India ships of many nations, but especially those of England, which of late have forsaken it, as it is said, because the water is bad; and touch either at North Island, a small island that lies on the coast of Sumatra, without the east entrance of the Streight, or at New Bay, which lies only a few leagues from Prince's Island, at neither of which places any considerable quantity of other refreshments can be procured. Prince's Island is, upon the whole, certainly more eligible than either of them; and though the water is brackish, if it is filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up it will be found excellent.

The first and second, and perhaps the third ship that comes in the season may be tolerably supplied with turtle; but those that come afterwards must be content with small ones. Those that we bought were of the green kind, and at an average cost us about a half-penny or three farthings a pound. We were much disappointed to find them neither fat nor well flavoured; and we imputed it to their having been long kept in crawls or pens of brackish water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spanish dollar, which is about five pence apiece; the small deer cost us two pence apiece, and the larger, of which two only were brought down, a rupee. Many kinds of fish are to be had here, which the natives sell by hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Cocoa-nuts we bought at

the rate of a hundred for a dollar, if they were picked; and if they were taken promiscuously, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in great plenty; we procured also some pine apples, water melons, jaccas, and pumpkins; besides rice, the greater part of which was of the mountain kind, that grows in dry land; yams, and several other vegetables, at a very reasonable rate.

The inhabitants are Javanese, whose Raja is subject to the Sultan of Bantam. Their customs are very similar to those of the Indians about Batavia; but they seem to be more jealous of their women, for we never saw any of them during all the time that we were there, except one by chance in the woods, as she was running away to hide herself. They profess the Mahometan religion, but I believe there is not a mosque in the whole island: we were among them during the fast, which the Turks call *Ramadan*, which they seemed to keep with great rigour, for not one of them would touch a morsel of victuals, or even chew their beetle till sun-set.

Their food is nearly the same as that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, called *Cycas circinalis*, with which, upon the coast of New Holland, some of our people were made sick, and some of our hogs poisoned.

Upon observing these nuts to be part of their food, we enquired by what means they deprived them of their deleterious quality; and they told us, that they first cut them into thin slices, and dried them in the sun, then steeped them in fresh water for three months, and afterwards, pressing out the water, dried them in the sun a second time; but we learnt that, after all, they are eaten only in times of scarcity, when they mix them with their rice to make it go farther.

The houses of their town are built upon piles, or pillars, four or five feet above the ground: upon these is laid a floor of bamboo canes, which are placed at some distance from each other, so as to leave a free passage for the air from below: the walls also are of bamboo, which
are

ate
fast
fran
wel
the
this
mid
two
hand
tow
the
they
left
fore,
two
passa
in the
that
gers;
the le
is no
rich,
the h
riches
instea

As
live i
crops
sional
exactl
they a
the gr

The
cover
except
of fil
someti
would
ed, in

are interwoven, hurdlewise, with small sticks, that are fastened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building: it has a sloping roof, which is so well thatched with palm leaves, that neither the sun nor the rain can find entrance. The ground over which this building is erected, is an oblong square. In the middle of one side is the door, and in the middle between that and the end of the house, towards the left hand, is a window: a partition runs out from each end towards the middle, which, if continued, would divide the whole floor into two equal parts, longitudinally, but they do not meet in the middle, so that an opening is left over-against the door; each end of the house therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two rooms, like stalls in a stable, all open towards the passage from the door to the wall on the opposite side: in that next the door, on the left hand, the children sleep; that opposite to it, on the right hand, is allotted to strangers; the master and his wife sleep in the inner room on the left hand, and that opposite to it is the kitchen. There is no difference between the houses of the poor and the rich, but in the size; except that the royal palace, and the house of a man, whose name is *Gundang*, the next in riches and influence to the King, is walled with boards instead of being wattled with sticks and bamboo.

As the people are obliged to abandon the town, and live in the rice-fields at certain seasons, to secure their crops from the birds and the monkies, they have occasional houses there for their accommodation. They are exactly the same as the houses in the town, except that they are smaller, and are elevated eight or ten feet above the ground instead of four.

The disposition of the people, as far as we could discover it, is good. They dealt with us very honestly, except, like all other Indians, and the itinerant retailers of fish in London, they asked sometimes twice, and sometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged, in different proportions, to a considerable number

of

of the natives, and it would have been difficult to purchase it in separate lots, they found out a very easy expedient with which every one was satisfied: they put all that was bought of one kind, as plantains, or coconuts, together, and when we had agreed for the heap, they divided the money that was paid for it, among those of whose separate party it consisted, in a proportion corresponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they changed our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five shillings, for a Spanish dollar, and ninety-six, amounting to two shillings, for a Bengal roupee.

They all speak the Malay language, though they have a language of their own, different both from the Malay and the Javanese. Their own language they call *Catta Gunung*, the language of the mountains; and they say that it is spoken upon the mountains of Java, whence their tribe originally migrated, first to New Bay, and then to their present station, being driven from their first settlement by tigers, which they found too numerous to subdue. I have already observed, that several languages are spoken by the native Javanese, in different parts of their island; but when I say that the language of these people is different from the Javanese, I mean that it is different from the language which is spoken at Samarang, a place that is distant only one day's journey from the residence of the emperor of Java. The following is a list of corresponding words in the languages of Prince's Island, Java, and Malacca,

ENGLISH.	PRINCE'S ISLAND.	JAVANESE.	MALAY.
<i>A man</i>	Jalma	Oong Lanang	Oran Lacki Lacki
<i>A woman</i>	Becang	Oong Wadong	Parampung
<i>A child.</i>	Oroculatacke	Lari	Anack
<i>The head</i>	Holo	Undafs	Capalla
<i>The nose</i>	Erung	Erung	Edung
<i>The eyes</i>	Mata	Moto	Mata
<i>The ears</i>	Chole	Cuping	Cuping

ENGLISH.

E
The
The
The
The
The
A w
A ba
A fir

In
each
chof
who
are
lang
to w
that
lang
the c
in th
four

ENGL
An ey
To ea
To dr
To hi
A loy
Rain
Bamb
A bre
A bir
A fist
The f
A lob
Yams
To bu
A mo
To Jer
Cocco
In An

ENGLISH.	PRINCE'S ISLAND.	JAVANESE.	MALAY.
<i>The teeth</i>	Cutock	Untu	Ghigi
<i>The belly</i>	Beatung	Wuttong	Prot
<i>The backside</i>	Serit	Celit	Pantat
<i>The thigh</i>	Pimping	Poopoo	Paha
<i>The knee</i>	Hullootoor	Duncul	Lontour
<i>The leg</i>	Metis	Sickil	Kauki
<i>A nail</i>	Cucu	Cucu	Cucu
<i>A hand</i>	Langan	Tangan	Tangan
<i>A finger</i>	Ramo Langan	Jari	Jaring

In this specimen of the languages of places so near to each other, the names of different parts of the body are chosen, because they are easily obtained from people whose language is utterly unknown, and because they are more likely to be part of the original stems of the language, than any other, as types of the first objects to which they would give names. It is very remarkable that the Malay, the Javanese, and the Prince's Island language, have words, which, if not exactly similar to the corresponding words in the language of the islands in the South Seas, are manifestly derived from the same source, as will appear from the following table :

ENGLISH.	SOUTH SEA.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S I.
<i>An eye</i>	Matta	Mata	Moto	Mata
<i>To eat</i>	Maa	Macan	Mangan	
<i>To drink</i>	Einu	Menuum	Gnumbe	
<i>To kill</i>	Matte	Matte	Matte	
<i>A louse</i>	Outou	Coutou		
<i>Rain</i>	Luwa	Udian	Udan	
<i>Bamboo cane</i>	Owhe			Awe
<i>A breast</i>	Eu	Soufou	Soufou	
<i>A bird</i>	Mannu		Mannu	Maunuck
<i>A fish</i>	Eyca	Ican	Iwa	
<i>The foot</i>	Tapao		Tapaan	
<i>A lobster</i>	Tooura	Udang	Urang	
<i>Yams</i>	Eufwhe	Ubi	Urve	
<i>To bury</i>	Etannou	Tannam	Tandour	
<i>A mosquito</i>	Enammou	Gnamuck		
<i>To scratch</i>	Hearu	Garru	Garu	
<i>Cocco's roots</i>	Taro	Tallas	Talas	
<i>In-land</i>	Uta	Utan		This

This similitude is particularly remarkable in the words expressing number, which at first sight seems to be no inconsiderable proof that the science at least of these different people has a common root. But the names of numbers in the island of Madagascar, are in some instances similar to all these, which is a problem still more difficult to solve. That the names of numbers, in particular, are in a manner common to all these countries, will appear from the following comparative table, which Mr Banks drew up, with the assistance of a negro slave, born at Madagascar, who was on board an English ship at Batavia, and sent to him to gratify his curiosity on this subject.

English.	S. Sea Islands.	Malay.	Javanese.	Prince's I.	Madagascar.
One	Tabie	Satou	Sigi	Hegie	Iffe
Two	Rua	Dua	Lorou	Dua	Rua
Three	Torou	Tiga	Tullu	Tollu	Tellou
Four	Haa	Ampat	Pappat	Opat	Effats
Five	Reina	Lima	Limo	Limah	Limi
Six	Wheney	Annam	Nunnam	Gunnap	Ene
Seven	Hetu	Tudju	Petu	Tudju	Titou
Eight	Waru	Delapau	Wolo	Delapan	Walon
Nine	Iva	Sembilan	Songô	Salapan	Sivi
Ten	Ahouroa	Sapoulou	Sapoulou	Sapoulou	Tourou

In the language of Madagascar, there are other words similar to words of the same import in the Malay. The nose in Malay is called *Erung*, at Madagascar, *Ourou*; *Lida*, the tongue, is *Lala*; *Tangan*, the hand, is *Tang*; and *Tanna*, the ground, is *Taan*.

From the similitude between the language of the Eastern Indies, and the islands of the South Sea, conjectures may be formed with respect to the peopling those countries, which cannot easily be referred to Madagascar. The inhabitants of Java and Madagascar appear to be a different race; the Javanese is of an olive complexion, and has long hair; the native of Madagascar is black, and his head is not covered with hair, but

wool;

wool
their
pear
perf
Fran
differ
yet i
were
tives
ward
child
the c
the C
born
it be
differ
tures
nancy
cause
for it
in the
form
by m
the f
born
each
Welc
sonab
act p
nizab
we ca
harpl
duce
effe
exist
ceive
inhab
nor c
one c
Vol

n the words
ns to be no
of these dif-
ne names of
in some in-
m still more
ers, in par-
e countries,
able, which
negro slave,
nglish ship
uriosity on

Madagascar.

Iffe
Rua
Tellou
Effats
Limi
Ene
Titou
Walon
Sivi
Tourou

er words
lay. The
, Ourou;
is Tang;

e of the
ea, con-
peopling
d to Ma-
scar ap-
an olive
Madagaf-
air, but
wool;

wool; and yet, perhaps, this will not conclude against their having common ancestors so strongly as at first appears. It does not seem less difficult to account for the personal difference between a native of England and France, as an effect of mere local situation, than for the difference between the natives of Java and Madagascar; yet it has never been supposed, that England and France were not peopled from common ancestors. If two natives of England marry in their own country, and afterwards remove to our settlements in the West Indies, the children that are conceived and born there will have the complexion and cast of countenance that distinguish the Creole; if they return, the children conceived and born afterwards, will have no such characteristics. If it be said that the mother's mind being impressed with different external objects, impresses corresponding features and complexion upon the child during her pregnancy, it will be as difficult to refer the effect into this cause, upon mere physical principles, as into the other; for it can no more be shewn how a mere idea, conceived in the mother's imagination, can change the corporeal form of her infant, than how its form can be changed by mere local situation. We know that people within the small circle of Great Britain and Ireland, who are born at the distance of two or three hundred miles from each other, will be distinguished by the Scotch face, the Welch face, and the Irish face; may we not then reasonably suppose, that there are in nature qualities which act powerfully as efficient causes, and yet are not cognizable by any of the five modes of perception which we call senses? A deaf man, who sees the string of a harpsichord vibrate, when a corresponding tone is produced by blowing into a flute at a distance, will see an effect of which he can no more conceive the cause to exist in the blowing air into the flute, than we can conceive the cause of the personal difference of the various inhabitants of the globe to exist in mere local situation; nor can he any more form an idea of the cause itself, in one case, than we can in the other: what happens to

him then, in consequence of having but four senses instead of five, may, with respect to many phænomena of nature, happen to us, in consequence of having but five senses instead of six, or any greater number.

Possibly, however, the learning of ancient *Ægypt* might run in two courses, one through Africa, and the other through Asia, disseminating the same words in each, especially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communication with each other.

We now made the best of our way for the Cape of Good Hope, but the seeds of disease which we had received at Batavia began to appear with the most threatening symptoms in dysenteries and slow fevers. Left the water which we had taken in at Prince's Island should have had any share in our sickness, we purified it with lime, and we washed all parts of the ship between decks with vinegar, as a remedy against infection. Mr Banks was among the sick, and for some time there was no hope of his life. We were very soon in a most deplorable situation; the ship was nothing better than an hospital, in which those that were able to go about, were too few to attend the sick, who were confined to their hammocks; and we had almost every night a dead body to commit to the sea. In the course of about six weeks, we buried Mr Sporing, a gentleman who was in Mr Banks's retinue, Mr Parkinson, his natural history painter, Mr Green the astronomer, the boatswain, the carpenter and his mate, Mr Monkhouse the midshipman, who had sostered the ship after she had been stranded on the coast of New Holland, our old jolly fall-maker and his assistant, the ship's cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenter's crew, a midshipman, and nine seamen; in all three and twenty persons, besides the seven that we buried at Batavia.

Our

Our Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope; some Remarks on the Run from Java Head to that Place; a Description of the Cape, and of Saint Helena; with some Account of the Hottentots, and the Return of the Ship to England.

ON Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock in the morning, we anchored off the Cape of Good Hope, in seven fathom with an ouzy bottom. The west point of the bay called the Lion's Tail, bore W.N.W. and the castle S.W. distant about a mile and a half. I immediately waited upon the Governor, who told me that I should have every thing the country afforded. My first care was to provide a proper place ashore for the sick, which were not a few; and a house was soon found, where it was agreed they should be lodged and boarded at the rate of two shillings a head per day.

Our run from Java Head, to this place, afforded very few subjects of remark that can be of use to future navigators; such as occurred, however, I shall set down. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general south east trade wind, during which time, we did not advance above 5 d. to the southward, and 3 d. to the west, having variable light airs, interrupted by calms, with sultry weather, and an unwholesome air, occasioned probably by the load of vapours which the eastern trade wind, and westerly monsoons, bring into these latitudes, both which blow in these seas at the time of year when we happened to be there. The easterly wind prevails as far as 13 or 12 d. S. and the westerly as far as 6 or 8 d. in the intermediate space the winds are variable, and the air, I believe, always unwholesome; it certainly aggravated the diseases which

we brought with us from Batavia, and particularly the flux, which was not in the least degree checked by any medicine, so that whoever was seized with it, considered himself as a dead man; but we had no sooner got into the trade wind, than we began to feel its salutary effects: we buried, indeed, several of our people afterwards, but they were such as had been taken on board in a state so low and feeble that there was scarcely a possibility of their recovery. At first we suspected that this dreadful disorder might have been brought upon us by the water that we took on board at Prince's Island, or even by the turtle that we bought there; but there is not the least reason to believe that this suspicion was well grounded, for all the ships that came from Batavia at the same season, suffered in the same degree, and some of them even more severely, though none of them touched at Prince's Island in their way.

A few days after we left Java, we saw boobies about the ship for several nights successively, and as these birds are known to roost every night on shore, we thought them an indication that some island was not far distant; perhaps it might be the island of Selam, which, in different charts, is very differently laid down both in name and situation.

The variation of the compass off the west coast of Java is about 3 d. W. and so it continued without any sensible variation, in the common track of ships to the longitude of 288 d. W. latitude 22 S. after which it increased apace, so that in longitude 295 d. latitude 23 d. the variation was 10 d. 20 m. W. in seven degrees more of longitude, and one of latitude, it increased two degrees; in the same space, farther to the west, it increased five degrees: in latitude 28 d. longitude 314 d. it was 24 d. 20 m. in latitude 29 d. longitude 317 d. it was 26 d. 10 m. and was then stationary for the space of about ten degrees farther to the west; but in latitude 34 d. longitude 333 d. we observed it twice to be 28½ d. W. and this was its greatest variation, for in latitude 35½ d. longitude 337 d. it was 24 d. and continued gradually

to decrease; so that off Cape Anguillas it was 22 d. 30 m. and in Table Bay 20 d. 30 m. W:

As to currents it did not appear that they were at all considerable, till we came within a little distance of the meridian of Madagascar; for after we had made 52 d. of longitude from Java Head, we found, by observation, that our error in longitude was only two degrees, and it was the same when we had made only nineteen. This error might be owing partly to a current setting to the westward, partly to our not making proper allowances for the setting of the sea before which we run, and perhaps to an error in the assumed longitude of Java Head. If that longitude is erroneous, the error must be imputed to the imperfection of the charts of which I made use in reducing the longitude from Batavia, to that place, for there can be no doubt but that the longitude of Batavia is well determined. After we had passed the longitude of 307 d. the effects of the westerly currents began to be considerable; for in three days, our error in longitude was 1 d. 5 m. the velocity of the current kept increasing, as we proceeded to the westward, in so much that for five days successively after we made the land, we were driven to the S. W. or S. W. by W. not less than twenty leagues a day; and this continued till we were within sixty or seventy leagues of the Cape, where the current set sometimes one way, and sometimes the other, though inclining rather to the westward.

After the boobies had left us, we saw no more birds till we got nearly abreast of Madagascar, where, in latitude $27\frac{1}{2}$ d. S. we saw an albatross, and after that time we saw them every day in great numbers, with birds of several other sorts, particularly one about as big as a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yellowish bill. These birds became more numerous as we approached the shore, and as soon as we got into soundings we saw gannets, which we continued to see as long as we were upon the bank which stretches off Anguillas to the distance of forty leagues, and extends along the shore to the westward, from Cape False, according to some charts,

one hundred and sixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is however useful as a direction to shipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

While we lay here, the Houghton Indiaman failed for England, who, during her stay in India, lost by sickness between thirty and forty men; and when she left the Cape had many in a helpless condition with the scurvy. Other ships suffered in the same proportion, who had been little more than twelve months absent from England; our sufferings therefore were comparatively light, considering that we had been absent near three times as long.

Having lain here to recover the sick, procure stores, and perform several necessary operations upon the ship and rigging, till the 13th of April, I then got all the sick on board, several of whom were still in a dangerous state, and having taken leave of the Governor, I unmoored the next morning, and got ready to sail.

The Cape of Good Hope has been so often described, and is so well known in Europe, that I shall mention only a few particulars, which in other relations are omitted or misrepresented.

Notwithstanding all that has been said to the contrary, no country that we saw during the voyage makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more sterile desert. The land over the Cape, which constitutes the peninsula formed by Table Bay on the north, and False Bay on the south, consists of high mountains, altogether naked and desolate: the land behind these to the east, which may be considered as the isthmus, is a plain of vast extent, consisting almost wholly of a light kind of sea sand, which produces nothing but heath, and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the spots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the same proportion to the whole as one to one thousand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and most of these little spots lie at a considerable distance
from

from
belie
whic
prop
Dute
days
nine
to the
clude
comp
thithe
journ
We w
not ha
neigh
bour v
the co
who se
perfed
countr
demon
from E
saw no
was fix
than a
leg, suc
vantage
of the c
The
from it
about a
general
ed only
winds v
dangero
crossing
street th
row of
yield an

from each other. There is also the greatest reason to believe, that in the interior parts of this country, that which is capable of cultivation does not bear a greater proportion to that which is incorrigibly barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had settlements eight and twenty days journey up the country, a distance equal to at least nine hundred miles, from which they bring provisions to the Cape by land; so that it seems reasonable to conclude that provisions are not to be had within a less compass. While we were at the Cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the distance of fifteen days journey, and brought his young children with him. We were surpris'd at this, and asked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour: Neighbour! said the man, I have no neighbour within less than five days journey of me. Surely the country must be deplorably barren in which those who settle only to raise provisions for a market, are dispersed at such distances from each other. That the country is every where destitute of wood appears to demonstration; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almost as dear as food. We saw no tree, except in plantations near the town, that was six feet high; and the stems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, had roots as thick as an arm or a leg, such is the influence of the winds here to the disadvantage of vegetation, setting the sterility of the soil out of the question.

The only town which the Dutch have built here is, from its situation, called Cape Town, and consists of about a thousand houses, neatly built of brick, and in general whited on the outside; they are however covered only with thatch, for the violence of the south east winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The streets are broad and commodious, all crossing each other at right angles. In the principal street there is a canal, on each side of which is planted a row of oaks that have flourished tolerably well, and yield an agreeable shade: there is a canal in one other part

part of the town, but the slope of the ground in the course of both is so great, that they are furnished with floodgates, or locks, at intervals of little more than fifty yards.

A much greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch in this place than at Batavia; as the town is supported principally by entertaining strangers, and supplying them with necessaries, every man, to a certain degree, imitates the manners and customs of the nation with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are so faithful to the mode of their country, that not one of them will stir without a chaudpied or chauffet, which is carried by a servant that it may be ready to place under her feet whenever she shall sit down. This practice is the more remarkable, as very few of these chauffets have fire in them, which, indeed, the climate renders unnecessary.

The women in general are very handsome; they have fine clear skins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of constitution, and high health. They make the best wives in the world, both as mistresses of a family and mothers; and there is scarcely a house that does not swarm with children.

The air is salutary in a high degree; so that those who bring diseases hither from Europe, generally recover perfect health in a short time; but the diseases that are brought from India are not so certainly cured.

Notwithstanding the natural sterility of the climate, industry has supplied this place with all the necessaries, and even the luxuries of life in the greatest profusion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the cattle and sheep are natives of the country; the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that spread to a much wider extent. The sheep are clothed with a substance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous size; we saw some that weighed twelve pounds, and were told that there were many much larger. Good butter is made of the milk of the cows, but the cheese is very much inferior to our own

ow
and
exa
qua
ed,
and
fruit
form
the
no l
duce
Euro
only
town
is m
infer
T
to lo
of w
the r
for w
hired
shillin
to use
those
Gent
we w
At
have
mile l
each
that a
where
afford
as, ex
there
sheph
greate
small
- Vol.

own: Here are goats, but they are never eaten, hogs, and a variety of poultry. Hares are also found here, exactly like those of Europe; antelopes of many kinds, quails of two sorts, and bustards, which are well flavoured, but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley, and the gardens European vegetables, and fruit of all kinds, besides plantains, guavas, jambu, and some other Indian fruits, but these are not in perfection; the plantains in particular, are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooseberries. The vineyards also produce wine of various sorts, but not equal to those of Europe, except the Constantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles distant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made that is called by the same name, but is generally inferior.

The common method in which strangers live here, is to lodge and board with some of the inhabitants, many of whose houses are always open for their reception: the rates are from five shillings to two shillings a day, for which all necessaries are found. Coaches may be hired at four and twenty shillings a day, and horses at six shillings; but the country affords very little temptation to use them. There are no public entertainments; and those that are private, to which strangers of the rank of Gentlemen are always admitted, were suspended while we were there by the breaking out of the measles.

At the farther end of the High street, the Company have a garden, which is about two thirds of an English mile long; the whole is divided by walks that intersect each other at right angles, and are planted with oaks, that are clipped into wall hedges, except in the center walk, where they are suffered to grow to their full size, and afford an agreeable shade, which is the more welcome, as, except the plantations by the sides of the two canals, there is not a single tree that would serve even for a shepherd's bush, within many miles of the town. The greater part of this garden is kitchen ground: but two small squares are allotted to botanical plants, which did

not appear to be so numerous by one half as they were when Oldenland wrote his catalogue. At the farther end of the garden is a menagerie, in which there are many birds and beasts that are never seen in Europe; particularly a beast called by the Hottentots *Coe Doe*, which is as large as a horse, and has the fine spiral horns which are sometimes seen in private and public collections of curiosities.

Of the natives of this country, we could learn but little except from report; for there were none of their habitations, where alone they retain their original customs, within less than four days journey from the town; those that we saw at the Cape were all servants to Dutch farmers, whose cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meanest kind. These are in general of a slim make, and rather lean than plump, but remarkably strong, nimble, and active. Their size is nearly the same with that of Europeans, and we saw some that were six feet high: their eyes are dull and without expression: their skins are of the colour of soot, but that is in a great measure caused by the dirt, which is so wrought into the grain that it cannot be distinguished from complexion; for I believe they never wash any part of their bodies. Their hair curls strongly, not like a negro's, but falls in ringlets about seven or eight inches long. Their clothing consists of a skin, generally that of a sheep, thrown over their shoulders; besides which, the men wear a small pouch in the middle of the waist, and the women, a broad leather flap, both which hang from a girdle or belt that is adorned with beads and small pieces of copper. Both men and women wear necklaces, and sometimes bracelets, of beads; and the women wear rings of hard leather round their ankles, to defend them from the thorns, with which their country every where abounds: some of them have a sandal, made of wood or bark; but the greater part of them are unshod.

To a European, their language appears to be scarcely articulate; besides which it is distinguished by a very remark-

remarkable singularity. At very frequent intervals, while they are speaking, they cluck with the tongue against the roof of the mouth: these clucks do not appear to have any meaning, but rather to divide what they say into sentences. Most of these Hottentots speak Dutch, without any peculiarity of pronunciation.

They are all modest, even to sheepishness; for it was not without the greatest difficulty that we could persuade any of them to dance, or even to speak in their own language to each other, in our presence. We did however both see them dance, and hear them sing; their dances are by turns active and sluggish to excess; sometimes consisting of quick and violent motions, with strange distortions of the body, and unnatural leaps backwards and forwards, with the legs crossing each other; and being sometimes so spiritless that the dancer only strikes the ground first with one foot and then with the other, neither changing place nor moving any other part of his body: the songs also are alternately to quick and slow movements, in the same extremes as the dance.

We made many enquiries concerning these people of the Dutch, and the following particulars are related upon the credit of their report.

Within the boundaries of the Dutch settlements there are several nations of these people, who very much differ from each other in their customs and manner of life: all however are friendly and peaceable, except one clan that is settled to the eastward, which the Dutch call *Bosch men*, and these live entirely by plunder, or rather by theft; for they never attack their neighbours openly, but steal the cattle privately in the night. They are armed however to defend themselves, if they happen to be detected, with lances or assagays, and arrows, which they know how to poison by various ways, some with the juice of herbs, and some with the venom of the serpent called *Cobra di Capelo*; in the hands of these people a stone also is a very formidable weapon, for they can throw it with such force and exactness as repeatedly to hit a dollar at the distance of a hundred paces.

As a defence against these freebooters, the other Indians train up bulls, which they place round their towns in the night, and which, upon the approach of either man or beast, will assemble and oppose them, till they hear the voice of their masters encouraging them to fight, or calling them off, which they obey with the same docility as a dog.

Some nations have the art of melting and preparing copper, which is found among them, probably native; and of this they make broad plates, which they wear as ornaments upon their foreheads. Some of them also know how to harden bits of iron, which they procure from the Dutch, and form into knives, so as to give them temper superior to that of any they can buy.

The chiefs, many of whom are possessors of very numerous herds of cattle, are generally clad in the skins of lions, tygers, or zebras, to which they add fringes, and other ornaments, in a very good taste. Both sexes frequently anoint the body with grease, but never use any that is rancid or foetid, if fresh can be had. Mutton suet and butter are generally used for this purpose; butter is preferred, which they make by shaking the milk in a bag made of the skin of some beast.

We were told that the priest certainly gives the nuptial benediction by sprinkling the bride and bridegroom with his urine. But the Dutch universally declared that the women never wrapped the entrails of sheep round their legs, as they have been said to do, and afterwards make them part of their food. Semicastration was also absolutely denied to be general; but it was acknowledged that some among the particular nation which knew how to melt copper had suffered that operation, who were said to be the best warriors, and particularly to excel in the art of throwing stones.

We were very desirous to determine the great question among natural historians, whether the women of this country have or have not that fleshy flap or apron which has been called the *Sinus pudoris*, and what we learnt I shall relate. Many of the Dutch and Malays,

who

who f
women
rian o
hundre
without
ceeding
somewh
nung de
differen
than hal
the imag
into a fl
of the ab
ial cover
Thus
abitants
es open
om blow
ea, the fl
pen hav
winds blo
irection
near the
istance f
oods.
which sev
and fever
any to
shipping
quare for
e town.
nding a
the oth
y shippi
emy of
ght hu
untry,
ar arm

who said they had received favours from Hottentots women, positively denied its existence; but a physician of the place declared that he had cured many hundreds of venereal complaints, and never saw one without two fleshy, or rather skinny appendages, proceeding from the upper part of the *Labia*, in appearance somewhat resembling the teats of a cow, but flat; they hung down, he said, before the *Pudendum*, and were in different subjects of different lengths, in some not more than half an inch, in others three or four inches: these he imagined to be what some writers have exaggerated into a flap, or apron, hanging down from the bottom of the abdomen, of sufficient extent to render an artificial covering of the neighbouring parts unnecessary.

Thus much for the country, its productions, and inhabitants. The bay is large, safe, and commodious; it lies open indeed to the north-west winds, but they seldom blow hard; yet as they sometimes send in a great sea, the ships moor N. E. and S. W. so as to have an open hawser with north-west winds: the south-east winds blow frequently with great violence, but as this direction is right out of the bay, they are not dangerous. Near the town a wharf of wood is run out to a proper distance for the convenience of landing and shipping goods. To this wharf water is conveyed in pipes, from which several boats may fill water at the same time; and several large boats or hoys are kept by the Company to carry stores and provisions to and from the shipping in the harbour. The bay is defended by a square fort, situated close to the beach on the east side of the town, and by several outworks and batteries extending along the shore, as well on this side of the town as the other; but they are so situated as to be cannonaded by shipping, and are in a manner defenceless against an enemy of any force by land. The garrison consists of eight hundred regular troops, besides militia of the country, in which is comprehended every man able to bear arms. They have contrivances to alarm the whole

COUN-

country by signals in a very short time, and the militia is to repair immediately to the town.

The French at Mauritius are supplied from this place with salted beef, biscuit flour, and wine: the provisions for which the French contracted this year were 500,000 lb. weight of salt beef, 400,000 lb. of flour, 400,000 lb. of biscuit, and 1,200 leaguers of wine.

In the morning of the 14th, we weighed and stood out of the bay; and at five in the evening anchored under Penquin, or Robin Island: we lay here all night, and as I could not sail in the morning for want of wind, I sent a boat to the island for a few trifling articles which we had forgot to take in at the Cape. But as soon as the boat came near the shore, the Dutch hailed her, and warned the people not to land at their peril, bringing down at the same time six men armed with musquets, who paraded upon the beach. The officer who commanded the boat not thinking it worth while to risk the lives of the people on board for the sake of a few cabbages, which were all we wanted, returned to the ship. At first we were at a loss to account for our repulse, but we afterwards recollected, that to this island the Dutch at the Cape banished such criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years proportioned to the offence; and employ them as slaves in digging lime-stone, which, though scarce upon the continent, is in plenty here: and that a Danish ship, which by sickness had lost great part of her crew, and had been refused assistance at the Cape, came down to this island, and sending her boat ashore, secured a guard, and took on board as many of the criminals as she thought proper to navigate her home: we concluded, therefore, that the Dutch, to prevent the rescue of their criminals in time to come, had given order to their people here to suffer no boat of any foreign nation to come ashore.

On the 25th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, we weighed, with a light breeze at S. E. and put to sea. About an hour afterwards, we lost our master, Mr. Robert

Robert
Happil
diford

We
remark
we cro
the glo
quent
Batavi

At d
of St
before

We
improv
the isla
upon it

It is
lantic o
the coa
rica. I
out of t
of an u
leagues

The
found t
they ar
higher
is the hi
the high
the pike
subterra
innume
of fire t
time of
Helena,
external
of the e
always l

Robert Mollineux, a young man of good parts, but unhappily given up to intemperance, which brought on disorders that put an end to his life.

We proceeded in our voyage homeward without any remarkable incident; and in the morning of the 29th, we crossed our first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe in the direction from east to west, and consequently lost a day, for which we made an allowance at Batavia.

At day-break, on the 1st of May, we saw the island of St Helena; and at noon, we anchored in the road before James's fort.

We staid here till the 4th, to refresh, and Mr Banks improved the time in taking the complete circuit of the island, and visiting the most remarkable places upon it.

It is situated as it were in the middle of the vast Atlantic ocean, being four hundred leagues distant from the coast of Africa, and six hundred from that of America. It is the summit of an immense mountain rising out of the sea, which, at a little distance all round it, is of an unfathomable depth, and is no more than twelve leagues long, and six broad.

The seat of volcanoes has, without exception, been found to be the highest part of the countries in which they are found. *Ætna* and *Vesuvius* have no land higher than themselves, in their neighbourhood; *Hecla* is the highest hill in Iceland; volcanoes are frequent in the highest part of the *Andes* in South America; and the pike of *Teneriffe* is known to be the covering of subterraneous fire: these are still burning, but there are innumerable other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct, and has been so from the time of our earliest traditions: among these is *Saint Helena*, where the inequalities of the ground, in its external surface, are manifestly the effect of the sinking of the earth, for the opposite ridges, though separated always by deep, and sometimes by broad vallies, are exactly

actly similar both in appearance and direction; and that the sinking of the earth in these parts was carried by subterraneous fire, is equally manifest from the stones, for some of them, especially those in the bottom of the vallies, are burnt almost to a cinder: in some there are small bubbles, like those that are seen in glass which has been urged almost to fusion, and some, though at first sight they do not appear to have been exposed to the action of great heat, will be found, upon a closer inspection, to contain small pieces of extraneous bodies, particularly mundick, which have yielded to the power of fire, though it was not sufficient to alter the appearance of the stone which contained them.

It appeared, as we approached it on the windward side, like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of amazing height, and consisting of a kind of half friable stone, which shows not the least sign of vegetation; nor is it more promising upon a nearer view: in sailing along the shore, we came so near the huge cliffs, that they seemed to over-hang the ship, and the tremendous effect of their giving way, made us almost fear the event: at length we opened a valley, called Chappel Valley, which resembles a large trench; and in this valley we discovered the town. The bottom of it is slightly covered with herbage, but the sides are as naked as the cliffs that are next the sea. Such is the first appearance of the island in its present cultivated state, and the first hills must be passed before the vallies look green, or the country displays any other marks of fertility.

The town stands just by the sea side, and the far greater part of the houses are ill built; the church, which originally was a mean structure, is in ruins, and the market-house is nearly in the same condition.

The white inhabitants are all English, who, as they are not permitted by the East India Company, to whom the island belongs, to carry on any trade or commerce on their own account, subsist wholly by supplying such ships as touch at the place with refreshments, which,

how-

how
tility
whi
all t
This
of d
upon
on t
gum
the
found
Euro

He
saddle
are th
which
ground
where
advant
island
the slav
simple
burden
merous
world,
out par
of whic
to say,
frequen
Dutch,
nerally
and the
Amo
not nu
trees are
have be
found in
ness alm
always f
Vol. I.

however, they do not provide in proportion to the fertility of the soil, and the temperament of the climate, which would enable them, by cultivation, to produce all the fruits and vegetables both of Europe and India. This island, indeed, small as it is, enjoys the advantages of different climates, for the cabbage trees which grow upon the highest ridges, can by no art be cultivated upon the ridges next below, where the red wood and gum wood both flourish, which will not grow upon the ridges above, and neither of the three are to be found in the vallies, which, in general, are covered with European plants, and the more common ones of India.

Here are a few horses, but they are kept only for the saddle, so that all labour is performed by slaves; nor are they furnished with any of the various machines which art has invented to facilitate their task. The ground is not every where too steep for a cart, and where it is, the wheelbarrow might be used with great advantage, yet there is no wheelbarrow in the whole island; every thing is conveyed from place to place by the slaves, and they are not furnished even with the simple convenience of a porter's knot, but carry their burden upon their heads. They are, indeed, very numerous, and are brought from almost every part of the world, but they appeared to be a miserable race, worn out partly by excessive labour, and partly by ill usage, of which they frequently complained; and I am sorry to say, that instances of wanton cruelty are much more frequent among my countrymen here, than among the Dutch, who are, and perhaps not without reason, generally reproached with want of humanity at Batavia and the Cape.

Among the native products of this island, which are not numerous, must be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinct, and are not remembered to have been plentiful: pieces of the wood are frequently found in the vallies, of a fine black colour, and a hardness almost equal to iron: these pieces, however, are always so short and crooked, that no use can be made

of them. Whether the tree is the same with that which produces ebony upon the isle of Bourbon, or the islands adjacent, is not known, as the French have not yet published any account of it.

There are but few insects in this place, but there is a species of snail found upon the tops of the highest ridges, which probably has been there since the original creation of their kind, at the beginning of the world. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing which was not deposited here at its creation, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place so severed from the rest of the world, by seas of immense extent, except the hypothesis that has been mentioned on another occasion be adopted, and this rock be supposed to have been left behind, when a large tract of country, of which it was part, subsided by some convulsion of nature, and was swallowed up in the ocean.

At one o'clock in the afternoon, of the 4th of May, we weighed and stood out of the Road, in company with the Portland man of war, and twelve sail of Indianen.

We continued to sail in company with the fleet, till the 10th in the morning, when, perceiving that we sailed much heavier than any other ship, and thinking it for that reason probable that the Portland would get home before us, I made the signal to speak with her, upon which Captain Elliot himself came on board, and I delivered to him a letter for the Admiralty, with a box, containing the common log books of the ship, and the journals of some of the officers.

We continued in company, however, till the 23d in the morning, and then there was not one of the ships in sight. About one o'clock in the afternoon, died our First Lieutenant Mr Hicks, and in the evening we committed his body to the sea, with the usual ceremonies. The disease of which he died, was a consumption, and as he was not free from it when we sailed from England, it may truly be said that he was dying during the whole voyage, though his decline was very gradual till we

came

came
Clerk
man.
Ou
somet
our co
land, v
Nichol
land;
mornin
we we
anchor

Who
wonder
most in
circled i
ing beat
hole in l
adoratio
all his w

A

came to Batavia: the next day, I gave Mr Charles Clerk an order to act as Lieutenant in his room, a young man who was extremely well qualified for that station.

Our rigging and sails were now become so bad, that something was giving way every day. We continued our course, however, in safety till the 10th of June, when land, which proved to be the Lizard, was discovered by Nicholas Young, the same boy that first saw New Zealand; on the 11th we ran up the channel, at six in the morning of the 12th we passed Beachy Head, at noon we were abreast of Dover, and about three came to an anchor in the Downs, and went ashore at Deal.

Whoever has carefully read, and duly considered the wonderful protection of this ship, in cases of danger the most imminent and astonishing, particularly when encircled in the wide ocean with rocks of coral, her sheathing beaten off, her false keel floating by her side, and a hole in her bottom, will naturally turn his thoughts with adoration to that Divine Being, whose mercies are over all his works!

END OF THE FIRST VOYAGE.

[The main body of the page contains extremely faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the document.]

Tr

Ca

CAPTAIN COOK'S
SECOND
VOYAGE,

Commenced in 1772, and finished in 1775,

IN HIS MAJESTY'S SHIPS

THE RESOLUTION AND ADVENTURE.

INCLUDING

Capt. Furneaux's Journal of his Proceedings in the Adventure,

During the Separation of the two Ships.

I N T R O D U C T I O N .

Objects of the Voyage—Resolution and Adventure purchased by Government for the Service—Captains Cook and Furneaux appointed—Victualling of the Ships—Instructions of the Admiralty Board, &c.

THE King's expectations were not wholly answered by former discoveries, and therefore his Majesty projected this Second Voyage of Captain Cook, and the Navy-board was ordered to equip two such ships as were most suitable to the service. Accordingly two vessels were purchased of Capt. W. M. Hammond, of Hull, being about fourteen or sixteen months old. They were both built at Whitby, by the same person who built the Endeavour. The largest of the two, named the Resolution, burthen four hundred and sixty-two tons, was sent to Deptford to be fitted out; and the Adventure, three hundred and thirty-six tons, was equipped at Woolwich.

On the 28th of November, 1771, Captain Cook was appointed to the command of the Resolution; and Tobias Furneaux, who had been Second Lieutenant with Captain Wallis, was promoted to the command of the Adventure. The Resolution had one hundred and twelve hands on board, officers included: and the Adventure eighty-one. In the former James Cook was captain, Robert P. Cooper, Charles Clerk, and Richard Pickerfgill, were appointed lieutenants. Joseph Gilbert was master; James Grey, boatswain; James Wallis, carpenter; Robert Anderson, gunner; and James Pat-ten, surgeon. John Edgcumbe was lieutenant of the marines,

marine
one dr
crew c
two fu
arms, c
maker,
three,
his ma
men.
tain, J
Peter J
boatsw
gunner
midsh
eight,
Scott w
mand
and eig
The
with th
Victual
equipm
ed them
they w
every e
order th
respect
in them
vantage
who ha
venture
commit
with a
visions.
one for
emerge
lines an
innume
merce c

marines, under whom were one serjeant, two corporals, one drummer and fifteen privates. The rest of the crew consisted of three master's mates, six midshipmen, two surgeon's mates, one captain's clerk, one master at arms, one corporal, one armourer, his mate, one sail-maker, his mate, three boatswain's mates, carpenter's three, gunner's two, four carpenter's crew, one cook, his mate, six quarter masters, and forty-five able seamen. In the Adventure, Tobias Furneaux was captain, Joseph Shank and Arthur Kempe, lieutenants; Peter Fannin was appointed master, Edward Johns boatswain, William Offerd carpenter, Andrew Gloag gunner, Thomas Andrews surgeon: of master's mates, midshipmen, &c. as above, the number was twenty-eight, and thirty-three able-bodied seamen. James Scott was lieutenant of the marines, under whose command were one serjeant, one corporal, one drummer, and eight privates.

The two ships were ordered to be got in readiness with the utmost expedition, and both the Navy and Victualling boards paid an uncommon attention to their equipment; even the first Lord of the Admiralty visited them from time to time; in consequence of which they were not restrained by ordinary establishments, every extra article thought necessary being allowed, in order that they might be fitted completely, and in every respect to the satisfaction of those who were to embark in them. Indeed Captain Cook sailed with greater advantages in this expedition, than any of his predecessors who had gone out before on discoveries; and we may venture to say, no future commander will ever have a commission of a more liberal kind, nor be furnished with a greater profusion of the very best stores and provisions. He had the frame of a vessel of twenty tons, one for each ship, to serve occasionally, or upon any emergency, as tenders: he had on board fishing nets, lines and hooks of every kind; he was supplied with innumerable articles of small value, adapted to the commerce of the tropical islands: he had on board additional

tional cloathing for the seamen, particularly suited to a cold climate, to all which were added the best instruments for astronomical and nautical observations; in which were included four time-pieces on Mr Harrison's principles, constructed by Mess. Arnold and Kendal. And that nothing might be wanting to procure information, and that could tend to the success of the voyage, a landscape painter, Mr William Hodges, was engaged for this important undertaking, accompanied by Dr John Reinhold Forster and Son, who were thought the most proper persons for the line of Natural History, to which they were appointed with parliamentary encouragement. Mr William Wales, and Mr William Bayley, were likewise engaged to make astronomical observations; the former being placed by the board of longitude, in the Resolution, and Mr Bayley in the Adventure. Nor must we omit to mention the number of medals struck by order of the Lords of the Admiralty, and intended to be left both as presents and testimonies in new discovered countries.

The two ships were victualled and provided with all manner of necessaries for a three years voyage; among which were the following extra articles: 1. Malt, for sweet wort, designed for those whose habit of body might engender the scurvy, and as a remedy for such who might be afflicted with that disorder. The quantity prescribed for each patient, from one to six pints a day, at the discretion of the surgeon. 2. Sour Krout, of which each seaman was to be allowed two pounds a week. This is cabbage salted down, and close packed in casks, after having been properly fermented. It is esteemed by our navigators an excellent antiscorbutic. 3. Cabbage cut small and salted down, to which is added juniper berries, and anniseeds, which are likewise put to the sour krout. 4. Portable soup, very nourishing, and of great utility both for invalids, and those that are in good health. 5. Oranges, rob of lemons, and saloop, for the use of the surgeons, to be administered to the sick and scorbutic only. 6. Marmalade of car-

rots,

rots,
grea
expe
rots,
a con
taste
as th
the p
were
ling-
one
ninet
twelv
nienc
a long
some
provi
quant
Th
tions
comm
island
Hope
comp
other
way t
which
and in
Obser
in wi
all mo
was p
emph
powe
either
dilige
sible;
as mi
be in
Vol

rots, recommended by Baron Storch of Berlin, as a very great antiscorbutic; but it did not as such answer our expectation. This syrup is extracted from yellow carrots, by evaporating the finer parts, till it is brought to a consistence of treacle, which it much resembles both in taste and colour. 7. Juice of wort and beer, inspissated, as the foregoing article, and intended to supply at times the place of beer, by mixing it with water. For this we were indebted to Mr Pelham, secretary of the Victualling-office; the commissioners of which ordered thirty-one half-barrels of this juice to be prepared for trial; nineteen whereof were stowed in the Resolution, and twelve on board the Adventure. Thus all the conveniences necessary for the preservation of health during a long voyage, were provided in abundance; and even some alterations were made in the customary articles of provisions; wheat being substituted in the room of a quantity of oatmeal, and sugar instead of oil.

The tenor and substance of Captain Cook's instructions were, that the Adventure was to be under his command: that the two ships were to proceed to the island of Madeira, from thence to the Cape of Good Hope: that having at this place refreshed the ships' companies, and supplied them with provisions and other necessaries, they were to make the best of their way to the southward, in search of Cape Circumcision, which, by M. Bouvet, is said to be in latitude 54 d. S. and in about 11 d. 20 m. E. longitude, from the Royal Observatory in the Park at Greenwich; that if they fell in with this cape, Captain Cook was to endeavour, by all means in his power, to discover whether the same was part of the supposed continent which had so much employed the national attention of different European powers, or only the promontory of an island: that, in either case, the gentlemen on board the two ships were diligently to explore the same, to the utmost extent possible; and to make such observations of various kinds, as might correspond with the grand object in view, and be in any respect useful to either navigation or commerce;

merce; not omitting at the same time proper remarks on the genius and temper of the inhabitants, whose friendship and alliance they were directed to conciliate, by all probable motives, and prudential means in their power: that they were to proceed on new discoveries to the eastward or westward, as the captains might judge most eligible, endeavouring only to run into as high a latitude, and as near the south pole as possible; that whatever might be the result of their investigations with respect to Cape Circumcision, they were to continue their surveys to the southward, and then to the eastward, either in search of the said continent, should it not have been ascertained, or to make discoveries of such islands as might be seated in the hitherto unexplored and unknown parts of the southern latitudes: that, having circumnavigated the globe, they were to return to Spithead by the way of the Cape of Good Hope: and that to answer the intentions of government in this voyage as fully as possible, when the season of the year rendered it unsafe to continue in high latitudes, they were to repair to some known part to the northward; and after having refitted, &c. they were to return again, at the proper season, to the southward, in prosecution of new discoveries there. These orders were not intended in any respect to cramp Capt. Cook, who was allowed, in case the Resolution should be lost, to continue his voyage in the Adventure: he had to this end assistants out of number: his stay was not even hinted at: he was not obliged to return at any limited time; in short he had ample power, full authority, and, in all unforeseen cases, he was to proceed according to his own discretion, and act entirely as he pleased. A copy of the above instructions were transmitted to Capt. Furneaux, inclosed with Capt. Cook's orders, in which he appointed, should the two ships be separated, the island of Madeira for the first place of rendezvous; Port Praya for the second; the Cape of Good Hope for the third; and New Zealand for the fourth.

CAP-

C
S
Depart
St J
Cape
in D
lution
by th
ON
Sound
Funch
Capt
by a
condu
most
gentle
search
other
moda
Th
Voya

GE.

er remarks
nts, whose
conciliate,
ans in their
discoveries
might judge
as high a
fible; that
ations with
o continue
e eastward,
it not have
uch islands
d and un-
having cir-
o Spithead
nd that to
voyage as
r rendered
were to re-
and after
in, at the
on of new
ded in any
ed, in case
voyage in
t of num-
ot obliged
ad ample
cases, he
n, and act
structions
with Capt.
d the two
the first
the Cape
d for the

CAPTAIN COOK'S

SECOND VOYAGE.

Departure from Plymouth Sound.—Arrival at Madeira—at St Jago—at the Cape of Good Hope.—Departure from the Cape.—Separation of the Ships.—Arrival of the Resolution in Dusky Bay.—Interviews with the Natives.—The Resolution sails to Queen Charlotte's Sound, and is there joined by the Adventure.

ON the 13th of June, 1772, at six o'clock in the morning, both the ships sailed from Plymouth Sound, and on the evening of the 20th anchored in Funchiale Road, in the island of Madeira. At the Captain's and Mr Forster's landing, they were received by a gentleman from the Vice-Consul, Mr Sills, who conducted them to the house of Mr Loughnans, the most considerable English merchant in the place. This gentleman not only obtained leave for Mr Forster to search the island for plants, but procured us every other thing we wanted, and insisted on our accommodating ourselves at his house during our stay.

This place has been already described in the former Voyage. During our stay here, the crews of both ships

CAP-

ships were supplied with fresh beef and onions; and a quantity of the latter was distributed amongst them for sea-store.

Having got on board a supply of water, wine, and other necessaries, we left Maderia on the 1st of August, and steered southward.

Captain Cook now made three puncheons of beer, of the inspissated juice of malt. The proportion was about ten of water to one of juice. We stopped at St Jago for a supply of water, on the 10th; the Captain immediately dispatched an officer to ask leave to water, and purchase refreshments, which was granted. The 14th in the evening having completed our water, and got on board a supply of refreshments, such as hogs, goats, fowls, and fruit, we put to sea, and proceeded on our voyage.

Port Praya, where we anchored, is a small bay, situated about the middle of the south side of the island of St Jago. The water is tolerable, but scarce; and bad getting off, on account of a great surf on the beach. The refreshments to be got here are bullocks, hogs, goats, sheep, poultry, and fruits. The goats are of the antelope kind, so extraordinarily lean, that hardly any thing can equal them; and the bullocks, hogs, and sheep are not much better. Bullocks must be purchased with money; the price is twelve Spanish dollars ahead, weighing between 250 and 300 pounds. Other articles may be got from the natives in exchange for old clothes, &c.

On the 19th, in the afternoon, one of the carpenter's-mates fell overboard, and was drowned. He was over the side, sitting on one of the scuttles; whence, it was supposed he had fallen; for he was not seen till the very instant he sunk under the ship's stern, when all endeavours to save him were too late. This loss was sensibly felt during the voyage, as he was a sober man and a good workman. On the 27th, Captain Furneaux lost one of his petty officers.

With variable winds we advanced but slowly, and with-

witho
when
which
island
latitud

At
land o
tain,
league
it mig
greate
evenin
fight,
the sea
in som
to gen
of opi
howev
bucke
ship,
of ima
pin's l

In t
enorec
chorec
and M
things
comin
us, a
ships
partic
dread
poses

Cap
nied
He re
every
At
princ

without meeting with any thing remarkable till the 23d, when we saw a seal, or as some thought, a sea-lion, which probably might be an inhabitant of one of the islands of Tristian de Cunha, being now nearly in their latitude.

At two in the afternoon on the 29th, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope. The Table Mountain, which is over the Cape Town, distance 12 or 14 leagues, was a good deal obscured by clouds, otherwise it might, from its height, have been seen at a much greater distance. Between eight and nine o'clock this evening, the whole sea, within the compass of our sight, became at once, as it were, illuminated, or, what the seamen call, all on fire. This appearance of the sea, in some degree, is very common; but the cause is not so generally known. Mr Banks and Dr Solander were of opinion it was occasioned by sea insects; Mr Forster, however, seemed not to favour this opinion. Some buckets of water were drawn up from along-side the ship, which was found full of an innumerable quantity of small globular insects, about the size of a common pin's head, and quite transparent.

In the morning we stood into Table Bay, and anchored in five fathom water. We had no sooner anchored than we were visited by the Captain of the port and Mr Brandt. This last gentleman brought off such things as could not fail of being acceptable to persons coming from sea. The Master Attendant also visited us, according to custom, to take an account of the ships; to enquire into the health of the crews; and, in particular, if the small-pox was on board; a thing they dread above all others at the Cape, and for these purposes a surgeon is always one of the visitants.

Captain Cook waited upon the Governor, accompanied by Captain Furneaux and the two Mr Forsters. He received them with great politeness, and promised every assistance the place could afford.

After having visited the Governor, and some other principal persons of the place, we fixed at Mr Brandt's, the

the usual residence of most officers belonging to English ships. This gentleman spares neither trouble nor expence to make his house agreeable to those who favour him with their company, and to accommodate them with every thing they want.

Three or four days after us, two Dutch Indiamen arrived here from Holland, after a passage of between four and five months, in which one lost, by the scurvy and other putrid diseases, 150 men, and the other 41. They sent, on their arrival, great numbers to the hospital in very dreadful circumstances.

It was the 18th of November before we had got ready to put to sea. During this stay the crews of both ships were served every day with fresh beef or mutton, new-baked bread, and as much greens as they could eat. The ships were caulked and painted; and, in every respect, put in as good a condition as when they left England.

Mr Forster, whose whole time was taken up in the pursuit of Natural History and Botany, met with a Swedish gentleman, one Mr Sparrman, who had studied under Dr Linnæus. He, by Captain Cook's consent, embarked as an assistant to Mr Forster, who bore his expences on board, and allowed him a yearly stipend besides.

At three o'clock in the afternoon of the 23d, we weighed, with the wind at N. by W. On the 25th we had abundance of albatrosses about us, several of which were caught with hook and line; and were very well relished by many of the people, notwithstanding they were at this time served with fresh mutton. Judging that we should soon come into cold weather, the captain ordered flops to be served to such as were in want; and gave to each man the fear-nought jacket and trowsers allowed them by the Admiralty.

A violent gale, which was attended with rain and hail, blew at times with such violence, that we could carry no sails; by which means we were driven far to the eastward of our intended course, and no hopes were left

left of
misfor
of our
and w
was no
to ext
ship fe
the the
it was
clear a
left the
such fi
duced
hopes,
P. M.
streng
top-ga
three f
On
see an
for, til
to be a
was fla
directi
Capt. I
off fro
ther v
tion.
The
with f
ceed v
Six of
two m
was th
broke
a view
but w
with

left of reaching Cape Circumcision. But the greatest misfortune that attended us, was the loss of great part of our live-stock, which we had brought from the Cape, and which consisted of sheep, hogs, and geese. There was now a sudden transition from warm, mild weather, to extreme cold and wet, which made every man in the ship feel its effects; for, by this time, the mercury in the thermometer had fallen to 38, whereas at the Cape it was generally at 67 and upwards. The night proved clear and serene, and the only one that was so since they left the Cape; and the next morning the rising sun gave such flattering hopes of a fine day, that we were induced to let all the reefs out of the top-sails. Our hopes, however, soon vanished; for by one o'clock P. M. the wind, which was at N. W. blew with such strength as obliged us to take in all our sails, to strike top-gallant-masts, and to get the spritsail-yard in. The three following days the wind abated.

On the 10th, the weather being hazy, we did not see an island of ice which we were steering directly for, till we were less than a mile from it. It appeared to be about 50 feet high, and half a mile in circuit. It was flat at the top, and its sides rose in a perpendicular direction, against which the sea broke exceedingly high. Capt. Furneaux at first took this ice for land, and hauled off from it, until called back by signal. As the weather was foggy, it was necessary to proceed with caution.

The hazy weather continued on the 11th and 12th with sleet and snow; so that we were obliged to proceed with great caution on account of the ice islands. Six of these we passed this day; some of them near two miles in circuit, and 60 feet high. And yet, such was the force and height of these waves, that the sea broke quite over them. Capt. Cook says, "this exhibited a view which for a few moments was pleasing to the eye; but when we reflected on the danger, the mind was filled with horror. For were a ship to get against the weather

side

side of one of these islands when the sea runs high, she would be dashed to pieces in a moment."

From noon till eight o'clock in the evening, twenty ice islands, of various extent, both for height and circuit, came in view. At about nine o'clock we found no ground with 150 fathom of line.

At eight o'clock on the 14th, we brought-to under a point of the ice, where we had smooth water: and the two Captains fixed on rendezvouses in case of separation, and some other matters for the better keeping company.

Next day, the 15th, we had the wind at N. W. a small gale, thick foggy weather, with much snow; our sails and rigging were all hung with icicles. The fog was so thick, at times, that we could not see the length of the ship; and we had much difficulty to avoid the many islands of ice that surrounded us.

On the 17th, we saw many whales, one seal, penguins, some white birds, another sort of peterel, which is brown and white, and not much unlike a pintado; and some other sorts. We found the skirts of the loose ice to be more broken than usual; and it extended some distance beyond the main field, infomuch that we sailed amongst it the most part of the day; and the high ice islands without were innumerable. The weather was sensibly colder than the thermometer seemed to point out, infomuch that the whole crew complained. In order to enable them to support this the better, the sleeves of their jackets (which were so short as to expose their arms) were lengthened with baize; and had a cap made for each man of the same stuff, together with canvas; which proved of great service to them.

On the 24th, being near an island of ice, which was about 50 feet high, and 400 fathoms in circuit, the master went in the jolly-boat to see if any water ran from it. He soon returned with an account that there was not one drop, or any other appearance of thaw. We sailed this day through several floats, or fields of loose ice, lying in the direction of S. E. and N. W.

On

On
West
we m
more
seeme
steere
loose
it into
der the
we wa
piece o
hundre
minute
which
as to ad
We
at E. N
and at
30th, v
we low
by that
pounds
bill, wh
and dar
On t
clear th
teen lea
On t
as usual
rope wa
afforded
veyed t
than it
than it l
cumber
On t
boats; ;
ice as y
pieces t
Vel. 1.

On the 29th, we came to a resolution, to run as far West as the meridian of Cape Circumcision, provided we met with no impediment, as the distance was not more than 80 leagues, the wind favourable, and the sea seemed to be pretty clear of ice. At one o'clock we steered for an island of ice, thinking, if there were any loose ice round it, to take some on board, and convert it into fresh water. At four we brought to, close under the lee of the island; where we did not find what we wanted, but saw upon it eighty-six penguins. This piece of ice was about half a mile in circuit, and one hundred feet high and upwards; for we lay for some minutes with every sail becalmed under it. The side on which the penguins were, rose sloping from the sea, so as to admit them to creep up it.

We continued to the westward, with a gentle gale at E. N. E. the weather being sometimes tolerably clear, and at other times thick and hazy, with snow. On the 30th, we shot one of the white birds; upon which we lowered a boat into the water to take it up; and by that means killed a penguin which weighed 11½ pounds. The white bird was of the petrel tribe; the bill, which is rather short, is of a colour between black and dark blue; and their legs and feet are blue.

On the 2d of January, 1773, the weather was so clear that we might have seen land at fourteen or fifteen leagues distance.

On the 5th, we had much snow and sleet, which, as usual, froze on the rigging as it fell; so that every rope was covered with the finest transparent ice. This afforded an agreeable sight enough to the eye, but conveyed to the mind an idea of coldness, much greater than it really was; for the weather was rather milder than it had been for some time past, and the sea less incumbered with ice.

On the 9th we brought to, and hoisted out three boats; and, in about five or six hours, took up as much ice as yielded fifteen tons of good fresh water. The pieces taken up were hard, and solid as a rock; some of

them so large, that we were obliged to break them with pike axes, before they could be taken into the boats. Large piles of it were packed upon the quarter-deck, and put into casks, from which, after it was melted, we got water enough for thirty days. A very little salt water adhered to the ice, and the water which this produced was very fresh and good. Excepting the melting and taking away the ice, this is a most expeditious method of supplying ships with water. We observed here several white whales, of an immense size. In two days afterwards we took in more ice, as did the Adventure. Some persons on board, who were ignorant of natural philosophy, were very much afraid that the unmelted ice, which was kept in casks, when the weather altered, would dissolve and burst the casks, in which it was packed, thinking that, in its melted state it would take up more room than in its frozen one. In order to undeceive them, Captain Cook placed a little pot of stamped ice in a temperate cabin, which, as it gradually dissolved, took up much less space than before. This was a convincing argument, and their fears of this sort subsided. As we had now several fine days, we had frequent opportunities of making observations, and trying experiments, which were very serviceable to us on many accounts. The people likewise took the opportunity of washing their cloaths in fresh water.

On the 17th, before noon, we crossed the antarctic circle; and advanced into the southern frigid zone, which to all former navigators had remained impenetrable. We could see several leagues around us, as the weather was tolerable clear. In the afternoon we saw the whole sea covered with ice, from S. E. to S. W. We saw a new species of the petrel, of a brown colour, with a white belly and rump, and a large white spot on the wings; we saw great flights of them, but never any of them fell into the ships. We called it the Antarctic petrel, as such numbers of them were seen hereabouts.

In the afternoon we saw thirty-eight ice islands, large and

and
feren
Gree
whal
petre
We
ern di
the w
have
suppo
direct
French
On
in Cap
Egmo
bers of
islands
and thi
under
far from
stance
pointed
hither.
On th
ped wi
with an
their sid
went at
went at
the 31st
of our f
sion equ
On th
sea we
quainted
divers, v
seas, and
These w
could no

and small. This immense field was composed of different kinds of ice; such as field-ice, as so called by the Greenlandmen, and packed ice. Here we saw several whales playing about the ice, and still large flocks of petrels. Our latitude was now 67 d. 15 m. S.

We did not think it prudent to persevere in a southern direction, as that kind of summer which this part of the world produces was now half spent; and it would have taken up much time to have gone round the ice, supposing it practicable; we therefore resolved to go directly in search of the land lately discovered by the French.

On the 19th, in the evening, we saw a bird, which in Captain Cook's former voyage was called the Port Egmont hen; so called, because there are great numbers of them to be seen at Port Egmont in Falkland islands. They are about the size of a large crow, short and thick, of a chocolate colour, with a white speck under each wing. Those birds are said never to go far from land; and we were induced from this circumstance to hope that land was near, but we were disappointed; the ice islands had probably brought this bird hither.

On the 21st, we saw white albatrosses with black tipped wings. On the 29th, several porpoises passed us with amazing swiftness; they had a large white spot on their sides, which came almost up to their backs. They went at least three times as fast as our vessels, and we went at the rate of seven knots and a half an hour. On the 31st, we passed a large ice island, which at the time of our sailing by was tumbling to pieces. The explosion equalled that of a cannon.

On the 1st of February, we saw large quantities of sea weed floating by the ships. Captain Furneaux acquainted Captain Cook, that he had seen a number of divers, which very much resembled those in the English seas, and likewise a large bed of floating rock-weed. These were certain signs of the vicinity of land; but we could not tell whether it was to the E. or W. We imagined

imagined that no land of any extent lay to the W. because the sea ran so high from the N. E. N. N. W. and W. we therefore steered to the E. lay to in the night, and resumed our course in the morning. We saw two or three egg birds, and passed several pieces of rock-wood, but no other signs of land. We steered northward, and made signal for the Adventure to follow, as she was rather thrown astern by her movement to the eastward. We could not find land in that direction, and we again steered southward. There was an exceeding thick fog on the 4th, on which we lost sight of the Adventure. We fired several signals, but were not answered; on which account we had too much reason to think that a separation had taken place, though we could not well tell what had been the cause of it. Capt. Cook had directed Capt. Furneaux, in case of a separation to cruise three days in that place he last saw the Resolution. Capt. Cook accordingly made short boards, and fired half hour guns till the afternoon of the 7th, when the weather cleared up, and the Adventure was not to be seen in the limits of that horizon. We were obliged to lie to till the 10th, and notwithstanding we kept firing guns, and burning false fires all night, we neither saw nor heard any thing of the Adventure, and were obliged to make sail without her, which was but a dismal prospect, for we were now exposed to the danger of the frozen climate without the company of our fellow voyagers, which before had relieved our spirits, when we considered that we were not entirely alone in case we lost our own vessel. The crew universally regretted the loss of the Adventure; and they seldom looked around the ocean without expressing some concern that we were alone on this unexplored expanse. At this time we had an opportunity of seeing what we had never observed before, the *aurora australis*, which made a very grand and luminous appearance. Nothing material happened to us, but various changes of the weather and climate, till the 25th of March, when land was seen from the mast-head, which greatly exhilarated the spirits of

C
of our fa
sail we c
weather
before u
mouth o
Dusky I
as we
islands,
sent out
signified
water, a
stance h
been 1 r
so much
from the
people
scurvy;
cautions

The
islands
were sh
the varie
evergre
shores v
the wh
feather
great n
them.
as the
di: not
Lieuten
soon fo
gill har
March
of the
and ex
it befo
countr
water,

of our sailors. We steered in for the land with all the sail we could carry, and had the advantage of good weather and a fresh gale. The captain mistook the bay before us for Dusky Bay, the islands that lay at the mouth of it having deceived him. We proceeded for Dusky Bay, in New Zealand, but with much caution as we advanced near the land. We passed several islands, &c. and two leagues up the bay an officer was sent out to look for anchorage, which he found, and signified it by signal. Here we anchored in fifty fathoms water, and very near the shore. This joyful circumstance happened on the 26th of March, after we had been 117 days at sea, and sailed 3660 leagues, without so much as once seeing land. It might be supposed, from the length of time we had been at sea, that the people would have been generally affected by the scurvy; but the contrary happened, owing to the precautions we used.

The country appeared beautiful and pleasing. The islands we passed, before our entrance into Dusky Bay, were shaded with evergreen, and covered with woods; the various shades of autumnal yellow, intermixed with the evergreens, exhibited a delightful contrast. The rocky shores were enlivened with flocks of aquatic birds, and the whole country resounded with the wild notes of the feathered songsters. As soon as we anchored we caught great numbers of fish, which eagerly took the bait laid for them. Our first meal upon fish here was looked upon as the most delightful we had ever made. Capt. Cook did not like the place in which we anchored, and sent Lieutenant Pickersgill in search of a better, which he soon found. The captain liked it, and called it Pickersgill harbour. This we entered, on the twenty-seventh of March, by a channel which was scarcely twice the width of the ship. Here we determined to stay some time, and examine it thoroughly, as no one had ever entered it before, or landed on any of the southern parts of this country. Our situation was admirable for wood and water. Our yards were locked in the branches of trees, and

and near our stern ran a delightful stream of fresh water. We made preparations on shore for making all necessary observations, and performing necessary repairs, &c. &c. The live cattle we had left, which consisted of a few sheep and goats, would not taste the grass which grew on the shore: nor were they very fond of the leaves of tender plants which grew here. When we examined these poor creatures, we found their teeth loose, and they had other symptoms of an inveterate scurvy. We had not hitherto seen any appearance of inhabitants; but on the twenty-eighth some of the officers went on a shooting party in a small boat, and discovering them, returned to acquaint Capt. Cook therewith. Very shortly a canoe came filled with them, within musquet shot of the ship. They stood looking at us for some time, and then returned; we could not prevail upon them to come any nearer, notwithstanding we shewed them every token of peace and friendship. Capt. Cook, with several officers and gentlemen, went in search of them the same day. We found the canoe hauled upon the shore, where were several huts, with fire-places and fishing-nets, but the people had probably retired into the woods. We made but a short stay, and left in the canoe some medals, looking glasses, &c. not chusing to search any further, or enforce an interview which they wished to avoid; we returned accordingly to the ship. Two parties went out the next day, but returned without finding any thing worth notice.

On the first of April we went to see if any thing we had left in the canoe remained there. It did not appear that any body had been there, and none of the things meddled with. On the 2d we again went on shore to search for natural productions. We killed three seals, and found many ducks, wood hens, and wild fowl, several of which we killed. Another party went ashore the same day, and took with them a black dog we had brought from the Cape, who ran into the woods at the first musquet they fired, and would not return. Both parties came back to the ship in the evening.

On

On
a capa
which
intervi
ed in t
discove
us, we
man st
hand,
As we
fear, b
some t
all diff
him: t
him.
and tal
underf
of the
of a fa
tongue
leave t
parted
exceed
dance.
On
sented
thing
We n
confir
ed be
small
large
ed;
seem
ed to
situa
small
to tr
gen

On the 6th, we made a shooting party, and found a capacious cove, where we shot several ducks; on which account we called it Duck Cove. We had an interview with one man and two women, as we returned in the evening, who were natives, and the first that discovered themselves; and had not the man hallooed to us, we should have passed without seeing them. The man stood upon the point of a rock, with a club in his hand, and the women were behind him with spears. As we approached, the man discovered great signs of fear, but stood firm; nor would he move to take up some things that were thrown to him. His fears were all dissipated by Captain Cook's going up to embrace him: the Captain gave him such things as he had about him. The officers and seamen followed the Captain, and talked some time with them; though we could not understand them. In this conversation, the youngest of the women bore the greatest share. A droll fellow of a sailor remarked, that the women did not want tongue in any part of the world. We were obliged to leave them on the approach of night; but before we parted the youngest woman, whose volubility of tongue exceeded every thing we ever met with, gave us a dance.

On the 7th we made them another visit, and presented them with several things; but they beheld every thing with indifference, except hatchets and spike nails. We now saw all the man's family, as we supposed, which consisted of two wives, the young woman we mentioned before, a boy about fourteen years old, and three small children. Excepting one woman (who had a large wen upon her upper lip) they were well favoured; on account of her disagreeable appearance, she seemed to be neglected by the man. We were conducted to their habitation, which consisted of two mean huts, situated near the skirts of a wood. Their canoe lay in a small creek, near the huts, and was just large enough to transport the whole family from place to place. A gentleman of our party made sketches of them, which

occa-

occasioned their calling him *Toe-toe*; which, it seems, is a word which signifies marking or painting. On taking leave, the man presented Capt. Cook with some trifles, and a piece of cloth of their own manufacture; and pointed to a boat cloak, which he wished to have. The hint was taken, and one was ordered to be made for him of red baize.

On the 9th we paid the natives another visit, and signified our approach by hallooing to them; but they neither met us on shore, nor answered us as usual; the reason of which was, that their time was fully occupied in dressing themselves to receive us. They had their hair combed and oiled, stuck with white feathers, and tied upon the crowns of their heads, and had bunches of feathers stuck in their ears. We were received by them with great courtesy in their dress. The man was so well pleased with the present of the cloak, that he took his *patta-patoe* from his side, and gave it to Capt. Cook. We continued here a little time, and took leave, spending the rest of the day in surveying the bay.

On Monday the 12th this family paid us a visit in their canoe, but proceeded with caution as they approached the ship. We could not by any means persuade them to come on board, but put ashore in a little creek near us, and sat themselves down near enough to speak to us. Captain Cook ordered the bagpipes to play, and the drum to beat; the latter only they regarded. They conversed very familiarly (though not well understood) with such officers and seamen as went to them, and paid a much greater regard to some than to others; we supposed that they took such for women. One of the females shewed a remarkable fondness for one man in particular, until she found out his sex; after which she would not let him approach her. We cannot tell whether she had before taken him for a female, or whether, in discovering himself, he had taken some liberties with her. In the evening the natives of Dusky Bay took up their quarters very near our watering-place, which was a clear proof that they placed a
great

grea
days
rime
tities
O
tion
fami
woul
a gre
took
bran
could
view
and
to an
seem
natur
num
to str
pleas
ship
these
three
difen
in th
mine
their
obser
port
them
feren
and
low
of th
As t
tion
A m
river
tier
V

great deal of confidence in us. We passed two or three days in examining the bay and making necessary experiments and observations. We likewise shot great quantities of wild fowl.

On the 19th, the man and his daughter before mentioned ventured on board our ship, while the rest of the family were fishing in the canoe. Before the man would come into the ship, he struck the side of it with a green branch, and muttered some words, which we took for a prayer; after which he threw away the branch and came on board. We were at breakfast, but could not prevail on them to partake with us. They viewed every part of the cabin with apparent curiosity and surprise; but we could not fix the man's attention to any one thing for a moment. All we shewed him seemed beyond his comprehension, and the works of nature and art were alike regarded. The strength and number of our decks and other parts of the ship seemed to strike him with surprise. The man was still better pleased with hatchets and spike-nails than any thing our ship produced; when he had once got possession of these, he would not quit them. Captain Cook and three other gentlemen left the ship as soon as they could disengage themselves from the visitors, whom they left in the gun-room, and went out in two boats to examine the head of the bay; at which place they took up their night's lodging; the next day they continued their observations; and fired at some ducks. Upon the report of the gun, the natives, who had not discovered themselves before, set up a most hideous roar in different places. The gentlemen hallooed in their turn, and retreated to their boats. The natives did not follow them, neither, indeed, could they, because a branch of the river separated them, but still made a great noise. As they continued shooting and making their observations, they frequently heard the natives in the woods. A man and woman appeared at last on the banks of the river, waving something in their hands as a token of friendship. The gentlemen could not get near them,

and the natives retreated into the woods. Two others appeared; but as the gentlemen advanced, they retreated likewise, and the woods afforded them thick cover. The captain and his party passed the next night in the same place, and after breakfast embarked to return on board: but saw two men on the opposite shore, who hallooed to them, and they were induced to row over to them. Capt. Cook with two other gentlemen landed unarmed, and advanced altogether, but the natives retreated, nor would they stand still till Capt. Cook went up alone. It was with some difficulty that he prevailed on one of them to lay down his spear; at last he did it, and met the captain with a grass plant in his hand, giving Capt. Cook one end to hold whilst he himself held the other. In this position they stood while the natives made a speech, which the captain did not understand, but returned some sort of answer; they then saluted each other, and the native took his coat from his back, and put it on the captain. The Captain presented each of them with a hatchet and a knife, having nothing else with him. They invited the gentlemen to their habitation, and wanted them to eat, but the tide prevented their accepting of this invitation. More people appeared in the skirts of the woods, but did not approach any nearer. The two natives accompanied the gentlemen to their boats, but seemed very much agitated at the appearances of the musquets, which they looked upon as instruments of death, on account of the slaughter they had observed among the fowls. It was necessary to watch them, for they laid their hands on every thing except the musquets. They assisted the seamen in launching the boat. It did not appear that they had any boats or canoes with them, but used two or three logs of wood tied together, which answered the same purposes; for the navigation of the river, on the banks of which they lived, was not very difficult, and swarmed with fish and fowl. We apprehend that all the natives of this bay did not exceed more than three families. This party took leave of the man

about

CAY

about no
when th
noon; t
that day
were ne
they nev
parties v
very use
for riggi
beaf-stea
hog. W
in this ba

On Sa
and a g
brought
them to
cove; th
likely to
plenty of
breed and
had now
opportun
parture.

On Tu
more cor
bay; we
with the
wind to
had disco
got on l
which co
on fire, i
Capt. Co
seeds. T
them in.
proving
obliged t
Long Isl
which :

about noon; and in the evening returned to the ship, when they found that the visitors had staid on board till noon; that he and his family remained near them till that day, and went into the woods, after which they were never seen; this appears rather extraordinary, as they never went away without some present. Several parties were made in order to catch seals, which were very useful for food, for oil, and their skins were cured for rigging. The flesh of them is nearly as good as beef-steaks, and their entrails are equal to those of a hog. We likewise took the summit of the mountains in this bay, and made other remarks.

On Saturday the 24th Capt. Cook took five geese and a gander, which were all that remained of those brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and carried them to a cove, which on this account he called Goose-cove; this was a convenient place, for they were not likely to be disturbed by the inhabitants, there was plenty of food for them, and they were likely here to breed and spread the country with their species. We had now several days fair weather, which gave us a fine opportunity of making necessary preparations for departure.

On Tuesday the 27th we found an arm of the sea more convenient than that by which we entered the bay; we shot several ducks, and were much pleased with the day's expedition. All we now waited for was wind to carry us out of harbour by the new passage we had discovered. The tents and all other articles were got on board. The rubbish we had made on shore, which consisted chiefly of pieces of wood, &c. we set on fire, in order to try the ground, which being done, Capt. Cook sowed the spot with various sorts of garden seeds. This was the best place we could find to place them in. We made several efforts to sail, but the wind proving contrary we made but little way, and were obliged to anchor on the 1st of May on the north side of Long Island. Here we found two huts with fire places, which appeared to be lately inhabited. Capt. Cook

was detained on board by a cold, and sent a party to explore an arm of the sea which turns into the east. This party found a good anchoring place, with plenty of wild fowl, fish, and fresh water. We made several shooting parties when the wind would not permit us to fail.

There are two entrances to this Bay, which are by no means dangerous; and there are numerous anchoring places, which are at once safe and commodious; at Cascade Cove, so called on account of the magnificent cascade near it, is room for a fleet of ships, and a very good passage in and out. The country is very mountainous, and the prospect is rude and craggy. The land bordering on the sea-coast, and all its lands, are covered with wood. There are trees of various kinds which are common in other countries, the timber of which is remarkably fine. Here are likewise a great number of aromatic plants, and the woods are so over-run with supple jacks, that it is difficult to make way through them. The soil is undoubtedly composed of decayed vegetables, which make a deep black mould; it is very loose, and sinks at every step. This may be the reason why there are so many large trees blown down as we met with in the woods. Except flax and hemp, there is very little herbage. The bay abounds with fish, which we caught in great numbers. Seals are the only amphibious animals to be found here, but there are great numbers of them. Various kinds of ducks are to be found, as well as all other wild fowl. Here is likewise a bird which we call the wattle bird, because it has two wattles under its beak like those of a dunghill cock. Its bill is short and thick, its feathers are dark, and is about the size of an English black-bird. This we called the poy-bird, on account of two little tufts of curled hair which hang under its throat, called its poies, which is the Otaheitan word for earrings. The feathers of this bird are of a fine mazarine blue, except those of his neck, which are of a silver grey. The sweetness of its note is equal to the beauty

beauty
food, t

The
and tro
iching
this bay
pily ou
must ce
were in
covered

The
those in
same la
easy to
separate
fellow-d
ple scatt
ing with
a wand
ty with

On T
but met
sudden a
arose wh
another
to meet
what is c
ed in th
very wel
spouts,
Their ba
yellowish
when th
a spiral f
moved f
appeared
ter anoth
them wit
more co

beauty of its plumage; its flesh is likewise luxurious food, though it is a great pity to kill them.

The small black land flies are here very numerous and troublesome; they cause a swelling and intolerable itching where-ever they bite. Another evil attending this bay is the almost continual rains that fall, but happily our people felt no ill effects from them. The place must certainly be healthful, as those of our crew who were in any degree indisposed when we came in, recovered speedily.

The inhabitants of Dusky Bay are the same with those in other parts of New Zealand; they speak the same language, and adopt the same customs. It is not easy to divine what could induce these few families to separate themselves from the society of the rest of their fellow-creatures. It seems probable that there are people scattered all over this southern island, by our meeting with inhabitants in this place. They appear to lead a wandering life, and do not seem to be in perfect amity with each other.

On Tuesday the 11th of May, we again made sail, but met with more obstructions. We observed on a sudden a whitish spot on the sea, out of which a column arose which looked like a glass tube. It appeared that another of the same sort came down from the clouds to meet this, and they made a coalition and formed what is called a water-spout; several others were formed in the same manner soon after. As we were not very well acquainted with the nature and causes of these spouts, we were very curious in examining them. Their base was a broad spot, which looked bright and yellowish when the sun shone upon it; this appeared when the sea was violently agitated, and vapours rose in a spiral form. The columns were like a cylinder, and moved forward on the surface of the sea, and frequently appeared crossing each other, they at last broke one after another, this was owing to the clouds not following them with equal rapidity. The sea appeared more and more covered with short broken waves as the clouds

came

came nearer to us; the wind veered about, and did not fix in any one point. Within 200 fathoms of us, we saw a spot in the sea in violent agitation; the water ascended in a spiral form towards the clouds; the clouds looked black and lowering, and some hail-stones fell on board. A cloud gradually tapered into a long slender tube directly over the agitated spot, and seemed descending to meet the rising spiral, and soon united with it. The last water-spout broke like others; no explosion was heard, but a flash of lightning attended this disjunction. The oldest mariners on board had never been so near water-spouts before, they were therefore very much alarmed. Had we been drawn into the vortex, it was generally believed that our masts and yards must have gone to wreck. From the first appearance, to the last dissolution, was three quarters of an hour.

On May the 18th, at five o'clock in the morning, we opened Queen Charlotte's Sound, and saw three flashes arising from a strong hold of the natives. We imagined them to be signals of the Europeans, and probably of our old friends in the Adventure; when we fired some guns, we were answered, and in a short time saw the Adventure at anchor. We were saluted by Captain Furneaux with 13 guns, which we very cheerfully returned; none can describe the joy we felt at this most happy meeting.

A Nar

var

the

Soun

two

Ilan

Situa

TH

a very

ing wit

parted o

first app

fortune

people

which t

which,

every ha

their con

before th

blow har

fall of ra

and the

the yard

clear; b

not see t

gave the

uneasine

in the la

agreemen

ed with

A Narrative of Captain Furneaux's Proceedings, and of the various Incidents that happened during the Separation of the two Ships, to their joining again in Queen Charlotte's Sound; with some Account of Van Diemen's Land.—The two Ships proceed in company from New Zealand to the Island of Otaheite.—Their Arrival at Otaheite.—Their Situation there, &c. &c.

THE Adventure, on Sunday the 4th of February, 1773, after having lost sight of the Resolution, in a very thick fog, had no other means of again meeting with her, but by cruizing in the place where they parted company, or by repairing to Charlotte Bay, the first appointed place of rendezvous, in case such a misfortune should happen. Soon after their separation, the people of the Adventure heard a gun, the report of which they judged to be on the larboard beam; upon which, they hauled up S. E. and fired a four pounder every half hour; but receiving no return, nor sight of their companion, they kept the course they had steered before the fog came on. In the evening it began to blow hard. The storm was attended with a prodigious fall of rain, every drop of the size of a common pea; and the sea broke over the ship's bows to the height of the yard arms; yet, at intervals, the weather was more clear; but at these favourable opportunities, they could not see their wished-for object, the Resolution, which gave them many moments replete with inexpressible uneasiness. They then stood to the westward, to cruize in the latitude where they last saw her, according to agreement, in case of separation; but the storm returned with renewed fury, and the weather being again ex-
ceeding

ceeding hazy, they were compelled to bring to, which untoward circumstance prevented them from reaching the intended place; however, they cruized as near the same as they could for three days, when, after having kept beating about the seas, in the most terrible weather that any ship could possibly endure, and giving all hopes over of joining their lost companion, they bore away for winter-quarters, 1400 leagues distant from them; and, having to traverse a sea entirely unknown, they took every precaution for their safety, and reduced the allowance of water to one quart a day for each seaman.

On the 8th, they kept between the latitude 52 and 53 d. S. and reached to 95 d. E. longitude. They had here hard gales from the W. attended with snow, sleet, and a long hollow sea from S.W.

On the 26th a meteor, called to the northward, the Aurora Borealis, or northern lights, appeared with uncommon brightness in the N. N.W. directing its course to the S. W. And what is more remarkable, after our separation from the Resolution to our making land, we saw but one of the ice-islands, though in most part of our long run, we were 2 or 3 d. southward of the latitude in which we first met with them; but we saw numberless sea birds, and porpoises, curiously spotted with white and black, frequently darting, swiftly by our ship.

On Monday the 1st of March, having made no discovery of land, though we had traversed from latitude 48 to 45 d. S. and from longitude 36 to 146 d. it was determined to bear away for Van Diemen's Land, in order to take in water, and repair our shattered rigging. This land, supposed to join New Holland, was discovered by Tasman, A. D. 1642, and in the charts is laid down in latitude 44 d. S. and longitude 140 d. E.

On the 9th, being Tuesday, about nine o'clock, A.M. we fell in with the S. W. part of this coast bearing N. N. E. 8 or 9 leagues distant, and 140 d. 10 m. E. longitude from Greenwich. It appeared moderately high and

C
and unev
ed a dou
which be
Ram-hea
same tha
leagues E
several ro
we so na
his draug
36 m. S.
and full o
caused by
ward, wh
lie on the
On We
was dispa
four mile
bour or g
fatw sever
they had
which pro
ple had n
very rich,
especially
from the
hundred f
ing the le
in the boar
three o'clo
point of a
Bay. Sev
bay, and
seven, bei
came to,
to be 43 d
On Th
most com
we anchor
Vol. I.—

and uneven near the sea, but the hills farther back formed a double land and much higher. We saw a point which bore N. four leagues off from us, much like the Ram-head off Plymouth. This we concluded to be the same that Tasman called the South Cape. About four leagues E. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. from hence are three islands, and several rocks, resembling the Mewstone, (one of which we so named) and they are not laid down by Tasman in his draughts. At the South East Cape, in latitude 43 d. 36 m. S. and 147 d. E. longitude, the country is hilly and full of trees, the shore rocky, and landing difficult, caused by the wind blowing continually from the westward, which occasions such a surf, that the sand cannot lie on the shore.

On Wednesday the 10th, A. M. the second lieutenant was dispatched in the great cutter, the ship being about four miles from the land, to find if there was any harbour or good bay. With much difficulty they landed, saw several places where the Indians had been, and one they had lately left. There was a path in the woods, which probably leads to their habitations, but our people had not time to pursue it. The soil appears to be very rich, and the lee country well clothed with wood, especially on the side of the hills. Plenty of water fell from the rocks, in beautiful cascades, for two or three hundred feet perpendicular into the sea. Not perceiving the least sign of any place to anchor in, we hoisted in the boat and made sail for Frederick Henry Bay. At three o'clock P. M. we were abreast of the westernmost point of a very deep bay, called by Tasman, Stormy Bay. Several islands from the W. to the E. point of this bay, and some black rocks, we named the Friars. At seven, being abreast of a fine bay, with little wind, we came to, and by a good observation found our latitude to be 43 d. 20 m. S. and our longitude 147 d. 34 m. E.

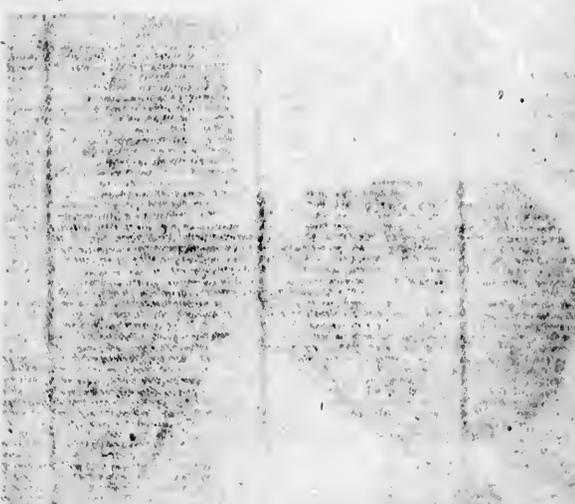
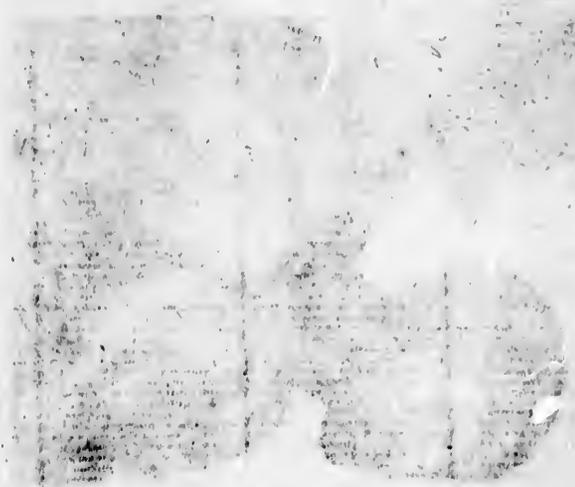
On Thursday the 11th, at day-break, we found a most commodious harbour, and at seven in the evening we anchored in seven fathom water, about one mile

from the shore on each side. Maria's Island is about five or six leagues off. Here we lay five days, and found the country exceeding pleasant. The soil, though thin, is rich; and the sides of the hills are covered with large trees, that grow to a greater height before they branch off. They differ from any we had hitherto seen. All of them are of the evergreen kind, and the wood being very brittle, is easily split. Of these we found only two sorts. The leaves of one are long and narrow, and the seed, shaped like a button, has a very agreeable smell. The leaves of the other resemble those of the bay, and its seeds that of the white thorn. From these trees, when cut down, issued what the surgeons call gum-lac. They are scorched near the ground, by the natives setting fire to the underwood in the most unfrequented places. Of the land birds, are some like a raven, others of the crow kind, paroquets, and several sorts of small birds. One of our gentlemen shot a large white fowl of the eagle kind, about the size of a kite. The sea fowl are ducks, teal, and the sheldrake. Of beasts we saw only an opossum, but observed the dung of others which we pronounced to be of the deer kind. The fish we caught in the bay were mostly sharks, dog fish, and another sort called by the seamen nurses, full of white spots, and some small ones not unlike sprats. In the Lagoons are trout, and other sorts of fish, a few of which we caught with hooks. During our stay here, we did not see any of the natives, but perceived the smoke of their fires, eight or ten miles to the northward. It is evident that they come into this bay from their wigwams or huts, which are formed of boughs, either broken, or split and tied together with grass: the largest ends are stuck in the ground, and the smaller are brought to a point at the top; making the whole of a circular form, which is covered with fern or bark, in the middle of which is the fire-place, surrounded with heaps of muscle, pear scallop, and cray-fish shells. In one of their huts we found the stone they strike fire with, and some tinder made of the bark of a tree. In
other^{gh}
nd

E.

is about
ays, and
, though
ered with
ore they
hitherto
and the
hese we
ong and
s a very
ble thole

From
urgeons
und, by
he most
ome like
l several
t a large
f a kite.
ke. Of
ne dung
er kind.
ks, dog
ses, full
e sprats.
, a few
y here,
ed the
north-
y from
oughs,
grafs:
small-
whole
r bark,
d with
s. In
ke fire
e. It
other^{gh}
nd



others of the
 at one end
 which con
 other neces
 away, leavi
 nails, and a
 of these pec
 workmansh
 keep out a f
 ground, on
 about, in fr
 search of fo
 from what h
 rant wretche
 try capable
 climate the
 our wood an
 intending to
 Van Diemen

On Tuesd
 on the 17th
 land, and fl
 Here the cor
 level; but w
 bay, wherein
 in latitude 4
 from this lat
 islands and f
 barren. We
 made land in
 to fall in wi
 Adventure H
 land, the coa
 and Capt. Fu
 straits betwe
 but a very de
 at S. S. E. an
 ward, he tho
 and make th



A. M. A. N. and W. O. M. A. N. of VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.

Drawn by A. B. Stewart



Cook's Voyages

others of their wigwams were one of their spears, sharp at one end, with some bags and nets made of grass, which contained, we imagine, their provisions and other necessaries. We brought most of those things away, leaving in their room medals, gun-flints, a few nails, and an old iron-hooped empty barrel. The huts of these people seemed to be built only for a day, the workmanship being so slender, that they will hardly keep out a shower of rain. The inhabitants lie on the ground, on dried grass, round their fires. They wander about, in small parties, from one place to another, in search of food, the chief end of their existence; and, from what he could judge, they are altogether, an ignorant wretched race of mortals, though natives of a country capable of producing every necessary of life, and a climate the finest in the world. Having got on board our wood and water, we sailed out of Adventure Bay, intending to coast it, with a view of discovering whether Van Diemen's Land is part of New Holland.

On Tuesday the 16th, we passed Maria's Islands, and on the 17th Schouten's, when we hauled in for the main land, and stood off two or three leagues along shore. Here the country appeared well inhabited, and the land level; but we discovered not any signs of a harbour or bay, wherein a ship might anchor with safety. The land in latitude 40 d. 50 m. S. trends to the westward, and from this latitude to that of 39 d. 50 m. is nothing but islands and shoals; the land appearing high, rocky, and barren. We now stood to the northward, and again made land in 39 d. but soon after discontinued this course, to fall in with the shore being very dangerous. From Adventure Bay to where we stood away to New Zealand, the coast lies in the direction S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and Capt. Furneaux was of opinion, that there are no straits between New Holland and Van Diemen's Land, but a very deep bay. The wind blowing a strong gale at S. S. E. and seeming likely to shift round to the eastward, he thought it most prudent to leave the coast, and make the best of his way for New Zealand.

On the 24th, having left Van Diemen's land, a very severe squall reduced us to reefed courses. We shipped many waves, one of which stove the large cutter, and with much difficulty we prevented the small one from being washed over-board. After this heavy gale, which continued twelve hours, we had more temperate weather, accompanied with calms. At length we made the coast of New Zealand in 40 d. 30 m. S. latitude, having run 24 d. of longitude from Adventure Bay, in a passage of fifteen days. When we first came in sight of land, it appeared high, forming a confused group of hills and mountains. We steered along shore to the northward, but our course was much retarded by the swell from the N. E.

On Saturday, April the 3d, at six o'clock, A. M. we descried land, which upon a nearer approach we knew to be that which lies between Rock Point and Cape Farewell, so named by Capt. Cook, when on his return from his last voyage. Cape Farewell, the south point of the entrance of the west side of the straits, bore E. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. three or four leagues distant. Sunday, the 4th, we continued our course, and stood to the eastward for Charlotte's Sound. On Monday, the 5th, we worked up to windward under Point Jackson. From Stephen's Island to this Point, the course is nearly S. E. distance eleven leagues. We fired several guns while standing off and on, but saw not any inhabitants. At half past two P. M. we anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water, muddy ground; Point Jackson being S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. three leagues. At eight we weighed and made sail. Tuesday, the 6th, at eight o'clock A. M. had the Sound open, and worked up under the western shore. At ten came to, close to some white rocks, in thirty-eight fathoms, and on the 7th anchored in Ship Cove, in ten fathoms water, and moored the best bower to the N. N. E. In the night heard the howling of dogs, and people hallooing on the east shore. Capt. Furneaux now ordered the large cutter to be manned, and sent her, with a proper guard, to examine, whether there were any

signs

signs of
The bo
of the p
top of a
1770.

tents ash
afflicted
health w
great ser
visions w

On Fr
Adventu
armed w
made of

toons, ab
bows no
their sho

made of
savage ap
on board

signs invi
and some
themselves

something
it was, w
head of

fresh cut
rence of
apprehen

man, to v
punished
in order

another,
ing, at th
such thin
ship, and
of displea
name of
Batavia,

signs of the Resolution having arrived at that harbour. The boat returned, without the least discovery, but that of the post, erected by the Endeavour's people, on the top of a hill, with her name and time of her departure in 1770. Upon this, we instantly prepared to send the tents ashore, for the accommodation of those who were afflicted with the scurvy; while such who enjoyed health were very alert in catching fish, which proved of great service in recovering our sick, to whom fresh provisions were both food and physic.

On Friday, the 9th, three canoes came along-side the Adventure, having fifteen Indians of both sexes, all armed with battle axes, and with other offensive weapons made of hard wood, in the form of our officers' poptoons, about four feet in length; but they had neither bows nor arrows. A kind of mat was wrapt round their shoulders, and tied about their waists with a girdle made of grass. Both men and women exhibited a most savage appearance, and were very unwilling to venture on board. The Captain made them presents, and by signs invited them to trade. They accepted the presents, and some of them assumed courage enough to trust themselves on deck. One of our gentlemen, seeing something wrapt up, had the curiosity to examine what it was, when, to his great surprize, he found it to be the head of a man, which, by its bleeding, seemed to be fresh cut off. As Capt. Cook had expressed his abhorrence of such unnatural acts, the Indians were very apprehensive of its being forced from them, and the man, to whom it belonged, trembled for fear of being punished. They therefore, with surprizing dexterity, in order to conceal the head, shifted it from one to another, till it was conveyed out of sight; endeavouring, at the same time, to convince us by signs, that no such thing was in their possession. They then left the ship, and went on shore, not without some visible signs of displeasure. In this visit they often mentioned the name of Tupia, and upon being informed he died at Batavia, some of them with much concern enquired whether

whether we killed him, or if he died a natural death. By these questions, we concluded these Indians were some of the same tribe who had visited the Endeavour's company. They returned in the afternoon, with fish and fern roots, which they bartered for nails, to them the most valuable articles; but the man and woman who had the head were not among them. Having a catalogue of words in their language, we called several things by name, at which they seemed much surprized, and offered a quantity of fish for the catalogue.

On Saturday the 10th, about eight in the morning, five double canoes came along-side the Adventure, with about fifty Indians, at the head of whom was their chief. We purchased of them, for nails, and bottles, their implements of war, stone hatches, cloth, &c. upon which they set a high price. Several of their chief men came on board, nor would they quit the ship by fair means; but upon presenting a musquet with a bayonet fixed, they quickly took leave of us, seemingly in great good humour; and afterwards they visited us daily, bringing with them fish in abundance, which they exchanged for nails, beads, and other trifles. They behaved quite peaceably, and, having disposed of their cargoes, departed at all times, seemingly, well pleased. We now placed a guard on a little island, which, at low water, is joining to Mortuara, called the Hippah, at which place was an old fortified town, that had been abandoned by the natives. We took possession of their houses, and by sinking a fort, within side, made them very comfortable. Here our astronomer erected his observatory; at the same time we struck our tents on Mortuara; and having run farther into the cove with the ship, we moored her for the winter, on the west shore, and gave her a winter coat to preserve her hull; then after sending ashore the spars and lumber of the decks to be caulked, we pitched our tents near the river, at the watering-place.

On Tuesday, the 11th of May, several of our crew, who were at work on shore, very sensible felt the shock
of

of an
it prob
these p
the we
the cap
when a
paddlin
and twe
ship, th
but Cap
gave or
time.
obliged
that the
selves m
be upon
before a
which a
order, th
such as b
and othe
spears, w
curiosities
bly disap
they took
language.
derstand:
and office
appeared
great app
Three r
lost sight
seen at Ja
to her affi
In the ev
and next r
pleasure t
be conceiv

of an earthquake, from which circumstance we think it probable, that there are volcanoes in New Zealand, as these phenomena generally go together. On the 12th, the weather continuing fair, and the Indians friendly, the captain and officers were preparing to go ashore, when about nine A. M. no less than ten canoes came paddling down the Sound. We counted one hundred and twenty natives all armed. When along-side of the ship, they expressed a desire to be admitted on board; but Capt. Furneaux, not liking their looks and gestures, gave orders, that a few only should be admitted at a time. These behaved so disorderly that the sailors were obliged to turn them out, and it now appeared plainly that the intentions of our visitors were to make themselves masters of the ship: however, finding the crew to be upon their guard, they became more civil, but not before a great gun was discharged over their heads, which alone intimidated them. Being thus reduced to order, the people on board produced several articles, such as beads, small clasp knives, scissars, cloth, paper, and other trifles, which they bartered for battle axes, spears, weapons of various sorts, fish-hooks, and other curiosities, the manufacture of the country. Being visibly disappointed in the execution of their grand design, they took to their canoes, all gabbling together in a language, a word of which no one on board could understand: but previous to their departure, the Captain and officers made presents to those among them who appeared to be their chiefs, which they accepted with great apparent satisfaction.

Three months were now elapsed since the Adventure lost sight of the Resolution; but on the 17th she was seen at Jackson Point. We immediately sent out boats to her assistance, it being calm, to tow her into the Sound. In the evening she anchored about a mile without us, and next morning weighed and warped within us. The pleasure the ships' companies felt at meeting can only be conceived by those who have been in like circum-

stances.

stances, each were as eager to relate as the others were to hear.

Having thus related the progress of the Adventure, we now come to record the transactions of both ships after their junction. It were little more than a repetition of the Adventure's distresses, to recapitulate the effects of the boisterous weather that were felt by the crew of the Resolution; being sometimes surrounded with islands of ice, out of which they could only extricate themselves by the utmost exertion of their skill in seamanship, sometimes involved in sheets of fleet and snow, and in mists so dark, that a man on the fore-castle could not be seen from the quarter deck; sometimes the sea rolling mountains high, while the running tackle, made brittle by the severity of the frost, was frequently snapping, and sometimes rendered immovable. Amidst the hardships of such a traverse, there is nothing more astonishing, than that the crew should continue in perfect health, scarce a man being so ill as to be incapable of duty. Nothing can redound more to the honour of Captain Cook, than his paying particular attention to the preservation of health among his company. By observing the strictest discipline, from the highest to the lowest, his commands were duly observed, and punctually executed. When the service was hard, he tempered the severity thereof by frequently relieving those employed in the performance, and having all hands at command, he was never under the necessity of continuing the labour of any set of men beyond what their strength and their spirits could bear. Another necessary precaution was, that in fine or settled weather, the Captain never suffered any of his men to be idle, but constantly employed the armourers, the carpenters, the professed navigators, foremastmen, &c. in doing something each in his own way, which, though not immediately wanted, he knew there might be a call for before the voyage was completed. Having by this means left no spare time for gaming, quarrelling, or rioting, he kept them in action, and punished drunkenness

ness w
in a ste
sea till
when
fully fa
nent in
course
both fl
peared
Tuesda
vered
made t
inexpr

The
day, th
day bro
getable
load, e
ing the
plaints,
wheat
and wi
they an
tain's in
determi
but as
resolved
the latit
determi
assist th
sea. H
he knew
ty Isles.

On t
tives w
cessible
path, b
natives
lifadoes

ness with the utmost severity; and thus by persevering in a steady line of conduct, he was enabled to keep the sea till reduced to a very scanty portion of water; and when he despaired of finding any new land, and had fully satisfied himself of the non-existence of any continent in the quarter he had traversed, he directed his course to Charlotte's Sound, the place appointed for both ships to rendezvous in case of separation, and appeared off the same, (as has been already related) on Tuesday, the 18th of May, 1773, and here we discovered our consort the Adventure, by the signals she made to us, an event every one in both ships felt with inexpressible satisfaction.

The next morning after our arrival, being Wednesday, the 19th, Captain Cook went off in the boat, at day break, to gather scurvy-grass, celery, and other vegetables. At breakfast time he returned with a boat load, enough for the crews of both ships; and knowing their salutary efficacy in removing scorbutic complaints, he ordered that they should be boiled with wheat and portable broth, every morning for breakfast, and with pease and broth for dinner, and thus dressed they are extremely beneficial. It was now the Captain's intention to visit Van Diemen's land, in order to determine whether it made a part of New Holland; but as Capt. Furneaux had cleared up this point, it was resolved to continue our researches to the east between the latitudes of 41 d. and 46 d. In consequence of this determination Captain Cook ordered out his men to assist the crew of the Adventure in preparing her for sea. He was induced more especially to this, because he knew refreshments were to be procured at the Society Isles.

On the 20th, we visited the fortifications of the natives where the observatory was fixed. It is only accessible in one place, and there by a narrow, difficult path, being situated on a steep rock. The huts of the natives stood promiscuously within an inclosure of palisadoes; they consisted only of a roof, and had no walls.

Perhaps these are only occasional abodes, when the Indians find themselves in any danger. Capt. Furneaux had planted before our arrival, a great quantity of garden seeds, which grew very well, and produced plenty of sallad and European greens. This day Capt. Cook sent on shore, to the watering-place, near the Adventure's tent, the only ewe and ram remaining of those we brought from the Cape of Good Hope.

On the 21st we went over to Long Island, which consists of one long ridge, the top nearly level, and the sides steep. Here we found various kinds of stone, and sowed different kinds of garden seeds upon some spots which we cleared for that purpose.

On Saturday, the 22d, we found the ewe and ram dead, whose death we supposed to have been occasioned by some poisonous plants. About noon we were visited by two small canoes in which were five men. They dined with us, and it was not a little they devoured. In the evening they were dismissed with presents. They resembled the people of Dusky Bay, but were much more familiar, and did not appear concerned at seeing us, which was probably owing to their having before visited the crew of the Adventure. Some of our crew made use of their canoes to set themselves ashore, on which they complained to the Captain; and, upon their canoes being restored, they seemed highly delighted.

On Monday the 24th, early in the morning, Mr Gilbert, the master, was dispatched to sound about the rock we had discovered in the entrance of the sound; at the same time Captain Cook, accompanied by Capt. Furneaux and Mr Forster, set off in a boat to the west bay on a shooting party. They met a large canoe, in which were 14 or 15 people; and the first question they asked was concerning the welfare of Tupia. Being told he was dead, they expressed some concern. The same enquiry, as has been observed, was made of Captain Furneaux when he first arrived, and on our getting aboard in the evening we were informed, that
some

some I
ple, ha
founde
small a
day th
who ca
food, a
to kno
could
that th
Kotug
rua.
very li
racious
of wild
which
sweet
tongue
the Cap
refusal.
denied
was fo
On S
tives fu
to exch
to the c
all of t
ductio
many
their c
large k
exercis
ladies
oppo
men f
found
their
a spike
lady w

some Indians in a canoe, who were strangers to our people, had also enquired for Tupia. Mr Gilbert having founded all round the rock, which he found to be very small and steep, returned late in the evening. This day the Resolution received another visit from a family who came with no other intent than partaking of our food, and to get some of our iron work. We wanted to know their names, but it was a long time before we could make them understand us. At last we found that the oldest was called Towahanga, and the others Kotugha-a, Koghoaa, Khoaa, Kollakh, and Taupuape-rua. The last was a boy about twelve years of age, very lively and intelligent. He dined with us, eat voraciously, and was very fond of the crust of a pie made of wild fowl. He did not much relish Madeira wine which the Captain gave him, but was very fond of some sweet Cape wine, which elevated his spirits, and his tongue was perpetually going. He very much wanted the Captain's boat cloak, and seemed much hurt at a refusal. An empty bottle and a table-cloth being also denied him, he grew exceeding angry, and at length was so sullen, that he would not speak a word.

On Saturday the 29th instant, a great number of natives surrounded us with canoes, who brought goods to exchange, for which they got good returns, owing to the eagerness with which our sailors outbid each other, all of them being desirous of having some of the productions of this country. Among these Indians we saw many women whose lips were of a blackish hue, and their cheeks were painted with a lively red. They had large knees, and slender bandy legs, owing to want of exercise, and sitting in their canoes cross legged. These ladies were very agreeable to our crews, who had no opportunity of indulging an intercourse with other women since our departure from England; and they soon found out, that chastity was not a distinguishing part of their character. Their consent was easily purchased: a spike nail, or an old shirt, was a sufficient bribe; the lady was then left to make her man happy, and to ex-

act from him another present for herself. We must observe, to the credit of some of these women, and to the discredit of their men, that several of the former submitted to this prostitution with much seeming reluctance; and they were sometimes terrified into a compliance by the authority and even the menaces of the men. The New Zealanders, encouraged by the gain of this disgraceful commerce, went through both the ships, offering their daughters and sisters to the promiscuous embraces of every one for iron, tools, &c. but the married women were not obliged to carry on this infamous kind of traffic. Indeed it seems to be an established custom in New Zealand for a girl to bestow her favour on a number of men, without the least infringement on her character; but after marriage the strictest conjugal fidelity is expected from her. Sketches of the most characteristic of their faces were taken by our draughtsmen. Several of the old men in particular, had very expressive countenances; and some of the young ones looked very savage, owing to their bushy hair hanging over their faces. In the evening they all went on shore, and erected temporary huts opposite to the ships. Here they made fires, and prepared their suppers, which consisted of fresh fish, which they caught with great dexterity. One of these Indians Capt. Cook took over to Mortuara, and shewed him some potatoes, in a thriving condition, which were planted by Mr Fannen, master of the Adventure. The man was so well pleased with them, that of his own accord, he began to hoe up the earth round the plants. He was then conducted to other plantations of turnips, carrots, and parsnips, of which it was easy to give them an idea, by comparing them with such roots as they were well acquainted with. We must further remark of these people, that not any of our methods of fishing are equal to theirs.

On the 30th instant, we went over to Long Island, to collect some hay which the crews had made, and to bring some vegetables on board. In this trip we found several

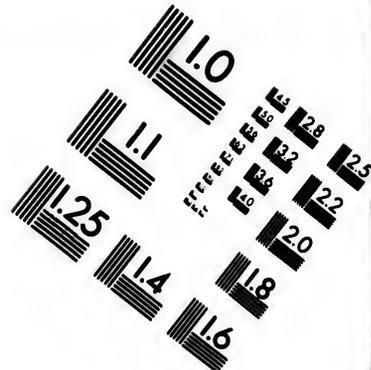
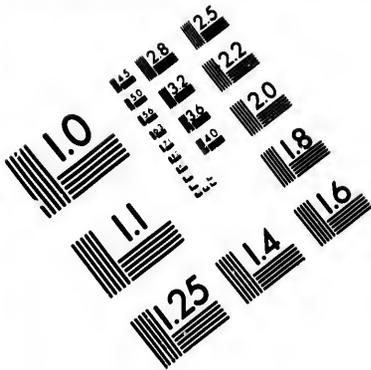
several
we had
given to
again pu
fellows
would h
their do
which m
their clo
very grea
tween th
received
appetite
party we
one of ou
of her ov
Indian, I
young fel
foke, but
he gave h
cry out fo
tinued hi
cleared fo
thought v
beans, pea

On Tu
veral nati
brought v
among the
Of these
faces, by
marks we
man, nam
son of no
This com
to traffic,
gains. S
the quarte
their upp

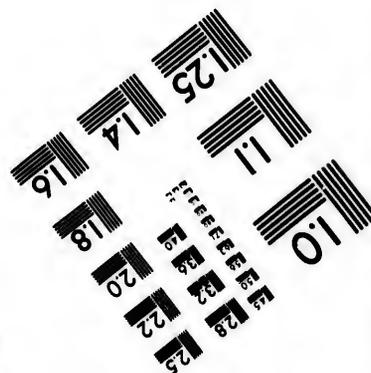
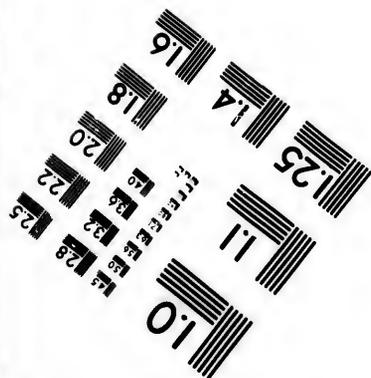
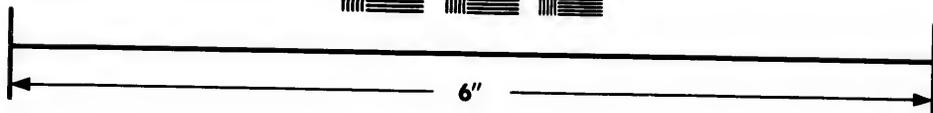
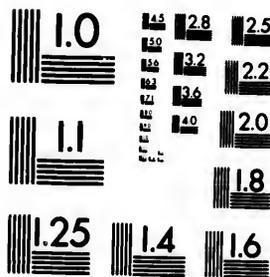
several new plants, and shot some small birds, which we had not seen before. In the afternoon, leave was given to some of our sailors to go on shore, where they again purchased the embraces of the women. These fellows must have been very keen indeed, or they would have been disgusted with the uncleanness of their doxies, all of whom had a disagreeable smell, which might be scented at a considerable distance; and their clothes as well as hair swarmed with vermin to a very great degree; which they occasionally cracked between their teeth. It is surprizing how men, who had received a civilized education, could gratify the animal appetite with such loathsome creatures. While this party were on shore, a young woman on board stole one of our seamen's jackets, and gave it a young man of her own tribe; upon the sailor's taking it from the Indian, he received several blows on the face by the young fellow's fist. At first the sailor took this as in joke, but upon perceiving the assailant to be in earnest, he gave him a hearty English drubbing, and made him cry out for quarters. At this time Captain Cook continued his employment of sowing, in different spots cleared for the purpose, all sorts of vegetables that he thought would grow in this country, such as potatoes, beans, peas, corn, &c.

On Tuesday the 1st of June, we were visited by several natives whom we had not seen before, and who brought with them sundry new articles of commerce; among these were dogs, some of which we purchased. Of these people we saw a few oddly marked in their faces, by spiral lines deeply cut in them. Such kind of marks were very regular in the face of a middle-aged man, named Tringho Waya, who appeared to be a person of note, and to have authority over his brethren. This company seemed to understand perfectly well how to traffic, and did not like we should make hard bargains. Some of them entertained us with a dance on the quarter deck, previous to which they parted with their upper garments, and stood in a row. They sung





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

a song, and its chorus all together, making during the performance many frantic gestures. Music accompanied this song and dance, but it was not very harmonious.

On Wednesday the 2d, we set ashore on the east-side of the sound a male and female goat. The latter, which was more than a year old, had two fine kids, that were killed by the cold some time before we arrived in Dusky Bay. Capt. Furneaux likewise put on shore, in Cannibal Cove, a boar and two breeding sows, which were left to range in the woods at pleasure. Should they remain unmolested by the natives till they become wild, they will then be in no danger, and in time this country may be stocked with these useful animals. In an excursion made this day by some of our people to the east, they met with the largest seal they had ever seen. They discovered it swimming on the surface of the water, and got near enough to fire at it, but without effect; and after pursuing it near an hour, they were obliged to give over the chase. By the size of this animal, it probably was a sea-lioness; Capt. Cook was of this opinion from having seen a sea-lion when he entered this sound, in his former voyage; and he thought these creatures had their abode in some of the rocks, that lie off Admiralty Bay, and in the strait. On the 3d, some boats were sent to Long Island, to bring away the remainder of the hay, and our carpenter went over to the east-side of the sound, to cut down some spars, which were much wanted. On their return, one of the boats was chased by a large double canoe, containing above fifty men. Prudence dictated to effect an escape by sailing, for though the Indians might have no hostile intentions, yet this was a necessary caution.

Friday the 4th of June, being his Majesty's birth-day, we hoisted our colours, and prepared to celebrate the day with the usual festivities. Early in the morning, our friends brought us a large supply of fish. One of them promised to accompany us in our voyage, but afterwards altered his mind, as did also some others who

had

had r
ture.
their
tion
that v
his fo
to Cap
him :
incline
his for
garne
self b
freedom
antic g
a sudd
The sh
to the l
cabin,
a very
(for so
nor wo
dried.
we are
to them
a large
within
Our fri
earnestl
head of
rest kep
the Ne
words.
and wel
at last ve
eagerly
natives
paid the
quarter-
all enqu

had made a like promise to the people of the Adventure. It was very common for these people to bring their children with them, not with the unnatural intention of selling them as was reported, but in expectation that we would make them presents. A man brought his son, a boy about ten years of age, and presented him to Capt. Cook, who thought at first he wanted to sell him: but we soon found the desire of the father was inclined only towards a white shirt, which was given to his son. The boy was so highly delighted with his new garment, that he went all over the ship, presenting himself before every one who came in his way. This freedom, or perhaps the colour of his dress, or the boy's antic gestures, offended old Will, the ram goat, who by a sudden butt knocked him backwards on the deck. The shirt was dirtied; the misfortune seemed irreparable to the boy, who feared to appear before his father in the cabin, until brought in by Mr Forster; when he told a very lamentable story against Gourey, the great dog (for so they called all the quadrupeds we had aboard) nor would he be reconciled till his shirt was washed and dried. From this trifling story may be seen how liable we are to mistake these people's meaning, and to ascribe to them customs they are utter strangers to. This day a large double canoe approached, well manned: it came within musquet shot, and contained about thirty men. Our friends on board told us they were enemies very earnestly. Among these new visitors, one stood at the head of the canoe, and another at the stern, while the rest kept their seats. One of them held a green bough, the New Zealand flag, in his hand, and spoke a few words. The other made a long harangue, in solemn and well articulated sounds. Being invited aboard, he at last ventured, and was followed soon by the rest, who eagerly traded with us. They directly saluted the natives on board, by an application of their noses, and paid the same compliment to the gentlemen on the quarter-deck. The chief's name was Teiratu. They all enquired for Tupia, and were much concerned at

hear-

hearing of his death. These people were taller than any we had hitherto seen in New Zealand, and their dress and ornaments bespoke them superior to the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound. Their tools were made with great attention, and were elegantly carved: we obtained a few of these, and also some musical instruments from them. They made but a short stay, and, embarking, they all went over to Mortuara, where, by the help of our glasses, we discovered four or five canoes, and several people on the shore. About noon Capt. Cook, accompanied by several other gentlemen, followed them, and were received with every mark of friendship. The Captain distributed several presents, among which were a great number of brass medals inscribed with the king's title on one side, and the ship which undertook this voyage on the other. Teiratu appeared to be the chief among these people, by the great degree of respect paid him. Capt. Cook conducted Teiratu to the garden he had planted, and obtained a promise from him that he would not suffer it to be destroyed.

Early in the morning of the 7th of June, we sailed from this place in company with the Adventure, but had frequent hindrances from contrary winds. On the 22d of July we were in latitude 32 d. 20 m. longitude 133 d. 40 m. W. And now the weather was so warm, that we were obliged to put on lighter cloaths. We did not see a single bird this day, which was rather remarkable, as not one day had hitherto passed since we left the land without seeing several. Capt. Cook having heard that the crew of the Adventure were sickly, went on board the 29th of July, when he found the cock dead, and twenty men ill with the scurvy and flux. Only three men were on the sick list on board the Resolution, which was certainly owing to the Captain's absolutely enforcing the eating ceery and scurvy-grass with the food, though at first the crew did not like it.

All hopes of discovering a continent now vanished, as we had got to the northward of Capt. Carteret's tracts, and we only expected to see islands till our return to the S.

S. E. believe
New Z
passage
On
the Re
were m
that th
had be
measur
peared
which
by Mor
it lies i
39 m.
appear
determi
where
ments.
probabi
coveries
mornin
land at
advised
another
against
17 d. 5
Furnear
these if
30 m. V
Bougai
Danger
of proce
night,
smooth
14th, w
ed our
(which
five in
Vol. I

5. Every circumstance considered, we were induced to believe that there is no Southern Continent between New Zealand and America; it is very certain that this passage did not produce any sure signs of one.

On the 6th of August, Capt. Furneaux came on board the Resolution to dinner, and reported, that his people were much better, that the flux had quite left them, and that the scurvy was at a stand. The scorbutic people had been well supplied with cyder, which in a great measure contributed to this happy change. Land appeared to the south on the 11th instant at day break, which we judged to be one of those islands discovered by Mons. Bougainville. We called it Resolution Island, it lies in the latitude of 17 d. 24 m. longitude 141 d. 39 m. W. We did not stay to examine it, as it did not appear large enough to supply our wants; we therefore determined to make the best of our way to Otaheite, where we were sure of a plentiful supply of refreshments. In the evening we saw land again, which in all probability was another of Mons. Bougainville's discoveries. This we called Doubtful Island. On the morning of the 12th instant at day-break, we discovered land at about two miles ahead of us, so that we were advised of our danger but just in time. This was another small half-drowned island. The sea broke against it in a dreadful surf. This island is in latitude 17 d. 5 m. longitude 143 d. 16 m. W. We called it Furneaux Island. On the 17th, we saw another of these islands in latitude 17 d. 4 m. longitude 144 d. 30 m. W. It is with very great propriety that Mons. Bougainville calls these low overflowed islands the Dangerous Archipelago. We were under the necessity of proceeding with the utmost caution, especially in the night, as we were surrounded by them, which the smoothness of the sea sufficiently indicated. On the 14th, we found ourselves clear of these islands, and steered our course for Otaheite. We saw Osnaburg Island (which was discovered by Capt. Wallis) on the 15th, at five in the morning, and acquainted Capt. Furneaux

that it was our intention to put into Oatipiha Bay, near the south end of Otaheite, and get what refreshments we could in that part of the island, before we went to Matavai.

On the 18th, we were within a league of the reef. On account of the breeze failing us, we hoisted out our boats to tow the ships off, but they could not keep us from being carried too near the reef. Many inhabitants came on board from different parts, who brought fruits, &c. to exchange; they most of them knew Captain Cook again, and enquired for Mr Banks and others, but none of them asked for Tupia. Our situation became still more dangerous as the calm continued. On sending to examine the western point of the reef, in order to get round that way into the bay, we found that there was not sufficient depth of water. Both ships were carried with great impetuosity towards the reef, and all the horrors of shipwreck now stared us in the face. The breakers were not two cables' length from us, and we could find no bottom to anchor. The Resolution came at three fathoms water, and struck at every fall of the sea, but the Adventure brought up under our bow without striking. The dreadful surf which broke under our stern threatened our shipwreck every moment. At length we found ground a little without the basin, and got the ship afloat by cutting away the bower anchor, and the tide ceased to act in the same direction. We happily towed off the Resolution, and all the boats were ordered to assist the Adventure. We happily got once more safe at sea, after narrowly escaping shipwreck. A number of the natives were on board the ships while we were in this perilous situation, but were totally insensible of any danger, even while we were striking, and when they parted with us they seemed quite unconcerned. We anchored in Oatipiha Bay, very near the shore, and were visited by a great number of the natives, who brought roots, fruit, &c. Presents were made to their chiefs of shirts, axes, and other articles, in return for which

which
they ne
afternoo
the disp
place.
had a v
We r
we were
in the tit
ed. W
not in la
on shore
not get a
said to be
belonged
seen. A
board w
were ma
things ov
the same
deck, the
of the sh
conduct o
quets ove
he quitter
ing a boar
shore pel
himself in
tered a c
coast, wh
away the
became f
Two or t
they wer
his death
other peo
before.
had been
that Tou

which they promised hogs, fowls, &c. but we believe they never intended to keep to their promise. In the afternoon Captains Cook and Furneaux landed to sound the disposition of the natives, and to view the watering-place. The natives behaved with great civility, and we had a very convenient supply of water.

We recovered the Resolution's bower anchor, which we were obliged to leave; but the Adventure lost three in the time of our extremity, which were never recovered. We were still supplied with fruit and roots, but not in large quantities. A party of men were trading on shore, under the protection of a guard. We could not get any hogs from the natives, though plenty were said to be seen about their habitations, they all said they belonged to Waheatow, their chief, whom we had not seen. A man who pretended to be a chief came on board with several of his friends, to whom presents were made, but he was detected in handing several things over the quarter gallery; and as complaints of the same nature were alledged against those on the deck, the Captain took the liberty to turn them all out of the ship. The Captain was so exasperated at the conduct of the pretended chief, that he fired two muskets over his head, which terrified him so much, that he quitted his canoe, and took to the water. On sending a boat to take up the canoe, the people from the shore pelted the boat with stones. The Captain went himself in another boat to protect her, he likewise ordered a cannon, loaded with ball, to be fired along the coast, which terrified them sufficiently, and he brought away the canoes without any opposition. They soon became friends again, and the canoes were returned. Two or three people began to enquire after Tupia, but they were soon satisfied when they heard the cause of his death. Several people asked for Mr Banks, and other people who were at Otaheite with Captain Cook before. We were informed by these people, that there had been a battle fought between the two kingdoms, that Toutaha, the regent of the greater peninsula, was slain,

slain, and that Otoo reigned in his stead. In this battle Tubourai Tamaide, and several of our old friends fell. A peace was now fully established.

On the 19th, the two commanders made an excursion along the coast, and were entertained by a chief (whom they met) with some excellent fish, &c. to whom in return they made several presents. On the 20th, one of the natives stole a gun from the people on shore. Some of the natives pursued him of their own accord, who knocked him down and brought back the musquet. We imagine that fear operated more with them in this business than any other motive. On the 21st, a chief came to visit us, who brought in a present of fruit, which proved to be some cocoa-nuts that we had drawn the water from and thrown overboard. He had so artfully tied them up, that we did not soon discover the deceit. He did not betray the least emotion when we told him of it, and opened two or three of them himself, as if he knew nothing of the matter; he then pretended to be satisfied that it was really so, and went on shore, from whence he sent some bananoes and plantains. We were informed that Waheatow was come into the neighbourhood, and wished to see Capt. Cook, who accordingly went in company with Capt. Furneaux and some gentlemen: they were likewise attended by some natives. About a mile from the landing place they met the chief, advancing to meet them with a numerous train. When the Prince perceived the company he halted. He knew Capt. Cook very well, as they had seen each other several times in 1769. He went at that time by the name of Terrace, and took his father's name at his death. We found him sitting on a stool; and as soon as the usual salutation was over, he seated Captain Cook on the same stool with himself; the rest sat on the ground. He enquired after several who had been on the former voyage, and seemed sorry when we told him we must sail the next day, offering the Captain that if he would stay he should have hogs in plenty. Captain Cook made him many presents, and

staid

staid
ed o
othe
and
some
for t
Ea
were
goes
had
Adv
lieute
they
25th
at M
decks
anche
Cook
toget
to pa
Opar
to the
him.
Capta
tain
direC
&c.
some
duct
the g
peop
prese
very
estab
had
retur
give
for a
as fo

staid with him the whole morning. This party returned on board of ship to dinner, and made this chief another visit in the afternoon, made him more presents, and he gave us two hogs. At the different trading places some others were got, so that a meal's fresh pork served for the crews of both ships.

Early in the morning of the 24th, we put to sea, and were accompanied by several canoes, who brought cargoes of fruit for sale; neither did they return till they had disposed of them. The sick people on board the Adventure got much relief from the fruits. We left a lieutenant on shore, in order to bring some hogs, which they promised to send by him. He returned on the 25th, and brought eight pigs with him. We arrived at Matavai Bay in the evening of the 25th, and our decks were crowded with natives before we could get to anchor, almost all of them were acquainted with Capt. Cook. Otoo, their king, and a great crowd were got together on shore. Captain Cook was going on shore to pay him a visit, but was told that he was going to Oparee in a fright; which seemed very extraordinary to the Captain, as all others were much pleased to see him. Maritata, a chief, was on board, and advised the Captain to defer his visit till next morning. The Captain set out on the 26th for Oparee, after having given directions to fetch tents for the reception of the sick, &c. Captain Furneaux, Maritata and his wife, and some others, went with the Captain. They were conducted to Otoo as soon as they were landed, who sat on the ground under a shady tree, with a great number of people around him. Captain Cook made him several presents, after the usual compliments had passed, being very well persuaded that it was much to his interest to establish a friendship with this man. His attendants also had presents made to them, and they offered cloth in return, which was refused, being told that what was given was merely out of friendship. Otoo enquired for all the gentlemen who had been there before, as well as for Tupia, and promised to send some hogs on board, but

but was very backward in saying he would come on board himself, being, as he said, much afraid of the great guns. He was certainly the most timid prince, as all his actions demonstrated. He was a personable well-made man, six feet high, and about thirty years of age. His father and all his subjects were uncovered before him, that is, their heads and shoulders were made bare.

On the 27th, the king Otoo, came to pay us a visit, attended by a numerous train; he sent before him two large fish, a hog, some fruits, and a large quantity of cloth. After much persuasion he came on board himself, accompanied by his sisters, a younger brother, &c. with many attendants, who all received presents; and when they had breakfasted, carried them home to Oparee. Upon landing, an old lady, the mother of Toutaha, met Capt. Cook, seized him by both hands, and, weeping bitterly, told him that her son and his friend Toutaha were dead. Had not the king taken her from Capt. Cook, he must have joined her lamentations. It was with a good deal of difficulty that the Captain prevailed on the king to let him see her again, when he made her some presents. Captain Furneaux gave the king a male and female goat, which we hope will multiply. A lieutenant was sent to Attahourou on the 28th, to purchase hogs. The king, with his sister and some attendants, paid us another visit soon after sun-rise, and brought with them a hog, some fruit, and some more cloth. They likewise went on board the Adventure, and made Captain Furneaux the same presents. Soon after they returned, and brought Captain Furneaux with them. Captain Cook made them a good return for the presents they brought, and dressed out the king's sister to the greatest advantage. The king was carried again to Oparee, when his Otaheitan Majesty thought proper to depart, and was entertained as he went with bagpipes and the seamen dancing. Some of his people danced also in imitation of the seamen, and performed their parts tolerably well. Tou-
taha's

taha's
but d
tears.
but fa
whom
of hav
On
early
gentle
not be
the sig
desired
vast de
to be p
time.
we wer
a come
find ou
Cook's
were on
the king
of only
well cor
this dive
and load
fruit an
In the
ery of m
armed,
who mi
cover th
returne
taken, v
under c
were se
The pec
appear t
disturba
too free

taha's mother again presented herself to Capt. Cook; but could not look upon him without shedding many tears. The next day the king promised to visit us again, but said we must first wait upon him. The Lieutenant whom we sent for hogs returned only with a promise of having some, if he would go back in a few days.

On the 29th the commanders took a trip to Oparee, early in the morning, attended by some officers and gentlemen, and made the king such presents as he had not before seen. One of them was a broad sword; at the sight of which he was very much intimidated, and desired that it might be taken out of his sight. With a vast deal of argument he was prevailed upon to suffer it to be put on his side, where it remained a very short time. We received an invitation to the theatre, where we were entertained with a dramatic piece, consisting of a comedy and dance. The subject we could not well find out; though we heard frequent mention of Capt. Cook's name during the performance. The performers were one woman, which was no less a personage than the king's sister, and five men, and their music consisted of only three drums. The whole entertainment was well conducted, and lasted about two hours. When this diversion was over, the king desired us to depart, and loaded us with fruit and fish. The king sent more fruit and fish the next morning.

In the evening of the 30th we were alarmed with the cry of murder from the shore. A boat was immediately armed, and sent on shore, to bring off any of our people who might be found there without orders, and to discover the occasion of the disturbance. The boat soon returned, with a seaman and three marines; others were taken, who belonged to the Adventure, and even put under close confinement till the morning, when they were severely punished according to their demerits. The people would not confess any thing, and it did not appear that any material injury had been done. The disturbance might be occasioned by the fellows making too free with the women: notwithstanding this, the
 alarm

alarm was so great, that the natives fled from their habitations in the night; and the inhabitants of the whole coast were terrified. The king himself had fled a great way from the place of his abode; and when Capt. Cook saw him, he complained to him of the disturbance. Capt. Cook presented the king with three Cape sheep, as it was his last visit. With this present he was very well pleased. The king's fears were now dissipated, and he presented us with three hogs, one of which was very small, which we took notice of. Soon after a person came to the king, and seemed to speak very peremptorily about the hogs, and we thought he was angry with him for giving us so many, and more so when he took the little pig away with him; but we were much mistaken, for soon after we were gone, another hog was brought to us, larger than the other two. The king seemed much affected when Capt. Cook told him he should leave the island the next day. They embraced each other several times, and departed.

On the 1st of September we determined to depart, as the sick were nearly recovered, the necessary repairs of the ship were completed, and plenty of water provided. Most of the day was employed in unmooring the ships; and in the afternoon the Lieutenant returned, who had been sent for the hogs promised. With him came Potatou (the chief of the district of Attahourou) with his wife, to pay Capt. Cook a visit, and made him a present of two hogs and some fish. The Lieutenant got likewise two more hogs. As the wind was westerly, we were obliged to dismiss our friends sooner than they wished; but they were very well satisfied with the reception they met with. A young man, named Poreo, came on board some hours before we got under sail, and desired to go with us, to which we consented; and at the same time he asked for an axe and a spike nail for his father, who came with him on board. They were accordingly given him, and they parted with great indifference, which seemed to indicate that they had deceived us, and no such consanguinity subsisted. Presently a

canoe,

canoe,
deman
them t
the ha
ashore
though
On the
Huahei
fathoms
got ash
happily
The nat
ral of w
went on
them, w
supply d
pect of
fowls, w
parties w
were ver
that Ore
command
ed for th
The boat
were desi
was gone
young pl
these wer
parately.
young pi
fibres; th
dog. - Al
which we
fully pres
it, which
together v
with a fev
made for
part of the

Vol. I.—

canoe, conducted by two men, came alongside, and demanded Poreo in the name of Otoo. We informed them that we would part with him if they would return the hatchet and spike nail, but they said they were ashore; so the young gentleman sailed along with us, though he wept when he saw the land at our stern. On the second we steered our course for the island of Huaheine, and the Resolution anchored in twenty-four fathoms water on the third instant, but the Adventure got ashore on the north-side of the channel, but she was happily got off again without receiving any damage. The natives received us with the utmost cordiality, several of whom came on board before our commanders went on shore. Some presents were distributed amongst them, which were gratefully returned by a plentiful supply of hogs, fruit, &c. Here we had a fine prospect of being plentifully supplied with fresh pork and fowls, which was to us very pleasing. Two trading parties were sent ashore on the fourth instant, which were very well conducted. Capt. Cook was informed that Oree was still alive, and waited to see him. The commanders, with Mr Forster, went to the place appointed for the interview, accompanied by one of the natives. The boat was landed before the chief's house, and we were desired to remain in it till the necessary ceremony was gone through. There stood close to the shore five young plantain trees, which are their emblems of peace: these were, with some ceremony, brought on board separately. The first three were each accompanied by a young pig, whose ears were ornamented with cocoa-nut fibres; the fourth plantain tree was accompanied by a dog. All these had particular names and meanings, which we could not understand. The chief had carefully preserved a piece of pewter, with an inscription on it, which Capt. Cook had presented him with in 1769, together with a piece of counterfeit English coin, which, with a few beads, were all in the same bag the Captain made for them; these the chief sent on board. This part of the ceremony being over, we were desired by our

guide to decorate three young plantain trees with nails, looking-glasses, beads, medals, &c. With these in our hands we landed, and were conducted through the multitude. We were directed to sit down a few paces before the chief, and the plantains were laid one by one before him. We were told that one was for God, another for the king, and the third for friendship. This being done, the king came to Captain Cook, fell on his neck, and kissed him. A great effusion of tears fell down the venerable cheeks of this old man; and if ever tears spoke the language of the heart, surely these did. Presents were made to all his attendants and friends. Captain Cook regarded him as a father, and therefore presented him with the most valuable articles he had. He gave the Captain a hog, and a good deal of cloth, with the promise that all his wants should be supplied. Soon after we returned on board, fourteen hogs were sent us, with fowls and fruit in abundance. In the morning of the 5th instant we were visited by this good old man, who brought a hog and some fruit; indeed he sent the Captain every day ready dressed fruit and roots in great plenty. This morning the lieutenant went on shore in search of more hogs, and returned in the evening with twenty-eight, and about seventy more were purchased on shore.

On Monday the 6th of September the trading party went on shore as usual; it only consisted of three people. Captain Cook went on shore after breakfast, and learnt that one of the inhabitants had been very insolent and troublesome. This man was shewn to the Captain, equipped in his war habit, and he had a club in each hand. The Captain took these from him, as he perceived him bent on mischief, broke them before his face, and obliged him to retire. The Captain being informed that this man was a chief, became a little suspicious of him, and sent for a guard. About this time a gentleman had gone out botanizing alone; two men assaulted him, and stripped him of every thing but his trowsers; luckily they did him no harm, though they

they str
They m
of the n
This ge
where a
fled at
them to
who we
plaint, h
soon as h
to the pe
when the
well to th
things th
should be
After thi
the boat,
ty, used e
impossible
intreaties
tears, and
suasive an
insisted on
were in th
only perso
sister, and
to her bro
bers, as fa
landed.
and enqui
went into
king want
difficulty o
returned t
who had
panied by
on going
We return

they struck him several times with his own hanger. They made off when they had done this, and another of the natives brought a piece of cloth to cover him. This gentleman presently appeared at the trading-place, where a number of the natives were assembled, who all fled at seeing him. Captain Cook persuaded some of them to return, assuring them that none should suffer who were innocent. When the king heard this complaint, he and his companions wept bitterly; and as soon as his grief was assuaged, he made a long harangue to the people, telling them the baseness of such actions, when the Captain and his crew had always behaved so well to them. He then took a particular account of the things the gentleman had lost, and promised they should be returned, if it was in his power to find them. After this he desired Captain Cook to follow him to the boat, but the people being apprehensive of his safety, used every argument to dissuade him from it. It is impossible to describe the grief they expressed in the intreaties they used; every face was bedewed with tears, and every mouth was filled with the most dissuasive arguments. Oree was deaf to them all, and insisted on going with the Captain; when they both were in the boat, he desired it might be put off. The only person who did not oppose his going, was his sister, and she shewed a magnanimity of spirit equal to her brother. We proceeded in search of the robbers, as far as it was convenient by water, and then landed. The chief led the way, travelled several miles, and enquired after them of all he saw. We then went into a cottage, and had some refreshment. The king wanted to proceed farther, and was with great difficulty dissuaded from it by Capt. Cook. When we returned to the boat we were met by the king's sister, who had travelled over land to that place, accompanied by several other persons. The king insisted on going into the boat with us, as well as his sister. We returned to the ship, and the king made a very

heartly dinner; though his sifter, according to custom, ate nothing. We made them suitable presents for the confidence they had placed in us, and set them ashore amidst the acclamations of multitudes. Peace was now perfectly re-established, provisions poured in from all quarters, the gentleman's sanger and coat were returned, and thus ended these troublesome transactions.

We went to take our leave of Oree while the ships were unmooring, and presented him with things both valuable and useful. We left him a copper-plate with this inscription. "Anchored here, his Britannic Majesty's ships Resolution and Adventure, September 1773." After we had traded for such things as we wanted, we took our leave, which was a very affectionate one. On returning to the ships, they were crowded, as on our arrival, with canoes filled with hogs, fowls, &c. Soon after we were on board, the king came, and informed us that the robbers were taken, and desired us to go on shore, that we might behold their exemplary punishment. This we should have been glad to have done, as so much pains had been taken to discover them; but it was out of our power, as the Adventure was out of harbour, and we were under sail. The good old king staid with us till we were near two miles out at sea, and then, after taking another affectionate leave, parted. During our stay here, we procured upwards of three hundred hogs, besides fowls and fruit in great abundance.

Before we quitted this island, Captain Furneaux agreed to receive on board his ship a young man named Omai, a native of Ulietea, where he had had some property, of which he had been dispossessed by the people of Bolabola. Captain Cook wondered that Captain Furneaux would encumber himself with this man, who, in his opinion, was not a proper sample of the inhabitants of these happy islands, not having any advantage of birth, or acquired rank, nor being eminent in shape, figure or complexion; for their people of the first rank are much fairer, and usually better behaved, and more

intelli

intellig
whom
since hi
error;

* Om
and hone
rendered
of pride,
ferior ran
but has j
degree.
he had fa
met with
have ende
associated
was very
very watc
who hono
and I nev
land, whi
or ever sh
moderatio
wich, the
jesty at K
imbibed
great and
to the late
careffed b
feit the ef
the Earl o
probably
an inhabi
tresses of
in the m
gratitude
their refic
Omai liv
England,
and thou
as the tin
the Refo
ed with p
the kind

intelligent, than the middling class of people, among whom Omai is to be ranked. The Captain, however, since his arrival in England, has been convinced of his error; * for excepting his complexion, (which is undoubt-

* Omai has certainly a very good understanding, quick parts, and honest principles; he is of good natural behaviour, which rendered him acceptable to the best company, and a proper degree of pride, which taught him to avoid the society of persons of inferior rank. He has passions of the same kind as other young men, but has judgment enough not to indulge them in any improper degree. I do not imagine that he has any dislike to liquor, and if he had fallen into company where the person who drank the most, met with the most approbation, I have no doubt, but that he would have endeavoured to gain the applause of those with whom he associated; but fortunately for him, he perceived that drinking was very little in use but among inferior people, and as he was very watchful into the manners and conduct of the persons of rank who honoured him with their protection, he was sober and modest, and I never heard that, during the whole time of his stay in England, which was two years, he ever once was disguised with wine, or ever shewed an inclination to go beyond the strictest rules of moderation.—Soon after his arrival in London, the Earl of Sandwich, the first Lord of the Admiralty, introduced him to his Majesty at Kew, when he met with a most gracious reception, and imbibed the strongest impression of duty and gratitude to that great and amiable Prince, which I am persuaded he will preserve to the latest moment of his life. During his stay among us he was caressed by many of the principal nobility, and did nothing to forfeit the esteem of any one of them; but his principal patrons were the Earl of Sandwich, Mr Banks, and Dr Solander; the former probably thought it a duty of his office to protect and countenance an inhabitant of that hospitable country, where the wants and distresses of those in his department had been alleviated and supplied in the most ample manner; the others, as a testimony of their gratitude for the generous reception they had met with during their residence in his country. It is to be observed, that though Omai lived in the midst of amusements during his residence in England, his return to his native country was always in his thoughts, and though he was not impatient to go, he expressed a satisfaction as the time of his return approached. He embarked with me in the Resolution, when she was fitted out for another voyage, loaded with presents from his several friends, and full of gratitude for the kind reception and treatment he had experienced among us.

doubtedly of a deeper hue than that of the *Earees* or gentry, who, as in other countries, live a more luxurious life, and are less exposed to the heat of the sun) he doubts whether any other of the natives would have given him more general satisfaction by his behaviour among them.

On Wednesday the 8th, we entered the harbour of Ohamaneno; the natives crowded about us with hogs and fruit as soon as we were anchored. We refused the hogs, as we had already more than we could manage; but several of the principal people obliged us to take them whether we would or no. We made a visit on the 9th to Oreo, who is the chief of this part of the island Ulitea. He expressed great satisfaction on seeing Capt. Cook again, and desired him to exchange names with him, which the latter agreed to: this is a distinguishing mark of friendship. Here we traded as usual, but the balance of trade was much in our favour. On the 10th, the chief entertained us with a comedy; a very entertaining part of which was a theft, committed, with amazing dexterity, by a man and his accomplice. Before the thief has time to carry off the prize, he is discovered, and a scuffle ensues; the discoverers are vanquished, and the thieves go off in triumph. We returned to dinner after the play was over, and as we were walking on the shore in the evening, one of the natives informed us that there were nine uninhabited islands to the westward.

Oreo and his son paid us a visit early in the morning of the 11th of September, and brought, as usual, hogs and fruit with them. We dressed the youth in a shirt, and some other articles, of which he was not a little proud. After staying some hours, they went ashore, and so did Capt. Cook soon after, but to another part of the shore. When the chief heard he was landed, he went of his own accord and put a hog and some fruit in the boat, and returned without saying any thing of it to any other person. He afterwards came with some friends to dinner. After dinner, Po-oorau,

who

CA
who is the
visit. He
sent with
turn. W
morning:
several ge
very prett
piece was
fore.

On the
noes and p
paid us a
that we wo
would let
fashion.

strewed th
round them
our heads u
as scarcely
with hot b
quantity of
tuals dress
had a most
dressed in c
tell, but th
at least, it
much done
friends, dir
attendants
public, to
chief did n
came to hi
time, saw
the remain
we were ag

On the
ous disposi
that none c
afraid that

who is the most eminent chief of the island, made us a visit. He was introduced by Oreo, and brought a present with him; for which he received a handsome return. We promised to visit both the chiefs the next morning: which we accordingly did, in company with several gentlemen. Another play was acted, and two very pretty young women performed, otherwise this piece was not so entertaining as the one we saw before.

On the 14th, we went on shore for a supply of bananas and plantains, for sea store. Oreo and some friends paid us a pretty early visit, when we informed him, that we would dine with him on shore, and desired he would let us have two pigs for dinner dressed in their fashion. We found the floor of the chief's house strewed thick with leaves, and we were soon seated round them. Soon after the pigs came tumbling over our heads upon the leaves; and they were both so hot as scarcely to be touched. The table was ornamented with hot breadfruit and plantains: we had likewise a quantity of cocoa-nuts to drink. We never saw victuals dressed cleaner nor better in our lives, and they had a most exquisite flavour, much superior to victuals dressed in our mode; how they contrived if we cannot tell, but though one of these hogs weighed fifty pounds at least, it was well done in every part, and not too much done in any. Oreo and his son, with some male friends, dined with us. We had a great number of attendants and people who came to see us thus dine in public, to whom pieces of pork were handed. The chief did not refuse his glass of Madeira whenever it came to his turn, and we never at this, or any other time, saw him affected by it. The boat's crew took the remainder when we had dined. In the afternoon we were again entertained with a play.

On the 15th, we had a sufficient proof of the timorous disposition of these people. We rather wondered that none of them came to the ships as usual. We were afraid that as two men of the Adventure's crew staid
out

out all night contrary to orders, that the natives had stripped them, or done them some other injury, and were afraid we should revenge their conduct. We went ashore, and found the neighbourhood nearly deserted. Presently the two men made their appearance, and reported that they had been very civilly treated. We could get no account of the cause of their flight, and could only learn from a few persons who ventured near us, that several were killed and wounded, and pointed to their bodies where the balls of the guns went in and out. Captain Cook was very uneasy at this relation, fearing for the safety of the people gone to Otaha. In order to get the best information, the Captain determined to go to the chief himself, whom, after much searching for, he found seated under the shade of a house, with a great many people round him. There was a great lamentation as soon as Captain Cook approached, the chief and all his company bursting into tears. After all this piece of work, it was found that the cause of their alarm was on account of our boats being absent, supposing that the people in them had deserted us, and that we should adopt violent methods to recover them. They were satisfied when Captain Cook assured them there was no cause for alarm, and that the boats would certainly return. On the morning of the 16th, we paid the chief a visit, who was in his own house in perfect tranquillity. At this time Poree left us.

A

*A Spanij
marks
taken
from U
vered.
rive a
cidents
The a
tion—
Weapon
of the*

ON t
ter
kinds of
son paid
hogs fur
more, o
could sca
hundred
us till we
to tell th
many yo
one on b
dee, a n
great Op
of harbo
following
brought
Captain

Vol. I.-

A Spanish Ship visits Otaheite.—State of the Islands.—Remarks on the Diseases and Customs of the Natives.—Mistaken Notions concerning the Women, corrected.—Passage from Ulitea to the Friendly Isles.—Hervey's Island discovered.—Incidents at Middleburgh.—The two Ships arrive at Amsterdam.—A Place of Worship described.—Incidents that happened during their Stay at that Island.—The above Islands described.—Their Produce—Cultivation—Houses—Canoes—Navigation—Manufactures—Weapons—Customs—Government—Religion and Language of the Inhabitants.

ON the 17th of September, being Friday, we determined to put to sea, having a good supply of all kinds of refreshments. Before we sailed, Oreo and his son paid us a visit. Several canoes filled with fruit and hogs surrounded us; of the latter we could receive no more, our decks being so crowded with them that we could scarcely move. In both ships were about three hundred and fifty. Oreo and his friends did not leave us till we were under sail, and earnestly importuned us to tell them when we should return. Captain Cook, as many young men offered to come away with us, took one on board, about eighteen years of age, named Oedidee, a native of Bolabola, and a near relation of the great Opoony, chief of the island. When we were out of harbour and had made sail, a canoe was observed following us conducted by two men; whereupon we brought to, and when alongside, they delivered to Captain Cook a present of roasted fruit, and roots,

from Oreo. The Captain, after having made a proper return, set sail to the west, with the Adventure in company.

We shall here give some further account of these islands, some things, which are rather interesting, having been omitted in the relation of daily transactions and incidents.

A few days after our arrival at Otaheite we were told, that a ship, about the size of the Resolution, had visited Owhairua Harbour, at the S. E. end of the island; at which place, after having remained three weeks, she departed about three months before our arrival. Four of the natives went away in her, whose names were Debedehea, Pacodou, Tanadocce, and Opahiah: We conjectured she was a French ship, but at the Cape of Good Hope, we were informed she was a Spaniard, sent out from America. The natives of Otaheite complained of a disorder communicated to them by the people in this ship, which they described as affecting the head, throat, and stomach, and at length they said it killed them. The ship they called Pahai-no Peppe (ship of Peppe) and the disease they named Apano Pep-pe, just as they call the venereal disease Apano Pretane (English disease) yet to a man, they say this loathsome distemper was introduced among them by M. de Bougainville; and they thought he came from Pretane, as well as every other ship that touched at the island. We were of opinion, that long before these islanders were visited by Europeans, this, or a disease near a-kin to it, had existed among them; for they told us people died of a disorder, which we imagined to be venereal, before that period. But be this as it may, the disease is far less common among them than it was in 1769, when we first visited these isles.

In the years 1767 and 1768, the island of Otaheite, as it were, swarmed with hogs and fowls; but at this time it was so ill supplied with these animals, that hardly any thing could tempt the owners to part with them; and the little stock they had seemed to be at the dis-

posal

posal of
in the
were gi
longed
Opoure
While
half of
other h
their pe
duced i
supplied
Cocoa-r
ter, with
of bread
apples,
natives a
Of all th
none th
like. V
first to t
been co
ships tha
the frequ
we know
at preser
not seem
We coul
who we
that in
numbers
Opoured
and sever
family r
househol
tection,
one, wh
vantage.
We c
bou; b

posaf of their kings. When we lay at Oaiti-piha Bay, in the kingdom of Tiarrabou, or lesser Peninsula, we were given to understand, that every hog and fowl belonged to Waheatoua; and that all in the kingdom of Opoureonu, or the greater peninsula, belonged to Otoo. While at this island we got only 24 hogs in 17 days; half of which came from the kings themselves, and the other half we were inclined to think were sold us by their permission. But with respect to all the fruits produced in the island, with these we were abundantly supplied, except bread-fruit, which was not in season. Cocoa-nuts and plantains, we got the most of; the latter, with a few yams and other roots, supplied the place of bread. At Otaheite we procured great plenty of apples, and a fruit resembling a nectarine, called by the natives aheeya. This fruit was common to all the isles. Of all the seeds, brought by Europeans to those islands, none thrived so well as pumpkins, but these they do not like. We attributed the scarcity of hogs to two causes: first to the great number of these animals which have been consumed, and carried away for stock, by the ships that have touched here of late years; secondly, to the frequent wars between the two kingdoms. Two we know have commenced since the year 1767; but at present peace reigns among them, though they do not seem to entertain a cordial friendship for each other. We could not learn the occasion of the late war, nor who were victorious in the conflict; but we learnt, that in the last battle which terminated the dispute, numbers were killed on both sides. On the part of Opoureonu, Toutaha, our very good friend, was killed, and several other chiefs. Toutaha was buried in his family morai at Oparree; and several women of his household, with his mother, are now under the protection, and taken care of by Otoo, the reigning prince; one, who did not appear to us, at first, to much advantage.

We could learn but little of Waheatoua of Tiarrabou; but we observed, that this prince, no more than

twenty years of age, appeared in public with all the gravity of a man of fifty; yet his subjects do not uncover before him, or pay him that outward obeisance as is done to Otoo; yet they shewed him equal respect, and when abroad, or in council, he took upon him rather more state. His attendants were a few elderly men, who seemed to be his principal advisers. Such was the present state of Otaheite, but the other islands, that is, Huaheine, Ulietea, and Otaha, appeared in a more flourishing condition, than they were at the time when we first visited them; since which, having enjoyed the blessings of peace, the people possess not only the necessaries, but many of the luxuries of life in great profusion: but as we have treated at large of these islands in our narrative of Captain Cook's first voyage, we shall not trouble our readers with unnecessary repetitions; but only add, under this head, new matter, or clear up any mistakes, and seeming inconsistencies. In our first voyage to these places, we were inclined to believe that the natives at times offered to their supreme deity human sacrifices. To clear up this matter the two captains, Cook and Furneaux, with some others went to a morai, in Matavai. In our company we had, as upon all other occasions, an intelligent, sensible man, belonging to the Resolution, who spoke the language of the natives tolerably well. In this morai, or burying-place, was a tupapow, on which lay a dead body, and some viands. We first enquired, if the plantains, &c. before us, were for the Etua, and if they offered to him hogs, dogs, and fowls? They answered in the affirmative. We then, after a few more introductory questions, asked, if they sacrificed any of the human species to the Etua? They answered, yes, Taata-eno, that is bad men, whom they first beat till they were dead; but good men were not sacrificed. We asked them if any Earees were? They replied, that hogs were given to Etua, and only Taata-eno. All the answers seemed to tend to the same point, and meant, that men for certain crimes were condemned to be sacrificed, provided they had

had
will g
ple.
quiri
of th
quair
plete
doub
since
custo
premi
or wh
sure c
retires
thenc
with t
lege)
a part
who i
tim to

The
manne
we ha
pressed
first th
tity of
spits th
platter
cured,
the str
straine
Havin
which
inspic
qualit
howev
moder
what

had not wherewithal to redeem themselves, and such will generally be found among the lower class of people. But, notwithstanding those of whom these enquiries were made took some pains to explain the whole of this religious rite, yet we were not sufficiently acquainted with their language to make ourselves complete masters of the subject; but we have not the least doubt remaining of the certainty of the fact, having since been informed by Omai, that it is undoubtedly a custom with them to offer human sacrifices to the Supreme Being. The object, according to his account, or who shall be sacrificed, depends solely on the pleasure of the high priest, who, on any solemn occasion, retires alone into the temple, and, when he comes from thence, informs the people, that he has seen and talked with the Etua; (the high priest only having this privilege) that he requires a human sacrifice; and that such a particular person is the man, whom he names, and who immediately is killed, falling most probably a victim to the priest's resentment.

These people have a simple, but, to us, a nauseous manner of preparing the plant called Ava-ava, which we have noticed in the first part of this work. This is pressed from the roots, and not from the leaves, as we first thought. The makers of the liquor chew a quantity of the root till it is soft and pulpy; then every one spits the juice he has pressed out into one and the same platter. When a sufficiency for their use is thus procured, more or less water is mixed with it, according to the strength required; after which the diluted liquor is strained through some fibrous stuff like fine shavings. Having undergone this process, it is fit for drinking, which is always done immediately. It drinks flat and insipid, but has a pepperish taste, and an intoxicating quality, the effect of which we saw in one instance; however, the natives drink it, for that reason, with great moderation, and but little at a time. The root is somewhat chewed by them as the Europeans do tobacco, and

and sometimes we have seen them eat the same. Great quantities of this plant are cultivated at Ulitea, at Otaheite very little; but we believe there are few islands in this sea that do not produce more or less of it.

We must not omit to remark here, that great injustice has been done the women of the Society Isles, by those who have represented them as a race of prostitutes without exception, who will sell their favours for gain to any purchaser, which is far from being true; for the enjoyment of either the married or unmarried women, of the higher and middling classes, is a favour as difficult to be obtained here, as in any other country whatever, and even many women in the lower class will admit of no such familiarities. That the proportion of prostitutes are greater than that of other countries may be true, and most of them were such who frequented our ships and tents on shore. By observing these to mix indiscriminately with women of the first rank, we concluded hastily that all females were of the same turn, and that the only difference was in the price; but the truth is, as we have more than once before observed, the woman who prostitutes herself, does not seem, in the popular opinion, to have committed a crime, which ought to exclude her from the esteem and society of the community in general. It must be confessed that all the women in this part of the world are complete coquets, and that few among them fix any bounds to their conversation; therefore it is no wonder that they have obtained the character of women of pleasure; yet we should think it very unjust, if the ladies of England were to be condemned in the lump, from the conduct of those on board of ships in our naval ports, or of those who infest the purlieus of Covent-garden, and Drury-lane.

Respecting the geography of these isles, we think it necessary to add to what has been said in the narrative of our former voyage, that we found the latitude of the bay of Oaitiphia, in Otaheite, to be 17 d. 46 m. 28 s. S. and the east longitude from Point Venus, to be 21 m.

25 1/2 f.
is high
extent
two m
our aft
they fo
differs
Green
149 d.
down,
After
ing Ul
of the i
end, on
the wes
clear of
at night
lest we
and the
ning, a
from th
that dire
ed from
ing from
the win
small isl
isles in t
and abo
tude 19
Each of
particula
traces o
were no
vey's Isl
As the
delay, w
saw som
Saturday
the fruit

25 $\frac{1}{2}$ f. or 149 d. 13 m. 24 f. W. from Greenwich. It is highly probable, that the whole island is of greater extent than at first we supposed it to be in 1769, by two miles, and 4 m. 3 quarters respectively. When our astronomers made their observations on Point Venus, they found the latitude to be 17 d. 29 m. 13 f. S. which differs but two seconds from that determined by Mr Green and Capt. Cook; and its longitude, namely, 149 d. 34 m. 49 $\frac{1}{2}$ f. W. may be as accurately laid down, for any thing yet known to the contrary.

After our departure from the Society Isles, and leaving Ulitea, it was our intention to get into the latitudes of the islands of Middleburgh and Amsterdam, to which end, on Friday the 17th of September, we steered to the west, inclining to the south, with a view of getting clear of the tracts of former navigators. We proceeded at night with great circumspection, frequently laying to, lest we should pass any land unobserved. On the 21st, and the whole of the 22d, we had rain, thunder, lightning, a large swell from the south, and the wind blew from the N. W. for several days; a sign to us, that, in that direction, no land was near us. This was discovered from the mast-head, on Thursday, the 23d, stretching from S. by W. to S. W. by S. We hauled up with the wind at S. E. and found it to consist of two or three small islets, united by breakers, as are most of the low isles in the sea; the whole being in a triangular form, and about six leagues in circuit. This island is in latitude 19 d. 18 m. S. and in 158 d. 54 m. W. longitude. Each of the small connected isles are clothed with wood, particularly of the cocoa-nut kind; but we saw no traces of inhabitants, and had reason to believe there were none. To these islets we gave the name of Hervey's Island, in honour of Capt. Hervey of the navy. As the landing on this isle would have occasioned a delay, we resumed our course to the west, in which we saw some men of war, tropic birds, and flying fish. On Saturday, the 25th, we again began to use our sea biscuit, the fruit being all consumed; but of fresh pork each
man

man had every day a necessary allowance. On Wednesday, the 29th, in latitude 21 d. 26 m. S. we altered our course at noon W. $\frac{1}{2}$ S.

On Friday, the 1st of October, at two o'clock P. M. we made the island of Middleburgh, and the next morning bore up for the west side thereof, passing between the same, and a small island that lay off it, where we found a clear channel two miles broad. After running about two thirds of its length, half a mile from the shore, we observed it assumed another aspect, and offered a prospect both of anchorage and landing. Upon this we plied in under the island. We were now visited by two canoes, which came boldly along-side of us, and several of the Indians entered the Resolution without hesitation; which mark of confidence determined us to visit them if possible. After making a few trips, we found good anchorage, and came to in twenty-five fathoms water, at three cables length from the shore. We had scarcely anchored, when we were surrounded with Indians, some in canoes, and some swimming, several came on board, and among them a chief, named Tioony, to whom Capt. Cook presented a hatchet, spike-nails, and other articles, with which he was highly pleased. A party of our people, in company with Tioony, went on shore, who were conducted to a little creek formed by the rocks, right abreast of the ships, where landing was very easy, and the boats secure against the surf. Here we were saluted with loud acclamations, by an immense croud of people, who shewed the most evident signs of pacific intentions, not one of them having so much as a stick, or any weapon in their hands. They thronged so thick round the boats with cloth, matting, &c. that it was some time before we could make good our landing. Many of them, who could not get near the boats, threw over the others heads whole bales of cloth, and retired immediately, without either asking, or waiting to get any thing in return. At length the chief caused them to open to

the

the right
were the
about 3
and und
prospect
aboundi
placed b
mats, lai
in a circ
pipes, C
return, t
song, wh
and a fev
women,
not fit'd
harsh, bu
Havin
we were
chief had
nances at
liquor, p
the man
presented
green lea
Capt. Co
however
which bo
that the
persons d
liquor.
situated a
fruit and
and the
Before th
It being
with the
the table
thought
again we

Vol. I.—

the right and left, and make room for us to land. We were then conducted up to his house, which was situated about 300 yards from the sea, at the end of a fine lawn, and under some shaddock trees. In the front was the prospect of the sea, and the ships at anchor. Plantations abounding with the richest productions of nature, were placed behind, and on each side. We were seated on mats, laid on the floor, and the natives placed themselves in a circle round on the outside. Having with us bagpipes, Capt. Cook ordered them to be played, and in return, the chief directed three young women to sing a song, which they did with an exceeding good grace: and a few presents being distributed among these young women, set all the rest in the circle a singing, who did not sit down unrewarded. Their songs were in no wise harsh, but on the contrary musical and harmonious.

Having continued here some time, at our own request, we were conducted to another plantation, where the chief had a house, into which we were introduced. Bananoes and cocoa-nuts were set before us, and a bowl of liquor, prepared in our presence, of the juice of ava, in the manner already related; the latter of which was presented to each of us in cups made by the folding of green leaves, containing near half a pint each cup; but Capt. Cook was the only person who tasted the liquor: however the bowl was soon emptied by the natives, of which both men and women partook; but we observed that the same cup was never filled twice, nor did two persons drink out of it; each had a fresh cup and fresh liquor. The house we were now entertained in was situated at one angle of the plantation, abounding with fruit and trees, whose fragrance diffused a pleasing odour, and the spreading branches made an agreeable shade. Before the house was an area, on which we were seated. It being now noon, we returned on board to dinner, with the chief Tioony in our company. We had on the table fresh pork, but he eat nothing, which we thought somewhat extraordinary. After dinner we again went on shore, and were received as before. Mr

Forster, with his botanical party, and some other gentlemen, took a walk into the country. Our two Captains were conducted to the chief's house, where fruit and some greens were set before us. Having just dined we could not eat much, but Oedidee and Omai did honour to the desert. We now intimated a desire of seeing the country, and Tioony very readily gratified our wishes. He led us through several plantations, laid out with great judgment, and inclosed with fences made of reeds. Most of them belonged to our hospitable chief, and were all in very good order, and planted with various fruit trees. Hogs, and very large fowls, the only domestic animals we saw, were running near the houses, and in the lanes that separated the plantations. Every person was very much pleased with this delightful country, and the friendly reception we met with; and we much regretted, that the season of the year, and other circumstances would not permit our longer stay. In the evening we returned on board, and on Saturday the 2d of October, the ships were crowded with people the whole day, trafficking in perfect good order. On the 3d, early in the morning, while the ships were preparing to get under sail, Captains Cook and Furneaux, accompanied by Mr Forster, went off in the boat, to take leave of our hospitable chief. He met us at the landing-place, and had we not excused ourselves, he would have entertained us at his house. We therefore spent half an hour with him, seated on the grass, in the midst of a vast croud of the natives, who seemed to vie with each other in doing what they thought would give us pleasure. Having made the chief a present, consisting of various articles, he was given to understand that we were going away, at which he seemed not at all affected. He went with us into our boat, with two of his friends, intending to accompany us aboard, but when he saw the Resolution under sail, he and his companions went into a canoe, and returned on shore. It is remarkable, that on shore this friendly Indian never made the least exchange; but now, during his stay in the boat,

CA
boat, h
trade in
On S
came o
made sa
half wa
canoes,
on board
to them
were like
We ran
the distan
sea broke
law the f
that came
plantation
running i
flags, the
ed by ho
three of th
oo long o
nd swam
they had n
voyage.
he isle, th
ame boldl
with some
emony.
anchored in
ble's leng
nor, to kee
erty-seven
ounded wi
urchasing
paths, that
prohibit a
ects of th
ought us
undance;

boat, he bartered fish-hooks for nails, and engrossed the trade in a manner wholly to himself.

On Saturday, October the 3d, as soon as Capt. Cook came on board, we departed from Middleburg, and made sail down to Amsterdam. When we were about half way between the two isles, we were met by three canoes, and the people made several attempts to come on board, but without effect, as the rope we threw out to them broke, and we did not shorten sail. They were likewise unsuccessful in boarding the Adventure. We ran along the south-west coast of Amsterdam, at the distance of half a mile from the shore, whereon the sea broke in a great surf. By the help of glasses, we saw the face of the whole island, which, in every part that came under our observation, appeared covered with plantations. Along the shore we perceived the natives running in great numbers, and displaying small white flags, the emblems of peace, which signals we answered by hoisting a St George's ensign. At this time three of the natives of Middleburg, who had continued too long on board the Adventure to return, quitted her, and swam to the shore, from whence we concluded they had no strong inclination to accompany us in our voyage. We had no sooner opened the west side of the isle, than several canoes, having four men in each, came boldly alongside, and when they had presented us with some ava root, came on board without the least ceremony. Having got into Van Diemen's Road, we anchored in eighteen fathoms water, little more than a cable's length from the breakers; and our coasting anchor, to keep the ship from tacking on the rocks, lay in forty-seven fathoms water. By this time we were surrounded with people, and our seamen were so eager in purchasing their curiosities, even at the expence of paths, that Captain Cook found it absolutely necessary to prohibit any farther commerce of this sort. The good effects of this order, was, that on the 4th, the natives brought us fowls, pigs, bananoes, and cocoa-nuts in abundance, for which we exchanged small nails and

pieces of cloth, even old rags would purchase pigs and fowls. A trading party was now settled, and our commanders went on shore, attended by Mr Forster and other officers, in company with a chief, named Attago, who had attached himself to Capt. Cook, the first moment of his coming aboard, which was before the ships came to anchor. This person of some note presented the Captain with several articles, and, as a greater testimony of friendship, exchanged names with him; a custom, which, as we have observed, is practised at Otaheite, and the Society Isles. We were received on shore with the same demonstrations of joy as at Middleburg, and the gentlemen set out into the country, except the two commanders, who distributed presents to such of the natives as Attago pointed out, who were afterwards discovered to be of superior rank to himself, though at this time, by the attention paid to him, he appeared to be the principal person. Having complained of the heat, Attago shewed and seated us under the shade of a large tree; and the people, who were ordered to form a circle, never attempted to pass the prescribed bounds, and croud upon us, as did those of Otaheite. After having been here some time, we hinted our desire to see the country; whereupon Attago immediately conducted us along a lane that terminated in an open green, on one side of which we saw a place of worship, built on a mount about eighteen feet high. It was an oblong square, inclosed by a stone parapet wall, about three feet in height; from which the mount, covered with green turf, rose to the building with a gradual slope. The building was twenty by fourteen feet. When we had advanced within fifty yards of its front, every one sat down on the green. Three elderly men, whom we took for the priests, began a prayer, having their faces to the house, which lasted about ten minutes, and this being ended, they came and seated themselves by us. We made them presents of what we had about us, and then proceeded to view the premises, to which they did not shew the

least
like
cove
with
was
as a
two
wall
cent
raise
floo
lay
by
wo
dere
seve
did
be i
und
cessa
on t
whi
poch
such
the
ther
The
only
her
lic.
we
a fo
of l
Am
C
roa
and
ter
fen

least reluctance. The house was built in every respect like their common dwellings, with posts and rafters, covered with palm thatch. The eaves came down within three feet of the ground, and the open space was filled up with strong matting made of palm leaves as a wall. In the front, leading to the top of this, were two stone steps; and round the house was a gravel walk: the floor also was laid with fine gravel, in the centre whereof was an oblong square of blue pebbles, raised six inches higher. In one angle of the building stood an image roughly carved in wood, and another lay on one side. This image was turned over and over by Attago, as he would have done any other log of wood, which convinced us that they were not considered by the natives as objects of worship. We put several questions to Attago concerning this matter, but did not understand his answers; for our readers are to be informed, that, at our first arrival, we hardly could understand a word the people said. We thought it necessary to leave an offering, and therefore laid down upon the platform some medals, nails, and other things, which our friend immediately took up and put in his pocket. We could not conceive how they could cut such large stones out of the coral rocks, with which the walls were made that inclosed the mount, some of them being ten feet by four, and near six inches thick. The mount, which stood in a kind of grove, was open only to view on that side which fronted the green, and here five roads met, most of which appeared to be public. Among the various trees that composed the groves, we found the Etoa tree, of which are made clubs, and a sort of low palm, very common in the northern parts of Holland. This place of worship, in the language of Amsterdam, is called A-fia-tou-ca.

On our return to the water-side, we turned off to a road leading into the country, about sixteen feet broad, and as level as a bowling-green, several other roads intersected it, all inclosed on each side with neat reed-fences, and shaded by fruit-trees. The country here-
abouts

abouts is surprizingly fertile, infomuch, that we might easily have imagined ourselves in the most pleasant situation that Europe could afford. Here are various delightful walks, and not an inch of uncultivated ground. Nature, assisted by art, no where appears to more advantage than in this fertile spot. The roads, even the high public one, which was about sixteen feet broad, occupied no more space than was absolutely necessary, nor did the boundaries and fences take up above four inches each, and in many places of these were planted useful trees and plants. On every side you saw the same appearances; nor did change of place alter the scene. In this transporting place we met great numbers of people going to the ships loaden with fruit, and coming from them; all of whom gave us the road, by either turning to the right or left hand, sitting down, or standing still with their backs to the fences, till we had passed by them. In many of the cross roads, were A-sia-tou-cas, whose mounts were surrounded with pallisadoes. After having walked several miles, we came to a more spacious one, near to which was a large house, the property of an old chief, who was one of our company. Here we were regaled with fruit; but our stay was short, and our guides having conducted us down to our boat, we returned with Attago to our ship to dinner. When aboard, an old man was ushered into the cabin: we placed him at table, and soon perceived he was a man of consequence, for Attago, the chief, being almost blind, eat with his back towards him; and as soon as the old man returned ashore, which was after he had tasted the fish, and drank two glasses of wine, Attago took his place at the table, finished his dinner, and drank also two glasses of wine. After dinner we all went ashore again. We found the old chief, who, in return for his slender meal, presented us with a hog. Before we set out for the country, Captain Cook went down with Attago to the landing-place, where he found Mr Wales laughing at his perplexing situation. The boats that brought us ashore not having been able to

get

get c
led o
ter, a
them
in an
hind
The
sharp
all hi
croud
condit
ty, by
and st

We
Havin
chief s
not ma
ble this
mentio
ducted
of the
which v
old chie
ed to h
us to th
botanizi
the fam
ertaine
on shor
bargain
cocoa-n
A boat
cargoes
with les
those of
commo
On T
tain's f
fruit, f

get close in with the landing-place, Mr Wales had pulled off his shoes and stockings to walk through the water, and, when on dry ground, sitting down, he put them between his legs, in order to put them on, when in an instant they were snatched away by a person behind him, who immediately mixed with the croud. The man he could not follow bare-footed over the sharp coral rocks; the boat was put back to the ship, all his companions had made their way through the croud; and he was found by the Captain in this forlorn condition: but the friendly Attago soon set him at liberty, by finding out the thief, and recovering the shoes and stockings.

We now began our excursion into the country. Having passed the first mentioned A-sia-tou-ca, the old chief shewed us a pool of fresh water, though we had not made the least enquiry for any. It is very probable this is the bathing place for the king and his nobles, mentioned by Tasman. From hence we were conducted down to the shore of Maria Bay, or N. E. side of the isle, where we were shewn a boat-house, in which was a large double canoe not yet launched. The old chief did not fail to make us sensible that it belonged to him. Night now approaching, Attago attended us to the boat, and we returned aboard. As to the botanizing and shooting parties that were out with us the same day, they were all civilly treated, and well entertained by the natives. The party also at the market on shore had a brisk trade, and many advantageous bargains. They procured plenty of bananas, yams, cocoa-nuts, pigs, and fowls, for nails and pieces of cloth. A boat from each ship was employed to bring off their cargoes, by which means we obtained cheaper, and with less trouble, a good quantity of refreshments from those of the natives who had no canoes to carry their commodities off to the ships.

On Tuesday the 5th, early in the morning, the Captain's friend, Attago, brought him a hog and some fruit, for which, in return, he received a hatchet, a sheet,

sheet, and some red cloth. The pinnace having been sent ashore to trade, as usual, soon returned, and we were informed that the natives, in many respects, were exceeding troublesome. The day before they had stole the boat's grappling, and at this time they were for taking every thing out of the pinnace. It was therefore judged necessary to have on shore a guard, and accordingly the marines were sent, under the command of Lieutenant Edgcumbe. These were soon after followed by the two commanders, Attago, and several of the gentlemen. On landing, the old chief presented Captain Cook with a pig; and then Mr Hodges, accompanied by the two captains, took a walk into the country, in order to make drawings; after which, they all returned with Attago, and two other chiefs on board to dinner, one of which last had sent a hog on board the Adventure, some hours before, for Captain Furneaux, without requiring any return; a singular instance of generosity this: but Attago did not omit to put Capt. Cook in mind of the pig the old king gave him in the morning, for which he had in return, a chequed shirt, and a piece of red cloth. He desired to put them on, which when done, he went upon deck, and shewed himself to all his countrymen. He had done the same with the sheet the Captain gave him in the morning; but when he went ashore in the evening, the old chief took to himself every thing Attago and others had got in their possession. This day the different trading parties procured for both ships a good supply of refreshments; the sailors therefore had leave to purchase any curiosities they might fancy; which opportunity they embraced with great eagerness; indeed they became quite the ridicule of the natives from their thirst after trifles, who jeeringly offered them sticks and stones, in exchange for other things; and one waggish boy took a piece of human excrement on the end of a stick, and offered it for sale to every one he met. This day a fellow found means to get into the master's cabin, and stole some books and other articles, with
which

which
fued by
the wa
hold of
unship
were c
seaman
and fir
Wed
again a
in pur
shore,
noon, a
nied by
Being
made f
ing.
some o
had yet
gill said
he was
nary re
whom,
and pu
him wi
gill and
escorted
him sea
though
notions
Cook f
nor too
ed in th
the Cap
tations;
doubts,
convinc
princip
the pres
Vol. I.

which he was making off in his canoe. On being pursued by one of our boats, he left the canoe, and took to the water; but as often as our people attempted to lay hold of him, he dived under the boat, and at last, having unshipped the rudder, got clear off. Other daring thefts were committed at the landing-place. One man stole a seaman's jacket, and would not part with it till pursued and fired at.

Wednesday the 6th, our friend Attago visited us again as usual, brought with him a hog, and assisted us in purchasing many more. We went afterwards on shore, visited the old chief, with whom we stayed till noon, and then returned on board to dinner, accompanied by Attago, who never one day left Capt. Cook. Being about to depart from this island, a present was made for the old king, and carried on shore in the evening. When the Captain landed, he was informed by some of the officers, that a far greater man than any we had yet seen, was come to pay us a visit. Mr Pickersgill said, he had seen him in the country, and believed he was a man of great consequence, by the extraordinary respect paid him by all ranks of people; some of whom, when they approached him, fell on their faces, and put their head between their feet; nor do any pass him without permission. Upon his arrival, Mr Pickersgill and another gentleman took hold of his arms, and escorted him down to the landing-place, where we found him seated with such an affected gravity, that we really thought him an idiot, whom, from some superstitious notions, the people were ready to adore. When Capt. Cook saluted and addressed him, he neither answered, nor took the least notice of him. And as there appeared in the features of his countenance not any alteration, the Captain was about to leave him to his private cogitations; but an intelligent youth cleared up all our doubts, and from his information, we were now fully convinced, that what we took for a stupid fool was the principal head man, or king of the island. Therefore the present intended for the old chief, was presented to

him. It consisted of a shirt, an axe, a piece of red cloth, a looking glass, some nails, medals, and beads; all of which were put upon, or laid down by his majesty, without his speaking one word, or turning his head either to the right or left. We departed from this living statue, and had not been long on board, before he sent us a present of provisions, consisting of about twenty baskets of roasted bananas, four bread and yams, and a roasted pig, weighing about twenty pounds. We now no longer questioned the real dignity of this fullen chief. When these things were brought down to the water side, Mr Edgcumbe and his party were coming off to the vessels, and the bearers of the present said it was from the Areeke, (that is king) of the island, to the Areeke of the ship.

On Thursday the 7th of October, early in the morning, our two commanders, accompanied by Mr Forster, went ashore, to make a return to the Areeke of the island for his last night's present. They soon found Attago, of whom we learnt, that his majesty's name was Ko-haghee-too-Fallangou. After some little time he appeared with a very few attendants. By Attago's desire we all sat down under a tree, and the king seated himself on a rising ground, about twelve yards from us. We continued some minutes facing each other, expecting Attago would introduce us to his majesty; but observing no signs of this, the two captains went, and, having saluted the king, sat down by him. They then put on him a white shirt, and laid down before him a few yards of red cloth, a brass kettle, a saw, two large spikes, three looking glasses, twelve medals, and some strings of beads. All this time he behaved in the manner before related, sitting like a statue; his arms seemed immoveable; he spoke not one word, nor did he seem to know what we were about. When we gave him to understand by signs and words, that we should soon depart from his island, he made not the least reply; but when we had taken leave, we perceived he conversed with Attago, and an old woman; and in the

course

course
his aff
sition,
islands
with, a
duced
people
the age
compa
root, h
Europe
observe
in the
home
a loss to
almost
having
sury bag
ed toge
and his
dignity,
not full
when c
endeavo
The pri
which
for our
a social
we bid
Attago,
were c
strongl
return,
bring h
which
our sta
us. H
down.
When

course of his conversation he laughed heartily in spite of his assumed gravity; for it could not be his real disposition, seeing he was in the prime of life, and these islanders, like all others we had lately been acquainted with, are much given to levity. We were now introduced by Attago into another circle of respectable old people, of both sexes, among whom were our friend, the aged chief, and the priest, who was generally in his company. We concluded, that the juice of pepper-root, had the same effect that strong liquors have on Europeans, when they drink too much of them; for we observed, that the reverend father could walk very well in the morning, but in the evening was generally led home by two friendly supporters. We were a little at a loss to take leave of the old chief, having, we feared, almost exhausted all our choicest store on the king; but having examined our pockets, and Capt. Cook's treasury bag, which he always carried with him, we collected together a tolerable good present both for the chief and his friends. This old chief had a natural air of dignity, which the king had not. He was grave, but not sullen; would talk at times in a jocular manner, and when conversing only on indifferent subjects, would endeavour to understand us, and be understood himself. The priest in all our visits would repeat a short prayer, which none in the company attended to, and which for our parts we did not understand. Having continued a social conversation with these friends near two hours, we bid them farewell, and repaired to our ship with Attago, and a few of his friends, who after breakfast were dismissed loaded with presents. Attago very strongly importuned us to call again at this isle on our return, and requested of the captain, more than once, to bring him a suit of clothes like those he then had on, which was his uniform. This friendly islander, during our stay, was, on several occasions, very serviceable to us. He daily came on board in the morning, soon after dawn, and frequently staid with us till the evening. When on board or on shore, he performed every kind

office for us is his power, the expence for his services was trifling, and we thought him a very valuable friend.

The supplies which we procured from this island were about one hundred and fifty pigs, double that number of fowls; as many bananas, &c. as we could find room for, and, had we continued longer, we might have had more than our wants required. We were now about to depart, when, in heaving the coasting cable, it broke, by being chafed by the rocks; by which accident we lost nearly half the cable, together with the anchor, which lay in forty fathoms water, without any buoy to it; from whence a judgment may be formed of this anchorage. At ten o'clock P. M. we got under sail, but our decks being encumbered with fruit, fowls, &c. we kept plying under the land till they were cleared.

Before we continue the history of this voyage, we shall here give a particular account of this island, and its neighbouring one of Middleburgh.

These two islands were first discovered by Captain Abel Jansen Tasman, a Dutchman, in January 1642-3, which he named Amsterdam and Middleburgh. The former is called by the natives Tonga-ta-bu, and the latter Ea-oo-wee. From observations made on the spot, they are found to be situated between the latitude of 21 d. 29 m. and 21 d. 3 m. S. and between the longitude of 174 d. 40 m. and 175 d. 15 m. W. Middleburgh, the southernmost isle is about ten leagues in circumference, and, from its height, may be seen twelve leagues at sea. It is bounded by plantations, especially on the S. W. and N. W. sides; but the interior parts are not so well cultivated; yet even this neglect gives an additional beauty to the whole island; for here we see dispersed, forming an agreeable variety, groves of cocoa-nut and other trees, lawns clothed with thick grass, with plantations, roads, and paths in every direction, making a charming confusion, as greatly improves and enlivens the prospect.

The island of Tongatabu, or Amsterdam, is shaped
some-

C.
something
which an
It lies ne
much of
more tha
this isle,
reef of co
spent bef
wherein
island, h
the sea b
not more
without t
before ob
our cable
tom is no
in planta
of nature
fruit like
ahuya: i
ticles, pr
which the
ables, the
affortmen
tivation
sterdam,
lanes and
as to ope
island to
most of
they are
not exce
ence seen
They ha
round w
the very
posed of
some ne
Their co

something like an isosceles triangle, the longest legs of which are seven leagues each, and the shortest four. It lies nearly in the direction of E. S. E. and W. N. W. much of an equal height, but rather low, being not more than eighty feet above the level of the sea. Both this isle, and that of Middleburgh, are guarded by a reef of coral rocks, on which the force of the sea is spent before it reaches the shore. Van Diemen's Road wherein we anchored, is under the N. W. part of the island, having a reef of rocks without it, over which the sea breaks continually. The extent of the bank is not more than three cables' length from the shore; without that is an unfathomable depth; and, as we have before observed, the loss of an anchor, and the damage our cables sustained, are plain indications that the bottom is none of the best. This island is wholly laid out in plantations, abounding with the richest productions of nature, as bread-fruit, plantains, sugar-cane, and a fruit like a nectarine, called sighega, and at Otaheite ahuya: in short, here are to be found most of the articles, productions of the Society Islands, besides others which they have not. The same may be said of vegetables, the stock of which we increased by an additional assortment of garden seeds, &c. The produce and cultivation of Middleburgh is much the same as at Amsterdam, only a part of the former is cultivated. The lanes and roads are laid out in so judicious a manner, as to open a free communication from one part of the island to the other. We here saw no towns or villages, most of the houses being situated in the plantations; they are neatly constructed, but in their dimensions do not exceed those in the other islands. The only difference seems to consist in the disposition of the framing. They have small areas before most of them, planted round with trees, or shrubs, whose fragrant perfume perfumes the very air. The whole of their furniture is composed of a few wooden platters, cocoa-nut shells, and some neat wooden pillows shaped like stools or forms. Their common cloathing serves them for bedding, with
the

the addition of a mat. We saw two or three earthen vessels among them; one in the shape of a bomb-shell, with two holes in it, opposite each other; the others resembled pipkins, containing about five or six pints. Having seen no great number of these utensils, we concluded they were the manufacture of some other isle. The only domestic animals we saw among them were hogs and fowls. The latter are as large as any in Europe, and their flesh equally good, if not better. We believe they have no dogs, as they were very desirous of those we had on board. In these isles are no rats, nor did we discover any wild quadrupeds, except small lizards. The land birds are pigeons, turtle-doves, parrots, parroquets, owls, baldcoots with a blue plumage, small birds, and large bats in abundance. The same sorts of fish are found here as in other isles. Their fishing-tackle is much the same; as hooks made of mother of pearl, gigs having two or three prongs, and nets composed of a very fine thread, with the meshes made exactly like ours. The construction of their canoes is remarkably ingenious, exceeding in point of workmanship, every thing of this kind we saw in this sea. They are formed of several pieces sewed together, in so neat a manner, that on the outside it is difficult to discern the joints. On the inside, all the fastenings pass through ridges. They are of two sorts, namely, double and single; the single ones are from twenty to thirty feet in length, and about twenty or twenty-two inches broad in the middle.

The stern terminates in a point, and the head is somewhat like the extremity of a wedge. At each end is a kind of deck, open in the middle, for about one third part of the whole length. The middle of their decks in some of them, is ornamented with white shells, stuck on little pegs, and placed in rows. They work these fragile canoes sometimes with sails, but oftener with paddles, the short blades whereof are broadest in the middle: they have all our-riggers.

The double canoes are made with two vessels about
sixty

sixty or
middle
differs
being
they ha
someti
compact
such ve
each of
by ban
vessels
and oth
of the c
a mast
of the d
of the w
the wat
least dar
it is fear
to sink t
are not
from on
lattean-f
a little cr
and thei
little the
from th
a move
wooder
form is
out the
double
that in
bed; b
not ha
mast an
from u
The
was a

fifty or seventy feet long, and four or five broad in the middle. Each end terminates in a point, and the hull differs but little in its construction from the single canoe, being put together exactly in the same manner; but they have a rising in the middle round the open part, somewhat like a trough which is made of boards, well compacted and secured to the body of the vessel. Two such vessels as above mentioned are placed parallel to each other, and fastened by strong cross beams, secured by bandages to the upper part of the risings. The vessels are about six feet asunder. Over these beams, and others, supported by staunchions fixed on the bodies of the canoes, is laid a boarded platform, whereon stands a mast that may easily be raised or let down. All parts of the double canoes are strong, yet as light as the nature of the work will admit; and they may be immersed in the water to the very platforms, without being in the least danger of filling; and so long as they hold together, it is scarce possible, under any circumstance whatever, to sink them. By the nature of their construction, they are not only vessels of burden, but fit for short voyages from one island to another, and are navigated with a latten-sail, or triangular one, extended by a long yard, a little curved or bent. Their sails are composed of mats, and their ropes like ours, some four or five inches. A little shed is raised upon the platform, to screen the crew from the sun, and for other purposes. Here they have a moveable fire-hearth, which is a square shallow wooden trough, filled with stones. From off the platform is the way into the hold, wherein they stand to bail out the water. Capt. Cook was of opinion, that these double canoes are navigated either end foremost, and that in changing tacks, the sail is only shifted, or gibbed; but we cannot speak with certainty of this matter, not having seen any of them under sail, or with the mast and sail an end, but what were at a great distance from us.

The only piece of iron we saw among these people was a small awl, which had been made of a nail; all their

their working tools are of stone, bone, shells, &c. as at the other islands. Every one who sees the work executed with these tools, cannot but be struck with admiration at both the ingenuity and patience of the artificers. They had little knowledge of the utility of iron, but enough to prefer nails to beads, and such trifles. Shirts, cloth, jackets, and even rags, were more esteemed by them than the best edged tool, on which account we parted with few axes but what were given as presents; however, if we include the nails exchanged for curiosities, by the companies of both ships, with those given for refreshments, &c. they could not get from us less than 500 weight, great and small.

As to the natives of these islands, both sexes are of a common size with Europeans; but with respect to complexion, their colour is that of a lightish copper, and more uniformly so than among those of Otaheite and the Society Isles. Of our gentlemen, some thought these people were a much handsomer race; others were of a contrary opinion, of which number Capt. Cook was one. It is certain, that they have in general regular features with a good shape: they are also active, brisk, and lively. The women are especially very merry and sociable, and would chat with us without being invited, or if we seemed attentive, without considering whether we understood them or not. They appeared in general to be modest: yet instances of those of a different character were not wanting; and having some venereal complaints, Capt. Cook took all possible care, that the disorder should not be communicated to them. Whenever opportunity served, they discovered a strong propensity to pilfering, and in the art of thieving are full as knowing and dexterous as the Otaheiteans. Their hair, particularly of the females, is black, but some of the men have a method of staining the hair with various colours, as white, red, and blue, which we saw upon the same head. It is worn cut short, and we met with only two exceptions to this custom. The boys have only a single lock on the top of the head, combed up-
wards,

wards,
of the
even th
general
of the t
the ski
their ar
of cloth
the wa
ornamen
posed o
The wo
fibres of
are few
half mod
and deco
effect.
tortoise-
of a smal
yet these
mon. T
of cloth,
not such
having a
ble than
time. T
fine, and
thick and
sleep on
purple, y
They ma
their ing
sorts of c
rials as th
cocoa-nut
people wa
How they
cannot pa
acquaintec
Vol. I.—

wards, and a small quantity on each side. The beards of the men are shaved quite close with two shells; and even those of an advanced age have fine eyes, and in general good teeth. They are tattooed from the middle of the thigh to above the hips; but among the women, the skin is punctured very slightly, and that only on their arms and fingers. Their dress consists of a piece of cloth of matting, hanging below the knees, but from the waist upwards they are generally naked. Their ornaments are bracelets, amulets, and necklaces, composed of bones, shells, and beads, of mother of pearl. The women have a curious apron made of the outward fibres of the cocoa-nut shell: small pieces of this stuff are sewed together in such a manner as to form stars, half moons, and squares, &c. and the whole is studded, and decorated with red feathers, so as to have a pleasing effect. They wear also rings on their fingers made of tortoise-shell, and pendants of the same, about the size of a small quill; but though all have their ears bored, yet these last kind of ornaments are not worn in common. The natives of these islands make the same sorts of cloth, as the inhabitants of Otaheite; but they have not such a variety, nor any of so fine materials; yet having a method of glazing their cloth, it is more durable than that at Otaheite, and will resist rain for some time. Their matting is of various kinds; some very fine, and generally used for clothing; another sort is thick and stronger, which serves them for sails, and to sleep on. The colours of their cloth are black, brown, purple, yellow, and red; all extracted from vegetables. They make many little toys, which sufficiently evinces their ingenuity: and among their utensils are various sorts of curious baskets, some made of the same materials as their mats, and others of the twisted fibres of cocoa-nuts; which prove in the workmanship, that these people want neither taste to design, nor skill to execute. How they amuse themselves in their leisure hours, we cannot particularly and positively say, being but little acquainted with their diversions. We were entertained

frequently with songs from the women, in an agreeable style, and the music they accompanied by snapping their fingers, so as to keep time to it. Both this and their voices are very harmonious; and they have a considerable compass in their notes. Among their musical instruments, which came under our knowledge, they have a drum, or rather an hollow log of wood, on the side of which they beat with two drum sticks, whereby is produced a doleful sound, not quite so musical as that of an empty cask. We saw one of these drums five feet and a half long, and thirty inches in girth. It had a slit in it from one end to the other, about three inches wide, by means of which it had been hollowed out. They have also two musical pipes; one a large flute made of a piece of bamboo, which they fill by breathing through their noses: these have four stops, whereas those at Otaheite have only two. The other instrument is composed of ten or eleven small reeds of unequal lengths, bound together side by side, as the doric pipe of the ancients is said to have been. The open ends of the reeds into which they blow with their mouths are of equal height or in a line.

In this country the manner of a salutation is by joining or touching noses, and the displaying a white flag or flags, when strangers arrive, is a sure sign of peace. Such were displayed when we first drew near the shore; but the people who then came on board, brought with them some pepper plant, which they sent before them into the ship; and a stronger sign of friendship we could not wish for. From the friendly reception we experienced, and the unsuspecting manner of their behaviour upon our landing, we concluded, they are seldom molested either by foreign or domestic enemies; nevertheless they are not without very formidable offensive and defensive weapons, as bows and arrows; also clubs and spears formed of hard wood. The clubs are of various shapes, and from three to five feet in length.

The bows and arrows are none of the best, the former

mer be
pointe
groove
spears
pons w
is that
heads,
things
up the
paying
infancy
changes
and has
it is app
singular
cular to
greater p
little fin
found fe
of this n
or make
the reaso
However
observed
peared h
The go
Otaheite,
Areeke)
certain di
people see
ed a thir
who seem
mon peop
all the lan
here, as at
have no p
every thin
cultivated
reap, and

mer being very slight, and the latter only a slender reed pointed with hard wood. On the side of the bow is a groove, wherein is placed the arrow. Several of their spears have many barbs, and must be dangerous weapons where they take effect. Another singular custom is that of putting every thing you give them to their heads, by way of thanks, as we imagined; and where things were given to young infants, the mother lifted up the child's hand to its head, so that this manner of paying a compliment is taught them from their very infancy. The same custom they also used in their exchanges with us. It is called by the natives *saga-fatie*, and has, we believe, various significations, according as it is applied; all however complimentary. A still more singular custom prevails among them, though not peculiar to the inhabitants of the Friendly Isles. The greater part of both sexes had lost one or both of their little fingers; and, except some young children, we found few who had both hands perfect; but the reason of this mutilation we could not learn. They also burn or make incisions in their cheeks, near the cheek bone: the reason of which was equally unknown to us. However, such is the goodness of the climate, that we observed neither sick nor lame among them; all appeared healthy, strong, and vigorous.

The government of this country is much like that of Otaheite, that is, in a king or prime chief (called *Areeke*) with other subordinate chiefs, who are lords of certain districts, perhaps sole proprietors, to whom the people seem to pay great obedience. We also perceived a third rank, one of whom was our friend *Attago*, who seemed to have not a little influence over the common people. It was the opinion of Captain Cook, that all the land on Tongatabu is private property, and that here, as at Otaheite, are a set of servants, or slaves, who have no property in land. Indeed, we cannot suppose every thing to be in common, in a country so richly cultivated. Few would toil if they did not expect to reap, and enjoy the fruits of their labour as their own.

Parties of six, eight or ten people, would frequently bring fruit down to the landing place; but we always saw one man, or woman, superintend the sale of the whole, without whose consent no exchanges could be made; and the things they bartered for were always given them, all which plainly shews they were the owners, and the others only their servants.

Though the benevolent author of nature has poured forth liberally his bounties on these isles; yet the high state of cultivation their lands are in, must have cost them indefatigable pains and labour: but this is now amply rewarded by the great produce every where to be seen, and of which all partake; for no one wants the common necessaries of life; the poor are not crying for bread; but joy, contentment, and chearful mirth are painted in the features of every one. An easy freedom prevails among all ranks of people; they have few desires they cannot gratify, and they are blessed with a clime wherein the disagreeable extremes of heat and cold are equally unknown. The article of water was the only one of which they may be said to have a scanty supply: this they are obliged to dig for. We saw not any at Amsterdam, and but one well. At Middleburgh we found no water but what the natives had in vessels; this was sweet and cool, and probably procured not far from the spots where we saw it.

We can say very little of the religion of these people. The Afiatoucas may be appropriated to this purpose; but some of our gentlemen thought these buildings were only burying places. It is certain particular persons made speeches in them, which we understood to be prayers; perhaps, they may be both temples and burying places, as at Otaheite; but with respect to the images being idols, we had many reasons to be of a contrary opinion. Mr Wales told us, that one of these images was set up for him and others to shoot at; not very respectful this to divinity; and yet we have seen the Portuguese, when their wishes were not gratified, treat their tutelar saints with much greater familiarity.

It app
toucas
for th
and t
and r
growt

The Re

stera

teru

two

Soun

Desc

Soun

the I

Met.

Arri

dition

some

ON
for Qu
take in
ceed on
we ma
bearing
by Tal
175 d.

It appeared however very plain to us, that these Asia-
toccas are much frequented for one purpose or other ;
for the areas before them were covered with green sod,
and the grass was very short, by being often sat upon
and much trodden, which doubtless prevented its
growth.

*The Resolution and Adventure continue their Voyage from Am-
sterdam—Proceed for Queen Charlotte's Sound.—An In-
terview with the Inhabitants.—The final Separation of the
two Ships.—Transactions and Incidents in Charlotte's
Sound—The Inhabitants discovered to be Canibals.—A
Description of the Coast.—The Resolution departs from the
Sound, and proceeds in Search of her Consort.—Course of
the Resolution in Search of the supposed Continent ; and the
Methods pursued to explore the Southern Pacific Ocean.—
Arrives at Easter Island—Transactions there—An Expe-
dition into the inland Part of the Country, with an Account of
some gigantic Statues, and Description of the whole Island.*

ON Thursday, the 7th of October, we made sail to the
southward, and our route determined was, to make
for Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, there to
take in a supply of wood and water, and then to pro-
ceed on farther discoveries to the S. and E. On the 8th,
we made the island of Pilsart, distant eight leagues, and
bearing S. W. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. This was also discovered
by Talman, and lies in latitude 22 d. 26 m. S. and in
175 d. 59 m. W. longitude, distant 32 leagues from
the

the south end of Middleburgh, in the direction of S. 52 d. W. Two remarkable hills rise therein of a considerable height, and seemingly disjointed from each other by a low valley. We now, after a few hours calm, stretched with a S. W. wind to the S. E. but, on Sunday the 10th, it veered round to the S. E. and E. S. E. upon which we resumed our course to the S. S. W.

On Thursday the 21st at five o'clock, A. M. we made the land of New Zealand, extending from N. W. by N. to W. S. W. We now stood in shore till we were abreast of Table Cape and Portland Island, which is joined to it by a ledge of rocks; we were gazed at by the natives as we passed; but none of them ventured to come off in their canoes. We advanced, to the Black Cape on the 22d, and now several inhabitants took courage and boarded us, among whom was a chief; he was clothed elegantly, and his hair was dressed in the high fashion of the country. We entertained him in the cabin, and his companions sold us some fish. These people were very fond of nails, and the chief received them with much greater eagerness than when the Captain gave him hogs, fowls, seeds, and roots. We obtained from him a promise not to kill any, and if he keeps his word, there are enough to stock the whole island; the present consisted of two sows, two boars, four hens, and two cocks; we likewise gave him several useful seeds, and instructed him in the manner of setting them. These people very well remembered the Endeavour having been on their coast.

The Adventure was now a good way to leeward, and as we were obliged to tack, she was consequently separated from us; but we were joined by her on the 24th. The wind was now very high, so that we could carry hardly any sail; we endeavoured to make Cape Palliser, the northern point of Eakeinomauwe, but we had such a hard gale for two days, that drove us off the land just as we were in sight of port. This was very mortifying; but two favourable circumstances attended it, for we were in no danger of a lee-shore, and it was fair over

head

head.
find th
without
not see
venture
pany
disappe
Sound
we had
to mak
a suppl
to the e
ture.
clear, an
but as v
the Sou
Eakeind
inlet, w
the east
twelve
several
exurava
Cove or
the Adv
obliged
damage
board,
coast, p
empty
repairs
made.
who c
natives
casks, v
remain
serve i
On
tunity
which

head. In the evening of the 25th we endeavoured to find the Adventure, which the storm had separated, but without effect, the weather being so hazy, that we could not see a mile round us. On the 28th we saw the Adventure about five miles to leeward, and we kept company with her till the night of the 29th, when she disappeared, nor did we see her at day-light. Charlotte Sound was the appointed place of rendezvous; and as we had separated from the Adventure, we were obliged to make for it, otherwise Capt. Cook would have sought a supply of wood and water further south. We stood to the eastward, in hopes of meeting with the Adventure. On the 2d of November the morning was very clear, and we kept a sharp look-out for the Adventure; but as we could not see her, we judged she was got into the Sound. We accordingly made for the shore of Eakeinomauwe. In doing which we discovered an inlet, which the Captain had never observed before, on the east side of Cape Teerewhitte. We anchored in twelve fathoms water, at the entrance of this inlet; and several of the inhabitants came on board, who were extravagantly fond of nails. We ran up into Ship Cove on the 3d of November, where we expected to see the Adventure, but were disappointed. Here we were obliged to unbend the sails, which had been very much damaged in the late storms. Several people came on board, who remembered the Endeavour when on this coast, particularly an old man called Goubiah. The empty casks were ordered on shore, and the necessary repairs both to them and the ship were ordered to be made. We were unsuccessful in our fishing parties, who caught no fish, but were well supplied by the natives with that useful article. On opening the bread casks, we found a great deal of it damaged; that which remained good we baked over again, in order to preserve it.

On Friday the 5th, one of the natives took an opportunity of stealing one of the seamen's bag of cloaths, which with some difficulty, we recovered. This made our

our people more cautious in future. We found one of the sows which Capt. Furneaux had put on shore, and were informed that the boar and other fow were taken to another part, but not killed. We were mortified very much when we heard that old Goubiah had killed the two goats which Captain Cook put on shore, and were concerned to think that our endeavours to stock this country with useful animals were likely to be rendered fruitless by those very people for whose benefit they were designed. But nature had amazingly assisted our intentions in the gardens, where every thing was in a flourishing state, except the potatoes, which were most of them dug up. We put on shore another boar and fow, with two cocks and four hens. We purchased a large quantity of fish from the natives, who were very much inclined to theft; we detected them picking our pockets very frequently. Several strangers came to visit us in five canoes, they took up their quarters in a cave near us, and decamped the next morning with six of our small water casks. All the people whom we found on our arrival likewise went with them. Some of them returned in a day or two, and supplied us with fish.

On Monday, the 15th, we made a party to the summit of one of the hills, in order to look for the Adventure, but were disappointed, and totally at a loss to know what was become of her. When we returned, the natives were collected round our boat, to whom we made some presents, and went on board. We were very well supplied with fish during our stay here. On the 22d we took one boar and three sows, together with some cocks and hens, into the woods, where we left them with provision sufficient for ten or twelve days, with hopes that the natives would not discover them till they had bred. Our officers having visited the dwelling-places of several of the natives, found some human bones, from which the flesh appeared to be lately taken; and on the 23d, they being on shore saw the head and bowels of a youth, lately killed, lying on the beach; his heart

was

was f
of the
broug
eat it
made
broug
in ter
certai
this ci
learn,
This
native
what

Our
wholly
at this
Before
setting
intende
it must
here, t
such an
fifth of
harbour
again w
ed disc
perfect
and dic
tended

On I
and on
antipoc
S. latit
40 min
panion
large q
vember
foon er
the N.

Vol. I

was stuck on a fork, and fixed at the fore part of one of the largest canoes. The head was bought, and brought on board, where one of the natives broiled and eat it before the whole ship's company, and the sight made several of them sick. Oedidee, whom we had brought with us, expressed his horror at this transaction in terms which it is impossible for us to describe. It is certain that the New Zealanders are cannibals, which this circumstance fully proves; but from all we could learn, they only eat the flesh of those slain in battle. This youth had fallen in a skirmish with some of the natives, as well as several others: but how many, or what was the cause of the quarrel, we could not learn.

Our crew had for three months past lived almost wholly on fresh provisions and vegetables, and we had, at this time, neither a scorbutic nor sick person on board. Before we quitted the Sound, we left a memorandum, setting forth the day of our departure, what course we intended steering, &c. and buried it in a bottle, where it must be discovered, should Captain Furneaux touch here, though we did not place any great expectation in such an event. We sailed from thence on the twenty-fifth of November, and sought the Adventure in several harbours, but without effect. All hopes of seeing her again were now vanished, and we set about our intended discoveries by ourselves. The ship's company were perfectly satisfied with Captain Cook's care and conduct, and did not express any uneasiness at our being unattended.

On Friday, the twenty-sixth, we steered to the south, and on Monday the sixth of December found ourselves antipodes to our London friends. We were then in S. latitude 50 deg. 17 min. and E. longitude 179 deg. 40 min. We met with several flights of our old companions, albatrosses, petrels, &c. We sailed through large quantities of loose ice on the fourteenth of November, and discovered many ice islands. We were soon embayed by the ice, and were obliged to stretch to the N. W. We were now in much danger, owing to

the ice islands and the fog. We attempted to take some of the ice on board, but without effect; but on the seventeenth we succeeded, and got on board as much as we could manage.

Tuesday, the twenty-first, we came the second time within the antarctic circle; and on a sudden got among a great quantity of loose ice, and a cluster of ice islands, which it was very difficult to steer clear of, as the fog was very thick. On the twenty-fourth they increased so fast upon us, that we could see near an hundred round us, besides an astonishing quantity of small pieces. Here we spent the twenty-fifth, being Christmas-day, in much the same manner as we did the preceding one.

On the 2d of January, 1774, we steered N. W. in order to explore great part of the sea between us and our track to the south; but were obliged to steer north-easterly the next day, and could not accomplish our design. Many of the people were attacked with slight fevers while we were in these high latitudes, happily they were cured in a few days. Taking every circumstance into consideration, it is not very probable that there is any extensive land in our track from Otaheite, which was about two hundred leagues; and that any lay to the west is still less probable; we therefore steered N. E. There was no sign of land; and therefore on the eleventh we altered our course, and steered S. E. On the twenty-fifth we found ourselves in a pleasant climate, and no ice in view; on the twenty-sixth came a third time within the antarctic circle. On Sunday, thirtieth, we saw a very extensive field of ice, and within the field we distinctly enumerated ninety-seven ice hills of various sizes; it is probable that such mountains of ice were never seen in the Greenland seas. On this account, the attempt to get farther to the south, though not absolutely impossible, was yet both rash and dangerous. The majority of us were of opinion that this ice extended to the pole, as it might possibly join some land to which it has been contiguous since the earliest

C
earliest
this ice
beast,
certain
to the
back to
71d. 10
tacked
than a
highly

On the
more ice
served u
Cook w
found in
sible; h
ter with
worth p
land disc
pursuit,
which w
on board
the thou
had cont
when it
day con
persuade
such was
not wort
so ill as t
slowly.
he could
Forster's
flesh and
kind of
many pe
it was li
On the
head, wh

earliest times. Should there be land to the south behind this ice, it certainly can afford no better retreat for man, beast, or birds, than the ice itself, with which it must certainly be covered. As we could not go any farther to the south, we thought it adviseable to tack, and stand back to the north, being at this time in the latitude 71 d. 10 m. S. and 106 d. 54 m. W. Happily for us we tacked in good time; for we had no sooner done it, than a very thick fog came on; which would have been highly dangerous when we fell in with the ice.

On the 11th of February we were able to take in some more ice, which, though it was cold work to collect, served us for present consumption when melted. Capt. Cook was now well satisfied that no continent was to be found in this ocean, but that which was totally inaccessible; he therefore determined to pass the ensuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no other object worth pursuing. It was determined to steer for the land discovered by Juan Fernandez, or, in failure of this pursuit, to search for Easter Island or Davis's Land, which we knew very little about. The sailors, and all on board acceded to these designs, and were happy at the thoughts of getting into a warmer climate. We had continual gales from the 8th to the 12th instant, when it fell a dead calm. The weather varied every day considerably till the 25th, when Capt. Cook was persuaded that the discovery of Juan Fernandez, if any such was ever made, could be nothing but a small island, not worth notice. On the 25th, Capt. Cook was taken so ill as to be obliged to keep his bed, and recovered very slowly. It is something very extraordinary, that when he could eat nothing else he had a mind to a dog of Mr Forster's, which was killed, and he relished both the flesh and the broth made of it. This seems very odd kind of food for a sick man; and, in the opinion of many people, would create much greater sickness than it was likely to be any means of removing.

On the 11th of March land was seen from the mast-head, which proved to be Easter Island: and on the

13th, we came to an anchor in thirty-six fathoms water, before the sandy beach. One of the natives came on board the ship, where he staid two nights. He measured the length of the ship, and called the number by the same names as the Otaheiteans do; but otherwise we could not understand his language. A party of us went ashore on the 14th, and found a great number of the natives assembled, who were pacifically inclined, and seemed desirous to see us. We made signs for something to eat, after we had distributed some trinkets among them; they brought us some sugar-canes, potatoes, and plantains. We very soon found out that these gentlemen were as expert thieves as any before met with; we could scarce keep any thing in our pockets, and it was with some difficulty that we could keep our hats upon our heads. These people seemed to understand the use of a musquet, and to be very much afraid of it. Here were several plantations of potatoes, sugar-canes, and plantains; but otherwise the country appeared barren and without wood. We found a well of brackish water, and saw some fowls. As the natives did not seem unwilling to part with these articles, and as we were in want of them, we determined to stay a few days. A trade was accordingly opened with the natives, and we got on board a few casks of water. A party of officers and men were sent up the country in order to examine it; and Captain Cook remained on shore among the natives. An advantageous trade for potatoes was opened, but soon put a stop to by the owner of the spot from whence they were dug. It seems that they had stolen these potatoes; for they all ran away at his approach. From this circumstance it is pretty evident that they are not more strictly honest among themselves than to strangers. This reconoitring party were followed by a crowd of natives; and before they had proceeded far, they were met by a middle-aged man, with his face painted. He had a spear in his hand, and walked along with him, keeping his countrymen

trymen
molest
from h
island
tations
the ru
of the
made
and n
long,
head o
able m
places
a fruit
tations
ney; b
get on
found
obliged
from t
The sh
ped th
and wa
affair.
and re
derstar
togeth
A nun
hill at
dispert
peared
cloth t
and w
his bo
water
render
of wa
Let th

trymen at a distance, that our people might receive no molestation from them. This man was punctured from head to foot. They found the greatest part of the island barren; though in many places there were plantations of the roots before mentioned. They met with the ruins of three platforms of stone work. On each of these platforms had stood four very large statues, made of stone, but they were now fallen to the ground, and much defaced. These statues were fifteen feet long, and six feet broad across the shoulders. On the head of each statue was a round red stone, of considerable magnitude. Travelling on, they found in some places a poor sort of iron ore, and afterwards came to a fruitful part of the island, on which were several plantations. They could get no good water in their journey; but they were obliged to drink what they could get on account of the extremity of their thirst. They found the natives so addicted to theft, that they were obliged to fire some small shot at a man, who took from them their bag of provisions and implements. The shot hit this fellow in the back, on which he dropped the bag and fell; but he soon afterwards got up and walked off. Some delay was occasioned by this affair. The man before mentioned ran round them and repeated several words, which they could not understand; and afterwards they were very good friends together, no one attempting to steal any thing more. A number of the natives were assembled together on a hill at some distance, with spears in their hands, but dispersed at the desire of their countrymen. There appeared to be a chief among them, which wore a better cloth than the rest. He had a fine open countenance, and was very well made. His face was painted, and his body punctured. They met with some pretty fresh water towards the eastern end of this island, but it was rendered dirty by a custom which the inhabitants have of washing themselves in it as soon as they have drank. Let the company be ever so large, the first that gets to
the

the well jumps into the middle of it, drinks his fill, and washes himself all over; the next does the same, and so on till all of them have drank and washed.

Great numbers of the gigantic statues, before described, are to be seen on this part of the island; one of which they measured, and found to be twenty-seven feet long, and eight feet broad across the shoulders. One of these figures, of an astonishing height, being standing, it afforded shade for the whole party to dine under, which consisted of thirty persons. Many gained the summit of a hill, but could not see any bay or creek, nor discover any signs of fresh water. They returned to the ship in the evening. No shrubs worth mentioning were found in this excursion, neither did they see an animal of any sort, and but very few birds. They could not discover any thing in the whole island to induce ships, in the utmost distress, to touch at it.

The

The
Tr
in
que
Inb
to
tion
An
The
dent
Obj

O
N
quesas
thing
covere
and lo
distan
exten
third
ed in
trials
Mend
water
peare
cultu
at last
these
bers c

The Resolution sails from Easter Island to the Marquesas—Transactions and Incidents while she lay in Resolution Bay, in the Island of St Christina.—Departs from the Marquesas.—These Islands described, with an Account of the Inhabitants, their Customs, &c.—The Resolution prepares to leave Otabeite.—Another naval Review.—A Description of the Island.—Her Arrival at the Island of Huabeine. An Expedition into the same.—Various Incidents related.—The Ship proceeds to Ulietea.—Her Reception there.—Incidents during her Stay.—Character of Oedidee.—General Observations on the Islands.

ON Wednesday the 16th of March, we took our departure from Easter Isle, and steered for the Marquesas islands, intending to make some stay there if nothing material intervened. On the 6th of April, we discovered an island, when we were in latitude 9 d. 20 m. and longitude 138 d. 14 m. we were about nine leagues distance from it. We soon discovered another, more extensive than the former, and presently afterwards a third and a fourth; these were the Marquesas discovered in 1595 by Mendana. After various unsuccessful trials to come to an anchor, we came at last before Mendana's port, and anchored in thirty-four fathoms water, at the entrance of the bay. Several canoes appeared, filled with natives, but it was with some difficulty they were persuaded to come alongside; they were at last induced by some spike nails and a hatchet. From these people we got some fish and fruit. Great numbers of them came alongside next morning, and brought
with

with them one pig, some bread-fruit and plantains, for which they received nails, &c. We often detected them in keeping our goods, and making no return; which practice was not put a stop to till Captain Cook fired a musquet-ball over the head of one man, who had repeatedly served us so.

We wanted to get farther into the bay, and accordingly sought after a convenient place to moor the ship in. When Capt. Cook saw there were too many natives on board, he desired that they might be well looked after, or that they would certainly commit many thefts. Before the Captain was well got into the boat, he was told that a canoe, with some men in her, were making off with one of the iron stanchions from the opposite gangway. The Captain immediately ordered them to fire over the canoe, but not to kill any body. There was such a noise on board, that his orders were not distinctly heard, and the poor thief was killed at the third shot. The rest that were in the canoe leaped overboard, but got in again just as Capt. Cook came up to them, and threw overboard the stanchion. One of the men sat laughing as he laved the blood and water out of the boat, but the other looked very serious and dejected. We afterwards had reason to think that the father of the latter had been shot. The natives retired with great precipitation at this unhappy accident; but their fears were in some measure allayed by the Captain's following them into the bay, and making them presents. We found fresh water ashore, which we very much wanted. One would have imagined that the fatality attending one poor fellow's thieving, would have discouraged them from making any more attempts of the like nature; but no sooner was our kedge anchor out, but two men came from the shore, wanting to take away the buoy, not knowing what was fastened to it. Lest they should take away the buoy, a shot was fired, which fell short of them; of this they took not the least notice; but when another was fired, which went over their heads, they instantly let go the buoy, and returned to the shore.

shore
they
the
their
up
here
off t
fente
num
some
party
us civ
hogs
and v
ed by
him;
us to
to the
longer
his ful
he fled
have f
bore th
and to
compe
other
the eve
differen
instant
afford
this da
veral n
now a
of refr
by som
them fi
made t
before
Vol. I

shore. This last shot had a good effect; for by this they saw that they were not safe at any distance, and they were ever afterwards much terrified at the sight of the musquet. However, they still continued to practise their art of thieving; but it was judged better to put up with it, as we did not intend making a long stay here. A man who had the appearance of a chief came off to us with a pig upon his shoulder; he was presented with a hatchet in return, and afterwards great numbers of the natives came along-side, and carried on some traffic. Peace being now established, another party of men were sent ashore. The natives received us civilly, and we got a supply of water, as well as some hogs and fruit. On the 9th, another party went ashore, and were met by a chief of some consequence, attended by several of the natives. Presents were made to him; but we could not prevail on him to return with us to dinner. In the afternoon another party was made to the southern cove, which came to the house that belonged to the man we had killed. His son inherited his substance, which consisted of five or six pigs; but he fled at our approach. We should have been glad to have seen him, as we wanted to convince him that we bore the nation no ill-will, though we killed his father, and to have made him some presents by way of a small compensation. We collected a good many pigs and other refreshments this day, and returned on board in the evening. We also obtained several pigs from the different canoes that came along-side of us on the 10th instant; and by this time we had a sufficient number to afford the crews a fresh meal. A party was made on this day, which was successful in the purchase of several more pigs, and a large quantity of fruit. We had now a fine prospect of getting a supply of all manner of refreshments; but our expectations were frustrated, by some of our crew having been on shore, and selling them such articles as they had never before seen, which made the natives despise the hatchets and nails, which before they so much prized. As this was the case, and

we had much need of refreshment, having been a long time at sea, it was determined to remove our quarters, and make sail for Otaheite, hoping to fall in with some of those islands discovered by the Dutch and other navigators, where our wants might be effectually relieved. We had been nineteen weeks at sea, living the whole time upon salt provisions, and therefore could not but want some refreshments; yet we must own, with grateful acknowledgments to goodness supreme, that on our arrival here, it could scarcely be said we had one sick man, and but a few who had the least complaint. This Captain Cook attributed to the number of antiscorbutic articles on board, and to the great attention of the surgeon, who was very careful to apply them in time.

On Monday the 11th, at three o'clock, we weighed from St Christina, and stood over for La Dominica, and the night was spent in plying between the two isles. On the 12th, we steered to the S. and at five P. M. Resolution Bay bore E. N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant five leagues, and the island of Magdalena about nine leagues, which was the only view we had of it.

But we shall now in our narrative return to the Marquesas. These are five in number, namely, La Magdalena, St Pedro, La Dominica, Santa Christina, and what we named Hood's Island, which is the northernmost, in latitude 9 d. 26 m. S. Its breadth is unequal, and it is about sixteen leagues in circumference. The surface is full of rugged hills rising in ridges, which are disjoined by deep valleys clothed with wood, as are the sides of some of the hills; the aspect is, however, barren; yet it is nevertheless inhabited. St Pedro is about three leagues in circuit, and lies south four leagues and a half from the east end of La Dominica. Christina lies under the same parallel, four leagues more to the west. This isle is nine miles in length, and about twenty-one in circumference. These islands occupy one degree in latitude, and nearly half a degree in longitude, namely, from 138 d. 47 m. to 139 d. 13 m. W. which is the longitude of the west end of Dominica.

The

T
solut
west
islan
mina
high
two
lent
cove
cade
villag
Th
our k
Isles,
other
these
Societ
at last
Th
in this
and re
that o
are of
them,
tattoo
seem
These
hue;
and yo
peans.
but no
Otahei
meagr
teeth r
hair is
the mo
bunch
In trin
they o

The port of Madre de Dios, which was named Resolution Bay, is situated not far from the middle of the west side of St Christina, under the highest land in the island. The south point of the bay is a steep rock, terminating in a peaked hill. The north point is not so high, and rises in a more gentle slope. In the bay are two sandy coves; in each of which is a rivulet of excellent water. For wooding and watering, the northern cove is most convenient. We saw here the little cascade mentioned by Quiros, Mendana's pilot; but the village is in the other cove.

The productions of these isles, which came within our knowledge, are nearly the same as at the Society Isles, namely, hogs, fowls, plantains, yams, and some other roots; also bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, but of these not in abundance. Trifles highly valued at the Society Isles are lightly esteemed here, and even nails, at last, in their opinion, lost their value.

The natives, in general, are the finest race of people in this sea. They surpass all other nations for shape and regular features. The affinity of their language to that of Otaheite, and the Society Isles, shews that they are of the same nation. Oedidee could converse with them, though we could not. The men are curiously tattooed, from head to foot, with various figures, that seem to be directed more by fancy than by custom. These punctures cause the skin to appear of a dark hue; but the women who are not much punctured, and youths who are not at all, are as fair as some Europeans. The men are about five feet six inches high; but none of them were fat and lusty like the Earees of Otaheite, yet we saw not any that could be called meagre. Their eyes are neither full nor lively; their teeth not so good as those of other nations, and their hair is of many colours, except red. Some have it long; the most prevailing custom is to wear it short; but a bunch on each side of the crown they tie in a knot. In trimming their beards, which is in general long, they observe different modes: some part it, and tie it in

two bunches under the chin; some plait it, some wear it loose, and others quite short.

Their cloathing is much the same as at Otaheite, but not so good, nor in such plenty. The men for the most part, cover their nakedness with the marra, which is a slip of cloth passed round the waist, and between the legs. This simple dress is quite sufficient for modesty, and the climate. The women wear a piece of cloth round their loins, like a petticoat, reaching below the middle of their legs, and a loose mantle over their shoulders. Their head-dress, and what seems to be their principal ornament, is a broad fillet, made curiously of the fibres of the husks of cocoa-nuts; in the front of which is placed a mother-of-pearl shell, wrought round to the size of a tea-saucer. Near this is one smaller, of very fine tortoise-shell, perforated in curious figures; and in the center is another round piece of mother-of-pearl, about the size of half a crown; before which is another piece of perforated tortoise-shell the size of a shilling. Some have this decoration on each side, in smaller pieces; and all have annexed to them the tail-feathers of cocks or tropic birds, which stand upright, and the whole makes a very singular ornament. Round the neck they wear a kind of ruff or necklace of light wood, covered with small red peas, fixed on with gum. Round their legs and arms they have bunches of human hair, fastened to a string. Instead of hair they sometimes use short feathers; but all these ornaments we seldom saw on the same person. The chief, indeed, who came to visit us, was completely dressed in this manner; but their ordinary ornaments are necklaces and amulets composed of shells, &c. All had their ears pierced, yet we saw not any with ear-rings.

Their houses are in the valleys, and on the sides of hills, near their plantations, built after the same manner as at Otaheite, but much meaner, being only covered with the leaves of the bread-tree. Most of them are built on a pavement of stone, an oblong, or square, which is raised above the level of the ground. These

pave-

paveme
they ea
people
their co
stones;
off the
out of
the sam
fruit an
out of
without
equally
not suff
weapon
with w
not wit
and the
and is
from sh
fifteen
two soli
later e
zontally
a faint
of these
rowed
were co
hogs;
whole
sweetly
we mi
and ter
On
steered
a chai
coral r
to a cr
nicatio
a defin

pavements are likewise near their dwellings, on which they eat and amuse themselves. In their eating these people are not very cleanly. They are also dirty in their cookery. They dress their pork in an oven of hot stones; but fruit and roots they roast, and having taken off the rind, they put them into a trough with water, out of which we have seen both men and hogs eat at the same time. Once we saw them make a batter of fruit and roots in a vessel that was loaded with dirt, and out of which the hogs had been that moment eating, without washing either that, or their hands, which were equally dirty; but the actions of a few individuals are not sufficient to fix a custom on a whole nation. Their weapons are clubs and spears. They have also slings with which they throw stones with great velocity, but not with a good aim. Their canoes are made of wood, and the bark of a soft tree, which grows near the sea, and is very proper for the purpose. Their length is from sixteen to twenty feet, and their breadth about fifteen inches. The head and stern are formed out of two solid pieces of wood; the former is curved, and the latter ends in a point; the latter, which projects horizontally, is decorated with a rude carved figure, having a faint resemblance of a human shape and face. Some of these canoes have a latteen sail, but they are generally rowed with paddles. The only tame fowls we saw were cocks and hens; and of quadrupeds no other than hogs; but the woods were well inhabited by small birds, whose plumage is exceeding beautiful, and their notes sweetly varied. We did not shoot as many of them as we might have done, from apprehensions of alarming and terrifying the natives.

On Sunday the 17th, at ten o'clock, A. M. having steered W. by S. land was seen bearing W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N, being a chain of low islets, connected together by a reef of coral rocks. We ranged the N. W. coast till we came to a creek or inlet, and which seemed to have a communication with a lake in the center of the island. Having a desire of surveying these half drowned islets, we hoist-

ed

ed out a boat, and sent the master in to sound. While the Resolution ran along the coast, the natives were seen in different places armed with long spears and clubs, and a group of them were observed on one side of the creek. As they shewed some signs of a friendly disposition, two boats were sent ashore well armed, under the command of Lieutenant Cooper, who was accompanied by Mr Forster. We saw our people land without any opposition from a few natives standing on the shore; but perceiving, a little time after, forty or fifty, all armed, coming down to join them, we stood closer in shore, with the view of supporting our people in case they should be attacked; but our boat returned without any thing of this kind having happened. By Mr Cooper we were informed, that many of the natives hovered about the skirts of the wood with spears in their hands; and that the presents he made to those on shore were received with great coolness. When their reinforcement arrived, his party thought it most prudent to embark, especially as the Captain had ordered them to avoid, if possible, an attack. When the crew, &c. were all in the boats, some of the natives attempted to push them off; others seemed disposed to detain them; at length they suffered our people to depart at their leisure. One of them procured a dog for a single plantain, which led us to conjecture this was not a production of their island; indeed, they saw no fruit but cocoa-nuts, of which they could get, by barter, only two dozen. When the master returned from sounding the creek, he reported that there was no passage from thence into the lake; and that the creek, at its entrance, was fifty fathoms wide, and thirty deep; farther up thirty wide, and twelve deep: that the bottom was rocky, and the sides bounded by coral rocks. We were not inclined to run the ship into such a place, and therefore, after having formed some judgment of the natives, we prepared to proceed on new discoveries.

The natives call this island Tiookea, which was discovered and visited by Commodore Byron. It is of an oval

oval for
lies in
W. long
of the
those of
nature.
others;
they de
means t
there is
fish is ar
was ma
are well
On M
that we
eight o
mile dis
leagues
S. latitu
we appr
Byron g
them on
vered an
are so co
they are
interior
excellen
cess of
natives,
number
into or
with fif
sist. and
higher
while i
to mea
gether
leagues
latitud

oval form, about thirty miles in circumference, and lies in 14 d. 27 m. 30 f. S. latitude, and in 144 d. 56 m. W. longitude. They, and perhaps all the inhabitants of the low islands, are of a much darker colour than those of the higher ones, and seem more savage in their nature. These low islands are not so fertile as some others; the inhabitants are much exposed to the sun; they depend upon the sea for their support, by which means they are darker in colour, and more robust; yet there is no doubt of their being of the same nation. A fish is an emblem of their profession, and a figure of one was marked on the bodies of the men, who in general are well made, stout, and fierce.

On Monday the 18th, we saw such another island as that we had left, to the westward, which we reached by eight o'clock A. M. We ranged the S. E. side at one mile distant from the shore. It lies S. W. by W. two leagues from the west end of Tiookea, in 14 d. 37 m. S. latitude, and in 145 d. 10 m. W. longitude. These we apprehend to be the same, to which Commodore Byron gave the name of George's islands. We left them on the 19th, and at seven o'clock A. M. discovered another of these half-overflowed islands, which are so common in these southern latitudes. In general they are surrounded by an unfathomable sea, and their interior parts are covered with lakes, which would be excellent harbours, were they not shut up from the access of shipping, which, according to the report of the natives, is the case with most of them. Of the great number we ranged, not a passage was to be discovered into one of them. We were told, that they abound with fish, particularly turtle, on which the natives subsist, and sometimes exchange with the inhabitants of the higher islands for cloth, &c. This island, (by which, while in this part of the ocean, we would be understood to mean, a number of little isles, or islets, connected together into one by a reef of coral rocks) is about five leagues long, and three broad, and is in 15 d. 26 m. S. latitude, and in 146 d. 20 m. longitude. Near the south

south end we discovered from the mast head, distant four leagues, another of these low isles; soon after a third, bearing S. W. by S. It extends W. N. W. and E. S. E. in which direction its length is twenty-one miles, but its breadth not more than six. It appears, in every respect, like the rest, only it has fewer islets, and less firm land on the reef which surrounds the lake. While ranging the north coast, we saw people, huts, canoes, and what appeared to be stages for drying of fish. The natives were armed with the same weapons, and seemed to be the same sort, as those in the island of Tiookea. Approaching now the west end we saw a fourth island, bearing N. N. E. It lies six leagues west from the first. These four clusters, we named Palliser's Isles, in honour of Sir Hugh Palliser.

On Wednesday the 20th, at day-break, hauling round the west end of the third island, we found a great swell rolling in from the S. by which we knew that we were clear of these low islands; and being not within sight of land, we made the best of our way for Otahete, having a strong gale at east, attended with showers of rain. It is here necessary to take notice, that this part of the ocean, from the latitude 20 d. down to 12 d. and from the meridian of 138 d. to 150 d. W. is so strewed with low isles, that a navigator cannot proceed with too much circumspection; but whether these isles be any of those discovered, and laid down in the charts of the Dutch navigators, cannot be determined with any degree of certainty; especially when we consider, that their discoveries are not handed down to us with sufficient accuracy.

Thursday the 21st, we made the high land of Otahete; by sun-set were in with Point Venus, and the next morning, at eight o'clock, anchored in Matavai Bay, in seven fathoms water. Our arrival was no sooner known to the natives, than they paid us a visit, expressed the most lively congratulations, and supplied us with fish and fruit sufficient for the whole crew. Our first business was to erect tents for the reception of
such

such
had n
had b
scorbu
health
our c
afford
watch
cifuly

On
train o
fruit,
the kir
ing ho
friend,
the wh
they
their
much
to see
sisting
Amste
some
procur
afforde
stance
witho
supplie
we pu
than M
the pu
should
time v
met w
plains
for at
large
ple li
shelte
hogs,
Vol

such of our people as were required on shore. Sick we had none, for the refreshments we got at the Marquesas, had been the means of removing every complaint of the scorbutic kind, and of preserving the whole crew in good health. We also sent ashore Mr Wales's instruments; our chief reason for putting into this place being to afford him an opportunity to ascertain the error of the watch by the known longitude, and to determine precisely its rate of going.

On Sunday, the 24th, Otoo and other chiefs, with a train of attendants, brought us ten large hogs, besides fruit, which made their visit exceedingly agreeable. As the king's coming had been announced to us, and knowing how much it was our interest to keep this chief our friend, Capt. Cook met him at the tents, and conducted the whole of his retinue, with himself, on board, where they staid dinner, and appeared highly pleased with their reception. Next day, notwithstanding we had much thunder, lightning, and rain, the king came again to see us, and brought with him another present, consisting of a large quantity of refreshments. When at Amsterdam, we had collected, among other curiosities, some red parrot feathers. These precious valuables procured us hogs, fruit, and every other thing the island afforded. Our having them was a fortunate circumstance; for our stock in trade being greatly exhausted, without these we should have found it difficult to have supplied the ship with necessary refreshments. When we put into this island, we intended to stay no longer than Mr Wales had made the necessary observations for the purposes already mentioned; and supposing we should meet with no better success than we did the last time we were here. But the reception we had already met with, and the few excursions we had made to the plains of Matavai and Oparree, convinced us of our error; for at these two places we found built, and building, a large number of canoes and houses of every kind: people living in spacious houses, who had not a place to shelter themselves in eight months before; also several hogs, in every house, with many other signs of a rising

state. On account of these favourable circumstances, we resolved to make a longer stay at this island, and to repair the ship, which was now indispensably necessary. Accordingly the empty casks and sails were got ashore, the ship was ordered to be caulked, and the rigging to be overhauled.

On Tuesday the 26th, Capt. Cook, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen, went down to Oparree, to visit Otoo by appointment. When arrived, we saw a number of large canoes in motion, but were much surprized at perceiving more than three hundred ranged along the shore, all completely equipped and manned; besides a vast number of armed men upon the shore. We landed in the midst of them, and were received by a vast multitude, some under arms, and some not. The cry of the former was Tiyono Towha, and of the latter was Tiyo no Otoo. Towha, we afterwards learnt was admiral, or commander of the fleet. Upon our landing we were met by a chief, named Tee, uncle to the king, of whom we enquired for Otoo. Soon after we were met by Towha, who received us in a friendly manner. He took Captain Cook by the one hand, and Tee by the other, and dragged him, as it were, through the crowd that was divided into two parties, both of which proclaimed themselves his friends, by crying out Tiyo no Tootee. One party wanted him to go to Otoo, and the other to remain with Towha. When come to the usual place of audience, Tee left us to go and bring the king. Towha insisted on the Captain's going with him, but he would not consent. When Tee returned, he took hold of his hand in order to conduct him to the king. Towha was unwilling he should sit down, and desired him to go with him; but this chief being a stranger, he refused to comply. Tee was very desirous of conducting the Captain to the king; Towha opposed, and he was obliged to desire Tee to desist, and to leave him to the admiral and his party, who conducted him down to the fleet. Here we found two lines of armed men drawn up before the admiral's vessel, in order to keep off the crowd that we might go on

on board
man f
would
our feet
form u
We fa
us he
vised u
did, as
in our
fleet.
noes,
they h
chiefs
in clot
the lat
this as
deur to
shew t
were f
fleet m
before
pected
stones.
other,
to the
tre.
hundr
rigged
not.
victua
provis
three h
seven
ber in
longer
Most
the n
ceede
each c

on board; and when the Captain made an excuse, a man squatted down, and offered to carry him, but he would not go. At this time Towha, quitted us without our seeing which way he went, nor would any one inform us. We were now jostled about in the crowd. We saw Tee, and enquiring of him for the king, he told us he was gone into the country of Mataou, and he advised us to repair to the boat, which we accordingly did, as soon as we could get collected together. When in our boat we took our time to reconnoitre the grand fleet. We told an hundred and sixty large double canoes, equipped, manned, and armed; but we believe they had not their full complement of rowers. The chiefs and all those on the fighting stages, were habited in cloth, turbans, breast plates, and helmets. Some of the latter seemed much to incumber the wearer. Be this as it may, the whole of their dress added a grandeur to the prospect, and they were so complaisant as to shew themselves to the best advantage. Their vessels were full dressed with flags, streamers, &c. so that the fleet made such a noble appearance, as we had never before seen in this sea, and what no one could have expected. Their instruments of war were clubs, spears, and stones. The vessels were ranged close alongside of each other, having their heads to the shore, and their sterns to the sea. The admiral's vessel was nearly in the centre. We counted, exclusive of the vessels of war, an hundred and seventy sail of smaller double canoes, all rigged with mast and sail, which the war canoes had not. These, we judged, were designed for transports, victuallers, &c. for in the war canoes were no sorts of provisions whatever. We conjectured that in these three hundred and thirty vessels there were no less than seven thousand seven hundred and sixty men, a number incredible, especially as we were told they all belonged to the districts of Attahourou and Ahopatea. Most of the gentlemen, by their calculations, thought the number of men belonging to the war canoes exceeded this, allowing to each canoe forty men, and to each of the small canoes eight. Having viewed this

fleet, it was our intention to have gone on board, could we have seen the admiral. We enquired for him but to no purpose. At last Tee came, by whom we were informed, that Otoo was gone to Matavai. This intelligence gave rise to new conjectures. When we got to Matavai, our friends told us, that this fleet was part of the armament intended to go against Eimeo, whose chief had thrown off the yoke of Otaheite. We were still at a loss to account for the flight of Otoo from Oparree, for we were informed he neither was nor had been at Matavai. We therefore went thither again in the afternoon, where we found him, and learnt, that the reason of his absconding in the morning was, because some of his people had stole some of the Captain's clothes which were washing at the tents, and he feared restitution would be demanded. He repeatedly asked Capt. Cook if he was not angry, nor could he be easy till assured, that the pilferers might keep the stolen things. Towha also was alarmed, thinking that Capt. Cook was displeas'd, and jealous of seeing such a force so near us, without knowing its destination. It happened unluckily that Oedidee was not with us in the morning; for Tee, who was the only man we could depend on, served rather to increase our perplexity. Thus by mutual misunderstanding, we lost a favourable opportunity of scrutinizing the naval force of this isle, and making ourselves better acquainted with its manœuvres. It was commanded by an intelligent and brave chief, who was disposed to have satisfied us in all questions we had thought proper to ask; and from the nature of the objects, which were before us, we could not well have misunderstood each other. All mistakes being now rectified, and presents having passed between Otoo and Capt. Cook, we took leave and returned on board.

On Wednesday, the 27th, in the morning, Towha sent us by two of his servants, two large hogs, and some fruit. The bearers of this present had orders not to receive any thing in return, nor would they when offered them. Some of our gentlemen went with the Cap-
tain

tain in
and th
on bo
brothe
who h
surpriz
held e
retired
knowl
and hi
betwe
learn;
and w
day be
friend.
our af
was no
they h
tended
could
nexas
was fo
them
subject
believe
day, b
Tiarab
queste
him.
On
severa
them
curios
which
forget
admir
the p
in an
and b
put b

tain in his boat down to Oparree, where we found Towha, and the king; after a short visit, he brought them both on board, together with Tarevato, the king's younger brother. When we drew near the ship, the admiral, who had never seen one before, expressed strong signs of surprize, and when on board, he was shewed, and beheld every part of it with great attention. When Towha retired after dinner, he put a hog on board without our knowledge, or waiting for a return; and soon after Otoo and his attendants departed also. There was a jealousy between these two chiefs, on what account we could not learn; nevertheless Otoo paid Towha much respect, and was desirous we should do the same. Otoo had the day before frankly declared, that the admiral was not his friend. When on board, both these chiefs requested our assistance against Tiarabou, notwithstanding there was no rupture at this time between the two states, and they had informed us, that their joint forces were intended against Eimeo. The reason of this duplicity we could not find out: perhaps they were desirous of annexing that kingdom, by our alliance, to their own, as it was formerly: be that as it may, as Capt. Cook gave them no encouragement, we heard no more on this subject. Our endeavours to maintain a neutrality, we believe, were well received by both parties; for next day, being Thursday, the 28th, Wahea-tou, king of Tiarabou sent us a present of a hog, for which he requested a few red feathers, which were accordingly sent him.

On the 29th, early in the morning, Otoo, Towha, and several chiefs, again paid us a visit, and brought with them not only provisions, but some of the most choice curiosities of the island, and among other returns, with which they seemed well pleased, the Captain did not forget to repay the civilities we had received from the admiral, Towha. We must not omit taking notice, that the preceding evening, one of the natives was detected in an attempt to steal a cask from the watering place, and being caught in the act, he was sent on board, and we put him in irons. Otoo and the other chiefs saw the cul-
prit

prit in this situation, and Otoo earnestly interceded in his behalf, requesting with many intreaties, that he might be set at liberty; but he was told by Capt. Cook, that as our people were punished for the least offence committed against the natives of Otaheite, it was but justice to punish this man also, which he was determined to see done in an exemplary manner, especially as it was well known, he, Otoo, would not do it himself. The man in consequence of the Captain's resolution, was conducted ashore to the tents, where a guard was ordered out under arms, and the offender tied up to a post, Otoo, his sister, and many of the natives being spectators. Otoo and his sister begged hard for the man; with whom the Captain expostulated, telling Otoo, how unjust it was in his people to steal from us who were their friends, and who never took any thing from them without giving certain articles, which he enumerated, in exchange. The Captain laboured also to convince Otoo, that the punishment he was about to inflict on this man might prove the means of saving the lives of others of his subjects; for if they continued in such kind of criminal practices, some would certainly, one time or another, be shot dead. We believe he pretty well understood our Commander, and seemed satisfied, only he desired the criminal might not be *Matteerou*, (or killed.) The concourse of people was by this time very great. The Captain therefore drew a line for them at a proper distance, and then, in the presence of them all, ordered the fellow two dozen of lashes with a cat-o'-nine-tails. This chastisement he received with great firmness, and was then set at liberty. Upon this the natives were going away, apparently not much pleased; which Towha perceiving, who all the time had remained silent, though very attentive to every thing going on, he stepped forward, and harangued them for near half an hour, in short sentences. We understood a little of his speech, but from what we could gather, it was a recapitulation of Capt. Cook's: he mentioned several advantages they had received from
our

our peo
present
sue a di
markabl
audience
said not

When
rines we
fired in
ing, and
describe
whole t
whom th
all their
not less t
In the ev
an' excur
they had
new plan
land. H
leagues t
formed o

On Sa
through
properly
that the
warriors
people o
proper p
his padd
minutes
any thin
warriors
themselv
stern elev
hands, p
tive of w
knowing

our people; and having reprimanded them for their present conduct, he exhorted them to adopt and pursue a different one for the future. His action was remarkably graceful, and the profound attention of his audience, proved him to be a masterly speaker. Otoo said not one word.

When Towha had concluded his harangue, the marines were ordered to go through their exercise. They fired in volleys with ball, and being very quick in charging, and in their manœuvres, it is scarcely possible to describe the astonishment of the natives during the whole time, particularly the amazement of those to whom this sight was quite a novelty. The chiefs, with all their retinue, now took leave, we are apt to think not less frightened than pleased at what they had seen. In the evening Mr Forster and his party returned from an excursion they had made to the mountains, where they had spent the night. Mr Forster collected some new plants, and found others which grew in New Zealand. He saw the island of Huaheine, situated forty leagues to the westward; whereby a judgment may be formed of the height of the mountains of Otaheite.

On Saturday the 30th, we saw ten war canoes go through part of their paddling exercise. They were properly equipped for war, and in landing we observed, that the moment the canoe touched the ground, all the warriors leaped out, and with the assistance of a few people on shore, dragged the canoe on dry land to its proper place; which done, every one walked off with his paddle, &c. Such was their expedition, that in five minutes time after putting ashore, no one could tell that any thing of the kind had been going forward. The warriors on the stage encouraged the rowers to exert themselves, and we observed some youths in the curved stern elevated above the rest, with white wands in their hands, placed there perhaps to look out and give notice of what they saw. The king's brother, Tarevato, knowing that Mr Hodges made drawings of every thing

thing curious, intimated of his own accord, that he might be sent for; and thus an opportunity was unexpectedly afforded our draughtsman, to collect materials for a picture of the Otaheite fleet, as it appeared when assembled at Oparree. Being present when the warriors undressed, we could scarcely conceive how it was possible for them to stand under the quantity of cloth with which they were clad, in time of action. Many rounds of this composed a kind of turban or cap, which, in the day of battle, might prevent a broken head, and some by way of ornament; had fixed to these caps dried branches of small shrubs, interwoven with white feathers.

On Sunday the 1st of May, several chiefs supplied us with a large quantity of provisions; and the day following our friend Towha sent us a present of a hog, and a boat loaded with various sorts of fruit and roots. We received also another present from Otoo, brought by Tarevatoö. On the 3d, upon examining into the condition of our provisions, we found our biscuit much decayed, and that the airing we had given it at New Zealand was not of the service we expected; we therefore were now obliged to have it on shore, where it underwent another airing and picking, in doing which we found a great part thereof wholly rotten and unfit for use. We attributed this decay of our bread to the ice we frequently took in, which made the hold damp and cold, which, when to the north, was succeeded by a contrary extreme of intense heat; but whatever was the real cause of our loss, it put us to a scanty allowance of this valuable article, and we had bad bread to eat besides.

On Thursday the 5th, in the afternoon, the botanists made another excursion up the country, to the mountains; they returned the evening of next day, and in their way made some new discoveries. On Saturday the 7th, in the morning, we found Otoo at the tents, of whom the Captain asked leave to cut down some trees

tre
sea
for
he
bo
pe
In
wit
Oto
pro
com
for
was
pres
ed
wer
that
dow
plea
O
the
of o
ried
had
Tee
thin
said,
roue
and
tion
of t
Tare
Tee
sear
the f
from
ped.
ceed
info
Vo

trees for fuel. He took him to some growing near the sea shore, the better to make him comprehend what sort we wanted; and he seemed much pleased when he understood, that no trees should be cut down that bore any kind of fruit. This assurance from us he repeated several times aloud to the people about us. In the afternoon we were honoured, when on board, with a visit from the whole royal family, consisting of Otoo, his father, brother, and two sisters: but this was properly the father's visit, who brought the Captain a complete mourning dress, a present he much valued; for which he had in return whatever he desired, which was not a little; and to the rest of the company were presented red feathers. The whole were then conducted ashore in the Captain's boat. Otoo and his friends were so well pleased with the reception they met with, that, at parting, we were granted the liberty of cutting down as many trees as we wanted, and what sort we pleased.

On Sunday the 8th, our friendly connections with the natives were interrupted by the negligence of one of our centinels at the tents, who had his musquet carried away, he having slept or quitted his post. We had received an imperfect account of this affair from Tee, but we understood enough to know that something had happened, which alarmed the king, who, Tee said, was under great apprehensions of being matteeroued. We therefore lost no time in going ashore; and when landed were informed of the whole transaction by the serjeant who commanded the party. Most of the natives had fled at our approaching the tents. Tarevatooslipt from us in a moment, and a few besides Tee had courage to remain. We went immediately in search of Otoo, and in the way endeavoured to allay the fears of the people. Having advanced some distance from the shore into the country, Tee on a sudden stopped, and advised our returning, saying, he would proceed to the mountains, whither Otoo had retired, and inform him that we were still his friends; a question,

and if we were angry, that had been asked a number of times by the natives. The Captain now thought it was to no purpose to go farther, we therefore took Tee's advice, and returned aboard. After this Oedidee was dispatched to the king, to let him know his fears were groundless, seeing the Captain required of him only what was in his power, the return of the musquet. A short time after the departure of Oedidee, we saw six large canoes coming round Point Venus. Suspecting that one belonging to these had committed the theft, it was resolved to intercept them, for which purpose a boat was put off, and another ordered to follow. One of the canoes was ahead of the rest, and seemingly making for the ship. We put alongside of her, and found two or three women whom we knew. They said, they were going aboard the ship with a present to the Captain, and that the other canoes were laden with fruit, hogs, &c. Satisfied with this intelligence, the Captain recalled his orders for intercepting them, thinking they also, as well as this one, were bound for the ship. We therefore left this single canoe within a few yards of it, and proceeded for the shore to speak with Otoo; but upon landing we found he had not been there. Looking behind us we saw all the canoes, the one we had left near the ship not excepted, making off in the greatest haste. Vexed at being thus deceived, we resolved to pursue them, and as we passed the ship, Captain Cook gave orders to send out another boat for the same purpose. We overtook and brought five out of the six alongside, but the one by which we were outwitted got clear off. This, in which were only a few women, had actually amused us with false stories: while the others, in which were most of their effects, were to have made their escape. In one of the prizes was a friend of Mr Forster's, who had hitherto called himself an Earee, also three women, his wife, daughter, and the mother of the late Toutaha. This chief we would have sent to Otoo; but he made many excuses, saying, he was of a rank too low for such an honourable embassy;

ambassy; that he was no Earee, but a Manahouna; that an Earee ought to be sent to speak to an Earee; and that as there were none of this high rank but Otoo and the Captain, it would be much more proper for the Captain to go. At this time Tee and Oedidee came on board, and assured us, that the man who had stole the musquet was from Tiarabou; and that we might credit their declaration, they desired us to send a boat to Waheatoua, the king of Tiarabou, offering to go themselves in her, and recover the musquet. This story, though not altogether satisfactory, carried with it an air of probability; and thinking it better to drop the affair altogether, the Captain suffered Mr Forster's friend to depart with his two canoes. The other three belonged to Maritata, a Tiarabou chief, on which account it was determined to detain them; but as Tee and Oedidee both assured us, that Maritata and his people were innocent, they were permitted to go off with their canoes also; and the Captain desired Tee to tell Otoo, that he should give himself no farther concern about the musquet, being satisfied none of his people had committed the theft. We had now given it up, concluding it to be irrecoverably lost, but in the dusk of the evening it was brought to the tents, together with other things we had not missed, by three men, who, as well as some other people present, affirmed, that it was one belonging to Maritata, by whom the things had been stolen; whence we concluded both Tee and Oedidee had intentionally deceived us. Every one present at the restoration of the things, and even they who came afterwards, claimed a reward, all pretending to have had some hand in recovering them. Nuno particularly, a man of some note, and with whom we were acquainted when here in 1769, played his part in this farce exceeding well. He came with the most savage fury imaginable expressed in his countenance and gestures; and having a large club in his hand, he laid it about him most violently, in order to convince us, how he alone, and to make us sensible in what manner he had

killed the thief; when at the same time we all knew that he had been at home, and not out of his house the whole time, which shews that human nature, respecting her original passions and powers, are the same in every clime, where the same instincts, the same perceptive faculties, and the same self-love universally prevail.

On Monday the 9th, Tee came again aboard to inform us, that Otoo was at Oparree, and requested of the Captain to send a person, to let him know if he was still his friend. He was asked why he had not done this himself, as he was desired; he made a trifling excuse, but we thought he had not seen Otoo. As the natives brought not any thing to market, and a stop was consequently put to our trade with them, it was judged time ill spent to send any more fruitless messages; a party therefore set out, with Tee in our company, and having reached the utmost boundaries of Oparree, the king at last, when we had waited a considerable time, made his appearance. The first salutations being over, and having taken our seats under the shade of some trees, Otoo desired the Captain to parou (or speak.) Captain Cook began with blaming the king for giving way to groundless alarms, he having always professed himself his friend, and was displeas'd only with those of Tiarabou, who were the thieves. The Captain was then asked, how he came to fire at the canoes? By way of excuse, he told them they belonged to Maritata, one of whose people had stolen the mulquet, and added the Captain, "If I had them in my power, I would destroy them, or any other belonging to the district of Tiarabou." We knew this declaration would please them, from the natural aversion the one kingdom has to the other; and it was enforced by presents, which we believe were the strongest arguments in favour of a reconciliation: for after these weighty reasons, things were soon restored to their former state, by Otoo's promising, on the word of a king, that we should be supplied next day with provisions and fruit as usual. Peace and amity being now once more established, we

accom-

accom-
where
yards,
several
built, to
seen.
on board
dined
ther, the
clusion.
not satisfi
all the
the ship
were br
be cont
Oparree
the tent
fruit w
for the
equally
thing re
to bring
guns fir
which
pleasure
with a
satisfact
that the
nities t
tinually
either e
practice
should
them th
be obli
of any
consequ
commi
with hi

accompanied him to his proper residence at Oparree, where he obliged us with a view of some of his dock-yards, (for so they may well be called) where we saw several large canoes, some building, and others lately built, two of which were the largest we had any where seen. Having fully gratified our curiosity, we repaired on board with Tee in our company, who, after he had dined with us, went to acquaint Happi, the king's father, that all differences were brought to a happy conclusion. But we had reason to think this old chief was not satisfied with the terms of the accommodation; for all the women, and these not a few, were sent for out of the ship, and the next morning, no supplies whatever were brought, and we were obliged for the present, to be contented with some fruit sent us by our friends from Oparree. But in the afternoon, Otoo himself came to the tents with a large supply; and presently after more fruit was brought us than we knew what to do with: for the natives, we believe, thought themselves injured equally with ourselves; and we knew they had every thing ready for our market, when they were permitted to bring them. Otoo desiring to see some of the great guns fired, his wish was complied with, but the light, which was entirely new, gave him as much pain as pleasure; but in the evening, when we entertained him with a shew of fire-works, he expressed much greater satisfaction. We have before had occasion to observe, that these people were continually watching opportunities to rob us; and seeing the offenders were continually screened, we cannot but think, that the-chiefs either encouraged, or had not power to prevent thievish practices. We thought it more extraordinary that they should so often attempt what they knew might cost them their lives; and they well knew also they should be obliged to make restitution, if the article stolen was of any great value. They were fully sensible of these consequences, and therefore, the moment a theft was committed, every one took the alarm, and went off with his moveables as fast as possible; but if the article

was

was a trifle, or such as we usually gave them, no commotion happened, because, in general, little or no notice was taken of it. Whether we obliged them to make restitution or not, the chief frequently secreted himself, and he must be reconciled before the people were permitted to bring in any refreshments: and we are persuaded it was by his orders the supplies were detained from us. These they imagined we could not do without, not considering, that their war canoes, dwellings, and even fruit, were entirely in our power. Their propensity to thieving must be almost irresistible, otherwise our uniform conduct towards them would have had its due weight: for, except detaining their canoes for a time, we never touched the smallest article of their property. When two extremes were under our consideration, we always chose the most equitable and mild; and frequently settled disputes, or effected a reconciliation, by trifling presents, notwithstanding we were the party aggrieved. A present to a chief always succeeded to our wish, and put things on a better footing than they had been before. In all our differences they were the first aggressors; and our people very seldom infringed the rules prescribed by our Commander. Had the Captain pursued less eligible methods, he might have been a loser in the end; for had he destroyed any of the natives, or part of their property, all he could expect would have been the empty honour of obliging them to make the first advances towards an accommodation. Nor is it certain this would have been the event. They were made our fast friends by three motives; their own benevolent disposition, mild treatment from us, and the dread of our fire-arms. Had we not continually had recourse to the second, the first would have been of little use to us; and a too frequent application of fire-arms might have excited revenge, perhaps taught them in a little time, that they were not such terrible things as they had conceived them at first to be. They knew their strength in the superiority of their numbers, and who

can

CA

an say w
 auntedly
 On We
 o market
 he admin
 urn. At
 being near
 in a few da
 from the
 o leave the
 een since
 and fruit.
 per of atte
 Capt. Cook
 and in the
 hinking it
 friendly pe
 On Frida
 wind was
 was not yet
 ports were
 was at Mat
 and there v
 With a vie
 paired to C
 also here, w
 swelling in
 use of the
 before he f
 far on his
 obliged to
 we return
 found, was
 tain theref
 or to quit
 That if the
 as his fath
 turn to hi
 about his

can say what an enraged multitude might do, by un-
 dauntedly closing with even an European enemy.

On Wednesday, the 11th, a large supply of fruit came
 to market, and among the rest a present from Towha,
 the admiral; for which the Captain made a suitable re-
 turn. At this time all the necessary repairs of the ship
 being nearly finished, it was resolved to leave Otaheite
 in a few days; to this end every thing was ordered off
 from the shore that the natives might see we were about
 to leave them. On the 12th, Obeera, whom we had not
 seen since 1769, paid us a visit, bringing with her hogs
 and fruit. Otoo also came soon after her, with a num-
 ber of attendants, and a large quantity of provisions.
 Capt. Cook was very generous in his returns of presents,
 and in the evening entertained them with fire-works,
 thinking it might be the last time we might see these
 friendly people who had so liberally relieved our wants.

On Friday, the 13th, we were not ready to sail, but the
 wind was favourable, and the weather fair. Oedidee
 was not yet returned from Attahourou, and various re-
 ports were circulated concerning him. Some said he
 was at Matavai; others, that he intended not to return;
 and there were those who affirmed he was at Oparree.
 With a view of discovering the truth, a party of us re-
 paired to Oparree, where we found him. Towha was
 also here, who, notwithstanding he was afflicted with a
 swelling in his feet and legs, which had taken away the
 use of them, had nevertheless resolved to see the Captain
 before he sailed, and had advanced with this intent thus
 far on his journey. The day being far spent, we were
 obliged to shorten our stay, and after having seen Otoo,
 we returned on board with Oedidee. This youth, we
 found, was desirous of remaining at Otaheite; the cap-
 tain therefore told him he was at liberty to remain here,
 or to quit us at Ulietea, or to go with us to England.
 That if the latter was his choice, he must look upon him-
 self as his father, as it was very probable he would never re-
 turn to his own country. This youth threw his arms
 about his neck, wept much, and said, many of his friends

per-

persuaded him to remain at Otaheite. Oedidee was well beloved in the ship; on which account every one was persuading him to go with us. But Captain Cook thought it an act of the highest injustice to take a person from these isles, when there was not the least prospect of his returning, under any promise which was not in his power to perform. Indeed, at this time, it was quite unnecessary, seeing many young men offered voluntarily to go with us, nay, even to remain and die in Pretanee, as they call our country. Several of our gentlemen would have taken some as servants, but Captain Cook prudently rejected every solicitation of this kind, knowing, they would be of little use to us in the course of the voyage; besides what had still greater weight with the Captain, was, that he thought himself bound to see they were afterwards properly taken care of.

On Saturday, the 14th, early in the morning, Oedidee came on board and Mr Forster prevailed upon him to go with us to Ulietea. Towha, Poatatou, Oamo, Happi, Oberea, and many more of our friends, paid us a visit. The wife of Towha was with him, and this chief was hoisted in, and placed on a chair, on the quarter deck. Among other presents, we gave the admiral an English pendant, which, after he had been instructed in the use of it, pleased him more than all the rest. Soon after these friends had left us, we saw a number of war canoes coming round the point of Oparree, to which place the Captain, accompanied by some of our officers and gentlemen, hastened down, in order to have a nearer view of the fleet. We arrived there before all the canoes were landed, and had an opportunity of observing in what manner they approached the shore. No sooner had they got before the place where they intended to land, than they formed themselves into divisions, consisting of three or more canoes lashed square and along-side of each other; after which each division paddled in for the shore, one after another, in so judicious a manner, that they formed, and closed a line along the shore to an inch. The rowers were encouraged

courag
stood w
most v
rowers
side or
dles we
all the
exactly
business
they lay
nearer v

This
the little
to be re
been, the
described
a repetit
attending
ing in th
with gre
person.
upon, th
their slai
ordered t
ercise on
clubs; th
hibited th
agility;
alertness
spears.

were eva
the head
The spear
by fixing
them, ho
elevated,
their ant
his dart a
or left, ei

Vol. I.—

couraged by their warriors, and directed by a man who stood with a wand in his hand at the head of the middlemost vessel. By words and actions he directed the rowers when all should paddle, and when either the one side or the other should cease, &c. for the steering paddles were not sufficient to direct them. They observed all these motions with such quickness, and answered so exactly, as plainly shewed them to be expert in their business. Mr Hodges made a drawing of them, as they lay ranged along the shore, after which we took a nearer view, by going aboard several of them.

This fleet, which consisted of forty sail, belonged to the little district of Tettaha, and were come to Oparree, to be reviewed before the king, as the former fleet had been, the manner of whose equipment we have already described, and as that of this fleet was exactly the same, a repetition must be here needless. On this fleet were attending some small double canoes, called Marais, having in their fore part a kind of double bed-place laid over with green leaves, each just sufficient to contain one person. These they told us were to place their dead upon, their chiefs we suppose they meant, otherwise their slain must be very few. Otoo, at our request, ordered some of their troops to go through their exercise on shore. Two parties first began a battle with clubs; they then proceeded to single combat, and exhibited the various methods of fighting with surprising agility; parrying off the blows and pushes with great alertness and dexterity. Their arms are clubs and spears. In using the club, all blows aimed at the legs, were evaded by leaping over it, and those designed for the head, by couching a little, and leaping on one side. The spear, which is used at times as a dart, was parried by fixing the point of a spear in the ground right before them, holding it in an inclined position, more or less elevated, according as they saw to what part of the body their antagonist intended to make a push, or to throw his dart at; and by moving the hand a little to the right or left, either the one or the other was turned off with

great ease. These combatants had no superfluous dress upon them. An unnecessary piece of cloth or two which they had on when they began the combat, were presently torn off by some of the spectators, and given to our gentlemen. This review being over, the fleet departed without any order, as fast as they could be got a-float; and Otoo conducted us to one of his dock-yards, where the two large pahies, or canoes, were building, each of which was an hundred and eight feet long. They were designed to form one joint double canoes, and were almost ready for launching. The king begged of the Captain a grappling and rope, to which he added an English jack and pendant, and desired the pahie might be called the Britannia. This he readily agreed to, and she was immediately so named. When we came to the boat, we found in it a hog and a turtle of about sixty pounds weight: this had been put in privately by Otoo's order, that the chiefs about him might not be offended by their being deprived of an entertainment. The king would likewise have presented to us a large shark they had prisoner in a creek (some of his fins being cut off to prevent his escaping) but the excellent pork, and fish, with which we were supplied at this isle, had spoiled our palates for such rank food. We were accompanied on board by the king, and Tee, his prime minister, who after dinner took an affectionate farewell. Otoo had importuned us the whole day, and most earnestly requested of us, that we would return to Otaheite. When about to depart, he desired of the Captain to permit a youth, whom he took by the hand, to go in the ship to Amsterdam, in order to collect for him red feathers. The youth was very desirous of going, but as he could not return, the Captain, with the view of satisfying Otoo, promised him, that if any ship should be sent hither from Britain, the important article of red feathers should not be forgotten. The Captain we believe, was disposed to have obliged the king; but it is to be remembered, we had resolved to carry no one from the isles (except Oedidee, if he chose to go) and the
 Captain

Captain
 a boy w
 curiosity
 with us,
 induced
 this end
 to be ex
 and no s
 out, thar
 mer, to
 had got o
 presently
 About
 observed
 take him
 they stoo
 a precon
 natives, v
 couraged
 birth, and
 voyage.
 confine h
 then coul
 he might
 ries, but t
 leave this
 count of i
 from wha
 to give th
 general fi
 tants, we
 of a recap
 appeared
 whole m
 heads ran
 We ha
 found in t
 was obser
 observatio

Captain had just refused Mr Forster the liberty of taking a boy with him, for reasons already mentioned. But if curiosity excited a desire in the youth of Otaheite to go with us, the treatment we had met with at this place had induced one of our gunner's mates to remain at it. To this end he had formed a plan, which he knew was not to be executed with success while we lay in the bay; and no sooner were we out, the sails set, and the boats out, than he took the opportunity, being a good swimmer, to slip overboard. He was discovered before he had got clear of the ship, and a boat being hoisted out, presently returned with the runaway.

About midway between us and the shore, a canoe was observed coming after us, intended without doubt to take him up; for when the people in her saw our boat, they stood off at a greater distance. This we found was a preconcerted plan between the man and some of the natives, with which Otoo was acquainted, and had encouraged. The gunner's mate was an Irish-man by birth, and we had picked him up at Batavia, in our first voyage. He had neither friends, nor connexions, to confine him to any particular part of the world, where then could he be so happy as at one of these isles? Here he might enjoy in ease and plenty, not only the necessaries, but the luxuries of life, which leads us, because we leave this celebrated island of Otaheite, to give some account of its present state, especially as it differs much from what it was even eight months ago; and in order to give the reader a more distant idea of its situation, general figure, extent, and the character of its inhabitants, we must beg of him to indulge us with the liberty of a recapitulation of several things, which have already appeared in detached parts of this work; that so the whole may be brought into one view, and its distinct heads ranged in their proper order.

We have already mentioned the improvements we found in the plains of Oparree and Matavai. The same was observed in every other part that came under our observation. It seemed to us almost incredible, that so

many large canoes and houses could be built in so short a space as eight months: but the iron tools which they had got from the English, and other nations, who have lately touched at the island, no doubt, had accelerated the work, and of hands they cannot be in want. The great increase in the number of their hogs no less excited our admiration; though, probably, they were not so scarce when we were here before, as we then imagined; as, not chusing to part with any, they might have conveyed them out of sight.

The situation of this isle is perhaps the best in the world, being exposed to none of those vicissitudes of heat and cold, which are observed to have so sensible an effect on the health and spirits of those who live in remoter regions. Its exact position is from latitude 17 d. 28 m. to that of 17 d. 53 m. S. and from longitude 149 d. 10 m. to 149 d. 40 m. W. It lies nearly N. W. and S. E. and is divided into two distinct principalities by an isthmus, or neck of land, and three miles over. The north-westerly division is, however, much larger, and more fertile, but by no means so well cultivated as the south-easterly division; which shews, that even the defects of nature, if we may be allowed to call them so, have their use, in prompting men to industry and art, to supply their wants. The figure of the largest peninsula, is nearly circular, being from N. to S. about twenty miles, and from E. to W. about the same. The whole is surrounded with a reef of rocks. The lesser peninsula is rather of an oval form, and from the neck of land on the N. W. side, to the little isle of Otooareite on the S. E. is about twelve miles; but from the mouth of the river Omatea on the south, to that of Owahe on the north, not more than eight. The circumference of the largest peninsula is about sixty miles, of the smallest about twenty-four; but in sailing round both, the line will be extended to ninety nearly.

For a particular account of the produce of the island, we are indebted to the indefatigable industry of Mr Banks

Banks
followin
bananas
an appl
tatoes,
the nati
the salo
named
when ro
produci
ed none
species
roots on
tives for
sides w
plants,
houses,
dyes, &
four-foo
having b
ing, but
tants are
and the
are chief
coast abo
Poultry
what w
observe,
gave to
mise fair
on shor
which w
and the
seemed
situation
We may
stance, t
the isles

Banks and Dr Solander; in whose catalogue are the following particulars, namely, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas of thirteen sorts; plantains, a fruit not unlike an apple, which when ripe is very pleasant; sweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of arum; a fruit called by the natives jambu, very delicious; sugar-cane; a root of the saloop kind, called pea; a plant called ethee; a fruit named ahee, not unlike a kidney bean, and which, when roasted, tastes like chesnuts; a tree called wharra, producing a fruit not unlike a pine-apple; a shrub called nono; the morinda, which also produces fruit; a species of fern; and a plant called ava, of which the roots only are chewed: all these, which serve the natives for food, the earth produces spontaneously; besides which there are a great variety of shrubs and plants, which serve for various purposes of building houses, vessels, tools of different kinds, manufactures, dyes, &c. to enumerate which would be tedious. Of four-footed animals the island produces but few, none having been seen by the Europeans on their first landing, but hogs, dogs, and rats, of which last the inhabitants are very fond. Their wild fowl are ducks only, and the birds that haunt the wood, except small birds, are chiefly pigeons, and paroquets; but with fish the coast abounds, of which the varieties are numberless. Poultry is not in plenty, nor is it so well flavoured as what we have in Europe. Here it may be proper to observe, that the two goats, which Captain Furneaux gave to Otoo, when we were last here, seemed to promise fair for answering the end for which they were put on shore. The ewe soon after had two female kids, which were at this time ready to propagate their species; and the old ewe was again with kid. The natives seemed to be very fond of them, and they to like their situation; for they were in exceeding good condition. We may therefore reasonably hope from this circumstance, that, in a few years, they may be spread over all the isles in this ocean. The sheep which we left, died

in

in a short time after : but we understood one was yet alive. We also furnished them with a stock of cats, not less than twenty, besides what we left at Ulitea and Huaheine.

The natives, particularly the chiefs, are in size, rather above the largest Europeans. Their food, which is of the simplest kind, is not such as to promote gluttony, nor their drink, which is chiefly water, calculated to provoke intemperance. Their daily intercourse with the ocean accustoms them from their youth to exercise; and the business of fishing, which in northern countries is the most laborious of all employments, is by them practised as their amusement. They who have represented them as indolent, because nature supplies liberally all their wants, have mistaken their character. Even their chiefs are artists, and their houses, public edifices, canoes, and manufactures, their utensils, instruments of war, working tools, their boats, and fishing tackle, are all proofs incontestible of their industry. Employments of this kind tend to banish sloth; and no person was ever known to languish with an incurable disease among them, though it does not appear, that the medical art has yet made any considerable progress. Much has been said, and in general with strict truth, of the gracefulness of their persons; yet if we were to judge of the whole by Autorou, and Omia, who were brought to England, they might be thought to have little claim to that perfection; yet their chiefs have undoubtedly a comparative dignity; but that comparison is to be confined at home between prince and peasant; and not extended to European countries, where grace and dignity are leading characters. Their women differ from each other in personal charms as in all other countries; but in stature, those of superior rank take especial care to preserve the family distinction. It is not uncommon for ladies of the first rank to single out a handsome well-proportioned youth, to prevent degeneracy, when the stature of the family is in danger of being reduced; but they are otherwise scrupulous in nothing so much

as in m
instanc
lower o
where
and ye
gree, b
the line
ther.
educati
guide :
son, and
but this
and art
Otaheite
but are
are com
veral sta
is no mu
bountifu
in order
ted, and
tween th
The ver
who in p
dard as t
tooed, v
be some
tion, an
to endu
acute.
the bloc
would t
with a f
be foun
Their
wear it
but the
suffer n
licate in

as in mixing with the canaille, and there are scarcely an instance of their cohabiting indiscriminately with the lower class of people. There is, perhaps, no nation where the pride of ancestry is carried to a greater height, and yet they have no means of recording their pedigree, but by oral tradition, nor any rule for continuing the line, but what nature has impressed upon the mother. Having no schools, nothing is to be acquired by education, example is their principal instructor and guide: the pattern set by the father is followed by the son, and what the mother does, that the daughter learns; but this is not to be understood to perpetuate husbandry and arts, as in China, in particular families: for in Otaheite husbandry and arts are not imposed as tasks, but are rather amusements to pass away time. None are compelled to work, yet all are employed; their several stations chance seems to have allotted; and here is no murmuring against Providence for not being more bountiful. One precaution observed among the great in order to give vigour to their chiefs must not be omitted, and that is, they never suffer an intercourse between the sexes till both parties arrive at full maturity. The very reverse of this is practised by the multitude, who in general are as much below the common standard as their chiefs exceed it. They are almost all tattooed, women as well as men. In this there seems to be something mystical; the priest performs the operation, and the very children are encouraged by example to endure the pain, than which nothing can be more acute. To have a thousand punctures all at once, with the blood starting at every puncture, is more, one would think, than a child could bear, yet they suffer it with a fortitude of which in Europe an instance cannot be found.

Their hair is almost universally black. The men wear it long, waving in ringlets down their shoulders; but the women cut it short round their ears: both sexes suffer none to grow under their arms; and are very delicate in keeping every part about them sweet and clean.

To

To this end they frequently bathe, seldom suffering a day to pass without going into the water more than once. Indeed they anoint their heads with an oil expressed from the cocoa-nut, which sometimes proves rancid, and emits a disagreeable smell; otherwise in their persons they are without a taint. Mr Banks said, "that if our sailors quarrelled with these people, they would not agree with angels," which sufficiently denotes the goodness of their disposition. We have mentioned that Waheatoua is related to Otoo. The same may be said of the chiefs of Eimeo, Tapamannoo, Huahine, Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, for these are all related to the royal family of Otaheite. It is a maxim with the Earees, and others of superior rank, as we have just observed, never to intermarry with the Toutous, or others of inferior rank; and probably this custom might give rise to the establishment of the class called Earceoes: it is certain these societies prevent greatly the increase of the superior classes of people, of which they are composed, and do not interfere with the lower or Toutous; for we never heard of one of these being an Earceoy; nor that a Toutou could rise in life above the rank in which he was placed by his birth.

The customs of these people observed in their eating, as our readers must have perceived from what has already been said on this subject, are very singular, and they seem to entertain some superstitious notions, not easily discoverable by strangers. The women are not permitted to eat with the men; not, as it should seem, to mark their inferiority, but in conformity to a custom which habit has established into a law; nor is it usual for any of them to eat in company, except upon certain days of festivity, when great numbers of them assemble together. A messenger from one of our English Captains found Oberea, the then supposed queen of the island, entertaining a company, which he supposed could not be less than a thousand. The messes were all brought to her by the servants, who had prepared them; the meat being put into the shells of cocoa-nuts, and the shells

shells
her o
This
elevat
selves
she fa
They
namel
over h
of plac
done e
other.
curious
and di
drefs;
over th
wood a
is then
take ou
heated
they co
put the
another
the rem
mould t
the mea
and wh
ceeded
flesh an
in one o
most in
the con
without
the high
of a spre
cloth, a
their pr
with salt
preparat
their ha

shells into wooden trays; and she distributed them with her own hands to the guests, who were seated in rows. This done she sat down herself upon a seat somewhat elevated above the rest, and two women placing themselves, one on each side, fed her like a child. When she saw the messenger, she ordered a mess for him. They have two ways of dressing their animal food, namely, broiling and baking. The first is performed over hot stones, without any other contrivance than that of placing the meat upon the clean stones, and when done enough on one side, they turn it, and broil the other. Their manner of baking is very singular and curious. They first dig a hole in the ground, in depth and dimensions proportioned to the thing they have to dress; they then place a layer of wood at bottom, and over that a layer of stones, and so alternately a layer of wood and a layer of stones, till the hole is full: the fire is then kindled, and the stones made hot; this done they take out the fire, and placing the stones that are least heated one beside the other at the bottom of the hole, they cover them with fresh leaves; and on these they put the meat intended to be baked; then after laying another layer of green leaves, they fill up the hole with the remaining hot stones, and close the hole with the mould that was first dug out of the pit. In this situation the meat is suffered to remain for three or four hours; and when taken out is then so savoury, as not to be exceeded by the best European cookery. Almost all the flesh and fish eaten by the chiefs in the island is dressed in one or the other of the above two ways; the latter is most in use among the gentry; and the former among the commonalty, who sometimes indeed eat their fish without dressing. Tables they have none, and those of the highest quality dine on the ground under the shade of a spreading tree; fresh green leaves serve them for a cloth, and a basket which is set down by them holds their provisions; these, and two cocoa-nuts, one filled with salt-water, the other with fresh, complete the whole preparation for a meal. When this is done, they wash their hands and mouths, and then, if nothing calls them

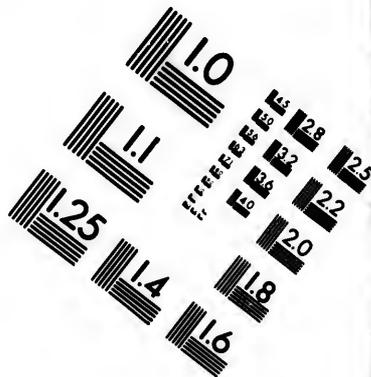
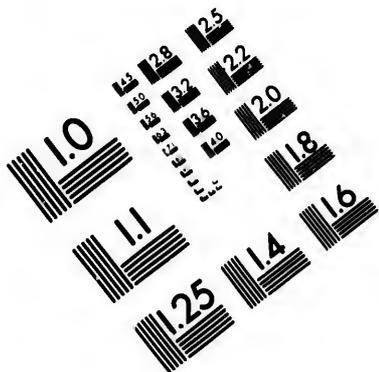
abroad, they usually lay themselves down to sleep. It was long before any of them could be persuaded to eat with Europeans, and the certainly, like the Jews, have some superstitious ceremonies to be observed in the preparation of the food they eat, which, if omitted, renders it unclean, or they would not have continued scrupulous so long. Even the food of their women is differently prepared from that of the men; and if touched by unhallowed hands, is accounted unfit for use. Some of the gentlemen, when invited to their houses, eat out of the same basket, and drank out of the same cup with their hosts; but it was observed, that the elderly women were always offended with this liberty; and if they happened to touch the victuals of any of the ancient matrons, or even the basket that held it, they never failed to express their dislike, and to throw it away; nor could the women of fashion ever be persuaded to eat with the gentlemen, when dining in company: but what seems most strange, and hardly to be accounted for, they would go, five or six in company, into the servants apartments, and eat heartily of whatever they could find; nor did they seem in the least disconcerted, if they were discovered; yet it was not easy to persuade any of them when alone, in private with a gentleman, to eat with him, nor would they ever do it but under the most solemn promises of secrecy.

Their amusements are various, such as music, dancing, wrestling, shooting with the bow, darting their lances, swimming, rowing, and slinging of stones. Their music it must be confessed is very imperfect, consisting only of a flute and drum, yet with these, companies go about the country, and frequent their festivals, being in equal estimation with them as morrice dancers were formerly with us, and the diversion they make is not unfamiliar. In shooting the long bow, or in throwing the lance, they by no means excel; neither are they very dexterous at wrestling; but at throwing stones, and swimming, they are perhaps equal to any people upon earth. Among other diversions, they have their heivas, nearly
cor-

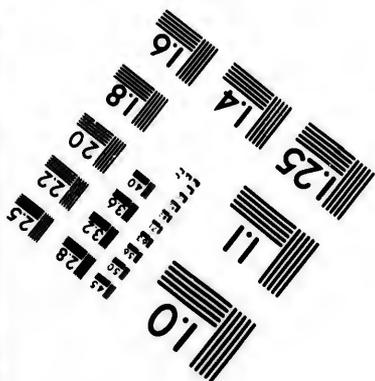
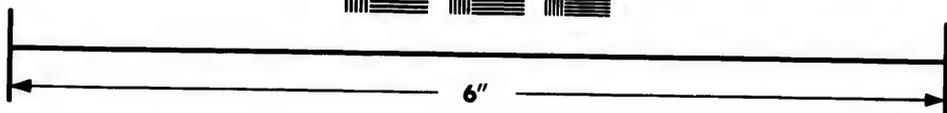
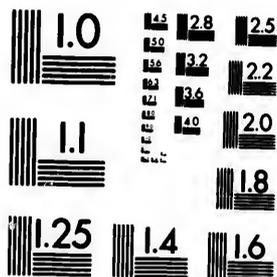
ep. It
to eat
s, have
ne pre-
enders
pulous
erently
by un-
ome of
out of
p with
women
f they
ancient
er fail-
y; nor
to eat
y : but
ed for,
ervants
could
if they
any of
to eat
e most

ncing,
ances,
music
nly of
about
ual ef-
merly
milar.
ance,
dex-
wim-
earth.
early
cor-





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25

10



Illustration by G. STEINER, Architectura Præsent.

corr
peop
at th
tend
won
vesti
thes
danc
fame
wake
with
fed in
the C
no m
voice
regul
word
into l
sion p
monie
the ar
sublim
frequ
more
to wh
ated.
every
meetin
reoy,
war to
tory o
haps i
city of
island
tirely
themse
ly all t
wome
gratify

corresponding with our English wakes. The young people meet together to dance and to make merry; and at these times their minstrels and players constantly attend, as formerly persons of the same character were wont to do all over England, and in some countries the vestiges of that antient custom remain to this day. At these heivas, however, their female performers, in their dances, have no regard to decency; and though the same end was no doubt in view in the institution of the wake and heiva, yet what in England was concerted with the utmost secrecy, is publicly avowed and practised in Otaheite. But though the instrumental music of the Otaheiteans is much confined, their vocal music is by no means contemptible; yet in the sweetness of the voice consists all the melody, for they have no rules to regulate the tones. Their songs are accompanied with words of their own composing, which they can vary into long and short verses, sprightly or solemn, as occasion presents; and as their language is exceeding harmonious and musical, a stranger is no less delighted with the arrantest nonsense, than he would be with the most sublime composition. The heivas are indiscriminately frequented by all ranks of people; but there is still a more exceptionable meeting; held by those of high rank, to which such only are admitted who are properly initiated. These people form a distinct society, in which every woman is common to every man; and at their meetings, which are distinguished by the name of ar-rooy, the sports they practise are beyond imagination wanton. We may trace somewhat like this in the history of the antient inhabitants of our own island. Perhaps it would be no exaggeration to add, that in the city of London, there are as many men as the whole island of Otaheite contains, who devote themselves entirely to the pleasures of sensuality, and who attach themselves to no one woman, but enjoy indiscriminately all they may; and that there are an equal number of women to be met with, who are at all times ready to gratify their desires.

Dress, among the ladies of Otaheite, seems to be as much studied, as in more civilized nations. However, neither the feet or legs, even of the quality, have any covering, or any defence from the ground, or the scorching heat of the sun, which at some seasons is very intense: but they are very nice in ornamenting their heads, and in shading their faces. That part of their head-dress, in which they pride themselves most, is threads of human hair, so delicately plaited, that it is not unusual for them to have garlands of this manufacture wound round their heads; the plaits whereof being interwoven with flowers, have a very pretty effect, and are exceedingly becoming to young faces. In their ears they wear ornaments, which, before the European beads, consisted of bone, tortoise-shell, or any thing shining and shewy. The other part of their dress is very simple; being a piece of cloth about a yard and a half wide, and between three and four yards long, having a hole cut in the middle, just big enough to let the head pass easily through; this flows round them, and covers them a little below the waist; from thence a large quantity of the same cloth is gathered in folds, and tied round them as we tie a cravat round the neck, which, being drawn into a large knot, is again spread out, and flows artlessly down before, nearly as low as the knees, while the greatest quantity of the cloth falls down behind, in appearance not unlike the dress of the Roman orators. This habit is far from being ungraceful, and there is little difference between that of the sexes, except that the lower garments of the men are nearly of an equal length before and behind. The cloth they wear is of very different textures. What is worn in dry weather is no other than paper made of the rinds of trees; but that which they put on when it rains is more substantial, and is properly a kind of matting incomparably plaited.

The shape of their cloathing, like that of our own, is nearly the same from the prince to the peasant, the only distinctions being the quantity worn, and the colour; the

the l
men
broa
how
other
upwa
them
we pu
wome
tice.
people
oora;
in Eu
grow
all red
these.
how to
of our
other fe
made u
and fixe
inches l
cocoa-n
serves a
this ma
or divin
times th
only tw
thumb,
could u
island, v
the fine
so have
files, kn
and shi
desirous
The
five, na
vigation

the lower class of people wearing only one single garment; the better sort as many as, were they made of broad cloth, would burden them to carry. One thing, however, appears singular. When they salute each other, they constantly uncover themselves from the waist upwards, throwing off their tunics, as we may call them, with the same ease, and for the same purpose, as we pull off our hats. This salutation is common to the women as well as the men, and is the universal practice. We have occasionally mentioned how fond the people of Otaheite are of red feathers, which they call oora; and these are as highly valued here as jewels are in Europe; especially what they call oravine, which grow on the head of the green paroquet; and though all red feathers please, none are esteemed equally with these. They are such good judges as to know very well how to distinguish one sort from another; and many of our people attempted in vain to deceive them with other feathers dyed red. These ornaments of dress are made up in little bunches, consisting of eight or ten, and fixed to the end of a small cord about three or four inches long, which is made of the outside fibres of the cocoa-nut, twisted so hard that it is like a wire, and serves as a handle to the bunch. When composed in this manner, they are used as symbols of the eatuas, or divinities, in all their religious ceremonies. Sometimes they hold one of these bunches, and at others, only two or three feathers between the fore-finger and thumb, and say a prayer, not one word of which we could understand. Whoever makes a voyage to this island, will do well to provide himself with red feathers, the finest and smallest that are to be got. He must also have a good stock of axes and hatchets, spike-nails, files, knives, looking-glasses, beads, and especially sheets and shirts, which our gentlemen found the ladies very desirous of having.

The arts in the island of Otaheite may be reduced to five, namely, architecture, carving, ship-building, navigation, and painting. Of their architecture there is
one

one remarkable specimen existing in the greater island, which is the morai, or sepulchral monument of Oberea: It is a prodigious pile of stone two hundred and sixty seven feet long, and eighty seven wide at the base, raised by flights of steps to the height of forty-four feet. These steps are each four feet high, narrowing gradually, till they end in a small entablature, on which, near the middle, stands the figure of a bird carved in wood; and at some distance the broken fragments of a fish cut in stone. This pile makes a considerable part of one side of a square court, whose area is three hundred and sixty feet by three hundred and fifty four, inclosed within a stone wall, and paved with the same materials through its whole extent. As this square is surrounded with trees, and has many growing within it of a particular kind, it forms, at a distance, the most delightful grove that imagination can paint. At what time it was erected could not be learnt, for they have no records of past transactions; but being constructed of coral stones, many of large dimensions neatly squared and polished, and so nicely joined, as hardly to discover a seam, it must fill the mind of a nice observer with admiration and rapture, while he examines all its parts. To think how such a mass of materials could be brought together in an island wherein no quarries are to be found; how these materials could be cut with such exactness, as to form a pile by rain, without cement, and that with tools little harder than the substance to which they were applied; and lastly, how these enormous blocks of stone could afterwards be raised to the height of forty-four feet, to close and cover in the building, must surely excite the wonder of every ordinary beholder; but to mark the symmetry of the whole, so justly proportioned in every part, as to display the most consummate judgment, must afford a feast to an enlightened mind, of which an ordinary seaman can have no relish. This noble structure, and strong proof of genius, will remain the admiration of all who may have the pleasure

of

of fe
dure
that
their
to be
to w
that
have
with
of th
will f
the ac
ing in
that d
in thie
with i
lence
have t
With
footing
rior to
to the
of a si
Most
the pu
which
comme
unlike
used by
like tho
they ar
of them
inch de
they rise
would b
and so n
upright,
the same

of seeing it, perhaps, as long as the island itself shall endure; for being solid, and without a cavity, no time, that will not equally affect the island, can destroy it. Of their carving in stone there are but very few specimens to be produced, and indeed, when their tools they have to work with are considered, it is more to be admired, that there are any, than that there are so few; but we have reason to hope, that now they are made acquainted with the use of iron, and have considerable quantities of that metal among them, that their improvements will speedily be proportioned to their advantages, and the acuteness of their understanding. But of their carving in wood, we saw not a tool, or ordinary utensil, that did not discover evident proofs of their expertness in this art. Their vessels for navigation are all adorned with it; and in some of their performances an excellence is discernable, which, with such tools as they have to work with, no European carver could exceed. With regard to their ship-building, they are upon a footing with their neighbours, if not at present superior to them. Their ordinary vessels are well adapted to the seas they have to navigate, and we never heard of a single instance of one of them being cast away. Most of them are elevated at the head and stern, for the purpose of defending the rowers from the surf, which on these islands breaks upon the shore with uncommon violence. Those of Otaheite are, in form, not unlike the punt boats, with flat bottoms, such as are used by our fishermen on the river Thames, or rather like those used for the same purpose on the Severn: they are no where wider than three feet, though some of them are more than sixty feet long; nor are they an inch deeper in the body, though at the head and stern they rise with a curvature more than twelve feet. As it would be impossible to navigate these vessels, so long, and so narrow, without some contrivance to keep them upright, they place two of them as near as can be of the same dimensions, alongside of each other, at three, four,

four, or five feet distance, and with strong spars join them together; then raising a mast in each, they hoist a square sail, the yards of which are fastened above and below to the corresponding masts, and thus equipt, with a cabin erected between them to stow their provisions, they will keep the sea for several days. In rigging their double canoes, they have a rule for proportioning the height of the masts to the length of the keel, and of fitting the sail to the height of the mast; they likewise have a contrivance of sailing in single canoes by means of out-riggers, which project on the lee-side of the vessel, and prevents their-overletting: to this out-rigger one corner of the sail is made fast, which sail being wide at the bottom, and rounding to a point at the top, very much resembles what the boatmen call a shoulder of mutton sail, frequently seen on the river Thames. To those who have been told, that the mason can joint with so much nicety as to be impervious to water, it will not seem strange that their carpenters can do the same with respect to timber; yet it certainly must require much art, and incredible labour, first to fell the tree, then to cleave it out into planks, then to hollow it out into the intended shape; next to smooth and polish it, after that to joint it, and last of all to put it together, and saw it; for they were wholly ignorant of the art of bolting it with wooden bolts, or jointing it together by means of mortices, till the Europeans visited them. It is no wonder, therefore, that they dreaded nothing so much as the destruction of their boats, when threatened by the English for any offence, nor that they should be more careful in covering their boat-houses from the sun and rain, than they are in securing their dwellings from the same injury.

As the whole art of navigation depends upon their minutely observing the motions of the heavenly bodies, it is astonishing with what exactness their navigators can describe the motions, and changes of those luminaries. There was not a star in the hemisphere, fixed, or erratic, but Tupia could give a name to, tell when, and where, it

it w
wor
the
wea
inte
islan
nati
stars
weat
their
Hav
seem
acqu
seem
their
stran
bread
be a
that
had
young
to ha
reason
if for
who
but a
guard
Wi
ple, to
confir
the or
bodie
after
whate
prizin
priest
witho
worth
riod a
Vol.

it would appear, and disappear; and, what was still more wonderful, he could tell, from the aspect of the heavens, the changes of the wind, and the alterations of the weather, several days before they happened. By this intelligence he had been enabled to visit most of the islands for many degrees round that of which he was a native. By the sun they steer in the day, and by the stars in the night; and by their skill in presaging the weather, they can, without danger, lengthen or shorten their voyage as appearances are for or against them. Having no medium wherewith to trade, their voyages seem wholly calculated for discovery, or to increase their acquaintance with other nations. Riches they do not seem solicitous to acquire. They certainly interchange their commodities among themselves, as well as with strangers; the fisherman barter his fish for the planter's bread-fruit, and so of the rest; yet every man seems to be a fisherman, and every man a planter: this shews, that we are still strangers to their civil oeconomy. It had been good policy to have suffered two or three young persons, who were desirous of staying behind, to have settled among them, especially, as there was reason to believe, that the island would again be visited, if for no other reason than to restore to them the native who had voluntarily undertaken a voyage to Europe; but against this Capt. Cook seems to have been carefully guarded.

With respect to the art of painting among these people, to us it appeared to be in a rude state, being chiefly confined to the figures represented on their bodies, and the ornaments on their canoes. The figures on their bodies are generally those of birds and fishes, sometimes after nature, and sometimes the effusions of fancy; but whatever is represented, the outline is traced with surprising exactness. This art is solely confined to the priesthood, and is performed like baptism as a rite, without which, after a certain age, none are accounted worthy of society. From twelve to fourteen is the period allotted for the performance of this rite, for before

that age children are thought unable to endure the smart. The other sort of painting in use among these islanders may be rather called daubing, consisting only in colouring the rude carvings in their pleasure boats, &c. sometimes with one colour, sometimes with another, but most commonly with red.

We shall close this head with a few remarks on their marine force, or war canoes, considered as their grand fleet. Capt. Cook when last at Otaheite conceived rather an unfavourable opinion of Otoo's capacity and talents; but the rapid improvements since made in the island convinced us, that he must be a man of good parts; and it is certain that he has some judicious, sensible men about him, who have a great share in the government: but we cannot say how far his power extends as king, nor how far he can command the assistance of the other chiefs, or is controulable by them: this however is certain, that all have contributed towards bringing the isle to its present flourishing state: yet we found it not without divisions among their great men. The king told us, that Towha, the admiral, and Poatatou, were not his friends. These being two leading chiefs, Otoo must have been jealous of them on account of their great power; yet on every occasion he seemed to court their interest. We are inclined to think they raised by far the greatest number of vessels and men, to go against Eimeo, and were to be the two commanders in the expedition, which, according to common report, was to take place five days after our departure. Waheatoua, king of Tiarabou, was to join this fleet to that of Otoo, and that young prince was to be one of the commanders. One would think so small an island as Eimeo, would have endeavoured to settle matters by negotiation rather than resist the united force of these two powerful nations; yet nothing was heard or talked of but fighting. Towha said more than once, that he should die in the action. Oedidee thought the battle would be fought at sea; but we thought it most probable, that the people of Eimeo would remain at home

on

on
five
Tia
five
of
ther
was
enou
have
whe
cessa
or si
wou
want
that
it wa
order
other
ance,
after
fleet
Eime
it mo
our p
Be th
gone
were
the v
of be
sea.
gran
more
small
bou,
intel
neces
was
Tata
each

on the defensive, as we were informed they did about five or six years ago, when attacked by the people of Tiarabou, whom they repulsed. We were told, that five general officers were to command in this expedition, of which number Otoo was one; and, if they named them in order according to the posts they held, Otoo was only the third in command; which seems probable enough; for he being but a young man he could not have sufficient experience to be commander in chief, where the greatest skill and judgment seemed to be necessary. Capt. Cook was disposed to have staid five or six days longer, had he been sure the expedition would have taken place in that time, but it seemed they wanted us to be gone first. It was sometimes reported, that it would not be undertaken before ten moons; as if it was necessary to have that time to put every thing in order. For several days before we sailed, Otoo and the other chiefs had ceased to solicit our alliance and assistance, which they were continually doing at first; and after Capt. Cook had assured Otoo, that if they got their fleet ready in time he would sail with them down to Eimeo, we heard no more of it. Probably they thought it more political to be without us, knowing it was in our power to bestow the victory on whom we pleased. Be this as it may, they undoubtedly wanted us to be gone before they undertook any thing; and thus we were deprived, much against our inclination, of seeing the whole fleet assembled on this occasion, and, perhaps of being spectators of a well conducted engagement at sea. What number of vessels were appointed for this grand expedition we could not learn. We heard of no more than two hundred and ten, besides a number of small canoes for transports, and the allied fleet of Tiarabou, the strength of which we could not gain the least intelligence; nor could we learn the number of men necessary to man this fleet. Whenever the question was asked, the answer was, Warou, warou, warou te Tata, that is many, many, men. Allowing forty to each war canoe, and four to each of the others, which

is a moderate computation, and the number will amount to nine thousand; an astonishing number, if we consider they were to be raised in only four districts, and one of them, namely, Matavai, did not equip a fourth part of the fleet. That of Tiarabou is not included in this account; and many other districts might be arming which we knew nothing of; yet we think the whole island of Otaheite did not arm on this occasion, for we saw not any preparations making at Oparree.

We believe that the chief, or chiefs, of each district, superintended the equipping of the fleet belonging to that district; after which they must pass in review before the king, who by this means knows the state of the whole intended to go on service. The number of war canoes belonging to Attahourou and Ahopata is an hundred and sixty; to Tettaha forty; to Matavai ten; now if we suppose every district in the island, of which there are forty-three, to raise and equip the same number of war canoes as Tettaha, according to this estimate, the whole island can raise and equip one thousand seven hundred and twenty war canoes, and sixty-eight thousand able men, allowing forty to each canoe; and seeing these cannot amount to above one third part of the number of both sexes, children included, the whole island cannot contain less than two hundred and four thousand inhabitants. This at first sight exceeded our belief; but when, upon a review of this calculation, we consider the vast swarms of natives which appeared wherever we went, we were convinced our estimate was not much, if at all too great. There cannot, in our opinion, be a stronger proof of the richness and fertility of Otaheite (not forty leagues, or 120 miles, in circuit) than that of its supporting such a number of warriors and warlike inhabitants, all artists, and possessed of a fleet, both their glory and defence. Such is the present state of the arts in this celebrated island, which, had Tupia lived to have come to England, and to have returned again to his own country, would, no doubt, have received still more rapid improvements; for he was a man of real
genius,

genius
His b
crew,
do any
compl
lamen
lated i
The
that o
The n
nor w
after t
mills v
first st
do flas
ping,
proper
the sid
the sam
nufact
strengt
over a
done,
be raise
stage,
beater
On eac
cut len
portion
begin
the lin
in wh
stand
and re
cloth,
apace,
When
out to
liver

genius, a priest of the first order, and an excellent artist. His boy Tayeto was the darling of the Endeavour's crew, being of a mild and docile disposition, ready to do any kind office for the meanest in the ship; never complaining, but always pleased. They both died much lamented at Batavia, the occasion of which has been related in its proper place.

The manufactures of Otaheite are of various kinds; that of cloth is in the highest estimation among them. The material of which one sort is made is neither spun, nor woven in a loom, but in every respect is prepared after the first simple manner of making paper before mills were applied to facilitate the labour. The bark is first stripped from the tree and laid in the water, as we do flax, to soak: it is then divested of the rind by scraping, till only the fibres of the inside remain. When properly cleansed, it is placed upon leaves, one layer by the side of another, till it is of sufficient breadth; and in the same manner it is extended to what length the manufacturer chuses, or the ground will admit; and to strengthen it and increase its breadth, one layer is laid over another till it is of the substance required. This done, it is left to drain, and when just dry enough to be raised from the ground, it is placed upon a kind of stage, made of smooth boards, and beat with a square beater about a foot long, and two or three inches broad. On each of the four sides of this beater parallel lines are cut lengthwise: these lines differ in fineness, in a proportion from small twine to a silken thread. They first begin with the coarsest side of the beater, and finish with the finest. By the continual application of this beater, in which two people are continually employed, who stand opposite to each other, on each side of the stage, and regulate their strokes like smiths on an anvil, the cloth, if cloth it may be called, in its rough state thins apace, and as it thins, it of course increases in breadth. When it has undergone this process, it is then spread out to whiten, which when sufficiently done, it is delivered to the ladies, whose province is to look it carefully

fully over, and to remove all blemishes. Thus far completed, it is coloured, generally red or yellow, after which it is rolled and laid up for use. By this process the reader will readily comprehend in what manner the fabric may be varied into fine or coarse, according to the materials of which it is made, and the labour bestowed upon it. In Otaheite the bark of three different trees is made use of in this manufacture; the Chinese paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the wild fig-tree. Of the first and second the finest sorts are made; but of the last, the most durable. The first and second imbibe water like paper; but the latter will resist the rain. They have a method of washing this cloth, after it has been worn, and when washed it is again beaten; by this last process it is rendered very soft and pliable. Another considerable manufacture is that of matting, made likewise of the rinds of plants and shrubs, which are worked to a degree of fineness not to be equalled by any thing of the kind known in Europe. Of this manufacture are made their sails, the covering of their beds, and their cloathing in rainy weather. Their cordage is another considerable article, which is made of the rind of a plant not unlike a wild nettle. In this manufacture they likewise excel, but we do not learn that any of it was purchased for the ship's use. Their lines made for fishing are much superior to any thing of the kind used in Europe, being stronger and infinitely more durable. Their fishing nets have the same advantages; but the cords made of human hair, which the ladies wind round their heads, and which, like netting, is the chief amusement for the ladies there, is incomparably beyond any thing that can be conceived in twisting. Mr Banks is said to have had in his possession a specimen of it, near two thousand yards in length, and as fine as our finest thread, not having one knot, or apparent joining, neither have they any engine to assist them in the performance, but all is done by the hand, and with a quickness that almost exceeds belief. They have likewise a manufacture of basket, or wicker work, of which every

every n
emulati
be won
forms,
compar
kind, th
people,
wards o
which th
deities.
with fea
black in
stain, an
presenta
berances.
tives calle
of less acc
pons of v
owners, t
ing tools,
expected.
scope to
We cor
which we
a distinct
made for
divided in
not long.
family of
lated, and
dependent
of the wh
toua, the
in the sam
do. This
Tarevatou,
as heir, an
sometimes

Thus far
low, after
his proceed
anner the
ording to
bour be-
different
e Chinese
wild fig-
re made;
d second
refist the
oth, after
beaten;
pliable.
matting,
, which
alled by
his ma-
of their
eir cor-
nade of
his ma-
rn that
ir lines
of the
y more
tages;
ladies
is the
arably
sting.
imen
ne as
arent
m in
with
like-
hich
ery

every native is a proficient; and as they have a kind of emulation in excelling in this kind of work, it is not to be wondered at, that there should be as many different forms, as there are different makers, some of them incomparably neat. But among the curiosities of this kind, that which was most admired by the Endeavour's people, when at this isle, was the figure of a man upwards of seven feet high, represented in basket work, which they imagined was a representation of one of their deities. This wicker skeleton was completely covered with feathers, white where the skin was to appear, and black in those parts which it is their custom to paint or stain, and upon the head, where there was to be a representation of hair. Upon the head were four protuberances, three in front, and one behind, which the natives called Tate-etee, or little men. Other manufactures of less account, yet not unworthy of notice, are their weapons of war, which seem to be the workmanship of the owners, their fishing tackle of various sorts, their working tools, and their jewelry; but in this last it cannot be expected, considering their tools, they should have any scope to display or exercise their ingenuity.

We come now to speak of their civil government, of which we have it not in our power to give our readers a distinct and perfect idea. This island of Otaheite made formerly but one kingdom; how long it has been divided into two we cannot pretend to say; we believe not long. The kings of Tiarabou, are a branch of the family of Opoureonu; at present the two are nearly related, and we believe the former is, in some measure, dependent on the latter. Otoo is stiled Earee de hie of the whole island; and we were told, that Waheaitoua, the king of Tiarabou, must uncover before him, in the same manner as the lowest order of his subjects do. This homage is not only paid to Otoo, but to Tarevatou, his brother, and his second sister, to the one as heir, and to the other as heir apparent. We have sometimes seen the Eowas and Whannos covered before the

the king, but whether by courtesy or by virtue of their office, we could not learn. These men, who are the principal persons about the king, and form his court, are generally, if not always his relations. Tee, so often mentioned in this narrative, was one of them. The Eowas, who hold the first rank, attend in turns, a certain number each day, so that they may be called lords in waiting. We seldom found Tee absent, and his attendance was necessary, as being best able to negotiate matters between Captain Cook and the chiefs; on this service he was always employed, and he executed the same, we have reason to believe, to the satisfaction of both parties. The Eowas and Whannos always eat with the king; nor do we know of any one being excluded from this privilege, but the Toutous; for as to the women, as we have already observed, they never eat with the men, let their rank be ever so much elevated. Notwithstanding these established orders, there was very little about Otoo's person or court, whereby a stranger could distinguish the king from the subject. We rarely saw him dressed in any thing but a common piece of cloth wrapped round his loins; so that he seemed to avoid all outward pomp, and even to demean himself more than any of his Earees around him. We have seen his majesty work at a paddle, in coming to and going from the ship, in cominor with others in the boat; and even when some of his Toutous sat looking on: and such is the uncontrouled liberty of this happy isle, that every individual has free access to him without the least ceremony; hence it is, that the Earees and other chiefs are more beloved than feared by the bulk of the people. We should think ourselves happy in knowing more of this mild and equal government, than the general outline; for as to the orders of the constituent parts, how constructed, disposed, and connected, so as to form one body politic; we can say but little. From what we have been able to discover, and gather from information, it seems very evidently to be of the feudal kind; and a
 remark-

rema
 estab
 tons,
 veral
 dang
 them
 a dist
 by the
 fluenc
 of the
 that a
 comm
 was th
 and th
 which
 but su
 mission
 their c
 at this
 jects a
 always
 effect
 The go
 quarrel
 necessa
 in prop
 the we
 more d
 tion to
 spread
 munity
 ple nev
 ry: the
 princip
 to subn
 standing
 courage
 tion, is
 Vol. I.

remarkable conformity appears between the political establishment of Otaheite, and that of the antient Britons, which consisted of several small nations, under several petty princes, or chiefs, who in cases of common danger united under one head. These chiefs had all of them their respective families, who multiplying, became a distinct class from the common people, and preserved by their personal courage, and lenity, a very great influence over them. Of these two classes, added to that of the priesthood, the whole body politic consisted; so that among them, what one class found necessary to command, the other was ready to execute. Hence it was that industry took place, and arts were invented; and this seems to be the present state of the islands of which we are now speaking. Laws they had none, but such as arose from the idea of superiority and submission, such as excite parents to correct the faults of their children; neither have the Otaheiteans any other at this day. There is no crime among them that subjects a man to death, and when life is taken away, it is always in the heat of passion or resentment, and not the effect of formal accusation and deliberate punishment. The contentions that arose among the chiefs became the quarrels of the whole community, and those quarrels necessarily led the parties to have recourse to arms, and in proportion as the contentions grew more frequent, the weapons that were contrived for defence, grew more desperate. It was not, however, till after civilization took place, that contentions for liberty began to spread devastation among the people of the same community. In their primary state of subjection, the people never entertained a thought that they were in slavery: they obeyed as children do their parents, from a principle originating in nature, which induces the weak to submit to the strong, and those of uninformed understanding to be governed by those whose wisdom and courage they readily acknowledged. This in our opinion, is an impartial and just representation of the state

of the civil government in Otaheite, wherein none think themselves slaves, yet few are free.

As to the religion of this people, we are as much at a loss for materials to form an opinion on this subject as former navigators. The little information we have hitherto received is so vague and contradictory, that nothing with certainty can be said about it. We have said they have idols, yet they appear not to be idolaters; that they have places of worship, yet never assemble in congregations to pay adoration; that they acknowledge deities of several orders, but that they have no forms of addressing them; and that they mutter somewhat like extemporary prayers, yet have no oratories, or forms of devotion, nor any set times for private or public worship. They have priests likewise of several orders, who have different offices assigned; but few of those offices are particularized, except that they preside and pray at funerals, and are the principal attendants at their Morais, or burying places; though it does not appear that any ceremonies of devotion are performed there. The offices that have been observed as appertaining to the priesthood are three, namely, circumcising, tattowing, and praying at the funerals of the dead. That of circumcising is not performed after the manner of the Jews, but after a peculiar manner of their own, and has no doubt the purity of the circumcised for its object, in bringing every part about them into contact with the water, with which they constantly wash three times every day. Tattowing, whatever its object, is never omitted; and praying for the dead is a proof that they believe in the soul's existing in a separate state, after death, which is confirmed by their placing meat and drink in their burying places. In this custom they are far from being singular. Among the ancient Romans, in the infancy of their state, they placed meat upon the tombs of their deceased friends, that the ghosts might come out and eat, as they believed they would; and when they intended to express the most abject state of human wretchedness, they used to say, "such a creature

ture g
the T
that o
chief
severa
made
concer
of sho
but th
mins c
have a
priests
knowl
liberal
far the
Druid,
persons
observa
whereb
of all re
The ch
whose
conform
mote fr
We
with a b
the prie
is know
who de
some by
of grief
and mo
one mo
mations
without
manner
for a da
tinued
is shrou

ture gets his food from the tombs." The character of the Tahowa in Otaheite, very nearly corresponds with that of Druid among the ancient Britons. He is the chief priest, and his erudition consists in learning the several traditional memorials of ancient times; in being made acquainted with the opinion of their ancestors, concerning the origin of things; and in the repetition of short mysterious sentences, in a language which none but those of their own orders can understand. The Bramins of the East have their mystic, unknown tongue, as have also all the followers of the great Zoroaster. The priests are superior also to the rest of the people in the knowledge of navigation and astronomy, and in all the liberal arts, of which these people have any idea. Thus far the character of the Tahowa agrees with that of Druid, in every particular. The Druids were the only persons of any sort of learning, which consisted in the observation of the heavens, knowledge of the stars, whereby they presaged future events; they had the care of all religious matters, and their authority was absolute. The chief of the Druids, was pontiff or high priest, whose dignity was elective. Thus we might trace the conformity of the customs and manners of nations remote from each other, in their infant state.

We shall conclude this historical sketch of Otaheite with a brief account of their funeral ceremonies, in which the priest and the people jointly assist. When a native is known to be dead, the house is filled with relations, who deplore their loss, some by loud lamentations, and some by less clamorous, but more genuine expressions of grief. Those who are the nearest degree of kindred, and most affected by the event, are silent; the rest are one moment uttering passionate expressions, or exclamations in a chorus, and the next laughing and talking, without the least appearance of concern, much like the manner of the wild Irish; but this solemnity is continued for a day and a night, whereas by the Irish it is continued several nights. On the next morning the body is shrouded, and conveyed to the sea side on a bier, upon

the shoulders of the bearers, and attended by the priest, who having prayed over the body, repeats his sentences during the procession. When they arrive at the water's edge, it is set down on the beach: the priest renews his prayers, and taking up some of the water in his hand, sprinkles it towards the body, but not upon it. It is then carried back forty or fifty yards, and soon after brought again to the beach, where the prayers and sprinkling are repeated. It is thus removed backwards and forwards several times; and during the performance of this ceremony, a house has been built, and a small piece of ground railed round, in the center of which a stage is erected whereon they place the bier, and the body is left to putrify, till the flesh is wasted from the bones. As soon as the body is deposited in the Morai, the mourning is renewed. The women now assemble, and are led to the door by the nearest relation, who strikes a shark's tooth several times into the crown of her head: the blood copiously follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of cloth, or linen, which are thrown under the bier. The rest of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the zeal and sorrow of the parties hold out. The tears also which are shed upon this occasion are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead. Some of the younger people cut off their hair, which is likewise thrown under the bier. This custom is founded on the notion, as some of our gentlemen thought, that the soul of the deceased is hovering about the place where the body is deposited; that it observes the actions of the survivors, and is gratified by such testimonies of their affection and grief; but whether this is part of the natives' faith is very problematical; neither, in our opinion, is it certain, that the priest is an attendant in the funeral procession down to the water's edge; for in the funerals at which Mr Banks was a party, no mention is made of a priest; and Tuborai Tumaide, who was chief mourner, performed the whole of the funeral service. The

natives

C
 natives a
 the reaso
 in his ha
 sharks' te
 to have i
 happen t
 fully wit
 wound t
 Were
 fled, they
 their hou
 corpse of
 came by
 would ha
 the reach
 secret mo
 tune hap
 either in
 as at this
 tain get
 the grave
 Otaheite,
 hension o
 upon the
 dread as
 and if i
 corpse at
 hill, they
 way the
 tion for
 unlucky
 themselv
 of the i
 judged
 was rep
 panied v
 or place
 hogs, fi
 sions ar

natives are all said to fly before these processions, and the reason assigned is, because the chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat stick, the edge of which is set with sharks' teeth, and in a phrensy, which his grief is supposed to have inspired, he runs at all he sees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he strikes them most unmercifully with his indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a most dangerous manner.

Were it only for fear of the cudgel that these people fled, they needed not run so far as the woods, nor to quit their houses (as Mr Banks observed they did when the corpse of an old woman, whose funeral he attended, came by in procession) to hide themselves in holes; it would have been sufficient for them to have kept out of the reach of the cudgel; but they must be awed by some secret motive; some superstitious dread of some misfortune happening to them, should they meet the corpse, either in an unlucky place, or in an ominous situation; as at this day many people in the northern parts of Britain get out of the way of a corpse when carrying to the grave, for these or the like reasons. The people of Otaheite, we think, are not intimidated by the apprehension of being beaten; but they may have a dread upon them of they know not what; yet it is such a dread as insensibly impels them to keep at a distance, and if they are by accident surprized, and meet a corpse at the corner of a street, or the rounding of a hill, they never fail to bless themselves, and turn the way the corpse is carrying, and walk in the same direction for several paces to avert the bad effects of the unlucky omen, which they always interpret against themselves. In an account of the funeral ceremonies of the islanders in the South Seas, the writer, who judged from what he himself saw, and not from what was reported to him, tells us, that the priest, accompanied with two boys painted black, attend the Morai, or place where the corpse is deposited, to receive the hogs, fish, and other provisions, which on these occasions are offered to the Etoba, or deity of the place, and

and to lay them upon an altar. This priest is also employed in strewing over the body of the defunct, leaves and flowers of bamboo; and for two or three days he occasionally ranges the adjacent fields and woods, from which every one retires on his approach. The relations, in the mean time, build a temporary house near the morai, where they assemble, and the females mourn for the deceased, by singing songs of grief, howling, and wounding their bodies in different places with flarks' teeth; after which they bathe their wounds in the next river or sea, and again return to howl and cut themselves, which they continue for three days. After the body is corrupted, and the bones are become bare, the skeleton is deposited in a sort of stone-pyramid built for that purpose. These Morais are frequented by two birds sacred to their gods, namely, the grey heron, and a blue and brown king-fisher; but whether these birds, or the priest and his attendants eat the offerings that are made to the presiding deity, or whether they are eaten at all, we are not informed.

It is agreed, however, that the piety of the natives is in no instance so strongly expressed as in the profusion of covering they bestow upon the remains of their deceased friends, and in the ornaments with which they decorate their morais, but these morais are not the receptacles of the ordinary dead, but appropriated to the use of the principal families to which each respectively belongs: how it fares with the bodies of the common herd we could not learn, whether they are suffered to rot upon the ground, or under it.

We shall just add to what has been said under this head, that the Otaheiteans have neither physicians or surgeons, by profession, except the priest whose relief consists in prayers and ceremonies, not in drugs or prescriptions; yet we must not conclude from hence, that they are deficient in the art of healing. Two or three instances occur in the relations of different voyagers, which, to say no more, are striking proofs of their knowledge in what is necessary to preserve life. Tupia

was

CA
 was pier
 with the
 went in a
 ret he w
 ny bad
 almost cr
 eye beat
 one's fist
 all appear
 stone thr
 uon, and
 he, like t
 joy a god
 truth of a
 we think
 be allowe
 are incon
 have a kn
 we are ei
 ing qual
 heite and
 them the
 foil to th
 they are
 bours, an
 invasions
 prove su
 nor child
 which c
 night sh
 On S
 fine bre
 the N.V
 the illar
 trance o
 veral of
 articles
 being
 present

was pierced through the body with a lance, headed with the jagged bone of the sting-ray: the weapon went in at his back, and came out just under his breast; yet he was perfectly cured, and never complained of any bad effects of his wound. One man had his head almost crushed, his face beat in, his nose flatted, and one eye beat out, the hollow of which would almost admit one's fist; yet this man, we are told, was cured, and to all appearance felt no remaining pain. A third had a stone through his head with a sling, in the time of action, and yet, strange and impossible as it may seem, he, like the others, we are informed, appeared to enjoy a good state of health. We will not vouch for the truth of all the circumstances in these relations, which we think are rather of the marvellous kind, yet we may be allowed to infer from the facts themselves, that they are incontestible proofs, that the natives of Otaheite have a knowledge of the virtues of balsams, of which we are either not possessed, or are ignorant of their healing qualities. From this narrative of the island of Otaheite and its inhabitants, some will be ready to envy them their felicity; but it must be remembered as a foil to this, that they do not always sleep in security: they are frequently surprized by their warlike neighbours, and whole districts are depopulated; for if in the invasions of one another's territories, they happen to prove successful, the victors spare neither man, woman, nor child. But it is time now to return to the ship, which on the 14th of May we left under sail, and that night she cleared the reef.

On Sunday the 15th, we had an open sea, with a fine breeze in our favour, and pursued our voyage to the N.W. and N.W. by W. The same night we made the island of Huaheine, and anchored in the north entrance of O'Wharre harbour. Oree, the chief, and several of the natives paid us visits. Oree, among other articles, brought with him a hog; and the next day, being the 16th, Captain Cook returned Oree's visit, presenting to him some red feathers, which he held in

his

his hand, and muttered over them a prayer. This morning the people began to bring us fruit. The chief sent us two hogs, which were followed by himself and friends who came to dine with us. Oree asked for axes and nails, which were readily given him. These he distributed as he pleased, but bestowed the largest share upon a youth who appeared to be his grandson. After the distribution was over, they all returned ashore. Mr Forster, and a party with him, went up the country to examine its productions; which he continued as a daily task during the ship's continuance in this harbour. As a servant of Mr Forster's was walking along the shore, without a companion, he was beset by several stout fellows, who would have stripped him, had not some of our people arrived to his assistance. One of the men made off with a hatchet. This day the number of natives that came about the ship was so great, that it was found necessary to place sentinels in the gangways, to prevent the men from coming on board; but no opposition was made to the women, so that the ship was crowded with them.

On Tuesday the 17th, we found Oree, and a great number of the principal people assembled in a house consulting together. We heard the late robbery mentioned by them several times; but the chief assured us, neither himself nor his friends had any hand in the same, and desired Captain Cook to kill with his guns those that had. We could not learn where the robbers were gone, and therefore, at present, took no more notice of the affair. In the evening a dramatic entertainment was exhibited. The subject of the piece was that of a girl running away with us from Otaheite. This was not wholly a fiction, for a girl had taken her passage with us from Ulietea, and was at this time present when her own adventures were represented: she could hardly refrain from tears while the play was acting; and it was with much difficulty we persuaded her to stay out the entertainment. At the conclusion of the piece, the girl's return to her friends was represented;

and

and t
one.

was d

On
on bo
great g
way o
had by
ed the
shewn
ty offi
in the
nails, &
who w

These
and art
had wit
some ti
to shoo
miffed
lows fa
opportu
ing all
to purfi

On t
intende
though
yet wa
he ther
diness,
mong t
out the
counter
visits u

On I
with o
they w
firt to
of wha

Vol. I

and the reception she met with was not a favourable one. It is very probable that this part of the comedy was designed to deter others from going away with us.

On Wednesday the 18th, king Oree came and dined on board, and the Captain, at his desire, ordered the great guns to be shotted, and fired into the water, by way of salute at his arrival and departure: indeed he had by Oedidee given us to understand, that he expected the same honours to be paid to him, as had been shewn to the chiefs of Otaheite. A party of petty officers having obtained leave to amuse themselves in the country, they took with them some hatchets, nails, &c. in bags, which were carried by two natives, who went with them as their guides, to shew the way. These fellows made off with the trust reposed in them, and artfully enough effected their escape. The party had with them two musquets; and after it had rained some time, the natives pointed out some birds for them to shoot. One of the guns went off, and the other missed fire several times. At this instant, when the fellows saw themselves secure from both, they took the opportunity to run away, and not one of the party, being all much surprized, had presence of mind enough to pursue them.

On the 19th, a report was current, that the natives intended to rise and attack the ship. The Captain, though he did not think them serious in such an attempt, yet was unwilling totally to disregard the intimation: he therefore ordered twenty stand of arms to be in readiness, in case any commotion should be observed among them; but though the rumour increased throughout the day, yet no preparations could be perceived to countenance such a report; and the king continued his visits us usual, never coming empty handed.

On Friday, the 24th, the first and second lieutenants, with one of the mates, being out on a shooting party, they were beset by more than fifty of the natives, who first took from them their arms, and then robbed them of what articles they had carried with them to trade.

In the scuffle the first lieutenant lost the skirt of his coat, and one of the other gentlemen received a severe blow. When the robbers had stripped them of their merchandizes, they restored to them their fowling pieces. When this transaction came to the knowledge of Capt. Cook, he went immediately with a boat's crew on shore, and entered a large house wherein were two chiefs. This, with all their effects, he took possession of, and remained there, till he heard that the gentlemen had got safe on board, and had all their things restored to them. Oedidee informed us, Oree was so much affected with the relation of this, that he wept much. When on board, we learnt from the officers themselves, that a small insult on their part was the occasion of the affray; but some chiefs interfering, took the officers out of the croud, and caused every thing that had been taken from them to be restored. On the 21st, we saw upwards of sixty canoes, most of the people in them being Eareeoies, steering for Ulietea, and we heard they were going to visit their brethren in the neighbouring islands. It seems these people have customs among them peculiar to themselves; and assist each other when necessity requires: we may therefore call them the Free Masons of Huaheine. This day Oree sent a message to Captain Cook, desiring he would come on shore, and bring twenty-two men with him, in order to search for and chastise the robbers. Oedidee brought with him twenty-two pieces of leaves to assist his memory, a custom very common among these people. This message seemed to us an extraordinary one, and therefore the Captain went to the chief for better information. Oree informed him, that these fellows were a set of banditti, who had formed themselves into a body, and had resolved to rob all they met, for which purpose they were now assembled and armed. These robbers Oree wanted us to attack; the Captain said they would fly to the mountains; but he assured us to the contrary, and desired we would destroy both them and their habitations, only sparing their canoes. This request seemed extraordinary, but

but the
left the
formid
port f
ed goi
he form
in the
Capt. C
king O
having
armed,
having
promil
togethe
we pro
banditti
a place
we coul
took his
ed sever
proceed
men ha
about to
side, wh
sicult, b
persiste
same or
ed sever
with clu
we saw
dee's su
that the
be the c
at a con
they we
at the
convinc
fire; aft

but the Captain was resolved to comply with it in part, lest these fellows should make more head, and become formidable; and also with a view of preventing the report from gaining ground in Ulietea, where we intended going, and we were apprehensive associations might be formed in like manner, and the people might treat us in the same way or worse, they being more numerous. Capt. Cook and his officers made ready to accompany King Oree in the expedition against the robbers; and having ordered fifty marines with some sailors to be well armed, they landed near the palace of the king, and having required him to conduct them according to his promise, he very readily consented, and they all set out together in very good order. The party increased as we proceeded; and Oedidee told us, that several of the banditti had joined us, with a view of decoying us into a place, where they might attack us to advantage. As we could place no confidence in any other person, we took his advice and proceeded with caution. We marched several miles, when Capt. Cook declared he would proceed no farther; besides, we were informed that the men had fled to the mountains. At this time we were about to cross a deep valley, with steep rocks on each side, where our retreat might have been rendered difficult, by a few men assaulting us with stones. Oedidee persisted in his opinion; and we marched back in the same order as we came. As we went along, we observed several people coming down the sides of the hills with clubs, which they immediately hid when they found we saw them. This was some confirmation of Oedidee's suspicions; but we could not persuade ourselves that the chief had any such intention, whatever might be the designs of his people. In our return we halted at a convenient place, and wanting some refreshments, they were immediately brought us. When we arrived at the landing place we discharged several volleys, to convince the natives, that we could support a continual fire; after which we returned on board, and the chief

dined with us; having brought with him a hog ready dressed.

After dinner we received a great number of presents as peace-offerings. Two chiefs brought each of them a pig, a dog, and some young plantain trees, and with due ceremony presented them singly to the Captain. Another brought a very large hog, with which he had followed us to the ship. A quantity of fruit was brought us by others; so that we were likely to make more by this little excursion, than by all the presents we had made them; and the expedition had one good effect at least, for the people were convinced that musquets were more terrible things than they at first imagined. We were promised a larger supply of hogs and fruit the next day; but the chief was not so good as his word. We went ashore in the afternoon, and found him sitting down to dinner. The people about him immediately began chewing the pepper root; a cup of the juice was presented to Captain Cook, but he did not like the method of brewing it. Oedidee was not so nice, and immediately swallowed what the Captain refused. The chief washed his mouth with cocoa-nut water after he had taken the juice of the pepper-root; and ate a large quantity of plantain, repe, and mahee, and finished his dinner by eating and drinking a composition of plantains, bread-fruit, mahee, &c. of the consistence of a custard; of this he took about three pints. He dined in the open air, at the outside of his house, and during dinner time a play was performing within the house.

On Monday the 23d, we put to sea. The chief and Captain Cook took an affectionate leave of each other. When Oree heard that we never intended coming there any more, he said, "Let your sons come, we will treat them well." We did not get a sufficient supply of hogs at this island, though they did not appear to be scarce; but we obtained more fruit than we well knew what to do with. Our stock in trade being nearly exhausted, we found it necessary to set the smiths to work, in making

king di
be kept
cure re
On
were vi
handfor
thechie
met by
cut their
worst p
to their
After th
and app
On
pany w
with th
freshme
ner, and
cluded v
perform
was brow
as the ch
seemed
with all
which th
things w
buoy; b
all return
they bro
thirtieth,
accompa
we arriv
command
and fruit
sion of H
seeing th
following
the hog

king different sorts of iron tools, that an influence might be kept up at the other islands, and to enable us to procure refreshments.

On Tuesday the 24th, we anchored in Ulietea, and were visited by Oreo the chief, who brought with him a handsome present. A party of us went ashore to make the chief a present, and as we entered his house we were met by five old women, who lamented very bitterly, and cut their faces in a shocking manner. This was not the worst part of the story, for we were obliged to submit to their embraces, and get ourselves covered with blood. After this ceremony was over, they washed themselves, and appeared as chearful as any other person.

On Friday the 27th, Oreo paid us a visit, in company with his wife, son and daughter, and brought with them a very handsome present of all kinds of refreshments. We accompanied them on shore after dinner, and were entertained with a play, which concluded with the representation of a woman in labour, performed by a set of brawny fellows; the child that was brought forth was at least six feet high. As soon as the child was delivered, they pressed his nose, which seemed to indicate that they really take this method with all their children, which occasions that flatness which their noses generally have. On the 29th, several things were stolen out of our boats, which lay at the buoy; but on application to the chief, we had them all returned, except an iron tiller, and in lieu of that they brought us two large hogs. On Monday, the thirtieth, a party of us set out for Oedidee's estate accompanied by the chief and his family. When we arrived there, we found that Oedidee could not command any thing, though he had promised us hogs and fruit in abundance; they were now in possession of his brother. We had here an opportunity of seeing them kill and dress a pig, which was done in the following manner: three men first strangled the hog; the hog was laid on his back, two men laid a stick across his

his throat, pressing at each end, the third man stuffed up his fundament with grass, and held his hind legs. The hog was kept in this position for ten minutes, before he was dead. An oven, which was close by, was heated. They laid the hog on the fire as soon as he was dead, and singed off his hair; he was then carried to the sea-side and washed. The carcase was then laid on clean green leaves, that it might be opened. They first took out the lard, and laid it on a green leaf, the entrails were then taken out and carried away in a basket; the blood was put into a large leaf. The hog was then washed quite clean, and several hot stones were put into his body; he was then placed in the oven on his belly, the lard and fat were put into a vessel, with two or three hot stones, and placed alongside the hog; the blood was tied up in a leaf, with a hot stone and put into the oven; they covered the whole with leaves, on which were placed the remainder of the hot stones; they afterwards threw a great deal of rubbish in, and covered the whole with earth. A table was spread with green leaves, while the hog was baking, which took up little more than two hours. We sat down at one end of the table, and the natives, who dined with us, at the other; the fat and blood were placed before them, and the hog before us. We thought the pork exceeding good indeed, and every part of it was well done. The natives chiefly dined of the fat and blood, and said it was very good victuals. The whole of this cookery was conducted with remarkable cleanliness. This estate of Oedidee was small, but very pleasant; and the houses formed a pretty village. After we had dined, we returned to the ship. In our way we saw four wooden images, each two feet long. They stood on a shelf, had a large piece of cloth round the middle, a turban on their heads, stuck with cocks' feathers. They told us these were their servants' gods.

On Tuesday the 31st, the people hearing that we intended sailing, brought abundance of fruit on board, which continued on the 1st of June. We were in-
form

formed
person
sons of
we had
therefor
man car
We cou
telligenc
sending
On Sa
ly came
present
were any
portuned
we could
to be re
them wi
buried w
achment
mise that
those islan
did not l
fraild to si
This you
and woul
than Om

formed that two ships had arrived at Huaheine. The person who brought the information described the persons of Captain Furneaux and Mr Banks so well, that we had no doubt of the truth of the assertion; we therefore thought of sending a boat over there, but a man came on board, and declared the whole to be a lye. We could not confront the fellow who brought the intelligence, for he was gone away, and the danger of sending the boat was put a stop to.

On Saturday the 4th of June, the chief and his family came on board to take leave, bringing a handsome present with them. These people denied that there were any ships at Huaheine. We were very much importuned to return to this place; when we told them we could not, their grief was bitter, and we believed it to be real. They desired Captain Cook to acquaint them with his burial place, and said they would be buried with him. A strong proof of affection and attachment. We left Oedidee here, as we could not promise that more ships would be sent from England to those islands: he left us with infinite regret. Oedidee did not leave us till we were out of the harbour, and said to fire some guns, it being his Majesty's birth-day. This youth was of a gentle, docile, humane disposition, and would have been a better specimen of the natives than Omai.

Departure

Departure of the Resolution from Ulietea.—Incidents at Savage Island—Instances of the Ferocity of the Natives—Description of this Island.—Passage from hence to Rotterdam—Remarkable Transactions at this Place, and the Insolence of the Natives.—An Account of the People in Turtle Island—One called by the Natives Ambrym discovered—Transactions while here, and ferocious Behaviour of the Inhabitants—A particular Description of these People.—The Resolution continues her Course from Port Sandwich.—Passes Three-hill and Shepherd's Islands—Steers in a Direction for Sandwich Island, in order to discover the Southern Extremity of the Archipelago—Hostile Behaviour of the Natives of Sandwich Isle, and of several Islands, particularly Tanna, and Erromango—An Account of a Volcano—Character of Paowang, a great Chief—A Description of the Country, &c.—Departure of the Resolution from the Island of Tanna—The Natives described.—Arrives at Erromango.—The western Coast of the New Hebrides explored.—More new Islands discovered.—Inhabitants and Country about Cape Calnett described.—The Island of Pines discovered, with an Account of these and other Trees.

THE day after we left Ulietea we saw land, which proved to be a low island discovered by Captain Wallis, and called by him Howe Island. We saw land again on the 16th, which we called Palmerston Island, in honour of Lord Palmerston, one of the Lords of the Admiralty. On the 20th we discovered land again, and

inhab
two
tired
on a
part
seem
him
bitan
frien
mena
struck
discr
Havi
we ca
to pre
men v
had a
fc
Very
ns, an
to a p
feroc
but thi
darts a
otherw
of then
who ap
ardour
to join
tives w
and fee
ed to th
Island,
its situa
169 d.
leagues
ly cover
rocks w
tants do
- Vol. I.

inhabitants appearing upon the shore; we equipped two boats, and as we approached, the inhabitants retired into the woods. When we landed, we took post on a high rock, to prevent a surprize, and the botanizing party began collecting plants, with which the country seemed covered. Captain Cook took two men with him and entered the woods, but on hearing the inhabitants approach they returned. We made every friendly sign in our power, but were answered by menaces; and one of the natives threw a stone, which struck one of our party. Two musquets were fired indiscriminately, and they all retreated into the woods. Having embarked, we proceeded along the coast till we came to a place where four canoes lay. In order to prevent being surprized, and to secure a retreat, the men were drawn up upon a rock, from whence they had a view of the heights. Captain Cook, and only five gentlemen with him, went to look at the canoes. Very soon after the natives rushed out of the wood upon us, and we endeavoured to no purpose to bring them to a parley; they threw their darts, and appeared very ferocious. We discharged some musquets in the air, but this did not intimidate them, for they still threw darts and stones. Captain Cook's musquet missed fire, otherwise he would certainly have killed the ring-leader of them. The men drawn up on the rock fired at some who appeared on the heights, which rather allayed the ardour of our antagonists, and we had an opportunity to join the marines. We do not think any of the natives were hurt, but they all retreated into the woods; and seeing we could make nothing of them, we returned to the ship. Captain Cook named this place Savage Island, from the conduct and aspect of the islanders; its situation is south latitude 19 d. 1 m. west longitude 169 d. 37 m. its form is circular, and is about eleven leagues in circumference. The country appears entirely covered with trees and shrubs. Nothing but coral rocks were to be seen along the shores. The inhabitants do not appear to be very numerous; they go entirely

tirely naked, except round the waist, and seem stout, well-made men. Some of them had their thighs, breast, and faces painted black.

We steered for Rotterdam, and as we drew near it several canoes laden with fruit came along-side of us, but we did not shorten sail. The people on board them wanted us much to go towards their coast, telling us, as well as they were able, we might safely anchor there. They enquired for Captain Cook by name. We came to anchor on the north side of the island on the 26th instant. The inhabitants brought to us great quantities of yams and haddocks, for which we gave them old rags and nails. A party of us went ashore to look for water, and were civilly received by the natives. We got some water, but it was rather brackish. We got a plentiful supply of fruit and oats, as well as water, but happened to leave the surgeon on shore. He got a canoe to bring him off; but just as he was getting into it, one of the natives snatched away his musquet and ran off with it, after which no person would bring him on board. He certainly would have been stripped, had he not presented a tooth-pick case to them, which they took for a little gun. When Capt. Cook heard of this transaction, he went ashore; but the natives fled at his approach. We did wrong in not taking any steps for the recovery of the gun, as it encouraged the inhabitants to make more depredations. A boat was sent ashore on the 28th for some water, when the people behaved in a rude and daring manner: it was with difficulty they got their water-casks filled, and into the boats again. The lieutenant who commanded this party had his gun snatched from him, and most of the people had something or other taken away from them. This was the effect of ill-timed lenity. Captain Cook landed soon after, and resolved to have the gun restored. All the marines were ordered ashore armed. As the botanising party were in the country, three guns were fired from the ship to alarm them, as we did not know how the natives might behave to them. The natives knew well
enough

enou
long
tenan
Cook
a few
resista
and th
to the
man C
very i
store a
ing, an
but we
wound
The sur
his opin
Captain
great de
sented a
understa
artful en
spike na
He was
with her
curefs th
charms;
aboard th
take her,
admitted
On th
came up
exchange
our peop
were strip
heite had
on the 3
parts with
got two p
commodit

enough what we intended, and brought the musquet long before the marines got ashore. When the lieutenant and the marines arrived they all fled; Captain Cook seized two double canoes in the cove, and threw a few small shot into the fellow's legs who made some resistance. We very soon obtained the other musquet, and then the canoes were restored. When we returned to the cove, the people wanted to persuade us that the man Captain Cook fired at was dead, which we thought very improbable. Captain Cook desired a man to restore a cooper's adze which had been stolen that morning, and he went away, as we thought, to fetch it; but we were mistaken, for he soon returned with the wounded man stretched out on a board apparently dead. The surgeon was sent to dress his wounds, which, in his opinion, were but slight, and of no consequence. Captain Cook still insisted upon the adze, and with a great deal of difficulty obtained it. An old woman presented a young girl to Captain Cook, giving him to understand that she was at his service. The girl was artful enough, and wanted to bargain for a shirt and a spike nail, neither of which the Captain had with him. He was then given to understand that he might retire with her upon credit, which he refused. The old procuress then abused him, saying he was insensible to her charms; the girl was very pretty, and wanted to go aboard the ship with the Captain; but he would not take her, as he had given orders no women should be admitted there.

On the 29th we sailed, and a great many canoes came up with us, loaded with fruit, &c. which were exchanged for the usual commodities. The passion of our people for curiosities was as great as ever, and they were stripped of most of the clothes the ladies of Otaheite had left them. We stretched out for Amattafoa on the 30th, and several canoes came to us from all parts with the common articles; out of one of them we got two pigs, which in this part of the world are a scarce commodity.

On Friday the 1st of July we discovered land, the master and the boat were sent into the sound to find anchorage; four or five people were discovered on the shore, who retreated as the boat advanced, and they all fled to the woods when the boat landed. The master returned, and brought word there were no foundings without the reef; that he rowed in for the shore, intending to speak to the people, who were about twenty in number, armed with clubs and spears; but they all returned into the woods on his approach. He left some trifles upon the rocks, which they certainly found, for several people were seen at that place soon afterwards. The number of inhabitants on this island are supposed to be very few, and it is very probable that the few who are there only came to catch turtles, of which there are a great number here. This island is situated S. latitude 19 d. 48 m. W. longitude 178 d. 2 m. We called it Turtle Island.

After a good deal of stormy weather we saw an island, called by the natives Ambrym, on the 21st of July. We discovered a creek as we drew nearer the shore, which had the appearance of a good harbour: many people were assembled, who invited us on shore, but we did not chuse to go, as they were armed with bows and arrows. We sent out two armed boats to discover a port about a league more to the south, where we anchored in eleven fathoms water. Several of the natives came off to us, but acted with great caution; at last they trusted themselves alongside, and exchanged arrows for pieces of cloth. The arrows were pointed with bone, and dipped in a green gummy substance, which we imagined to be poisonous. Presents were made to two men who ventured on board, and others came at night for the same purpose, but they were not admitted.

On the 22d, in the morning, several natives came round us; some swam, and others came in canoes. We prevailed on one man with some difficulty to come on board, and he was followed by more than we wished.

Various

Various
taken
canoe
tion.
which
of the
one o
shoot
some c
with i
struggl
windo
his arr
ing ou
stantly
a little
shot ob
rows o
utmost
over th
We per
and for
the bea
pounde
country
mined t
freshme
We l
with bo
no opp
thing bu
person v
rows to
took the
crowd.
the bea
among t
for not o
and in re

Various articles were given to four of them, which were taken into the cabin; these they shewed to others in the canoes, who were very well pleased with their reception. We were all put into confusion by an accident which happened while these were in the cabin. One of the natives who had been refused admittance into one of our boats bent his bow at the boat-keeper, to shoot a poisoned arrow at him; he was prevented by some of his countrymen, and Capt. Cook was acquainted with it. Capt. Cook went on deck, and saw a man struggling with him, who had leaped out of the cabin window for this purpose. The fellow again pointed his arrow at the boat-keeper; and on Capt. Cook's calling out, he pointed the arrow at the Captain, who instantly fired a musquet at him. This staggered him for a little while, but he again pointed his arrow; a second shot obliged him to desist. Several began to shoot arrows on the other side; but they were all sent off in the utmost confusion, by a four pound shot being discharged over their heads. They all to a man leaped overboard. We permitted them to come and take away their canoes, and some again came alongside the ship. We heard the beating of drums on shore as soon as the four pounder was fired, which we took for the signal for the country to assemble under arms. However, we determined to go on shore and seek for wood and some refreshments, which we were very much in want of.

We landed in the face of five hundred men, armed with bows, arrows, spears, and clubs, but they made no opposition. Capt. Cook advanced alone, with nothing but a green branch in his hand; on seeing this, a person who seemed to be a chief gave his bow and arrows to another, and came to meet him in the water, took the Captain by the hand, and led him up to the crowd. The marines were at this time drawn up on the beach. Capt. Cook distributed several presents among them. We made signs that we wanted wood, for not one word of their language could we understand, and in return they made signs for us to cut down the trees,

trees. They brought a small pig for a peace offering, and we flattered ourselves with the hopes of procuring more, but these were vain and delusive; for we got a small quantity of water, and about half a dozen coconuts. They parted freely with their arrows, but we could not purchase of them any bows without a great deal of difficulty. They did not seem to set the least value upon any thing we presented them with, nor did they like we should proceed farther than the beach, and seemed very desirous of our returning on board: this we did after we had cut down some wood, and they all retired into different parts of the country. In the afternoon we observed a man bringing along the buoy, which had been taken from the kedge anchor; and when we sent some of our crew ashore for it, he immediately delivered it. This was the only thing they had attempted to take from us. Capt. Cook and Mr. Forster went to examine some of their houses, which bore a resemblance to those on the other isles. They saw a great number of fine yams, and several pigs and fowls. They called this island Mallicolæ, another near it Apee, and a third Paoom. We went in search of fresh water, but without success. The curiosity of these people were soon satisfied, for none of them came on board the ship. When they saw us under sail, they came off to us in a number of canoes, and gave us many proofs of their extreme honesty, which rather surprized us, as we had lately been among a most thievish race.

The people of this island are very ugly and ill-proportioned, dark in their complexion, and of a diminutive size. Their heads are long, their faces flat, and their features very much resemble those of a baboon; their beards are of a dark colour, strong and bushy. The men go quite naked, except a wrapper round their waists. The women we saw were as ugly as the men. Their faces, heads, and shoulders were painted red. Some of them had a bag round their shoulders, in which they carry their children; and they wear a sort of red petticoat.

petticoat
kept a
bracel
bent o
shells.
half lo
pierced
their
friend
spears.
with, a
try mu
We let
the isla
doubt
The ha
Sandwi
Conti
fourth o
of whic
circumf
We ther
passed a
pherd's
We disc
there we
eighty fa
sift of o
could n
island w
we calle
largest S
Severa
island, a
shore.
surface v
ably div
not appr
west, as

petticoat. We saw but few of them, as they generally kept at a distance when we were on shore. They wear bracelets, and ear-rings made of tortoise-shell, hogs tuks bent circular round the right wrist, and rings made of shells. They run a piece of white stone, an inch and a half long, through the bridge of their noses, which are pierced for that purpose. They sprinkle water over their heads, and present a green branch, as tokens of friendship. Their weapons are bows, arrows, clubs and spears. They seem unlike all the natives we have met with, and speak quite a different language. Their country must be fertile, but the fruits are not remarkably good. We left them a dog and a bitch, they having none on the island, and as they seemed very fond of them, we doubt not but they will take care to preserve them. The harbour is a very good one, and we named it Port Sandwich.

Continuing our course from hence, on the twenty-fourth of July we discovered several small islands, one of which we came very near. It is about 12 miles in circumference, and has three high peaked hills upon it. We therefore named it Three Hill Island. We then passed a group of small islands, which we called Shepherd's Isles, in honour of Dr Shepherd of Cambridge. We discerned people in every one of these islands; but there were no soundings near them at one hundred and eighty fathoms. We found the southern lands to consist of one large island, the extremities of which we could not see. On the north side of this extensive island we saw three or four smaller ones. One of these we called Montague, another Hinchinbrook and the largest Sandwich, in honour of the earl of Sandwich.

Several people came down as we passed Montague island, and seemed to invite us in a friendly manner on shore. We saw some likewise on Sandwich island, the surface whereof appeared very delightful, being agreeably diversified with woods and lawns. As we could not approach it at this time, we steered more to the west, as there appeared a bay to run up in that quarter, and

tified such as attempted to prevent it. The Captain gave this person several articles, and by signs signified his want of fresh water; upon which a little was presently presented to him in a bamboo, and having made signs for something to eat, they brought him yams and coconuts. Their behaviour was in every respect agreeable, yet we did not much like their appearance, as they were all armed with bows, arrows, clubs, spears, and darts. On this account we kept a good look out, and watched particularly the motions of the chief, who wanted us to haul the boat on shore. He renewed his signs for this to be done, and then held a conference with some of the natives. One circumstance appeared rather suspicious, he refused some spike nails that we offered him. Captain Cook immediately returned to the boat, upon which they attempted by force to detain us. Very fortunately the gang-board happened to be laid out for the Captain to return into the boat; this some of the natives unhooked from the stern as we were putting off; they then hooked it to the head of the boat, and attempted to haul her on shore. Some of them were daring enough to take the oars out of a few of our people's hands. They in some measure desisted, on Captain Cook's presenting a musquet, but went on again in an instant, seemingly determined to haul the boat on shore, and to detain us. The chief was at the head of this party, and others stood at a small distance behind, with stones, darts, and other missile weapons, ready to support them. Our own safety was now become our only consideration, for signs and threats had not the effect we expected. The Captain therefore resolved to make the chief suffer alone, a victim to his own treachery; but at this critical moment his piece did not go off. This increased their insolence, and they began to assault us with stones, darts, and arrows. We were now ordered to fire. The first discharge threw them into confusion; but they were very reluctantly driven off the beach by the second. After this they continued a kind of bush fighting, by throwing stones from behind

trees, and sometimes a dart or two. Four of them lay to all appearance dead on the shore, but two of them afterwards crawled in among the bushes. It was a fortunate circumstance for these assailants, that more than half our musquets missed fire, otherwise we should have done much more execution among them. One of our crew was wounded in the cheek with a dart, which entered near two inches; and an arrow struck Mr Gilbert's breast, but it hardly penetrated the skin.

Having returned, after this skirmish was ended, on board, the Captain ordered the anchor to be weighed, with a view of proceeding with the ship to the landing place. While this was doing, several of the natives appeared on a low rocky point, displaying the two oars which they had taken from us in the scuffle. We thought they were desirous of returning the oars, and that their manner of behaving might be a token of submission: nevertheless, that they might understand the effect of our great guns, we fired a four pound shot at them, which, though it fell short, terrified them so much, that we saw no more of them, and when they went away they left the two oars standing up against the bushes.

By this time our anchor was at the bow, when a breeze sprung up at N. upon which we set our sails, and plyed out of the bay, for here we could not supply our wants with conveniency, and in case a better place could not be found to the S. we had it in our power at any time to return hither.

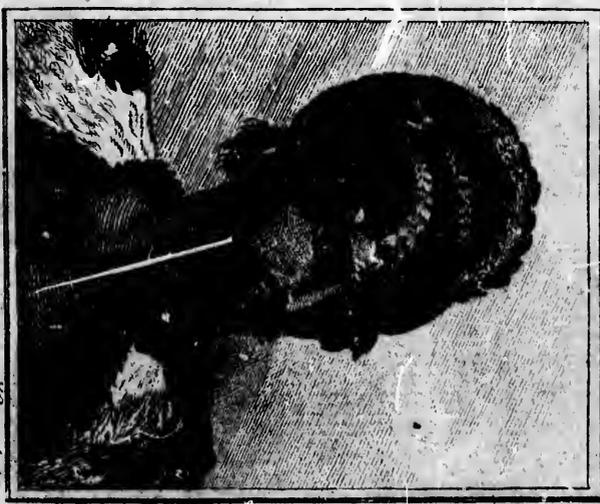
The natives of this island are of a middle size, regular features, and pretty well made. They are of a different race from those of Mallicolæ, as well in their persons, as their language. Their complexions are naturally dark; yet they paint their faces, some with black, and others with red pigment. Their hair is curly, but somewhat woolly. The women were not very inviting, being rather ugly. They wear a petticoat made of a plant like palm leaves; and the men go in a manner naked, having only a belt and wrapper round their waist.

em lay
f them
was a
t more
should
One
a dart,
y struck
e skin.
ded, on
eighed,
standing
ves ap-
vo oars
. We
ars, and
a of sub-
and the
shot at
hem fo
en they
against

when a
ails, and
ply our
e could
at any

regu-
a dif-
eir per-
natu-
black,
y, but
invi-
made
man-
their
waist.

A MAN & WOMAN OF SANDWICH ISLANDS.



Cook's Voyages

W. G. S. S.

waist.

their p

We saw

On 7

we clear

island.

pretty c

very few

better k

able.

these tw

treacher

N. E. p

of 18 d.

terminat

leagues

S. E. w

appeared

about ten

east end

we saw

fight of

S. and ab

had pass

fight, and

to S. 87

night we

bling noi

of smoke

We no

small inle

Two arm

were sent

and off, to

that migh

natives on

canoes; a

launched f

Cooper m

waist. They live in houses covered with thatch, and their plantations are laid out by line, and fenced round. We saw no canoes in any part of the island.

On Thursday the 4th of August, at two o'clock P. M. we cleared the bay, and steered for the south end of the island. We discovered on the S. W. side of the head a pretty deep bay; its shores low, and the land appeared very fertile, but being exposed to the S. E. winds, until better known, we think that on the N. W. side preferable. The promontory or peninsula, which disjoins these two bays we named Traitor's Head, from the treacherous behaviour of its inhabitants; it forms the N. E. point of the island, and is situated in the latitude of 18 d. 43 m. S. and in 169 d. 28 m. E. longitude. It terminates in a saddle hill, which may be seen 16 or 18 leagues off at sea. We continued our course to the S. S. E. when the new island we had before discovered, appeared over the S. E. point of one near us, distant about ten leagues. Leaving the last, we steered for the east end of the former, being directed by a great light we saw upon it. On the 5th, at sun rise we came in sight of an island, being high table land, bearing E. by S. and also discovered another little low isle which we had passed in the night. Traitor's Head was still in sight, and the island to the S. extended from S. 7 d. W. to S. 87 d. W. distant four miles. The light seen in the night we now found to have been a volcano. A rumbling noise was heard, and it threw up great quantities of smoke and fire.

We now steered for the island; and discovered a small inlet which had the appearance of a good harbour. Two armed boats, under the command of Lieut. Cooper, were sent off in order to sound, while the ship stood on and off, to be ready to follow or to afford any assistance that might be required. We observed a number of the natives on the east point of the entrance, also several canoes; and when our boats entered the harbour they launched some, but came not near. At this time Lieut. Cooper made the signal for anchorage, and we stood in

with the ship. The wind having left us when we were within the entrance, we were obliged to drop anchor, in four fathoms water. The boats were now sent out to find a better anchorage; and while we were thus employed, many of the natives came in parties to the sea side all armed, some swam off to us, others came in canoes. At first they seemed afraid of us, and kept at a distance, but by degrees waxed bolder, and at length came under our stern, and made some exchanges. Those in one of the first canoes threw towards us some cocoa-nuts. The Captain went out in a boat, picked them up, and in return gave them several articles. Others were induced by this to come along-side, who behaved in a most insolent manner. They attempted to tear our flag from the staff, would have knocked the rings from the rudder, and we had no sooner thrown out the buoys of the anchor from the boats than they got hold of them. We fired a few musquets in the air, of which they took no notice, but a four pounder alarmed them so much, that they quitted their canoes, and took to the water. But finding themselves unhurt, they got again into their canoes, flourished their weapons, halloed in defiance, and went again to the buoys, but a few musquetoon shot soon dispersed them. They all retired in haste, and we sat down to dinner, unmolested. In the interval of those transactions, an old man, who seemed to be amicably disposed, came several times, in a small canoe between us and the shore, bringing off each time cocoa-nuts and yams, for which he took in exchange whatever we offered him. Another was in the gangway when the great gun was fired, after which we could not prevail on him to stay. In the evening we landed at the head of the harbour, with a party of men well armed. The natives made not the least opposition, though we had one body on our right, and another on our left, all armed. We distributed among the old people some presents of cloth and medals, and filled two casks with fresh water, an article we gave them to understand we much wanted. We got in return plenty of

cocoa-

cocoa
their
of de
but b
cific.
of all
little v
we re
schem
Satu
landing
natives
a supp
ed. W
the nat
amount
two div
each sid
off, at ti
ing us c
any thin
always h
seemed t
mention
with a v
to establi
were in
made hin
the mean
versation
request k
nor did v
a warlike
three me
ed very c
with it th
weapon
sent dow
got possi

cocoa-nuts, but could not prevail on them to part with their weapons, which they held constantly in a posture of defence. The old man was in one of these parties, but by his behaviour, we judged his temper to be pacific. We thought, by their pressing so much, in spite of all our endeavours to keep them at a distance, that little would be wanting to induce them to attack us; but we re-embarked very soon, and thus, probably, their scheme was disconcerted.

Saturday the 6th, we brought the ship as near the landing-place as possible, that we might overawe the natives, and cover the party on shore, who were to get a supply of wood and water, which we much wanted. While we were upon this business, we observed the natives assembling from all parts, all armed, to the amount of some thousands, who formed themselves into two divisions, as they did the preceding evening, on each side the landing-place. At intervals a canoe came off, at times conducted by one, two or three men, bringing us cocoa-nuts, &c. for which they did not require any thing in return, though we took care they should always have something: but their principal intention seemed to be, to invite us ashore. The old man before mentioned, came off to us several times, and the Captain with a view of making him understand, that he wanted to establish a friendly intercourse, took his weapons that were in the canoes, and threw them overboard, and made him a present of a piece of cloth. He understood the meaning of this, for we saw him frequently in conversation with his countrymen, to whom he made our request known, going first to one party, then to another, nor did we afterwards see him with his weapons, or in a warlike manner. Soon after a canoe, in which were three men, came under our stern, one of whom behaved very outrageously, brandishing his club, and striking with it the ship's side; at last he offered to exchange his weapon for a string of beads, and other trifles; these we sent down to him by a line, of which he had no sooner got possession, than he made off, without delivering his club.

club. We were not sorry for this, as it afforded us an opportunity of shewing the people on shore the effect of our fire arms. We therefore without hesitation, complimented this fellow with the contents of a fowling piece, loaded with small shot, and when the others were out of the reach of musquet shot, we fired some musquetoons, or wall pieces, at them, which made them take to the water. But all this seemed to make very little impression on the people ashore, who began to halloo, and seemingly made a joke of it.

Having moored the ship, with her broad-side to the landing-place, and scarcely musquet shot off, we planted our artillery in such a manner as to command the whole harbour, and then embarked with a party of seamen, supported by the marines, and rowed to the landing-place, where we have before observed the natives were drawn up in two divisions. The intermediate space between them was about forty yards, in which were laid a few plantains, two or three roots, and a yam. Between these and the water, four small reeds were stuck upright in the sand, in a line at right angles to the shore, for what purpose we could not learn. They remained here for some days. By these the old man stood, and two companions, who by various signs invited us to land, but we thought these a decoy, and looked something like the trap we had like to have been caught in at the last island. We made signs for the divisions to retire back, but to these they paid not the least regard, their number every moment was augmented, and, except two or three old men, not one unarmed. From all these circumstances we concluded they meant to attack us as soon as we landed; but this we wished to avoid, as many of them must have been killed or wounded, and we could not expect to come off without some damage. We thought it therefore better to frighten them into a more peaceable behaviour, and therefore a musquet was fired over the party on our right, which for about a minute had the desired effect, but they soon returned to their daring behaviour.

The

The
three
imme
right
ground
tives
came
them.
and th
ours fi
present
on the
belong
threw
notion
always
We too
be Paov
we wan
ly confe
ber. A
we put
with a v
wanted.
returned
In the aft
the launc
with the
of mullet
thirty of
trusty frie
the only
night the
west of us
tended by
by a heav
noise was
mines; th
the air wa

The ship was then ordered, by signal, to fire two or three great guns, which presently dispersed them. We immediately landed, and marked out the limits on the right and left, by a line. Our old friend, who stood his ground, we rewarded with a present. Some of the natives returned, with a more friendly aspect. Many came without their weapons, but the greatest part with them. We made signs that they should lay them down, and they gave us to understand, that we must lay down ours first. Thus both sides stood under arms, and the presents we made to the old people had little influence on their conduct. Many were afraid to touch what belonged to us, and climbing the cocoa-nut trees, they threw us down the nuts, but they seemed to have no notion of exchanging one thing for another, though we always took care they should have a compensation. We took the old man (whose name we now found to be Paowang) to the woods, and made him understand we wanted to cut down some trees, to which he readily consented, provided fruit trees were not of the number. At the same time we cut down some trees, which we put into our boats, and a few small casks of water, with a view of letting the natives see what we chiefly wanted. Thus far matters were pretty well settled: we returned on board to dinner, and they all dispersed. In the afternoon a fishing party went out. We loaded the launch with water, and, having made three hauls with the seine, caught upwards of three hundred pounds of mullet and other fish. During this time not above thirty of the natives appeared, among whom was our trusty friend Paowang, who made us a present of a pig, the only one we got at this place. Throughout the night the volcano, which was about four miles to the west of us, emitted vast quantities of fire and smoke, attended by a violent rumbling noise: this was increased by a heavy shower of rain, which fell at this time. The noise was like that of thunder, or the blowing up of mines; the flames were seen to rise above the hills; and the air was loaded with ashes, with which every thing was

was covered. They resembled a kind of fine sand, or rather stone ground to powder, and the dust was not a little troublesome to the eyes.

On Sunday the 7th, the natives began to assemble again, early in the morning, with their weapons, as before, but not in such numbers: notwithstanding this, we landed in order to get water, and cut wood. We found most of the old people disposed to be our friends, but the younger being daring and insolent, obliged us to stand to our arms. Mr Edgcombe, one of the lieutenants who commanded the party, fired, and wounded a man with a swan-shot, after which the others behaved better, and when our people embarked they all retired in a peaceable manner. While we were at dinner an old man came on board, and after having examined several parts of the ship, returned to his friends on shore. We were now on a tolerable footing with such of the natives who lived in the neighbourhood, who only made their appearance, so that a serjeant's guard was thought sufficient for the protection of the wood and water parties. Some of our people had left an ax on the beach or in the woods, which Paowang returned to us; also a few other articles which had been lost through negligence. The natives invited some of our people to go home with them, on condition that they would strip themselves naked as they were; a proof of their not harbouring a design of robbing them, whatever other they might have.

On the 8th, early in the morning, the launch was sent under the protection of a party of marines in another boat, to take in wood, water, and ballast, when the natives seemed pretty well reconciled to us. On the 9th, our people were employed about the same business, and Captain Cook was received very courteously by the natives, though armed, insomuch that there was no longer any occasion to mark out the limits by a line, seeing they observed them without this precaution. He prevailed on a young man, named Wha-a-gou, to accompany him on board, but nothing in the ship seem-

ed to cr
he calle
signifies
bitch th
with on
would c
pretty h
of this y
his safet
on speak
on shore
nuts, an
ed ashor
his frien
understo
but on t
unwilling
to sit do
tlemen p
ness, and
them ba
they wer
but even
were wa
present c
though t
haps this
present a
tain, ano
Captain p
return fo
gou and
seemed to
us in retu
desired to
tions. V
quiries, t
The nati
ing isles.

ed to engage his attention. The goats, dogs, and cats, he called by the same name, which, in his language, signifies hogs. He seemed more fond of a dog and bitch than of any other animals, and we presented him with one of each. He sat down to dinner with us, but would only just taste our salt pork; however he eat pretty heartily of yam, and drank a glass of wine. Some of this young man's friends were probably doubtful of his safety, and therefore followed him in a canoe, but on speaking to them out of the cabin window, they went on shore, and soon returned with a cock, some cocoanuts, and a sugar cane. After dinner he was conducted ashore loaded with presents. Upon landing some of his friends took Captain Cook by the hand, and, as we understood, would have led him to their habitations, but on the way, they made a sudden stop, and were unwilling he should proceed. The Captain was desired to sit down. During this interval several of our gentlemen passed us, at which they expressed great uneasiness, and importuned the Captain so much to order them back, that he was obliged to comply. Indeed they were not only jealous of our going up the country, but even along the shore of the harbour. While we were waiting here, our friend Paowang brought us a present of fruit and roots, by a party of twenty men, though they might all have been carried by two; perhaps this might be done with the view of making the present appear the greater; for one had a bunch of plantain, another a yam, a third a cocoa-nut, &c. The Captain paid these porters, though the present was in return for one he had made in the morning. Wha-agou and his friends were still for detaining us, and seemed to wait with impatience for something to give us in return for the dogs, but night approaching, we desired to depart; and they complied with our solicitations. We now learnt, by means of Mr Forster's enquiries, that the proper name of this island is Tanna. The natives also told us the names of other neighbouring isles. That we touched at last is called Erromango; the

the small one which we saw the morning we landed here Immer; the table island to the east, discovered at the same time, Erronan, or Footoona: and one that lies to the S. E. Annattom; all which islands are to be seen from Tanna. It is a little remarkable, that the natives of this island were more scrupulous in taking any thing from the sailors, than those of any other nation, and never would touch with their bare hands what was given them, but always received it between green leaves, which they afterwards tied up and carried upon the ends of their clubs; and if any of our seamen touched their skin they always rubbed the part with a green leaf. When these people make a wonder at any thing, they cry, Hebow, and shake their right hands. They wear bracelets, like as the Indians of Venemous Bay, in which they stick their hair pricker, and likewise their slings, with which they throw their javelins: and it is astonishing with what dexterity and force some of them will hit a mark. One of them, in the presence of the first lieutenant, shot a fish as it swam along in the sea, at the distance of twenty-six yards, with a bow and arrow, which fish the lieutenant carried on board with the arrow sticking in his body, as a proof of what he had seen performed. But notwithstanding their delicacy and skill as marksmen, they gave us to understand that they eat one another; and one day, when the inhabitants about the bay had marched forth armed, on an expedition, to a distant part of the island, those that remained invited us to feast upon a man whom they had barbiqued, which invitation our gentlemen refused with the utmost disgust. It has been said, that no nation could be cannibals, had they other flesh besides human to eat, or did not want food; but we cannot ascribe the savage custom of these people to necessity, since the island abounds with plenty of hogs, fowls, vegetables, and fruit. While some of the people was employed in searching for ballast, they discovered water issuing from the crevices of a rock, hot enough to draw tea; which circumstance led to the discovery of some hot springs, at the

the foot
place th
the fin
enough
main lo
had bee
through
surgeon
so hot
first plu
the sole
of the
relief.

On V
some of
country
They fa
several
by this
ed so w
of disp
after we
they be
opportu
ed to b
from p
howev
might,
their r
boys, h
cutters
on du
repair
few da
for the
three
with
it off,
exact

the foot of the cliff, below high-water mark. In one place the waters were so hot, that there was no bearing the finger in them: in another they were just hot enough to bear to plunge the whole body, but not remain long therein. Two of the ship's company, who had been troubled with rheumatic complaints, at times, throughout the voyage, went accompanied with the surgeon, to one of these springs, but found the stones so hot that they could not stand upon them, without first plunging in some of their cold garments, to keep the soles of their feet from touching them; but the effect of these waters was found to be only a temporary relief.

On Wednesday the 10th, Mr Wales accompanied by some of the officers, proceeded for the first time into the country, and met with civil treatment from the natives. They saw in the course of this and another excursion, several fine plantations of plantains, sugar-canes, &c. and by this time, the natives in our neighbourhood, appeared so well reconciled to us, that they expressed no marks of displeasure at our rambling shooting parties. But after we had been several days taking in wood and water, they began again to be troublesome, watching every opportunity to level their arrows at the guard, and seemed to be restrained only by the fear of their musquets from proceeding to extremity. It is more than probable, however, that an act of violence on the part of our men, might, by a wanton use of their fire-arms, have caused their resentment; for in the afternoon of this day, a few boys, having thrown two or three stones at the wood-cutters, they were fired at by the petty officers present on duty. Having occasion for some large timber to repair the decays of the ship, orders had been given a few days before, to cut down a tree of vast growth; and for the convenience of getting it aboard, to saw it into three pieces. This tree so divided, the natives eyed with pleasure, not suspecting our men intended to carry it off, but to leave it in compliment to them, as it suited exactly their ideas of constructing just double the num-

ber of canoes. To the cutting down and sawing the trees the natives made no opposition; but when they saw the sailors employed in rolling down the body of the tree to the water's edge, they could not help looking furly; and one of them, probably more interested than the rest, was frequently seen to offer his spear at the labourers, but was restrained for fear of the guard: at length he watched his opportunity, and, starting from behind a bush, was leveling an arrow at the commanding officer, when he was discovered, and shot dead. The ball tore his arm to pieces, and entered his side. His companions instantly carried off the body, and laid it in the wood, where the ship's surgeon went to examine it, but found the man totally deprived of life. Capt. Cook was much displeas'd with the conduct of these officers, and took measures to prevent a wanton use of fire-arms for the future. The ship's company were now permitted to go ashore only by turns, for the preservation of their health; and the Captain knowing the natives wanted nothing so much as an opportunity to revenge the death of their companions, strictly bin'd them never to walk alone; nor to stray more than 100 yards from the guard.

On Thursday the 11th, during the night, the volcano was very troublesome, and threw out great quantities of fire and smoke, with a most tremendous noise; and sometimes we saw great stones thrown into the air. In several parts of the harbour, places were found from whence a sulphureous smell issued, and the ground about these was very hot. Mr Forster and his botanizing party, on one side of the harbour, fell in with our friend Paowang's house. Most of the articles he had received from us were seen hanging about the bushes and trees near his dwelling. On the 12th, the volcano was more furious than ever, and we were much molested with the ashes. Some of our gentlemen attempted to ascend a hill at some distance, with an intent of observing the volcano more distinctly; but they were obliged to retreat precipitately, the ground under them being so hot, that

tha
fine
was
of t
for
hold
quir
the
The
and
of m
we s
and c
the v
stead
our fel
trick.

On
dine w
him ev
ticles, h
so a tra
ments,
very tr
the gre
which h
endeav
took on
already
which w
tion.
ment re
its rising
of white
and mo
crust, ha
stance ta
heat, an
sight on

that they might as well have walked over an oven: the smell too of the air was intolerably sulphureous, which was occasioned by a smoke that issued from the fissures of the earth; yet in this smoke the natives seek a remedy for cutaneous disorders. Mr Forster observing a man holding a child over the smoke, had the curiosity to enquire the reason, who made him understand, by shewing the child's eruptions, that it was troubled with the itch. The rain that fell this day was a mixture of water, sand, and earth; so that we had, properly speaking, showers of mire. The natives pretended to be unwilling, that we should this day go far up the country by ourselves, and offered their services to conduct us to the mouth of the volcano. We readily accepted their offer, but instead of shewing us the way to the place, we found ourselves near the harbour before we discovered the trick.

On Saturday the 13th, Paowang came on board to dine with us. We took this opportunity of shewing him every part of the ship, and a variety of trading articles, hoping he might see something that he liked, and so a traffic be carried on with the natives for refreshments, of which what we had hitherto obtained were very trifling. But Paowang beheld every thing with the greatest indifference, except a wooden sand-box, of which he took some notice. On the 14th, a party of us endeavoured to get a nearer view of the volcano, and took our rout by the way of one of these hot places already mentioned. In the way we dug a hole, into which was put a thermometer of Fahrenheit's construction. The mercury rose to 100 degrees; but the instrument remained in the hole near three minutes without its rising or falling. At this place the earth was a kind of white clay, and had a sulphureous smell. It was soft and moist under the surface, over which was a thin dry crust, having upon it some sulphur, and a vitriolic substance tasting like allum. The place affected most by the heat, and where we made the experiment, was not above eight or ten yards square. Near this was a fig-tree which

which seemed like its situation. We proceeded up the hill through a country entirely covered with plants, shrubs, and trees, infomuch that the bread-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees, were in a manner choaked up. Here and there we met with a few people, a house or two and some plantations in different states; one appearing of long standing; another lately cleared; and several just ready for planting. The clearing a piece of ground must be a work of much time and labour, seeing their working tools, though the same as those used in the Society Isles, are inferior to them; nevertheless their method is judicious, and as expeditious as well can be. They dig under the roots of the large trees, and there burn the branches, plants, and small shrubs. In some parts, the soil is a rich black mould; in others a kind of compost formed of decayed vegetables and the ashes of the volcano. We now came to a plantation where we saw a man at work, who offered to be our guide. We had not walked far before we came to the junction of two roads, in one of which stood a man with a sling and stone, which he would not lay down till a musquet was pointed at him; he seemed, however, determined to dispute the road with us, and partly gained his point, for our guide led us another way. The other man followed, halloing, as we supposed, for a reinforcement, and, indeed, we were presently joined by others of the natives, among whom was a young woman with a club in her hand. These people conducted us to the brow of a hill, and pointed to a road leading down to the harbour. But not chusing to take this, we returned to that we had left, and here our guide refused to go any farther with us. Having ascended another ridge, we saw other hills between us and the volcano, which seemed as far off as at our first setting out. We therefore resolved to return, and just as we were about so doing, we were met by 20 or 30 people, assembled as we thought to oppose our advancing into the country, for when they saw us returning, they suffered us to go on unmolested, and by the way regaled us with a variety

of

of
br
pe
to
no
ran
a fr
ten
wit
thei
thei
the
be jo
deav
natur
we co
them
We
were
unnat
plant
as the
this co
him fo
party,
having
convers
sidered
they di
much su
It is a m
assured,
is plain,
opinions
much acc
ed, it is r
have been
they had

of fruits. What we did not eat on the spot, they brought down the hill with us. Thus we found these people courteous and hospitable, when not prompted to a contrary conduct by jealousy; for which they were not to blame, if we consider their rude state, and ignorance of our real design. This indeed was to pay them a friendly visit, but considering all the circumstances attending this, might they not reasonably suppose, notwithstanding fair appearances, that we came to invade their country? Did we not enter their ports, without their daring to oppose? Did we not effect a landing by the superiority of our arms? Would they not, therefore, be jealous of such intruding strangers? When we endeavoured to advance into their country, they might naturally form unfavourable notions of us; especially if we consider how often they are at war both among themselves and with their neighbours.

We must here observe, that some of our gentlemen were of opinion, that these people were addicted to an unnatural passion, Mr Forster's man, who carried his plant bag, having been once or twice attempted: but as the carrying of bundles is the office of the women of this country, others thought, the natives might mistake him for a woman. This man was to-day one of our party, and as he followed the Captain down the hill, having his bag as usual, we plainly understood by the conversation and actions of the natives, that they considered him as a female; and when, by some means, they discovered their mistake, they exclaimed, with much surprize, Erramange! Erramange! It is a man! It is a man! Every one now perceived, and was well assured, they had before mistaken his sex; and hence it is plain, how liable we are to form false conjectures and opinions of a people, with whose language we are not much acquainted: for had we not now been undeceived, it is not to be doubted, but that these people would have been charged with the odious practice of which they had through ignorance been suspected.

In the evening, a party of us again walked into the country on the other side of the harbour, where we met from the natives, among whom was Paowang, friendly treatment. They discovered a readiness to oblige us in every thing in their power. We entered the village we had visited on the 9th instant, containing about twenty houses, built like the roof of our thatched dwellings in England, with the walls taken away, and open at both ends; but others are partly closed with reeds, and all were covered with palm thatch. Some are forty feet long, and sixteen in breadth. Besides these, we saw other mean hovels. One of these was separated from the others by a reed fence, and we understood a corpse was deposited therein. At one end of the hut hung a basket, with a piece of roasted yam, and some leaves quite fresh. We had a strong inclination to see the inside, but the man peremptorily refused our request. He would neither remove the mats with which one end of the hut was closed up, nor suffer us to do it; and shewed an unwillingness to permit us to look into the basket. He had two or three locks of human hair tied by a string round his neck, and a woman present had several about her neck. We would have purchased them but they gave us to understand by signs, that they were part of the hair of the deceased, and, on that account, they could not part with them. This custom is similar to that among the natives of Otaheite and New Zealand; the former make Tamau of the hair of their departed friends, and the latter ear-rings and necklaces of their teeth. Not far from most of the large houses, the stems of four cocoa-nut trees were fixed upright in the ground, in a square, about three feet from each other, for the purpose of hanging cocoa-nuts to dry. Near most of them is also a large tree or two, whose branches afford an agreeable retreat from the heat of the scorching sun. This part of the island is well cultivated, abounding with plantains, roots, and fruit trees. One of our people weighed a yam which exceeded fifty-five pounds. The trees too are of an extra-

tra-

traordi
of the
waste,
sulphu
the eye
Tanna,
could v
On l
on boa
below :
woodin
ting up
brooms
as if the
long vo
a pigeon
Mr For
tree. E
the suga
and five
designed
destructi
Round t
rats may
ed as thi
On the
and, by
knew of
do for ou
examine
directed
had been
jection,
time was
and befo
brought
not pleas
explained
piece of
Vol. I.—

traordinary size: but a wide circle in the interior part of the island, discovered nothing to the eye but a dreary waste, covered with cinders, and tainting the air with sulphur. Other surrounding islands looked pleasant to the eye; but according to the report of the natives of Tanna, abounded in nothing of which they themselves could want.

On Monday the 15th, preparations were continued on board to set sail, the ship was smoaked above and below: the hold fresh stowed; the ballast shifted; the wooding and watering were finished; the rigging setting up; and a few hands only were on shore making brooms; in short, every thing was placed in such order, as if the ship had been but just fitted out at home for a long voyage. One of the botanical party this day shot a pigeon, in the claw of which was a wild nut-meg. Mr Forster endeavoured, without success, to find the tree. During their excursion, they observed in most of the sugar plantations deep holes dug, four feet deep, and five in diameter, which, on enquiry, we found were designed as traps to catch rats in. These animals, so destructive to sugar canes, are here in great plenty. Round the edge of these pits, as a decoy, and that the rats may be more liable to tumble in, the canes are planted as thick as possible.

On the 16th, we found our tiller very much damaged, and, by neglect, we had not a spare one aboard. We knew of but one tree in the neighbourhood that would do for our purpose. The carpenter was sent ashore to examine it, and upon his report a party of men were directed to cut it down, after the consent of the natives had been obtained. They did not make the least objection, and our men went instantly to work. Much time was necessary to cut it down, as the tree was large; and before they had finished their work, word was brought to the Captain, that our friend Paowang was not pleased. Paowang was sent for, and our necessity explained to him. We then made him a present of a piece of cloth and a dog, which readily obtained his

consent, and the voices of those that were with him in our favour. Having thus obtained our point, we conducted our friend on board to dinner; after which we went with him ashore to pay a visit to an old chief, who was said to be the king of the island; though as Paowang took little notice of him, we doubted the fact. His name was Geogy. He had a cheerful open countenance, though he was old, and wore round his waist a broad red and white chequered belt. His son was with him, who could not be less than fifty years old. At this time a great concourse of people from distant parts were assembled near the watering place. The behaviour of many was friendly; of others daring and insolent; which we did not think prudent to resent, as our stay was nearly at an end.

On Wednesday the 17th, old Geogy and his son, with several of his friends, dined with us on board the ship, every part of which they viewed with uncommon attention and surprize. They made a hearty dinner on a pudding made of plantains and greens; but would hardly taste our salt beef and pork. In the afternoon they were conducted ashore by the Captain, after he had presented them with a hatchet, some medals, and a spike nail.

On the 18th, the Captain and Mr Forster tried, with Fahrenheit's thermometer, when the tide was out, the head of one of the hot springs; and where the water bubbled out of the sand from under the rock, at the S. W. corner of the harbour, the mercury rose to 202 degrees. It is an opinion with philosophers, that volcanos must be on the summits of the highest hills; yet, this volcano is not on the highest part of the ridge, but on the S. E. side of it; and some of the hills on this island are more than double the height of that on which the volcano is, and close to it. Nor is it less remarkable, that in wet or moist weather, the volcano is more violent in its eruptions. We must here content ourselves with stating facts: the philosophical reasoning on these phæno-

phæno
talents

On
tiller w
the gua
off the
the till
good n
landing
tributed
large lo
at one
cause fi
just bef
were ab
obeyed
his arro
self in d
of a bra
equally
asperate
people f
off we c
with th
they fo
ed, and
short ri
this inc
bent th
The na
they br
at our
to dinn
mong
On
getting
veered
therefo
anchor

phenomena, we leave to men of more abilities, whose talents may lay in this line.

On Friday the 19th, we prepared for sailing, as the tiller was finished; but the wind being unfavourable, the guard and a party of men were sent ashore, to bring off the remainder of the tree from which we had cut the tiller. The Captain went with them, and found a good number of the natives collected together near the landing-place, among whom various articles were distributed. At the time our people were getting some large logs into the boat, the centry presented his piece at one of the natives, and, without the least apparent cause fired at and killed him. A few of the natives had just before advanced within the limits, to see what we were about, but upon being ordered back, they readily obeyed. The centry pretended, that a man had laid his arrow across his bow, so that he apprehended himself in danger; but this had been frequently done, out of a bravado, to shew they were armed, and prepared equally with ourselves. Captain Cook was highly exasperated at this rascal's rash conduct; and most of the people fled with the utmost precipitation. As they ran off we observed one man to fall; and the Captain went with the surgeon, who was sent for, to the man, whom they found expiring. His left arm was much shattered, and from hence the ball had entered his body by the short ribs, one of which was broken. What rendered this incident the more affecting was, that the man who bent the bow was not shot, but one who stood by him. The natives were thrown into such consternation, that they brought abundance of fruit, which they laid down at our feet. They all retired when we returned aboard to dinner, and only a few appeared in the afternoon, among whom were Paowang, and Wha-a-gou.

On Saturday the 20th, the wind was favourable for getting out of the harbour; for during the night it had veered round to the S. E. At four o'clock A. M. we therefore began to unmoor, and, having weighed our anchor, put to sea. As we sailed we heard a noise, not
unlike

unlike psalm singing. It was now too late to enquire into the cause; probably the natives were performing some religious acts. We thought that the east point of the harbour was sacred to religion, for some of our people had attempted to go to this point, and were prevented by the natives. They were always jealous of our proceeding into the country beyond certain limits: they might be apprehensive of an invasion, and that we meant to take their country from them. All we can say is, that no part of our conduct justified such a conclusion. We never gave them the least molestation; nor did we touch any part of their property, not even their wood and water, without having first obtained their consent. Even the cocoa-nuts hanging over the heads of the workmen, were as safe as those in the middle of the island. We caught a large quantity of fish, and were tolerably well supplied by the natives with fruit and roots; and should certainly have obtained more refreshments; had we had any thing on board that suited their taste. Our cloth was of no use to those who go naked, and they had not any knowledge of the utility of iron. Though the people of this island, after feeling the effects of the European fire arms, were peaceable, they were not in general friendly; nor were they like the Indians in Society Isles, fond of iron: they wished for some of the tools with which they saw our seamen cut down wood; but, except an adze or two, they never attempted to steal any thing. The coopers left their casks during the night unguarded; nor were they under any apprehensions about their cloaths, which they suffered to lie carelessly here and there while they were at work. These people discovered none of that disposition to thievery which it has been said every Indian inherits naturally. In their course of trade, they totally disregarded beads and baubles, and seemed to prefer Rotterdam fish-hooks, and turtle-shell, to every thing else that was offered them. They would not permit the sailors to have any communication with their wives; nor were they easily persuaded to part with their arms

arms of
freely
but on
they fe
This
cocoa-
like a
like an
fruit, co
nor so g
are of a
here a f
latter di
our exc
with for
which v
many c
at any i
to subst
are not
plenty o
ing tackl
except o
where th
within th
They w
with the
with our
inhabite
and from
observed
fizes, an
sewed to
by a thin
the band
yard and
the larg
gers. T
These

arms

arms on any account. The produce of the island they freely parted with, not requiring any thing in return; but on whatever was bestowed labour in the construction, they set a high value.

This island of Tanna produces abundance of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, yams, a kind of potatoe, a fruit like a nectarine, wild figs, sugar-cane, and a fruit not unlike an orange, but which is never eaten. The bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and plantains, are neither so plentiful, nor so good, as at Otaheite; but sugar-canes and yams are of a superior quality, and much larger. We saw here a few fowls, and a great number of hogs, but the latter did not fall to our lot; and we did not see in all our excursions any other domestic animals. We met with some small birds, with a most beautiful plumage, which we had never seen before. Our botanists found many curious plants and trees; as great a variety as at any island we had visited. The inhabitants appear to subsist chiefly on the productions of the land, and are not much indebted to the sea, though there are plenty of fish on the coast. We never found any fishing tackle among them, nor saw any one out a fishing, except on the shoals, or along the shores of the harbour, where they would strike with a dart such fish as came within their reach, and in this art they were very expert. They were surprized at our method of catching fish with the seine, and, we believe, were not well pleased with our success. The small isle of Immer was chiefly inhabited by fishermen, and the canoes we saw pass to and from the isle, and the east point of the harbour, we observed were fishing canoes. These were of unequal sizes, and composed of several pieces of wood clumsily sewed together. The joints are covered on the outside by a thin batten champered off at the edges, over which the bandages pass. The sail is latteen, extended to a yard and boom, and hoisted to a short mast. Some of the large canoes have two sails, and all of them outriggers. They are navigated either by paddles or sails.

These people have little resemblance or affinity to
those

those of the Friendly Islands, and those of Mallicollo, except in their hair, which is much like what the people of the latter island have. The colours are black and brown, growing to a tolerable length and curly. They part it into small locks, which they cue round with the rind of a slender plant, down to about an inch of the ends. Each of these locks is somewhat thicker than the common whip-cord; and they appear like a parcel of small strings hanging down from the crowns of their heads. Their beards are generally short, strong, and bushy. The women wear their hair cropped, as do the boys, till they approach manhood.

We took some pains to discover how far their geographical knowledge extended, and found it not to exceed the limits of their horizon. To Erronan we may ascribe one of the two languages they speak, which is nearly, if not exactly, the same as that spoke at the Friendly Islands. It is therefore probable, that by a long intercourse with Tanna, and the other neighbouring islands, each hath learnt the others language, which they speak indiscriminately. The other language which the people of Tanna, Erromango, and Annatom speak, is properly their own. It is different from any we had before met with, and bears no affinity to that of Mallicollo; from whence we conclude, that the natives of these islands are a distinct nation of themselves. Mallicollo, Apee, &c. were names unknown to them; they even knew nothing of Sandwich Island, which is much the nearer. These people are rather slender made, and of the middle size. They have agreeable countenances, good features, and are very active and nimble, like the other tropical inhabitants. The females are put to all laborious works; and the men walk unconcerned by their side, when they are loaded with heavy burthens, besides a child at the back. Perhaps the men think, that their carrying their arms, and defending them, is sufficient. We often saw large parties of women carrying various kinds of articles, and a party of men armed with clubs and spears to defend them, though now and then we have seen a man

carry

carry
wome
certain
to all
men ar
bear a
selves
faces o
of pign
especial
only on
The wo
men no
rings, a
sexes.
Zealand
the neck
shells.
Some of
Islands,
more el
Hence w
though o
the time
after hat
ed, that
use than
made.
as in the
helve, w
the stone
If we
ple have
coarse ki
used chie
is very c
we had t
clubs, sp
depende

carry a burden at the same time, but not often. The women of Tanna are not very beautiful, yet they are certainly handsome enough for the men, who put them to all kinds of drudgery. Though both men and women are dark coloured, they are not black, nor do they bear any resemblance to negroes. They make themselves blacker than they really are, by painting their faces of the colour of black-lead. They use also a sort of pigment which is red, and a third sort brown, all these, especially the first, they lay on with a liberal hand, not only on the face, but on the neck, shoulders, and breast. The women wear a petticoat made of leaves, and the men nothing but a belt and wrapper. Bracelets, earrings, and amulets, are indiscriminately worn by both sexes. The amulets are made of the green stone of Zealand; the bracelets of sea-shells or cocoa-nut; and the necklaces, chiefly worn by the women, mostly of sea-shells. The valuable ear-rings are made of tortoise-shell. Some of our people having got some at the Friendly Islands, brought it to a good market here, where it was more esteemed than any thing we offered to sale. Hence we concluded these people caught but few turtle, though one was seen just as we got under sail. Towards the time of our departure, the natives began to enquire after hatchets and large nails; from which we concluded, that they had found iron to be of more value and use than stone, shells, or bones, of which their tools are made. Their stone hatchets are not shaped like an adze, as in the other islands, but more like an axe; and in the helve, which is pretty thick, is made a hole, into which the stone is fixed.

If we except the cultivation of the ground, these people have few arts worth mentioning. They make a coarse kind of matting; and cloth of the bark of a tree, used chiefly for belts. The workmanship of their canoes is very clumsy; and their arms come far short of others we had seen. Their weapons are bows, arrows, stones, clubs, spears, and darts. On the last they place most dependence, and these are pointed with three bearded edges.

edges. In throwing them, they make use of a becket, that is a piece of stiff plaited cord about six inches long, with an eye at one end, and a knot at the other. The eye is fixed on the fore finger of the right-hand, and the other end is hitched round the dart, where it is nearly on an equipoise. They hold the dart between the thumb and remaining fingers, which serve only to give it direction, the velocity being communicated by the becket and fore finger. The former flies off from the dart the instant its velocity becomes greater than that of the hand, but it remains on the finger ready to be used again. They kill both birds and fish with darts, and are pretty certain of hitting the mark, within the compass of a crown of a hat, suppose the object to be distant eight or ten yards; but if twice that distance, it is chance if they hit a mark the size of a man's body, though they will throw the weapon 60 or 70 yards; for they always throw with all their might, let the distance be what it may. Their arrows are made of reeds pointed with hard wood. Some are bearded; some not; and those for shooting birds have two, three, and four points. The stones in general, are branches of coral rocks, from eight to fourteen inches long, and from an inch to an inch and a half diameter. These are generally kept in their belts. Every one carries a club, and besides that, either darts, or a bow and arrows, but never both. One of our gentlemen on board, makes the following remark on the arms of these people, which we shall here insert in his own words. "I must confess, I have often been led to think the feats which Homer represents his heroes as performing with their spears, a little too much of the marvellous to be admitted into an heroic poem; I mean when confined within the strait stays of Aristotle. Nay, even so great an advocate for him as Mr Pope, acknowledges them to be surprizing. But since I have seen what these people can do with their wooden spears, and those badly pointed and not of a very hard nature, I have not the least exception to any one passage in that great poet on this account. But if I see fewer excep-

tions,

C
tions,
has, I
tion o
have n
the wi
fly; t
the wa
to thro
brandi

As t
we are
are utt
them;
they ap
of the p
we law
owing
occasion
obeyed.
called c
power t
of every

The
this har
It is situ
of the i
latitude
44 m. 3
ning in
about h
harbour
and muc
for takin
articles b
few da
and whe
hours, re
a fresh g
views of

Vol. 1.

tions, I can find infinitely more beauties in him ; as he has, I think scarcely an action, circumstance, or description of any kind whatever, relating to a spear, which I have not seen and recognised among these people ; as the whirling motion, and whistling noise, as the spears fly ; their quivering motion as they stick in the ground ; the warriors meditating their aim, when they are going to throw ; and their shaking them in their hand, or brandishing them, as they advance to the attack, &c."

As to the religion and government of these people, we are little acquainted with the last, and to the first are utter strangers. Chiefs they seem to have among them ; at least some were announced to us as such, but they appeared to have very little authority over the rest of the people. Old Geogy was the only one to whom we saw a particular respect paid ; but whether this was owing to his rank or age, we cannot say. On many occasions we have seen the old men respected and obeyed. Paowang was so, yet we never heard him called chief, nor could we perceive he had any more power than his neighbours, and we may say the same of every other person in our neighbourhood.

The Resolution being the first ship that ever entered this harbour, Captain Cook named it Port Resolution. It is situated on the north side of the most eastern point of the island, and about E. N. E. from the volcano, in latitude 19 d. 32 m. 25 f. and half south, and in 169 d. 44 m. 33 f. east longitude. It is but a small creek, running in S. by W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. three quarters of a mile, and is about half that in breadth. The depth of water in the harbour is about six to three fathoms, the bottom sand and mud. The landing place is exceeding convenient for taking in wood and water, both of these necessary articles being near the shore. After the water had been a few days on board it stunk, but turned sweet again ; and when at the worst the tin machine would, in a few hours, recover a whole cask. We now stretched, with a fresh gale to the eastward, in order to have a nearer view of Erronan. Having passed this Island at mid-

night, we tacked, and on Sunday the 21st, steered S. W. intending to get to the south of Tanna, and nearer Annatom; for though the morning was clear, we had made no discovery of any islands to the east. At noon, in latitude 20 d. 33 m. 30 s. Port Resolution bore north, 86 d. W. distant about 18 miles: Tanna extended from south 88 d. W. to N. 64 d. W. Traitors' Head north, 58 d. W. distant 60 miles; the island of Erronan, north, 86 d. E. distant 15 miles; and Annatom from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant 30 miles. At two o'clock P. M. seeing no more land ahead of us, we bore up round the S. E. end of Tanna, and ran along the south coast at one league from the shore. It seemed to be a bold one unguarded by rocks, and the country made a fine appearance, full as fertile as that in the vicinity of the harbour. At six o'clock we saw over the west end of Tanna, in the direction of N. 16 d. W. the high land of Erromango. We passed the island at eight, and shaped our course for Sandwich Isle, in order to complete our observations on that, and of the isles to the N. W. At four o'clock P. M. we approached the S. E. end. We found it to trend in the direction of W. N. W. In the middle of this range, very near the shore, we discovered three or four small isles, behind which appeared a safe anchorage. We continued our run along the coast to its western extremity, and then steered N. N. W. from the S. E. end of Mallicollo.

On the 23^d, we came in sight of the islands Pa-oom, Apee, and Ambrym. The first of these appeared now to be two islands. We continued our course to within half a league of Mallicollo, on the S. W. side, which we ranged at that distance. The direction of the land, from the S. E. point, is W. by S. for about six leagues, and then N. W. by W. for three leagues, terminating in a high point or head land, in latitude 16 d. 29 m. to which the name was given of S. W. Cape. The coast is low, indented with creeks, and projecting points; but, probably, these points might be little isles under shore. One we know to be such, lying between two

and

and th
which
close t
with it
the bea
saw sm
of their
ed very
natives
put off
not ove
the S. V
to termi
coast, an
16 d. 2
ed, that
W. cape
of land
had run
found th
We reac
were nea
people, v
on the b
again to
passage, l

On W
to the mi
licollo ex
now steer
the north
nued, bu
woody if
southerm
St Bartho
ference, a
Passage.
fine coast
white pat

and three leagues of the cape. A round rock, or islet, which, by an elbow in the coast, forms a fine bay, lies close to the west side, or point of the cape, connected with it by breakers. We were agreeably surprized with the beauty of the forests in Mallicollo, from whence we saw smoke ascend in various places, a plain indication of their being inhabited: the circumjacent land appeared very fertile and populous. We observed troops of natives on several parts of the shore; and two canoes put off to us, but as we did not shorten sail, they could not overtake the ship. The most advanced land from the S. W. cape bore N. W. by N. at which it seemed to terminate. At noon we were two miles from the coast, and by observation we found our latitude to be 16 d. 22 m. 30 s. S. and our never failing watch shewed, that we were 26 m. W. of it. At this time the S. W. cape bore S. 26 d. E. and the most advanced point of land for which we steered, bore N. W. by N. We had run the length of it by three o'clock P. M. and found the land trending more and more to the north. We reached its utmost extremity after dark, when we were near enough the shore to hear the voices of the people, who were assembled round a fire they had made on the beach. We now hauled round the point, stood again to the north, and spent the night in Bougainville's passage, being assured of our situation before sun-set.

On Wednesday, the 24th, we had advanced nearly to the middle of the passage, and the N. W. end of Mallicollo extended from S. 30 d. E. to S. 58 d. W. We now steered N. by E. then north along the east coast of the northern land. At first this coast appeared continued, but we found it was composed of several low woody isles, most of them of small extent, except the southermost, which in honour to the day, was named St Bartholomew. It is near seven leagues in circumference, and forms the N. E. point of Bougainville's Passage. We continued our course N. N. W. along a fine coast covered with woods; in some places were white patches which we judged to be chalk. On the

25th, at day break, we were on the north side of the island, and steered west along the low land under it, for the bluff-head; beyond which, at sun-rise, we saw an elevated coast, stretching to the north, as far as N. W. by W. Having doubled the head, we perceived the land to trend south, a little easterly, and to form a large deep bay, bounded on the west by the above-mentioned coast. It was our opinion, and every thing conspired to make us conclude, that this was the bay of St Philip and St Jago, discovered by Quiros in 1606. In order to determine this point, we stretched over to the west shore, from which we were one league at noon, and in latitude 14 d. 55 m. 30 f. S. and in 167 d. 3 m. E. At half past four o'clock P. M. we were only two miles from the west shore, to which we had been drove by a N. E. swell. Here we saw large bodies of the natives collected together. Some ventured off in canoes; but they took sudden fright at something, nor could all our signs of friendship induce them to come along-side. Their nakedness was covered with some flag grass, fastened to a belt, and which hung down, nearly as low as their knees: this was their only covering. Their complexion was very dark, and their hair woolly, or cut short. The calm continued till near eight o'clock, and in the interval of time, we were drove into eighty-five fathom water; so that we were under the apprehensions of being obliged to anchor on a lee-shore, in great depth, and in a gloomy dark night; but contrary to our expectations our fears were removed; for a breeze sprung up at E. S. E. and when we had hardly room to veer, the ship came about; our sails filled on the star-board tack; and we (such was the kind interposition of an invisible agent) stood off N. E.

On the 26th, we were about eight miles from the head of the bay, that is terminated by a low beach; behind which is an extensive flat covered with wood, and bounded on each side by a ridge of mountains. We found our latitude at noon to be 15 d. 5 m. S. and at one o'clock, having a breeze at N. by W. we steered

steered u
Mr Coop
reconnor
By this.
sailing ca
They w
enough
them, fa
same co
stouter r
their hai
make us
merals;
Anamoc
names.
of the h
Zealand
forehead
belt rou
blackish
looked l
we saw
noes we
much t
such pa
we cou
boats w
they h
stream
not in
to S. S.
the we
with f
mount
On
selves
the len
distant
14 d.

steered up to within two miles of the head of the bay. Mr Cooper and Mr Gilbert were sent out to sound and reconnoitre, while we stood off and on with the ship. By this, time and opportunity were afforded for three sailing canoes to come up, which had been following us. They would not come along-side, but advanced near enough to receive such things as were thrown out to them, fastened to a rope. They appeared to be of the same colour as the inhabitants of Mallicollo, but were stouter made and taller: their beards were frizzled and their hair woolly: yet several circumstances concurred to make us think they were of another nation. The numerals, as far as six, they expressed in the language of Anamocha, and called the adjacent lands by the same names. Some had their hair long, tied upon the crown of the head, and ornamented with feathers like the New Zealanders. Others wore a white shell tied on their foreheads. They wore bracelets on their arms, and a belt round their waists. Some were painted with a blackish pigment. They had prongs with them, which looked like instruments to catch fish, and the only arms we saw among them were gigs and darts. Their canoes were most like those of Tanna, and navigated in much the same manner. They gave us the names of such parts as we pointed to; but the name of the island we could not get from them. On the return of the boats we were informed by Mr Cooper and others, that they had landed at the head of the bay, near a fine stream of fresh water. We steered down the bay, being not in want of any thing, and the wind having shifted to S. S. E. Throughout the fore part of the night, on the west side of the shore, the country was illuminated with fires, from the sea shore to the summit of the mountains.

On Saturday the 27th, at day-break, we found ourselves two thirds down the bay, and at noon we were the length of the N. W. point, which bore N. 82 d. W. distant five miles; and by observation our latitude was 14 d. 39 m. 30 s. Some of our gentlemen were doubtful

ful of this being the bay of St Philip and St Jago, because no place answered to the port of Vera Cruz; but the Captain gave very good reasons for a contrary opinion. A port is a very vague term, like many others in geography; and what Quiros calls the port of Vera Cruz, might be the whole haven or harbour, or the anchorage at the head of the bay, which in some places may extend farther off than where our boats landed. The river was probably one of those mentioned by Quiros, and if we were not deceived, we saw the other.

The bay is every where free from danger, and of an unfathomable depth, except near the shores, which are for the most part low. It hath sixty miles sea coast; eighteen on the east side, which lies in the direction of S. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and N. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. six at the head; and thirty-six on the west side, the direction of which is S. by E. and N. by W. from the head down to two-thirds of its length, and then N. W. by N. to the N. W. point. The two points which form the entrance of the bay, are in the direction of S. 53 d. E. and N. 53 d. W. distant from each other thirty miles. The bay, as well as the flat land at the head of it, is bounded by a ridge of hills: one to the west is very high, and extends the whole length of the island. Upon this appeared a luxuriant vegetation wherever the eye turned. Rich plantations adorned the sides of the hills, forests reared their towered heads; and every valley was watered with a running stream; but of all the productions of nature the coconut trees were the most conspicuous. Capt. Cook named the east point of the bay Cape Quiros, in memory of its first discoverer. It is in latitude 14 d. 56 m. S. and in 167 d. 13 m. E. longitude. The N. W. point he named Cape Cumberland, in honour of his royal highness the duke. This lies in latitude of 14 d. 38 m. 45 f. S. and in longitude 166 d. 49 m. 30 f. E. It is the N. W. extremity of the Archipelago. On the 28th, and 29th, we took every opportunity, when the horizon was clear, to look out for more land, but none was seen; it is probable that there is none nearer than Queen
Char-

CA
Charlotte
go league
Captain t
Cruz. O
with a fre
On We
point of t
ly, is low
and as w
some sma
tend behi
plored th
made it n
some tim
might dif
which last
to recruit
southern. c
tacked, at
at S. E.
Tierra del
continent,
Cape Libb
165 d. 59
sing to o
curate vic
foregoing
thought p
ation or c
The isl
easily nu
light at
people
Some w
race; ot
New Ze
not a few
black, w
tions, h

Charlotte's Island discovered by Capt Carteret, about 90 leagues N. N. W. from Cape Cumberland, and the Captain thought this to be the same with Quiros's Santa Cruz. On Tuesday the 30th, we plyed up the coast with a fresh breeze.

On Wednesday the 31st, we weathered the S. W. point of the island. The coast which trends E. northerly, is low, and seemed to form some creeks or coves; and as we got farther into the passage, we perceived some small low isles lying along it, which seemed to extend behind St Bartholomew Island. Having now explored the whole Archipelago, the season of the year made it necessary to return to the south; but we had yet some time left to make observations on any land we might discover between this and New Zealand; at which last place the Captain intended to touch, in order to recruit our stock of wood and water for another southern course. To this end, at five o'clock P. M. we tacked, and hauled to the southward, with a fresh gale at S. E. At this time the S. W. point of the island Tierra del Espiritu Santo, the only remains of Quiros's continent, bore north 82 d. W. which Capt. Cook named Cape Lisburne. It lies in latitude 15 d. 40 m. and in 165 d. 59 m. E. longitude. It may perhaps be pleasing to our readers to give a summary and more accurate view of the islands in this Archipelago, as the foregoing account being given journal-wise, may not be thought perspicuous, or plain enough, either as to situation or description.

The islands which compose this Archipelago are not easily numbered. We counted upwards of seventy in sight at one time; and they seem to be inhabited by people of very different natures and complexions. Some we saw were woolly headed, and of the African race; others were of a copper colour, not unlike the New Zealanders; some were of the mulatto colour, and not a few like the natives of Rotterdam, of a brownish black, with long hair and shorn beards. The high notions, however, that were entertained of the vast riches
of

of these islands, of their abounding in pearls, silver ore and precious stones, do not seem well founded; neither does the island of Manicola answer by any means, the pompous description given of it by the Spanish writers, who found their report on the relation of an Indian chief, and on that of a captive, whom Quiros seized, and carried to Mexico. From the former Quiros learned, that to the N.W. of this country (Taumaco) there were more than sixty islands, and a large country, which he called Manicola; that, to explain which were small, he made circles, and pointed to the sea with his finger, and made signs that it surrounded the land; and for the larger, he made greater circles, and the same signs; and for that large country he opened both his arms, without joining them again, thereby intimating, that it extended without end; and by signs he shewed which people were whites, negroes, Indians, and mulattoes, and which were mixed; that in some islands they eat human flesh; and for this he made signs by biting his arm, shewing clearly thereby his abhorrence of such people. He also gave them to understand, that in the great country, there were cows or buffaloes. From the captive Quiros learnt, that in some of these islands, there were pearls as large as small pebbles; that the pearls were white and shining; and that when they looked at them against the sun, the shining lustre dazzled their eyes; that, at five days of their sailing from a country which he named, lay that great country Manicola, inhabited by many people, dun-coloured, and mulattoes, who lived in large towns; that the country was high and mountainous, with many large rivers; that he, with many others had gone to it in one of their embarkations, in quest of the trunk of a great tree, of the many that are in it, to make a pariagua; and that he saw there a port larger, and the entrance narrower, than that of St Philip and St Jago, and that the bottom was sand, and the shore shingle: he added, that the inhabitants had warlike instruments pointed with silver. This captive, after he had learnt the Spanish tongue, confirmed what he

he had
had fa
with
their
colour
being
said,
stones
some t
From
that it
would
South
it, "th
VOYAGE
and p
assump
which
Cook's
ern Co
so posi
indeed
souther
place.

The
were f
Spanish
of the
suppos
French
ples' lab
cept la
than th
islands
Cook, l
objects
extent
them
whole

he had said of the Great Country, and what the chief had said of the many islands, and of the different nations with which they were peopled; some lusty, having their bodies punctured; others not so, of various colours, long hair, red, black, curled and woolly. And being shewn some stones impregnated with silver, he said, in the great country he had seen such kind of stones, and likewise at Tuamaco, where the natives used some to punctuate themselves, and others for ornament. From these intimations, several navigators have inferred that if Quiros had stood to the southward, that course would have undoubtedly discovered to him the great Southern Continent, or as Quiros emphatically expresses it, "the Mother of so many Islands." Yet after all, THIS VOYAGE has shewn all these questionless affirmations, and probable conjectures, to be no other than mere assumptions founded on a false hypothesis. The course which Tasman pursued in 1722, joined to that of Capt. Cook's, has demonstrated the non-existence of a Southern Continent, in the direction in which Mr Dalrymple so positively asserts Quiros might have found it: and indeed every other direction from the line to 50 d. of southern latitude, between which he has given it a place.

The islands of this Archipelago towards the north, were first discovered by that able navigator Quiros, a Spanish captain, in 1606, and were considered as part of the Southern Continent, which, at that time, was supposed to exist. They were next visited (for the French are very ready to reap the fruits of other peoples' labours) by M. de Bougainville in 1768, who, except landing on the isle of Lepers, discovered no more than that the land was not connected, but composed of islands which he called the Great Cyclades. But Capt. Cook, left no room for conjecture, respecting the great objects he had in view; for besides ascertaining the extent and situation of these islands, he has added to them several new ones; and having explored the whole with mathematical precision, we think he had a

right to name them, as he did, the New Hebrides; by which name we shall in the remaining parts of our narrative distinguish them. Their situation is between the latitude of 14 d. 29 m. and 20 d. 4 m. S. and between 166 d. 41 m. and 170 d. 21 m. E. longitude, extending 125 leagues, or 375 miles, in the direction of N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. and S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. We shall describe them for the sake of perspicuity in the following numerical order.

1. The Peak of the Etoile, as it was named by M. de Bougainville. This is the most northern isle, and, according to his reckoning, lies N. by W. eight leagues from Aurora, in latitude 14 d. 29 m. longitude 168 d. 9 m.

2. Tierra del Espiritu Santo, which lies farthest north, and was discovered by Quiros in 1606. This is the most western and largest of all the Hebrides. It lies in the direction of N. N. W. $\frac{1}{2}$ W, and S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and is 66 miles long, 36 broad, and 180 in circumference. The land is exceeding high and mountainous; and the hills in many parts rise directly from the sea. Every place except the cliffs, is beautifully adorned with woods and regular plantations. The bay of St Philip and St Jago, forms an excellent harbour, and we doubt not of there being good bays along the south and east coasts of other smaller islands.

3. Mallicollo is the next considerable island, extending N. W. and S. E. In this direction it is 54 miles long. Its greatest breadth is at the S. E. which is 24 miles. The N. W. end is 16 miles broad; and nearer the middle one third of that breadth. These unequal measurements, particularly near the centre, are caused by a wide and pretty deep bay, on the S. W. side. If we may form a judgment of the whole of this island from what we saw of it, we must conclude it is very fertile and populous. The hills are in the centre of the island, from which the land descends, with an easy slope to the sea-coast, where it is rather low.

4. St Bartholomew, situated between the S. E. end of Tierra del Espiritu Santo, and the north end of Mallicollo; the distance between which latter island and St Bartholomew

lome
15 d. 4
is the p
whose
curacy.

5. T
Santo a
leagues,
the sam
latitude
an oval
We dete
lines of
the N. E
from the
Whitsun
Three-hi
meridian
tude of 1.

6. Au
direction
think, it
natives h
every wh

7. Wh
south of
somewhat
and south
vated, and
siderably h

8. Amb
Whitsun
circumfer
is rather lo
to a high m
from the c
ascend out
passed und
did not see.

lomew is eight miles. The middle of it is in latitude 15 d. 4 m. Between this island and that of Mallicollo, is the passage through which M. de Bougainville went; whose descriptions have very little pretensions to accuracy.

5. The Isle of Lepers is situated between Espiritu Santo and Aurora, being distant from the former eight leagues, and from the latter three. It lies nearly under the same meridian as the S. E. end of Mallicollo, in latitude 15 d. 22 m. Its figure approaches nearest to an oval; and it is near sixty miles in circumference. We determined its bounds by several bearings; but the lines of the shore were traced out by inspection, except the N. E. part, where there is an anchorage half a mile from the land. We must here observe, that, Aurora, Whitsuntide, Ambrym, Paoom, and its neighbours Apee, Three-hills, and Sandwich Islands, lie all under the same meridian of 167 d. 29 m. E. extending from the latitude of 14 d. 51 m. 30 f. to 17 d. 53 m. 30 f.

6. Aurora Island lies N. by W. and S. by E. in which direction is 33 miles in length; but in breadth, we think, it scarcely exceeds seven miles, except where the natives have their plantations; its surface is hilly, and every where covered with wood.

7. Whitsuntide Island, one league and a half to the south of Aurora, of which it is the same length, but somewhat broader; and lies in the direction of north and south. Except such parts that seemed to be cultivated, and which are pretty numerous, it appeared considerably high, and covered with wood.

8. Ambrym, from the north side to the south end of Whitsuntide Island, is two leagues and a half. In circumference this island is about 17 leagues. The shore is rather low, and the land rises with an unequal ascent to a high mountain. We judged it to be well inhabited, from the quantity of smoke which we perceived to ascend out of the woods, in such parts of the island as passed under our observation; for the whole of it we did not see.

9. Paoom ; of this and its neighbourhood we saw but little, and therefore can only say of this island, that it soars up to a great height in the form of a hay-cock. The extent of this and the adjoining isle (if they are two) do not exceed three or four leagues, in any direction ; for the distance between Ambrym and Apee is scarcely five leagues, and they are situated in this space, and east from Port Sandwich, distant about eight leagues.

10. Apee. The direction of this island is about twenty-four miles N. W. and S. E. and it is not less than sixty miles in circumference. It has a hilly surface, rising to a considerable height, and is diversified with woods and lawns : we speak here only of the west and south parts, for the others we did not see.

11. Shepherd's Isles, which are a cluster of small ones, of different dimensions, in the direction of S. E. and extending off from the S. E. point of Apee, about five leagues.

12. Three-hills. This island lies four leagues south from the coast of Apee, and is distant 17 leagues, S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ S. from Port Sandwich. A reef of rocks, on which the sea continually beats, lies W. by N. five miles from the west point.

13. Sandwich Island is situated nine leagues, in the direction of south from Three-hills. To the east and west of which line are,

- 14. Two-hills Island.
- 15. The Monument.
- 16. Montague Islands.
- 17. Hinchinbrook.

18. Two or three small isles, lying between Hinchinbrook and Sandwich Island, to which they are connected by breakers. Sandwich Island is seventy-five miles in circumference, and its greatest extent is thirty miles. It lies in the direction of N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. We viewed the N. W. coast of this island only at a distance. From the south end of Mallicollo, to the N. W. end

end of S.
S. S. E.

19. E.
situated
about sev
dle of it
19 m. E.
saw it, it

20. T.
the south
N. W. by
direction
broad.

21. A.
lies in la
twelve l
Its surfac
cannot sa

22. In
E. four l

23. E.
rection,
eastern o
than five
the top f
the isle,
land, lie
scription
which o
but, as v
of lesser
and ther

To th
shall ann
nomer,
these isla
" That e
and ten

end of Sandwich Isle, the distance, in the direction of S. S. E. is twenty-two leagues.

19. Erramango lies in the same direction; and is situated eighteen leagues from Sandwich Island. It is about seventy-five miles in circumference. The middle of it is in latitude 18 d. 54 m. longitude 169 d. 19 m. E. From the distance we were off when we first saw it, it appeared of a good height.

20. Tanna. This island is situated six leagues from the south side of Erramango, extending S. E. by S. and N. W. by N. It is about twenty-four miles long in that direction, and every where about nine or twelve miles broad.

21. Annatom. This is the southermost island, and lies in latitude 20 d. 3 m. longitude 170 d. 4 m. and twelve leagues from Port Resolution, south 30 d. E. Its surface is hilly, and of a tolerable height; more we cannot say of it.

22. Immer, which is in the direction of N. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. four leagues from Port Resolution in Tanna; and,

23. Erronan, or Footoona, east, lies in the same direction, distant eleven leagues. This island is the most eastern of all the Hebrides, and appeared to be more than five leagues in circumference. It is high, and on the top flat. A small peak, seemingly disjoined from the isle, though we thought it was connected by low land, lies on the N. E. side. This is an accurate description of the principal islands in the Archipelago, to which our commander gave the name of the Hebrides; but, as we have before observed, there are many others of lesser note, of which we had only a transient view, and therefore cannot pretend to describe.

To this account, in order to render it complete, we shall annex the lunar observations, made by our astronomer, Mr Wales, for ascertaining the longitude of these islands, concerning which Captain Cook observes, "That each set of observations consisting of between six and ten observed distances of the sun and moon, or moon,

moon and stars, the whole number amounts to several hundreds; and these, by means of the watch, have been reduced to all the islands; so that the longitude of each is as well determined as that of the two ports undermentioned, namely, Sandwich and Resolution. To prove this we need only observe, that the longitude of the two ports, as pointed out by the watch and by the observations, did not differ two miles. This shews likewise, what degree of accuracy these observations are capable of, when multiplied to a considerable number, made with different instruments, and with the sun and stars, or both sides of the moon. By this last method, the errors which may be either in the instruments or lunar tables, destroy each other, as also those that may arise from the observer himself; for some are more critical, and closer observers than others. If we consider the number of observations that may be obtained in the course of a month, (supposing the weather to be favourable) we shall perhaps find this method of ascertaining the longitude of places as accurate as most others; at least it is the most easy, and attended with the least expence. Every ship bound to foreign parts is, or may be, supplied upon easy terms, with a sufficient number of good quadrants, proper for making the solar or lunar observations; and the difference of the price between a good and bad quadrant, can never be an object with an officer. The most expensive article, and what is in some measure necessary, in order to arrive at the utmost accuracy, is a good watch; but for common use, and where that strict accuracy is not required, this may be dispensed with; and it is to be observed, that the ordinary way of finding the longitude by a quadrant, is not so difficult, but that any man, with proper application, and a little practice, may soon learn to make observations as well as the astronomers. Indeed, not any material difference has seldom occurred, between the observations made by Mr Wales, and those made by the officers at the same time.

Lunar

C.

Lun

For as
duced by
Port Ref

I.

Mean of

2

20

Mean of

II.

Mean of

Mean of

Lunar Observations made by Mr WALES,

For ascertaining the longitude of the Hebrides, reduced by the watch to Port Sandwich in Mallicollo, and Port Resolution in Tanna.

I. PORT SANDWICH.

	<i>d.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
Mean of 10 sets of observ. before	167	56	33 $\frac{1}{2}$	
2 ditto, at	168	2	37 $\frac{1}{2}$	
20 ditto,	167	52	57	
Mean of these means	167	57	22 $\frac{1}{2}$	E. Long.

II. PORT RESOLUTION.

	<i>d.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
Mean of 20 sets of observ. before	160	37	35	
5 ditto, at	169	48	48	
20 ditto, after	169	47	22 $\frac{1}{2}$	
Mean of these means	169	44	35	

New

New Caledonia discovered—Incidents—The Country described—An Account of the Customs, Manners, and Arts of the Natives—Observations on the Coast and some low Islands—Remarkable Incidents while exploring these.—The Resolution is obliged to depart from New Caledonia—This, in Captain Cook's Opinion, is the largest Island in the South Pacific Ocean, except New Zealand—Remarks upon it—Continues her Voyage to New Zealand—Observations respecting the Discovery of Norfolk Island—She arrives at Queen Charlotte's Sound—An Account of Incidents while the Ship lay there.

ON September the 1st, being Thursday, we were out of sight of land, and no more was to be seen. We continued our course to the S. W. and on the 3d at five o'clock, found ourselves in 19 d. 49 m. and in 165 d. E. longitude. On the 4th, at eight o'clock A. M. we discovered land, which, at noon, extended from S. S. E. to W. by S. distant six leagues. At five P. M. we were six leagues off, when we were stopped by a calm. At this time the land extended from S. E. by S. to W. by N. round by the S. W. but as some openings were seen in the W. we could not determine whether it was one connected land, or a cluster of Islands. The coast to the S. E. seemed to terminate to the S. E. in a high promontory, which was named Cape Colnet, after one of our midshipmen, who first discovered this land. We saw two or three canoes under sail, and we thought they had come off to us, but they struck their sails a little before sun set, and we saw them no more.

C
On
E. of C
W.
openin
We de
of obse
happen
found t
large sa
observe
parts;
imagin
pretty n
our boa
that wh
low lan
which,
Balabea
we stoo
of the b
and that
gave the
him with
hauled u
the shor
ceeded u
anchored
mixed w
wind and
S. distant
of the m
bore N.
came nor
natives su
in 16 or
and we p
to receive
to the ro
being thu
Vol. I.—

On the 5th, we observed the coast extended to the S. E. of Cape Colnet, and round by the S. W. to N. W. by W. We bore down to N. W. and came before an opening, that had the appearance of a good channel. We desired to enter it, in order to have an opportunity of observing an eclipse of the sun, which was soon to happen. We therefore sent out two armed boats to sound the channel; and at the same time we saw 12 large sailing canoes near us. All the morning we had observed them in motion, and coming off from different parts; but some were lying on the reef, fishing as we imagined. When we hoisted out our boats they were pretty near us; but upon seeing this, they returned, and our boats followed them. We now were convinced, that what we had taken for openings in the coast was low land, all connected, except the western extremity, which, as we afterwards learnt, was an island, called Balabea. The boats having made a signal for a channel, we stood in with the ship. The commanding officer of the boats reported, that there was good anchorage, and that the natives were very civil and obliging. He gave them some medals, and in return, they presented him with some fish. Having got within the reef, we hauled up S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. for a small low sandy isle, lying under the shore, being followed by all the canoes. We proceeded up the bay more than two miles, and at length anchored in five fathoms water, the bottom a fine sand mixed with mud, and we were well sheltered from the wind and sea. At this time the low sandy isle bore E. by S. distant three quarters of a mile, and from the shore of the main we were one mile. The island of Balabea bore N. W. by N. and the channel through which we came north, distant four miles. A great number of the natives surrounded us before we had well got to anchor, in 16 or eighteen canoes, without any sort of weapons, and we prevailed upon one boat to come near enough to receive some presents. In return, they tied two fish to the rope, that stunk intolerably. An intercourse being thus opened by mutual exchanges, two of the

natives ventured on board the ship, and presently after she was filled with them. Some dined with us, but they would not eat our salt beef, pork, or pease soup: we happened to have some yams left, which they were very fond of. These they called Oobee, a name not unlike Oofee, by which they are called at most of the islands, except Mallicollo; nevertheless we found these people spoke a language to which we were entire strangers. They were quite naked, except the belt and wrapper, which they used as the inhabitants of the other islands. They had no knowledge of our dogs, cats, and goats, &c. not having even a name for them; but they shewed a remarkable attachment to pieces of red cloth and spike nails. After dinner time, a party of us went ashore with two armed boats, and landed amidst a great number of people, who were induced by curiosity alone to see us, for they had not so much as a stick in their hands, and received us with great courtesy. They expressed a natural surprize at seeing men and things so new to them as we were. Presents were made to such, as a man, who had attached himself to Captain Cook, pointed out; but he would not suffer the Captain to give the women, who stood behind, any beads or medals. We saw a chief whose name was Teabooma, who called for silence soon after we landed. Every person instantly obeyed him, and listened with extraordinary attention. When he had finished his harangue, another spoke, who was no less respectfully attended to. Their speeches were composed of short sentences. We thought ourselves to be the subject of them, though we could not understand them. Having by signs enquired for fresh water, some pointed to the east, others to the west; but our friend undertook to conduct us to it, and for that purpose embarked with us. The ground we passed was beautifully cultivated, laid out in several plantations, and well watered. We rowed near two miles to the east, where we observed the shore to be mostly covered with mangroves. We entered among these by a narrow creek or river, which brought us to a little straggling village where we were shewn fresh water.

Near the
tions of
rills, co
source
which
ing of
on a fir
lons, an
own m
over ou
how it
informe
The tid
we took
had not
vilege o
it was
Though
much ea
all the
civility.

On T
the nati
came in
parts of
tain's frie
rest had
they exc
other tri
but went
means lo
breakfast
boats in s
preceding
Mr Wales
island, to
the sun,
Mr Picker
launch wa

Near this spot the land was richly adorned with plantations of sugar-canes, yams, &c. and watered with little rills, conducted by art from the main springs, whose source was in the hills. We saw several cocoa-nut trees which had not much fruit on them, and heard the crowing of cocks, but saw none. Some roots were baking on a fire, in an earthen jar, which would hold six gallons, and we did not doubt, but that this was of their own manufacture. Mr Forster shot a duck as it flew over our heads, and explained to the Captain's friend how it was killed. He desired to have the duck, and informed his countrymen in what manner it was shot. The tide not permitting us to stay longer in the creek, we took leave of these amicable people, from whom we had nothing to expect but good nature, and the privilege of visiting their country without molestation, as it was easy to see these were all they could bestow. Though this did not satisfy our demands, it gave us much ease and satisfaction, for they certainly excelled all the natives we had hitherto met with in friendly civility.

On Tuesday the 6th, in the morning, hundreds of the natives came to visit us: some swam, and others came in canoes. Before ten o'clock our decks, and other parts of the ship, were quite full of them. The Captain's friend brought some fruit and a few roots: the rest had with them only their clubs and darts, which they exchanged readily for nails, pieces of cloth, and other trifling articles. Teabooma came with them, but went out of the ship imperceptibly, and by that means lost the present that was intended for him. After breakfast Lieutenant Pickersgill was sent with two armed boats in search after fresh water, for what was found the preceding day could not conveniently be got on board. Mr Wales also, and Lieutenant Clerke, went to the little island, to make preparations for observing the eclipse of the sun, which was expected to be in the afternoon. Mr Pickersgill having succeeded, soon returned. The launch was therefore ordered out to complete our water,

and the Captain repaired to the isle, to assist in the observation. The eclipse came on about one o'clock P. M. We lost the first contact by intervening clouds, but were more fortunate in the end; and by observations taken with different instruments, by Capt. Cook, Mr Wales, and Mr Clerke, the latitude of the isle, at the place of observation, was found to be 20 d. 17 m. 39 s. S. The longitude by the distance of the sun and moon, and moon and stars, 48 sets, 164 d. 41 m. 21 s. E. The same by the watch 163 d. 58 m. Mr Wales measured the quantity eclipsed by Hadley's quadrant, a method never before thought of. The Captain was of opinion, that it answers the purpose of a micrometer to a great degree of certainty: if so, it is a great addition to the use of this valuable instrument. In the evening we visited the watering place, which was a fine stream, at the head of a small creek. The casks were conveyed by a small boat down the creek to the beach, over which they were rolled, and then put into the launch. The boat could enter the creek only at high water. Near this watering place was plenty of excellent wood for fuel, an article we did not at present want. In the evening of this day, about seven o'clock, died Simon Monk, our butcher. His death was occasioned by a fall down the fore hatchway, the preceding night. We could not but lament the loss of so useful a hand, especially as he was well respected and much esteemed on board the ship.

On Wednesday the 7th, we made a party to take a view of the country. When we had landed, two of the natives undertook to be our guides. We ascended the hills by a pretty good path; and in the way met several people, who accompanied us, so that in a short time our train became numerous. From the summit of one of the hills we saw the sea in two places, whereby we could determine the breadth of this country, which does not exceed thirty miles. A large valley lay between the ridge we were upon, and the advanced hills, through which glided a serpentine river, and on the sides of the hills were several straggling villages. The

valley a
 spered
 plantat
 other p
 The li
 places
 coarse
 shrubs.
 try and
 tude, c
 We ret
 and pat
 which
 to be w
 cruit th
 not to
 fire to
 finishe
 to dinn
 tion an
 pence.
 athore,
 struck.
 resemb
 as we l
 dential
 ing thi
 but the
 the live
 found t
 which
 most lo
 guish t
 a feath
 after th
 proved
 mornin
 eaten th
 and sav

valley appeared rather romantic, by the villages, interspersed with woods, winding streams, and beautiful plantations, which much improved the scene. The other parts of the island were mostly rocky and barren. The little soil that is upon the mountains and high places is burnt up by the sun; yet it is coated with coarse grass and plants, and here and there trees and shrubs. There is a great similitude between this country and New Holland, under the same parallel of latitude, obvious to every one who had seen both places. We returned by a different road to that we came by, and passed through some of the plantations in the plains, which were laid out with great judgment, and appeared to be well cultivated. All the nations in these seas recruit their land by letting it lay in fallow, but they seem not to have any idea of manuring it, except by setting fire to the grass with which it is over-run. Having finished our excursion by noon, we returned on board to dinner, with one of our guides with us, whose attention and fidelity were rewarded at a very trifling expence. In the afternoon, the Captain's clerk, being ashore, purchased a fish which one of the natives had struck. It had a large, long, ugly head, and bore some resemblance to the sun fish. It was ordered for supper, as we had no suspicion of its being poisonous. Providentially, the time the draughtsman took up in portraying this fish, made it too late for us to have it dressed; but the Captain, and the two Messrs. Forsters tasted of the liver and row; and in the middle of the night, they found themselves seized with a weakness and stupor, which affected their whole frame. The Captain had almost lost his sense of feeling, not being able to distinguish between light and heavy bodies; a quart pot and a feather seemed the same in his hand. An emetic, and after that a sweat, were taken by these gentlemen, which proved an efficacious remedy. When they rose in the morning, they found one of the pigs dead, who had eaten the entrails; and when the natives came on board, and saw the fish hang up, they expressed their abhorrence,

rence, signifying it was not wholesome food. It is a little remarkable they did not do this when the fish was to be sold, nor after it was purchased.

On the 8th, in the afternoon, Teabooma, the chief, brought a present to the Captain, consisting of a few yams, and sugar-canes. In return for which, among other articles, a dog and bitch were sent him, nearly full grown. The dog was red and white, but the bitch was the colour of an English fox. This was done with a view of stocking the country with this species of animals. It was some time before Teabooma could believe the present was intended for him; but when he was convinced of this, he sent them immediately away, and seemed lost in excess of joy. On the 9th, Lieutenant Pickersgill and Mr Gilbert were dispatched in the launch and cutter to explore the coast to the west, which could not be so well effected by the ship, on account of the reefs. A party of men was also sent ashore to cut brooms; but Captain Cook and Messrs Forster were confined aboard, though much better.

On the 10th, Mr Forster was so well recovered as to go into the country in search of plants. On Sunday, the 11th, in the evening, the boats returned, and we were informed by the commanding officers, that having reached an elevation the morning they had set out, they had from thence a view of the coast; and both Mr Gilbert and Mr Pickersgill were of opinion, that there was no passage for the ship to the west. From this place, accompanied by two of the natives, they went to Balabea. They were received by Teabi, the chief of the island, and the people who came in great numbers to see them, with strong intimations of friendship. Our people, that they might not be crowded, drew a line between them and the natives, who understood and complied with the restriction. One of these had a few cocoa-nuts which a sailor would have bought, but the man being unwilling to part with them, walked off, and, being followed by the sailor, he sat down on the sand, made a circle round him, as he had seen our people.

people
within
This ex
for they
again be
following
going do
ties, but
rather to
suddenly
throw
lost, and
fishing
could ea

On M
penter v
being d
well as
he took
and wen
the chief
formed
but they
as we ex
the first
consequ
a grave
for us to
sing to
was to
duct us
led us t
sons we
his pig
Captain
expatia
them t
ply: in
tible, t

people do, and signified that the other was not to come within it, and the injunction was strictly observed. This excursion to Balabea was rather a fruitless one; for they did not reach the isle till near sunset, and left it again before sun-rise, the next morning; and the two following days were spent in getting up to the ship. In going down to the isle, they saw a great number of turtles, but could not strike any, the wind and sea being rather tempestuous. The cutter sprung a leak, and suddenly filled with water, so that they were obliged to throw several things over board, to prevent her being lost, and by lightening her, to stop the leak. From a fishing canoe they met, they got as much fish as they could eat.

On Monday the 12th, early in the morning, the carpenter was ordered to repair the cutter. The Captain being desirous of stocking this country with hogs as well as dogs, the former being more useful of the two, he took with him in the boat a young boar and sow, and went up the mangrove creek in search of his friend, the chief, in order to give them to him. We were informed by the natives, that he lived at some distance, but they would send for him: but he not coming as soon as we expected, Captain Cook resolved to give them to the first man of consequence he might meet with. In consequence of this determination, they were offered to a grave old man, who shook his head, and made signs for us to take them into the boat again. On our refusing to comply, they seemed to hold a consultation what was to be done. After this, our guide offered to conduct us to the chief, (or Areekee) and he accordingly led us to a house, where eight or ten middle aged persons were seated in a circle. To these the Captain and his pigs were formally introduced. They desired the Captain with great courtesy to be seated, who began to expatiate on the merits of his two pigs, explaining to them their nature and use, and how they would multiply: in short, he enhanced their value as much as possible, that they might take the more care of them. In
return

return for our present we had six yams brought us, after which we went on board. In the afternoon we made a trip to the shore, and on a tree near the watering-place, an inscription was cut, setting forth the ship's name, date, &c. as a memorial and proof that we were the first discoverers of this country. Much the same had been done in other places we had touched at. Near this place is a little village, which we now found to be much larger than we expected. It was surrounded with good cultivated land, regularly laid out, planted, or planting, with taro or eddy root, yams, &c. small rills, in pleasing meanders, continually watered the taro plantations. These roots are planted, some in square or oblong patches, which lie horizontal, and are sunk below the level of the adjacent land, by which means they can let into them as much water as they think requisite. Others are planted in ridges, about four feet broad, and three high. On the top of the ridge is a narrow gutter, for conveying the little rills to the roots. The plantations are laid out with such judgment, that the same stream waters several ridges. These are sometimes the boundaries to the horizontal plantations, and where this method is used, which is frequently done for the benefit of a pathway, not an inch of ground is lost. Some of the roots are better tasted than others; nor are they all of the same colour; but they are all wholesome food. The tops are eaten by the natives, and we thought them good greens. The whole family, men, women, and children, work in these plantations. Having now fully satisfied our curiosity for the present, we returned on board, when the Captain ordered all the boats to be hoisted in, that we might be ready to set sail, and put to sea.

The inhabitants of this country are strong, robust, active, friendly, courteous, and not addicted to pilfering, as all other nations are in this sea. They have in general better features than the natives of Tanna, and are a much stouter race; but in some we saw a resemblance of the negroes, having thick lips, flat noses, and full cheeks.

cheeks.
is very
scratchi
ment,
is a kind
ven to
knitting
are faste
one-ten
that are
fan. S
as well
also we
They an
particul
tum.
tunemple
their ow
stiff, cyl
pital orn
The dre
the leave
their wa
one long
outer fila
namente
adorned
lets, mac
elbow.
They ap
na, and
some ref
guage, i
these thr
sition, th
withstan
war, oth
they are
are near
Vol. I.

cheeks. Their hair and beards are black. The former is very rough and frizzled; and frequently wants scratching, for which they have a well-contrived instrument, wearing it always in their rough mop heads. It is a kind of comb made of sticks of hard wood, from seven to nine inches long, and about the thickness of a knitting-needle. Twenty of these, sometimes fewer, are fastened together at one end, parallel to, and nearly one-tenth of an inch from each other. The other ends, that are a little pointed, spread out like the sticks of a fan. Some have their hair tied up in clubs, and others, as well as the women, wear it cropped short. They also wear their beards cropped in the same manner. They are much subject to swelled and ulcerated legs, particularly the men, as also to a swelling of the scrotum. When they go out in their canoes, and when unemployed, they wear a coarse kind of matting, of their own manufacture, and the men of note have a stiff, cylindrical black cap, which appeared to be a capital ornament, and mark of distinction among them. The dress of their women is a short petticoat, made of the leaves of the plantain tree, fastened by a cord round their waists. This is at least six inches thick, but not one longer than necessary for the use designed. The outer filaments are dyed black, and the right side is ornamented with pearl oyster-shells. Both sexes are adorned with ear-rings, necklaces, amulets, and bracelets, made of large shells, which are placed above the elbow. Various parts of their bodies are punctured. They appear to be a race between the natives of Tanna, and those of the Friendly Islands, and they bear some resemblance to those of New Zealand; their language, in some respects, appears to be collected from these three countries. In honesty and a friendly disposition, they certainly excel all others. However, notwithstanding this, they must sometimes be engaged in war, otherwise they would not be so well provided as they are, with weapons of various sorts. Their clubs are near three feet in length, and variously formed, some

with heads like an hawk, others with round heads. They are all made very neatly. Their darts and spears are ornamented with carvings. They take some pains to shape the stones for their slings, which are in the form of an egg, only pointed alike at both ends. In striking fish with a dart, they are very dexterous, which we believe is the only method they have of catching them, for we saw neither hooks nor lines in their possession. Their tools are much the same as in the other islands. They build their houses circular, resembling a bee-hive, and full as close and warm; into which they enter by a square opening, just big enough to admit a man upon his knees. The roof is lofty and brought to a point at the top; the side walls are five feet and a half high; both roof and sides are covered with thatch, made of coarse long grass. On the top of most of their dwellings is a wooden post, which is generally ornamented either with carving or shells, or both. Within are platforms for the conveniency of laying any thing on, and in some houses are two floors, one above the other. On the floors dry grass is laid, and mats are spread for the principal people to sleep, or sit on. In most of them we found a fire burning, and in some two fire places, but they are very smoky and hot, having no chimney, nor vent for the smoke but the door; an atmosphere, which, to Europeans, must be very disagreeable; and as to ourselves we could scarcely endure it a moment; but with respect to the natives, the smoke is a necessary evil, as it prevents the musquitoes from molesting them, and these are very numerous. Their houses are better calculated for a cold than a hot climate; and it is owing to their internal heat that these people are so chilly when in the open air, and without exercise. We often saw them make little fires at different places, and squat down round them, only to warm themselves. In some particulars their houses are very neat; for, besides the ornaments at the top, we saw some with carved door-posts. There are not any partitions in them, consequently they cannot have any of our ideas that make

privacy

privacy
air, with
tioned,
utensils
fish. Th
loaf, to
it may b
on their
two. T
pointed
Water is
fish, roo
roasted b
ed to reli
Their fru
not in ab
scarce; a
Notwit
favours t
sea coast,
tion. W
every day
our accou
but few in
in large b
must, how
we saw, an
these being
on which
sea, perha
land. A
fail of affo
cal party
They obse
and north
discovered
peeled off,
ships. Th
very hard;

privacy necessary. They cook their victuals in the open air, without doors; and the earthen jar, before mentioned, seems to be the only article of their household utensils worth notice. In this they bake their roots and fish. They use three or five stones, in the form of a sugar loaf, to keep the jars from resting on the fire, and that it may burn the better. On these the jars lie inclined on their sides; and three stones are for one jar, five for two. The stones are fixed in the ground, and their pointed ends are about half a foot above the surface. Water is their only liquor, and their subsistence is on fish, roots, and the bark of a certain tree, which last they roasted before they chew it. Some of our people seemed to relish the taste of it, which is sweet and insipid. Their fruit trees do not yield much fruit. Plantains are not in abundance; sugar-canes and bread-fruit are very scarce; and the cocoa-nuts are but thinly planted.

Notwithstanding nature has been rather scanty in her favours to the island, it is not thinly peopled on the sea coast, and in the vallies that are capable of cultivation. We saw, it is true, great numbers of the natives every day, but we believe they came from all parts on our account. Down the coast, to the west, there are but few inhabitants; but from the east, they came daily in large bodies, over the mountains, to visit us. We must, however, confess, that what parts of this country we saw, are not fit to support many inhabitants, most of these being barren rocky mountains, the grass growing on which is useless to people who have no cattle. The sea, perhaps, may compensate for the sterility of the land. A coast encircled with reefs and shoals, cannot fail of affording a plentiful supply of fish. Our botanical party did not complain for want of employment. They observed several plants, common to the eastern and northern islands; and, among other productions, discovered the tree, the bark of which, being easily peeled off, is used in the East Indies for caulking of ships. The bark is soft, white, and ragged; the wood very hard; the leaves long and narrow, in colour, of a

pale dead green, and in smell, a fine aromatic. They found also a species of the passion flower, which, we are informed, has never before been known to grow wild any where but in America.

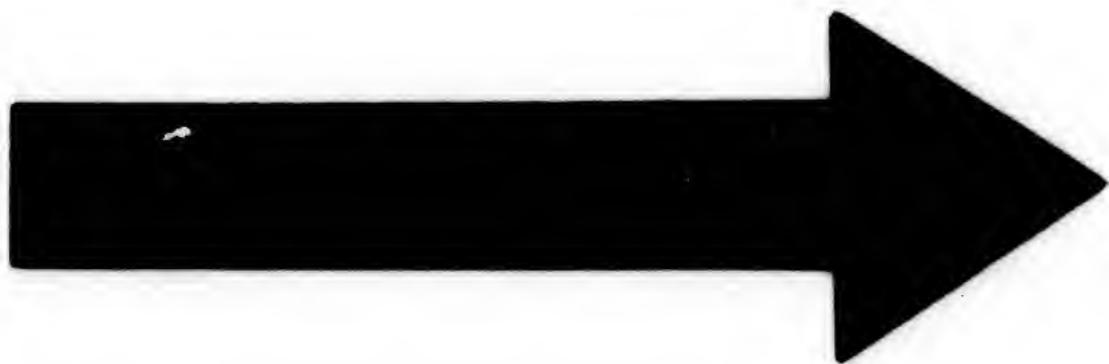
Of the land birds, which are very numerous, we saw several to us unknown, as a kind of turtle doves, very beautiful, many small birds, and one resembling a crow, though much smaller, and its feathers are tinged with blue. We endeavoured, but in vain, to obtain the name of the whole island; but we got the names of several districts, with those of their chiefs. Balade was the name of the district we were at, and Tea Booma the chief. Tea is a title prefixed to the names of all, or most of their great men. The Captain's friend, by way of distinction, called him Tea Cook. Their canoes are very clumsy, though somewhat like those of the Friendly Isles. Most of them are double canoes. They are navigated by one or two latteen sails. The sail is made of pieces of matting; the ropes of the coarse filaments of the plantain tree. They sail well, but are not calculated for rowing or paddling. They are about thirty feet long, and the deck or platform, about twenty-four in length, and ten in breadth. In our traffic with these people, small nails were of little value, nor did they admire beads, looking-glasses, &c. and even a hatchet was not so valuable as a spike nail. Their women here as well as at Tanna, are very chaste, and we never heard that one of our people ever obtained the least favour from any one of them. Indeed their ladies would sometimes divert themselves by going a little aside with our gentlemen, as if they meant to be kind, and then would in a moment run away laughing at them. These people deposit their dead in the ground. Some of our gentlemen saw a grave, resembling one of the Roman tumuli, in which, they were informed lay the remains of a chief slain in battle. Round his grave spears, darts, and paddles, were stuck upright in the ground.

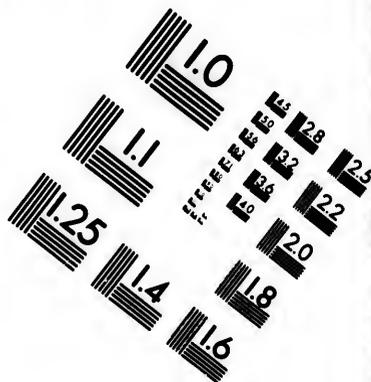
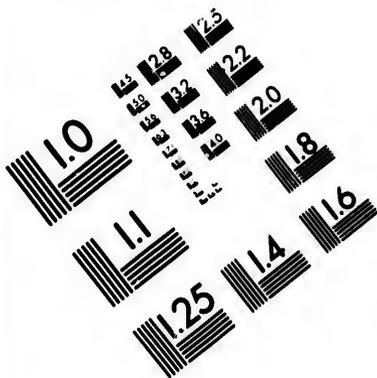
On Tuesday the 13th of September, at sun-rise, we weighed, and stood for the same channel we came in

by.

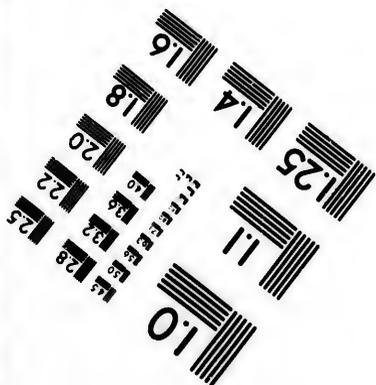
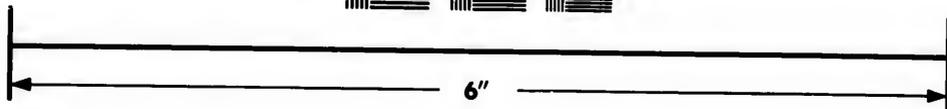
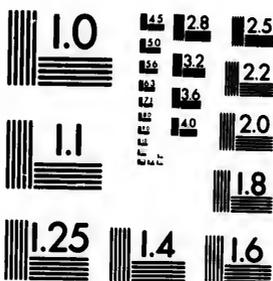
by. A
when th
we wer
of it, th
island
leagues
from t
N. W.
that M
tremity
N. dist
still tre
breeze
bea, an
the spa
land w
but ju
leagues
this dis
from th
that ev
induce
the sho
ers, we
tinuing
which
had p
situati
in the
mercy
was no
cutter
of litt
E. kep
o'clock
S. E.
night,
unexp
at no

by. At half past seven we were in the middle of it, when the isle of Balabea bore W. N. W. As soon as we were clear of the reef, we bore up along the outside of it, steering N. W. by W. as it trended. At noon the island of Balabea bore S. by W. distant about four leagues; and at three o'clock P. M. it bore S. by E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. From this place the reef inclined to the N. and then to N. W. Advancing to N. W. we raised more land, so that Mr Gilbert was mistaken, and did not see the extremity of the coast. At five this land bore W. by N. $\frac{1}{4}$ N. distant near seven leagues. On the 14th, the reef still trended N. W. along which we steered, with a light breeze at E. S. E. At noon we had lost sight of Balabea, and at three o'clock, we run by a low sandy isle, the space between which, and the north-westermost land was strewed with shoals. At sun-set, we could but just see the land, which bore S. W. by S. about ten leagues distant. No land was seen to the westward of this direction; the reef too trended away W. by N. and from the mast-head seemed to terminate in a point; so that every appearance flattered our expectations, and induced us to believe, that we should soon get round the shoals. On the 15th, seeing neither land nor breakers, we bore away N. W. by W. but the shoals still continuing, we plied up for a clear sea to the S. E. by doing which, we did but just weather the point of the reef we had passed the preceding evening. To render our situation the more dangerous, the wind began to fail us; in the afternoon it fell a calm; and we were left to the mercy of a great swell, setting directly for the reef, which was not more than a league from us. The pinnace and cutter were hoisted out to tow the ship, but they were of little service. At seven o'clock, a light air at N. N. E. kept her head to the sea; and on the 16th, at eleven o'clock A. M. we hoisted in the boats, and made sail to S. E. A tide or current had been in our favour all night, and was the cause (under God) of our getting so unexpectedly clear of the shoals. On Tuesday the 20th, at noon, Cape Colnet bore N. 78 d. W. distant six leagues.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15
E E 28
E E 32 25
E E 36 22
E E 40 20
E E 44 18

10
01

leagues. From hence the land extended round by the S. to E. S. E. till it was lost in the horizon, and the country appeared variegated with many hills and valleys. We stood in shore till sun-set, when we were about three leagues off. Two small islets lay distant from us five miles, and others lay between us and the shore. The country was mountainous, and had much the same aspect as about Balade. On the 21st, we found ourselves about six leagues from the coast. On the 22d, we stood in for the land, which at noon extended from N. 78 d. W. to S. 31 d. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. round by the S. The coast, in this last direction, seemed to trend more to the S. in a lofty promontory, which, in honour of the day, was named Cape Coronation, in latitude 22 d. 2 m. and in 167 d. 7 m. 30 f. E. longitude. On the 23d, at day-break, a high point appeared in sight, beyond the cape, which proved to be the S. E. extremity of the coast, to which we gave the name of Queen Charlotte's Foreland. It lies in latitude 22 d. 16 m. S. and in 167 d. 14 m. E. longitude. At noon, as we drew near Cape Coronation, we saw in a valley to the south a vast number of elevated objects, from whence a great deal of smoke kept rising all the day. Capt. Cook was of opinion these were a singular sort of trees, being, as he thought, too numerous to resemble any thing else. Some low land under the Foreland was entirely covered with them. The wind having veered round to the south, we tacked, and stood off, not thinking it safe to approach the shore in the dark. We stood in again at day-break, on the 24th, and at noon observed in latitude 21 d. 59 m. 30 f. Cape Coronation bearing west, southerly, distant seven leagues, and the North Foreland south, 32 d. W. At sun-set we discovered a low land, lying S. S. E. about seven miles from the Foreland, surrounded with shoals and breakers.

Sunday the 25th, we stood to S. S. W. with a view of getting round the Foreland, but as we advanced, we perceived more low isles, beyond the one already mentioned. We therefore stood to the south, to look for a
passage

passag
o'clock
spend
stretch
and o
hopes
which
of the
to S.
S. E.
ed wit
island
ed, w
therefo
round
league
in latit
ing ma
set, wit
till mid
On t
ral leag
from th
was str
isles.
distance
that the
that lie
N. W. l
ing in v
bearing
which f
account
clear of
appeare
tend as
the sea,
the north
ed with

passage without these. We got a light breeze at seven o'clock, which enabled us to steer out E. S. E. and to spend the night with less anxiety. On the 26th, we stretched to the S. E. for an island distant six leagues; and on the 27th, we tacked and stood to S. W. with the hopes of weathering it, but we fell two miles short, which obliged us to tack about a mile from the east side of the island, the extremes bearing from N. W. by N. to S. W. the hill W. and some low isles, lying off the S. E. point, S. by W. These last seemed to be connected with the large island by breakers. The skirts of this island were covered with the elevations before mentioned, which had much the appearance of tall pines, and therefore the Captain named the island from them. The round hill on the S. W. side may be seen fourteen leagues off. This isle of pines is about a mile in circuit, in latitude 22 d. 38 m. S. and in 167 d. 40 m. E. Having made two attempts to weather the island before sunset, with no better success than before, we stretched off, till midnight.

On the 28th, at day-break, we found ourselves several leagues to windward of the Isle of Pines. The coast from the S. E. round by the south to the west, we saw was strewed with sand banks, breakers, and small low isles. We ranged the outside of these at nearly a league distance, and as we passed, some others appeared; so that they seemed to form a chain extending to the isles that lie off the Foreland. In the afternoon, we steered N. W. by W. with a fine gale at east, with a view of falling in with the land; but we discovered two low islets, bearing W. by S. They were connected by breakers, which seemed to join those on our starboard; on which account we found it necessary to haul off S. W. to get clear of them all. At three o'clock P. M. more breakers appeared, which, from the mast head, were seen to extend as far as east-south; and, from the smoothness of the sea, we conjectured, that they might also extend to the north-east; so that we were in a manner surrounded with them. Having made a short trip to N. N. E.

we stood again to the south, and again had the alarming sight of a sea full of shoals, which we could only clear by returning in the track we came before. We tacked again nearly in the same place, and then anchored in a strong gale, in a bottom of fine sand, having a chain of breakers to the leeward. We spent the night in making short boards over the known space we had traversed in day: but under the uneasy apprehensions of being in the most imminent danger. This was very evident on the 29th. at day-light, which shewed our fears were not ill-founded, having had breakers continually under our lee, and at a very little distance from us. The people on the fore-castle and lee gangway, saw breakers under the lee bow, which we avoided by quickly tacking. We now kept a good look out, and managed the ship briskly, but after all the most prudential endeavours on our part, we must ascribe glory to God, being fully convinced, that we owed our safety and preservation to the interposition of a Divine Providence.

Captain Cook was now inclined to quit this dangerous coast, but, however, he resolved first to see what those trees were, which had been the subject of our speculations, and concerning which many contrary opinions had been maintained. Besides, he thought the discovery might be useful to future navigators. Being now but a few miles distant from the low islands laying off the Foreland, we bore down to that which was nearest to us. As we approached, we perceived it was unconnected with the neighbouring shoals, and thought we might get to anchor under its west and lee side. Having hauled therefore round the point of the reef, we attempted to ply to windward; but another reef to the north, which formed a narrow channel, through which ran a current against us, rendered this attempt fruitless. We therefore anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water, about a mile from the island, and having hoisted out the boat, sent a party on shore, accompanied by the botanists, who found the trees to be a sort of spruce
pines,

pine
muc
ner,
best
Capt
cum
S. 50
Fore
seen
vance
S. dis
the P
29 m
seen a
like a
Forel
bearin
On
cumfo
trees,
emplo
the Ca
saw he
ferent
same k
fire-pl
people
the wr
we had
that of
these tr
seventy
a foren
size ar
to supp
This d
for exc
Pacific
or yard

pines, very proper for spars, of which we were very much in want. The carpenter and his crew, after dinner, were sent ashore, to cut down such trees as would best answer our purpose. While this work was doing, Captain Cook took down the bearing of the several circumjacent lands, &c. The hill on the Isle of Pines bore S. 59 d. 30 m. E. the low point of Queen Charlotte's Foreland north 14 d. 30 m. W. the high land above it, seen over two low isles, N. 20 d. W. and the most advanced point of land to the W. bore W. half a point S. distant seven leagues. This point the Captain named the Prince of Wales's Foreland. It lies in latitude 22 d. 29 m. S. and in 166 d. 57 m. E. longitude: when first seen above the horizon, by reason of its height, it looks like an island. The true direction of the coast from the Foreland to this point, had been ascertained from several bearings.

On this small isle, which is not quite a mile in circumference, grew, besides the pines, a variety of other trees, shrubs, and plants; and these having sufficiently employed the botanists during our stay, on this account the Captain named the little island Botany Isle. We saw here several pigeons, doves, and water-snakes, different from any we had seen; likewise a hawk of the same kind as our English fishing hawks. A number of fire-places, and some remains of turtle, were signs of people having lately visited this place. In the sand lay the wreck of a canoe, exactly of the same make as those we had seen at Balade; and we now were convinced, that of these pines they made their canoes. Some of these trees measured twenty inches in diameter, were seventy feet long, and would have served very well for a foremast, had we wanted one. As trees of so large a size are the produce of so small a spot, it is reasonable to suppose, that larger ones are the growth of the main. This discovery may be valuable to future navigators; for except New Zealand, we know of no island in the Pacific ocean, where a ship can be supplied with a mast or yard, were she ever so much distressed for want of

one. This was the opinion of our carpenter, who was both mast-maker and shipwright in Deptford-yard. These trees shoot out their branches smaller and shorter than other pines, so that when wrought for use their knots disappear. We observed that the largest had the shortest branches, and were crowned at the top with a head like a bush. The wood is white, close grained, tough, yet light. Turpentine had oozed out of most of the trees, which the trees had formed into resin. This was found adhering to the trunks, and laying about the roots. The seeds are produced in cones. We found here another small tree or shrub, of the spruce fir kind: also a kind of scurvy-grass, and a plant which, when boiled, eat like spinnage. The purpose being answered for which we landed on this island, the Captain determined not to hazard the ship down to leeward, but to try to get to the southward of the shoals. The extent of this S. W. coast had been already pretty well determined; a more accurate survey might be attended with great risk and many dangers; it was too late to set up and employ the frame of the little vessel we had on board, and should the Resolution be hemmed in, we might by that means lose the proper season for getting to the south; these reasons induced the Captain to make some trips to weather the shoals to the leeward of Botany Isle. But when this was thought to be effected, on Friday the 30th, at three o'clock P. M. it fell calm, the swell, assisted by the current, set us fast towards the breakers, which were yet in sight to the S. W. but at ten o'clock a breeze springing up, we steered E. S. E. not venturing farther till day light.

On Saturday October the 1st, we had a very strong wind at S. S. W. attended by a great sea, so that we had reason to rejoice at having got clear of the shoals before this gale overtook us. We were now obliged to stretch to the S. E. and at noon were out of sight of land.

On the 2d, in the afternoon, we had little wind, and a great swell; but at eleven, a fresh breeze springing up,
we

we

23

O

gale

afid

Nor

whe

plor

of n

fast,

from

year

the

expl

in h

illan

latitu

gitud

N. W

its br

here

island

the N

Or

New

a blo

time

50 m

the c

were

with

had n

with

tions.

which

On

S. T

with

25 m

we stood to the south. We were now in the latitude of 23 d. 18 m. and in 169 d. 49 m. E. longitude.

On the 3d, at eight o'clock A. M. we had a strong gale with squalls from the S. W. and the Captain laid aside all thoughts of returning to the land we had left. Nor could such an attempt be thought a prudent one, when we consider, that we had a vast ocean yet to explore to the south; that the ship was already in want of necessary stores; that summer was approaching very fast, and that any considerable accident might detain us from pursuing the great object of this voyage another year. Thus necessity compelled us to leave a coast, for the first time, which we had discovered, but not fully explored. The Captain named it New Caledonia, and in his opinion, it is next to New Zealand, the largest island in the South Pacific Ocean. The extent is from latitude 19 d. 37 m. to 22 d. 30 m. S. and from longitude 163 d. 37 m. to 167 d. 14 m. E. It lies nearly N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and is about 87 leagues long, but its breadth does not any where exceed 10 leagues. It here must be noted, that in the extent given to this island, is included the broken or unconnected lands to the N. W.

On Thursday the 6th, we continued our course to New Zealand, with this view we sailed S. S. E. having a blowing fresh gale, but at noon it fell calm. At this time we found ourselves by observation, in latitude 27 d. 50 m. S. and in 171 d. 43 m. E. longitude. During the calm, which continued all this day, the carpenters were employed in caulking the decks. This was done with varnish of pine, covered with coral sand, as they had neither pitch, tar, nor resin left. The experiment with respect to the cement, far exceeded their expectations. In the afternoon, two albatrosses were shot, which, at this time, we thought equally good as geese.

On the 7th a breeze sprung up, and fixed at S. E. by S. The day following we had a gentle gale, attended with fine weather. On the 9th we were in latitude 28 d. 25 m, and in 170 d. 26 m. E. longitude. In the

evening, Mr Cooper struck a porpoise. It was six feet long, and a female, called by naturalists the dolphin of the ancients, and which differs from the common porpoise in the head and jaw, which are long and pointed. This had 88 teeth in each jaw. It was first soaked in water, then roasted, broiled, and fried. To us who had long subsisted on salt meat, it was more than palatable; and we thought the hallet, and lean flesh, a delicious feast.

On the 10th we discovered land, situated in latitude 29 d. 2 m. 30 f. S. and in 168 d. 16 m. E. longitude. Captain Cook called it Norfolk Island, in honour of the Howard family, who have the title of the duke of Norfolk. We anchored here in 22 fathoms water, on a bank, of coral sand, mixed with broken shells. After dinner, a party of us embarked in two boats, and landed on the island behind some large rocks. It was uninhabited, and we were undoubtedly the first who ever set foot upon it. We observed many trees and plants common to New Zealand, particularly the flax plant, which grows very luxuriant here. We found in great abundance the spruce pine-trees, straight and tall, and many of them as thick as two men could fathom. The soil of this island is rich and deep, the woods perfectly clear from underwood, and for about 200 yards from the shore, the ground is covered with shrubs and plants. We found here many sea and land fowl, of the same kind as in New Zealand; likewise cabbage-palm, wood-forrel, sow-thistle, and samphire. The cabbage-trees were not thicker than a man's leg, and from 10 to 20 feet high. The cabbage, each tree producing but one, is at the top, enclosed in the stem. This vegetable is not only wholesome, but exceedingly palatable; and some excellent fish we caught made a luxurious entertainment.

On Tuesday the 11th, we sailed from Norfolk Island, which we weathered, having stretched to S. S. W. We found the coast bounded with rocky cliffs and banks of coral sand. On the south side lie two isles, which serve

as roof
tern, &
the isl
leagues
the cre
Sound.

On M
mont, p
distant
gale, w
lotte's
manner
courses,
steered f
at night

On th
away fo
at nine
Cove, th
Captain
ed for th
when las
other.

caught:
some sha
On the
moored.

been mu
fore coun
struck an
erected
Plenty of
of the cr
oatmeal a
circumsta
and a pla
up in our
had been

On the

as roosting and breeding places, for white boobies, gulls, tern, &c. A bank of coral sand and shells, surrounds the isle, and extends, especially south-ward, seven leagues off. Our intention at this time was to refresh the crew, and repair the ship, in Queen Charlott's Sound.

On Monday the 17th, we had in view mount Egmont, perpetually covered with snow, bearing S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. distant about eight leagues. The wind now blew a fresh gale, with which we steered S. S. E. for Queen Charlotte's Sound. The wind at last increased in such a manner, that we could carry no more sail than the two courses, and two close-reefed topsails: under these we steered for Cape Stevens, which we made at 11 o'clock at night.

On the 18th, we made a trip to the north, and bore away for the sound. We hauled round Point Jackson, at nine A. M. and at 11 o'clock anchored before Ship Cove, the wind and tide not permitting us to get in. Captain Cook, in the afternoon went ashore, and looked for the bottle, with the memorandum, which he left when last here, but it was taken away by some person or other. The seine was hauled twice and only four fish caught: but several birds were shot, and the nests of some shags were robbed of their young ones.

On the 19th, the ship was warped into the cove, and moored. The sails were unbent, several of them having been much damaged in the late gale. The main and fore courses were condemned, and the top-masts were struck and unrigged. The forge was set up, and tents erected on shore for the reception of a guard, &c. Plenty of vegetables were gathered for the refreshment of the crew, which were boiled every morning with oatmeal and portable broth for breakfast. From some circumstances, as cutting down trees with saws and axes, and a place found where an observatory had been set up in our absence, we had no doubt but the Adventure had been in this cove since we left it.

On the 20th our men began to caulk the ship's files,
and

and on Saturday the 22d, the Captain, accompanied by the botanists, went to visit our gardens in Mortuara, which we found had been wholly neglected by those of the natives to whom we had given them in charge; nor had any care or cultivation been bestowed on them. Nevertheless, the soil seemed to agree well with the plants, for many of them were in a flourishing condition. Not having hitherto seen any of the natives, we made a fire on the land, hoping this would induce them to come down to us.

On the 24th, we saw two canoes coming down the sound, which, when the ship was seen by the people, retired behind a point on the west-side. After breakfast we went in search of them, and having fired at several birds, the report of our pieces gave notice of our being near, and they discovered themselves by hallooing to us in Shag Cove; but when we landed and drew near to their habitations, they all fled, except two or three men, who maintained their ground, with their weapons in their hands. The moment we landed they knew us, and their fears subsided. Those who had fled returned from the woods, embraced us over and over again, and expressed their joy at seeing us, by jumping and dancing in a frantic manner; but the men would not suffer some women we saw at a distance to come near us. We made them presents of hatchets and knives, and in return they gave us a quantity of fish they had just caught. The next morning they brought us more fish, which they bartered for Otaheitean cloth. We asked them on what account they were afraid of us, and also what was become of our old friends? To these questions we got no satisfactory answers; but they talked much about killing, which was variously understood by us.

On Wednesday the 26th, some of the natives went to the tents, and told our people, that a ship like ours had lately been lost, that some of the men landed at Vanna Aroa, near Terrawhittee, on the other side the strait; that a dispute happened between them and the natives;

native
the na
no lo
relate
ago;
scribed
beat to
story
of us,
Captai
the tru
them,
seemed
to thin
own pe
shore, b
we had
west ba
for a fe
the part
We sho
birds.
all the r
Tuesd
number
principa
green sto
had ever
by the b
same tha
it to be
but seein
incident
will be f
Pickersgi
tives, of
though
On the 5

natives; that several of the latter were shot; and that the natives got the better of them when they could fire no longer, and both killed and ate them. One of the relaters of this strange tale, said it was 20 or 30 days ago; but another said it was two moons since, and described as well as he could, in what manner the ship was beat to pieces. The following day they told the same story to others, which made the Captain, and indeed all of us, very uneasy about the Adventure, but when the Captain enquired himself, and endeavoured to come at the truth of these reports, the very people who raised them, denied every syllable of what they had said, and seemed wholly ignorant of the matter; so that we began to think the whole relation had reference only to their own people and boats. On the 28th, we again went on shore, but found no appearance of the hogs and fowls we had left behind. Having been a shooting to the west bay, in our return we got some fish from the natives for a few trifling presents. As we came back, some of the party thought they heard a pig squeak in the woods. We shot this day a good many wild fowl and small birds. On the 31st, it was somewhat remarkable that all the natives left us.

Tuesday the 1st of November, we were visited by a number of strangers, who came from up the sound. The principal article of trade they brought with them was green stone, some of which were the largest pieces we had ever seen. On the 3d, a large black sow was seen by the botanizing party, which we discovered to be the same that Capt. Furneaux left behind him. Supposing it to be a boar, we carried over to Long Island a sow, but seeing our mistake, we brought her back. This incident afforded us some hopes, that this island in time will be stocked with such useful animals. Lieutenant Pickersgill was told the same story by one of the natives, of a ship having been lost, but the man declared, though many people were killed, it was not by them. On the 5th, we obtained a seasonable and plentiful supply

ply of fish from our old friends. Early in the morning Capt. Cook, accompanied by Mr Sparrman, and the Messrs. Fosters, embarked in the pinnace, and proceeded up the sound, in order to discover a passage that way out to sea by the S. E. We were met by some fishermen, who all declared, there was no passage by the head of the sound; and soon after four men in a canoe concurred in the same opinion, confirming what the others had said, but they gave us to understand, that there was such a passage to the east. We therefore laid aside our first design of going to the head of the sound, and proceeded to this arm of the sea, on the S. E. side, which is about five leagues above the Isle of Mortuara. Within the entrance, at a place called Kotieghenooee, we came to a large settlement of the natives. Their chief, Tringo-bohee, and some of his attendants had lately been on board the ship, by whom we were received with great civility; and these people encouraged us to pursue the object we had in view. We therefore continued our course down this arm of the sea, E. N. E. and E. by N. having a view of several fine coves, which we passed, and at length we found it open, by a channel about a mile wide, into the strait. A strong tide ran out, and we had observed another setting down the arm. Near four o'clock P. M. this tide ceased, and was succeeded by the flood. The outlet lies S. E. by E. and N. W. by W. from Terrawhittee. A little within the entrance, we found thirteen fathoms water; but, from its situation, it seemed necessary to have a trading wind either to go in or out of this channel; but having determined to return on board before night, we had not time to make other necessary observations. We saw a Hippah, or strong hold, about two miles within the entrance, built on the north side, which we omitted visiting, though the inhabitants made signs for us to come on shore; but, without paying any regard to them, we made the best of our way for the ship, and returned on board about ten o'clock, bringing with us a few fish and birds; among

which

whi
kind
and
ticul
O
took
Pede
such
dresse
very
disting
him a
there
stand
that s
moon
been
respec
our su
strang
order t
ed wit
heartil
wine t
intoxic
two pi
all our
prove t
and th
we left
and shi
ready g
finished
this wo
large su
large en
lighted.
received
away, c
Vol. I.

which last were some ducks we had shot, of the same kind as those in Dusky Bay. The natives knew these, and several other sorts, by the drawings, and had a particular name for each.

On Sunday the 6th, our old friends returned, and took up their abode near the tents. An old man, named Pedero, made Capt. Cook a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs carry; and, in return, the Captain dressed him up in a suit of old cloaths, which made him very happy. He had a fine person, and his colour only distinguished him from an European. We enquired of him and his companion, if the Adventure had been there during our absence; and they gave us to understand, that she arrived a little time after our departure; that she staid about twenty days, and had been gone ten moons; and that neither she, nor any other ship, had been stranded on the coast. This account made us easy respecting the Adventure, but did not wholly remove our suspicions of some misfortune having happened to strangers. This day we went with a number of hands, in order to catch the sow and put her to boar, but we returned without seeing her. Pedero dined with us, partook heartily of every thing set before him, and drank more wine than any one at table, without being in the least intoxicated. On the 8th, we put a boar, a sow, and two pigs ashore, near Cannibal Cove; so that we hope all our repeated endeavours to stock this country will not prove fruitless. We found a hen's egg a few days ago, and therefore believe, that some of the cocks and hens we left here are still in-being. On the 9th, we unmoored, and shifted our station farther out of the cove, for the more ready getting to sea; but at present, the caulkers had not finished the sides of the ship; and we could not sail till this work was completed. Our friends brought us a large supply of fish, and, in return, we gave Pedero a large empty oil jar, with which he seemed highly delighted. We never saw any of our presents after they received them, and cannot say whether they gave them away, or what they did with them; but we observed,

every time we visited them, they were as much in want of hatchets, nails, &c. as if we had not bestowed any upon them. Notwithstanding these people are cannibals, they are of a good disposition, and have not a little humanity. We have before observed the inconveniences attending them for a want of union among themselves; and we are persuaded, though upon the whole very numerous, they are under no form of government. The head of each tribe, or family, is respected; respect may command obedience; but we are inclined to think, not one among them has either a right or power to enforce it. Very few, we observed, paid any regard to the words or actions of Tringo-bohee, though he was represented to us as a chief of some note. In the afternoon we went into one of the coves; where, upon landing, we found two families employed in different manners: some were making mats, others were sleeping; some were roasting fish and roots; and one girl was employed in heating stones, which she took out of the fire as soon as they were hot, and gave them to an old woman, who sat in the hut. The old woman placed them one upon another, laid over them some green celery, and over all a coarse mat: she then squatted herself down on the top of the heap, and sat very close. Probably this operation might be intended as a cure for some disorder, to be effected by the steams arising from the green celery, and we perceived the woman seemed very sickly.

The

Pa

Ca

tion

hab

Ma

disco

tions

near

Islan

the

TH a
Zealan
sails be
stretche
the stra
five lea
at sever
sixteen
we tool
order t
Cook's
parallels
which,
On the

The

The Departure of the Resolution from New Zealand—Her Passage from hence to Terra del Fuego—The Run from Cape Descada to Christmas Sound—The Coast described—Incidents and Transactions in the Sound—A Description of the Country, and an historical Account of the Inhabitants—The Resolution departs from Christmas Sound—Doubles Cape Horn—Her Passage through Strait Le Maire, and round Staten Island—A Harbour in this Isle discovered—The Coasts described—Geographical Observations—Remarks on Islands, and the Animals found in them, near Staten Land—Departure from Staten Island—The Island of Georgia discovered, and a descriptive Account of the same.

THURSDAY, Nov. 10, at day-break, we weighed and sailed from Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand, having a fine breeze at W. N. W. All our sails being set, we got round the Two Brothers, and stretched for Cape Campbell, at the S. W. entrance of the strait. We passed this at four o'clock P. M. distant five leagues, and then steered S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. On the 11th, at seven o'clock P. M. Cape Palliser bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant sixteen leagues, from which cape, for the third time, we took our departure. We now steered S. by E. in order to get into the latitude of 54 or 55 d. Captain Cook's intention being to cross this vast ocean in these parallels, hoping by this course to pass over those parts, which, the preceding summer, were left unexplored. On the 12th, A. M. we were in latitude 43 d. 13 m.

30 f. S. and in 176 d. 41 m. E. longitude, when we saw an uncommon fish of the whale kind; and, in the afternoon, the Pintado peterels began to appear. On the 13th, at seven in the evening, we hauled up towards a fog bank, which we took for land; after which we steered S. E. by S. and saw a seal. At noon, by observation, we found our latitude to be 44 d. 25 m. S. longitude 177 d. 31 m. E. On the 14th, we saw another seal in latitude 45 d. 54 m. and 179 d. 29 m. E. longitude. On the 15th, having passed the great meridian of 180 d. E. which divides the globe into two equal parts, we began to reckon our longitude west of Greenwich. At noon our latitude observed was 49 d. 33 m, longitude 175 d. 31 m. W. On Thursday the 17th, we saw a seal, some penguins, and pieces of sea weed. On the 19th, we were in latitude 53 d. 43 m. and on the 20th, at noon, in latitude 54 d. 8 m. longitude 162 d. 18 m. W. Monday, the 21st, we steered S. E. by S. and at noon we saw abundance of blue peterels, in latitude 55 d. 31 m. longitude 160 d. 29 m. On the 22d, at noon, our latitude by observation was 55 d. 48 m. longitude 156 d. 56 m. W. In the afternoon, having a light breeze at S. S. E. we steered east, northerly; and, in the night, was a faint appearance of the Aurora Australis. On the 23d, we were in latitude 55 d. 46 m. S. longitude 156 d. 13 m. W. when a fresh gale blew from the west, and we steered now E. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. On the 26th, we were in latitude 55 d. 8 m. S. and in 148 d. 10 m. W. longitude.

On Sunday, the 27th, we steered east, having a steady fresh gale; and at noon, were in latitude 55 d. 6 m. S. and in 138 d. 56 m. W. longitude. In this parallel, not a hope remained of finding any more land in the Southern Pacific Ocean. We resolved therefore to steer for the west entrance of the Straits of Maghellan, with a view of coasting the south side of Terra del Fuego, round Cape Horn, to the Strait Le Maire. We thought this track might be an advantage to navigation and geography, as the world is little acquainted with that shore.

In the
away o
bolt ro
was sy
not of
vals.
in 134
abated;
veering
were no
W. lon
seen.

On T
P. M. it
at S. E.
gale at fo
deviation
S. W. an
east, incli
evening,
58 m. W
showers;
gale, with
found our
and in 10
now to N.
the south l
a small be
102 d. 7 r
N. and or
latitude 53
and variou
ship. On
continued
fixing at
morning,
13 d. 25 n
53 m. W.
15th, in t

In the afternoon we had squally weather, which carried away our top-gallant mast. On the 28th, A. M. the bolt rope of the main top-sail broke, whereby the sail was split. The ropes, to our square sails especially, are not of a size and strength sufficient to wear out the canvass. At noon we were in latitude 55 d. 20 m. S. and in 134 d. 16 m. W. longitude. On the 29th, the wind abated; and on the 30th, at 8 o'clock P. M. the wind veering to N. E. we tacked, and stood to E. S. E. We were now in latitude 55 d. 22 m. S. and in 128 d. 45 m. W. longitude. Several albatrosses and peterels were seen.

On Thursday, the 1st of December, at 3 o'clock P. M. it fell a calm, but at about seven, we got a wind at S. E. with which we stood N. E. On the 5th, a fine gale at south, enabled us to steer east, with very little deviation to the north; and the wind now altering to S. W. and blowing a steady gale, we continued to steer east, inclining a little to south. At six o'clock in the evening, we were in latitude 53 d. 8 m. and in 115 d. 58 m. W. longitude. On the 6th, we had some snow showers; and on Wednesday, the 7th, a fine pleasant gale, with showers of rain. On the 9th, at noon, we found ourselves by observation, in latitude 53 d. 37 m. and in 103 d. 44 m. W. longitude. The wind veered now to N. E. and afterwards came insensibly round to the south by the E. and S. E. On the 10th, we passed a small bed of sea weed, in latitude 54 d. longitude 102 d. 7 m. W. On the 11th, we steered E. $\frac{1}{2}$ a point N. and on the 12th, at six in the evening, we were in latitude 53 d. 35 m. longitude 95 d. 52 m. W. Many and various sorts of albatrosses were hovering about the ship. On Monday, the 12th, we had a calm which continued till midnight, when a breeze from the south fixing at west, we steered east. On the 14th, in the morning, we found the variation of the compass to be 13 d. 25 m. E. in latitude 53 d. 25 m. longitude 87 d. 53 m. W. which increased in such a manner, that on the 15th, in the latitude of 53 d. 30 m. longitude 82 d. 23 m.

23 m. W. it was 170 E. This day we saw a penguin; and on the 16th, a seal, and some diving peterels. On Saturday the 17th, the variation increased to 21 d. 38 m. being in latitude 53 d. 16 m. S. and in 75 d. 9 m. W. longitude. All this day we steered east by north, and east half north, under all the sails we could carry, in hopes of seeing the land before night; but not making it till ten o'clock, we steered east, in order to make sure of falling in with Cape Desceada. At midnight we made the land, extending from N. E. by N. to E. by S. about six leagues distant; upon seeing which we brought to with the ship's head to the south. Having sounded, we found seventy-five fathoms water, the bottom good. The land before us we concluded to be the west coast of Terra del Fuego, near the west entrance of the Straits of Maghellan. This being the first run made by Captain Cook in a high southern latitude, we have been very particular in noting all the material circumstances we could collect together. In this course the weather had been neither unusually stormy, nor cold. Before we arrived in the latitude of 50 d. the mercury in the thermometer fell gradually from sixty to fifty; and in the latitude of 55 d. it was generally between forty-seven and forty-five; once or twice it fell to forty-three. These observations were made at noon. We had now entirely left the Southern Pacific Ocean, and we trust the world will give our Captain some credit for having well explored the same; nor could, in our opinion, more have been done towards obtaining that end, in one voyage, than has been effected in this. We must not omit to observe, that soon after we left New Zealand, Mr Wales contrived, and fixed up an instrument, which measured with great accuracy, the angle the ship rolled in, when sailing large, and in a great sea; and that in which she lay down, or heeled, when sailing upon a wind. The greatest angle he observed the Resolution to roll, the sea at the time not being unusually high, was 38 d.

On S
by E. a
a high
o'clock
Cape D
low roc
53 d. S.
tinued to
a projec
siderable
Gloucest
situated S
Landfall.
strewed w
appeared
islands.
ren, but i
patches of
of the coa
we steered
cester bord
vanced po
leagues.
in latitude
gtitude. V
peared to
approach v
Two rocks
like a sugar
surface; an
islets, S. by
great bay of
the bottom
less than sev
direction of
land was to
Barbara, wh
mentioned b
the cape to a

On Sunday the 18th, we made sail, and steered S. E. by E. along the coast. Near a league from the main is a high ragged isle, which we called Landfall. At four o'clock A. M. we were N. and S. of the high land of Cape Descada, distant nine leagues; but saw none of the low rocks said to lie off it. This cape lies in latitude 53 d. S. and in 74 d. 40 m. W. longitude. We continued to range the coast, and at eleven o'clock, we passed a projecting point, having a round surface, and of considerable height, to which we gave the name of Cape Gloucester. It has the appearance of an island, and is situated S. S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. seventeen leagues from the Isle of Landfall. Between these the coast forms two bays, strewed with rocky islets, rocks, and breakers. The coast appeared unconnected, as if formed of a number of islands. The land is very mountainous, rocky, and barren, but in some places, covered with tufts of wood, and patches of snow. From Cape Gloucester, the direction of the coast is nearly S. E. but to Cape Noir, for which we steered, the course is S. S. E. At noon Cape Gloucester bore north, distant eight miles, and the most advanced point of land bore S. E. by S. distant seven leagues. At three o'clock we passed Cape Noir, situated in latitude 54 d. 30 m. S. and in 73 d. 33 m. W. longitude. When at a distance, the land of the cape appeared to be an island disjoined, but upon a nearer approach we found it connected by a low neck of land. Two rocks lie at the point of the cape, the one pointed like a sugar-loaf, the other not so high, with a rounder surface; and two leagues from the cape are two rocky islets, S. by E. After passing these last, we crossed the great bay of St Barbara, steering E. S. E. The land at the bottom of it, which we just perceived, could not be less than seven leagues off. We observed a space, in the direction of E. N. E. from Cape Noir, where not any land was to be seen: this may be the channel of St Barbara, which opens into the Straits of Maghellan, as mentioned by Frazier; with whose description we found the cape to agree very well.

On

On the 19th, at two o'clock A. M. we passed the S. E. point of the bay of St Barbara, which the Captain called Cape Desolation, on account of the country near it, being the most desolate and barren that ever was seen. It lies in latitude 54 d. 55 m. S. and in 72 d. 12 m. W. longitude. To the east of the cape about four leagues, and at the mouth of a deep inlet, is a pretty large island, and some others less considerable. In latitude 55 d. 20 m. S. we were three leagues from an island, which Capt. Cook named Gilbert Isle, after his master. Its surface is composed of several unequal peaked rocks, nearly of the same height with the rest of the coast. S. E. of this isle are breakers, and some smaller islands. Scarcely any prospect can appear with a more barren and savage aspect, than the whole of this country; which is composed of rocky mountains, without a single trace of vegetation to enliven or vary the scene. The mountains of the coast terminate in horrible precipices, whose craggy summits tower to a vast height; and those that are inland are covered with snow; but the former are not. The first we judged to belong to the main of Terra del Fuego, and the last to be islands, which to appearance formed a coast. Having made a short trip to the south, we stood in for the land, the nearest point of which in sight, bore east-ten leagues. It is a lofty promontory, E. S. S. from Gilbert Isle, in latitude 55 d. 26 m. S. and in 70 d. 25 m. W. longitude. From our present point of view, it terminated in two high towers, and within them, a hill shaped like a sugar loaf. To this rock we gave the name of York Minster. To the westward of this head land, about two leagues, we discovered a large inlet, the west point of which we fetched in with; and tacked in 41 fathoms water, not more than half a league from the shore. To the westward of this inlet we saw another, with several islands at its entrance.

On Tuesday the 20th, we perceived the ship to drive off the shore out to sea; which we attributed to a current; for by the melting of the snow, the inland waters

will

will
In the
stood
the n
and t
ing
York
ter.
point
serve
to the
found
disagr
resolv
our fa
contin
an un
east-f
boat a
near t
the in
selves
a botto
On
look f
above
exceed
stone
of fresh
could
also the
dispatc
place,
boat, fa
land w
mentio
which
and for
was do
Vol.

will occasion a stream to run out of most of these inlets. In the evening, a breeze springing up at E. by S. we stood in for the land, being desirous of entering one of the many ports, in order to take a view of the country, and to recruit our stock of wood and water. In standing in for an opening, apparently on the east side of York Minster, we sounded in 40 and 60 fathoms water. Our last soundings were nearly between the two points that form the entrance to the inlet, which we observed to branch out into two arms. We stood for that to the east, as being clear of islets; but upon sounding, found no bottom with a line of 120 fathoms. In this disagreeable situation a breeze springing up, our Captain resolved to stand up the inlet; but night approaching, our safety depended on casting anchor, we therefore continued sounding, but always, to our mortification, in an unfathomable depth. We now hauled up under the east-side of the land, and seeing a small cove, sent the boat a-head to sound, while we kept with the ship as near the shore as possible. The boat soon returned with the information we wished for, and we thought ourselves happy, when we had anchored in 30 fathoms, in a bottom of sand and broken shells.

On the 21st, a party was sent out with two boats, to look for a more secure station. They found a cove above the point under which the ship lay, in which was exceeding good anchorage. At the head of it was a stoney beach, a valley covered with wood, and a stream of fresh water; conveniencies more favourable than we could expect would be found in such a place. Here also they shot three geese out of four. Orders were now dispatched by Lieut. Clerke to remove the ship into this place, and we proceeded with Capt. Cook in the other boat, farther up the inlet. We now discovered, that the land we were under, which disjoined the two arms, as mentioned before, was an island, at the north end of which the two channels united. We returned on board, and found every thing in readiness to weigh; which was done, and all the boats sent out to tow the ship

round the point; but a light breeze springing up, we were obliged to drop the anchor again, lest the ship should fall upon the point. However, we soon after got round this under our stay-sails, and anchored in 20 fathoms water. We were now shut in from the sea by the point above-mentioned, which was in one with the extremity of the inlet to the east. Our distance from shore was not more than a third of a mile; and islets off the next point above us covered the ship from the N. W. from which quarter the wind had the greatest force. All hands were immediately employed: some to clear a place to fill water; some to cut wood, and others to pitch a tent, for the reception of a guard; and Mr Wales could find no better station for his observatory than the top of a rock, not exceeding nine feet over.

On Thursday, the 22d, two parties were sent out, one to examine and draw a sketch of the channel, on the other side of the island, and the Captain, attended by the botanists, to survey the northern side of the sound. In our way to this latter place, we landed on the point of a low isle covered with herbage, several spots of which had been lately burnt; these, with a hut we discovered, were signs that people were in the neighbourhood. From hence we proceeded round the east end of Burnt Island, over to what we supposed to be the main land of Terra del Fuego, where we discovered a fine harbour, surrounded by high rocks, down which glided many purling streams, and at their feet were some tufts of trees, very fit for fuel. Captain Cook named this harbour the Devil's Bason. It is divided into two parts, an inner and an outer one; and the communication between them is by a narrow channel five fathoms deep. We found at one time 17 in the outer bason, and 23 in the inner one. This last is shaded from the sun in his meridian splendor, and, though very secure, is intolerably gloomy. The outer harbour has not so much of this inconvenience, is equally safe, and rather more commodious. It lies about a mile distant from the east end of Burnt Island, in the direction north. We discovered

other

othe
fuel,
was a
lake,
whol
which
other
this d
bount
finall,
rotten
of the
bited.
much
at fever
During
our ma
precedi
board, a
only on
of rails
were Li
board fo
other ch
smaller,
On th
mine the
ceeded i
going ro
he called
the passa
had disco
is necessa
and with
black rock
board.
we hauled
the beds
were 12

other harbours to the west of this, and found wood for fuel, and fresh water, in or near them all. Before one was a stream of fresh water, which came out of a large lake, continually supplied by a falling cascade. The whole country is a barren rock, except the fire wood which grows here, and what we saw of it affords no other vegetation of any kind. But to compensate for this dreary scene of sterility, about the sea coast, the all-bountiful God of nature has scattered many large and small, but fruitful low islands, the soil of which is a black rotten turf, composed of decayed vegetables. On one of these we saw several huts that had lately been inhabited. Near them was a good deal of celery; we put as much as we could conveniently stow in our boat, and at seven o'clock in the evening we returned on board. During our absence a fatal accident had befallen one of our marines, who had not been seen since 11 o'clock the preceding night. We supposed he had fallen overboard, and was drowned. In this excursion we shot only one duck, three shags, and about the same number of rails or sea-pics. The other party, among whom were Lieutenant Clerke and Pickersgill, returned on board some hours before us. On the west-side of the other channel, they discovered a large harbour and one smaller, of both which they took sketches.

On the 23d, Lieutenant Pickersgill went out to examine the east side of the sound, while the Captain proceeded in the pinnace to the west-side, with a view of going round the island under which the ship lay, which he called Shag Island; and in order to take a survey of the passage leading to the harbours, our two lieutenants had discovered the day before. If coming from sea, it is necessary to leave all the rocks and islands, lying off and within York Minster, on the larboard-side, and the black rock, off the south-end of Shag Island, on the starboard. When abreast of the south-end of that island, we hauled over for the west shore, taking care to avoid the beds of weeds, indications of rocks, some of which were 12 fathoms under water; but we thought it the safest

safest way always to keep clear of them. The entrance into the large harbour, which we called Port Clerke, is to the north of some low rocks, lying off a point on Shag Island. This harbour lies in W. by S. a mile and a half. It hath wood and fresh water, and from 12 to 24 fathoms deep. To the southward of Port Clerke, seemed to be another harbour, formed by a large island; without this, between it and York Minster, the whole sea appeared strewed with islets, rocks, and breakers. At the south end of Shag Island the shags breed in vast numbers, in the cliffs of the rocks. We shot some of the old ones, but could not come at the young ones, which are by much the best eating. We likewise brought down three wild geese, a valuable acquisition at this time. We returned and got on board at seven o'clock in the evening. Mr Pickersgill, who had just before arrived, informed us, that the land opposite to our station is an island; that on another, more to the north, he found many terns eggs; and in a cove between that and the East Head, he had shot one goose, and got some young goslings.

On Saturday the 24th, two sporting parties went over, one by the N. E. side of the island above mentioned, which was named Goose Island; and the other accompanied by Capt. Cook, went by the S. W. side. When under the island we had plenty of sport, having shot as many geese as served for a Christmas meal for our men, which proved much more agreeable to them than salt beef and pork. We all returned heartily tired, by climbing over the rocks, when we had landed, in pursuit of our game. In the south of the island were abundance of geese, it being their moulting season, when most of them come on shore, and are not disposed to fly. Our party got sixty-two, and Mr Pickersgill, with his associates fourteen. Plenty of shags were seen in the cove, but we proceeded without spending time or shot upon them. We were informed by our people on board, that a number of natives, in nine canoes, had been along-side, and some of them in the ship: they

seemed

seeme
of the

On
visit f
nation
M. de
nually
half-ft
slightly
so as t
but the
scarcely
were o
than th
with a
fancy
childre
all the
rows v
which
they ar
We th
better p
Their c
was a fi
serve as
They a
any one
which c
&c. a tr
ened by
that was
England
than we
real disa
by the d
strench t
place Ch
joyful fe

seemed well acquainted with Europeans, and had several of their knives among them.

On the 25th being Christmas-day, we had another visit from them. They appeared to be of the same nation, we had formerly seen in Succets Bay; and which M. de Bougainville calls Pecharas, because they continually used this word. They are a diminutive, ugly, half-starved, beardless race; almost naked, being only slightly covered with a seal-skin or two joined together, so as to make a cloak, which reached to their knees; but the greatest part of them had but one skin, which scarcely covered their shoulders, and all their lower parts were quite naked. The women are clothed no better than the men, except that they cover their nakedness with a seal-skin flap. They are inured from their infancy to cold and hardships, for we saw two young children at the breast entirely naked. They remained all the time in their canoes, having their bows and arrows with them, and harpoons, made of bone, with which we imagined, they strike and kill fish. Both they and their cloaths smelt most intolerably of train oil. We threw them some biscuit, but they seemed much better pleased with our presents of medals, knives, &c. Their canoes were made of bark, and on each of them was a fire. They had also large seal hides, which may serve as covering to their huts, on shore, in foul weather. They all departed before dinner, nor did we believe any one invited them to partake of our Christmas cheer, which consisted of geese, roast and boiled, goose-pye, &c. a treat little known to us; and which was heightened by Madeira wine, the only article of our provisions that was mended by keeping. Perhaps our friends in England did not celebrate Christmas more cheerfully than we did; and, with such fare it would have been a real disappointment, to have had our appetites spoiled, by the dirty persons of those filthy people, and by the stench they always carried about them. We called this place Christmas Sound, in honour of the day, and the joyful festival we had celebrated here. On the 26th, we

were

were again visited by some of the natives, and as it was very cold in the evening, and they stood shivering on the deck, the Captain from an impulse of humanity, gave them some old canvas and baize for covering.

On Tuesday the 27th, every thing on shore was ordered on board. The weather being fine and pleasant, a party of us went round by the south side of Goose Island, and picked up 31 of these kind of birds. On the east side of the island, to the north of the east point, is a good place for ships to lay in that are bound for the west. When we returned on board, we found all the work done, and the launch in, so that we now only waited for a fair wind to put to sea. The entrance of Christmas Sound, which we expected soon to leave, is three leagues wide, and situated in latitude 55 d. 27 m. S. and in 70 d. 16 m. W. longitude; in the direction of north 37 d. W. from St Ildesonso Isles, distant 10 leagues. We think these isles to be the best land mark for finding the sound. It is adviseable for no one to anchor very near the shore, for we generally found there a rocky bottom. The refreshments to be procured at this place are wild fowl, very good celery, and plenty of muscles, not large, but well tasted. The geese are smaller than our English tame ones, but eat as well as the best of them. The gander is all white; the female spotted with black and white, with a large white spot on each wing. Here is also a kind of duck, which our people called the race-horse, on account of its swiftness on the water, for the wings being too short to support the body in the air, it cannot fly. We believe, from certain circumstances, the people do not live here throughout the whole of the winter-season, but retire to parts where the weather is less severe. To appearance, they are the most wretched of all the natives we have seen. They live in an inhospitable clime, and do not seem to have sagacity enough to provide themselves with the comforts of life, particularly in the article of cloathing. Barren as this country is, our botanists found therein many unknown

know
ceth th
and pl
many o
On V
with a
being th
one leag
S. E. th
south, fo
coast ap
were ab
point of
to the ea
tion of N
five o'clo
These are
latitude 5
tude. W
the east.
three four
covered by
E. six leag
called Fall
Terra del
From the
direction
14 or 15
On the
by S. at fo
bore E. by
hill over i
point not
sufficient t
past seven
Atlantic C
side of th
low stragg

known plants. In the woods is the tree which produceth the winter's bark; also the holly-leaved barberry; and plenty of berries, which we call cranberry; with many other sorts common in these straits.

On Wednesday the 28th, we sailed from this sound, with a light breeze at N. W. At noon Point Nativity, being the east part of the sound, bore N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. distant one league and a half. We steered S. E. by E. and E. S. E. till four o'clock P. M. when we hauled to the south, for the sake of a nearer view of St Ildesonso. The coast appeared indented as usual, and at this time we were abreast of an inlet lying E. S. E. At the west point of this are two high peaked hills, and below them, to the east, two round ones, or small isles, in the direction of N. E. and S. W. from each other. At half past five o'clock, we had a good sight of Ildesonso Isles. These are situated about six leagues from the main, in latitude 55 d. 53 m. S. and in 69 d. 41 m. W. longitude. We now resumed and continued our course to the east. At sun-set the nearest land bore S. E. by E. three fourths E. and the west point of Nassau Bay, discovered by Admiral Hermite in 1624, bore north 80 d. E. six leagues distant. This point, in some charts, is called False Cape Horn, as being the southern point of Terra del Fuego. It lies in latitude 55 d. 39 m. S. From the above mentioned inlet to this false cape, the direction of the coast is nearly E. half a point S. distant 14 or 15 leagues.

On the 29th, at three o'clock A. M. we steered S. E. by S. at four Cape Horn, for which we now made sail, bore E. by S. at a distance it is known by a round high hill over it; and though to the W. N. W. there is a point not unlike this, yet their situations will always be sufficient to distinguish the one from the other. At half past seven we passed this cape, and entered the Southern Atlantic Ocean. Two peaked rocks are on the N. W. side of the cape, resembling sugar loaves; also other low straggling rocks to the west, and one south of it.

From

From Christmas Sound to this cape, the course is E. S. E. one fourth east, distant 31 leagues. The rocky point three leagues from Cape Horn, in the direction E. N. E. we called Mistaken Cape. It is the southern point of the easternmost of Hermite Isles. There seemed to be a passage between these two capes into Nassau Bay. In this passage some isles were seen, and on the west side, the coast had the appearance of forming good bays and harbours. In some charts Cape Horn is laid down as part of a small island, which we had not in our power to confirm or contradict, as the hazy weather rendered every object indistinct. From hence we steered E. by N. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. without the rocks that lie off Mistaken Cape. Having passed these, we steered N. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. and N. E. for Strait le Maire. At eight o'clock in the evening, finding ourselves near the strait, we shortened sail, and hauled the wind. The sugar-loaf on Terra del Fuego bore N. 33 d. W. the point of Success Bay just open of the cape of the same name, bearing N. 20 d. E.

On the 30th, during the calm, we were driven by the current over to Staten Land; but a light breeze springing up at N. N. W. we stood over for Success Bay. We hoisted our colours, and, having before fired two guns, we perceived a smoke rise out of the woods, made by the natives above the south point of the bay, which was the place where they resided when we were here in 1769. A party was now sent into Success Bay, in order to discover if any traces of the Adventure were to be seen there; but they returned without having found any. Our ship's name, &c. were written on a card, and nailed to a tree which stood near the place where it was likely the Adventure would water, should she be behind us, and put into this place. When Mr Pickersgill landed, the natives received him and his associates with great courtesy. They were cloathed in seal skins, had bracelets on their arms, and appeared to be the same kind of people we had seen in Christmas Sound. The bracelets were made of silver wire, wrought somewhat like the hilt of a sword, and no doubt, the workmanship

of an
the ba
serve
del F
merou
Terra
Land.
tacked

On
for the
bore so
del Fu
we cor
as we
unequ
one at
for cle
ed, we
fake of
were n
found
course,
and bir
in want
had a st
length,
in 21 fa
extende
The w
sight of
bearing
sheltere
from th
secured
only op
We mi
more to
near the
sea with

of an European. According to Mr Pickersgill's report, the bay was full of whales and seals, and we had observed the same in the strait, particularly on the Terra del Fuego side, where the whales are exceeding numerous. Having now explored the south coast of Terra del Fuego, we resolved to do the same by Staten Land. At nine o'clock the wind veering to N. W. we tacked and stood to S. W.

On Saturday the 31st, in the morning, we bore up for the east end of Staten Land; which, at half past four bore south 60 d. E. the west end south 2 d. E. and Terra del Fuego south 40 d. W. The weather being hazy, we could only now and then get sight of the coast; but as we advanced to the east, several islands were seen of unequal extent. We were abreast of the most eastern one at eight o'clock A. M. when we waited some time for clear weather: but as it did not clear up as we wished, we hauled round the east end of the island, for the sake of anchorage, if we should think it necessary. We were now distant from the isle two miles, and sounding found only 29 fathoms water. As we continued our course, we saw on this island a great number of seals and birds, a strong temptation to our people who were in want of fresh provisions; and in hauling round it, we had a strong race or a current, like unbroken water. At length, after fishing for the best ground, we cast anchor in 21 fathoms water, about a mile from the island, which extended from north 18 d. E. to N. 55 d. and half W. The weather having soon after cleared up, we had a sight of Cape St John, or the east end of Staten Land, bearing south 75 d. E. distant four leagues. The island sheltered us from the north wind, and Staten Land from the south. The other isles lay to the west, and secured us from the north wind; yet we were not only open to the N. E. and E. but to the N. W. winds. We might have avoided this situation, by anchoring more to the west, but the Captain was desirous of being near the island, and of having it in his power to get to sea with any wind. In the afternoon a large party of

us landed, some to kill seals, and others birds or fish. The island was so stocked with the former, which made such a continual bleating, that we might have thought ourselves in Essex, or any other country where cows and calves are in abundance. Upon examination we found these animals different from seals, though they resembled them in shape and motion. The male having a great likeness to a lion, we called them on that account lions. We also found of the same kind as the New Zealand seals, and these we named sea-bears. We shot some of the large ones, not thinking it safe to go near them; though, in general, they were so tame, that we knocked some down with our sticks. Here were a few geese and ducks, and abundance of penguins and shags; the latter of which had young ones almost fledged, consequently just to our taste. In the evening our party returned sufficiently laden with provisions of various sorts.

On the 1st of January, 1775, being Sunday, Mr Gilbert was sent out to Staten Land, in search of a good harbour, nothing more being wanting, in the opinion of Capt. Cook, to make this place a good port for ships to touch at for refreshments. Another party went to bring on board the beasts we had killed the preceding day. The old lions and bears were good for nothing but their blubber, of which we made oil; but the flesh of the young ones we liked very well: even the flesh of the old lionesses was not much amiss; but that of the old males was abominable. Capt. Cook took an observation of the sun's meridian altitude (his height at noon) at the N. E. end of this island, which determined its latitude at 54 d. 40 m. 5 f. S. Having shot a few geese, some other birds, and supplied ourselves plentifully with young shags, we returned on board in the evening. About ten o'clock the party returned from Staten Land, where they found a good port, in the direction of north, a little easterly, from the N. E. end of the Eastern Island, and distant three leagues to the westward of Cape St John. The marks whereby it may be known, are some small islands lying in the entrance. The chan-
nel,

nel, v
mile
dually
two i
mixtu
fatho
with
merab
with
when
dung,
This p
the da
very c
or rou
with a
are ne
from t
On
St Joh
four m
Land,
tude 5
having
it. To
seemed
betwe
the cap
Cape S
leagues
Staten
north
to be
been su
it nece
neighb
The
inlets a
way;

nel, which is on the east side of these islands, is half a mile broad. The course is S. W. by S. turning gradually to W. by S. and W. The harbour is almost two miles long, and near one broad. The bottom is a mixture of mud and sand, and hath in it from 10 to 50 fathoms water. Here are several streams of fresh water, with good wood for fuel. On this island are an innumerable number of sea-gulls, the air was quite darkened with them, upon being disturbed by our people: and when they rose up, we were almost suffocated with their dung, which they seemed to emit by way of defence. This port which is named New-Year's Harbour, from the day on which it was discovered, and is certainly a very convenient one for shipping, bound to the west, or round Cape Horn. It is true, ships cannot put to sea with an easterly or northerly wind; but these winds are never known to be of long continuance, and those from the south or west quarters are the most prevailing.

On Tuesday the 3^d, we weighed and stood for Cape St John, which, in the evening, bore N. by E. distant four miles. This cape, being the eastern point of Staten Land, is a rock of considerable height, situated in latitude 54 d. 46 m. S. and in 64 d. 7 m. W. longitude, having a rocky islet lying close under the north point of it. To the westward of the cape is an inlet, which seemed to communicate with the sea to the south; and between this and the cape is a bay. Having doubled the cape, we hauled up along the south coast. At noon Cape St John bore north 20 d. E. distant about three leagues; Cape St Bartholomew, or the S. W. point of Staten Land, south 83 d. W. two high detached rocks north 80 d. W. By observation our latitude was found to be 54 d. 56 m. S. We now judged this land to have been sufficiently explored; but before we leave it, think it necessary to make a few observations on this and its neighbouring islands.

The S. W. coast of Terra del Fuego, with respect to inlets and islands, may be compared to the coast of Norway; for we believe within the extent of three leagues

there is an inlet or harbour, which will receive and shelter the first rate ships; but, till these are better known, every navigator must, as it were, fish for anchorage: add to this, there are several rocks on the coast; though as none lie far from land, the approach to them may be known by sounding, if they cannot be seen: so that upon the whole, we cannot think this the dangerous coast is has been represented by other voyagers. Staten Land is thirty miles in length, and nearly twelve broad. Its surface consists of craggy hills, towering up to a vast height, especially near the west end, and the coast is rocky. The greatest part of the hills, their summits excepted, is covered with trees, shrubs, and herbage. We cannot say any thing, that navigators may depend on, concerning the tides and currents on these coasts; but we observed that in Strait Le Maire, the southerly tide, or current, begins to act at the new and full moon about four o'clock. It may also be of use to our commanders to remark, that if bound round Cape Horn to the west, and not in want of any thing that might make it necessary to put into port, in this case, we would advise them not to come near the land; as by keeping out to sea, they would avoid the currents, which, we are convinced, lose their force at twelve leagues from land; and at a greater distance they would find none to impede their course. We would just add to these nautical observations, that all the time of our being upon the coast, we had more calms than storms; the winds were variable; nor did we experience any severe cold weather. The mercury in the thermometer, at noon, was never below 46 d. and during our stay in Christmas Sound, it was generally above temperate.

The island we landed on, and the same may be said of the neighbouring isles, is not much unlike Staten Land. Its surface is of equal height, having an elevation of thirty or forty feet above the sea, from which it is secured by a rocky coast. It is covered with sword grass, of a beautiful verdure, and of great length, growing in tufts, on little hillocks. Among these are the tracks of sea bears and

and
isle
agr
mi
ani
riet
we
cum
shou
lion
that
The
size
and
ing,
twen
desire
other
sea b
than
length
is tha
wolve
ferent
lions
all of
much
appro
tween
fright,
over t
are slu
if wak
heads,
advanc
place
birds, a
as we
eating,

and penguins, by which they retire into the centre of the isle. These paths rendered our excursions rather disagreeable, for we were sometimes up to our knees in mire. Indeed the whole surface is moist and wet. The animals on this little spot are sea lions, sea bears, a variety of sea fowls, and some land birds. The largest lion we saw was fourteen feet long, and eight or ten in circumference. The back of the head, the neck and shoulders, are covered with long hair, like those of the lion; the other parts of the body with short hair, like that of the horse: the colour of both is a dark brown. The female is of a light dun colour, and about half the size of the male. They live in herds near the sea-shore, and on the rocks. As this was the time for engendering, and bringing forth their young, we saw a male with twenty or thirty females about him, and he seemed very desirous of keeping them all to himself, beating off every other male who attempted to approach the flock. The sea bears are smaller than the lions, but rather larger than a common seal. All their hairs are of an equal length, something like an otter's, and the general colour is that of an iron-grey. This kind the French call sea wolves, and the English seals. They are, however, different from those in Europe and North America. The lions too may be called overgrown seals; for they are all of the same species. The hairs of the sea bears are much finer than those of lions. They permitted us to approach very near; but it was dangerous to go between them and the sea, for if they happened to take fright, they would come down in vast numbers, and run over those who could not get out of their way. They are sluggish, sleepy animals, and downright bullies; for if waked out of their sleep they would raise up their heads, snort, snarl, and look very fierce; but when we advanced to attack them, they always ran away. This place abounds with penguins, which are amphibious birds, and so stupid, that we could knock down as many as we pleased with a stick. They are not very good eating, though we thought them so when in want of better

ter fare. This was probably not their breeding season, for we saw neither eggs nor young ones. Here are great numbers of shags, who build their nests near the edge of the cliffs, on little hillocks; but a smaller kind, which we saw build in the cliffs of the rocks. The geese are of the same sort as those in Christmas Sound, but not in such plenty. They make a noise exactly like a duck. Here are several ducks of the sort we called race-horses: some we shot weighed thirty pounds. The sea fowls are curlews, gulls, tern, Port Egmont hens; and large brown birds, pretty good eating, which we called Molary's geese. The land birds were eagles, hawks, thrushes, and bald-headed vultures, which our sailors named Turkey-buzzards. Two new species of birds were here discovered, by our naturalists. One is the size of a pigeon, with a plumage white as milk, but not web-footed. When we first saw these kind of birds we took them for snow peterels, but they resemble them only in size and colour. They have a very bad smell, owing probably to their food being shell-fish and carrion, which they pick up along shore. The other sort, almost as big as a heron, resemble nearest curlews. Their plumage is variegated, their bills long and crooked, and their principal colours are light grey. All the animals of this little spot live in perfect harmony, and seem careful not to disturb each other's tranquillity. The sealions possess most of the sea-coast; the bears take up their quarters within the isle; the shags lodge in the highest cliffs; the penguins have their separate abode where there is the most easy communication to and from the sea; and the other birds have their places of retirement; yet we have observed them all, with mutual reconciliation, mix together, like domestic cattle and poultry in a farm-yard: nay we have seen the eagles and vultures sitting together among the shags, on their hillocks, without the latter, either young or old, being disturbed at their presence.

It will be remembered, that we left Staten Island on the 3d, and this day, being Wednesday the 4th, we saw the

the la
in the
us, th
fail b
heavy
order
coast
for of
peared
plore
observa
2 m. E
eight o
9 m. S
ed for t
seeing r
istence;
fouth, w
La Roch
these rea
to the pa
ble. On
tude of
the 8th,
in the af
tude 51
and sea-w
bore awa
servation,
47 d. 56
number
We now
titude 54
12th, bein
at noon: o
8 m. W. I
tion, laid o
the gulph

the land again, at three o'clock A. M. and at six o'clock in the afternoon a heavy squall came so suddenly upon us, that it carried away a top-gallant-mast, a studding-sail boom, and a fore studding-sail. This ended in a heavy shower of rain; and we now steered S. W. in order to discover the gulph of St. Sebastian, if such a coast existed, in which that gulph has been represented, for of this we entertained a doubt: however, this appeared to be the best course to clear it up, and to explore the southern part of this ocean. On the 5th, by observation, we were in latitude 57 d. 9 m. and 5 d. 2 m. E. longitude from Cape St John. On the 6th, at eight o'clock in the evening, we were in latitude 58 d. 9 m. S. and 53 d. 14 m. W. the situation, nearly, assigned for the S. W. point of the gulph of St Sebastian; but seeing no signs of land, we were still doubtful of its existence; and being also fearful, that by keeping to the south, we might miss the land said to be discovered by La Roche in 1675; and by the ship Lion, in 1756; for these reasons we hauled to the north, in order to get into the parallel laid down by Dalrymple as soon as possible. On the 7th, we were, near midnight, in the latitude of 56 d. 4 m. S. longitude 53 d. 36 m. W. On the 8th, at noon, a bed of sea-weed passed the ship; and in the afternoon, we were in latitude 55 d. 4 m. longitude 51 d. 45 m. On Monday, the 9th, we saw a seal, and sea-weed. On the 10th, at two o'clock A. M. we bore away east, and at eight E. N. E. At noon, by observation, we were in latitude 54 d. 35 m. S. and in 47 d. 56 m. W. longitude. We had at this time a great number of albatrosses and blue peterels about the ship. We now steered due east; and on the 11th, were in latitude 54 d. 38 m. longitude 45 d. 10 m. W. On the 12th, being Thursday, we steered east northerly; and at noon, observed in latitude 54 d. 28 m. S. and in 42 d. 8 m. W. longitude, which is near 3 d. E. of the situation, laid down by Mr Dalrymple for the N. E. point of the gulph of St Sebastian; but we had no other intimations.

tions of land, than seeing a seal, and a few penguins; and we had a swell from E. S. E. which we think would not have been, had any extensive track of land lay in that direction. On Friday, the 13th, we stood to the south till noon, when finding ourselves in latitude 55 d. 7 m. we stretched to the north. We now saw several penguins, and a snow peterel, which we judged to denote the vicinity of ice. We also found the air much colder than we had felt it since we left New Zealand. In the night we stood to the N. E. On Saturday, the 14th, at two o'clock P. M. in latitude 53 d. 56 m. 30 f. S. and in longitude 39 d. 24 m. W. we discovered land, in a manner wholly covered with snow. We founded in one hundred and seventy-five fathoms, muddy bottom. The land bore E. by S. distant twelve leagues.

On the 15th, the wind blew in squalls, attended with snow and sleet, and we had a great sea to encounter. At past four P. M. we stood the S. W. under two courses; but at midnight the storm abated, so that we could carry our top-sails double reefed. On the 16th, at four o'clock A. M. we stood to the east, with a moderate breeze, and at eight saw the land extending from E. by N. to N. E. by N. At noon, by observation, we were in latitude 54 d. 25 m. 30 f. and in 38 d. 18 m. W. longitude. The land was now about eight leagues distant. It proved to be an island, and we called it Willis's Island, from the name of the person who first discovered it from the mast-head. It is a high rock of no great extent. We bore up to it with a view of exploring the northern coast; and as we advanced perceived another isle to the north, between that and the main. Observing a clear passage between both we steered for the same, and in the midway found it to be two miles broad. Willis's isle is in the latitude of 54 d. S. and in 38 d. 23 m. W. longitude. The other, which was named Bird Island, a number of fowls being seen upon the coast, is not so high, but more extensive; and is near the N. E. point of the main land, which Capt. Cook named Cape North. We saw several masses of snow,

find
coast
thru
the
the
and
miles
distant
and
A. M.
short
we
For
the
land
and
The
sidera
break
were
savag
clouds
tual fr
be fee
ded gr
moss,
rous:
also th
brough
thesam
white
Cape of
shot tw
no othe
meet w
the sea
and the
returne
seals and
Vol. I.

snow, or ice, in the bottoms of some bays on the S. E. coast of this land, particularly in one which lies about three leagues to the S. S. E. of Bird Isle. On Monday the 16th, having got through the passage, we observed the north coast trended E. by N. for about three leagues, and then E. and E. by S. to Cape Buller, which is eleven miles. We ranged the coast till near night, at one league distance, when on sounding we found fifty fathoms, and a muddy bottom. On the 17th, at two o'clock, A. M. we made for the land. We now steered along shore till seven, when, seeing the appearance of an inlet, we hauled in for it. The Captain, accompanied by Mr Forster and others, went off in a boat, to reconnoitre the bay before we ventured in with the ship. They landed in three different places, displayed our colours, and took possession of the country in his majesty's name. The head of the bay was terminated by ice cliffs of considerable height; pieces of which were continually breaking off, which made a noise like a cannon. Nor were the interior parts of the country less horrible. The savage rocks raised their lofty summits till lost in the clouds, and valleys were covered with seemingly perpetual snow. Not a tree, nor a shrub of any size were to be seen. The only signs of vegetation were a strong bladed grass, growing in tufts, wild burnet, and a plant like moss, seen on the rocks. Sea-bears, or seals, were numerous: the shores swarmed with young cubs. Here were also the largest penguins we had yet seen. Some we brought aboard weighed above thirty pounds. We found the same sea-fowls as at the last island; also divers, the new white birds, and small ones, resembling those at the Cape of Good Hope, called yellow birds, which, having shot two, we found most delicious morsels. We saw no other land birds than a few small larks, nor did we meet with any quadrupeds. The rocks bordering on the sea were not covered with snow like the inland parts; and they seemed to contain iron ore. When the party returned aboard, they brought with them a quantity of seals and penguins. Not that we wanted provisions;

but any kind of fresh meat was acceptable to the crew; and even Capt. Cook acknowledged, that he was now, for the first time, heartily tired of salt diet of every kind; and that though the flesh of penguins could scarcely be compared to bullocks liver, yet its being fresh was sufficient to make it palatable. The Captain named the bay he had surveyed, Possession Bay; though according to his account of it, we think it to be no desirable appendage to his majesty's new possessions. It lies in latitude 54 d. 5 m. S. and in 37 d. 18 m. W. eleven leagues to the east of Cape North. To the west of Possession Bay, and between that and Cape Buller, lies the Bay of Isles, so called from the number of small isles lying before and in it.

On Tuesday the 17th, we made sail to the east, along the coast; the direction of which from Cape Buller, is 72 d. 30 m. E. for the space of twelve leagues, to a projecting point, which was named Cape Saunders. Beyond this is a pretty large bay, which obtained the name of Cumberland Bay. At the bottom of this, as also in some other smaller ones, were vast tracks of frozen ice, or snow, not yet broken loose. Being now just past Cumberland Bay, we hauled off the coast, from whence we were distant about four miles. On the 18th, at noon, by observation, we were in latitude 54 d. 30 m. S. and about three leagues from the coast, which stretched from N. 59 d. W. to S. 13 d. W. In this direction the land was an isle, which seemed to be the extremity of the coast to the east. At this time the nearest land was a projecting point, terminating in a round hillock, which, on account of the day was called Cape Charlotte; on the west side of which lies a bay, and it was named Royal Bay; and the west point we called Cape George. This is the east point of Cumberland Bay, in the direction of S. E. by E. from Cape Saunders, distant seven leagues. The Capes Charlotte and George lie in the direction of south 37 d. E. and north 37 d. W. six leagues distant from each other. The isle above-mentioned was named Cooper's, after
our

our first lieutenant. It is in the direction of S. by E. and eight leagues from Cape Charlotte. The coast between them forms a large bay, which we named Sandwich Bay. On the 19th, at sun-rise new land was discovered, which bore S. E. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. At the first sight of it, it had the appearance of a single hill, in the form of a sugar-loaf; but soon after other detached parts were visible above the horizon near the hill. We observed at noon in latitude 54 d. 42 m. 30 f. S. a lurking rock, that lies off Sandwich Bay, five miles from the land, bore W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. distant one mile. In the afternoon we had a view of a ridge of mountains, behind Sandwich Bay, whose icy tops were elevated high above the clouds. At six o'clock, Cape Charlotte bore north 31 d. W. and Cooper's Island W. S. W.

On Friday the 20th, at two o'clock, A. M. we made sail to the S. W. round Cooper's Island, which is one rock considerably high, about five miles in circuit, and one distant from the main. Here the main coast takes a S. W. direction for five leagues to a point, which we called Cape Disappointment, off which are three small isles. The most southern one is a league from the Cape, green, low, and flat. From the point, as we continued our course S. W. land was seen to open in the direction of north 60 d. W. distant beyond it nine leagues. It proved to be an isle, and was named Pickersgill Island. A point of what we had hitherto supposed to be the main, beyond this island, soon after came in sight in the direction of north 55 d. W. which united the coast at the very point we had seen, and taken the bearing of, the day we first came in with it, and left us not a single doubt, that this land which we had taken for part of a great continent, was no more than an island, 210 miles in circuit. We thought it very extraordinary, that an island between the latitude of 54 and 55 degrees, should, in the very height of summer, be almost wholly covered with frozen snow, in some places many fathoms deep; but more especially the S. W. coast. Nay, the very sides of the lofty mountains were cased with ice; but the

quantity of ice and snow that lay in the vallies is incredible, and the bottoms of the bays were bounded by walls of ice of considerable height. We are of opinion that a great deal of the ice formed here in winter, is broken off in spring, and floats into the sea; but we question whether a ten thousandth part of what we saw is produced in this island; from whence we are led to conclude, that the land we had seen the day before might belong to a more extensive track; and we still had hopes of discovering a continent. As to our present disappointment, we were not much affected thereby; for, were we to judge of the whole by this sample, whatever its extent might be, it would be an acquisition scarcely worth notice. This inhospitable, and dreary land, lies between the latitudes of 53 d. 57 m. and 54 d. 57 m. S. and between 58 d. 13 m. and 35 d. 34 m. W. longitude. We named this the Isle of Georgia, in honour of his Majesty. It extends S. E. by E. and N. W. by W. and is 93 miles long, and about 10 broad. The N. E. coast appears to have a number of bays, but the ice must prevent access to them the greatest part of the year; and at any time they will be dangerous harbours, on account of the continual breaking away of the ice cliffs. We are inclined to think, that the interior parts, on account of their elevation, never enjoy heat enough to melt the snow in such quantities as to produce a river; nor did we find even a stream of fresh water on the whole coast; and the N. E. side of this only receives sufficient warmth to melt the snow. We now quitted this coast, and directed our course to the E. S. E. for the land we had seen the preceding day. A strong gale overtook us, and we thought ourselves very fortunate in having got clear of the land before this came on.

On the 21st, the storm was succeeded by a thick fog, attended with rain; but having got a southerly breeze, we stood to the east till three in the afternoon; and then steered north in search of the land. On the 22d, we had thick foggy weather; but in the evening it was so clear that we could see two leagues round us; and

think-

thin
ed w
Or
more
at ele
rocky
leagu
might
peak
was th
now c
atched
ated in
lle, and
of our
interval
as ever,
were co
with fre
the 23d
got clear
ny shag
On the
W. distan
coast peak
e three
outh, be
o have a
ntervals,
w the i
leagues:
by E.

thinking we might be to the east of the land, we steered west.

On the 23d, a thick fog at six o'clock, A. M. once more compelled us to haul the wind to the south; but at eleven, we were favoured with a view of three or four rocky islots, extending from S. E. to E. N. E. about one league distant; and this, being the extent of our horizon, might be the reason why we did not see the sugar-loaf peak before mentioned. We were well assured, this was the land we had seen before, and which we had now circumnavigated; consisting of only a few detached rocks, the receptacles for birds. They are situated in latitude 55 d. S. twelve leagues from Cooper's Isle, and we named them Clerke's Rocks, Mr Clerke, one of our lieutenants, having first discovered them. This interval of clear weather was succeeded by as thick a fog as ever, on which we stood to the north. Thus we were continually involved in thick mists, and the shags, with frequent soundings, were our best pilots; but on the 23d we stood a few miles to the north, when we got clear of the rocks, out of soundings, and saw not any shags.

On the 24th, we saw the rocks bearing S. S. W, half W. distant four miles, but we did not still see the Sugar-loaf peak. At four o'clock, P. M. judging ourselves to be three or four leagues E. and W. of them, we steered south, being quite tired with cruising in thick fogs, only to have a sight of a few straggling rocks. Having, at intervals, a clear sky to the west, at seven o'clock we saw the isle of Georgia, bearing W. N. W. distant eight leagues: at eight we steered S. E. by S. and at ten S. by E.

The Resolution continues her Course.—Newland and Saunders Isles discovered.—Conjectures, and some Reasons that there may be Land about the South Pole.—The Resolution alters her Course South to the East—Endeavours to find Cape Circumcision.—Proceedings till her Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Sails for the Isle of Foyal.—And returns to England.—Captain Furneaux's Narrative, from the Time the Adventure was separated from the Resolution to her arrival in England, including the Report of Lieutenant Burney, concerning the untimely Death of the Boat's Crew who were murdered by some of the Natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand.

ON Wednesday the 25th, we steered E. S. E. We had a fresh gale at N. N. E. but the weather continued foggy, till towards the evening, at which time it cleared up. On the 26th, we held on our course with a fine gale from the N. N. W. but at day-light seeing no land to the east, and being in latitude 56 d. 33 m. S. and in 31 d. 10 m. W. longitude, we steered south. On the 27th, at noon, we were in the latitude of 59 d. 46 m. S. and had so thick a fog that we could not see a ship's length. We expected soon to fall with the ice, and on this account, it being no longer safe to sail before the wind, he hauled to the east with a gentle gale at N. N. E. When the fog cleared away we resumed our course to the south; but it returned again, which obliged us to haul upon a wind. By our reckoning we were now in the latitude of 60 d. S. and unless we discovered some certain signs of soon falling

in w
limit
have
proced
great
Cape
traver
to be
swell f
expect
we ma
down h
tian, do
little at
island,
ing visi
go over
gree, m
On th
east, wit
ed away
and smal
peterels,
shine, bu
we were
gitude.
course to
ber of lar
ice, and
ous to sta
stood back
were now
equal heig
tent. TH
strewed, h
On Sun
obliged to
to carry us
progress, c

in with land, the Captain determined to make this the limit of his voyage to the south. Indeed it would not have been prudent to have squandered away time in proceeding farther to the south, when there was as great a probability of finding a large track of land near Cape Circumcision. Besides it was an irksome task to traverse in high southern latitudes, where nothing was to be discovered but ice. At this time a long hollow swell from the west, indicated that no land was to be expected in such a direction; and upon the whole, we may venture to assert, that the extensive coast laid down by Mr Dalrymple, and his Gulph of St Sebastian, do not exist. The fog having receded from us a little at seven o'clock in the evening, we saw an ice island, penguins, and snow peterels. In the night, being visited with a return of the fog, we were obliged to go over against that space which we had, in some degree, made ourselves acquainted with in the day.

On the 28th, at eight o'clock, A. M. we stood to the east, with a gentle breeze at north. The weather cleared away, and we perceived the sea strewed with large and small bodies of ice. Some whales, penguins, snow peterels, and other birds were seen. We had now sunshine, but the air was cold. At noon, by observation, we were in 60 d. 4 m. S. and in 29 d. 23 m. W. longitude. At half past two o'clock, having continued our course to the east, we suddenly fell in with a vast number of large ice islands, and a sea strewed with loose ice, and the weather becoming hazy, made it dangerous to stand in among them. We therefore tacked, and stood back to the west, with the wind at the north. We were now surrounded with ice islands, all nearly of an equal height, with a flat level surface; but of various extent. The loose ice, with which the sea appeared strewed, had broke from these isles.

On Sunday the 19th, having little wind, we were obliged to traverse in such courses, as were most likely to carry us clear of them, so that we hardly made any progress, one way or other, throughout the whole day.

The

The weather was fair, but remarkably gloomy, and we were visited by penguins and whales in abundance. On the 30th, we tacked and stood to the N. E. and almost throughout the day it was foggy, with either sleet or snow. At noon we were in latitude 59 d. 30 m. S. and in 29 d. 24 m. W. At two o'clock, passed one of the largest ice islands we had seen during our voyage; and some time after two smaller ones. We now stood to N. E. over a sea strewn with ice. On the 31st we discovered land ahead, distant about one league. We hauled the wind to the north; but not being able to weather it, we tacked in 175 fathoms water, a league from the shore, and about half a one from some breakers. This land consisted of three rocky islets of considerable height. The outmost terminated in a lofty peak, like a sugar loaf, to which we gave the name of Freezland Peak, after the man who first discovered it. The latitude is 59 d. S. and 27 d. W. longitude. To the east of this peak, was seen an elevated coast, whose snow-capped summits were above the clouds. It extended from N. by E. to E. S. E. and we named it Cape Bristol, in honour of the noble family of Harvey. Also in latitude 59 d. 1, m. 30 f. S. and in 27 d. 45 m. W. another elevated coast appeared in sight, bearing S. W. by S. and at noon, it extended from S. E. to S. S. W. distant from four to eight leagues. This land we called Southern Thule, because the most southern that has yet been discovered. Its surface rises high, and is every where covered with snow. There were those of our company, who thought they saw land in the space between Thule and Cape Bristol. We judged it more than probable that these two lands are connected, and the space is a deep bay, which, though these are mere suppositions, was called Forster's Bay. Being not able to weather Southern Thule, we tacked and stood to the north, at one o'clock, and at four Freezland Peak was distant four leagues. Soon after the wind fell, and we were left to the mercy of a great westerly swell, which set right upon the shore; but at eight o'clock, the weather

th
E.
co
of
ho
to
C
in t
it b
nan
58
leag
seve
who
our
ty, b
vent
ready
many
tice.
heigh
which
pressio
some
of the
leagu
south
to be
when
north
E. and
east.
at eigh
On
north
ing no
hum
lost fig
N. E.
Vol. I

ther clearing up, we saw Cape Bristol, which bore E. S. E. ending in a point to the north, beyond which we could see no land. Thus we were relieved from the fear of being carried away by the swell, and cast on the most horrible coast in the world. We continued our course to the north all night, with a light breeze at west.

On Wednesday the 1st of February, at four o'clock in the morning, we had a view of a new coast. At six it bore north 60 d. E. and being a high promontory, we named it Cape Montague. It is situated in latitude 58 d. 27 m. S. and in 26 d. 44 m. W. longitude; eight leagues to the north of Cape Bristol. We saw land in several places between them, whence we concluded the whole might be connected. We wish it had been in our power to have determined this with greater certainty, but prudence would not permit the attempt, nor to venture near a coast the dangers of which have been already sufficiently pointed out. One ice island, among many others on this coast, particularly attracted our notice. It was level in surface, of great extent both in height and circuit, and its sides were perpendicular, on which the waves of the sea had not made the least impression. We thought it might have come out from some bay in the coast. At noon we were east and west of the northern part of Cape Montague, distant five leagues. Freezland Peak was twelve leagues, and bore south 16 d. E. By observation we found our latitude to be 58 d. 25 m. In the afternoon, at two o'clock, when standing to the north we saw land, which bore north 25 d. E. It extended from north 40 d. to 52 d. E. and it was imagined more land lay beyond it to the east. Cape Montague at this time bore south 66 d. E. at eight 40 d. and Cape Bristol S. by E.

On the 2d, at six o'clock A. M. having steered to the north during the night, new land was discovered, bearing north 12 d. E. distant ten leagues. We saw two hummocks just above the horizon, of which we soon lost sight. We now stood, having a fresh breeze at N. N. E. for the northernmost land we had seen the preceding

ceding day, which, at this time, bore E. S. E. By ten o'clock we fetched in with it, but not having it in our power to weather the same, we tacked at three miles from the coast. This extended from E. by S. to S. E. and appeared to be an island of about ten leagues circuit. The surface was high, and its summit lost in clouds. Like all the neighbouring lands, it was covered with a sheet of snow and ice, except on a point on the north side, and on two hills seen over it, which probably were two islands. These were not only clear of snow, but seemed covered with green turf. We saw also large ice islands to the south, and others to the N. E. At noon we tacked for the land again, in order, if possible, to determine whether it was an island; but a thick fog soon prevented the discovery, by making it unsafe to stand in for the shore; so that having returned, we tacked and stood to N. W. to make the land we had seen in the morning. We left the other under the supposition of its being an island, and named it Saunders' Isle, after Capt. Cook's honourable friend Sir Charles Saunders. It lies in latitude 57 d. 49 m. S. and in 26 d. 54 m. W. longitude, distant thirteen leagues from Cape Montague. The wind having shifted at six o'clock, we stood to the north; and at eight we saw Saunders' Island, extending from S. E. by S. to E. S. E. We were still in doubt if it were an island, and could not at this time clear it up, as we found it necessary to take a view of the land to the north, before we proceeded any farther to the east.

With this intent we stood to the north, and on the 3d, at two o'clock A. M. we came in sight of the land we were searching after, which proved to be two isles. On account of the day on which they were discovered, we called them Candlemas Isles. They lie in latitude 57 d. 11 m. S. and in 27 d. 6 m. W. longitude. Between these we observed a small rock; there may perhaps be others; for the weather, being hazy, occasioned us to lose sight of the islands, and we did not see them again
till

til
of
ha
m
at
ala
abo
we
pro
wa
wat
C
sum
wer
wha
abou
thof
had
some
foun
tude
stood
lost;
oblig
many
of ice
here
We d
ed by
rivers,
their
of the
or con
to it, v
not ce
countri
water
must be
gathers

till noon, at which time they were three or four leagues off. We were now obliged, by reason of the wind having veered to the south, to stand to the N. E. and at midnight came suddenly into water uncommonly white, at which appearance the officer on watch was so much alarmed, that he immediately ordered the ship to be put about, and we accordingly tacked instantly. There were various opinions aboard concerning this matter; probably it might be a shoal of fish; but some said it was a shoal of ice; and others thought it was shallow water.

On Sunday the 4th, at two o'clock, A. M. we resumed our course to the east, and at six tried if there were any current, but found none. At this time some whales were playing, and numbers of penguins flying about us: of the latter we shot a few, different from those on Staten Land, and at the Isle of Georgia. We had not seen a seal since we left that coast, which is somewhat remarkable. By observation at noon, we found ourselves in latitude 56 d. 44 m. S. and in longitude 25 d. 33 m. W. We now having a breeze at east stood to the south, intending to regain the coast we had lost; but the wind at eight o'clock in the evening, obliged us to stand to the east, in which run we saw many ice-islands, and some loose ice. As the formation of ice-islands has not been fully investigated, we will here offer a few hints and observations respecting them. We do not think, as some others do, that they are formed by the water at the mouths of great cataracts or large rivers, which when accumulated, break off, owing to their ponderous weight; because we never found any of the ice, which we took up, in the least incorporated, or connected with earth, which must necessarily adhere to it, were this conjecture true. Furthermore, we are not certain whether there are any rivers in these countries, as we saw neither rivers nor streams of fresh water there. The ice-islands, at least in those parts, must be formed from snow and sleet consolidated, which gathers by degrees, and are drifted from the mountains.

In the winter, the seas or the ice-cliffs must fill up the bays, if they are ever so large. The continual fall of snow occasions the accumulation of these cliffs, till they can support their weight no longer, and large pieces break off from these ice-islands. We are inclined to believe, that these ice-cliffs, where they are sheltered from the violence of the winds, extend a great way into the sea.

On the 5th, having seen no penguins, we thought that we were leaving land behind us, and that we had passed its northern extremity. At noon we were 3 d. of longitude, to the east of Saunders Isle; and by observation in the latitude of 57 d. 8 m. S. and in 23 d. 34 m. W. longitude. In the afternoon we again stretched to the south, in order that we might again fall in with the land, if it took an east direction.

On Monday the 6th, we held on our course till the 7th at noon, when we found our latitude to be 58 d. 15 m. S. and longitude 21 d. 34 m. W. and not seeing any signs of land, we concluded, that what had been denominated Sandwich Land, was either a group of islands, or a point of the continent; for in Capt. Cook's opinion, the ice that is spread over this vast Southern Ocean, must originate in a tract of land, which he firmly believes lies near the pole, and extends farthest to the north, opposite the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans; for ice being found in these farther to the north, than any where else, induced the Captain to conclude, that land of considerable extent must exist near the south. Upon a contrary supposition it will follow, that we ought to see ice every where under the same parallel; but few ships have met with ice going round Cape Horn; and for our part, we saw but little below the sixtieth degree of latitude in the Southern Pacific Ocean; on the other hand in this sea, between the meridian of 40 d. W. and fifty or sixty degrees east, we found ice as far north 51 d. Others have seen it in a much lower latitude. Let us now suppose there is a Southern Continent within the polar circle. The question which

readily

readily
discov
the fa
other f
to a co
thick f
danger
every h
country
rays; a
snow.
continu
culties,
dangero
attempts
expert a
unknow
swer no
By thi
such a m
there is n
reach of
coveries,
old ones.
swered, a
the necess
an end to
veries, bu
people wh
cessary re
rited every
once repin
ness, or ac
paration fr
think of re
longer, w
scurvy bre
good purp

readily occurs, will be, What end can be answered in discovering or exploring such a coast? Or what use can the same be either to navigation, geography, or any other science? And what benefits can result therefrom to a commercial state? Consider for a moment, what thick fogs, snow, storms, intense cold, and every thing dangerous to navigation, must be encountered with by every hardy adventurer; behold the horrid aspect of a country, impenetrable by the animating heat of the sun's rays; a country doomed to be immersed in everlasting snow. See the islands and floats on the coast, and the continual falls of the ice-cliffs in the ports: these difficulties, which might be heightened by others not less dangerous, are sufficient to deter every one from the rash attempts of proceeding farther to the south, than our expert and brave commander has done, in search of an unknown country, which when discovered would answer no valuable purpose whatever.

By this time we had traversed the Southern Ocean, in such a manner, as to have no doubt in determining that there is no continent, unless near the Pole, and out of the reach of navigation. We have made many new discoveries, and ascertained the exact situation of several old ones. Thus was the end of our voyage fully answered, a southern hemisphere sufficiently explored, and the necessity of a search after a southern continent put an end to. We should have proceeded to farther discoveries, but Captain Cook thought it cruel to detain the people who sailed with him any longer without the necessary refreshments, especially, as their behaviour merited every indulgence; for neither officers nor men ever once repined at any hardship, nor expressed any uneasiness, or additional fear of danger, on account of our separation from the Adventure. It was now high time to think of returning home; and could we have continued longer, we should have been in great danger of the scurvy breaking out among us, and we do not know any good purpose farther discoveries would have answered:

we

we therefore steered for the Cape of Good Hope, intending to look for Bouvet's discovery, Cape Circumcision, and the isles of Denia and Marsveen. But before we continue the narrative of this voyage, it may not be thought improper to collect a few observations from our most eminent writers, on Terra Magellanica, Patagonia, part of which coast lies within the straits, the island of Terra del Fuego; and Falkland's Islands.

Terra Magellanica received its name from Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese officer; who likewise gave name to those straits which lead from the south to the north sea, he being the first who sailed through them. The appellation of Patagonia was derived from a principal tribe of its inhabitants, called Patagons. The whole country, which goes under the name of Patagonia, extends from Chili and Paraguay to the utmost extremity of South America, that is, from 35 almost to 54 degrees of south latitude, being 700 miles long, and 300 broad, where widest. The northern parts contain an almost inexhaustible stock of large timber, but in the southern districts there is scarcely a tree to be seen fit for any mechanical purpose. The lofty mountains, called the Andes, traverse the whole country from north to south.

Here are incredible numbers of wild horned cattle and horses, which were first brought hither by the Spaniards, and have increased amazingly; the pasturage also is good. Some writers tell us that fresh water is scarce; but were that the case, we cannot see how the present inhabitants, and such multitudes of cattle could subsist. The east coast is chiefly low-land, with few or no good harbours; that called St Julian is one of the best.

The inhabitants of Patagonia consist of several Indian tribes, as the Patagons, Pampas, Cossares, &c. They are a savage, barbarous people, of a copper colour, like the rest of the Americans, with coarse black hair, and no beards. They are mightily addicted to painting themselves, and make streaks on their faces and bodies. They go almost stark naked, having only a square garment, in the form of a blanket, made of the skins of several

veral
times
they
Form
of ele
other
are ve
make
game,
This
sheep
They
have n
made u
called a
the Af
those ha
ters of
The
as it wa
their ha
to be vo
rated fro
a rough
intersect
ed. Th
sons, no
heads lar
promine
brown e
hanging
with trai
short hair
is a confi
mouth.
the most
to which
had no o
which hu

veral animals, and sewed together, which they sometimes wrap round them in extreme cold weather; and they have also a cap of the skins of fowls on their heads. Former voyagers represented them as monstrous giants of eleven feet high, whereas they are no taller than the other Americans. The women, as in other places, are very fond of necklaces and bracelets, which they make of sea shells. The natives chiefly live on fish and game, and what the earth produces spontaneously. This country abounds with an animal called camel-sheep by some authors, but their true name is guanicos. They partake of the nature of the camel, though they have no bunch on the back, and they were formerly made use of to carry burdens. They have also a bird called an ostrich, but not so large, and they differ from the African ostriches in having three toes, whereas those have but two. A great number of islands, or clusters of islands, lie on the coasts of Patagonia.

The island of Terra del Fuego, or the Land of Fires, as it was called by the first discoverers, on account of their having observed some great fires upon it (supposed to be volcanoes) as they passed it in the night, is separated from the continent by the Magellanic Straits; has a rough appearance, being very mountainous, but is intersected with deep narrow vallies, and is well watered. The natives of this country are short in their persons, not exceeding five feet six inches at most, their heads large, their faces broad, their cheek-bones very prominent, and their noses very flat. They have little brown eyes, without life; their hair is black and lank, hanging about their heads in disorder, and besmeared with train oil. On the chin they have a few straggling short hairs instead of a beard, and from their nose there is a constant discharge of mucus into their ugly open mouth. The whole assemblage of their features forms the most loathsome picture of misery and wretchedness to which human nature can possibly be reduced. They had no other cloathing than a small piece of seal skin, which hung from their shoulders to the middle of the back,

back, being fastened round the neck with a string. The rest of their body was perfectly naked, not the least regard being paid to decency. Their natural colour seems to be an olive brown, with a kind of gloss resembling that of copper; but many of them disguise themselves with streaks of red paint, and sometimes, though seldom, with white. Their whole character is the strongest compound of stupidity, indifference, and inactivity. They have no other arms than bows and arrows, and their instruments for fishing a kind of fishgags. They live chiefly on seals flesh, and like the fat oily part most. There is no appearance of any subordination among them, and their mode of living approaches nearer to that of brutes, than that of any other nation. The children go naked, and the only weapon of the men is a long stick generally hooked, and pointed at the end like a lance. They live in huts made of boughs, and covered with mud, branches, &c. One side is open, and the fire-place is in the middle; and a whole family herd together in one of these miserable hovels.

The above-mentioned islands are all very barren and mountainous; but from what Mr Forster says, in his voyage to the South Sea, the climate did not appear to be so rigorous and tempestuous as it is represented in Anson's voyage. Upon the lower grounds and islands that were sheltered by the high mountains, several sorts of trees and plants, and a variety of birds were found. Among the trees, was Winter's bark-tree, and a species of arbutus, loaded with red fruit of the size of small cherries, which were very well tasted. In some places there is also plenty of celery. Among the birds was a species of duck of the size of a goose, which ran along the sea with an amazing velocity, beating the water with its wings and feet: it had a grey plumage, with a yellow bill and feet, and a few white quill feathers: at the Falkland islands it is called a loggerhead duck. Among the birds are also plenty of geese and falcons. The rocks of some of the islands are covered with large muscle-

m
ca
Si
th
El
giv
ad
in
Sou
pos
tan
valu
pre
ed
four
whi
prof
stor
the v
who
weel
and
ple;
mate
celer
Goa
foun
of a
are a
Th
an E
dispo
was,
and f
Brita
court
done
Voi

muscle-shells, the fish of which is said to be more delicate than oysters.

Falkland's islands were first discovered in 1594, by Sir Richard Hawkins, who named the principal of them Hawkins's Maidenland, in honour of Queen Elizabeth. The present name, Falkland, was probably given them by Captain Strong, in 1689, and afterwards adopted by Halley.

The late Lord Egmont, First Lord of the Admiralty, in 1764, then revived the scheme of a settlement in the South Seas; and Commodore Byron was sent to take possession of Falkland's Islands in the name of his Britannic Majesty, and in his journal represents them as a valuable acquisition. On the other hand, they are represented by Captain M'Bride, who, in 1766, succeeded that gentleman, as the outcasts of nature: "We found, says he, a map of islands and broken lands, of which the soil was nothing but a bog, with no better prospect than that of barren mountains, beaten by storms almost perpetual. Yet this is summer; and if the winds of winter hold their natural proportion, those who lie but two cables' length from the shore, must pass weeks without any communication with it." The herbs and vegetables which were planted by Mr Byron's people; and the fir-tree, a native of rugged and cold climates, had withered. In the summer months, wild celery and sorrel are the natural luxuries of these islands. Goats, sheep, and hogs, that were carried hither, were found to increase and thrive as in other places. Geese of a fishy taste, snipes, penguins, foxes, and sea-lions, are also found here, and plenty of good water.

Though the soil be barren, and the sea tempestuous, an English settlement was made here, of which we were dispossessed by the Spaniards in 1770. That violence was, however, disavowed by the Spanish ambassador, and some concessions were made to the court of Great Britain; but in order to avoid giving umbrage to the court of Spain, the settlement was afterwards abandoned.

On Tuesday the 7th, we resumed our course to the east, and this day only three ice islands were seen. At eight o'clock in the evening, we hauled the wind to the S. E. for the night. On the 8th, at day-light, we continued our course to the east, being in latitude 58 d. 30 m. S. and in 15 d. 14 m. W. longitude. In the afternoon passed three ice islands. On the 9th, we had a calm most part of the day; the weather fair, except at times a snow shower. We saw several ice islands, but not the least intimation that could induce us to think that any land was near us. We stood now to N. E. with a breeze which sprung up at S. E. On the 10th, we had showers of sleet and snow; the weather was piercing cold, insomuch that the water on deck was frozen. The ice islands were continually in sight. On the 11th, we continued to steer east. In the morning we had heavy showers of snow; but as the day advanced, we had clear and serene weather. At noon we were in latitude 58 d. 11 m. and in 7 d. 55 m. W. longitude. On the 12th, we had ice islands continually in sight, but most of them were small and breaking to pieces.

On Monday the 13th, we had a heavy fall of snow; but, the sky clearing up, we had a fair night, and so sharp a frost, that the water in all our vessels on deck, was next morning covered with a sheet of ice. On the 14th, we continued to steer east, inclining to the north, and in the afternoon crossed the first meridian, or that of Greenwich, in the latitude of 57 d. 50 m. S. At eight o'clock we had a hard gale, at S. S. W. and a high sea from the same quarter. On the 15th, we steered E. N. E. till noon, when, by observation, we were in latitude of 56 d. 37 m. S. and in 4 d. 11 m. E. longitude. We now sailed N. E. with a view of getting into the latitude of Cape Circumcision. We had some large ice islands in sight, and the air was nearly as cold as the preceding day. The night was foggy, with snow showers, and a smart frost. On Thursday the 16th, we continued our course N. E. and at noon we observed in

in latitude 55 d. 26 m. S. and in 5 d. 52 m. E. longitude, in which situation we had a great swell from the south, but no ice in sight. At one o'clock we stood to S. E. till six, when we tacked, and stood to the north. At this time we had a heavy fall of snow and sleet, which fixed to the masts and rigging as it fell, and coated the whole with ice. On the 17th, we had a great high sea from the south, from whence we concluded no land was near in that direction. At this time we were in latitude 54 d. 20 m. S. and in 6 d. 33 m. E. longitude. On the 18th, the weather was fair and clear. We now kept a look out for Cape Circumcision; for if the land had ever so little extent in the direction of N. and S. we could not miss seeing it, as the northern point is said to lie in 54 d. On the 19th, at eight o'clock in the morning, land appeared in the direction east by south, but it proved a mere fog-bank. We now steered east by south and S. E. till seven o'clock in the evening, when we were in latitude 54 d. 42 m. S. and in 13 d. 3 m. E. longitude. We now stood to N. W. having a very strong gale, attended with snow showers. On Monday the 20th, we tacked and stretched to N. E. and had a fresh gale, attended with snow showers and sleet. At noon we were in latitude 54 d. 8 m. S. longitude 12 d. 59 m. E. but had not the least sign of land.

On the 21st, we were 5 d. to the east of the longitude in which Cape Circumcision is said to lie, and continued our course east, inclining a little to the south, till the 22d, when, at noon, by observation we were in latitude 54 d. 24 m. S. and in 19 d. 18 m. E. longitude. We had now measured in the latitude laid down for Bouvet's land, thirteen degrees of longitude; a course in which it is hardly possible we could have missed it; we therefore began to doubt its existence; and concluded, that what the Frenchman had seen, could be nothing more than a deception, or an island of ice; for after we had left the southern isles, to the present time, not the least vestige of land had been discovered.

We saw, it is true, some seals and penguins; but these are to be found in all parts of the southern ocean, and we believe shags, gannets, boobies, and men of war birds, are the most indubitable signs that denote the vicinity of lands, as they seldom go very far out to sea. Being at this time only two degrees of longitude from our route to the south, when we took our departure from the Cape of Good Hope, it was in vain for us to continue our course to the east, under this parallel; but thinking we might have seen land farther to the south, for this reason, and to clear up some doubts, we steered S. E. in order to get into the situation in which it was supposed to lie. On the 23d, from observations on several distances of the sun and moon, we found ourselves in the latitude of 55 d. 25 m. S. and in 23 d. 22 m. E. longitude; and having run over the track in which the land was supposed to lie, without seeing any, we now were well assured the ice islands had deceived Mr Bouvet; as at times they had deceived us. During the night the wind veered to N. W. which enabled us to steer more north; for we had now laid aside all thoughts of searching farther after the French discoveries, and were determined to direct our course for the Cape of Good Hope, intending only by the way to look for the isles of Denia and Marsveen, which, by Dr Halley, are laid down in the latitude of 41 d. 5 m. and 4 d. E. longitude from the meridian of the Cape of Good Hope. On Friday the 25th, we steered N. E. and were at noon in latitude 52 d. 52 m. S. longitude 26 d. 31 m. E. This day we saw the last ice island.

On Wednesday the 1st of March, we were in latitude 46 d. 44 m. S. and in 23 d. 36 m. W. longitude; and we took notice, that the whole time the wind blew regular and constant northerly, which included several days, the weather was always cloudy and very hazy; but as soon as it came south of west, it cleared up. We also observed, that the barometer began to rise several days before this change happened. On the 3d, in the afternoon, we had intervals of clear weather, but at

night

night
by few
was w
tude 3
mome
lighter
S. lon
signs o
were o
fuddler
mercu
was th
ly win
gitude

Sund
shot, v
were n
and M
finding
N. W.
38 d. 5
our log
could n
had be
grees n
down,
in our
furned
every o
and fal
therefo
to mak
We we
37 m.

On 7
the N,
one of
we stoc

night the wind blew a heavy squall from S. W. where-
 by several of our sails were split, and a middle stay-sail
 was wholly lost. Our latitude was 45 d. 8 m. S. longi-
 tude 30 d. 50 m. E. On Wednesday the 8th, the ther-
 mometer rose to 61 d. and we were obliged to put on
 lighter cloaths. We were now in latitude 41 d. 30 m.
 S. longitude 26 d. 51 m. E. We had not yet seen any
 signs of land, but albatrosses, peterels, and other sea birds,
 were our daily visitors. On the 11th, the wind shifted
 suddenly from N. W. to S. W. which occasioned the
 mercury to fall as suddenly from 62 to 52 d. so different
 was the state of the air between a northerly and southerly
 wind. Our latitude this day was 40 d. 40 m. S. lon-
 gitude 23 d. 47 m. E.

Sunday the 12th, some albatrosses and peterels were
 shot, which proved an acceptable treat. This day we
 were nearly in the situation, in which the isles of Denia
 and Marfeveen are said to lie, and not the least hope of
 finding them remained. On the 13th, we stood to N.
 N. W. and at noon, by observation, were in latitude
 38 d. 51 m. S. which was above thirty miles more than
 our log gave us; to what this difference was owing, we
 could not determine. The watch also shewed that we
 had been set to the east. At this time we were two de-
 grees north of the parallel in which the isles are laid
 down, but found not any encouragement to persevere
 in our endeavours to find them. This must have con-
 sumed more time, we think, in a fruitless search; and
 every one, all having been confined a long time to stale
 and salt provisions, was impatient to get into port. We
 therefore, in compliance with the general wish, resolved
 to make the best of our way to the Cape of Good Hope.
 We were now in latitude 38 d. 38 m. S. and in 23 d.
 37 m. E. longitude.

On Thursday the 16th, at day-break, we descried in
 the N. W. quarter, standing to the westward, two sail,
 one of which shewed Dutch colours. At ten o'clock
 we stood to the west also, and were now in the latitude
 of

of 35 d. 9 m. S. and in longitude 22 d. 38 m. E. About this time, a quarrel arose between three officers, and the ship's cooks, which was not reconciled without serious consequences. Those three gentlemen, upon some occasion or other, entered the cook-room with naked knives, and with oaths, unbecoming their character, swore they would take away the lives of the first who dared to affront them. It seems they had formerly met with some rebuffs for too much frequenting the cooks apartments, which had hitherto passed in joke; but now a regular complaint was laid before the Captain, of their unwarrantable behaviour; and of the danger the men were in of their lives; into which complaint the Captain was under a necessity of enquiring; and upon finding it just, of confining the offenders in irons. While they were in this situation, the articles of war being read, it was found that the offence was of such a nature as hardly to be determined without a reference to a court martial, in order to which the two who appeared most culpable, were continued prisoners upon parole, and the third was cleared. After this business had engrossed the Captain's attention, he called the ship's crew together, and after recounting the particulars of the voyage, the hardships they had met with, the fatigues they had undergone, and the cheerfulness they had constantly shewn in the discharge of their duty, he gave them to understand, how much it would still more recommend them to the Lords of the Admiralty, if they would preserve a profound silence in the ports they had yet to pass and might enter, with regard to the courses, the discoveries they had made, and every particular relative to this voyage; and likewise, after their return home, till they had their Lordships permission to the contrary; requiring, at the same time, all those officers who had kept journals to deliver them into his custody, to be sealed up, and not to be opened till delivered to their Lordships at the proper office. In the interim they were to be locked up safely in a chest. This request

was

was c
officer

On
tude o
about
and th
the fir
we saw
N. N.
up with
so desir
to the
leagues
breeze
fail wer
fish cold
and our
man, co
Bownke
Captain
and of a
by some
were inf
Cape of
a boat's
tives of
explained
from our
On the
fish ship
Captain
to the Sec
care of th
visions, t
True Bri
six o'clock
distant, a
Aquilas.
welt; an

was cheerfully complied with by every commissioned officer.

On Friday the 17th, we observed at noon in the latitude of 34 d. 49 m. S. in the evening we saw land, about six leagues distant, in the direction of E. N. E. and there was a great fire or light upon it, throughout the first part of the night. On the 18th, at day-break, we saw, at the same distance, the land again, bearing N. N. W. At nine o'clock, we sent out a boat to get up with one of the two ships before noticed; we were so desirous of hearing news, that we paid no attention to the distance, though the ships were at least two leagues from us. Soon after we stood to the south, a breeze springing up at west. At this time three more sail were seen to windward, one of which shewed English colours. The boat returned at one o'clock P. M. and our people in it had been on board a Dutch Indiaman, coming home from Bengal; the ship was the *Bownkerk Polder*, the captain Cornelius Bosch. The Captain very politely made us a tender of sugar, arrack, and of any thing that could be spared out of the ship. By some English mariners on board her, our people were informed, that our consort had arrived at the Cape of Good Hope twelve months ago; adding, that a boat's crew had been murdered and eaten by the natives of New Zealand. This intelligence sufficiently explained the mysterious accounts we had received from our old friends in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On the 19th, at ten o'clock in the morning, the English ship bore down to us. She was the *True Briton*, Captain Broadly, on her return from China. A letter to the Secretary of the Admiralty was committed to the care of the Captain, who generously sent us fresh provisions, tea, and other articles. In the afternoon, the *True Briton* stood out to sea, and we in for land. At six o'clock, we tacked within five miles of the shore, distant, as we conjectured, about six leagues from Cape Aquilas. On the 20th, we stood along shore to the west; and on the 21st, at noon, the Table Mountain, over

over the Cape Town, bore N. E. by E. distant ten leagues. The next morning we anchored in Table Bay; with us, in our reckoning, it was Wednesday the 22d, but with the people here, Tuesday the 21st, we having gained a day by running to the east. In the bay we found ships of different nations, among which was an English East Indiaman, from China, bound directly to England. In this ship Captain Cook sent a copy of his journal, together with some charts and drawings to the Admiralty. We saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and the compliment was returned with an equal number. We now heard the deplorable story of the Adventure's boat's crew confirmed, with the addition of a false report, concerning the loss of a French ship upon the same island, with the total destruction of the Captain and his crew, propagated, no doubt, by the Adventure's people, to render an act of savage barbarity, that would scarcely admit of aggravation, still more horrible. But, which gave us full satisfaction about this matter, Capt. Furneaux had left a letter for our Commander, in which he mentions the loss of the boat, and ten of his men, in Queen Charlotte's Sound. The day after our arrival at this place, Captain Cook, accompanied by our gentlemen, waited on Baron Plettenberg, the Dutch Governor, by whom, and his principal officers, they were treated with the greatest politeness; and as at this place refreshments of all kinds may be procured in great abundance, we now, after the numerous fatigues of a long voyage, began to taste, and enjoy the sweets of repose. It is a custom here for all the officers to reside on shore; in compliance with which, the Captain, the two Forsters, and Mr Sparman, took up their abode with Mr Brandt, well known to our countrymen for his obliging readiness to serve them. Our people on board were not neglected; and being provided daily with fresh baked bread, fresh meat, greens, wine, &c. they were soon restored to their usual strength, and as soon forgot all past hardships and dangers.

All hands were employed now to supply all our defects.

fe
wa
cha
the
dale
our
con
the g
turn
mile
cum
been
sprun
much
the cu
cess o
ness o
were
gratify
strange
known
Resolut
to Euro
put in a
English
gates, t
We beli
touched
allowed
We now
to comp
hang ou
caulkers
ship befo
On W
finished,
provision
governor
went on
Vol. I.—

fects. Almost every thing except the standing rigging was to be replaced anew; and it is well known the charges here for naval stores are most exorbitant; for the Dutch both at the Cape and Batavia, take a scandalous advantage of the distress of foreigners. That our casks, rigging, sails, &c. should be in a shattered condition, is easily accounted for. In circumnavigating the globe, we mean, from leaving this place to our return to it again, we had sailed no less than sixty thousand miles, equal nearly to three times the equatorial circumference of the earth; but in all this run, which had been made in all latitudes, between 9^o and 71^d. we sprung neither low-masts nor top-mast; nor broke so much as a lower, or top-mast shroud. At the Cape, the curiosity of all nations was excited to learn the success of our discoveries, and in proportion to the earnestness of the solicitations, wherewith the common men were pressed, by foreign inquisitors, they took care to gratify them with wonderful relations. Hence many strange stories were circulated abroad, before it was known by the people at large at home, whether the Resolution had perished at sea, or was upon her return to Europe. During our stay here, several foreign ships put in and went out, bound to and from India, namely, English, French, Danes, and three Spanish ships, frigates, two going to, and one returning from Manilla. We believe it is but lately that ships of this nation have touched here; and these were the first to whom were allowed the same privileges as other European states. We now lost no time in putting all things in readiness to complete our voyage; but we were obliged to unhang our rudder, and were also delayed for want of caulkers; and it was absolutely necessary to caulk the ship before we put to sea.

On Wednesday the 26th of April, this work was finished, and having got on board a fresh supply of provisions, and all necessary stores, we took leave of the governor, and his principal officers. On the 27th, we went on board, and soon after, the wind coming fair,

we weighed, and put to sea. When under sail we saluted the garrison as is customary, and they returned the compliment. When clear of the bay we parted company with some of the ships who sailed out with us: the Danish ship steered for the East Indies, the Spanish frigate Juno, for Europe, and we and the Dutton Indiaman for St Helena. Depending on the goodness of Mr Kendall's watch, we determined to attempt to make the island by a direct course. The wind, in general, blew faint all the passage, which made it longer than common.

On Monday the 15th of May, at day-break, we saw the island, distant fourteen leagues, and anchored, at midnight, before the town, on the N. W. side of the island. Governor Skettowe, and the gentlemen of the island, treated us, while we continued here, with the greatest courtesy. In our narrative of Captain Cook's former voyage, we have given a full description of this island; to which we shall only add, that the inhabitants are far from exercising a wanton cruelty towards their slaves. We are informed also, that wheel carriages and porters' knots have been in use among them for many years. Within these three years a new church has been built; some other new buildings are erecting, a commodious landing-place for boats has been made, and other improvements, which add both strength and beauty to the place. Here we finished some necessary repairs, which we had not time to complete during our stay at the Cape. Our empty water casks were also filled, and the ship's company had fresh beef, at five-pence per pound. This article of refreshment is exceeding good, and the only one to be procured worth mentioning. On the 21st, in the evening, we took leave of the governor, and then repaired on board. The Dutton Indiaman, in company with us, was ordered to fall in with Ascension, for which we steered, on account of an illicit trade, carried on between the Company's ships, and some vessels from North America, who of late years, had visited the island on pre-
tence

tence of fishing, when their real design was to wait the coming of the India ships. The Dutton was therefore ordered to steer N. W. by W. or N. W. till to the northward of Ascension. With this ship we were in company till the 24th, when we parted. A packet for the Admiralty was put on board, and she continued her course N. W. On Sunday the 28th, we made the island of Ascension; and on the evening anchored in Cross Bay, in the N. W. side, half a mile from the shore, in ten fathoms water. The Cross-hill, so called on account of a flag staff erected upon it in form of a cross, bore S. 38 d. E. and the two extreme points of the bay extended from N. E. to S. W. We had several fishing parties out every night, and got about twenty-four turtle weighing between four and five hundred weight each. This was our principal object, though we might have had a plentiful supply of fish in general. We have no where seen oia wives in such abundance; also cavalies, congor eels, and various other sorts.

This island lies in the direction N. W. and S. E. and is ten miles broad, and five or six long. Its surface is very barren, and scarcely produces a shrub, plant, or any kind of vegetation, in the space of many miles; instead of which we saw only stones and sand, or rather flags and ashes: hence from the general appearance of the face of this island, it is more than probable, that, at some time, of which we have no account, it has been destroyed by a volcano. - We met with in our excursions a smooth even surface in the intervals between the heaps of stones; but, as one of our people observed, you may as easily walk over broken glass bottles, as over the stones; for if you slip, or make a false step, you are sure to be cut or lamed. At the S. E. end of the isle is a high mountain, which seems to have been left in its original state; for it is covered with a kind of white marl, producing purslain, spurg, and one or two sorts of grais. On these the goats feed, which are to be found in this part of the isle. Here are good land crabs, and the sea abounds with turtle from January to June.

They always come on shore to lay their eggs in the night, when they are caught by turning them on their backs, in which position they are left on the beach till the next morning, when the turtle catchers fetch them away. We are inclined to think, that the turtles come to this island merely for the purpose of laying their eggs, as we found none but females; nor had those we caught any food in their stomachs. We saw also near this place abundance of aquatic birds, such as tropic birds, men of war, boobies, &c. On the N. E. side we found the remains of a wreck; she seemed to have been a vessel of one hundred and fifty tons burthen. We were informed, that there is a fine spring in a valley between two hills, on the top of the mountain above mentioned; besides great quantities of fresh water in holes in the rocks. While the Resolution lay in the road, a sloop belonging to New-York anchored by her. She had been to the coast of Guinea with a cargo of goods, and came under a pretence to take in turtle; but her real intention was, we believe, to traffic with the officers of our homeward-bound East Indiamen; for she had lain here near a week, and had got on board twenty turtle; whereas a sloop from Bermuda, had sailed but a few days before, with one hundred and five on board, which were as many as she could take in; but having turned several more on different beaches, they inhumanly ripped open their bellies, for the sake of the eggs, and left the carcases to putrify. The centre of this island of Ascension is situated in the latitude of 1 d. S. and 14 d. 28 m. 30 f. W. longitude.

On Wednesday the 31st of May, we departed from the island of Ascension, and steered with a fine gale at S. E. by E. for that of Fernando de Noronha, on the coast of Brasil, in order to determine its longitude. In our passage for this place, we had very good weather, and fine moon light nights, which afforded us many opportunities of making lunar observations. On the 9th of June we made the island, which had the appearance of several detached hills; the largest of which
very

very
adva
a vic
leagu
lours
whic
that
chan
fron
tion,
and l
sail r
befor
open
lution
Portu
not in
ward,
breeze
tower
our p
hang
more
equal
Its lati
by the
Don A
" Tha
of the
the ot
the pr
goodn
north
north,
ancho
ed a
leagu
hill b
Ulloa

very much resembled the steeple of a church. As we advanced, and drew near it, we found the sea broke in a violent surf on some sunken rocks, which lay about a league from the shore. We now hoisted English colours, and bore up round the north end of the island, which is a group of little islets; for we perceived plainly, that the land was unconnected, and divided by narrow channels. On one of these, next the main, are several strong forts, rendered so by the nature of their situation, which is such as to command all the anchoring and landing places about the island. We continued to sail round the northern point, till the sandy beaches, before which is the road for shipping, and the forts were open to the westward of the said point. As the Resolution advanced, a gun was fired, and immediately the Portuguese colours were displayed on all the forts: but not intending to stop here, we fired a gun to the leeward, and stood away to the northward, with a fresh breeze at E. S. E. The hill, which appears like a church tower, bore S. 27 d. W. five miles distant; and from our present point of view it appeared to lean, or overhang to the east. Fernando de Noronha is in no part more than six leagues in extent, and exhibits an unequal surface, well clothed with wood and herbage.--- Its latitude is 3 d. 53 m. S. and its longitude carried on by the watch, from St Helena, is 32 d. 34 m. W.--- Don Antonia d'Ulloa, in his account of this island, says, "That it hath two harbours, capable of receiving ships of the greatest burden; one is on the north side, and the other on the N. W. The former is, in every respect, the principal, both for shelter and capaciousness, and the goodness of its bottom; but both are exposed to the north and west, though these winds, particularly the north, are periodical, and of no long continuance. You anchor in the north harbour, which Captain Cook called a road, in thirteen fathoms water, one third of a league from the shore, bottom of fine sand; the peaked hill bearing S. W. 3 d. southerly." This road or (as Ulloa terms it) harbour, is very secure for shipping, being

ing sheltered from the south and east winds. A mariner in our ship, had been aboard a Dutch East Indian, who, on account of her crew being sickly, and in want of refreshments, put into this isle. By him we were informed, that the Portuguese supplied them with some buffaloes; and that they got their water behind one of the beaches, from a small pool scarcely big enough to dip a bucket in.

On Sunday the 11th of June, at three o'clock P. M. in longitude 32 d. 14 m. we crossed the line. We had squally weather from the E. S. E. with showers of rain, which continued, at times, till the 12th, and on the 23d the wind became variable. At noon were in the latitude of 3 d. 49 m. N. and in 31 d. 47 m. W. longitude. We had now for most part of the day, dark, gloomy weather, till the evening of the 15th, at which time we were in latitude 5 d. 47 m. N. and in 31 d. W. longitude. After this we had three successive calm days, in which we had fair weather and rains, alternately; and sometimes the sky was obscured by dense clouds, which broke in very heavy showers of rain. On Sunday the 18th, we had a breeze at east, which fixed at N. E. and we stretched to N. W. As we advanced to the north the gale increased. On Wednesday the 21st, Captain Cook ordered the still to be set to work, with a view of making the greatest quantity possible of fresh water. To try this experiment, the still was fitted to the largest copper we had, which held about sixty four gallons of salt water. At four o'clock, A. M. the fire was lighted, and at six the still began to run. The operation was continued till six in the evening; at which time we had obtained thirty-two gallons of fresh water, and consumed one bushel and a half of coals. At noon, the mercury in the thermometer was eighty-four and a half, as high as it is generally found to rise at sea. Had it been lower, more water would have been procured; for it is well known, that the colder the air is, the cooler the still may be kept, whereby the steam will be condensed faster. This invention up-

on
den
wit
may
the
will
ly in
and
rien
tribu
plen
O
N. a
to w
but
was
to pu
latitu
our
ship
of lig
now
47 m
plant
posc
and
see th
N. b
Wed
and
we l
fixed
steer
to m
day,
36
steer
of th
O

on the whole is a useful one, but it would not be prudent for a navigator to trust wholly to it; for though with plenty of fuel, and good coppers, as much water may be obtained, as will be necessary to support life, yet the utmost efforts that can be employed in this work, will not procure a sufficiency to support health, especially in hot climates, where fresh water is most wanted; and in the opinion of Capt. Cook, founded on experience, the best judge of this matter, nothing can contribute more to the health of seamen, than their having plenty of sweet fresh water.

On Sunday, the 25th, we were in latitude 16 d. 12 m. N. and in 37 d. 20 m. W. longitude. Observing a ship to windward, bearing down upon us, we shortened sail; but on her approaching, we found by her colours she was Dutch; we therefore made sail again, and left her to pursue her course. On the 28th, we observed in the latitude of 21 d. 21 m. N. longitude 40 d. 6 m. W. and our course made good was N. by W. On the 30th, a ship passed us within hail; but she was presently out of sight, and we judged her to be English. We were now in the latitude of 24 d. 20 m. N. longitude 40 d. 47 m. W. In latitude 29 d. 30 m. we saw some sea-plants, commonly called gulph weed, because it is supposed to come from the gulph of Florida; it may be so, and yet it certainly vegetates at sea. We continued to see this plant in small pieces, till in the latitude of 36 d. N. beyond which parallel we saw no more of it. On Wednesday, the 5th of July, the wind veered to the east; and the next day it was a calm. On the 7th and 8th we had variable light airs; but on the 9th, the wind fixed at S. S. W. after which we had a fresh gale, and steered first N. E. and then E. N. E. our intention being to make some of the Azores, or Western Isles. On Tuesday, the 11th, we were in latitude 36 d. 45 m. N. and in 36 d. 45 m. W. longitude, when we descried a sail steering to the west; and on the 12th, we came in sight of three more.

On Thursday, the 13th, we made the isle of Fayal, and

and on the 14th, at day-break, we entered the bay of De Horta, and at eight o'clock anchored in twenty fathoms water, about half a mile from the shore. Our design in touching at this place, was to make observations, from whence might be determined with accuracy the longitude of the Azores. We were directed by the master of the port, who came on board before we cast anchor, to moor N. E. and S. W. in this station, the S. W. point of the bay bore S. 16 d. W. and the N. E. point, N. 33 d. E. The church at the N. E. end of the town N. 38 d. W. the west point of St George's island N. 42 d. E. distant eight leagues; and the isle of Pico extending from N. 74 d. E. to S. 46 d. E. distant five miles. In the bay we found the Pourvoyer, a large French frigate, an American sloop, and a brig belonging to Fayal. On the 14th, the Captain sent to the English consul, and notified our arrival to the governor, begging his permission to grant Mr Wales an opportunity to make his observations on shore. This was readily granted, and Mr Dent who acted as consul in the absence of Mr Gathorne, not only procured this permission, but accommodated Mr Wales with a convenient place in his garden to set up his instruments; and in several other particulars, this gentleman discovered a friendly readiness to oblige us: even his house was always at our command both night and day; and the entertainment we met with there was liberal and hospitable. All the time we staid at this place, the crew of our ship were supplied with plenty of fresh beef, and we purchased about fifty tons of water, at the rate of about three shillings per ton. To hire shore boats is the most general custom here, though ships are allowed, if they prefer many inconveniences to a trifling expence, to water with their own boats. Fresh provisions may be got, and hogs, sheep, and poultry, for sea-stock, at reasonable rates. The sheep are not small, they are also very poor; but the bullocks and hogs are exceeding good. Here is plenty of wine to be had.

Before we proceed with our own observations, made during

duri
read
of a
diffe
Amc
cent
prop
They
ocea
twec
west
They
Mich
Flore
Th
ships
1447
molt
of flo
are all
resides
bishop
The i
mount
On ev
the po
at the
appea
the fu
islands
St
cumfe
bitante
town
by the
Ter
its hav
Angra
Vol.

during our abode at Fayal, it may be agreeable to our readers, to give them a brief account and description of all the Azores, or Western Islands. These have by different geographers, been variously deemed parts of America, Africa, and Europe, as they are almost in a central point; but we apprehend they may with more propriety be considered as belonging to the latter.— They are a group of islands, situated in the Atlantic ocean, between 25 and 32 d. of west longitude, and between 37 and 40 d. north latitude, nine hundred miles west of Portugal, and as many east of Newfoundland. They are nine in number, viz. St Maria, St Miguel or St Michael, Terceira, St George, Graciosa, Fayal, Pico, Flores, and Corvo.

These islands were first discovered by some Flemish ships in 1439, and afterwards by the Portuguese in 1447, to whom they now belong. The two westernmost were named Flores and Corvo, from the abundance of flowers on the one, and crows on the other. They are all fertile, and subject to a governor-general, who resides at Angra in Terceira, which is also the seat of the bishop, whose diocese extends over all the Azores.— The income of the latter, which is paid in wheat, amounts to about two hundred pounds sterling a year.— On every island there is a deputy-governor, who directs the police, militia, and revenue; and a juiz, or judge, is at the head of the law department, from whom lies an appeal to a higher court at Terceira, and from thence to the supreme court at Lisbon. The natives of these islands are said to be very religious.

St Miguel, the largest, is one hundred miles in circumference, contains about twenty-nine thousand inhabitants, and is very fertile in wheat and flax. Its chief town is Ponta del Gado. This island was twice ravaged by the English in the time of Queen Elizabeth.

Terceira is reckoned the chief island, on account of its having the best harbour; and its chief town, named Angra, being the residence of the governor-general and

the bishop. The town contains a cathedral, five other churches, eight convents, several courts of offices, &c. and is defended by two forts.

The island of Pico, so called from a mountain of vast height, produces excellent wine, cedar, and a valuable wood called teixos. On the south of the island is the principal harbour, called Villa das Lagens.

The inhabitants of Flores having been many years ago infected with the venereal disease by the crew of a Spanish man of war, that was wrecked upon their coast, the evil, it is said still maintains its ground there, none of the inhabitants being free from it, as in Peru, and some parts of Siberia.

Travellers relate, that no poisonous or venomous animal is to be found in the Azores, and that if carried thither, it will expire in a few hours. One tenth of all their productions belong to the king, and the article of tobacco brings in a considerable sum. The wine, called Fayal wine, is chiefly raised in the island of Pico, which lies opposite to Fayal. From eighteen to twenty thousand pipes of that wine are made there yearly. All of these islands enjoy a salubrious air, but are exposed to violent earthquakes, from which they have frequently suffered.

Villa de Horta, the chief town in Fayal, like all the towns belonging to the Portuguese, is crowded with religious buildings; there being no less, in this little city, than three convents for men, and two for women. Here are also eight churches, including those belonging to the convents, and that in the Jesuits' college. This college is a noble structure, and seated on an elevation in the pleasantest part of the city. Since the expulsion of that order, it has been suffered to go to decay, and, in a few years, by the all consuming hand of time, may be reduced to a heap of ruins. The principal produce of Fayal is wheat and Indian corn, with which the inhabitants supply Pico, which in return sends them wine more than sufficient for their consumption, great quantities being annually shipped from De Horta
(for

(for
whe
Villa
to th
one a
ing a
these
a pity
they
is very
ligious
that ha
mend
Portug
this toy
longing
zed: al
the app
end of
faces th
two mil
is three-
depth of
the shor
rocky; a
two poin
anchor to
most exp
S. S. W.
the latter,
we were
point, cal
down, an
the whole
bad one.
of the foll
worthy of
ed to by
This Port

(for at Pico there is no road for shipping) for America, whence it has obtained the name of Fayal wine. The Villa de Horta is situated in the bottom of a bay, close to the edge of the sea. It is defended by two castles, one at each end of the town, and a stone work extending along the sea shore from the one to the other. But these works serve more for show than defence; but it is a pity they should be suffered to run to decay; seeing they heighten greatly the prospect of the city, which is very beautiful from the road; but setting aside the religious houses and churches, we saw not another edifice, that has any thing either within or without to recommend it. It is not the custom in these parts among the Portuguese, or Spaniards, to have glass windows, but in this town the churches, and a country house lately belonging to the English consul, have their windows glazed: all others are latticed, which gave them in our eyes the appearance of prisons. Before this Villa, at the east end of the island, is the bay or road of Fayal, which faces the west end of Pico. It is a semi-circle, about two miles in diameter; and its depth, or semi-diameter, is three-fourths of a mile. The bottom is sandy, and the depth of water from six to twenty fathoms; but near the shore, particularly at the S. W. head, the bottom is rocky; as it also is without the line that connects the two points of the bay; on which account it is not safe to anchor too far out. The winds to which this road lies most exposed are those that blow from between the S. S. W. and S. E. but as you can always get to sea with the latter, this is not so dangerous as the former; and we were told, there is a small cove round the S. W. point, called Porto Pierre, where small vessels are heaved down, and wherein a ship may lay tolerably safe. Upon the whole, we by no means think this road of Fayal a bad one. We were informed, by a Portuguese captain of the following particulars, which, if true, are not unworthy of notice. However, his account may be attended to by captains of ships though not entirely relied on. This Portuguese told us, that in the direction of S. E. about

about half a league from the road, and in a line between that and the south sides of Pico, lies a concealed sunken rock, covered with twenty-two fathom water, and on which the sea breaks from the south. He also gave us to understand that of all the shoals about these isles that are laid down in our charts, and pilot books, only one has any existence, which lies between the islands of St Mary and St Michael, called Hormingan. He further informed us, that the distance between Fayal and the island of Flores, is forty-five leagues; and that there runs a strong tide between Fayal and Pico, the flood setting to the N. E. and the ebb to the S. W. but out at sea, the direction is east and west. By various observations, the true longitude of this bay was found to be 28 d. 39 m. 18½ f.

On Wednesday the 19th, at four o'clock A. M. we sailed out of the bay, and steered for the west end of St George's island. Having passed this, we shaped our course E. ½ S. for the island of Terceira; and after a run of fourteen leagues, we found ourselves not more than one league from the west end. We now proceeded as expeditiously as the wind would permit for England; and on Saturday the 29th, we made the land near Plymouth. On the following day, the 30th, we cast anchor at Spithead, when Captain Cook, in company with Messrs Wales, Forsters, and Hodges, landed at Portsmouth, and from thence set out for London. The whole time of our absence from England was three years and eighteen days; and owing to the unbounded goodness of an Almighty Preserver, who indulgently favoured our attempt, and seconded our endeavours, notwithstanding the various changes of climates (and they were as various as can be experienced) we lost only one man by sickness, and three by other causes. Even the single circumstance of keeping the ship's company in health, by means of the greatest care and attention, will make this voyage remarkable in the opinion of every humane person; and we trust the grand-end of this expedition, and the purposes for which we were
sent

sent into the southern hemisphere were diligently and sufficiently pursued. The Resolution made the circuit of the southern ocean in a high latitude, and Captain Cook traversed it in such a manner, as to leave no room for a mere possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, and consequently out of the reach of navigation. However, by having twice explored the tropical sea, the situation of old discoveries were determined, and a number of new ones made; so that we flattered ourselves, upon the whole, the intention of the voyage has, though not in every respect, yet upon the whole, been sufficiently answered; and by having explored so minutely the southern hemisphere, a final end may, perhaps, be put to searching after a continent, in that part of the globe, which has, of late years, and, indeed, at times, for the two last centuries, engrossed the attention of some of the maritime powers, and been a favourite theory among geographers of all ages. The probability of there being a continent, or large track of land, near the Pole, has been already granted; and we may have seen part of it. The extreme cold, the numberless islands, and the vast floats of ice, give strength to this conjecture, and all tend to prove, that there must be main land to the south; but that this must extend farthest to the north, opposite to the southern Atlantic and Indian oceans, we have already assigned several reasons; of which one is, the greater degree of cold in these seas, than in the Pacific Ocean, under the same parallels of latitude; for in this last ocean, the mercury in the thermometer seldom fell so low as the freezing point, till we were in latitude 60 d. and upwards; whereas in the other oceans, it fell as low in the latitude of 54 d. the cause whereof we attributed to a greater quantity of ice, which extended farther north in the Atlantic and Indian oceans, than in the south Pacific Sea; and supposing the ice to be first formed at, or near the land, of which we are fully persuaded, it will be an undeniable consequence, that the land extends farther north. But what benefit can accrue from lands thus situated

situated, should they be discovered? lands doomed to everlasting frigidness; and whose horrible and savage aspect no language or words can describe. Will any one venture farther in search after such a country than our brave and skilful Commander has done? Let him proceed, and may the God of universal nature be his guide. We heartily wish him success, nor will we envy him the honour of his discovery.

It has been observed, that the principal officers of the Resolution delivered their journals into the custody of Captain Cook; and, on his arrival in England, Capt. Furneaux also put into his hands a narrative of what happened in the Adventure after her final separation from the Resolution. We shall now lay before our readers a complete narrative of Captain Furneaux's proceedings in the Adventure, to which we shall subjoin the improvements that have been made, respecting the means of preserving the health of our seamen, and particularly those that were used by Captain Cook in his voyages.

CAPTAIN

IN
and f
when
succe
confo
in the
Nove
Some
danc
our C
again
cond

CAPTAIN FURNEAUX'S

Proceedings in the Adventure,

From the Time he was separated from the RESOLUTION, to his
Arrival in England;

WITH A

RELATION RESPECTING THE BOAT'S CREW,

WHO WERE MURDERED AND EATEN BY THE

Cannibals of Queen Charlotte's Sound, in New Zealand.

IN October, 1773, we made the coast of New Zealand, after a passage of fourteen days from Amsterdam, and stood along shore till we reached Cape Turnagain, when a heavy storm blew us off the coast for three days successively, in which time we were separated from our consort, the Resolution, and saw her not afterwards in the course of her voyage. On Thursday the 4th of November, we regained the shore, near to Cape Palliser. Some of the natives brought us in their canoes abundance of cray-fish and fruit, which they exchanged for our Otaheite cloth, nails, &c. On the 5th, the storm again returned, and we were driven off the shore a second time by a violent gale of wind, accompanied with heavy

heavy falls of sleet, which lasted two days ; so that by this time our decks began to leak, our beds and bedding were wet, which gave many of our people colds ; and now we were most of us complaining, and all began to despair of ever getting into the Sound, or, which we had most at heart, of joining the Resolution. We combated the storm till Saturday the 6th, when being to the north of the cape, and having a hard gale from S. W. we bore away for some bay, in order to complete our wood and water, of both which articles we were at present in great want. For some days past we had been at the allowance of one quart of water, and it was thought six or seven days more would deprive us even of that scanty pittance. On Tuesday the 9th, in latitude 38 d. 21 m. S. and in 178 d. 37 m. E. longitude, we came abreast of Tolaga Bay, and in the forenoon anchored in eleven fathoms water, stiff muddy ground, which lays across the bay for about two miles. This harbour is open from N. N. E. to E. S. E. nevertheless, it affords good riding with a westerly wind ; and here are regular soundings from five to twelve fathoms. Wood and water are easily procured, except when the winds blow hard easterly, and then, at such times, which are but seldom, they throw in a great sea. The natives about this bay are the same as those at Queen Charlotte's Sound, but more numerous, and have regular plantations of sweet potatoes, and other roots. They have plenty of fish of all sorts, which we purchased with nails, beads, and other trifles. In one of their canoes, we saw the head of a woman lying in state, adorned with feathers, and other ornaments. It had all the appearance of life, but, upon a nearer view, we found it had been dried ; yet, every feature was in due preservation and perfect. We judged it to have been the head of some deceased relative, kept as a relic. It was at an island in this bay where the Endeavour's people observed the largest canoe they met with during their whole voyage. It was, according to account, no less than sixty-eight feet and a half long, five broad, and

and
con
that
sixty
with
very
were
vesse
pearl
it stil
feet c
had a
adorn
stream
almost
might
vessels
of wh
and w
ships
having
wood,
out wh
shore,
tack, v
arrived
chored
attende
the wea
fort, h
Sound,
time re
ed in st
was in
On t
sent the
on the l
make th
the ship
Vol. I.

and three feet six inches high : it had a sharp bottom, consisting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was longest : the side planks were sixty-two feet long in one piece, and were ornamented with carvings, not unlike fillagree work, in spirals of very curious workmanship, the extremities whereof were closed with a figure that formed the head of the vessel, in which were two monstrous eyes of mother of pearl, and a large shaped tongue ; and as it descended it still retained the figure of a monster, with hands and feet carved upon it very neatly, and painted red. It had also a high peaked stern, wrought in fillagree, and adorned with feathers, from the top of which two long streamers depended, made of the same materials, which almost reached the water. From this description we might be tempted to suppose, these canoes to be the vessels, and this to be the country, lying to the south, of which Quiros received intelligence at Taumaio ; and where Toabia said they eat men, and had such large ships as he could not describe. On Friday the 12th, having taken on board ten tons of water and some wood, we set sail for the Sound ; but we were scarcely out when the wind began to blow dead hard on the shore, so that, not being able to clear the land on either tack, we were obliged to return to the bay, where we arrived the next morning, the 13th ; and having anchored, we rode out a heavy gale of wind at E. by S. attended with a very great sea. We now began to fear the weather had put it out of our power to join our consort, having reason to believe she was in Charlotte Sound, the appointed place of rendezvous, and by this time ready for sea. Part of the crew were now employed in stopping leaks, and repairing our rigging, which was in a most shattered condition.

On the 14th and 15th, we hoisted out our boats, and sent them to increase our stock of wood and water ; but on the last day the surf rose so high, that they could not make the land. On Tuesday the 16th, having made the ship as snug as possible, we unmoored at three

o'clock A. M. and before six got under way. From this time to the 28th, we had nothing but tempestuous weather, in which our rigging was almost blown to pieces, and our men quite worn down with fatigue.

On Monday the 29th, our water being nearly expended, we were again reduced to the scanty allowance of a quart a man per diem. We continued beating backward and forward till the 30th, when the weather became more moderate; and having got a favourable wind, we were so happy at last as to gain with safety our desired port. After getting through Cook's Straits, we cast anchor at three o'clock, P. M. in Queen Charlotte's Sound. We saw nothing of the Resolution, and began to doubt her safety; but upon having landed, we discovered the place where she had pitched her tents; and upon further examination, on an old stump of a tree, we read these words cut out "Look underneath." We complied instantly with these instructions, and, digging, soon found a bottle, corked and waxed down, wherein was a letter from Captain Cook, informing us of their arrival at this place on the 3d instant, and their departure on the 24th, and that they intended spending a few days in the entrance of the Straits to look for us. We immediately set about the necessary repairs of the ship, with an intention of getting her to sea as soon as possible. On the 1st of December, the tents were carried on shore, the armourer's forge put up, and every preparation made for the recovery of the sick. The coopers were dispatched on shore to mend the casks, and we began to unstow the hold to get at the bread; but upon opening the casks, we found a great quantity of it entirely spoiled, and most part so damaged, that we were obliged to bake it over again, which unavoidably delayed us some time. At intervals, during our stay here, the natives came on board as usual with great familiarity. They generally brought fish, or whatever they had to barter with us, and seemed to behave with great civility; though twice in one night they came to the tents with an intention of stealing,

ing, but were discovered before they had accomplished their design. A party also came down in the night of the 13th, and robbed the astronomer's tent of every thing they could carry away. This they did so quietly, that they were not so much as heard, or suspected, till the astronomer getting up to make an observation, missed his instruments, and charged the centinel with the robbery. This brought on a pretty severe altercation, during which they spied an Indian creeping from the tent, at whom Mr Bailey fired, and wounded him; nevertheless he made a shift to retreat into the woods. The report of the gun had alarmed his confederates, who, instead of putting off from the shore, fled into the woods, leaving their canoe, with most of the things that had been stolen, aground on the beach. This petty larceny, it is probable, laid the foundation of that dreadful catastrophe which soon after happened.

Friday the 17th, at which time we were preparing for our departure, we sent out our large cutter, manned with seven seamen, under the command of Mr John Rowe, the first mate, accompanied by Mr Woodhouse, midshipman, and James Tobias Swilley, the carpenter's servant. They were to proceed up the Sound to Grass Cove, to gather greens and celery for the ship's company, with orders to return that evening; for the tents had been struck at two in the afternoon, and the ship made ready for sailing the next day. Night coming on, and no cutter appearing, the Captain and others began to express great uneasiness. They sat up all night, in expectation of their arrival, but to no purpose. At day break, therefore, the Captain ordered the launch to be hoisted out. She was double manned, and under the command of our second lieutenant, Mr Burney, accompanied by Mr Freeman, master; the corporal of marines with five private men, all well armed, and having plenty of ammunition, two wall pieces, and three days provisions. They were ordered first to look into the east bay, then to proceed to Grass Cove, and if nothing was to be seen or heard of the cutter there, they

were to go farther up the cove, and return by the west shore. Mr Rowe having left the ship an hour before the time proposed for his departure, we thought his curiosity might have carried him into East Bay, none of our people having ever been there, or that some accident might have happened to the boat; for not the least suspicion was entertained of the natives, our boats having been higher up, and worse provided. Mr Burney returned about eleven o'clock the same night, and and gave us a pointed description of a most horrible scene indeed; the substance, and every material particular of whose report, are contained in the following relation, which includes the remarks of those who attended Mr Burney.

On Saturday the 18th, pursuant to our orders, we left the ship, about nine o'clock in the morning. Having a light breeze in our favour, we soon got round Long Island, and Long Point. We continued sailing and rowing for East Bay, keeping close in shore, and examining with our glasses every cove on the larboard side, till near two o'clock in the afternoon, at which time we stopped at a beach on our left going up East Bay, to dress our dinner. While we were cooking we saw an Indian on the opposite shore running along a beach to the head of the bay; and when our meat was just done, we perceived a company of the natives seemingly very busy; upon seeing which, we got immediately into the boat, put off, and rowed quickly to the place where the savages were assembled, which was at the head of this reach; and here, while approaching, we discerned one of their settlements. As we drew near some of the Indians came down upon the rocks, and waved for us to depart; but perceiving we disregarded them, they altered their gestures, and wild notes. At this place we observed six large canoes hauled upon the beach, most of them being double ones; but the number of people were in proportion neither to the size of these canoes, nor the number of houses. Our little company, consisting of the corporal and his five marines,

headed

headed by Mr Burney, now landed, leaving their boat's crew to guard it. Upon our approach the natives fled with great precipitation. We followed them closely to a little town, which we found deserted; but while we were employed in searching their huts, the natives returned, making a shew of resistance; but some trifling presents being made to their chiefs, they were very soon appeased. However, on our return to the boat, the savages again followed us, and some of them threw stones. As we came down to the beach, one of the Indians had brought a bundle of hepatoos, or long spears, but seeing Mr Burney looked very earnestly at him, he walked about with seeming unconcern. Some of his companions appearing to be terrified, a few trifles were given to each of them. From the place where we now landed, the bay seemed to run a full mile, N. N. W. where it ended in a long sandy beach. After dinner we took a view of the country near the coast with our glasses, but saw not a canoe, or signs of inhabitants, after which we fired the wall pieces as signals to the cutter, if any of the people should happen to be within hearing. We now renewed our search along the east shore; and came to another settlement where the Indians invited us ashore. We enquired of them about the cutter, but they pretended ignorance. They seemed very friendly, and sold us some fish.

At about five o'clock in the afternoon, and within an hour after we had left this place, we opened a small bay adjoining to Grass Cove, and here we saw a large double canoe, just hauled upon the beach, with two men and a dog. The two savages on seeing us approach, instantly fled, which made us suspect, it was here we should have some tidings of the cutter. On landing, and examining the canoe, the first thing we saw therein were one of our cutter's rullock ports, and some shoes, one of which, among the latter, was known to belong to Mr Woodhouse. A piece of flesh was found by one of our people, which at first was thought to be some of the salt meat belonging to the cutter's men,

men, but upon examination, we supposed it to be dog's flesh; a most horrid and undeniable proof soon cleared up our doubts, and convinced us we were among no other than cannibals; for, advancing farther on the beach, we saw about twenty baskets tied up, and a dog eating a piece of broiled flesh, which, upon examining, we suspected to be human. We cut open the baskets, some of which were full of roasted flesh, and others of fern root, which serves them for bread. Searching others we found more shoes, and a hand, which was immediately known to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our fore-castle men, it having been tatowed with the initials of his name. We now proceeded a little way in the woods, but saw nothing else. Our next design was to launch the canoe, intending to destroy her; but seeing a great smoke ascending over the nearest hill, we made all possible haste to be with them before sun-set.

At half after six we opened Grass Cove, where we saw one single, and three double canoes, and a great many natives assembled on the beach, who retreated to a small hill, within a ship's length of the water-side, where they stood talking to us. On the top of the high land, beyond the woods, was a large fire, from whence all the way down the hill, the place was thronged like a fair. When we entered the cove, a musketoon was fired at one of the canoes, as we imagined they might be full of men lying down; for they were all afloat, but no one was seen in them. Being doubtful whether their retreat proceeded from fear, or a desire to decoy us into an ambuscade, we were determined not to be surpris'd, and therefore running close in shore, we dropped the grappling near enough to reach them with our guns; but at too great a distance to be under any apprehensions from their treachery. The savages on the little hill kept their ground, hallooing, and making signs for us to land. At these we now took aim, resolving to kill as many of them as our bullets would reach; yet it was some time before we could dislodge them.

the
mu
wa
lin
see
Am
tain
fou
the
com
got
han
pare
and
pur
the
bund
ter's
grou
wher
the a
the b
instea
our v
here
peopl
some
bodies
feasted
shock
distan
observ
on a h
apace,
did we
shore,
being a
merous
ed alm

them. The first volley did not seem to affect them much; but on the second, they began to scramble away as fast as they could, some howling, and others limping. We continued to fire as long as we could see the least glimpse of any of them through the bushes. Among these were two very robust men, who maintained their ground, without moving an inch, till they found themselves forsaken by all their companions, and then, disdainingly to run, they marched off with great composure and deliberation. One of them, however, got a fall, and either lay there, or crawled away on his hands and feet; but the other escaped without any apparent hurt. Mr Burney now improved their panic, and, supported by the marines, leaped on shore, and pursued the fugitives. We had not advanced far from the water-side, on the beach, before we met with two bundles of celery, which had been gathered by the cutter's crew. A broken oar was stuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes; whereby we were convinced this was the spot where the attack had been made. We now searched all along the back of the beach, to see if the cutter was there, but, instead of her, the most horrible scene was presented to our view, that was ever beheld by any European; for here lay the hearts, heads, and lungs of several of our people, with hands and limbs, in a mangled condition, some broiled and some raw; but no other parts of their bodies, which made us suspect, that the cannibals had feasted upon, and devoured the rest. To complete this shocking view of carnage and barbarity, at a little distance, we saw the dogs gnawing their intrails. We observed a large body of the natives collected together on a hill about two miles off; but as night drew on apace, we could not advance to such a distance; neither did we think it safe to attack them, or even to quit the shore, to take an account of the number killed, our troop being a very small one, and the savages were both numerous, fierce, and much irritated. While we remained almost stupified on the spot, Mr Fannen said, that he heard

heard the cannibals assembling in the woods ; on which we returned to our boat, and having hauled alongside the canoes, we demolished three of them.

During this transaction, the fire on the top of the hill disappeared, and we could hear the savages in the woods at high words ; quarrelling, perhaps, on account of their different opinions, whether they should attack us, and try to save their canoes. They were armed with long lances, and weapons not unlike a serjeant's halbert in shape, made of hard wood, and mounted with bone instead of iron. We suspected, that the dead bodies of our people had been divided among those different parties of cannibals, who had been concerned in the massacre ; and it was not improbable, that the group we saw at a distance by the fire, were feasting upon some of them, as those on shore had been, where the remains were found, before they had been disturbed by our unexpected visit : be that as it may, we could discover no traces of more than four of our friends bodies, nor could we find the place where the cutter was concealed. It now grew dark, on which account, we collected carefully the remains of our mangled friends, and putting off, made the best of our way from this polluted place, not without a few execrations bestowed on the blood-thirsty inhabitants. When we opened the upper part of the Sound, we saw a very large fire about three or four miles higher up, which formed a complete oval, reaching from the top of a hill down almost to the water-side ; the middle space being inclosed all round by the fire, like a hedge. Mr Burney and Mr Fannen having consulted together, they were both of opinion, that we could, by an attempt, reap no other advantage than the poor satisfaction of killing some more of the savages. Upon leaving Grass Cove, we had fired a volley towards where we heard the Indians talking ; but by going in and out of the boat, our pieces had got wet, and four of them missed fire. What rendered our situation more critical was, it began to rain, and our ammunition was more than half expended. We, for these reasons,

rea
be
arr
cou
end
of t
I
nun
Roy
Frac
capt
ton,
The
cast
heal
our
the
belo
ceive
with
man
with
com
foun
two
fers.
was
savag
the f
and l
rathe
origi
was c
too f
nity
and v
out,
them
they
Vol

reasons, without spending time where nothing could be hoped for but revenge, proceeded for the ship, and arrived safe aboard before midnight. Such is the account of this tragical event; the poor victims were far enough out of hearing, and in all probability every man of them must have been butchered on the spot.

It may be proper here to mention, that the whole number of men in the cutter were ten, namely, Mr Rowe, our first mate, Mr Woodhouse, a midshipman, Francis Murphy, quarter-master, James Sevilley, the captain's servant, John Lavenaugh, and Thomas Milton, belonging to the after-guard; William Facey, Thomas Hill, Michael Bell, and Edward Jones, fore-castle-men. Most of these were the stoutest and most healthy people in the ship, having been selected from our best seamen. Mr Burney's party brought on board the head of the captain's servant, with two hands, one belonging to Mr Rowe, known by a hurt it had received; and the other to Thomas Hill, being marked with T. H. as before mentioned. These, with other mangled remains, were inclosed in a hammock, and with the usual ceremony observed on board ships, were committed to the sea. Not any of their arms were found; nor any of their cloaths, except six shoes, no two of which were fellows, a frock, and a pair of trowsers. We do not think this melancholy catastrophe was the effect of a premeditated plan, formed by the savages; for two canoes came down, and continued all the forenoon in Ship Cove, and these Mr Rowe met, and bartered with the natives for some fish. We are rather inclined to believe, that the bloody transaction originated in a quarrel with some of the Indians, which was decided on the spot; or, our people rambling about too secure, and incautious, the fairness of the opportunity might tempt them to commit the bloody deed; and what might encourage them was, they had found out, that our guns were not infallible; they had seen them miss fire; and they knew, that when discharged, they must be loaded before they could again do any execution,

cution, which interval of time they could take proper advantage of. From some circumstances we concluded, that after their success, there was a general meeting on the east side of the Sound. We know the Indians of Shag Cove were there, by a long single canoe, which some of our people with Mr Rowe had seen four days before in Shag Cove. After this shocking affair, we were detained four days in the Sound by contrary winds, in which time we saw none of the inhabitants. It is a little remarkable, that Captain Furneaux had been several times up Grals Cove with Captain Cook, where they saw no inhabitants, and no other signs of any, but a few deserted villages which appeared as if they had not been occupied for many years; and yet, in Mr Burney's opinion, when he entered the same cove, there could not be less than fifteen hundred, or two thousand people. Had they been apprized of his coming, we doubt not they would have attacked him; and seeing not a probability remained of any of our people being alive, from these considerations, we thought it would be imprudent to renew the search, and send a boat up again.

On Thursday, the 23d of December, we departed from, and made sail out of the Sound, heartily vexed at the unavoidable delays we had experienced, so contrary to our sanguine wishes. We stood to the eastward, to clear the straits, which we happily effected the same evening, but we were baffled for two or three days with light winds before we could clear the coast. In this interval of time, the chests and effects of the ten men who had been murdered, were sold before the mast, according to an old sea custom. We now steered S. S. E. till we got into the latitude of 56 d. S. At this time we had a great swell from the southward, the winds blew strong from S. W. the weather began to be very cold; the sea made a continual breach over the ship, which was low and deep laden, and by her continual straining, very few of our seamen were dry either on deck or in bed. In the latitude of 58 d. S. and in 213 d. E. longitude, we fell in with some ice, and standing

to

to t
the
nior
feal
C
Cape
from
were
and t
The
Havi
them
it mo
intenc
Cape
Horn
and n
usual,
for sev
an obl
This w
were a
constan
them.
pains i
the nor
steered
laid do
the nig
came n
On t
Bouvet
but not
since w
search a
our last
degrees
and abo
there n

to the east, saw every day more or less. We saw also the birds common in this vast ocean, our only companions, and at times we met with a whale or porpoise, a seal or two, and a few penguins.

On the 10th of January 1774, we arrived abreast of Cape Horn, in the latitude of 61 d. S. and in the run from Cape Palliser in New Zealand to this cape, we were little more than a month, which is one hundred and twenty-one degrees of longitude, in that short time. The winds were continually westerly, with a great sea. Having opened some casks of pease and flour, we found them very much damaged; for which reason we thought it most prudent to make for the Cape of Good Hope, intending first to get into the latitude and longitude of Cape Circumcision. When to the eastward of Cape Horn, we found the winds came more from the north, and not so strong and frequent from the westward, as usual, which brought on thick foggy weather; so that for several days together, we were not able to make an observation, the sun all the time not being visible. This weather lasted above a month, in which time we were among a great many islands of ice, which kept us constantly on the look out, for fear of running foul of them. Our people now began to complain of colds and pains in their limbs, on account of which we hauled to the northward, making the latitude of 54 d. S. We then steered to the east, with an intention of finding the land laid down by M. Bouvet. As we advanced to the east, the nights began to be dark, and the islands of ice became more numerous and dangerous.

On the 3d of March, we were in the latitude of Bouvet's discovery, and half a league to eastward of it; but not perceiving the least sign of land, either now, or since we attained this parallel, we gave over a further search after it, and hauled away to the northward. In our last track to the southward, we were within a few degrees of the longitude assigned for Bouvet's discovery, and about three degrees of the southward; if therefore there should be any land thereabout, it must be a very

inconsiderable island; or rather, we are inclined to think, a mere deception from the ice; for, in our first setting out, we concluded we had made discoveries of land several times, which proved to be only high islands of ice, at the back of large fields, which M. Bouvet might easily mistake for land, especially as it was thick foggy weather.

On the 17th, in the latitude of 48 d. 30 m. S. and in 14 d. 26 m. E. longitude, we saw two large islands of ice. On the 18th, we made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 19th, anchored in Table Bay. Here we found Commodore Sir Edward Hughes, with his Majesty's ships the Salisbury and Sea Horse. We saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and the Commodore with an equal number; the latter returned the full complement, and the former, as usual, saluted us with two guns less. At this place Captain Furneaux left a letter for Captain Cook; and here we remained to refresh the ship, refresh the people, &c. &c. till the 16th of April, when we hoisted sail for England; and on the 14th of July, to the great joy of all our sailors, anchored at Spithead.

R U L E S

Voya

B
 nece
 fean
 man
 fider
 of th
 tive
 whic
 This
 land
 ferer
 from
 tutio

R U L E S

FOR PRESERVING THE

Health of Seamen in long Voyages,

AND THE

Means employed by CAPT. COOK, to that End,

DURING HIS

Voyage Round the World, in his Majesty's Ship the Resolution.

BEFORE we enter upon this subject, which hath for its object the saving the lives of men, it will be necessary to say something on that disorder, to which seamen are peculiarly subject; and to consider how many have perished by marine diseases, before any considerable improvements were made in the means either of their prevention or cure. The sickness most destructive to mariners, and against the dreadful attacks of which preservatives have been contrived, is the scurvy. This is not that distemper erroneously so called among landfimen; but belongs to a class of diseases totally different from it. So far is the common-received opinion from being true, which affirms, "There are few constitutions altogether free from a scorbutic taint," that, unless

less among sailors, and others circumstanced like them, more particularly with respect to those who use a salt and putrid diet, and especially if they live in foul air and uncleanness, we are inclined to think there are few disorders less frequent. Nor do we believe, which is another vulgar notion, that the sea air is the cause of the scurvy; since on board a ship, cleanliness, ventilation, and fresh provisions would preserve from it, and upon the sea coast, free from marshes, the inhabitants are not liable to that disorder, though frequently breathing the air from the sea. We should for these reasons rather ascribe the scurvy to other causes; and we believe it to be a beginning corruption of the whole habit, similar to that of every animal substance when deprived of life. This has been verified by the symptoms in the scorbutic sick, and by the appearances in their bodies after death. With respect to the putrifying quality of sea salt, we may remark, that salted meats, after some time, become in reality putrid, though they may continue long palatable by means of the salt; and common salt, supposed to be one of the strongest preservatives from corruption, is at best but an indifferent one, even in a large quantity; and in a small one so far from impeding putrefaction, it rather promotes that process in the body. Some are of opinion, that the scurvy is much owing to intense cold, which checks perspiration; and hence, say they, arise the endemic distempers of the northern nations, particularly of these around the Baltic. The fact is partly true; but we are doubtful about the cause. In these countries, by reason of long and severe winter, the cattle, being destitute of pasture, can barely live, and are therefore unfit for use; so that the people, for their provisions, during that season, are obliged to kill them by the end of autumn, and to salt them for above half the year.

This putrid diet then, on which they must so long subsist, seems to be the chief source from whence the disease originates. And if we consider, that the lowest class of people in the north have few or no greens nor fruit

fr
liv
ce
de
lat
Th
den
oth
falt
usir
em
dist
feld
very
brea
they
othe
that
and
to th
of pe
comp
most
those
with
confu
with
breath
or am
comm
stance
same
those
in Ker
broke
been se
an allo
though

fruit in winter, little or no fermented liquors, and often live in damp, foul, and ill aired houses, it is easy to conceive how they should become liable to the same disorder with seamen; whereas others who live in as high a latitude, but in a different manner, are free from it. Thus we are informed by Linnæus, that the Laplanders are unacquainted with the scurvy; for which no other reason can be assigned, than their never eating salted meats, nor indeed salt with any thing, but their using all the fresh flesh of their rein deer. And this exemption of the hyperborean nations from the general distemper of the north, is the more remarkable, as they seldom taste vegetables, and bread never. Yet in the very provinces, bordering on Lapland, where they use bread, but scarcely any vegetables, and eat salted meats, they are as much troubled with the scurvy as in any other country. But here we may properly observe, that the late improvements in agriculture, gardening, and husbandry, by extending their salubrious influence to the remotest parts of Europe, and to the lowest class of people, begin sensibly to lessen the frequency of that complaint, even in those climates wherein it has been most brief and fatal. Again, it has been asserted, that those who live on shore, or landmen, will be affected with the scurvy, though they may have never been confined to salt meats: but of this we have not met with any instances, except among such who have breathed a marshy air, or what was otherwise putrid; or among those who wanted exercise, fruits, and the common vegetables: under which particular circumstances we grant, that the humours will corrupt in the same manner, though not in the same degree, with those of seamen. In the war, when Sisinghurst Castle in Kent, was filled with French prisoners, the scurvy broke out among them, notwithstanding they had never been served with salted victuals in England, but had daily an allowance of fresh meat, and bread in proportion, though without vegetables. And besides the want of this

this necessary supply of greens, the wards were crowded and foul, the house damp, by reason of a circumambient moat, and the bounds allotted for taking the air were so small, and in wet weather so swampish, that the men seldom were disposed to quit the house. A representation having been made of these deficiencies, in consequence thereof the prisoners were supplied with roots and greens for boiling in their broth, the sick were quartered out in a dry situation, where they had the liberty of air and exercise; and by these means they all quickly recovered. We think it probable that the scurvy sooner appeared among these strangers, from their having been taken at sea, and, therefore, from their diet, they were more disposed to the disease. Such is the nature and cause of that sickness most destructive to sailors.

Let us now take a transient view of its dreadful ravages; and by a contrast between the old and present times, we shall see, more evidently, the importance and value of the means proposed, and which have been most successfully employed by Captain Cook, for its prevention and cure. In the first voyage for the establishment of the East-India Company, a squadron was fitted out, and under the command of Lancaster (who was then styled general) in the year 1601. The equipment consisted of four ships, with four hundred and eighty men on board. Three of those vessels were so weakened by the scurvy, when they had got only three degrees beyond the equinoctial line, that the merchants, who had embarked on this adventure, were obliged to do duty as common sailors. At sea, on shore, and at Soldania, the then place of refreshment on this side the Cape of Good Hope, there died in all, near a fourth part of their complement, and that before they had proceeded half way to the place of their destination. Sir William Hawkins, who lived in that age, an intelligent and brave sea officer, has left it upon record, "that in twenty years, during which he had used the sea, he could give an account of ten thousand mariners who had
been

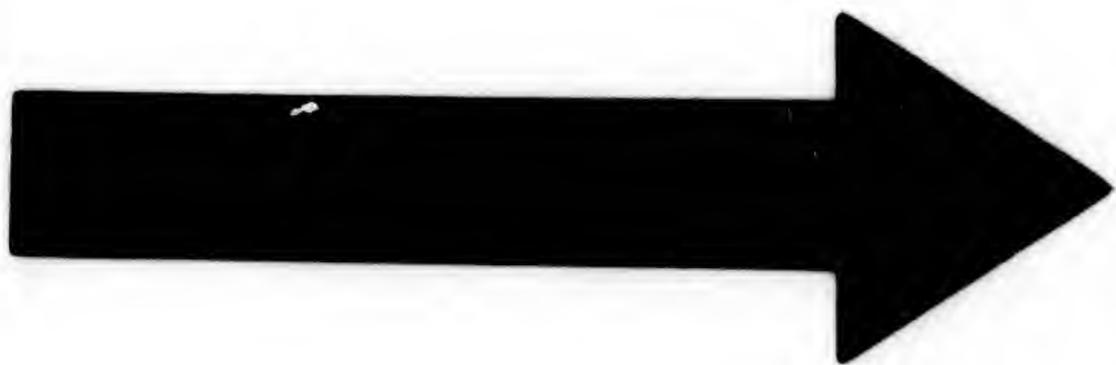
been
very
were
must
while
for e
made
our c
spect
powe
woul
even
were
than
The f
dore
melan
having
to ra
time
the So
nor w
some
they h
Englan
island
that n
the mo
landed
hands;
capable
six fore
three th
two suff
here his
renewe
afresh,
(in whi
ships) h
: Vol. I.

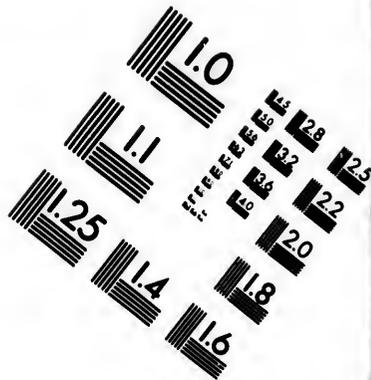
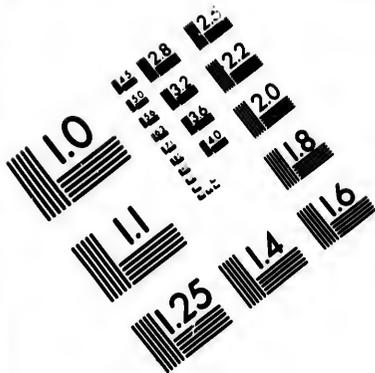
been consumed by the scurvy alone." If then in the very infancy of the naval power of England, so many were destroyed by that bane of sea-faring men, what must have been the havock made since that early date, while our fleet has been gradually increasing, new ports for commerce opening, and yet so little advancement made in the nautical part of medicine. And within our own remembrance, when it might have been expected that whatever tended to aggrandize the naval power of Great Britain, and to extend her commerce, would have received the highest improvement: yet, even at these latter dates, we shall find few measures were adopted to preserve the health of seamen, more than had been known to our uninformed ancestors. The successful, but mournful expedition of Commodore Anson, afterwards an admiral, and lord, affords a melancholy proof of the truth of this assertion. After having passed the Straits of La Maire, the scurvy began to rage violently in this little squadron; and by the time the Centurion had advanced but a little way into the South Sea, forty-seven sailors died of it in that ship; nor were there scarcely any on board, who had not, in some degree, been touched with the distemper, though they had not at that time been quite eight months from England. In the ninth month, when abreast of the island of Juan Fernandez, the Centurion lost double that number; and such an amazing swift progress did the mortality make in this single ship, that before they landed on that island she had buried two hundred of her hands; not being able to muster any more in a watch, capable of doing duty, than two quarter masters, and six foremast men. This was the condition of one of the three ships which reached that island; and the other two suffered in proportion. Nor did the destroyer stop here his cruel ravages, but, after a few months respite, renewed his attacks; for the same disease broke out afresh, making such havock, that before the Centurion (in which were the whole surviving crews of the three ships) had reached the island of Tinian, there died some-

times eight or ten in a day, so that when they had been only two years on their voyage, they had lost a larger proportion than of four in five of their original number, and all of them after having entered the South Sea, of the scurvy: but we apprehend this was not strictly the case; but that the cause of so great a mortality was a pestilential kind of distemper, distinguished on land by the name of the jail, or hospital fever; and, indeed, in the observations made by two of Commodore Anson's surgeons, it is affirmed, that the scurvy at that time was accompanied with putrid fevers: however it is not material, whether the scurvy, or the fever combined with it, were the cause of the destructive mortality in Lord Anson's fleet, since it must be acknowledged both arose from foul air, and other sources of putrefaction; and which may now, in a great measure, be obviated, by various means fallen upon since the time of that expedition: and this naturally leads us in due order, to take a view of the principal articles of provision, and other methods employed by Captain Cook. We shall mention all such articles as were found the most useful; and in this list of preservative stores, shall begin with

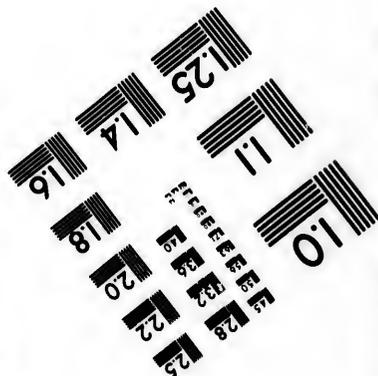
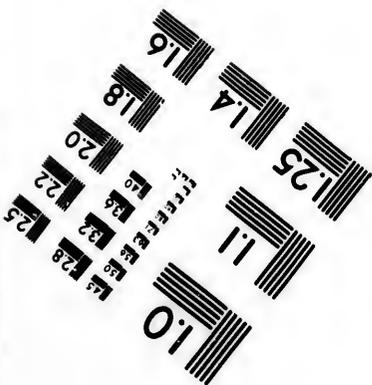
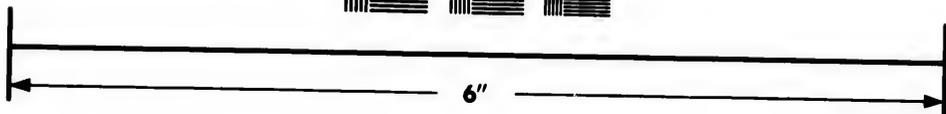
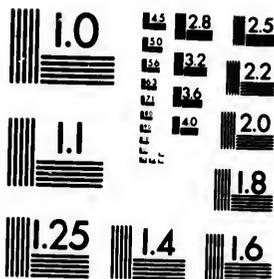
I. Sweet Wort. This was distributed, from one to three pints a day, or in such a proportion as the surgeon judged necessary, not only to those men who had manifest symptoms of the scurvy, but to such also as were judged to be most liable to it. Beer hath always been esteemed one of the best antiscorbutics; but as that derived all its fixed air from the malt of which it was made, this was thought to be preferable in long voyages, as it would take up less room than the beer, and keep longer sound. Experience has since verified the theory; and in the medical journal of Mr Patten, surgeon to the Resolution, we find the following passage, which fully corroborates the testimony of Capt. Cook and others, in favour of sweet wort, as being the best antiscorbutic medicine yet known. "I have found (observes this gentleman) the wort of the utmost service in all scorbutic cases during the voyage. As many
took

took it by way of prevention, few cases occurred where it had a fair trial; but these, however, I flatter myself, will be sufficient to convince every impartial person, it is the best remedy hitherto found out for the cure of the sea scurvy; and I am well convinced, from what I have seen the wort perform, and from its mode of operation, that if aided by portable soup, sour-kroust, sugar, sago, and currants, the scurvy, that maritime pestilence, will seldom or never make its appearance among a ship's crew, on the longest voyages; proper care with regard to cleanliness and provisions being observed." It hath been constantly observed by our sea surgeons, that in long cruizes or distant voyages, the scurvy never makes its alarming appearance, so long as the men have their full allowance of small beer; but that when it is all expended the disorder soon prevails: it were therefore to be wished, that our ships would afford sufficient room for this wholesome beverage. But, we are informed, the Russians, both on board as well as on land, make the following middle quality between wort and small beer. They take ground malt and rye meal in a certain proportion, which they knead into small loaves, and bake in the oven. These they infuse occasionally in a proper quantity of warm water, which begins so soon to ferment, that in the space of 24 hours, their brewage is completed, and a small, brisk, acetous liquor produced, to which they have given the name of quas. Dr Mounsey, who lived long in Russia, in writing to his friends in England, observes, that the quas is the common and salutary drink both of the fleets and armies of that empire, and that it was peculiarly good. The same gentleman having visited the several prisons in the city of Moscow, was surprized to find it full of malefactors, but more so when he could discover no fever among them, nor learn that any acute distemper, peculiar to jails, had ever been known there. He observed that some of those places for confinement had a yard, for the use of the prisoners, but in others without that advantage, they were not sickly: so that he could assign no other reason





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
ES 1.8
ES 2.0
ES 2.2
ES 2.5
ES 2.8
ES 3.2
ES 3.6
ES 4.0

10
ES 10.0
ES 11.0
ES 12.0
ES 13.0
ES 14.0
ES 15.0
ES 16.0
ES 17.0
ES 18.0
ES 19.0
ES 20.0

for the healthful condition of those men, than their kind of diet, which was the same with that of the common people of the country, who live mostly on rye-bread (a strong acescent) and drink quas. Upon his return to St Petersburg, he had made the same enquiry there, and with the same result. From this account it should seem, that the rye meal both quickens the fermentation, and adds more fixed air, since the malt alone could not so readily produce such a tart, brisk liquor. And there is little doubt, but that whenever the other grains can be brought to a proper degree of fermentation, they will more or less in the same way become useful. That oats will, we are convinced from an experiment made by Captain Cook. When on a cruize in the *Essex*, a 74 gun ship, and the scurvy breaking out among his crew, he recollected a kind of food most proper on that occasion, which he had seen used in some parts of the north, called *Sowins*. This is made by putting some oat meal into a wooden vessel; then pouring hot water upon it, let the infusion continue until the liquor begins to taste sourish, that is, till a fermentation comes on, which, in a place moderately warm, may be produced in about two days. The water must then be poured off from the grounds, and boiled down to the consistency of a jelly. This the Captain ordered to be made and dealt out in messes, being first sweetened with sugar, and seasoned with some prize French wine, which, though turned sour, improved the taste. This diet chiefly, not less palatable than medicinal, and by abstaining from salt meats, quite recovered his scorbutic sick, not only in this, but in subsequent cruizes, without his being obliged to send one of them on shore because they could not recover at sea. Before the power of the fixed air in subduing putrefaction was known, the efficacy of fruits, greens, and fermented liquors was commonly ascribed to the acid in their composition; and we have still reason to believe, that the acid concurs in operating that effect. In case of a scarcity in these articles, or a deficiency of malt, or when the grain should be spoiled,
other

other substitutes may be found very serviceable; as distilled water, acidulated with the spirit of sea salt, in the proportion of only ten drops to a quart; or with the weak spirit of vitriol, thirteen drops to the same measure, which may be given to those who are threatened with the scurvy, at least three quarts of this liquor daily, to be drank with discretion, as they shall think proper. The fixed air rebounds in wine, and perhaps no vegetable substance is more replete with it than the juice of the grape. If we join the grateful taste of wine, we must rank it the first in the list of antiscorbutic liquors. Cyder is also excellent, with other vinous productions of fruit; indeed this salutary fixed air is contained more or less in all fermentable liquors, and begins to oppose putrefaction as soon as the working, or intestine motion commences.

II. The next article of extensive use, was Sour-kroust, (sour cabbage) a food of universal repute in Germany. Its spontaneous fermentation produces that acidity which makes it agreeable to the taste of all who eat it. The Resolution had a large quantity of this wholesome vegetable food on board, and it spoils not by keeping: in the judgment of Captain Cook, sour-kroust is highly antiscorbutic. The allowance for each man, when at sea, was a pound, served twice a week, or oftener, as was thought necessary. Some of the distinguished medical writers of our times, have disapproved of the use of cabbage as an antiscorbutic; notwithstanding the high encomiums bestowed upon it by the ancients, (witness what Cato the Elder, and Pliny the naturalist, say on the subject,) and although it hath had the sanction of the experience of nations, for many past ages; and by experiments laid before the Royal Society, by some of our eminent physicians, it has been demonstrated, that this vegetable, with the rest of the supposed alcaliscent, are really aciscent; and that the scurvy is never owing to acidity, but to a species of putrefaction; that very cause of which the ill-grounded class of alcaliscent was supposed to be a promoter.

III. Portable

III. Portable Soup was another article with which the Resolution was plentifully supplied. An ounce to each man, or such other quantity as circumstances pointed out, was boiled in their pease daily, three days in every week; and when vegetables were to be had it was boiled with them. Of this were made several nourishing messes, which occasioned the crew to eat a greater quantity of vegetables than they would otherwise have done. This broth being freed from all fat, and having by long boiling evaporated the most putrescent parts of the meat, is reduced to the consistence of a glue, which in effect it is, and will, like other glues, in a dry place, keep sound for many years.

IV. The Rob of Oranges and Lemons, which the surgeon made use of in many cases, with great success. Capt. Cook, it has been observed, did not much rely on these acids as a preservative against the scurvy; for which the following reason has been assigned by one of our most eminent physical professors. These preparations being only sent out upon trial, the surgeon of the ship was told how much he might give for a dose, without strictly limiting the quantum. The experiment was made with the quantity specified, but with so little success, that judging it not prudent to lose more time, he set about the cure with the wort alone, of the efficacy of which he was fully convinced; while he reserved the robs for other purposes; more particularly for colds, when to a large draught of warm water, with some spirits and sugar, he added a spoonful of one of them, and with these ingredients made a grateful sudorific that answered his intention. To which we may add, as worthy of notice, that as they had been reduced to a small proportion of their bulk by evaporation, it is probable they were much weakened, and that with their aqueous particles they had, by the fire, lost not a little of their aerial. If therefore a further trial of these juices were to be made, they should be sent to sea purified and entire in casks, agreeable to a proposal sent in to the Admiralty some years ago, by an experienced surgeon of the

the na. Upon the whole, the testimonies in favour of the salutary qualities of these acids are so numerous, and strong, that we should look upon some failures, even in cases where their want of success cannot so well be accounted for as in this voyage, not a sufficient reason for striking them out of this list of preservatives against the consuming malady to which seamen are particularly subject. Nor must we omit observing under this head that Captain Cook says not more in praise of vinegar than of the robs; as appears from an extract of a letter which he wrote to the President of the Royal Society, dated Plymouth Sound, July 7th, 1776. "I entirely agree with you, (says the Captain) that the dearth of the rob of lemons, and of oranges, will hinder men from being purchased in large quantities; but I do not think these so necessary; for though they may assist other things, I have no great opinion of them alone. Nor have I a higher opinion of vinegar. My people had very sparingly during the late voyage; and toward the latter part, none at all; and yet we experienced no effects from the want of it. The custom of washing the inside of the ship with vinegar I seldom observe thinking fire and smoke answered the purpose much better." We will not controvert the position here laid down by Capt. Cook, nor would we infer from hence that he thought vinegar of little service to a ship's company, but only that as he happened in this voyage to be amply provided with it, and yet did well, he could not therefore consider a large store of vinegar to be so material an article of provisions, as was commonly imagined; but notwithstanding the Captain supplied the place with four-kraut, and trusted chiefly to fire for purifying his decks, yet it is to be hoped future navigators will not wholly omit such a refreshing and useful article. It is at least a wholesome variety in season, very proper for cleansing the receptacles of the sick and may be used at times, successfully as a medicine. The physician himself will smell to vinegar to prevent infection from contagious diseases, and the smell

smell is certainly agreeable to the sick, especially such who may be confined to a foul and crowded ward. Thus much for the salutary articles that have lately been added to the naval stores of all the king's ships on long voyages, which Capt. Cook ordered to be dispensed, as occasion might require, in a bountiful manner; to which he added the following regulations, either wholly new, or hints from Sir Hugh Palliser, Captains Campbell, Wallis, and other experienced friends; and among these he formed a plan to which all his ship's company were to conform, he made them his own, and we may therefore justly place the merit to our skilful Commander's account.

V. Capt. Cook put his crew at three watches, instead of two; that is, he formed his whole crew into three divisions, each of which was ordered upon the watch by the boatswain four hours at a time; so that every man had eight hours free, for four of duty: whereas at watch and watch, the half of the men being on duty at once, with returns of it every four hours, they can have but broken sleep, and when exposed to wet, they cannot have time to get dry before the whistle calls them up, or they may lie down to rest themselves. When service requires, hardships must be endured and no men in the world encounter them so readily and with such alacrity, as our thorough-bred English seamen do; nevertheless, when there is no pressing call, might not our brave, hardy mariners to be indulged with as much uninterrupted rest as our common labourers? Indeed it is the practice of all good officers to expose their men as little to wet weather as possible; and we doubt not but they will pay attention to what was made an essential point with our humane Commander. In the torrid zone he shaded his people from the scorching rays of the sun by an awning over his deck; and in his course under the southern polar circle, he provided for each man what the sailor called their Magellan jacket, made of a substantial wollen stuff, with the addition of a hood for covering their heads;

heat; and this garb they found most comfortable for working in rain and snow, and among the loose ice in high southern latitudes. If Rome decreed a civic crown to him who saved the life of a single citizen, what honorary rewards, what praises are due to that hero, who contrived, and employed, such new means to save mankind; means, whereby Britannia will no more lament, on the return of her ships from distant voyages, the loss of her bold sons, her intrepid mariners, who by braving every danger, have so liberally contributed to the prosperity, opulence, and glory of her maritime empire!

1. Unremitted care was taken to guard against putrefaction, and a variety of measures pursued, in order to procure, and maintain, a purity of air in the ship. To this end, some wood, and that not sparingly, being put into a proper stove, was lighted, and carried successively to every part below deck. Wherever fire is, the air nearest to it, being heated, becomes specifically lighter, and by being lighter rises, and passes through the hatchways into the atmosphere. The partial vacuum is filled with the cold air around, and that being heated in its turn, in like manner ascends, and is replaced with other air as before. Thus by continuing the fire for some time, in any of the lower apartments, the foul air is in a good measure driven out, and the fresh admitted. Besides, the acid steams of the wood, in burning, act probably here as an antiseptic, and correct the corrupted air that remains. The ship was generally thus aired with fires once or twice a week. It has been observed by an officer of distinguished rank, that the old twenty gun ships were remarkably less sick than those equal in dimensions, but of modern construction; which circumstance he could no otherwise account for, than by the former having their fire-place or kitchen in the forepart of the deck immediately above the hold, where the flue vented so ill, that, when the wind was aft, every part was filled with smoke. This was a nuisance for the time, but which was abundantly compensated by the good health of the

several crews for : those fire-places dried the lower cks, much more when placed below, than they can ow under the fore-castle upon the upper deck. But the most beneficial end answered by these portable stoves was, their drying up the damp, and foul moire, especially in those places where the air was most likely to be corrupted for the want of a free circulation. This foul moisture is formed of the breath, and perspirable matter of a multitude of men, of the animals, or ve stock, and of the steams of the bilge water from the ull, where the stagnated corruption is the greatest. This putrid humidity, being one of the principal sources of the scorbutic disease, was, in order to its removal, particularly attended to ; and while the fires were burning, some of the hands were employed in rubbing hard, w canvas, or oakum, every part of the ship that was dap and accessible. But the advantage of these means, r preserving the health of mariners, appeared no where conspicuous, as in purifying the well ; which being situated in the lowest part of the hold, the whole leakage runs into it, whether of the ship itself, or the casks of spoiled meat, or corrupted water. Yet this place is rendered both safe and sweet by means of an iron sink filled with fire, and let down to burn therein : we are safe, because the noxious vapours, from this sink also, have often been the cause of instantaneous death to the who have unwarily approached to clean it ; and not one only, but to several successively, when they are gone down to succour their unfortunate assistants. When this wholesome process could not take place, on reason of stormy weather, the ship was fumigated w gunpowder, mixed with vinegar or water. The sink could have little effect in drying, but it might correct the putrid air, by means of the acid spirits from the sulphur and nitre, assisted perhaps by the aerial fluid, the disengaged from the fuel, to counteract putrefaction. These purifications by gunpowder, by burning tar and other resinous substances, are sufficiently known. We wish the same could be said of the ventilator, invented by

by Mr Hales, the credit of which, though we are convinced of its excellence, is far from being established in the navy. Perhaps Captain Cook had not time to examine it, and therefore would not encumber his ship with a machine he had possibly never seen worked, and of which he had, at best, received but a doubtful character; and we find he was not altogether unprovided with an apparatus for ventilation. He had the wind-sail, which he found very serviceable, particularly between the tropics. They take up little room, require no labour in working, and the invention is so simple, that they can sail in no hands; but yet their powers are small in comparison with those of Hales's Ventilator; and to which, they cannot be put up in hard gales of wind, and they are of no use in dead calms, when a circulation of air is chiefly necessary, and required.

VII. The attention of Capt. Cook was directed not only to the ship, but to the persons, hammocks, bedding, cloaths, &c. of the crew, and even to the utensils they used, that the whole might be constantly kept clean and dry. Proper attention was paid to the ship's copper; and the fat which boiled out of the salt beef and pork, the Captain never suffered to be given to the people, being of opinion that it promotes the scurvy. Cleanliness is not only conducive to health, it also tends to regularity, and is the patron of other virtues. If you can persuade those who are to be under command, to be more cleanly than they are disposed to be of themselves, they will become more sober, more orderly, and more attentive to their duty. The practice in the army verifies this observation; yet, we confess, a mariner has indifferent means to keep himself clean, had he the inclination to do it; but, in our opinion, sea officers might avail themselves of the still for providing fresh water for the purpose of washing; seeing it is well known that salt water will not mix with soap, and men wet with brine seldom thoroughly dries. As for Capt. Cook, one morning, in every week, he passed his ship's company in review, and saw that every man

had changed his linen, and was in other points clean as circumstances would permit; and the frequent opportunities he had of taking in fresh water among the islands in the South Sea, enabled him to allow his crew a sufficient quantity of this wholesome article for every use; and this brings us to another useful means conducive to the health of seamen.

VIII. Captain Cook thought fresh water from the shore preferable to that which has been kept some time on board a ship, and therefore he was careful to procure a supply of this essential article wherever it was to be obtained, even though his company were not want of it: nor were they ever at an allowance, but had always sufficient for every necessary purpose. Nor was the Captain without an apparatus for distilling fresh water; but though he availed himself sometimes of this invention, he did not rely on it, finding, by experiments, that he could not obtain by this means nearly much as was expected. This was no disappointment to him, since within the southern tropic, in the Pacific Ocean, he discovered so many islands, all well stored with wholesome springs; and when in the high latitudes, far from a single fountain, he found the hardships and dangers inseparable from the frigid zone, in some degree compensated by the singular felicity he enjoyed, of extracting inexhaustible supplies of fresh water from an ocean strewed with ice. Those vast shoals, fields, and floating mountains of ice, among which he steered his perilous course, and which presented such terrifying objects of destruction, were the very means of his support, by supplying him abundantly with what he most wanted. That all fresh water would thaw into brine, was a paradox that had been asserted, but met with little credit: even Captain Cook himself expected no such transmutation; and therefore was agreeably surprised to find he had no difficulty less to encounter, namely, that of preserving the health of his men so long on salt and putrid provisions, with a scanty allowance of, perhaps, foul water, or

pointas
e frequent
ter anig
allowis
article br
ful mens

from e
some tile
ful to pr
ver it vs
were not
vance, it
ose. Nr
illing fro
mes of t
by expe
s nearly
pointme
the Pacif
well store
high lat
the hard
d zone, i
felicity h
s of fre
hose ve
e, amot
which pr
were e
aim ab-
all from
k that d
n Capn
ion; ad
e had he
preferng
rid pri-
oul ver,
or

or on what he could obtain by the use of the still. An ancient writer of great authority, no less than one of the Sines, had assigned, from theory, bad qualities to melted snow; but our judicious Commander affirms, that melted ice of the sea is not only fresh, but soft, and so wholesome, as to shew the fallacy of human reason unsupported by experiments. And what is very remarkable, though in the midst of fleets, falls of snow, thick fogs, and much moist weather, the Resolution enjoyed nearly the same state of health she had experienced in the temperate and torrid zones. Indeed towards the end of the several courtes, some of the marines began to complain of the scurvy, but this disease made little progress; nor were other disorders, as colds, diarrhoeas, intermittents, and continued fevers, either numerous, alarming, or fatal. Nor must we omit here the remark of a celebrated physician, who justly observes, "that much commendation is due to the attention and abilities of Mr Patten, the surgeon of the Resolution, for having so well seconded his Captain in the discharge of his duty." For it must be allowed, that in despite of the best regulations, and the best provisions, there will always be among a numerous crew, during a long voyage, some casualties more or less productive of sickness, and unless there be an intelligent medical assistant on board, many, under the wisest commander, will perish, that otherwise might have been avoided. We shall observe once more,

IX. That Captain Cook was not only careful to replenish, whenever opportunity permitted, his casks with water; but he provided his men with all kinds of refreshments, both animal and vegetable, that he could meet with, and by every means in his power: these, even if not pleasing to the palate, he obliged his people to use, both by example and authority; but the benefits arising from refreshments of any kind soon became so obvious, that he had little occasion to recommend the one, or exert the other. Thus did this expert and humane navigator employ all the means and regulations, which

which the art of man suggested, or the God of nature provided for the most benevolent purpose, even that of preserving the health and lives of those intrusted to his care. Here is greater merits than a discovery of frozen unknown countries could have claimed; and which will exist, in the opinion of every benevolent mind, a subject of admiration and praise, when the disputes about a southern continent shall no longer engage the attention, or divide the judgment of philosophical enquirers. This is a memorial more lasting than the mimic list, or the emblazoned medal; for this can never perish, but will remain engraven on the hearts of Englishmen to their latest posterity. May future navigators spring out of this bright example, not only to perpetuate his justly acquired fame, but to imitate his labours for the advancement of natural knowledge, the good of society, and the true glory of Great Britain.

END OF THE SECOND VOYAGE.

AGE

of nature
ven that of
sted his
of frozen
which will
nd, a sub-
utes about
the at-
enquiers.
imic list.
er perh,
nglishmen
ors spring
etuate as
ars for de
of societ,

AGE

